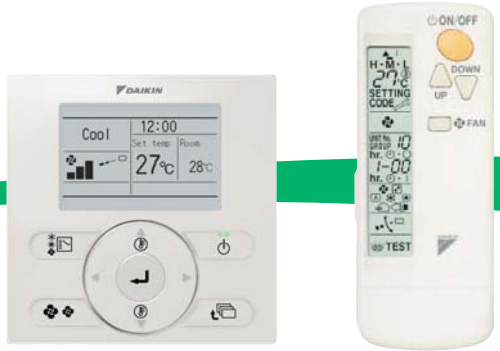
DAIKIN

OH10 - 01

Option Handbook

VRV® System





DAIKIN INDUSTRIES, LTD.

Part 1 Introduction 1

1. Introduction 2

Part 2 Control Systems 11

1. Remote Controller (Wireless Type) 13
2. Remote Controller (Wired Type) 191
3. Navigation Remote Controller (Wired Remote Controller) 196
4. Wired Remote Controller with Weekly Schedule Timer 211
5. Simplified Remote Controller 218
6. Remote Controller for Hotel Use 222
7. Adaptor for Wiring 227
8. Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (1) (2) 235
9. Remote Sensor (For Indoor Temperature) 248
10. Installation Box for Adaptor PCB 250
11. External Control Adaptor for Outdoor Unit 271
12. Adaptor for Multi Tenant 279
13. Residential Central Remote Controller 283
14. Central Remote Controller 295
15. Electrical Box with Earth Terminal 326
16. Unified ON/OFF Controller 328
17. Noise Filter (For Electromagnetic Interface Use only) 335
18. Schedule Timer 338
19. Interface Adaptor for SkyAir Series 346
20. Central Control Adaptor Kit 349
21. Wiring Adaptor for Other Air-Conditioner 353
22. DIII-NET Expander Adaptor 357
23. intelligent Touch Controller 361
24. intelligent Manager 377
25. Optional DIII Ai Unit 384
26. Di Unit 387
27. Dio Unit 390
28. Interface for use in BACnet® 393
29. Optional DIII Board 399
30. Optional Di Board 402
31. Interface for use in LonWorks® 405
32. Parallel Interface 412
33. Unification Adaptor for Computerized Control 429

Part 3 Indoor Units 433

1. FXF(Q) 436
2. FXZQ 504
3. FXC (Q) - Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Double Flow) - 516
4. FXK (Q) - Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type - 524
5. FXD(Q) - Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct Type - 550
6. FXYD - Ceiling Mounted Low Silhouette Duct Type - 551

7. FXS(YQ) / FXYB - Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type -.....552
8. FXM(Q) 587
9. FXH(Q).....611
10. FXA (Q) 620
11. FXL (Q) / FXN (Q).....630
12. FXUQ 631

Part 4 Outdoor Units 637

1. Cool / Heat Selector.....638
2. Fixing Box 639
3. REFNET Header.....640
4. REFNET Joint 650
5. Outdoor Unit Multi Connection Piping Kit.....664
6. Pipe Size Reducer 692
7. Central Drain Pan Kit 694
8. Central Drain Plug.....699
9. Wire Fixture for Preventing Overturning.....700
10. Fixture for Preventing Overturning 702
11. Refrigerant Pipe Filter Kit 703
12. Digital Pressure Gauge 706
13. Strainer Kit 708

Part 5 Index.....711

Part 1
Introduction

1. Introduction 2
1.1 Control Systems 2
1.2 Indoor Units 6
1.3 Outdoor Units 10

1. Introduction

This Option Handbook includes the following accessories.

1.1 Control Systems

			Page	51	32	146	13	74	74	91	111	125	169	51	32	146	13	74	74	91	111	125	169	191	196	211	218
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		○	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE		–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE		–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	–
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○
		FXMQ-PVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE		–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE		○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
				BRC7F635F	BRC7E65	BRC7E531W	BRC7C67	BRC4C63	BRC4C64	BRC4C66	BRC7EA66	BRC7EA619	BRC7CA529W	BRC7F634F	BRC7E61W	BRC7E530W	BRC7C62	BRC4C61	BRC4C62	BRC4C65	BRC7EA63W	BRC7EA618	BRC7CA528W	BRC1C62	BRC1E61	BRC1D61	BRC2C51
				Remote Controller (Wireless Type) C/O										Remote Controller (Wireless Type) H/P										Remote Controller (Wired Type)	Navigation Remote Controller (Wired Type)	Wired Remote Controller with Weekly Schedule Timer	Simplified Remote Controller

			Page	222	229	229	229	229	227	231	233	235	235	235	242	242	242	242	248	248	250	258	254	260	261	260	263	267	265	269
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE		–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)		○	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE		–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE		–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE		○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○		–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–
		FXMQ-PVE		○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)		○	–	○	–	–	–	–		○	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–		○	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
				BRC3A61	KRP1BA54	KRP1B56	KRP1BA57	KRP1BA59	KRP1B61	KRP1C63	KRP1C64	KRP2A53	KRP2A61	KRP2A62	KRP4AA51	KRP4AA52	KRP4AA53	KRP4A54	KRCS01-1B	KRCS01-4B	KRP1H98	KRP1DA98	KRP1BA101	KRP1B96	KRP1B100	KRP4A91	KRP4A96	KRP1CA93	KRP4AA93	KRP1BA97
				Remote Controller for Hotel Use	Adaptor for Wiring							Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (1)			Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (2)				Remote Sensor (For Indoor Temperature)		Installation box for adaptor PCB									

			Page	271	271	271	279	283	295	326	326	326	328	335	338	346	349	353	357	360	361	–	374	375
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE		–	–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)		○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE		–	–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1		–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE		–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE		–	–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
		FXMQ-PVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)		○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE		–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE		–	–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE		–	–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○
			DTA104A53																					
	External Control Adaptor for Outdoor Unit		DTA104A61																					
			DTA104A62																					
	Adaptor for Multi Tenant		DTA114A61																					
	Residential Central Remote Controller		DCS303A51																					
	Central Remote Controller		DCS302CA61																					
	Electrical Box with Earth Terminal		KJB212AA																					
			KJB311AA																					
			KJB411A																					
	Unified ON/OFF Controller		DCS301BA61																					
	Noise Filter (For Electromagnetic Interface Use only)		KEK26-1A																					
	Schedule Timer		DST301BA61																					
	Interface Adaptor for SkyAir Series		DTA102A52																					
	Central control adaptor kit		DTA107A55																					
	Wiring Adaptor for Other Air-Conditioner		DTA103A51																					
	DIII-NET Expander Adaptor		DTA109A51																					
	Mounting Plate for DIII-NET Expander Adaptor		KRP4A92																					
	intelligent Touch Controller		DCS601C51																					
			DCS601A52																					
			DCS002C51																					
			DCS004A51																					

Page							377	377	–	–	–	384	387	390	393	399	402	405	412	422	426	429
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
		FXMQ-PVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
			DAM602B51	intelligent Manager III								Optional DIII Ai Unit										
			DAM602B52									DAM101A51										
			DAM002A51									DEC101A51										
			DAM004A51									DEC102A51										
			DAM003A51									DMS502B51										
												DAM411B51										
												DAM412B51										
												DMS504B51										
												DPF201A51										
												DPF201A52										
												DPF201A53										
												DCS302A52										

1.2 Indoor Units

			Page	436	441	504	516	524	551	552	631	556	556	556	556	445	449	507	632	452	452	510	528	455	455	460	460	464	467	513	470
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE		–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE		–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	○	–	○
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		FXMQ-PVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE		–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE		○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○
				BYCP125K-W1	BYCP125D-W1	BYFQ60B8W1	BYBC32-125G-W1	BYK45/71FJW1	KDGF19A45/71	BYBS32-125DJW1	KDBTJ49FA80/140	KTBJ25K36W	KTB25KA56-160W	KTBJ25K36-160F	KTBJ25K36-160T	KDBH55K160F	KDBH55D160W	KDBH44BA60	KDBH49FA80-140	KDBP55H160FA	KDBP55H160WA	KDBQ44BA60A	KPBJ52F56/80W	KDDP55B160	KDDP55B160K	KDD55DA160	KDD55DA160K	KDDP55X160	KDDJ55XA160	KDDQ44XA60	KKSJ55KA160
			Decoration panel									Service access panel				Sealing material of air discharge outlet				Panel spacer				Fresh air intake kit (Chamber type)				Fresh air intake kit (Direct installation type)		Chamber connection kit	

				Page	471	473	550	559	570	475	475	478	478	519	519	575	575	575	575	587	587	588	588	588	588	481	481	482	485	522	576	576	590	596	593
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○*2	○*2	○*1	○*1	–	–	–	–	–	○*2	○*1	–	○*1
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1			–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE			–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)			–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE			–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		FXMQ-PVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)			–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE			○	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
			Insulation kit for high humidity	KDTP55K80/160																														
				KDT-55DA80/160																														
				KDT25N32-63																														
			Natural evaporating pan type humidifier	KNM25K32-125V1																														
			Auxiliary electric heater	KEA25K32-125VE																														
			High-efficiency filter	KAFP556B80/160																														
				KAFP557B80/160																														
				KAF556DA80/160																														
				KAF557DA80/160																														
				KAFJ532G36-160																														
				KAFJ533G36-160																														
				KAFJ252L36																														
				KAFJ253L36																														
				KAF252LA56-160																														
				KAF253LA56-160																														
				KAF372AA36-160																														
				KAF373AA36-160																														
				KAFJ372L280																														
				KAFJ373L280																														
				KAFP372A80/160																														
				KAFP373A80/160																														
			Replacement high-efficiency filter	KAFP552B80/160																														
				KAFP553B80/160																														
			Filter chamber (For bottom suction)	KDDFP555B160																														
				KDDF55DA160																														
				KDDFJ53G36-160																														
				KAJ25L36D																														
				KAJ25LA56-160D																														
				KDDF37AA36-160																														
				KDJ3705L280																														
				KDDFP37A80/160																														

*1. FXM40-125LVE

*2. FXM200/250LVE

				Page	577	577	488	489	515	523	533	581	598	599	599	611	630	634	600	490	493	496	497	498	501	534	541	542	582	582
VRVII		Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Floor Standing	FXA-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○*2	○*1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE		○	○	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		–	–	–	–	○	○
		Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	–	–
VRVIII		Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○
		Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
			FXMQ-PVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	–
		Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE		–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE		–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	–	–
		Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE		–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
					KAJ25L36B	KAJ25LA56-160B	KAFP551K160	KAF551CA160	KAFQ441BA60	KAFJ531G36-160	KAFJ521F56/80	KAFJ251K36-160	KAF371AA36-160	KAFJ371L280	KAFP371A80/160	KAF501DA56-112	KAFJ361K28-71	KAF495FA140	KAF375AA36-160	KAFP55B160	KAF55DA160	KAFP55H160H	KAF55KA160H	KDJP55B80/160	KDP55DA80/160	KDBJ52F56/80W	K-HV7/9AW	KFDJ52FA56/80	KSA-25K36	KSA-25KA56-160
				Filter chamber (For rear suction)																										
				Replacement long life filter																										
				Replacement long life filter chamber kit																										
				Ultra long life filter																										
				Replacement ultra long life filter																										
				Branch duct chamber																										
				Air discharge blind panel																										
				Air discharge grill																										
				Flexible duct (with shutter)																										
				Air suction canvas																										

*1. FXM40-125LVE
*2. FXM200/250LVE

Page					583	583	584	585	603	606	612	617	620	618	619	634	635	–
VRVII	Concealed Floor Standing	FXL-LVE FXN-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Floor Standing	FXA-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–		○	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXH-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXM-LVE			–	–	–	–	○*2	○*1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in with Rear Suction	FXYB-KV1			–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXS-LVE			○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct <Low Silhouette>	FXYD-KAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXD-PVE(T) FXD-MVE(T)			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXK-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXC-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Muti Flow>	FXF-LVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
VRVIII	Ceiling Concealed (Duct)	FXDYQ-M(A)			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○
	Ceiling Mounted Built–in	FXSYQ-M			○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended Cassette	FXUQ-MAV1			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○	–
	Floor Standing / Concealed Floor Standing	FXLQ-MAVE FXNQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Wall Mounted	FXAQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Suspended	FXHQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXMQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
		FXMQ-PVE			–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct	FXDQ-PBVE(T) FXDQ-NBVE(T)			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner	FXKQ-MAVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Double Flow>	FXCQ-MVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Compact Muti Flow>	FXZQ-MVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Ceiling Mounted Cassette <Round Flow>	FXFQ-PVE			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
			Screening door	KBBJ25K36														
				KBBJ25KA56-160														
			Air suction flange	KDJ2507K36-160														
			Air discharge adaptor	KDAJ25K36-140A														
			Drain pump kit	KDU30L250VE														
				KDU-30L125VE														
				KDU50N60/125VE														
				KDU50B50-125VE														
				K-KDU572EVE														
			L-type piping kit (for upward direction)	KHFP5MA63/160														
				KHF-J5F50-160														
			L connection piping kit	KHFP49MA140														
			Vertical flap kit	KDGJ49FA80/140														
			Run/fault status PCB	KRP1B5X														

*1. FXM40-125LVE
*2. FXM200/250LVE

1.3 Outdoor Units

		VRVIII					VRVII				Page
		RXYQ-P(A)	RXQ-PA	REYQ-P	RWEYQ-P	RXYMQ-P,M RXMQ-P	RXY-M	RX-M	RXYM-M	RXM-M	
Cool/Heat Selector	KRC19-26A	○	–	–	○	○	○	–	○	–	638
Fixing Box	KJB111A	○	–	–	○	○	○	–	○	–	639
RFENET Header	KHRJ26K11H/17H/18H/37H/40H	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○*1	○*1	640
	KHRP26M22H/33H/72H/73H	○	○	–	○	○*2	–	–	–	–	644
	KHRP25M33H/72H/73H	–	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	647
REFNET Joint	KHRJ26K11T/17T/18T/37T/40T/75T	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	○*3	○*3	650
	KHRP26A22T/33T/72T/73T	○	○	–	○	○*4	–	–	–	–	658
	KHRP25A22T/33T/72T/73T	–	–	○*5	○	–	–	–	–	–	661
Outdoor Unit Multi Connection Piping Kit	BHF22M90/135	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	664
	BHFP22P100/151	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	667
	BHFP26P90/136	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	673
	BHFP22MA56/84, BHFP26MA56/84	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	685
Pipe Size Reducer	KHRP26M73TP/73HP	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	692
	KHRJ26K40TP/40HP/75TP/76TP	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	693
Central Drain Pan Kit	KWC26B160(E)/280(E)/450(E)	–	–	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	694
	KWC25C450, KWC26C160(E)/280(E)/450(E)	○*6	○*7	○*8	–	–	–	–	–	–	696
Central Drain Plug	KKPJ5F180	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	699
Wire Fixture for Preventing Overturning	K-KYZP15C	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	700
Fixture for Preventing Overturning	KPT-60B160	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	○	○	702
Refrigerant Pipe Filter Kit	BHF26A450F	–	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	703
Digital Pressure Gauge	BHGP26A1(E)	○	○*9	○*9	–	–	–	–	–	–	706
Strainer Kit	BWU26A15/20	–	–	–	○*10	–	–	–	–	–	708

*1 KHRJ26K11H/18H
*2 KHRP26M22H/33H
*3 KHRJ26K11T/17T
*4 KHRP26A22T
*5 KHRP25A22T/33T
*6 KWC26C160(E)/280(E)/450(E)
*7 KWC26C160/280/450
*8 KWC25C450, KWC26C280/450
*9 BHGP26A1
*10Accessory exclusively for Y1 models.
Contained in the product package for TL and YL models.

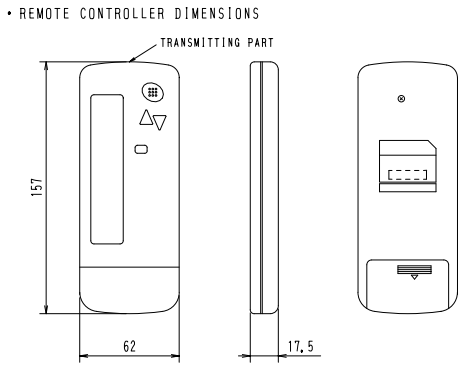
Part 2
Control Systems

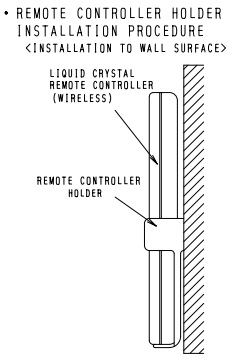
2

1. Remote Controller (Wireless Type) 13
   - 1.1 BRC7C62 / BRC7C67 (for FXC(Q)) 13
   - 1.2 BRC7E61W / BRC7E65 (for FXF) 32
   - 1.3 BRC7F634F / BRC7F635F (for FXFQ-P) 51
   - 1.4 BRC4C61 / BRC4C62 / BRC4C63 / BRC4C64 (for FXK(Q), FXD, FXDYQ, FXS, FXSYQ, FXM, FXMQ-M(A), FXL(Q), FXN(Q), FXYD, FXYB) 74
   - 1.5 BRC4C65 / BRC4C66 (for FXDQ and FXMQ-P) 91
   - 1.6 BRC7EA63W / BRC7EA66 (for FXH(Q)) 111
   - 1.7 BRC7EA618 / BRC7EA619 (for FXA(Q)) 125
   - 1.8 BRC7E530W / BRC7E531W (for FXZQ) 146
   - 1.9 BRC7CA528W / BRC7CA529W (for FXUQ) 169
2. Remote Controller (Wired Type) 191
   - 2.1 BRC1C62 191
3. Navigation Remote Controller (Wired Remote Controller) 196
   - 3.1 BRC1E61 196
4. Wired Remote Controller with Weekly Schedule Timer 211
   - 4.1 BRC1D61 211
5. Simplified Remote Controller 218
   - 5.1 BRC2C51 218
6. Remote Controller for Hotel Use 222
   - 6.1 BRC3A61 222
7. Adaptor for Wiring 227
   - 7.1 KRP1B61 227
   - 7.2 KRP1BA54 / KRP1B56 / KRP1BA57 / KRP1BA59 229
   - 7.3 KRP1C63 231
   - 7.4 KRP1C64 233
8. Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (1) (2) 235
   - 8.1 KRP2A61 / KRP2A62 / KRP2A53 235
   - 8.2 KRP4AA51 / KRP4AA52 / KRP4AA53 / KRP4A54 242
9. Remote Sensor (For Indoor Temperature) 248
   - 9.1 KRCS01-1B / KRCS01-4B 248
10. Installation Box for Adaptor PCB 250
   - 10.1 KRP1H98 250
   - 10.2 KRP1BA101 254
   - 10.3 KRP1DA98 258
   - 10.4 KRP1B96 / KRP4A91 260
   - 10.5 KRP1B100 261
   - 10.6 KRP4A96 263
   - 10.7 KRP4AA93 265
   - 10.8 KRP1CA93 267
   - 10.9 KRP1BA97 269
11. External Control Adaptor for Outdoor Unit 271
   - 11.1 DTA104A61 / DTA104A62 / DTA104A53 271

12.Adaptor for Multi Tenant.....279
12.1 DTA114A61.....279
13.Residential Central Remote Controller.....283
13.1 DCS303A51.....283
14.Central Remote Controller.....295
14.1 DCS302CA61.....295
15.Electrical Box with Earth Terminal.....326
15.1 KJB212AA / KJB311AA / KJB411AA.....326
16.Unified ON/OFF Controller.....328
16.1 DCS301BA61.....328
17.Noise Filter (For Electromagnetic Interface Use only).....335
17.1 KEK26-1A.....335
18.Schedule Timer.....338
18.1 DST301BA61.....338
19.Interface Adaptor for SkyAir Series.....346
19.1 DTA102A52.....346
20.Central Control Adaptor Kit.....349
20.1 DTA107A55.....349
21.Wiring Adaptor for Other Air-Conditioner.....353
21.1 DTA103A51.....353
22.DIII-NET Expander Adaptor.....357
22.1 DTA109A51.....357
22.2 KRP4A92.....360
23.intelligent Touch Controller.....361
23.1 DCS601C51.....361
23.2 DCS002C51 — Power Proportional Distribution Software.....374
23.3 DCS004A51 — Web Software.....375
24.intelligent Manager.....377
24.1 DAM602B51 / DAM602B52.....377
25.Optional DIII Ai Unit.....384
25.1 DAM101A51.....384
26.Di Unit.....387
26.1 DEC101A51.....387
27.Dio Unit.....390
27.1 DEC102A51.....390
28.Interface for use in BACnet®.....393
28.1 DMS502B51.....393
29.Optional DIII Board.....399
29.1 DAM411B51.....399
30.Optional Di Board.....402
30.1 DAM412B51.....402
31.Interface for use in LonWorks®.....405
31.1 DMS504B51.....405
32.Parallel Interface.....412
32.1 DPF201A51 — Basic Unit.....412
32.2 DPF201A52 — Temperature Measurement Units.....422
32.3 DPF201A53 — Temperature Setting Units.....426
33.Unification Adaptor for Computerized Control.....429
33.1 DCS302A52.....429

1. Remote Controller (Wireless Type)



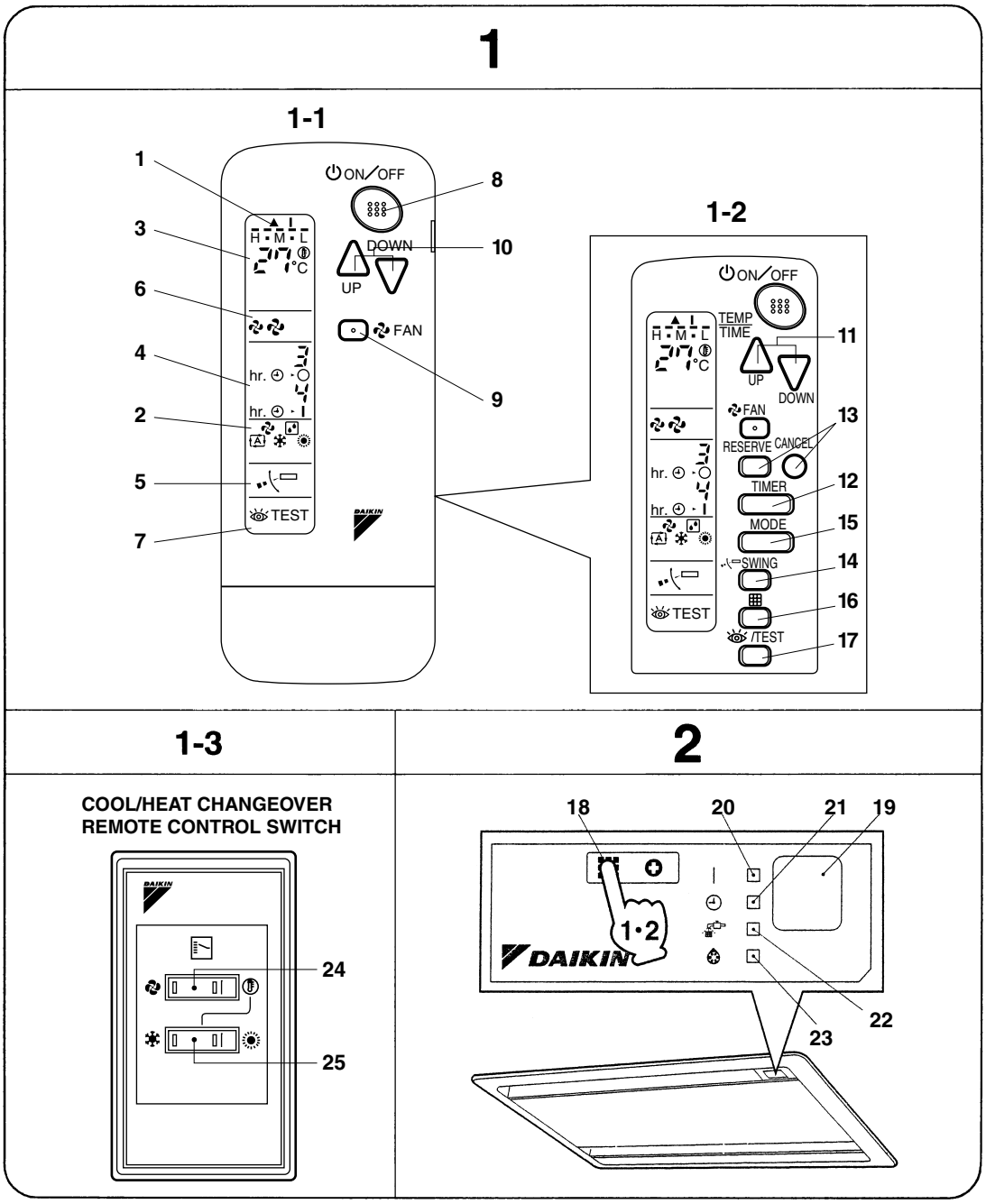


Unit: mm

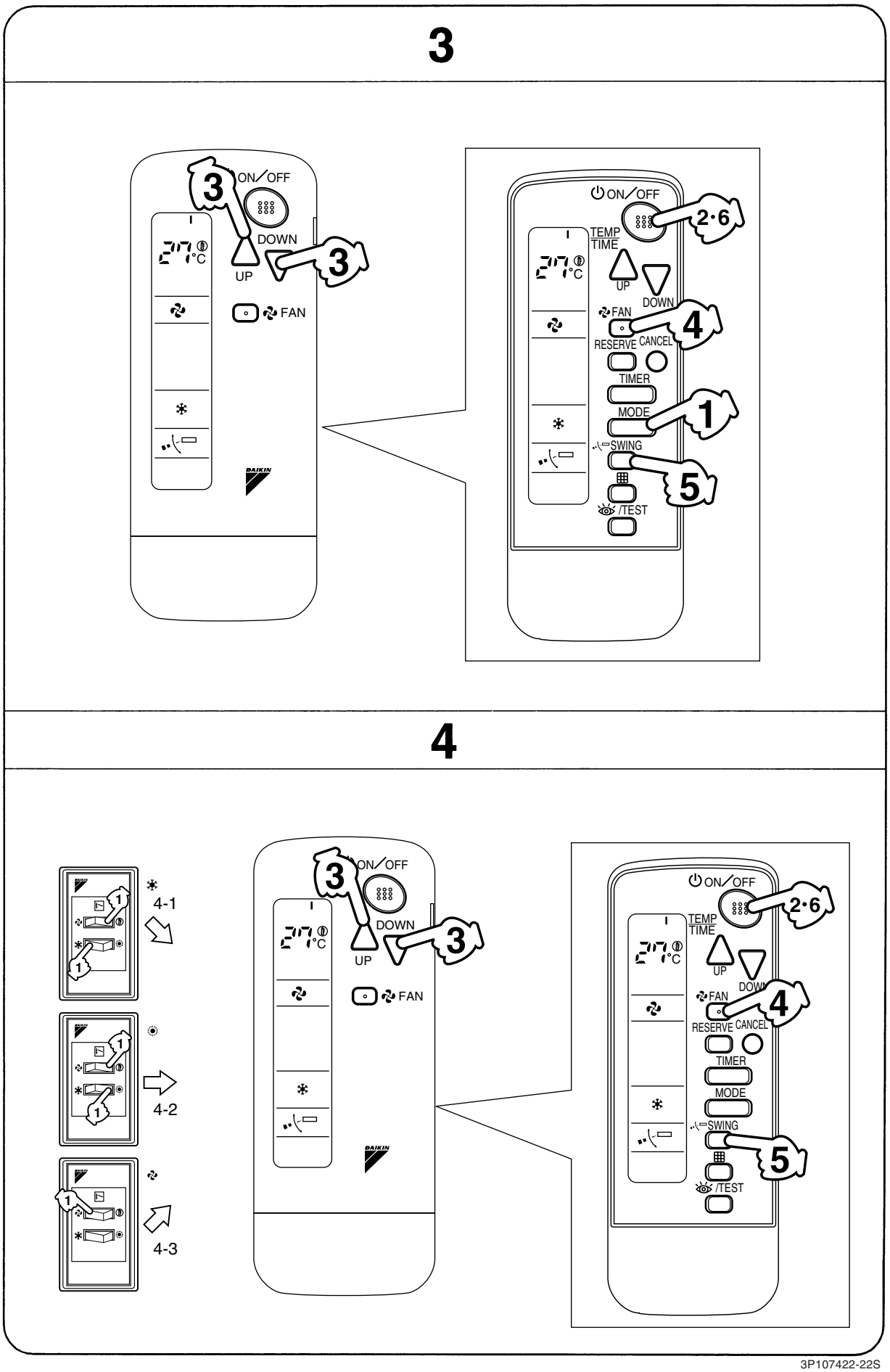
C: 3D007588A

1.1 BRC7C62 / BRC7C67 (for FXC(Q))

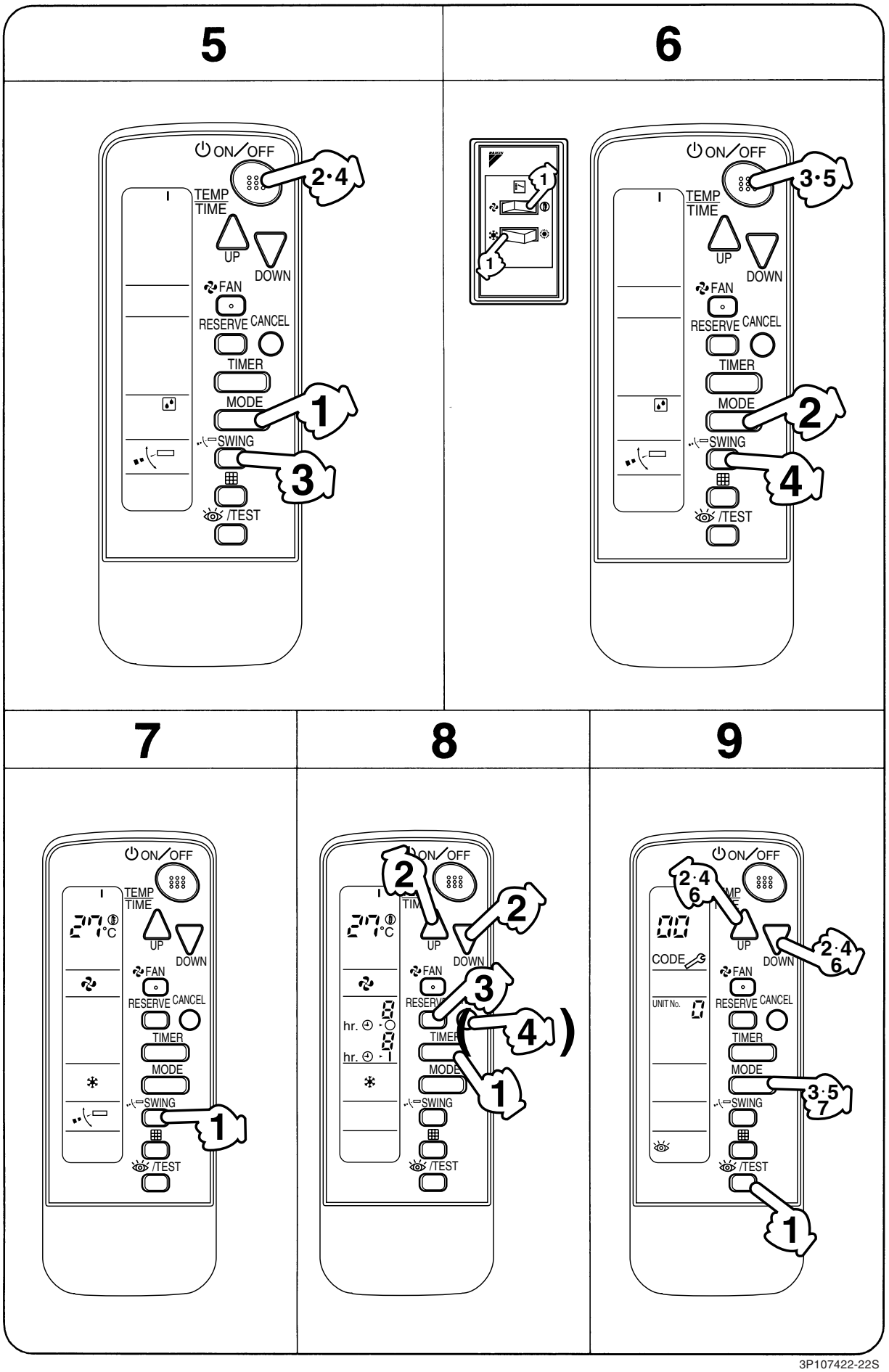
1.1.1 Operation



3P107422-22S



3P107422-22S



3P107422-22S

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 3.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 4.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For straight cooling type this lamp does not turn on.)

3P107422-22S

Note 1 : page 21, Note 2 : page 21, Note 3 : page 21, Note 4 : page 21

24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

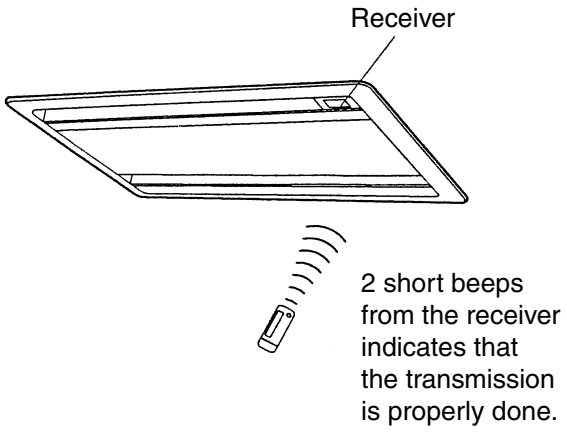
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

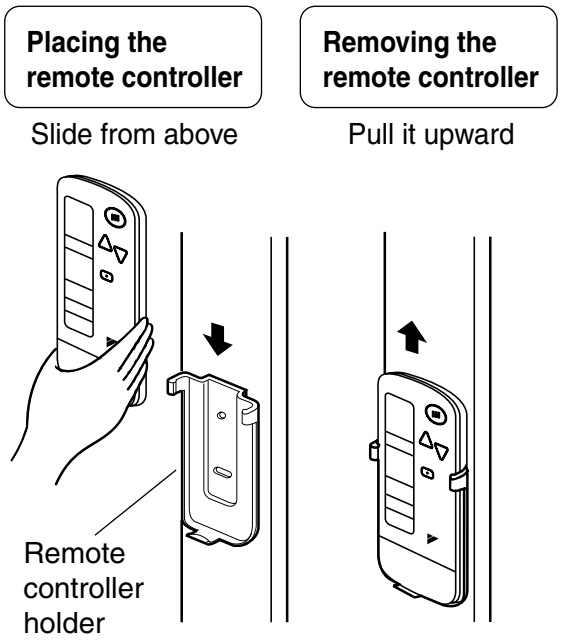
Do not drop or get it wet.
It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder
Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

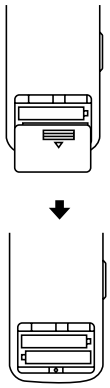


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put in batteries.
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries
Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]
- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time, take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM
If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION PROCEDURE

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat recovery system.
- Cooling only system give selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)⟩⟩

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
- HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " A "
- FAN OPERATION ..... " ✣ "

3P107422-22S

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION

In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

(2) Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

〈〈FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)〉〉

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

■ COOING OPERATION .....
Refer to fig. 4-1 (,)

■ HEATING OPERATION .....
Refer to fig. 4-2 (,)

■ FAN OPERATION .....
Refer to fig. 4-3 ( )

(2) Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

(3) Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.

UP — Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

DOWN — Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation

UP — Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

DOWN — Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

Note:

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

(4) Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

High or Low fan speed can be selected.

(5) Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION button.

Refer to “ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION” (Note) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

(6) Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.

Note : page 21

- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)⟩⟩

1 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select "💧" (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION).

2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

3 Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 9) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

4 Press ON/OFF button again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)⟩⟩

1 Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.

2 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY "💧".

3 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

4 Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (Note) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

5 Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

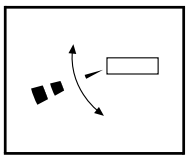
Note : page 21

3P107422-22S

ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION (Fig. 7)

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to adjust up/down air flow angle.

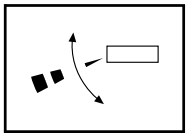
1 Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes and the desired air flow direction is fixed. (Fixed air flow setting)

- The movable limit of the blade is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation
	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

Operation mode includes automatic operation.

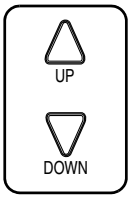
PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 8)

- The timer is operated by the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (🕘 ▸ ◯)
  ....The system stops operating after the time setting has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (🕘 ▸ |)
  .... The system starts operating after the time setting has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed for a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can simultaneously be programmed.

1 Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop.....“🕘 ▸ ◯”
For setting the timer start .....“🕘 ▸ | ”

2 Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

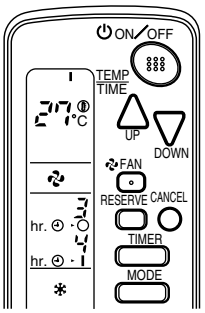
3 Press RESERVE button.

The timer setting procedure ends.
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from 1 to 3 once again.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

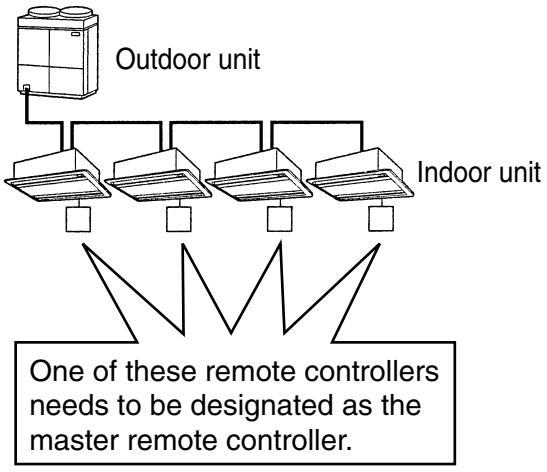
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. ( )

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

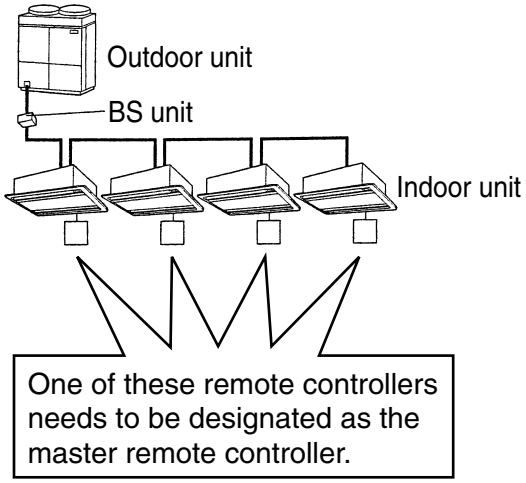
⟨⟨For Heat pump system⟩⟩

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



⟨⟨For Heat recovery system⟩⟩

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

3P107422-22S

How to designate the master remote controller

(1) Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing "⏲" of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

(2) Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing "⏲" vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

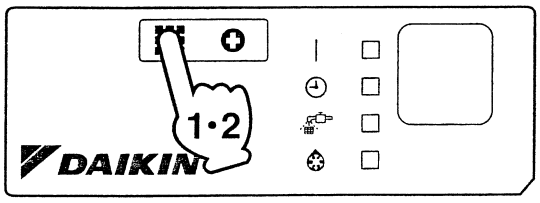
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

(1) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow rate.



[STOP]

(2) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controllers control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

3P107422-22S

5. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

6. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS (Fig. 9)

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

① Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

② Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .....Perform all steps from ③ to ⑥.
1 short beep .....Perform ③ and ⑥ steps.
1 long beep .....Normal state

③ Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

④ Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

⑤ Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

⑥ Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

⑦ Reset of the display.

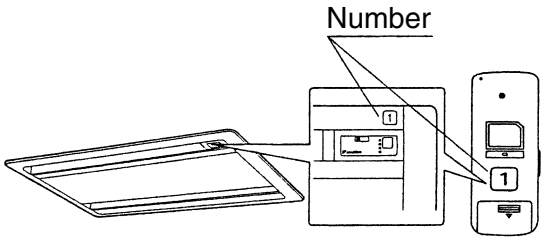
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

3P107422-22S

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

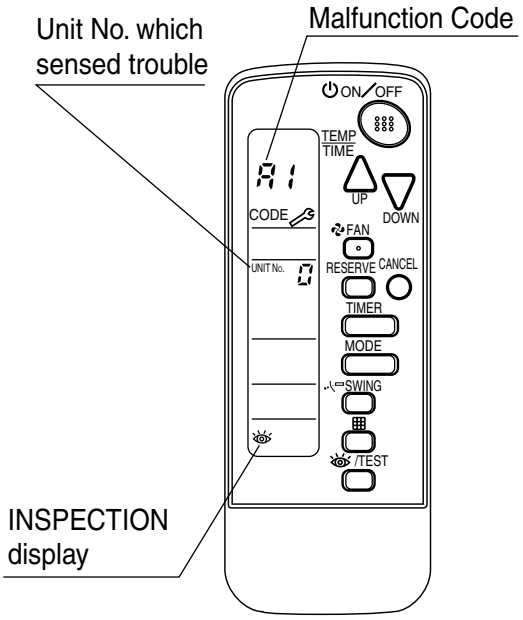
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See Note)



Disposal requirements
Batteries supplied with the remote controller are marked with this symbol.
This means that the batteries shall not be mixed with unsorted household waste.
If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol, this chemical symbol means that the battery contains a heavy metal above a certain concentration. Possible chemical symbols are:
■ Pb: lead (>0.004%)
Waste batteries must be treated at a specialized treatment facility for re-use.
By ensuring waste batteries are disposed of correctly, you will help to prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health.

Note : page 24

1.1.2 Installation

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly. After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.
Meaning of caution symbols

⚠ **CAUTION** ..... If the caution is not observed, it may cause injury or damage to equipment.
NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

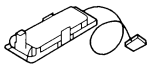
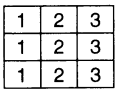
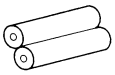
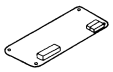
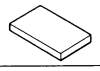
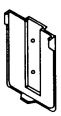
⚠ CAUTION

- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit and the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  * Ensure that noting interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
  * Ensure that the operaiton display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.
- The installation position of this kit is 1 position of the decoration panel. Therefore, confirm that its position is set so that the single form the wireless remote controller can be easily transmitted and its display can be easily seen.

BEFORE INSTALLATION

ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Receiver ass'y		1 set	Unit No. label		1 pc.	Plastic clamp		1 pc.
			Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)		2 pcs.	Plastic clamp installation screw	 M4 × 8	1 pc.
Wireless remote controller		1 pc.	Transmission PC board		1 pc.	Clamp		1 pc.
			Wire harness		1 pc.	Sealing pad		1 pc.
Remote controller holder		1 pc.	PCB support		4 pcs.	Operation manual		1 pc.
			Screw for installing remote controller holder	 φ3.5 × 16ℓ	2 pcs.			

NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

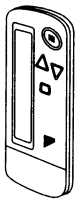
3PA59585-16N-1

REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

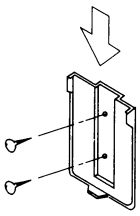
〈Installing wireless remote controller〉

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moistture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

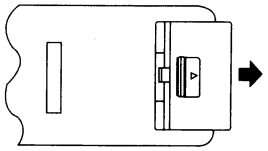
- **Installing to a wall or a pillar**
  Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.



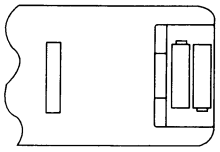
Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.



- **How to insert the batteries**
  ① Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



  ② Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (—) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

Install this kit after electric wiring the indoor unit.

① Remove the suction grille, air filter, partition plate and decorative side panel (right-hand). referring to the installation manual provided with the indoor unit.

② Remove the steel wire and electric parts box lid, referring to the installation manual provided with the indoor unit.

(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller. (This is needed too for individual remote control in the group control mode, for the group control mode, see the installation manual provided with the indoor unit.) If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

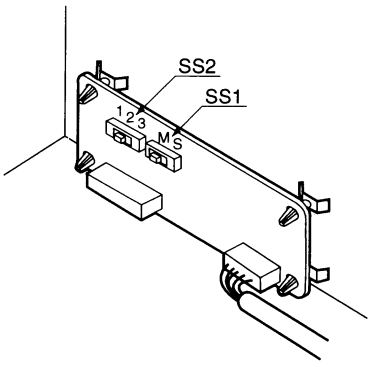
① **Setting the receiver**

Referring to the table below, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmission PC board.

Unit No.	No.1 (Factory setting)	No.2	No.3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.

	MAIN (Factory setting)	SUB
MAIN/ SUB switch (SS1)		



3PA59585-16N-2

② Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

① Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right).

② Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b" .

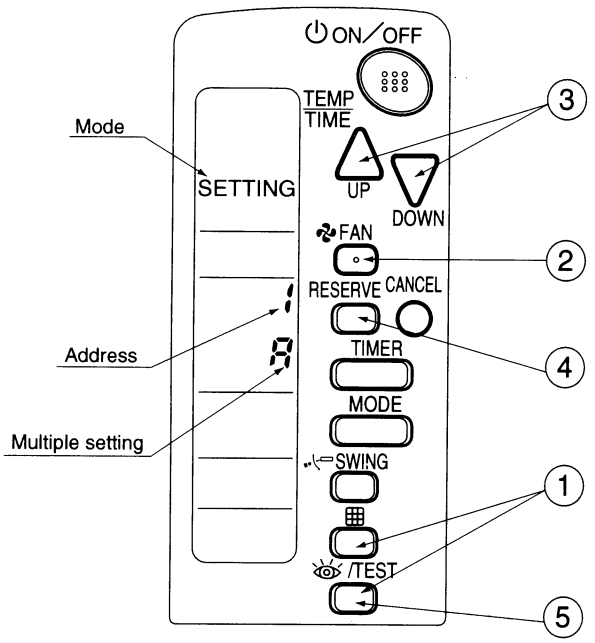
③ Press the "△ UP" button and "▽ DOWN" button to set the address.

→ 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6 →

Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)

④ Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

⑤ Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.

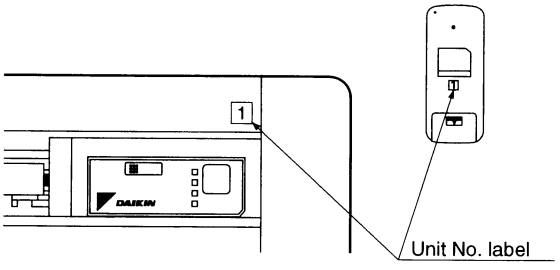


〈 Multiple settings A/b 〉

When the indoor is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	

③ Stick the Unit No. label at decoration panel air discharge outlet as well as on the back of the wireless remote controller.



PRECAUTIONS

Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

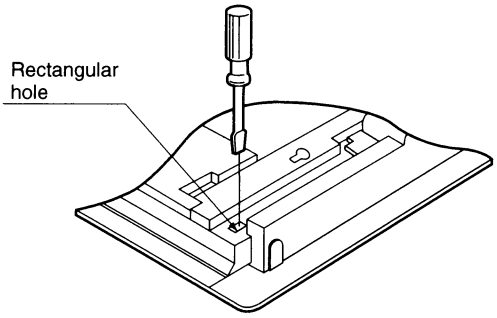
3PA59585-16N-3

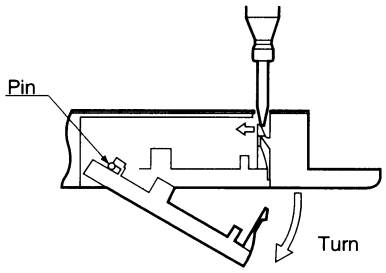
(3) Setting up the wireless display cover and the transmission PC board

(3-1) Remove the nameplate stand (part of the DAIKIN mark of decoration panel)

① Insert a screwdriver in the rectangular hole in the rear of the decoration panel and release the latch.

② To remove the nameplate stand, face downward and turn.





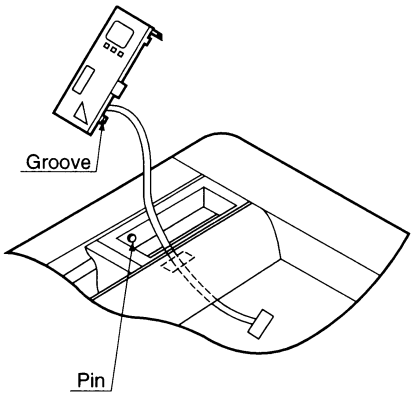
(3-2) Install the receiver ass'y

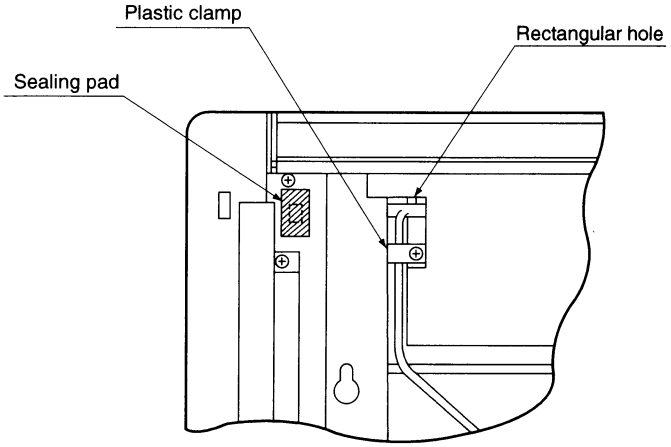
① Pass the receiver ass'y harness through the rectangular hole (long) in the recessed portion where the nameplate stand had been installed.

② Hook the groove of the receiver ass'y on the pins on both sides of the recessed portion, and install by turning.

③ Fasten the harness passed through the rectangular hole to the rear surface of the decoration panel with the plastic clamp.

④ Block the hole in which the screwdriver was inserted in step (1) with a sealing pad.



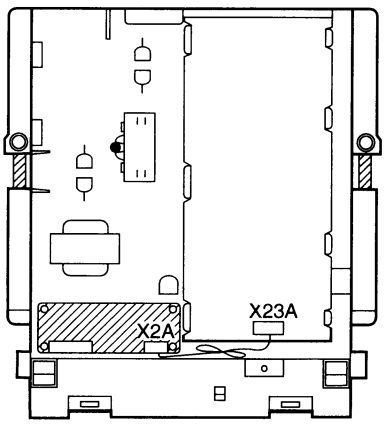


(3-3) Install the transmission PC board on the indoor unit's electric parts box.

① Pull open the electric parts box.

② Using the PCB support, install the transmission PC board at the position shown in the figure on the right.

③ Connect the connector (X2A) on the transmission PC board to the connector (X23A) on the indoor unit's PC board with the wire harness.
(Clamp the excess harness with a clamp.)



(4) SETTING UP THE INDOOR UNIT BODY AND DECORATION PANEL

- According to installation manual provided with the indoor unit, install the indoor unit and decoration panel.

3PA59585-16N-4

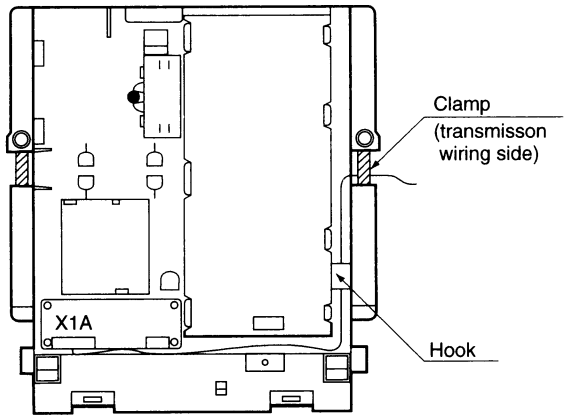
(5) Wiring to indoor unit

- Connect the receiver ass'y's harness to the transmission PC board.

① Loosen the clamp on the side of the electric patrs box (transmission wiring side), and pass the harness from the receiver ass y.

② Pass the harness through the hook so it doesn't pass over the top of the PC board. and connect it to the connector (X1A) on the transmission PC board.

③ Take up the slack in the harness inside the electric parts box, and once again clamp it with the clamp on the side of the electric parts box.



(6) SETTING UP THE SUCTION GRILLE

- According to installation manual provided with the decoration panel, install the suction grile.

FIELD SETTING

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.)

Procedure

① When in the normal mode, push the " /TEST " button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

② Select the desired MODE NO. with the "MODE" button.

③ Push the " UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.

④ Push the " DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.

⑤ Push the "RESERVE" button and the present settings are SET.

⑥ Push the " /TEST " button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example) If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy ", set Mode No. to "10 ", FIRST CODE NO. to "0 ", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02 "

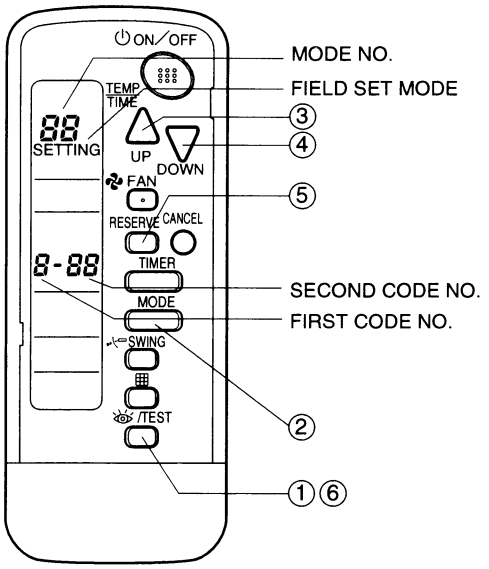
MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING		SECOND CODE NO. NOTES) 1.				
				01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Long Life Filter	Light	Approx. 2,500 hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 1,250 hrs	—
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do not display		—
12	1	ON/OFF input from Outside (Setting for when forced ON/OFF is to be operated from outside.)		Forced Off		ON/OFF Operation		—
	2	Thermostat Differential Changeover (Setting for when using the remote sensor)		1℃		0.5℃		—
13	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting		Normal		Normal		Lower

NOTES)

1. The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to "01 " . However, for the following cases it is set to "02 " .
   - Air Flow Direction Range Setting

3PA59585-16N-5

2. Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
3. For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the in door unit for group control.)



TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

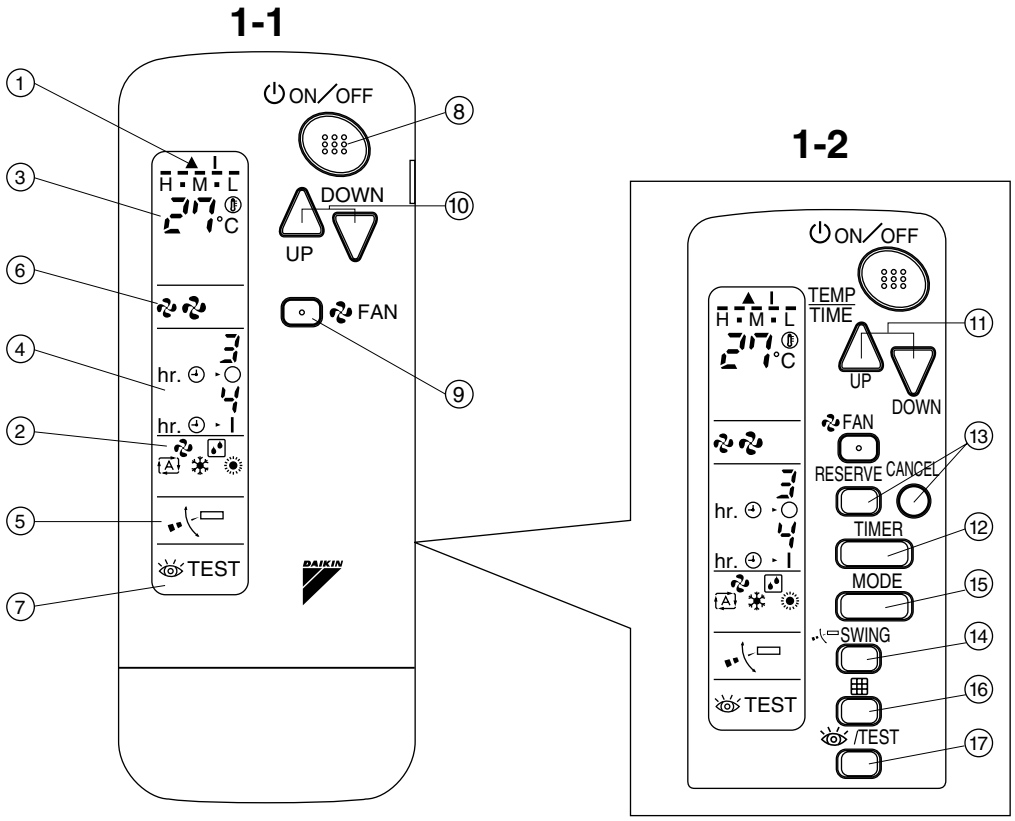
〈PRECAUTIONS〉
Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit it if does not operate.

Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours.
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

3PA59585-16N-6

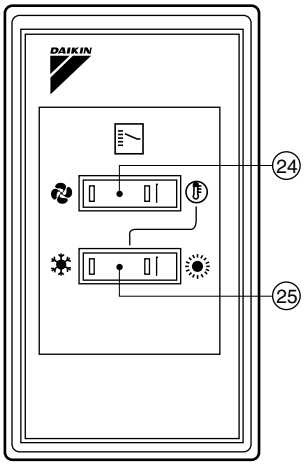
1.2 BRC7E61W / BRC7E65 (for FXF)

1.2.1 Operation

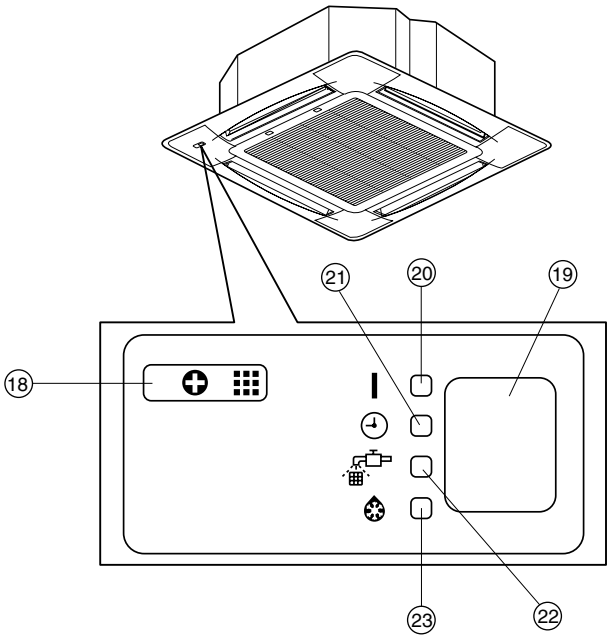


1

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



1-3



2

3PA63363-24W-0

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Read the following cautions carefully and use your equipment properly.
There are three kinds of safety cautions and tips listed here as follows:

⚠ **WARNING** ..... Improper handling can lead to such serious consequences as death or severe injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** ..... Improper handling can lead to injury or damage. It could also have serious consequences under certain conditions.

NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

Be sure to follow these important safety cautions.
Keep these warning sheets handy so that you can refer to them if needed.
Also, if this equipment is transferred to a new user, make sure to hand over this user's manual to the new user.

⚠ WARNING

Do not expose yourself directly to the cool air currents too long nor allow the air in the room to become too cold.
Doing so may make you feel sick or damage your health.

If you detect any abnormality (such as the smell of fire), turn off the power and contact your dealer for instructions.
If you keep using the air conditioner under these conditions, it will eventually break down, and could cause electric shocks or catch fire.

Ask your dealer to install your equipment.
Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

Ask your dealer to perform servicing or repairs whenever necessary.
Improper servicing or repairs could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

Do not stick your fingers or any other objects into the air inlet, air outlet or air direction vanes during operation.
The high-speed fan is dangerous and could cause injury.

Ask your dealer to remove and reinstall your equipment whenever necessary.
Improper installation could cause water leakage, electric shocks or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than air conditioning.
Do not use the air conditioner for special purposes such as preserving or protecting food, animals, plants, precision machinery or works of art, since the quality of such items could be adversely affected.

When using the air conditioner with other heating equipment, ventilate the room from time to time.
Inadequate ventilation could cause an oxygen shortage.

Do not expose your pets or plants to the air current.
They may be adversely affected.

Do not operate the air conditioner with a wet hand.
Otherwise, you could receive an electric shock.

Do not place any burning appliance in the air current from the air conditioner, since such appliance may suffer incomplete combustion.

Never place nor use any inflammable sprays near the air conditioner, since such sprays could cause a fire.

3PA63363-24W-1

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For cooling only type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 1.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 1.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.

3PA63363-24W-2

Note 1 : page 39, Note 2 : page 40

20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For cooling only type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

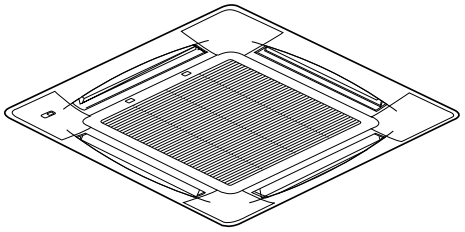
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.
- The Defrost Lamp will flash when the power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

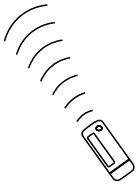
3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.





2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

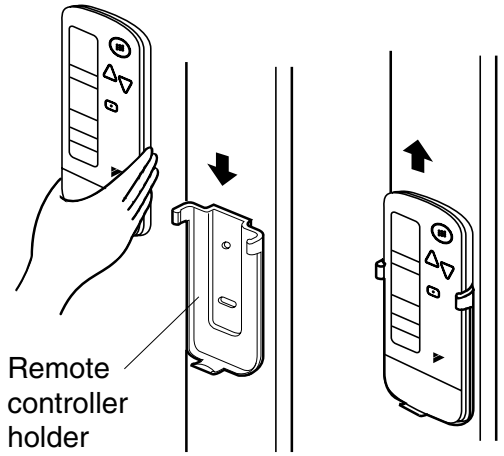
- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

3PA63363-24W-3

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

Placing the remote controller	Removing the remote controller
Slide from above	Pull it upward

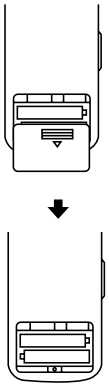


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two LR03<IEC> dry cell batteries. Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting. In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION RANGE

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
	TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY		
RZP71 DV1/VAL RZP100 DV1/VAL RZP125 DV1/TAL RZP140 DTAL	DB	21 to 35	80% or below	DB	– 5 to 50
	WB	14 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
RZP71 DV1/VAL RZP100 DV1/VAL RZP125 DV1/TAL RZP140 DTAL	DB	15 to 27	DB	– 14 to 21
			WB	– 15 to 15.5

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

3PA63363-24W-4

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

VRV System
See the operation manual provided with the air conditioner.

5. OPERATION PROCEDURE

Refer to figure 1 (Note 1)

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat pump split system or Heat recovery VRV system.
- For cooling only type, “COOLING”, and “FAN” and “DRY”operation are able to select.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1, 2 (Note 2)

1 MODE **OPERATION MODE SELECTOR**

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

■ COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ❄ ”
■ HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ☀ ”
■ AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... “ A ”
- In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.

■ FAN OPERATION..... “ ”
■ DRY OPERATION ..... “ ”
- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

2 ON/OFF **ON/OFF**

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1,3 (Note 3)

1 **OPERATION MODE SELECTOR**

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

■ COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ”
■ HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ”

3PA63363-24W-5

Note 1 : page 32, Note 2 : page 32, Note 3 : page 32

■ FAN OPERATION ..... “  ”

■ DRY OPERATION ..... “  ”

- See “FOR SYSTEM WITHOUT COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH” for details on dry operation.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select “ ”
(This operation is only available during dry operation.)

2 ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

TEMPERATURE SETTING

Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.

UP / DOWN

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation

UP / DOWN

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	▪	M	▪	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

NOTE

- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

3PA63363-24W-6

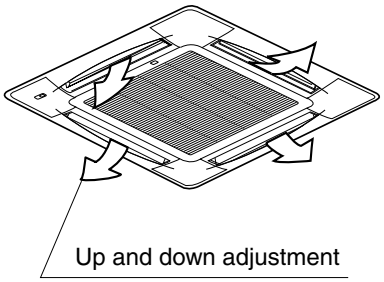
FAN SPEED CONTROL

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.
High or Low fan speed can be selected.
The microchip may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.

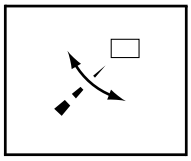
AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- The movable limit of the flap is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.



Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.

DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation (The flaps blow horizontally to avoid blowing cold air directly on the occupants of the room.)

NOTE

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.
- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

1 TIMER MODE START/STOP

Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.
The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop .... "◷ ▸ ○"
For setting the timer start .... "◷ ▸ |"

3PA63363-24W-7

2 UP DOWN PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.

UP

When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

DOWN

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

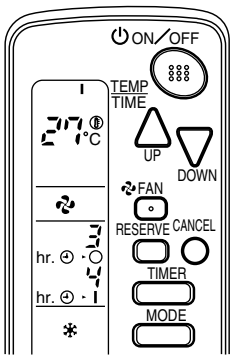
3 RESERVE TIMER RESERVE

Press the TIMER RESERVE button.
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 CANCEL TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

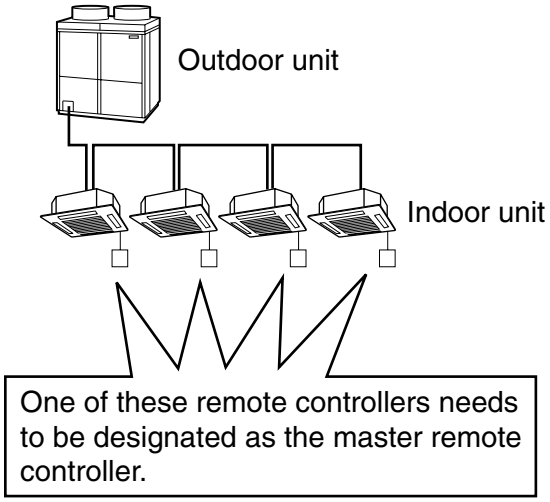
NOTE

- When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

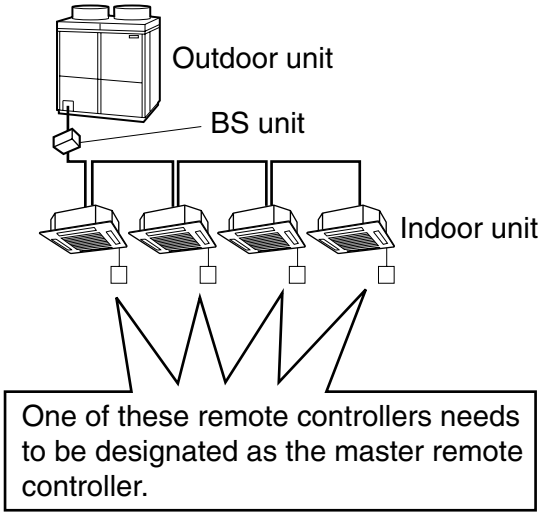
HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

■ For Heat pump system
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ For Heat recovery system
When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



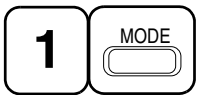
- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

3PA63363-24W-8

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

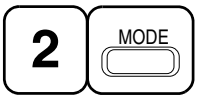
How to designate the master remote controller

Operate in the following order.



Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “ ◴ ” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.



Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “ ◴ ” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps 1 and 2.

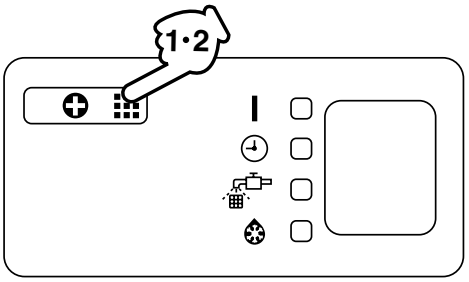
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

1 **To press the emergency operation switch.**

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



[STOP]

2 **Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.**

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

3PA63363-24W-9

NOTES
- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE
- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

6. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

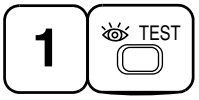
The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE
- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

7. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.



Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.



Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from [3] to [6].

1 short beep ..... Perform [3] and [6] steps
1 long beep..... Normal state

3PA63363-24W-10

3 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

4 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

5 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

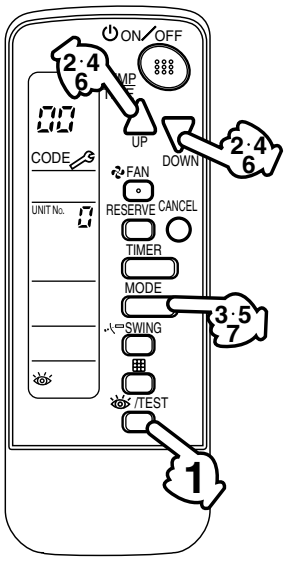
6 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 MODE **Reset of the display**

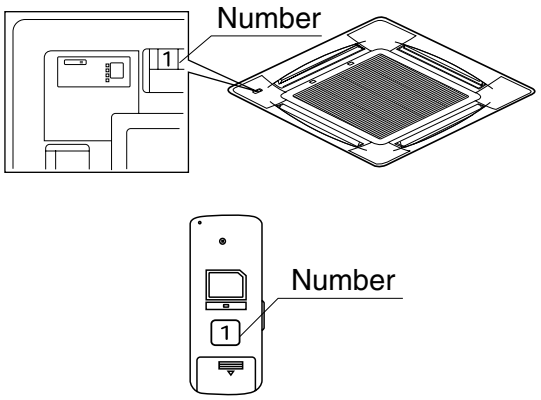
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.



II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as "1")

3PA63363-24W-11

2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

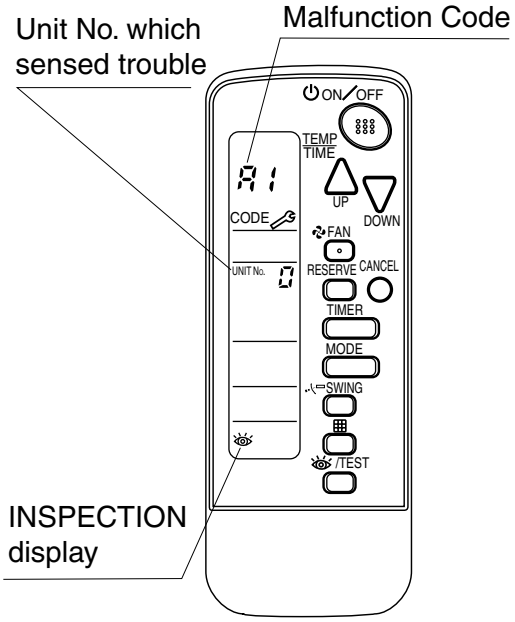
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase.

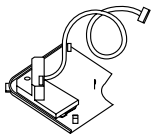
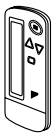
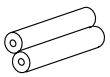
3PA63363-24W-12

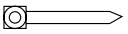
1.2.2 Installation

1. BEFORE INSTALLATION

1-1 ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver	Wireless remote controller	Remote controller holder	Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)	Unit No. label
Quantity	1 set.	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.
Shape					

Name	Screw for installing remote controller holder	Operation manual	Sealing pad	Binding band
Quantity	2 pcs.	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pc.
Shape			 20 × 35	

1-2 NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

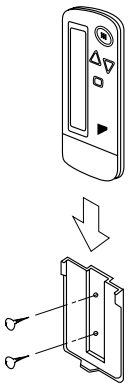
- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

2. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

〈**Installing wireless remote controller**〉

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

- **Installing to a wall or a pillar**
  Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

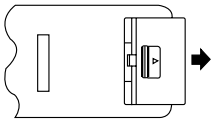


Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

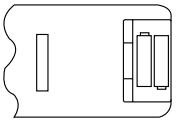
3P091240-3D

- **How to insert the batteries**

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



3. RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

Install this kit after installing the decoration panel.

1. Remove the suction grille and the air filter according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.

2. Remove the control box lid according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

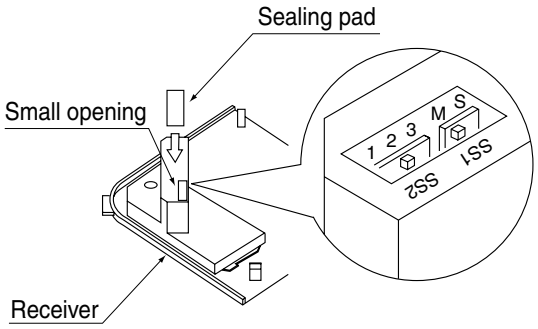
1. Setting the receiver

Through the small opening on the back of the receiver, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the printed circuit board according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)		



After completing setting, seal off the opening of the address switch and the MAIN/SUB switch with the attached sealing pad.

3P091240-3D

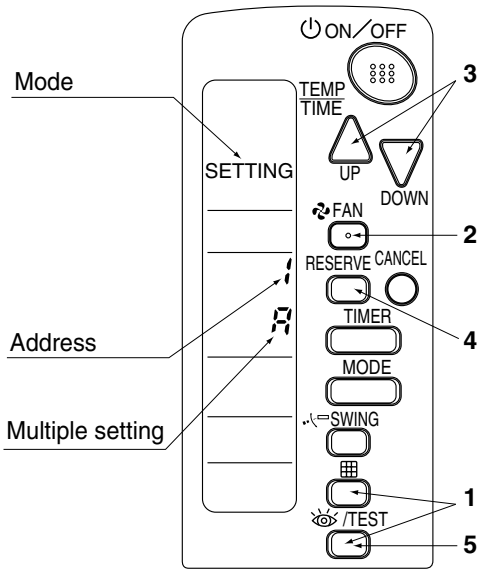
2. Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to " 1 ")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

1. Hold down the [⊞] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)
2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".
3. Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

   →1→2→3→4→5→6

   Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)
4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.
5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



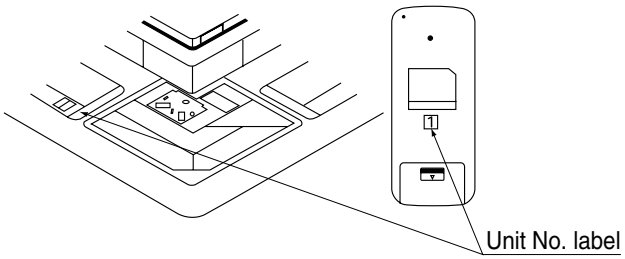
Multiple settings A/b

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Movement when the operation is controlled by the other air conditioners and equipment
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	
A: Standard	All items displayed.	When operation changeover, temperature setting or the like is carried out from the remote controller, the indoor unit rejects the instruction. (Signal receiving sound "peeh" or "pick-pick-pick") As a result, a discrepancy between the operation state of the indoor unit and the indication of the remote controller display occurs.
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	Since the indication of the remote controller is turned off, no discrepancy such as mentioned above occurs.

3. Stick the Unit No. label on the air outlet of the decoration panel and the back of the wireless remote controller.

[PRECAUTIONS]
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

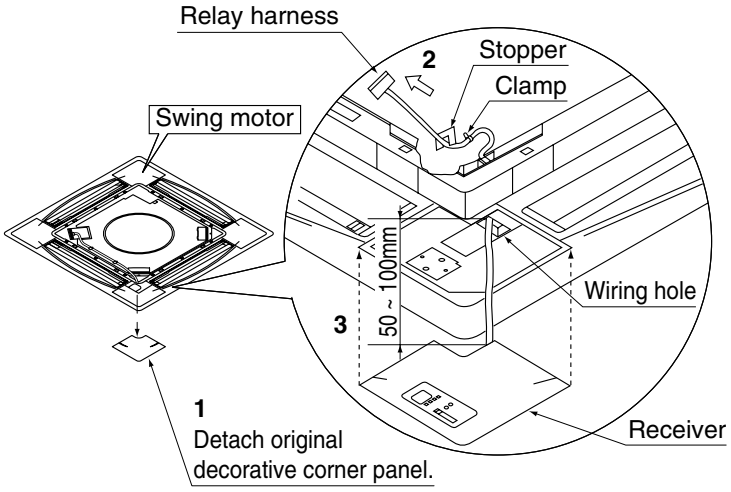


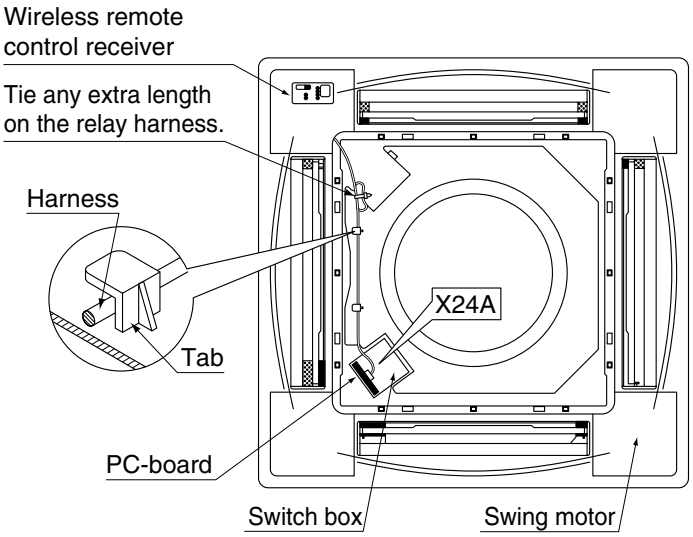
3P091240-3D

(3) Receiver installation

1. Detach the decorative corner panel diagonally opposite to swing motor. This corner panel piece is not needed hereafter.
   (For instructions on attaching/ detaching decorative panels, see the installation manual provided with the original panel.)

   The receiver cannot be installed anywhere but in this corner.
2. Pull the relay harness from the receiver up to where the clamp meets the stopper, as shown at right.
3. Install the receiver where the decorative corner panel before. Proceed in the opposite order in which you removed the corner panel.
4. Fit the relay harness under the tab as shown at right and connect it to connector X24A on the indoor unit PC board. Bundle the remaining harness with the included binding band so that it does not droop or get pinched in the suction grille.
   Use the included binding band to prevent the relay harness from sagging down and getting caught in the suction grill.
5. Attach the lid to the indoor unit's switch box and the suction grille to the decorative panel.



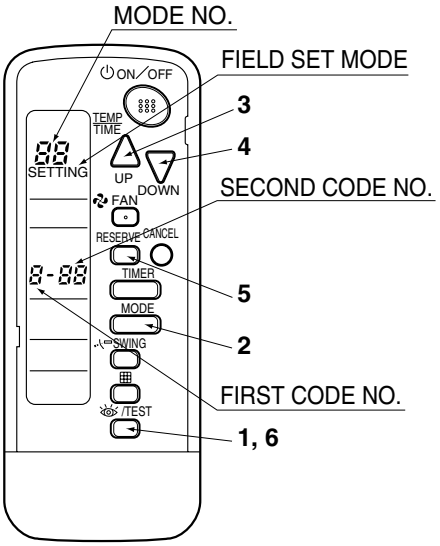


4. FIELD SETTING

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.

Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " ▲ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▼ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.



3P091240-3D

(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to “Filter Contamination-Heavy”, set Mode No. to “10”, FIRST CODE NO. to “0”, and SECOND CODE NO. to “02”.

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">MODE NO.</th><th rowspan="2">FIRST CODE NO.</th><th rowspan="2" colspan="2">DESCRIPTION OF SETTING</th><th colspan="5">SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">01</th><th colspan="2">02</th><th>03</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">10</td><td rowspan="3">0</td><td rowspan="3">Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)</td><td>Ultra-long-life type</td><td rowspan="3">light</td><td>approx. 10,000 hours</td><td rowspan="3">heavy</td><td>approx. 5,000 hours</td><td rowspan="3">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Long-life type</td><td>approx. 2,500 hours</td><td>approx. 1,250 hours</td></tr>
<tr><td>Standard type</td><td>approx. 200 hours</td><td>approx. 100 hours</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Long-life filter type (Setting of filter sign indication time)
(Change setting when Ultra-long-life filter is installed)</td><td colspan="2">Long-life filter</td><td colspan="2">Ultra-long-life filter (1)</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count
(Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)</td><td colspan="2">Display</td><td colspan="2">Do not display</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>11 (Split system)</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">Setting the number of connected simultaneous operation system indoor units.</td><td colspan="2">Pair</td><td colspan="2">Twin</td><td>Triple</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">12 (VRV system)</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)</td><td colspan="2">Forced OFF input</td><td colspan="2">ON/OFF</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)</td><td colspan="2">1°C</td><td colspan="2">0.5°C</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">13</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">High ceiling setting (Setting for when installed in a ceiling higher than 2.7 m)</td><td colspan="2">Normal</td><td colspan="2">High Ceiling 1</td><td>High Ceiling 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)</td><td colspan="2">F</td><td colspan="2">T</td><td>W</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Air Flow Direction Range Setting</td><td colspan="2">Upper</td><td colspan="2">Normal</td><td>-</td></tr>
</table>

NOTE
- The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to “01”. However, for the following cases it is set to “02”.
  - Air Flow Direction Range Setting

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

3P091240-3D

5. TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

[PRECAUTIONS]

1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

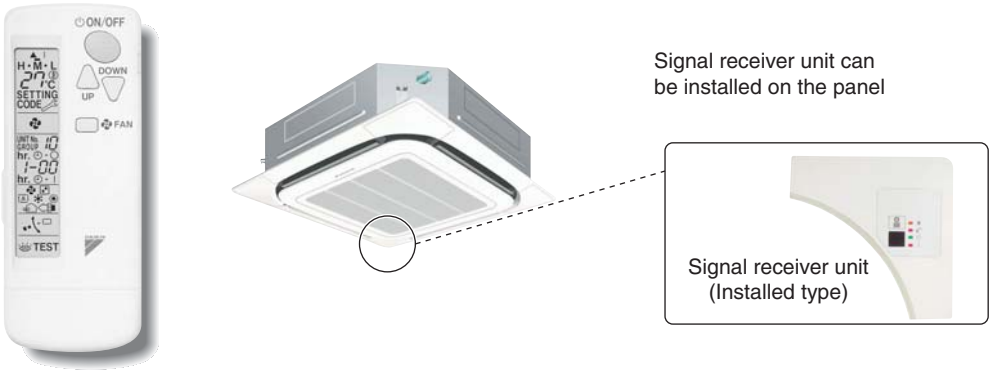
Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours. (Not necessary for cooling type units)
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

3P091240-3D

1.3 BRC7F634F / BRC7F635F (for FXFQ-P)

1.3.1 Features

BRC7F634F (for Heat Pump)
BRC7F635F (for Cooling Only)



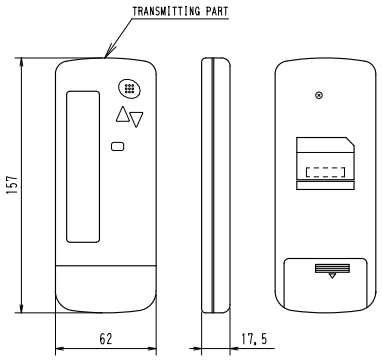
- The same operation modes and settings as with wired remote controllers are possible.
- A light receiver unit for a Ceiling Mounted Cassette (Round Flow) type is mounted into the indoor unit.
- This unit supports the three-speed airflow rate control (HH / H / L).

1.3.2 Function

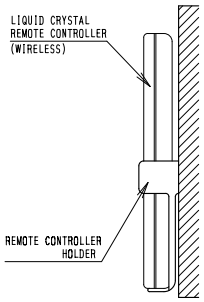
Model	BRC7F634F/635F
ON/OFF	Possible
Temp. setting	Possible
Air flow rate setting	Possible
Air flow direction setting	Possible
Timer setting	Possible
Mode setting	Possible
Filter sign reset	Possible
Inspection/Test operation	Possible

1.3.3 Dimensions

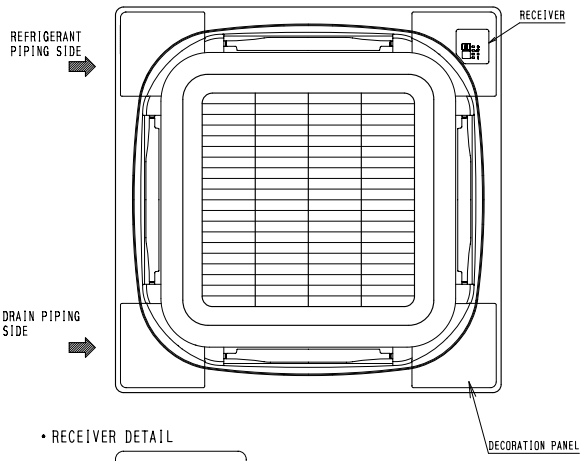
• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



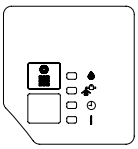
• REMOTE CONTROLLER HOLDER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE
< INSTALLATION TO WALL SURFACE >



• RECEIVER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



• RECEIVER DETAIL



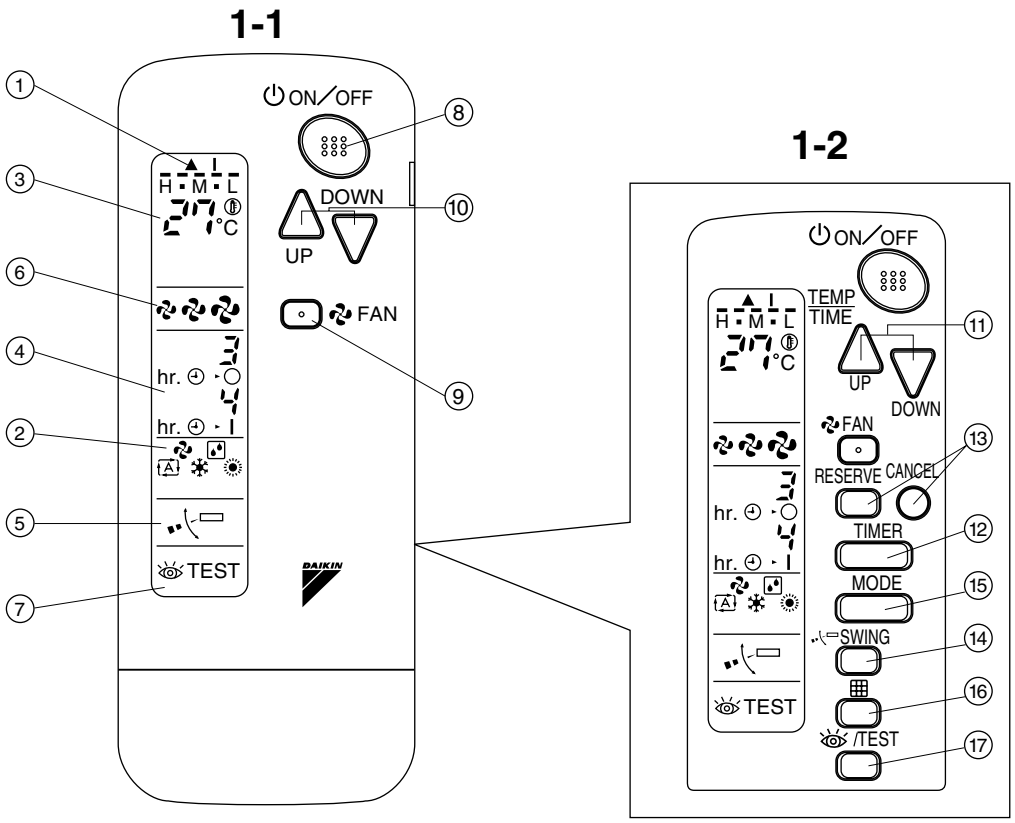
• WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT FOR EACH DECORATION PANEL

WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER KIT	DECORATION PANEL
BRC7F634F BRC7F635F	BYCP125K-W1

C: 3D052918C

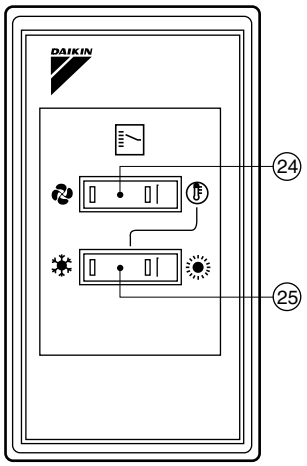
1.3.4 Operation Manual

■ **Names and Functions of the Operating Section**

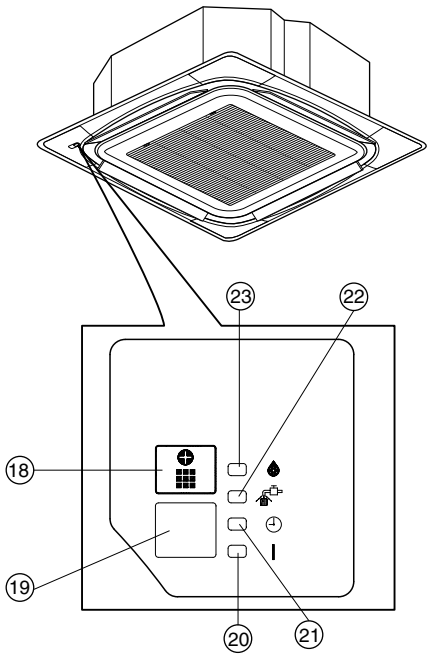


1

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



1-3



2

See Fig. 1, 2

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For cooling only type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " H M L 27 °C " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " hr. 3 hr. 4 " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to page 60.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HH, H, L of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to page 61.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to page 61.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to page 60.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For cooling only type this lamp does not turn on.)

24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

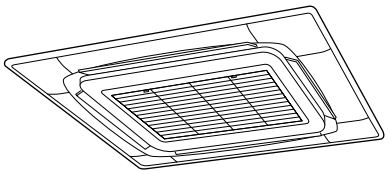
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.
- The Defrost Lamp will flash when the power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

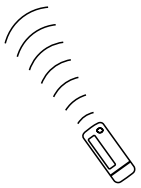
■ Handling for Wireless Remote Controller

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.





2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

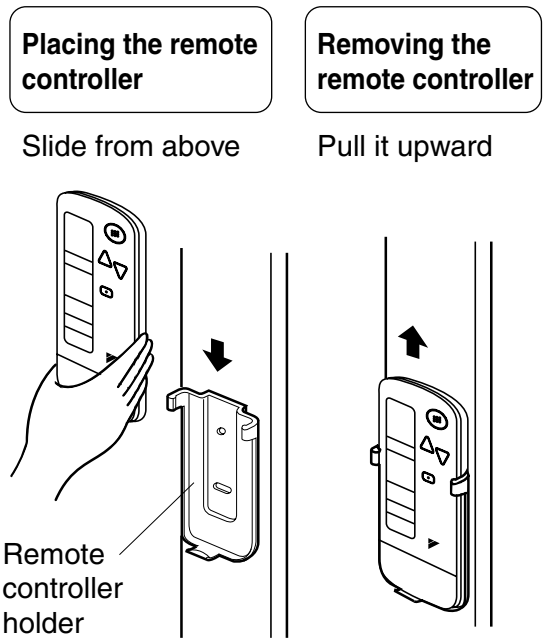
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

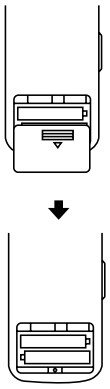
Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)



How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.
(2) Put the batteries
Use two LR03 <IEC> dry cell batteries.
Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).
(3) Close the cover



When to change batteries

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

■ Operation Range

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

INDOOR			OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY		
DB	21 to 35	80% or below	DB	– 5 to 50
WB	14 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
DB	15 to 27	DB	– 14 to 21
		WB	– 15 to 15.5

DB : Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

VRV System

See the operation manual provided with the air conditioner.

■ Operation Procedure

Refer to figure 1 on page 53

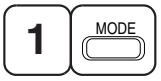
- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat pump split system or Heat recovery VRV system.
- For cooling only type, “COOLING”, and “FAN” and “DRY” operation are able to select.

(1) For Systems Without Cool / Heat Changeover Remote Control Switch
Refer to figure 1-1, 2 on page 53



OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION..... “ ❄ ”
- HEATING OPERATION..... “ ☀ ”
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... “ A ”
  - In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.
- FAN OPERATION ..... “ ”
- DRY OPERATION..... “ ”
  - The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
  - The set point is the air temperature when starting operation by dry operation.
  - Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
  - This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

2 ON/OFF

ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button.
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

(2) For Systems with Cool/Heat Changeover Remote Control Switch
Refer to figure 1-1,3 on page 53

1

OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION..... “  ”
- HEATING OPERATION..... “  ”
- FAN OPERATION ..... “  ”
- DRY OPERATION..... “  ”
  - See “FOR SYSTEM WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH” for details on dry operation.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select “ ”.
(This operation is only available during dry operation.)

2 ON/OFF

ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button.
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.
- The fan may keep on running for about 1 minute after the heating operation stops for removing the heat in the indoor unit.
- The air flow rate may be adjusted automatically depending on the room temperature or the fan may stop immediately. This is not a malfunction.

NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
- For general heating operation, it may take longer to reach the set temperature than in cooling operation. We recommend starting the operation which was used before using timer operation.

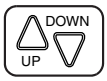
DEFROST OPERATION
- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on.
  After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

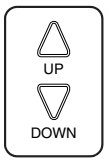
(3) Adjustment

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.



TEMPERATURE SETTING

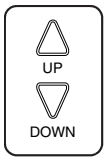
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

NOTE

- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

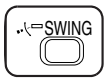


FAN SPEED CONTROL

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

Fan speed (HH, H, L) can be selected.

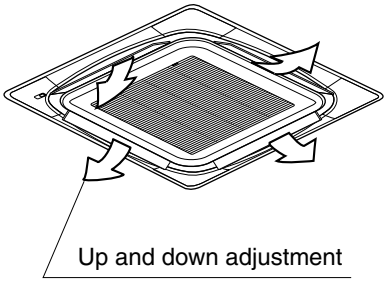
The microchip may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.



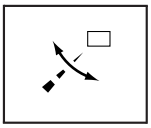
AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- The movable limit of the flap is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.



Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	● When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	● When room temperature is higher than the set temperature ● At defrost operation (The flaps blow horizontally to avoid blowing cold air directly on the occupants of the room.)

NOTES

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.
- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

(4) Program Timer Operation

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ◯)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.



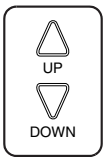
TIMER MODE START/STOP

Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.
The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop .... " ◷ ▸ ◯ "
For setting the timer start .... " ◷ ▸ | "



PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.



TIMER RESERVE

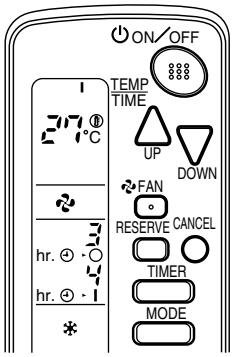
Press the TIMER RESERVE button.
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.



TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.
When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.



NOTES

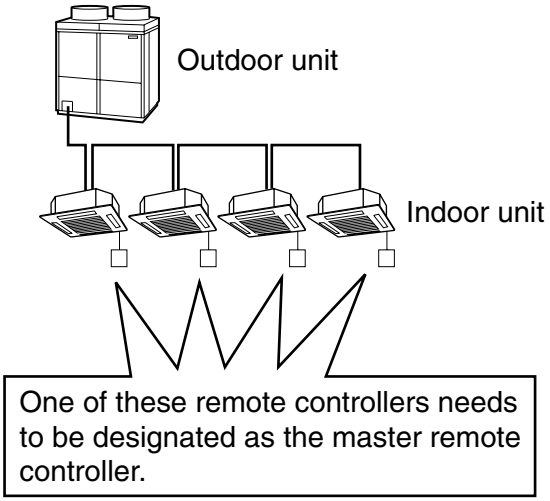
- When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

(5) How to Set Master Remote Controller (For VRV System)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

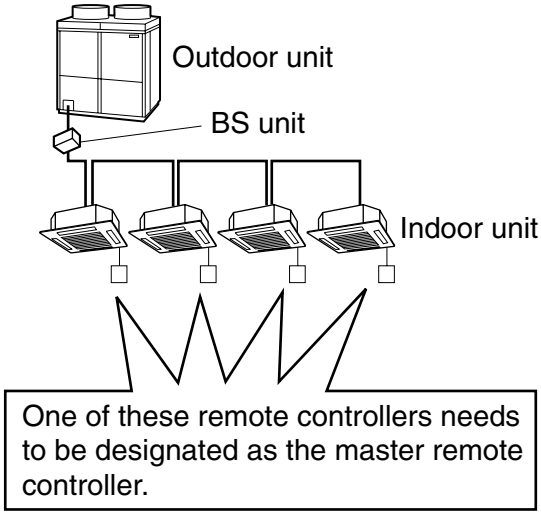
■ **For Heat pump system**

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ **For Heat recovery system**

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.
  When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
  When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
  When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
  When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
  Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

Operate in the following order.

1 MODE

Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing " ⏲ " of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

2 MODE

Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing " ⏲ " vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

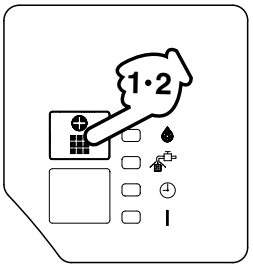
(6) Emergency Operation

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

1 **To press the emergency operation switch.**

The machine runs in the previous mode.
The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



[STOP]

2 **Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.**

(7) Precautions for Group Control System or Two Remote Controller Control System

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

- **Group control system**
  One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
  All indoor units are equally set.

- **Two remote controller control system**
  Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
  The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

■ Not Malfunction of the Air Conditioner

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

II. THE UNIT STOPS ONCE IN A WHILE

- **The remote controller indicates "U4" and "U5", the unit stops. Within several minutes the unit restarts.**
  Due to electrical noise other than that from the air conditioner, the communication between the units is cut off and the unit stops.
  When the noise is gone, the unit automatically restarts.

III. NO CHANGEOVER IS AVAILABLE BETWEEN HEATING AND COOLING MODES

- **The indoor unit makes a "PEEE" receiving sound.**
  When operation changeover is under control, the control is set to the mode that cannot be carried out.

IV. AIR FLOW RATE CANNOT BE OBTAINED AS SET

- **Even if the air flow rate adjusting button is pressed, the air flow rate does not change.**
  When the room temperature reaches the indoor unit set temperature, the outdoor unit stops and the air flow rate of indoor unit drops to the minimum.
  This is to avoid the cold air from getting in contact with the people in the room.

V. AIR DISCHARGE DIRECTION IS NOT AS SET

- **The remote controller indication and the air discharge direction is not the same.**
  Air discharge direction swing is impossible.
  Because it is controlled by microcomputer. Refer to "AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST" on page 60.

VI. ONLY A PART OF INDICATION SHOWS

- **Even if the unit is operated, only the operation indication shows, or even if the indication shows, soon after, the indication other than that for operation disappears.**
  The corresponding indoor unit is that for multi-system and the remote controller is set to the multi-system.

VII.NO INDICATION SHOWS OR ALL INDICATION SHOW

- **When the remote controller button is pressed.**
  The battery is dead.

VIII.INSUFFICIENT COOLING

- **It is in program dry operation.**
  The program dry operation is an operation mode trying to keep the room temperature constant as much as possible. Refer to "Cooling, Heating, Automatic, Fan and Program dry operation" on page 57.

■ How to Diagnose Trouble Spots

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.



Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode "".

"" appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

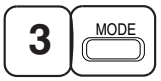


Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps ..... Perform all steps from (3) to (6) .
1 short beep ..... Perform (3) and (6) steps
1 long beep ..... Normal state



Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

"" on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.



Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.



Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

"" on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.



Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

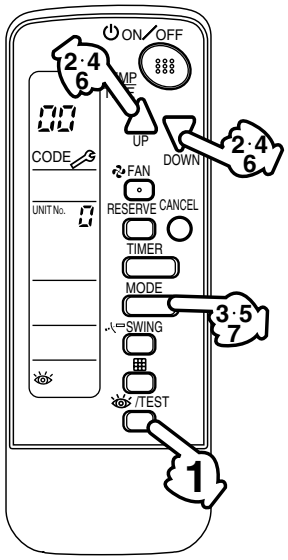
Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.

The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 MODE

Reset of the display

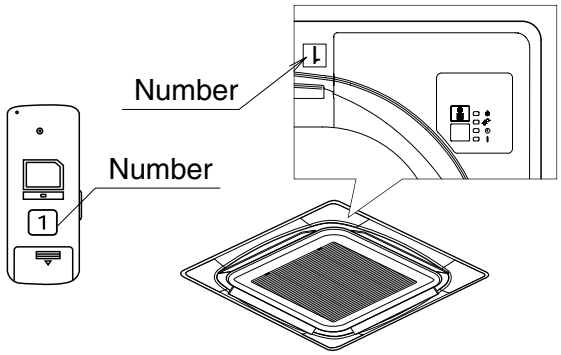
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.



II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

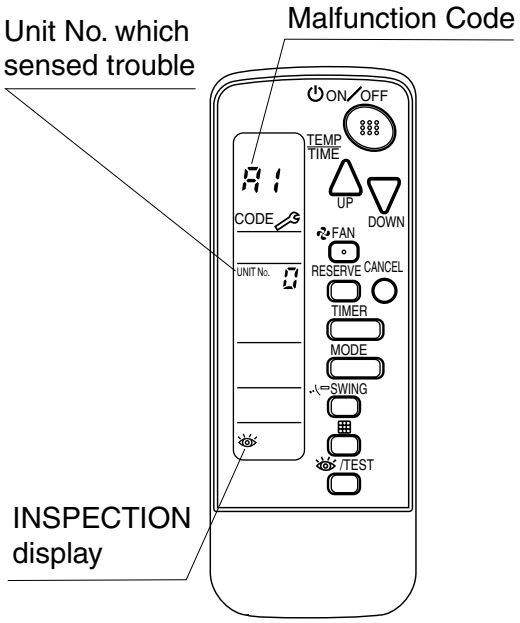
- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

WARNING When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See page 65.)

1.3.5 Installation

■ Safety Precautions

Please read these “SAFETY PRECAUTIONS” carefully before installing air conditioning unit and be sure to install it correctly.
After completing installation, conduct a trial operation to check for faults and explain to the customer how to operate the air conditioner and take care of it with the aid of the operation manual. Ask the customer to store the installation manual along with the operation manual for future reference.

Meaning of CAUTION notices

CAUTION Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

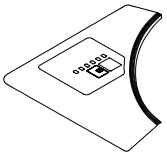
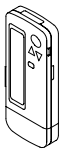
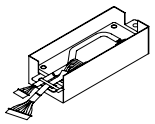
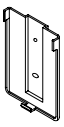
CAUTION

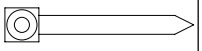
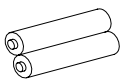
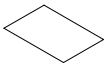
- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit and the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that noting interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
  - Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.
- The installation position of this kit is 1 position of the decoration panel. Therefore, confirm that its position is set so that the single form the wireless remote controller can be easily transmitted and its display can be easily seen.
- If both this kit and fresh air intake kit are installed, only one duct chamber shall be used. Refer to the installation manual of the fresh air intake kit (optional hand book).

■ Before Installation

(1) Accessories

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver	Wireless remote controller	Transmission	Remote controller holder	Screw for installing transmission	Screw for installing remote controller holder
Quantity	1 set	1 pc.	1 set	1 pc.	2 pcs.	2 pcs.
Shape						

Name	Clamp	Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)	Unit No. label	Field setting label	Operation manual	Installation manual
Quantity	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape						

(2) Note to the Installer

- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

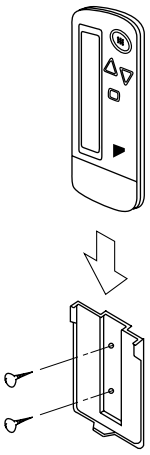
■ Remote Controller Installation

NOTES

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

- **When attaching in a wall or a pillar**

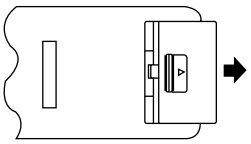
1. Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.



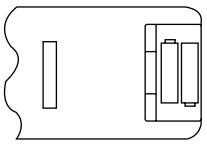
2. Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

- **How to insert the batteries**

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



■ Address Set Up

Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

(1) Setting the receiver

Set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the printed circuit board according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)		

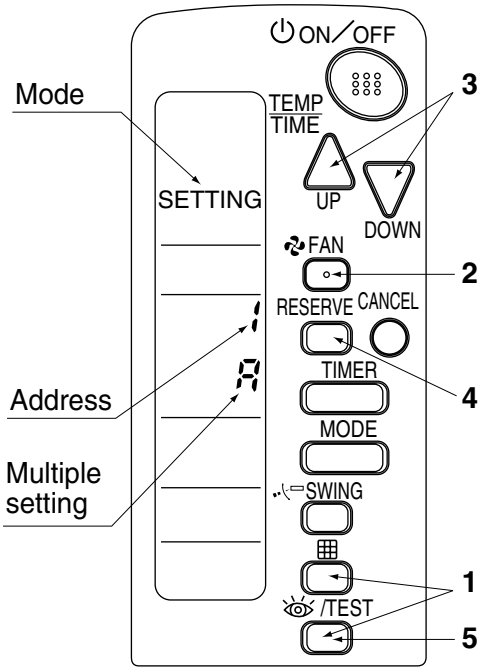
(2) Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to " 1 ")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

1. Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode.
   (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)
2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".
3. Press the " ▲ UP " button or " ▼ DOWN " button to set the address.

   1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6

   Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)
4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.
5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



Multiple settings A/b

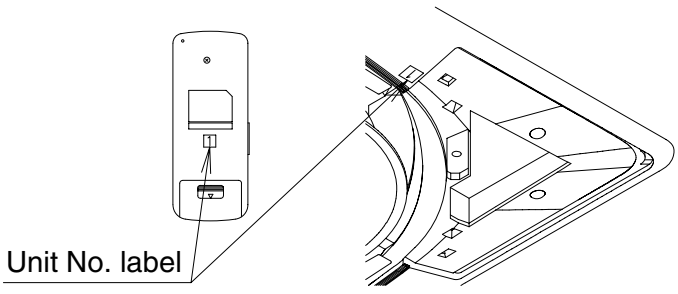
When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Movement when the operation is controlled by the other air conditioners and equipment
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	
A: Standard	All items displayed.	When operation changeover, temperature setting or the like is carried out from the remote controller, the indoor unit rejects the instruction. (Signal receiving sound "peeh" or "pick-pick-pick") As a result, a discrepancy between the operation state of the indoor unit and the indication of the remote controller display occurs.
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	Since the indication of the remote controller is turned off, no discrepancy such as mentioned above occurs.

(3) Stick the Unit No. label on the air outlet of the decoration panel and the back of the wireless remote controller.

[PRECAUTIONS]

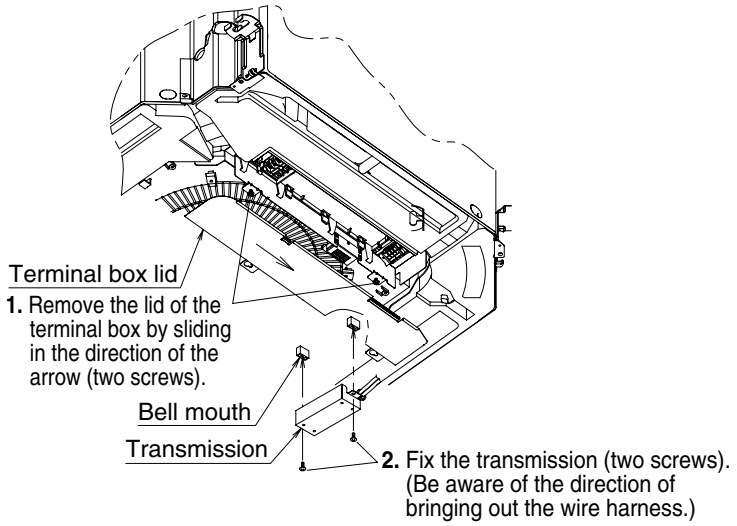
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differ, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

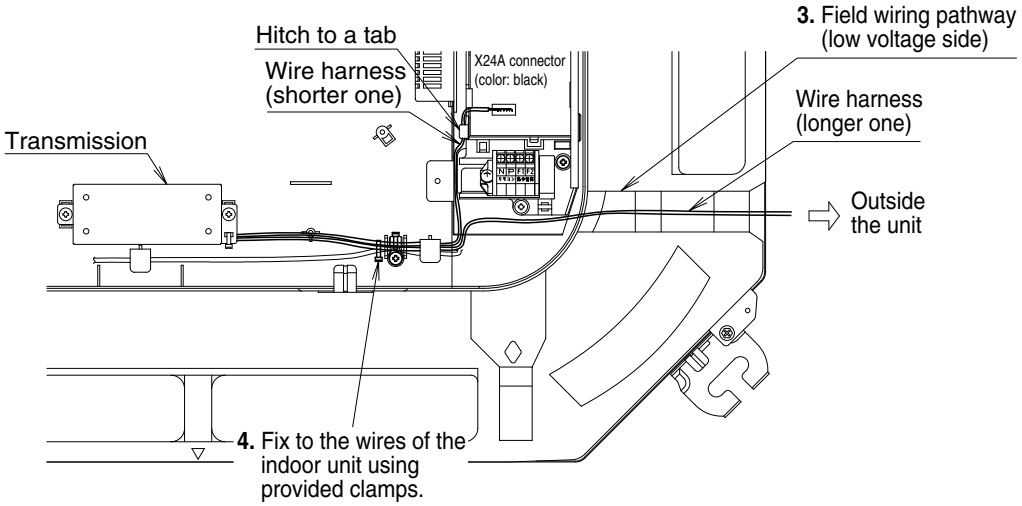


<Attachment of Unit No. label>

■ Installation of the Transmission

1. Remove the lid of the terminal box as described in the Installation Manual supplied with the indoor unit.
2. Fix the transmission at the bottom of the bell mouths on the indoor unit body using provided transmission fixing screws as shown below.
3. Connect the wire harness (shorter one) from the transmission to X24A connector on the printed circuit board in the indoor unit. Bring out the wire harness (longer one) from the transmission to outside of the unit through the field wiring pathway (low voltage side) of the indoor unit.
4. Fix two wire harnesses from the transmission using provided clamps.





■ Installation of the Decoration Panel

Install the decoration panel as described in the Installation Manual supplied with the decoration panel.

NOTE

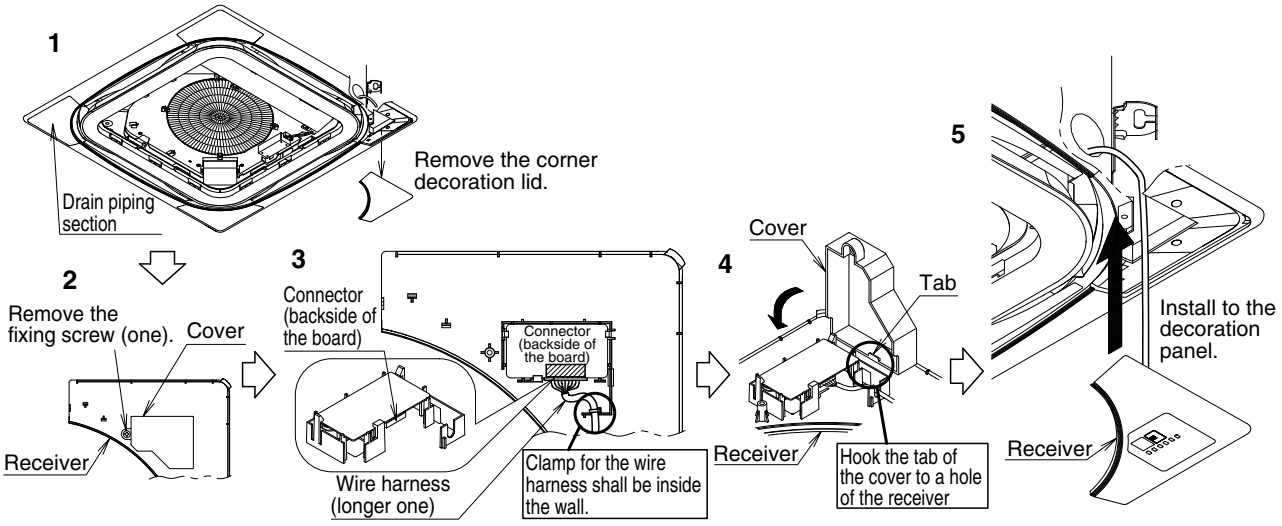
- Watch that the wire harness (longer one) from the transmission is not caught between the indoor unit and the decoration panel, and ceiling and the decoration panel.

■ Installation of the Receiver

1. Remove the corner decoration lid of the decoration panel, locating at the opposing corner of the drain piping section. The lid will be no longer in use.

Be sure to install the receiver to this corner.

2. Remove a backside cover of the receiver.
3. Connect the wire harness (longer one) from the transmission to the connector of the printed circuit board of the receiver.
4. Attach the backside cover of the receiver in reverse procedure to **2**.
5. Install the receiver to the decoration panel.

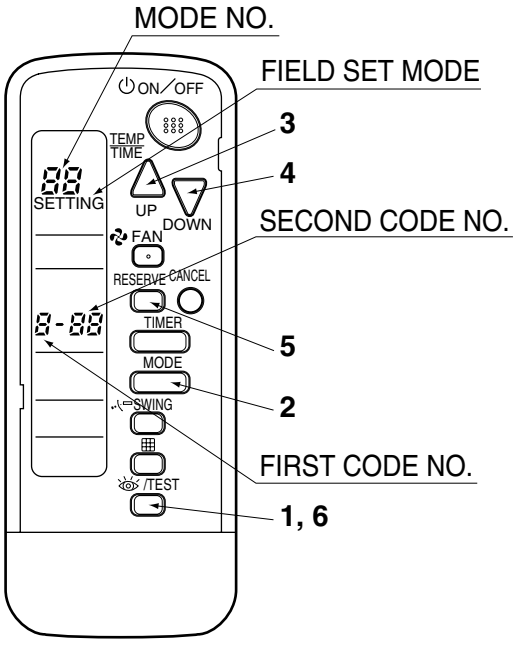


■ Field Setting

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.

Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " ▲ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▼ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.



(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to “Filter Contamination-Heavy”, set Mode No. to “10”, FIRST CODE NO. to “0”, and SECOND CODE NO. to “02”.

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING		SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
				01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra-long-life type	light	approx. 10,000 hours	heavy	approx. 5,000 hours	-
			Long-life type		approx. 2,500 hours		approx. 1,250 hours	
			Standard type		approx. 200 hours		approx. 100 hours	
	1	Long-life filter type (Setting of filter sign indication time) (Change setting when Ultra-long-life filter is installed)		Long-life filter		Ultra-long-life filter		-
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do not display		-
13	0	High ceiling setting (Setting for when installed in a ceiling higher than 2.7 m)		Normal		High Ceiling 1		High Ceiling 2
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)		F		T		W
	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting		Upper		Normal		-

NOTE

- The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to “01”. However, for the following cases it is set to “02”.
  - Air Flow Direction Range Setting

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

■ Test Operation

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

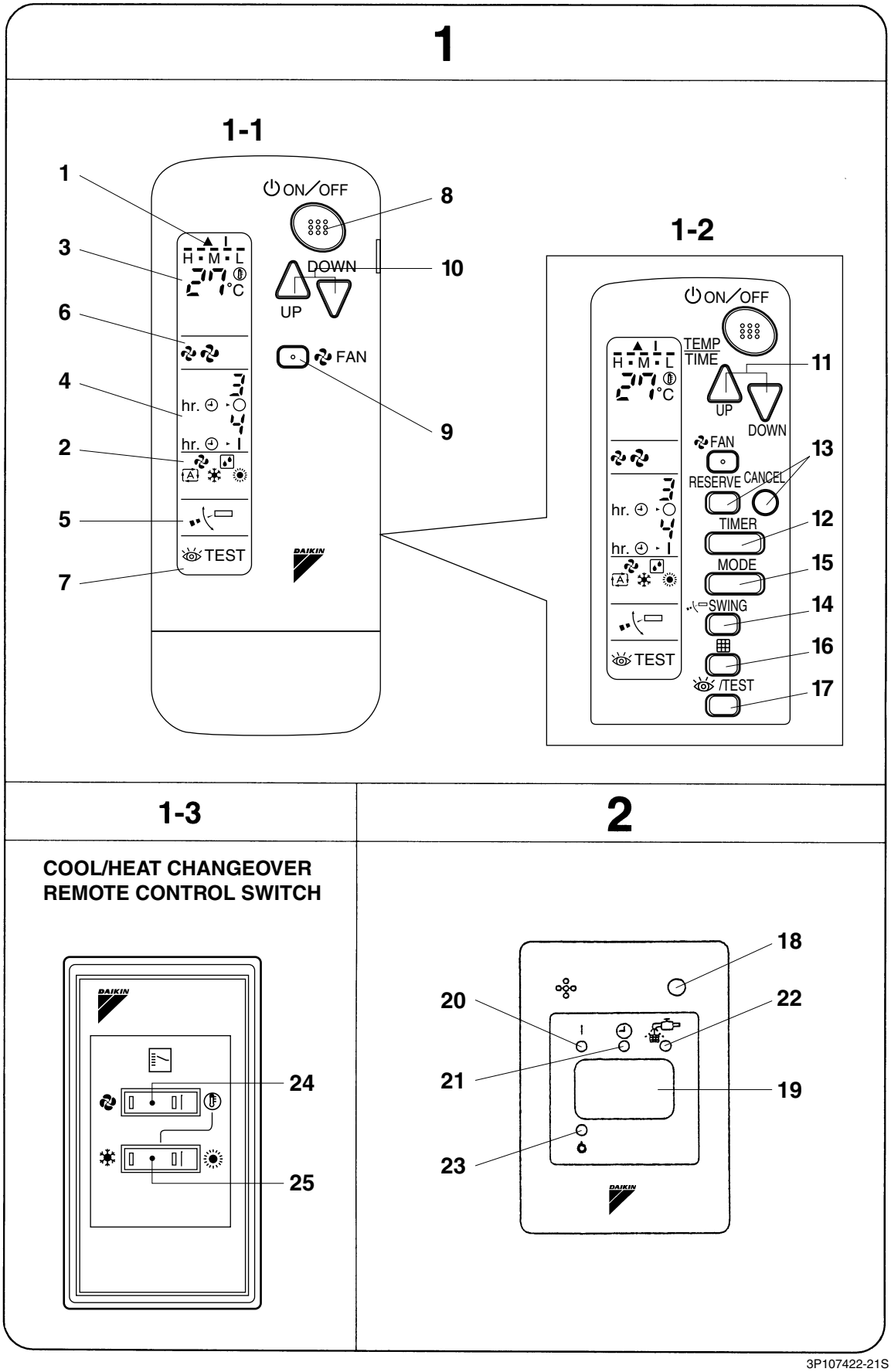
[PRECAUTIONS]

1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for split types.
2. Refer to malfunction diagnosis in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for VRV system types.

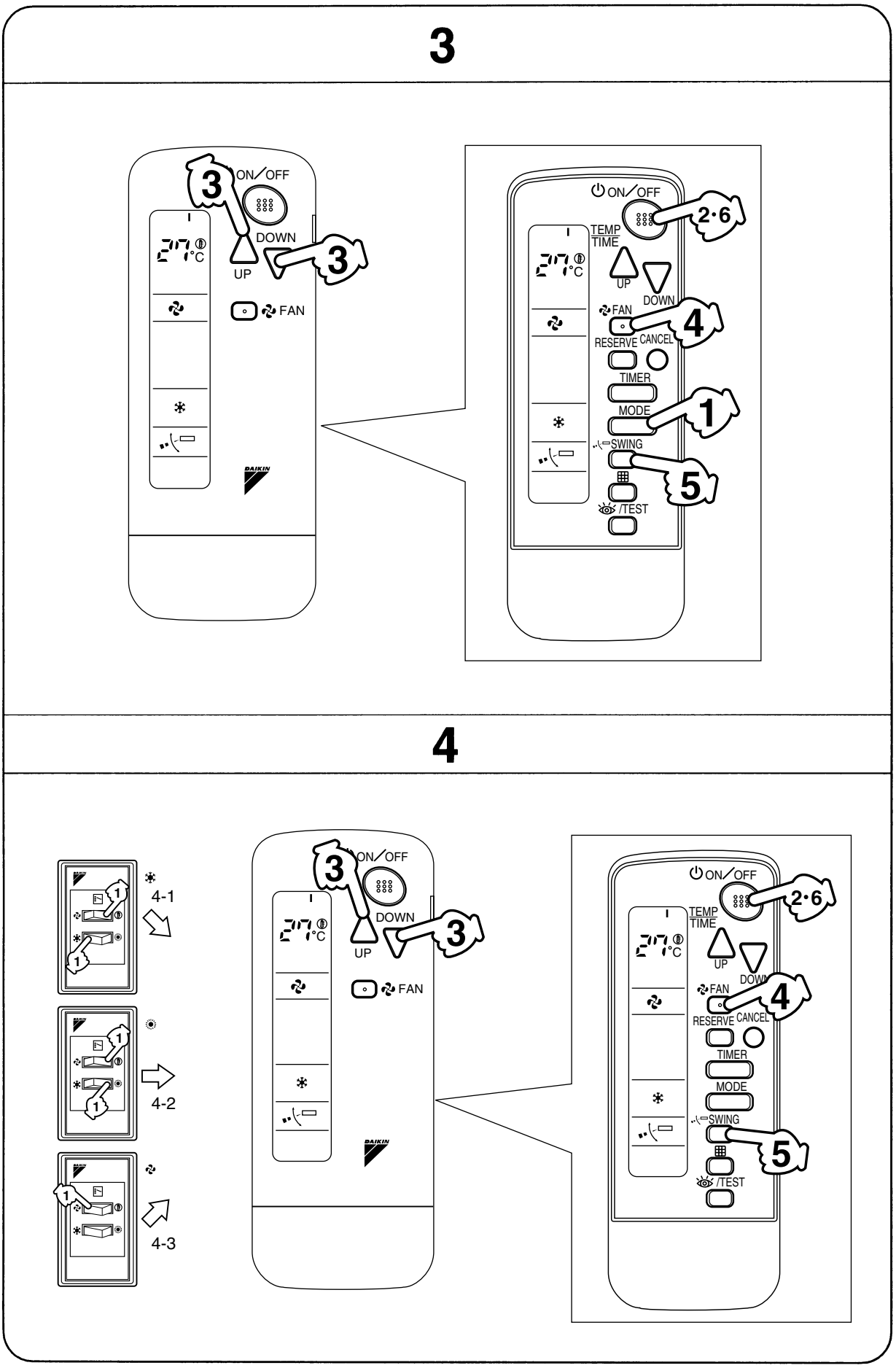
Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours. (Not necessary for cooling type units)
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

1.4 BRC4C61 / BRC4C62 / BRC4C63 / BRC4C64 (for FXK(Q), FXD, FXDYQ, FXS, FXSYQ, FXM, FXMQ-M(A), FXL(Q), FXN(Q), FXYD, FXYB)

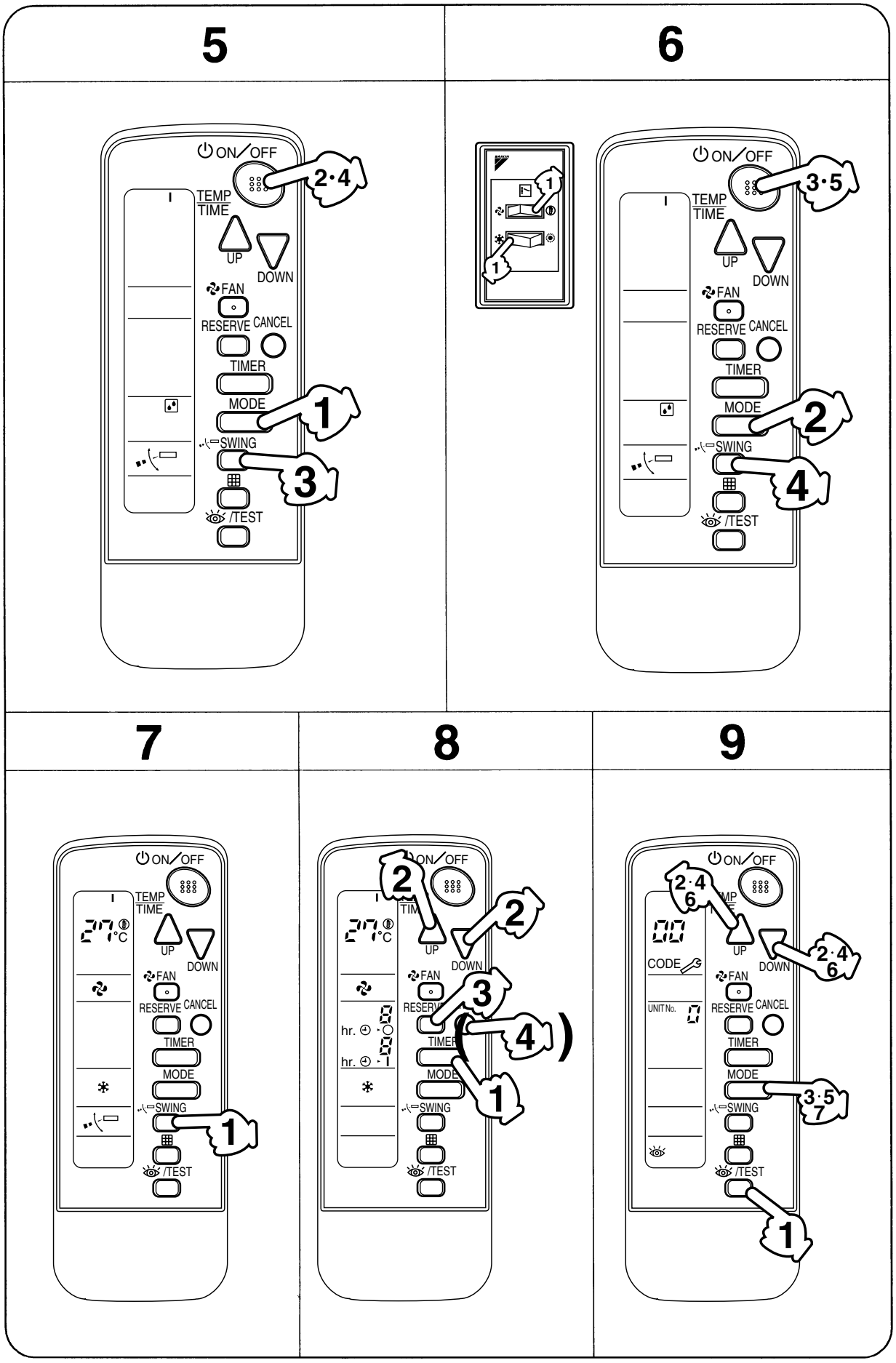
1.4.1 Operation



3P107422-21S



3P107422-21S



3P107422-21S

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP) (BRC4C61, 63 only)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 3.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON (BRC4C61, 63 only)**
	Refer to Note 4.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.

3P107422-21S

Note 1 : page 82, Note 2 : page 82, Note 3 : page 82, Note 4 : page 82

23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For straight cooling type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

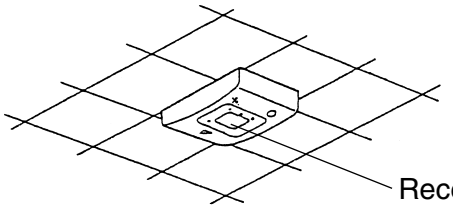
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.
It may be damaged.

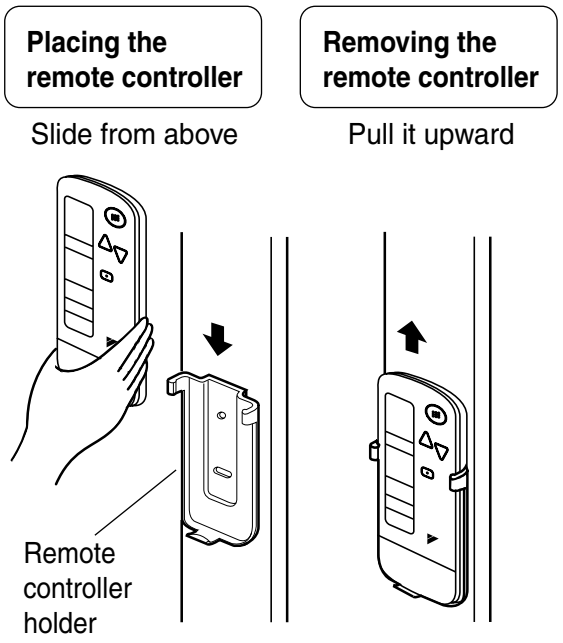
Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

3P107422-21S

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder
Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

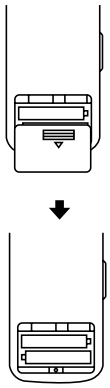


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries
Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]
- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time remove all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM
- If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
  In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION PROCEDURE

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat recovery system.
- Cooling only system gives selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)⟩⟩

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
- HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☀ "
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... "Ⓐ"
- FAN OPERATION ..... " ✣ "

3P107422-21S

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION

In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/ HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)⟩⟩

1 Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-1 (,)
- HEATING OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-2 (,)
- FAN OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-3 ( )

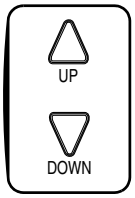
2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

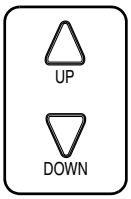
3 Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	▪	M	▪	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

NOTE

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

4 Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

High or Low fan speed can be selected.

5 Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION button. (BRC4C61, 63 only)

Refer to “ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION” (Note) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

6 Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Note : page 82

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)⟩⟩

(1) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select "💧" (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION).

(2) Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

(3) Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button. (BRC4C61, 63 only)

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (Note) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

(4) Press ON/OFF button again.

OPERATION lamp goes off and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)⟩⟩

(1) Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY "💧".

(3) Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

(4) Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button. (BRC4C61, 63 only)

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (p. 9) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

(5) Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

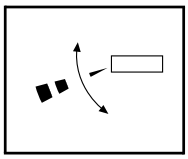
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

Note : page 82

ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION (Fig. 7)

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to adjust up/down air flow angle.

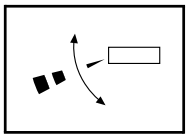
1 Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes and the desired air flow direction is fixed. (Fixed air flow setting)

- The movable limit of the blade is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation
	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

Operation mode includes automatic operation.

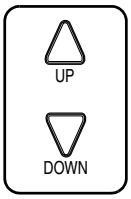
PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 8)

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (🕘 ▸ ◯)
  ....The system stops operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (🕘 ▸ |)
  .... The system starts operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

1 Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop.....“🕘 ▸ ◯”
For setting the timer start .....“🕘 ▸ | ”

2 Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3 Press RESERVE button.

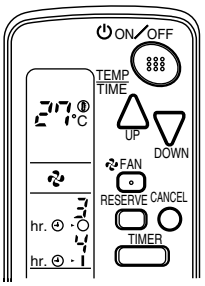
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from 1 to 3 once again.

3P107422-21S

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

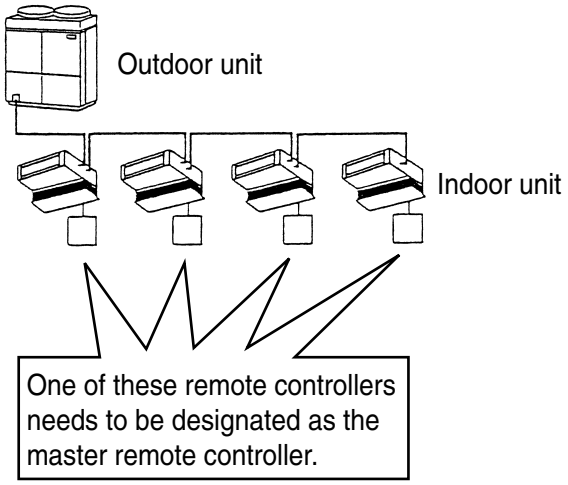
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. ( )

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV series)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

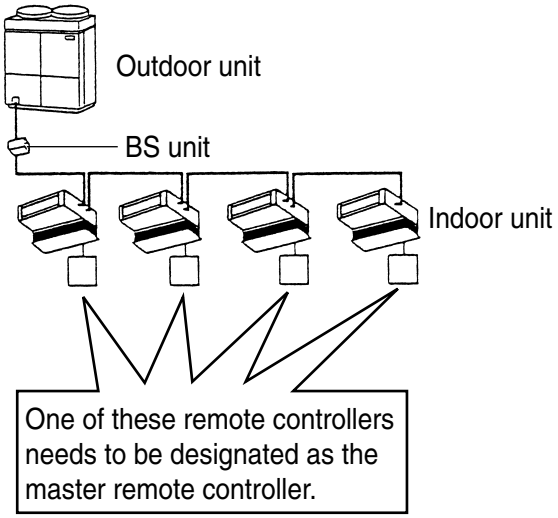
⟨⟨For Heat pump system⟩⟩

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



⟨⟨For Heat recovery system⟩⟩

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

(1) Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing "⏲" of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

(2) Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing "⏲" vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

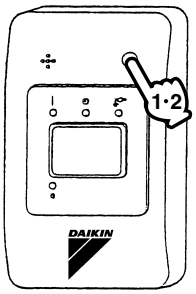
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

(1) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction, and air flow rate.



[STOP]

(2) Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.
- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

3P107422-21S

5. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

6. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS (Fig. 9)

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

① Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

② Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .....Perform all steps from ③ to ⑥
1 short beep .....Perform ③ and ⑥ steps
1 long beep .....Normal state

③ Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

④ Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

⑤ Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

⑥ Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

⑦ Reset of the display.

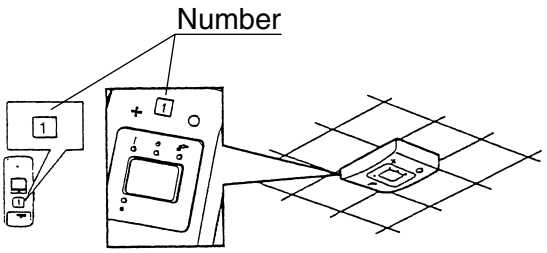
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

3P107422-21S

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

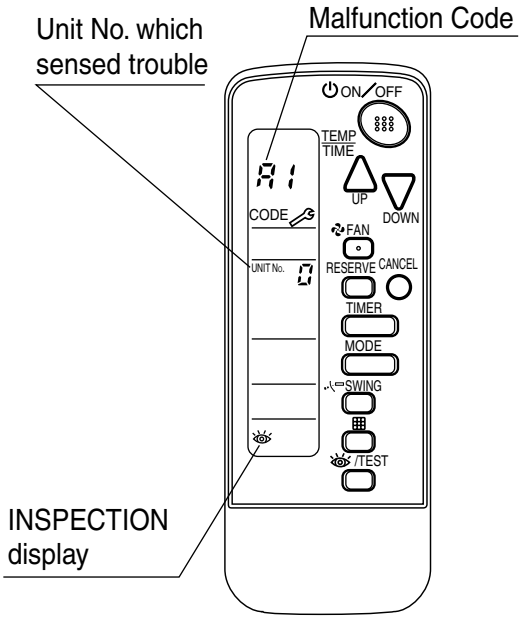
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See Note)



Disposal requirements
Batteries supplied with the remote controller are marked with this symbol.
This means that the batteries shall not be mixed with unsorted household waste.
If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol, this chemical symbol means that the battery contains a heavy metal above a certain concentration. Possible chemical symbols are:
■ Pb: lead (>0.004%)
Waste batteries must be treated at a specialized treatment facility for re-use.
By ensuring waste batteries are disposed of correctly, you will help to prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health.

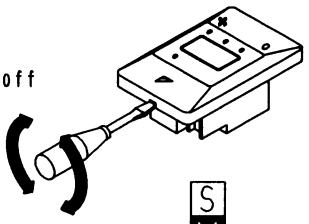
3P107422-21S

Note : page 85

1.4.2 Installation

❮ Caution ❯
- Do not install more than 3 receivers in the vicinity of one another.
- With 4 or more units, there is always the possibility of malfunction.

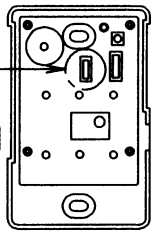
1. Remove the upper part of receiver.
   - Insert the screwdriver here and gently work off the upper part of the receiver.



2. Initial setting

Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch

(When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. And the wireless remote controller should be set to SUB.)



Main Remote Controller (Factory Set)



Sub Remote Controller

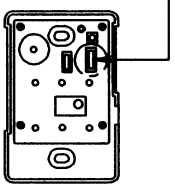
NOTES)
- If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to "MAIN"
- Set the remote controller before turning power supply on.

3. Address setting
   - If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

Setting the receiver (It is fuctory set to "1")

Referring to the table below, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the PC board.

Unit No.	NO. 1	NO. 2	NO. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)	SS2 1 2 3	SS2 1 2 3	SS2 1 2 3



Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

<Setting from the remote controller>

① Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (indicated in the display area in the figure at right).

② Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting(A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".

③ Press the "△ UP" button and "▽ DOWN" button to set the [1→2→3→4→5→6]
Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1~3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4~6.)

④ Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

⑤ Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.

2P018568

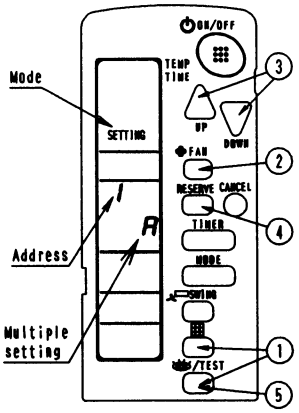
PRECAUTIONS

Set the Unit NO. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal.
If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

(Multiple setting A/b)

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A : Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b : Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	



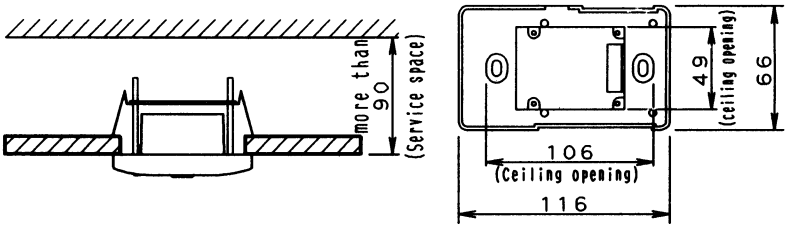
SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly.
After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

For ceiling installation

1. Prepare the ceiling for the receiver.

Open a hole in the ceiling for the receiver. (Use the provided ceiling installation pattern.)

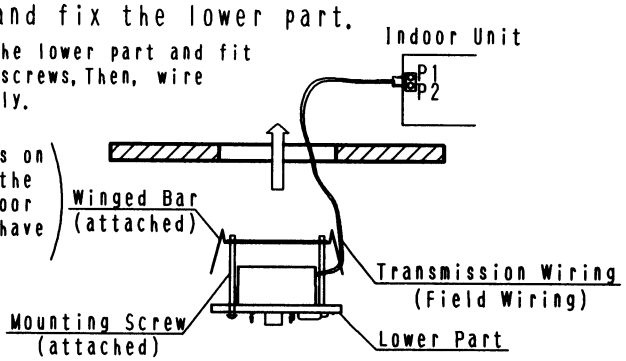


2P018568

2. Wire the indoor unit and fix the lower part.

- Install the winged bar to the lower part and fit the part with the attached screws. Then, wire (field supplied) accordingly.

(Connect the P1 and P2 terminals on the rear of the lower part to the P1 and P2 terminals on the indoor unit. The P1 and P2 terminals have no polarity.)



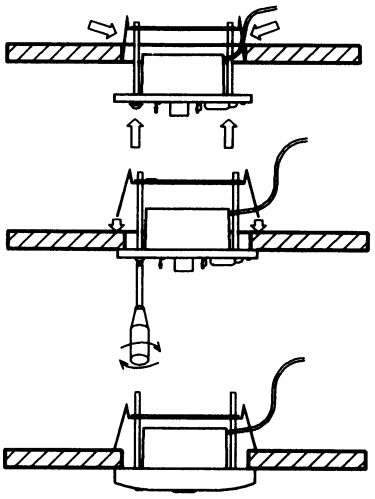
- Insert the lower part into the opening in the ceiling, first by pressing the wings inward to fit the hole and then by pushing from the screws until it sits flat on the ceiling.

- Tighten the screws until the lower part is fixed in place.

(Tighten both screws evenly. Overtightening may deform the case and possibly make it harder to install the upper part.)

- Rettach the upper part of receiver.

(Install the upper part on the lower part being careful parts are facing in the correct direction. And, test the emergency run button.)



《Precautions on transmission wiring》

① When wiring, run the wiring away the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise)

② When wiring, refer to the wiring diagram of indoor unit (attached to indoor unit) as well.

WIRING SPECIFICATION

Wiring type	Sheathed wire (2 wire)
Size	0.75~1.25mm²
Wiring length	max 200m (See Note 1)

NOTE)
1. Keep wires to less than 200m total when using 2 remote controller (wired or wireless) and when not.

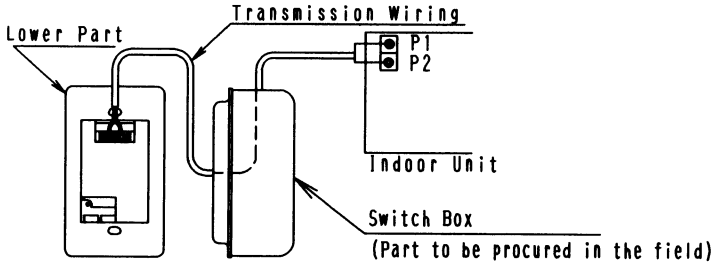
2P018568

⚠ CAUTION

- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that nothing interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
- Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.

For wall mounting

1. Wire the indoor unit

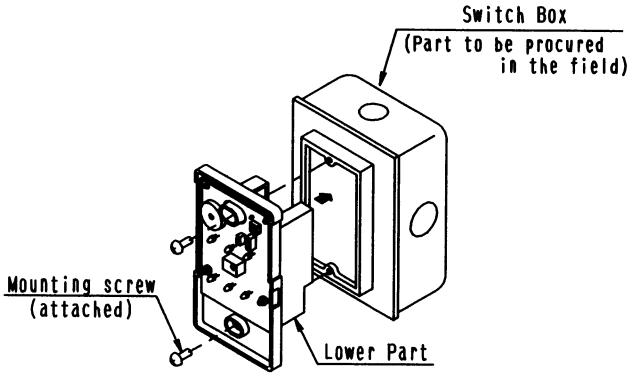


(Connect the P1 and P2 terminals on the rear of the lower part to the P1 and P2 terminals on the indoor unit. Neither of the terminals is polarized, so it is not important if connections are crossed.)

2. Fix the lower part.

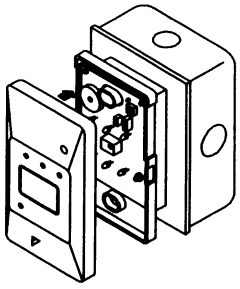
- Install the lower part on theh switch box(field supplied part)

(Select as flat a place ash possible to install the lower part. Also, be aware of the fact that overtightening the screws (attached) may deform the case and possibly make it harder to install the upper part.)



3. Rettach the upper part of remote controller.

(Install the upper part on the lower part being careful parts are facing in the correct direction. And, test the emergency run button.)



NOTES)

1. The switch box and wiring are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

2P018568

1.5 BRC4C65 / BRC4C66 (for FXDQ and FXMQ-P)

1.5.1 Features

BRC4C65 (for Heat Pump)
BRC4C66 (for Cooling Only)





Signal receiver unit

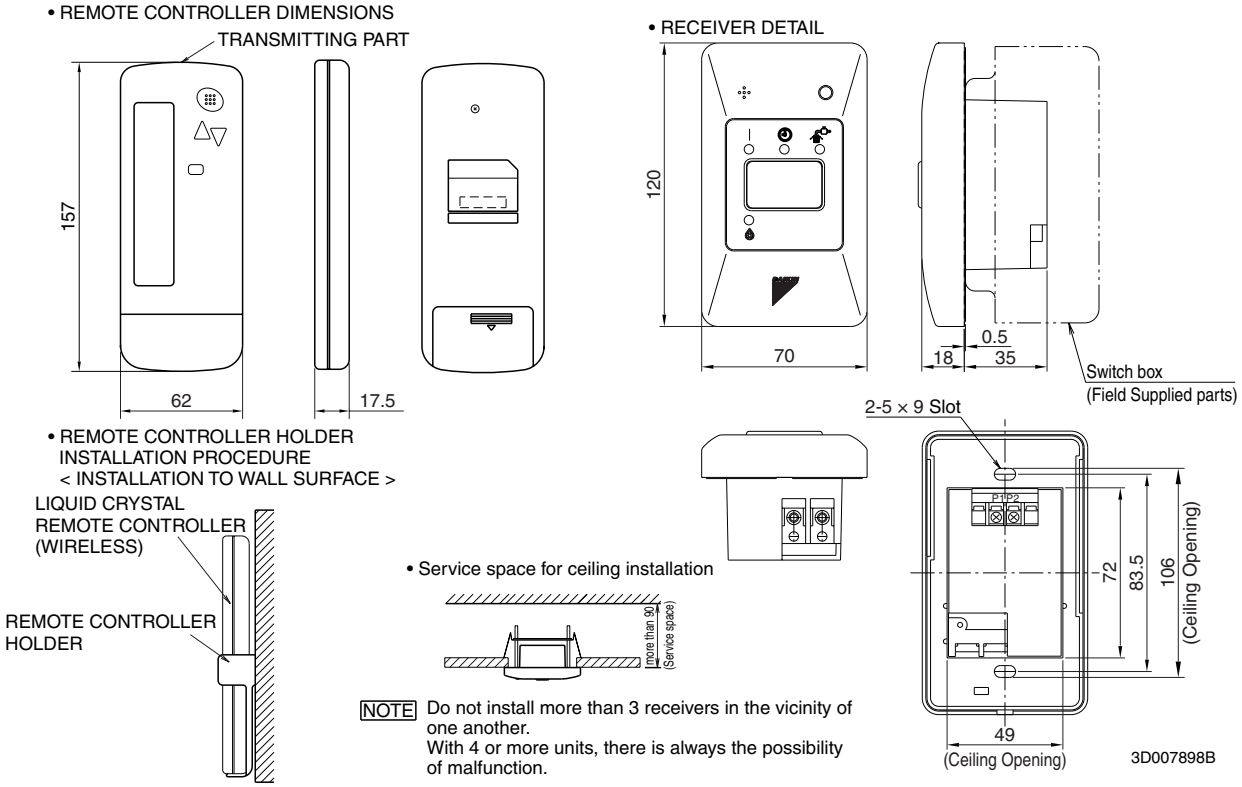
- The same operation modes and settings as with wired remote controllers are possible.
- A compact and light signal receiver unit to be mounted into a wall or ceiling is included.
- This unit supports the three-speed airflow rate control (HH / H / L).

1.5.2 Function

Model	BRC4C65/66
ON/OFF	Possible
Temp. setting	Possible
Air flow rate setting	Possible
Air flow direction setting	Possible
Timer setting	Possible
Mode setting	Possible
Filter sign reset	Possible
Inspection/Test operation	Possible

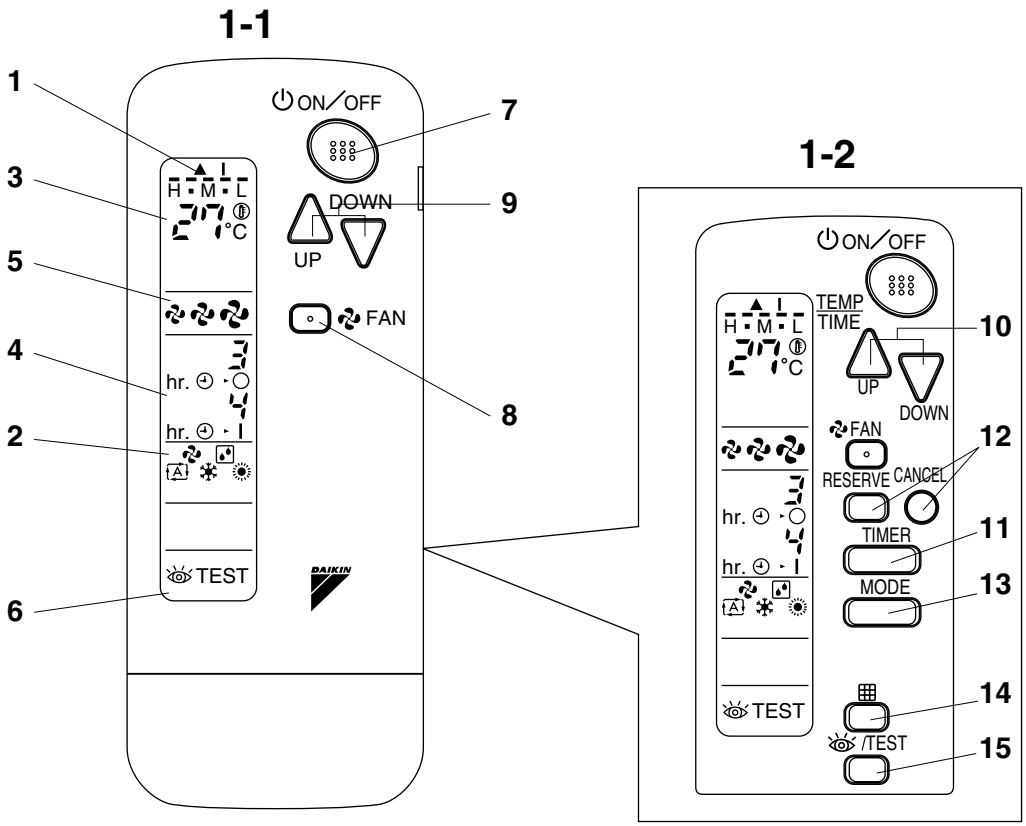
(No support for swing mode)

1.5.3 Dimensions



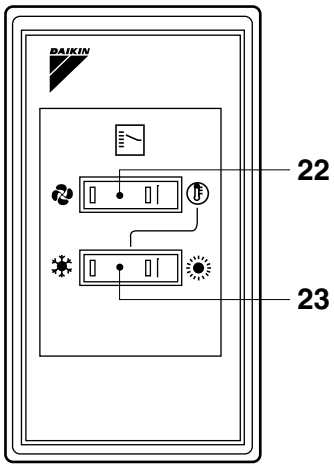
1.5.4 Operation Manual

■ **Names and Functions of the Operating Section**

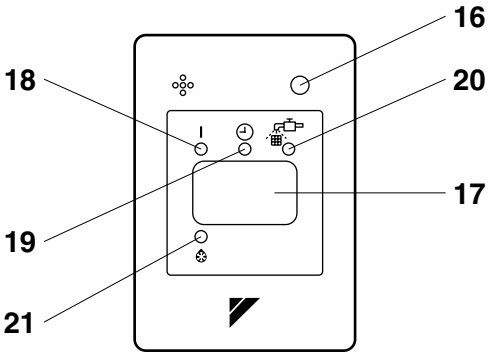


1

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



1-3



2

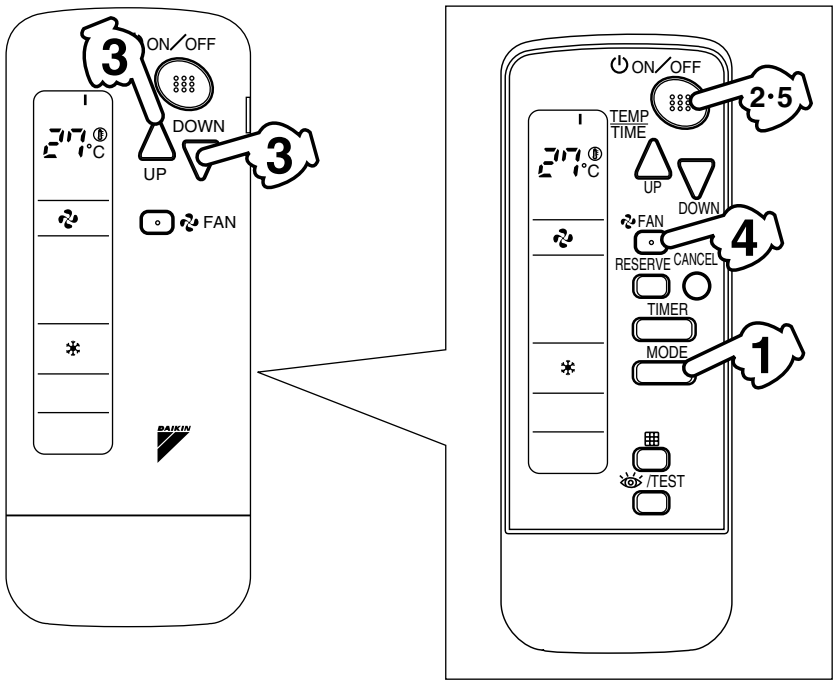
See Fig. 1, 2

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
6	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
7	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
8	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HH or H or L, of your choice.
9	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
10	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
11	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to page 102.
12	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to page 102.
13	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
14	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
15	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
16	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
17	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
18	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
19	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.

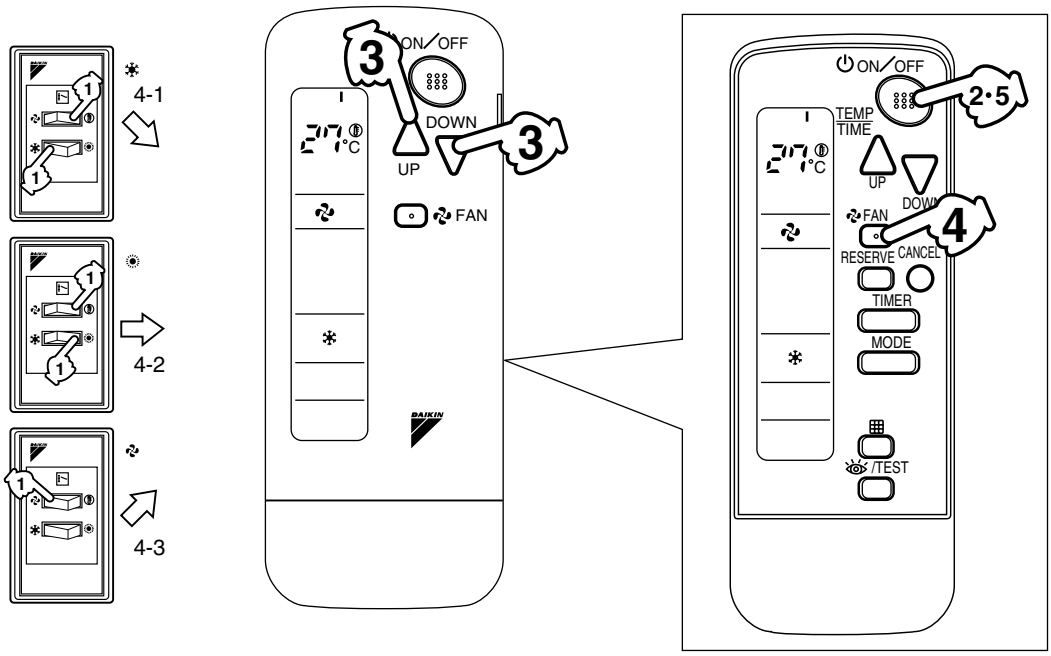
20	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
21	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For straight cooling type this lamp does not turn on.)
22	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
23	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTE

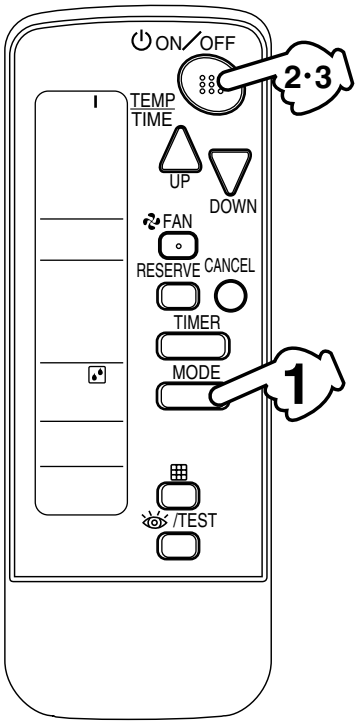
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.


3
ON/OFF
DOWN
UP
3
FAN
ON/OFF
2·5
TEMP
TIME
UP
DOWN
FAN
4
RESERVE
CANCEL
TIMER
MODE
1
/TEST

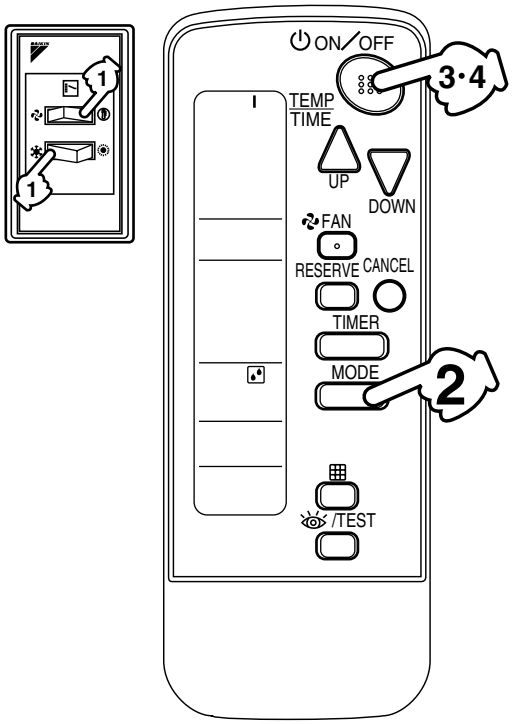
3


4-1
4-2
4-3
3
ON/OFF
DOWN
UP
3
FAN
ON/OFF
2·5
TEMP
TIME
UP
FAN
4
RESERVE
CANCEL
TIMER
MODE
/TEST

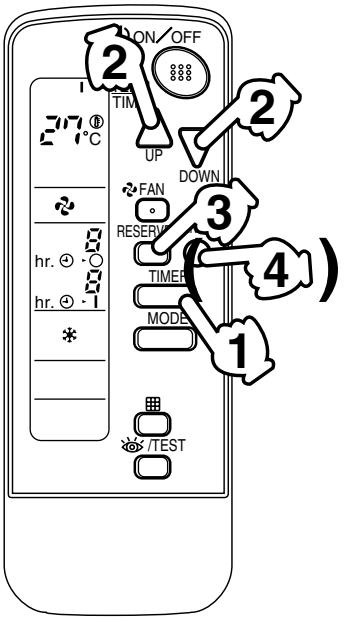
4


ON/OFF
2·3
TEMP
TIME
UP
DOWN
FAN
RESERVE
CANCEL
TIMER
MODE
1
/TEST

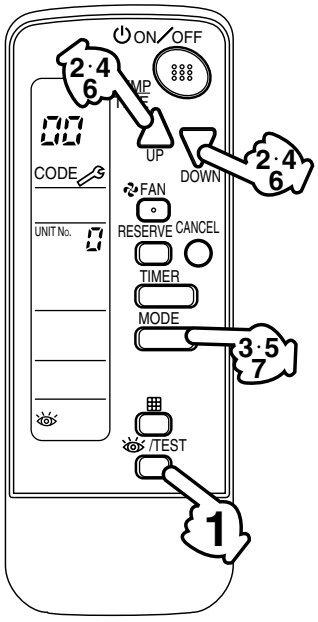
5


1
1
ON/OFF
3·4
TEMP
TIME
UP
DOWN
FAN
RESERVE
CANCEL
TIMER
MODE
2
/TEST

6


ON/OFF
2
2
UP
DOWN
FAN
3
RESERVE
TIMER
4
MODE
1
/TEST

7


ON/OFF
2·4
6
UP
DOWN
2·4
6
CODE
FAN
UNIT No.
RESERVE
CANCEL
TIMER
MODE
3·5
7
/TEST
1

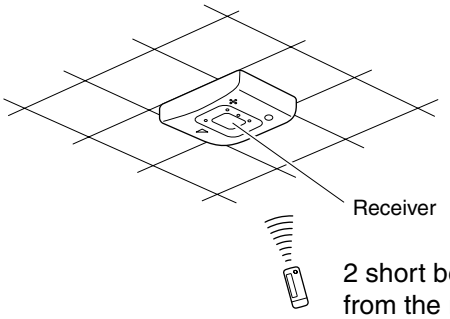
8

■ Handling for Wireless Remote Controller

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



Transmitting distance is approximately 7m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

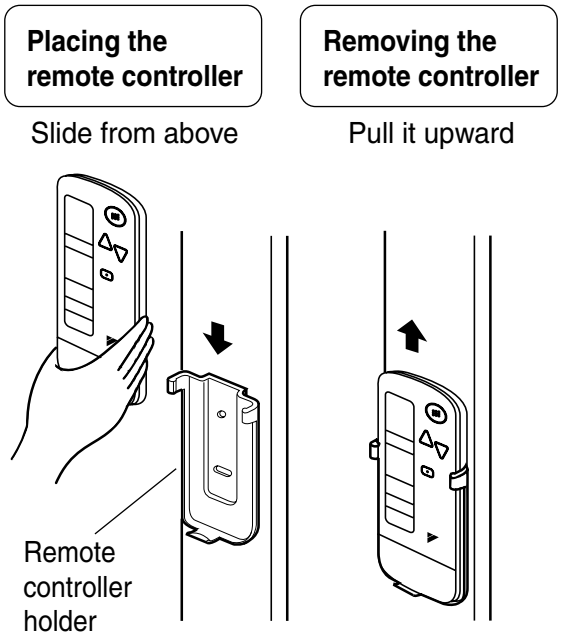
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

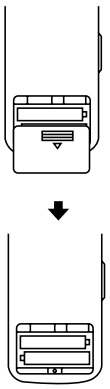
Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits.)



How to put the dry batteries

1. Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.
2. Put the batteries
   Use two LR03 <IEC> dry cell batteries. Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).
3. Close the cover



When to change batteries

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time remove all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

- If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting. In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

■ Operation Procedure

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system types.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat recovery system.
- Cooling only system gives selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)⟩⟩

1 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... " ☼ "
- HEATING OPERATION..... " ☼ "
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " A "
- FAN OPERATION ..... " "

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION

In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)⟩⟩

1 Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- COOING OPERATION..... Refer to fig. 4-1 (⏻ , ☼)
- HEATING OPERATION..... Refer to fig. 4-2 (⏻ , ☼)
- FAN OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-3 ( )

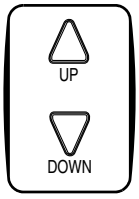
Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

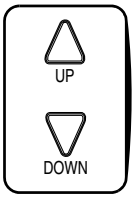
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

NOTE

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

HH, H or L fan speed can be selected.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increases, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on.
  After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)⟩⟩

1. **Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select "💧" (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION).**
2. **Press ON/OFF button.**

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

3. **Press ON/OFF button again.**

OPERATION lamp goes off and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)⟩⟩

1. **Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.**
2. **Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY "💧".**
3. **Press ON/OFF button.**

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

4. **Press ON/OFF button once again.**

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	■ When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	■ When room temperature is higher than the set temperature ■ At defrost operation
	■ When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 7)

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (🕘 ▸ ◯)
  ....The system stops operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (🕘 ▸ |)
  .... The system starts operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

1 Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop .....“🕘 ▸ ◯”
For setting the timer start .....“🕘 ▸ | ”

2 Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.

UP — When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

DOWN — When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3 Press RESERVE button.

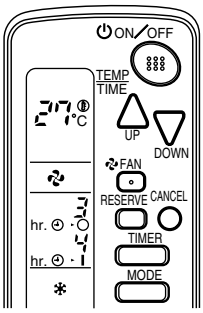
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from 1 to 3 once again.

For example

When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

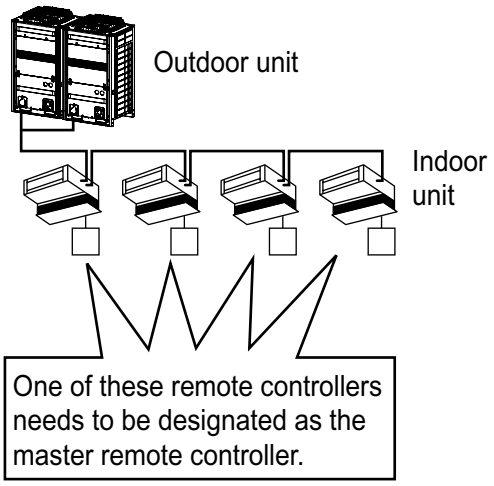


- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. (4)

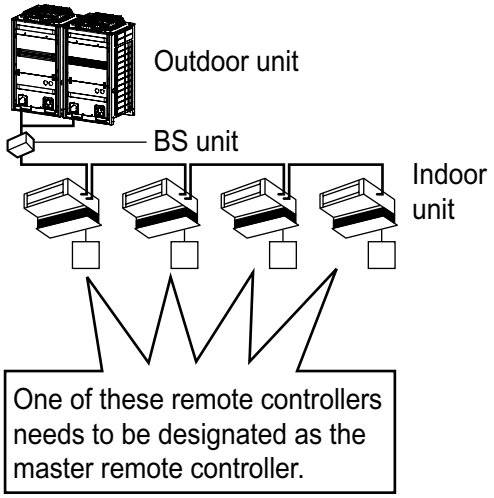
HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

〈〈**For Heat pump system**〉〉
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



〈〈**For Heat recovery system**〉〉
When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

(1) **Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.**

The displays showing “(⊣)” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

(2) **Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “(⊣)” vanishes.**

■ To change settings, repeat steps (1) and (2).

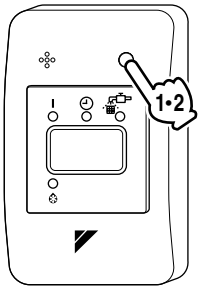
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode.
The system operates with the previously set air flow direction, and airflow rate.



[STOP]

Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

- **Group control system**
  One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
  All indoor units are equally set.
- **Two remote controller control system**
  Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units.)
  The unit follows individual operation.

NOTE

- Cannot have two remote controllers control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.
- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

■ Not Malfunction of the Air Conditioner

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

■ How to Diagnose Trouble Spots

See Fig. 8

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

1. **Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".**

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

2. **Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.**

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps ..... Perform all steps from 3 to 6
1 short beep ..... Perform 3 and 6 steps
1 long beep ..... Normal state

3. **Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.**

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

4. **Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.**

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

5. **Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.**

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

6. **Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.**

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

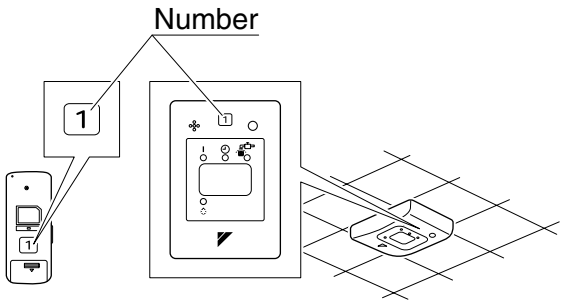
7. **Reset of the display.**

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”.)

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to L SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

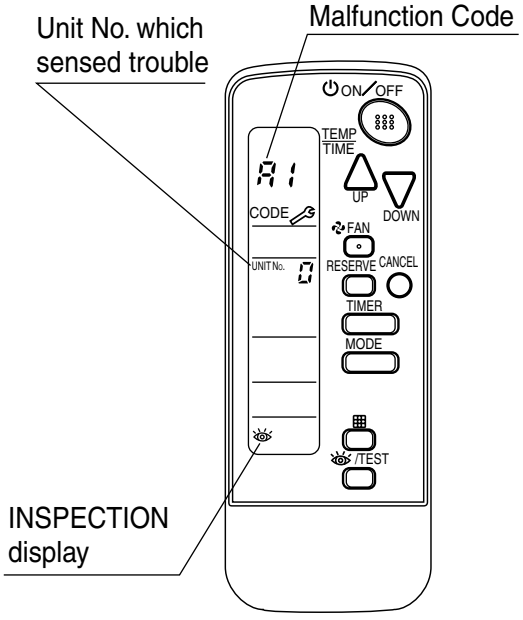
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See page 105.)

1.5.5 Installation

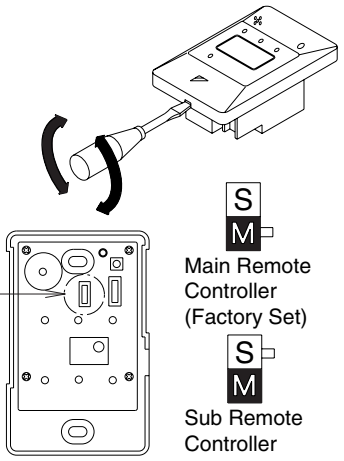
Caution

- Do not install more than 3 receivers in the vicinity of one another.
- With 4 or more units, there is always the possibility of malfunction.

■ Remove the Upper Part of Receiver

- Insert the screwdriver here and gently work off the upper part of the receiver.

■ Initial Setting



Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. And the wireless remote controller should be set to SUB.

NOTES

- If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to "MAIN"
- Set the remote controller before turning power supply on.

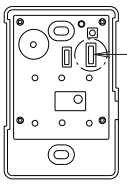
■ Address Setting

- If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

Setting the receiver (It is factory set to "1")

Referring to the table below, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the PC board.

Unit No.	NO.1	NO.2	NO.3
Wireless address switch (SS2)	SS2 1 2 3	SS2 1 2 3	SS2 1 2 3



Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

<Setting from the remote controller>

① Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (indicated in the display area in the figure at right).
② Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".
③ Press the " ▲ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the →1→2→3→4→5→6
Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1~3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4~6.)
④ Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.
⑤ Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.

PRECAUTIONS

Set the Unit NO. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal.
If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly.

After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

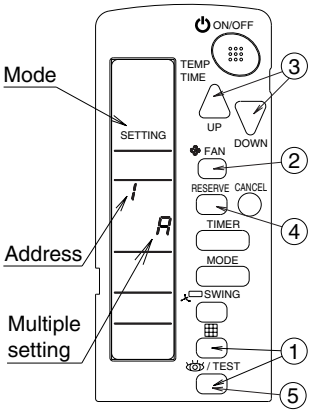
CAUTION

- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that nothing interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sun light.)
- Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.

⟨Multiple setting A/b⟩

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

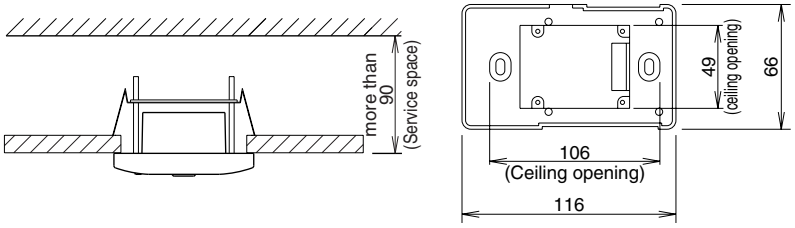
Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	



■ For Ceiling Installation

(1) Prepare the Ceiling for the Receiver

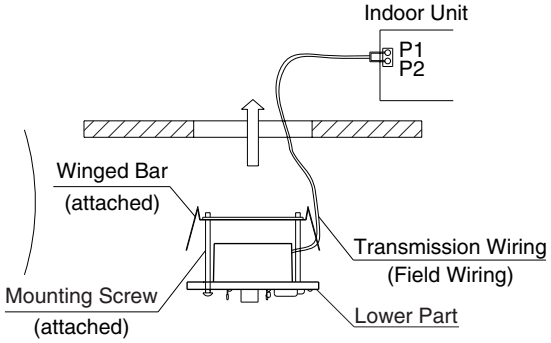
Open a hole in the ceiling for the receiver. (Use the provided ceiling installation pattern.)



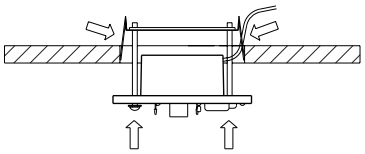
(2) Wire the Indoor Unit and Fix the Lower Part

- Install the winged bar to the lower part and fit the part with the attached screws, Then, wire (field supplied) accordingly.

Connect the P1 and P2 terminals on the rear of the lower part to the P1 and P2 terminals on the indoor unit. The P1 and P2 terminals have no polarity.

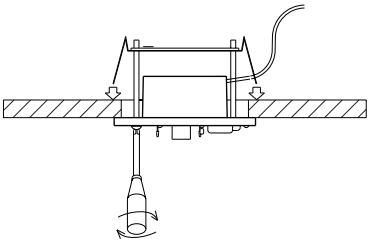


- Insert the lower part into the opening in the ceiling, first by pressing the wings inward to fit the hole and then by pushing from the screws until it sits flat on the ceiling.



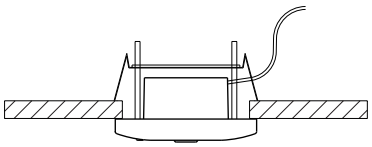
- Tighten the screws until the lower part is fixed in place.

(Tighten both screws evenly. Overtightening may deform the case and possibly make it harder to install the upper part.)



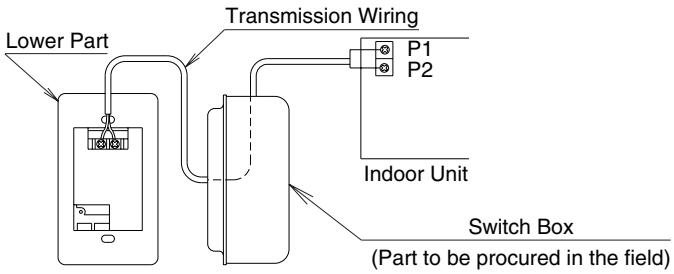
- Reattach the upper part of receiver.

(Install the upper part on the lower part being careful parts are facing in the correct direction. And, test the emergency run button.)



■ For Wall Mounting

(1) Wire the Indoor Unit

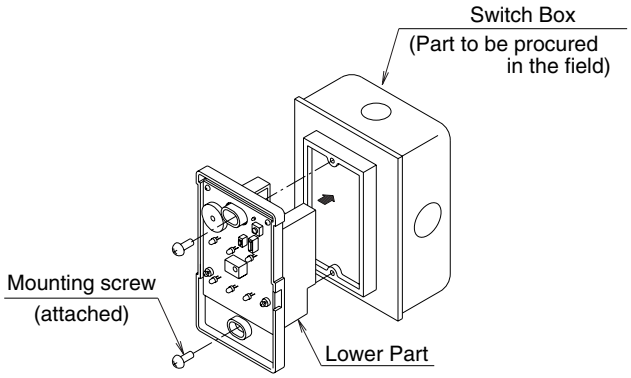


(Connect the P1 and P2 terminals on the rear of the lower part to the P1 and P2 terminals on the indoor unit.
Neither of the terminals is polarized, so it is not important if connections are crossed.)

(2) Fix the Lower Part

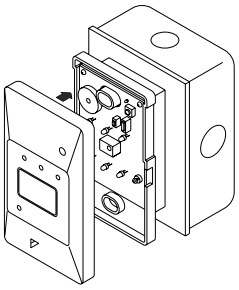
- Install the lower part on the switch box (field supplied part)

Select as flat a place ash possible to install the lower part. Also, be aware of the fact that overtightening the screws (attached) may deform the case and possibly make it harder to install the upper part.



(3) Reattach the Upper Part of Remote Controller

Install the upper part on the lower part being careful parts are facing in the correct direction.
And, test the emergency run button.



NOTES)
1. The switch box and wiring are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

⟨⟨Precautions on transmission wiring⟩⟩

① When wiring, run the wiring away the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise).
② When wiring, refer to the wiring diagram of indoor unit (attached to indoor unit) as well.

WIRING SPECIFICATION

Wiring type	Sheathed wire (2 wire)
Size	0.75~1.25mm^2
Wiring length	max 200m (See Note 1)

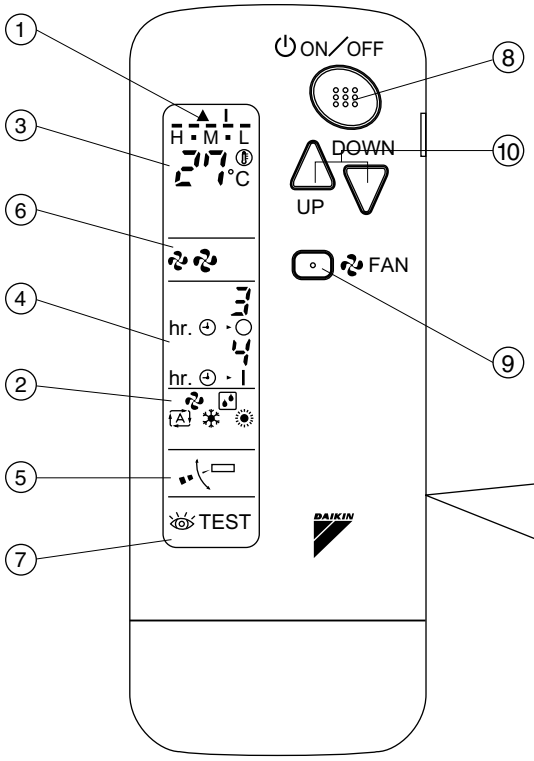
NOTE)
1. Keep wires to less than 200m total when using 2 remote controller (wired or wireless) and when not.

2P018568

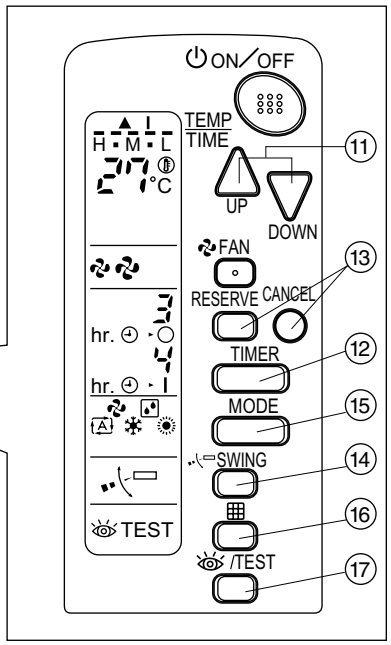
1.6 BRC7EA63W / BRC7EA66 (for FXH(Q))

1.6.1 Operation

1-1

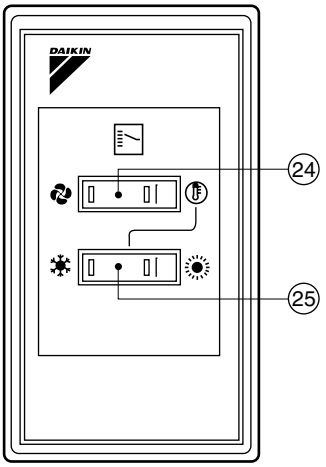


1-2

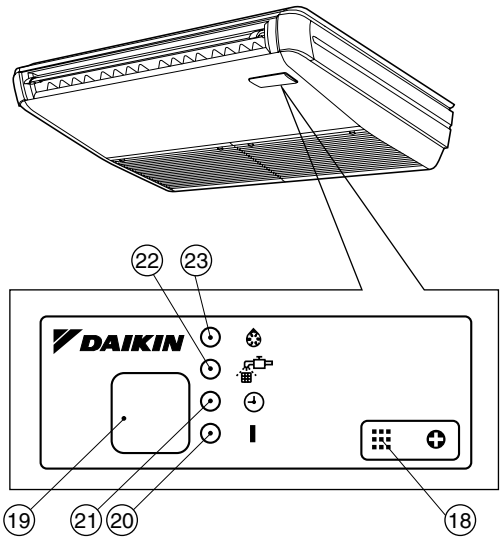


1

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



1-3



2

3P107422-8S

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 3.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 4.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.

C: 3P107422-8S

Note 1 : page 117, Note 2 : page 117, Note 3 : page 118, Note 4 : page 116

22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For straight cooling type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

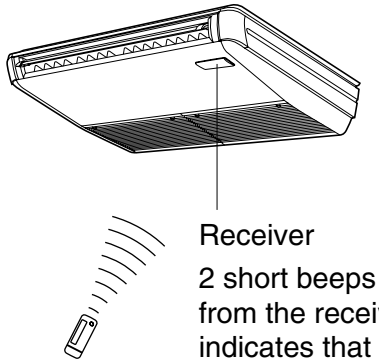
NOTES
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

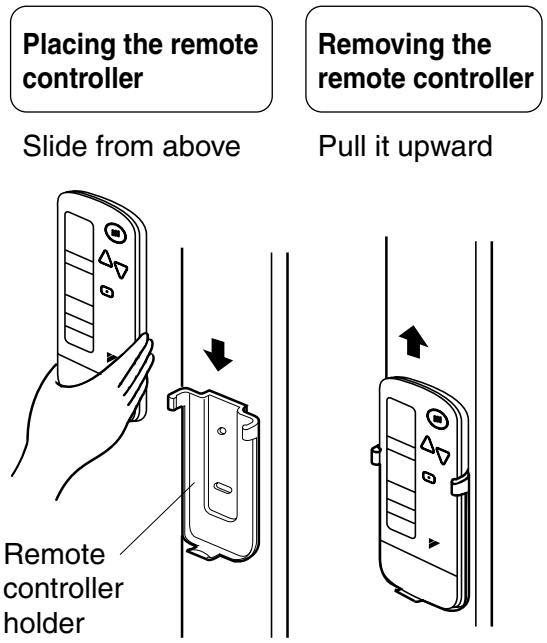
Do not drop or get it wet.
It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site
- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

C: 3P107422-8S

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder
Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

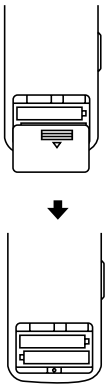


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries
Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION PROCEDURE

Refer to figure 1 (Note)

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat recovery system.
- For cooling only type, "COOLING", and "FAN" and "DRY"operation are able to select.

Note 1 : page 111

C: 3P107422-8S

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1, 2 (Note 1)

1 MODE OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- ■ COOLING OPERATION ..... " ❄ "
- ■ HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☀ "
- ■ AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " A "
  - • In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.
- ■ FAN OPERATION..... " 🌀 "
- ■ DRY OPERATION ..... " 💧 "
  - • The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
  - • Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
  - • This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

2 ON/OFF ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

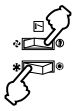
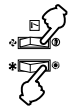
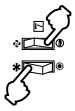
NOTE
- • Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1,3 on (Note 2)

1 OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- ■ COOLING OPERATION ..... "  "
- ■ HEATING OPERATION ..... "  "
- ■ FAN OPERATION..... "  "
- ■ DRY OPERATION ..... "  "
  - • See "FOR SYSTEM WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH" for details on dry operation.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select " 💧 "
(This operation is only available during dry operation.)

2 ON/OFF ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- • Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

C: 3P107422-8S

Note 1 : page 111, Note 2 : page 111

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
DEFROST OPERATION

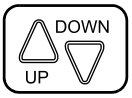
- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

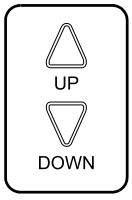
ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.



TEMPERATURE SETTING

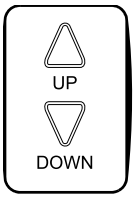
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	▪	M	▪	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

NOTE

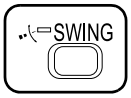
- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.



FAN SPEED CONTROL

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

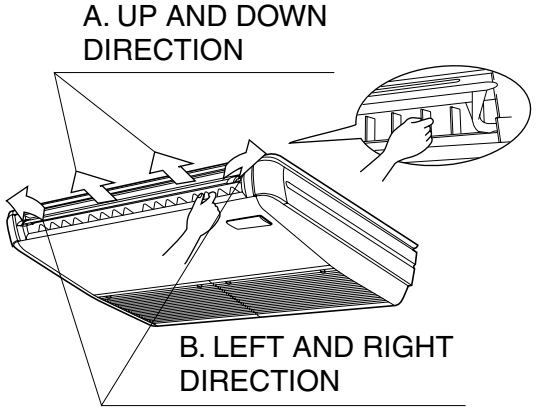
High or Low fan speed can be selected. The microchip may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.



AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

- There are 2 ways of adjusting the air discharge angle.
  1. A. Up and down adjustment
  2. B. Left and right direction

Fig. 1

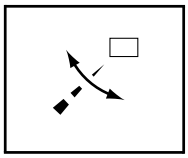


C: 3P107422-8S

A. UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- The movable limit of the flap is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation condition	• When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation
	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

NOTE

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.

- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

B. LEFT AND RIGHT DIRECTION

- Adjusting air flow direction in the left and right direction. **(Refer to Fig. 1)**

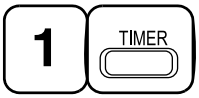
NOTE

- Only make adjustments after you have stopped the air flow direction swing in a position.
- Stop flaps from swinging before trying to angle them. Working while the flaps are moving may get your fingers pinched.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.



TIMER MODE START/ STOP

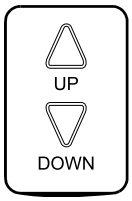
Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop .... "◷ ▸ ○"
For setting the timer start .... "◷ ▸ |"

C: 3P107422-8S

2 UP DOWN PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

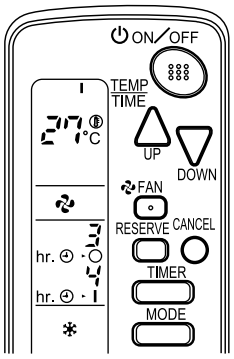
3 RESERVE TIMER RESERVE

Press the TIMER RESERVE button.
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 CANCEL TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

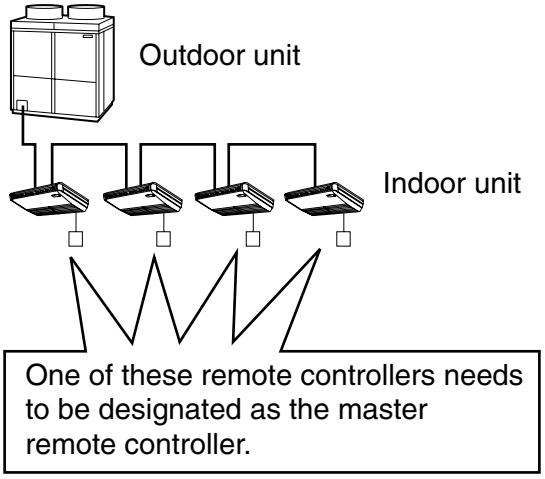
NOTE

- When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

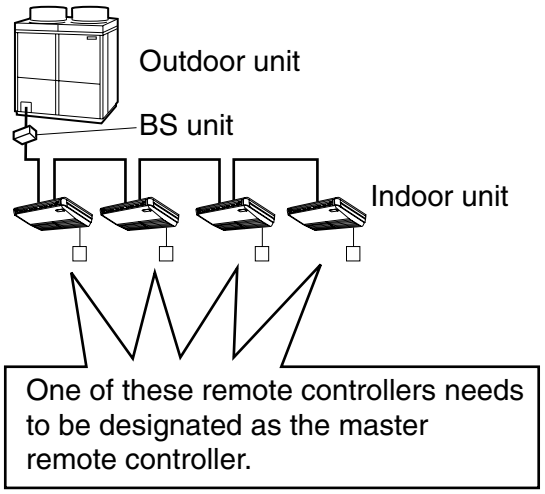
HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

■ For Heat pump system
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ For Heat recovery system
When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



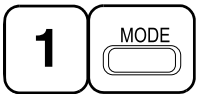
- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

C: 3P107422-8S

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

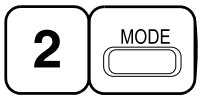
How to designate the master remote controller

Operate in the following order.



Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “ ⏲ ” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.



Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “ ⏲ ” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps [1] and [2].

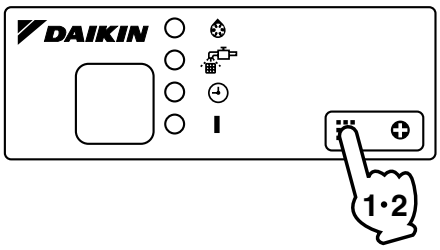
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

1 **To press the emergency operation switch.**

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



[STOP]

2 **Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.**

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

C: 3P107422-8S

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES
- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE
- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

5. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE
- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

6. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS

I. EMERGENCY STOP
When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.



Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

C: 3P107422-8S

2 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from [3] to [6].

1 short beep ..... Perform [3] and [6] steps
1 long beep..... Normal state

3 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

4 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

5 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

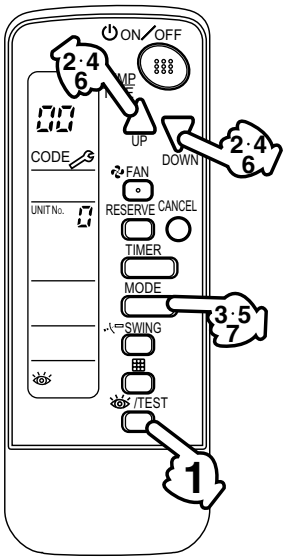
6 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 MODE **Reset of the display**

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

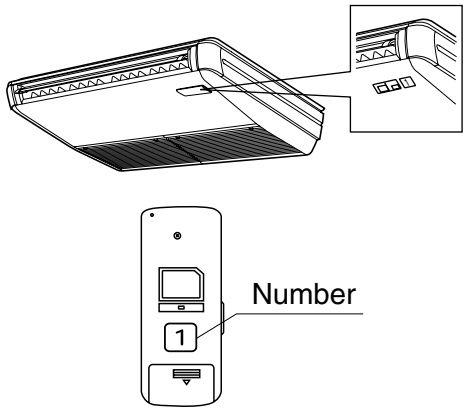


II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.

C: 3P107422-8S



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

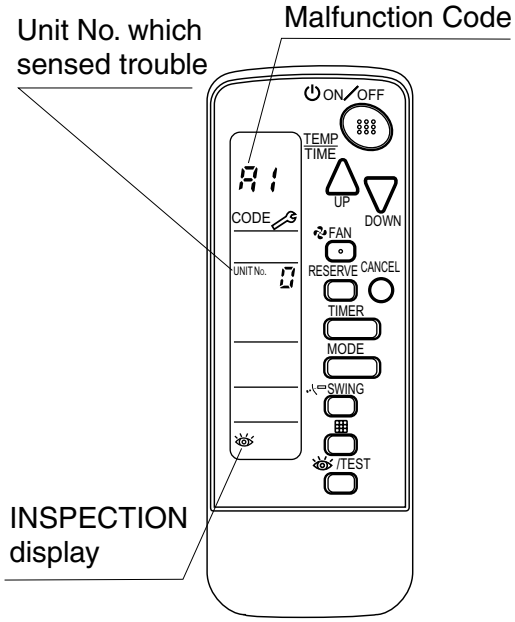
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See Note)



Disposal requirements
Batteries supplied with the remote controller are marked with this symbol.
This means that the batteries shall not be mixed with unsorted household waste.
If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol, this chemical symbol means that the battery contains a heavy metal above a certain concentration. Possible chemical symbols are:
■ Pb: lead (>0.004%)
Waste batteries must be treated at a specialized treatment facility for re-use.
By ensuring waste batteries are disposed of correctly, you will help to prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health.

Note : page 120

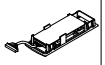
C: 3P107422-8S

1.6.2 Installation

To the installer of the unit:
Instruct the user how to operate the unit following the operation manual.

Caution
- Carefully read the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- Confirm that the place where the unit will be installed satisfies the following conditions:
  - Where the wireless remote controller is operable.
    (No strong light source or inverter fluorescent lamp must be near the signal receiver.
    The signal receiver must not be directly exposed to the sun light.)
  - Where the operation display lamp is easily visible.

ACCESSORIES
Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Receiver assembly		1 set	Remote controller holder		1 pc.	Dry cell battery LR 03 (AM4)		2 pcs.	Wire harness		1 pc.
									Screw for installing remote controller holder		2 pcs.
Transmission PC board assembly		1 set	Wireless remote controller		1 pc.	Unit No. label		1 pc.	Operation manual		1 pc.
									Clamp		2 pcs.

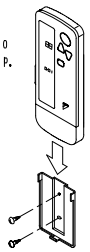
❶ INSTALLATION OF WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

<Installation of wireless remote controller>
- Do not throw the wireless remote controller or give strong shock.
  Do not store it where it may get wet or directly exposed to the sun light.
- Direct the wireless remote controller transmitting part toward the receiving part of the unit.
- The distance operable by the wireless remote controller from the unit is approximately 7 meters.
- If an obstacle such as curtains blocks the signal between the receiver and the wireless remote controller, the system does not operate.

- Installing to a wall or a pillar

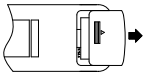
Slide the wireless remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

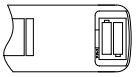


- How to set the batteries

① Slide and open the back cover in the direction shown by the arrow.



② Set the attached dry cell batteries to the place.
Make sure to match the polarity (+) (-) of the batteries to the marks indicated where the batteries are to be placed when setting the batteries.

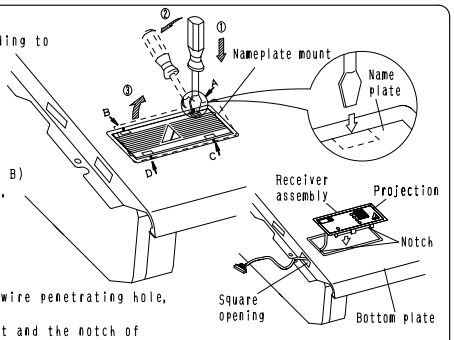


❷ INSTALLATION OF RECEIVER ASSEMBLY

(1) Preparation before installation
Remove the suction grille and the piping side decorative panel according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

(2) Installation of receiver assembly
- Remove the decorative name plate mount of the indoor unit.

① Insert the tip of the flat blade (-) screwdriver into the place shown by black circle ● (both A and B) of the name plate.
② Tilt the screwdriver in the direction shown by the arrow. (both A and B)
③ Pull the entire name plate mount toward yourself and remove one side.
④ Do the same to the remaining two places. (C and D)
⑤ Remove the entire name plate.
(the name plate mount is no longer required.)

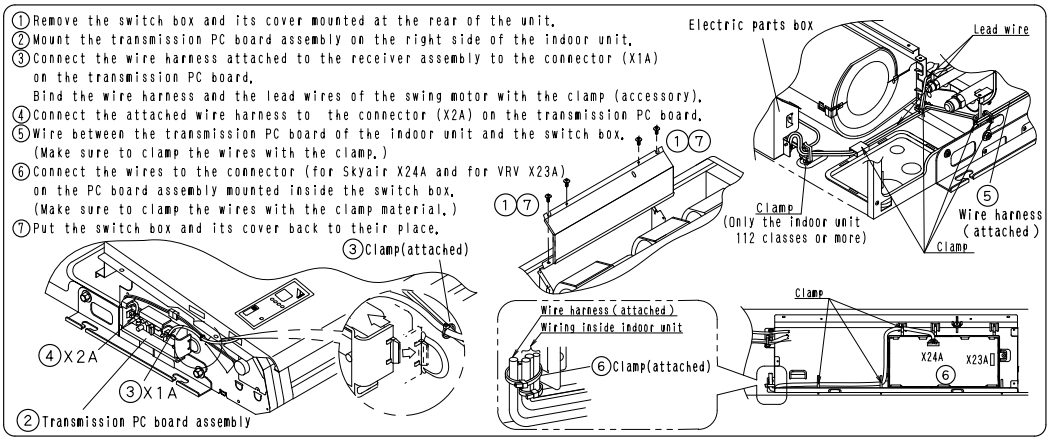


- Installation of receiver assembly
After passing the wire harness of the receiver through the electric wire penetrating hole, set the receiving part in the direction shown by the arrow.
(Fix the receiver after matching the projection of the receiving part and the notch of the bottom frame.)

1P067740-1B

❸ INSTALLATION OF TRANSMISSION PC BOARD ASSEMBLY

①Remove the switch box and its cover mounted at the rear of the unit.
②Mount the transmission PC board assembly on the right side of the indoor unit.
③Connect the wire harness attached to the receiver assembly to the connector (X1A) on the transmission PC board.
Bind the wire harness and the lead wires of the swing motor with the clamp (accessory).
④Connect the attached wire harness to the connector (X2A) on the transmission PC board.
⑤Wire between the transmission PC board of the indoor unit and the switch box.
(Make sure to clamp the wires with the clamp.)
⑥Connect the wires to the connector (for Skyair X24A and for VRV X23A) on the PC board assembly mounted inside the switch box.
(Make sure to clamp the wires with the clamp material.)
⑦Put the switch box and its cover back to their place.



❹ SETTING OF ADDRESS

<Setting the address and the MAIN/SUB stations>

When multiple units are installed in a room and controlled by one wireless remote controller, (including individual remote control in group control) make sure to set the address to both the receiving part and the wireless remote controller.

SETTING PROCEDURE (For setting the remote controllers for other units, see the installation manual attached to the air conditioners.)

(1)Setting the receiver
Set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmission PC board according to the table 1.
When using both wired and wireless remote controllers together, change the MAIN/SUB setting switch on the receiving part (SS1) to the SUB side since the wired remote controller will be used as MAIN. (Refer to table 2)

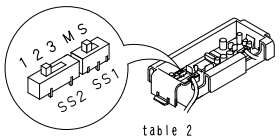


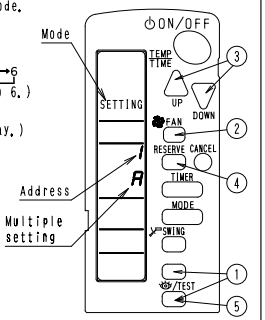
table 1

Unit No.	NO. 1	NO. 2	NO. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)	1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3

table 2

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)	M S	M S

(2)Setting the address of wireless remote controller
①Press the [▦] and [ON/TEST] buttons at the same time for 4 seconds or more to go into the FIELD SETTING mode. (The liquid crystal display on the remote controller is shown in the above drawing.)
②Press the [FAN] button and select the multiple setting. (A/b setting) (Each time the button is pressed, the display changes from "A" to "b".)
③Press the "▲" and "▼" buttons for set the address. The address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it from 1 to 3 to correspond with the receiving part. (It does not work when it is set to 4 to 6.) →1→2→3→4→5→6
④Press the [RESERVE] button and "define" the setting.
⑤Press the [ON/TEST] button for 1 second or more and the setting is completed. (It returns to normal display.)



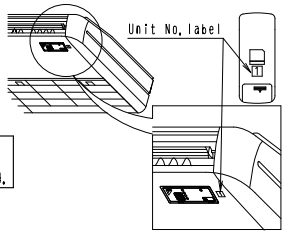
< Miltiple setting (A/b setting) >

When the indoor unit operated by this remote controller is controlled from the outside such as centralized control, sometimes the command of operation changeover and temperature setting is not accepted.
After confirming the customer's request, set the remote controller according to the following table.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	When the operation of the indoor unit is controlled by other air conditioners and equipment	For cases other than those shown left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than operation changeover and temperature setting are accepted. Receiving sound is: 1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEP	
b: Multi System	Only the items operated remain displayed for a short time	All commands are accepted. Receiving sound is: 2 SHORT BEEPS	

PRECAUTIONS
Set the unit No. of the receiving part and the wireless remote controller the same.
If the numbers are not set the same, the signal from the remote controller cannot be received.

(3)Stick the Unit No. label at the indoor unit as well as on the back of the wireless remote controller.



❺ MOUNTING SUCTION GRILLE AND DECORATIVE PANEL

●Put the piping side decorative panel and the suction grille back to the place in the reverse order according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

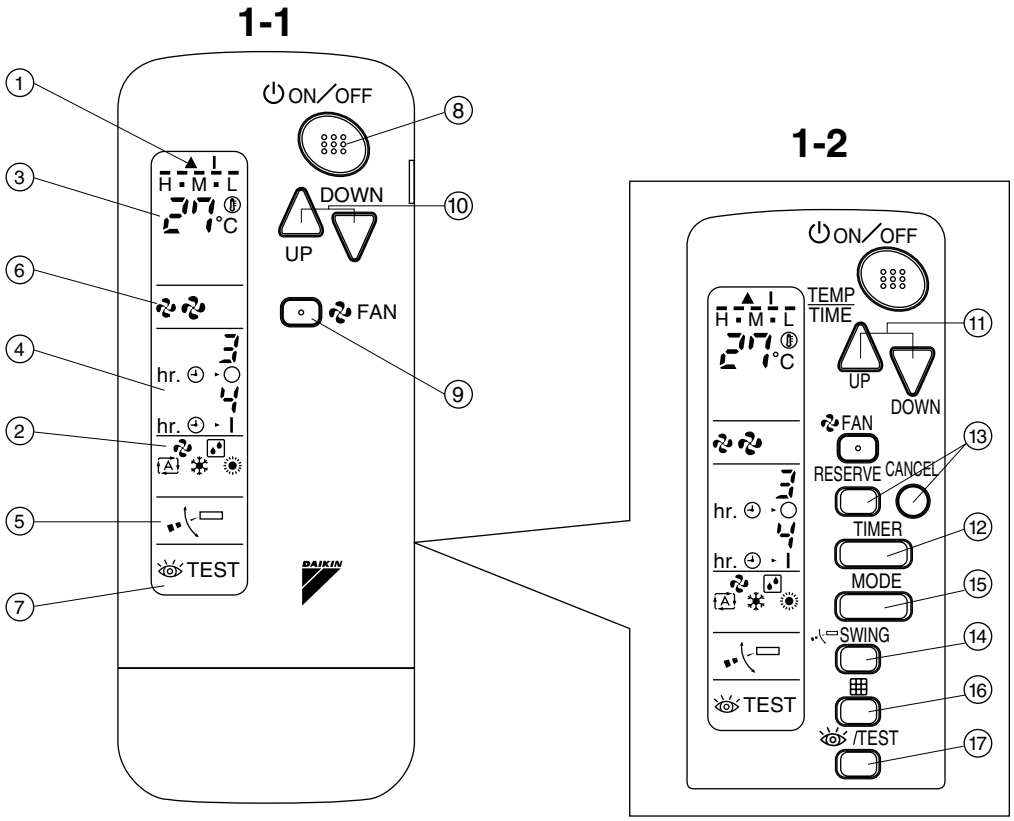
❻ TEST RUN

●Perform test run according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

1P067740-1B

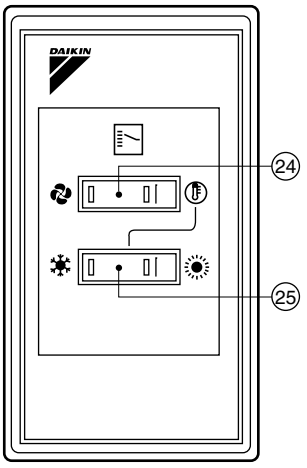
1.7 BRC7EA618 / BRC7EA619 (for FXA(Q))

1.7.1 Operation

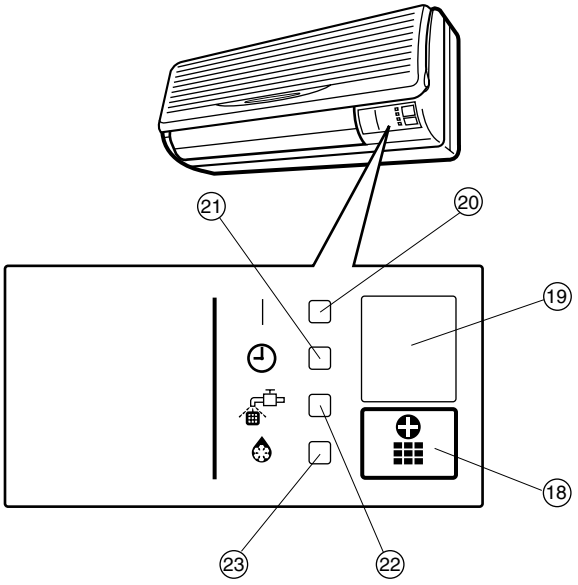


1

COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



1-3



2

3P107422-10S

1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

To gain full advantage of the air conditioner's functions and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling, we recommend that you read this instruction manual carefully before use. This air conditioner is classified under "appliances not accessible to the general public".

The precautions described herein are classified as WARNING and CAUTION. They both contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions without fail.

⚠ **WARNING**..... Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.

⚠ **CAUTION**..... Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

After reading, keep this manual in a convenient place so that you can refer to it whenever necessary. If the equipment is transferred to a new user, be sure also to hand over the manual.

⚠ **WARNING**

Be aware that prolonged, direct exposure to cool or warm air from the air conditioner, or to air that is too cool or too warm can be harmful to your physical condition and health.

When the air conditioner is malfunctioning (giving off a burning odor, etc.) turn off power to the unit and contact your local dealer.
Continued operation under such circumstances may result in a failure, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer to install your equipment.
Doing the work yourself may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer regarding modification, repair and maintenance of the air conditioner or the remote controller.
Improper workmanship may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Do not place objects, including rods, your fingers, etc., in the air inlet or outlet.
Injury may result due to contact with the air conditioner's high-speed fan blades.

Beware of fire in case of refrigerant leakage.
If the air conditioner is not operating correctly, i.e. not generating cool or warm air, refrigerant leakage could be the cause. Consult your dealer for assistance.
The refrigerant within the air conditioner is safe and normally does not leak. However, in the event of a leakage, contact with a naked burner, heater or cooker may result in generation of noxious gas. Do not longer use the air conditioner until a qualified service person confirms that the leakage has been repaired.

3P107422-10S

Consult your local dealer regarding what to do in case of refrigerant leakage.
When the air conditioner is to be installed in a small room, it is necessary to take proper measures so that the amount of any leaked refrigerant does not exceed the concentration limit in the event of a leakage. Otherwise, this may lead to an accident due to oxygen depletion.

Contact professional personnel about attachment of accessories and be sure to use only accessories specified by the manufacturer.
If a defect results from your own workmanship, it may result in water leaks, electric shock or fire.

Consult your local dealer regarding relocation and reinstallation of the air conditioner.
Improper installation work may result in leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Be sure to use fuses with the correct ampere reading.
Do not use improper fuses, copper or other wires as a substitute, as this may result in electric shock, fire, injury or damage to the unit.

Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker.
Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to earth the unit.
Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, lightning conductor or telephone earth lead. Imperfect earthing may result in electric shocks or fire.
A high surge current from lightning or other sources may cause damage to the air conditioner.

Consult the dealer if the air conditioner submerges owing to a natural disaster, such as a flood or typhoon.
Do not operate the air conditioner in that case, or otherwise a malfunction, electric shock, or fire may result.

Do not start or stop operating the air conditioner with the power supply breaker turned ON or OFF.
Otherwise, fire or water leakage may result. Furthermore, the fan will rotate abruptly if power failure compensation is enabled, which may result in injury.

Do not use the product in the atmosphere contaminated with oil vapor, such as cooking oil or machine oil vapor.
Oil vapor may cause crack damage, electric shocks, or fire.

Do not use the product in places with excessive oily smoke, such as cooking rooms, or in places with flammable gas, corrosive gas, or metal dust.
Using the product in such places may cause fire or product failures.

Do not use flammable materials (e.g., hairspray or insecticide) near the product.
Do not clean the product with organic solvents such as paint thinner.
The use of organic solvents may cause crack damage to the product, electric shocks, or fire.

Be sure to use a dedicated power supply for the air conditioner.
The use of any other power supply may cause heat generation, fire, or product failures.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than those for which it is intended.
Do not use the air conditioner for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art as this may adversely affect the performance, quality and/or longevity of the object concerned.

Do not remove the outdoor unit's fan guard.
The guard protects against the unit's high speed fan, which may cause injury.

Do not place objects that are susceptible to moisture directly beneath the indoor or outdoor units.
Under certain conditions, condensation on the main unit or refrigerant pipes, air filter dirt or drain blockage may cause dripping, resulting in fouling or failure of the object concerned.

To avoid oxygen depletion, ensure that the room is adequately ventilated if equipment such as a burner is used together with the air conditioner.

After prolonged use, check the unit stand and its mounts for damage.
If left in a damaged condition, the unit may fall and cause injury.

Do not place flammable sprays or operate spray containers near the unit as this may result in fire.

Before cleaning, be sure to stop unit operation, turn the breaker off or remove the power cord.
Otherwise, an electric shock and injury may result.

To avoid electric shocks, do not operate with wet hands.

Do not place appliances that produce naked flames in places exposed to the air flow from the unit as this may impair combustion of the burner.

Do not place heaters directly below the unit, as resulting heat can cause deformation.

Do not allow a child to mount on the outdoor unit or avoid placing any object on it.
Falling or tumbling may result in injury.

Do not block air inlets nor outlets.
Impaired air flow may result in insufficient performance or trouble.

Be sure that children, plants or animals are not exposed directly to airflow from the unit, as adverse effects may ensue.

Do not wash the air conditioner or the remote controller with water, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not place water containers (flower vases, etc.) on the unit, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not install the air conditioner at any place where there is a danger of flammable gas leakage.
In the event of a gas leakage, build-up of gas near the air conditioner may result in fire hazards.

Do not put flammable containers, such as spray cans, within 1 m from the blow-off mouth.
The containers may explode because the warm air output of the indoor or outdoor unit will affect them.

The batteries must be removed from the appliance before it is scrapped and they are disposed of safely.

Arrange the drain to ensure complete drainage.
If proper drainage from the outdoor drain pipe does not occur during air conditioner operation, there could be a blockage due to dirt and debris build-up in the pipe. This may result in a water leakage from the indoor unit. Under these circumstances, stop air conditioner operation and consult your dealer for assistance.

The appliance is not intended for use by unattended young children or infirm persons.
Impairment of bodily functions and harm to health may result.

Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the unit or its remote controller.
Accidental operation by a child may result in impairment of bodily functions and harm health.

Do not let children play on or around the outdoor unit.
If they touch the unit carelessly, injury may be caused.

Consult your dealer regarding cleaning the inside of the air conditioner.
Improper cleaning may cause breakage of plastic parts, water leakage and other damage as well as electric shocks.

To avoid injury, do not touch the air inlet or aluminum fins of the unit.

Do not place objects in direct proximity of the outdoor unit and do not let leaves and other debris accumulate around the unit.
Leaves are a hotbed for small animals which can enter the unit. Once in the unit, such animals can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire when making contact with electrical parts.

Never touch the internal parts of the controller.
Do not remove the front panel. Touching certain internal parts will cause electric shocks and damage to the unit. Please consult your dealer about checking and adjustment of internal parts.

3P107422-10S

Do not leave the remote controller wherever there is a risk of wetting.
If water gets into the remote controller there is a risk of electrical leakage and damage to electronic components.

When using the wireless remote controller, do not put a strong light beam or install an inverter fluorescent lamp near the receiving section on the main unit.
A malfunction may occur.

Watch your steps at the time of air filter cleaning or inspection.
High-place work is required, to which utmost attention must be paid.
If the scaffold is unstable, you may fall or topple down, thus causing injury.

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For cooling only type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 3.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 4.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.

3P107422-10S

Note 1 : page 134, Note 2 : page 134, Note 3 : page 135, Note 4 : page 133

19	**RECEIVER** This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)** This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)** This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)** Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)** Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For cooling only type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH** Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH** Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

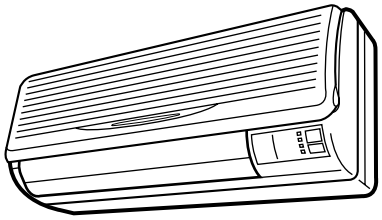
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.
- The Defrost Lamp will flash when the power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.





2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.

It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.

The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

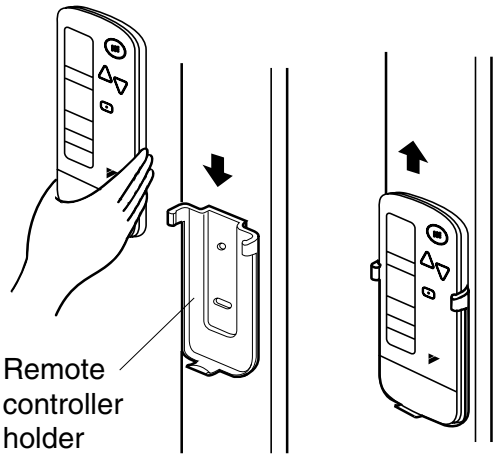
3P107422-10S

Placing the remote controller

Slide from above

Removing the remote controller

Pull it upward

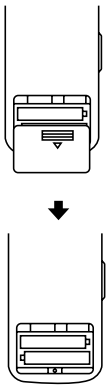


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries —

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting. In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION RANGE

VRV System

See the operation manual provided with the air conditioner.

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
		TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY		
COOLING ONLY TYPE	R71 RP71	D B	20 to 35	80% or below	D B	21 to 46
		W B	14 to 25			
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 RYP71	D B	18 to 35	80% or below	D B	– 5 to 46
		W B	12 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 RYP71	D B	15 to 27	D B	– 9 to 21
				W B	– 10 to 15

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

5. OPERATION PROCEDURE

Refer to figure 1 (Note 1)

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat pump split system or Heat recovery VRV system.
- For cooling only type, “COOLING”, and “FAN” and “DRY”operation are able to select.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1, 2 (Note 2)

1 MODE **OPERATION MODE SELECTOR**

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- ■ COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ❄ ”
- ■ HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ☀ ”
- ■ AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... “ A ”
  - In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.
- ■ FAN OPERATION..... “ ”
- ■ DRY OPERATION ..... “ ”
  - The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
  - Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
  - This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

2 ON/OFF **ON/OFF**

Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1,3 (Note 3)

1 **OPERATION MODE SELECTOR**

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- ■ COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ”
- ■ HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ”
- ■ FAN OPERATION..... “ ”
- ■ DRY OPERATION ..... “ ”
  - See “FOR SYSTEM WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH” for details on dry operation.

3P107422-10S

Note 1 : page 125, Note 2 : page 125, Note 3 : page 125

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select " " (This operation is only available during dry operation.)



ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

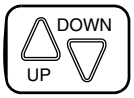
[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature
- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

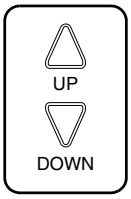
ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.



TEMPERATURE SETTING

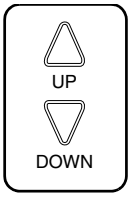
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "H" side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "L" side.

[°C]

	H	▪	M	▪	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

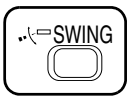
- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

NOTE
- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.



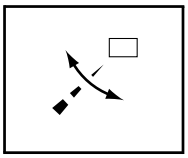
FAN SPEED CONTROL

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.
High or Low fan speed can be selected.
The microchip may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.



AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

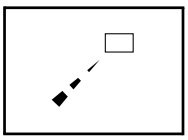
Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



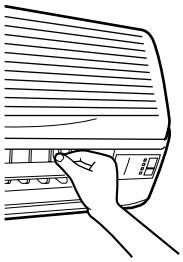
Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

Adjusting left/right air flow direction

Angle the flaps to the left/right from the knob, as wanted or as needed to air condition the room.



NOTE

- Stop flaps from swinging before trying to angle them. Working while the flaps are moving may get your fingers pinched.

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When operating continuously at downward air flow direction	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation (The flaps blow horizontally to avoid blowing cold air directly on the occupants of the room.)

NOTE

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.
- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.



TIMER MODE START/STOP

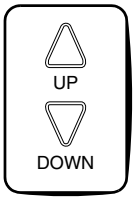
Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop .... "◷ ▸ ○"
For setting the timer start .... "◷ ▸ |"



PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3P107422-10S

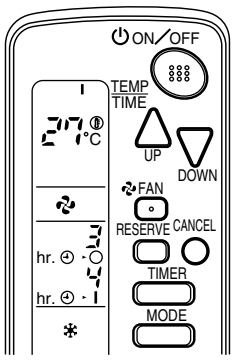
3 RESERVE TIMER RESERVE

Press the TIMER RESERVE button.
The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 CANCEL TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.



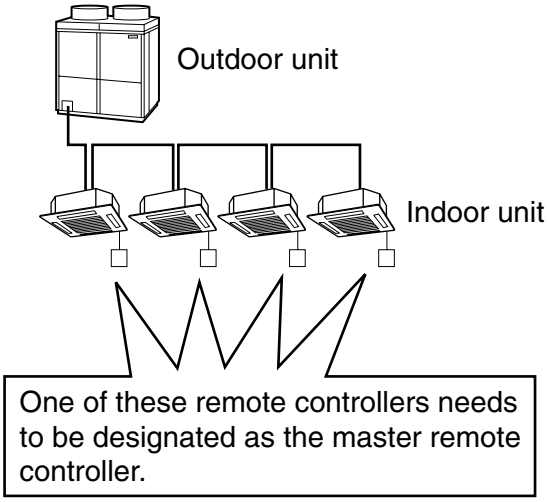
When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

NOTE
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

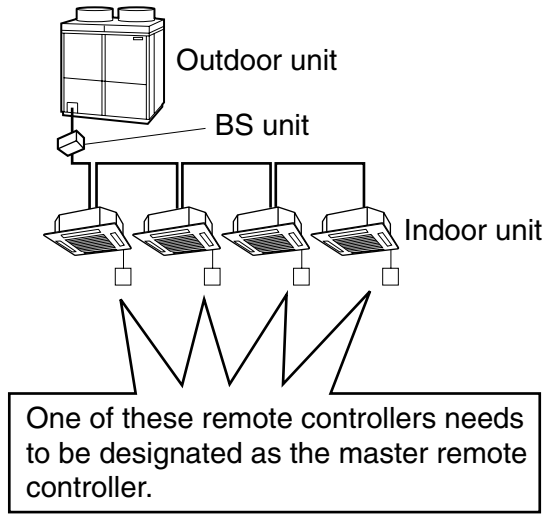
HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

■ **For Heat pump system**
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



■ **For Heat recovery system**
When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.

3P107422-10S

When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

Operate in the following order.

1 MODE

Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “ ⏲ ” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

2 MODE

Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “ ⏲ ” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps 1 and 2.

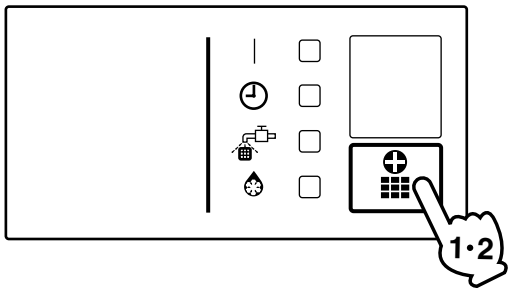
EMERGENCY OPERATION

When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]

1 To press the emergency operation switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



[STOP]

2 Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

3P107422-10S

6. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

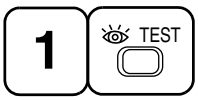
I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

7. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.



Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.



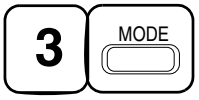
Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

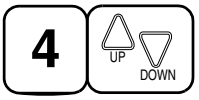
3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from [3] to [6].

1 short beep ..... Perform [3] and [6] steps
1 long beep..... Normal state



Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.



Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

3P107422-10S

5 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

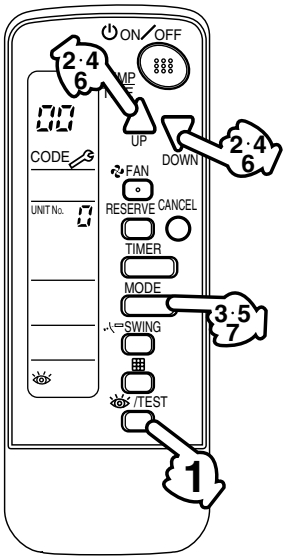
6 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 MODE **Reset of the display**

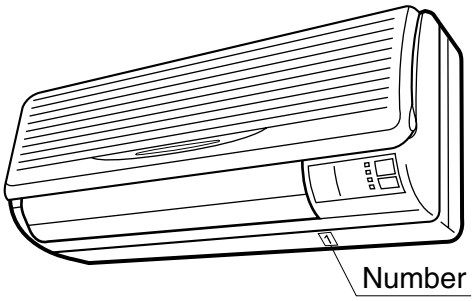
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

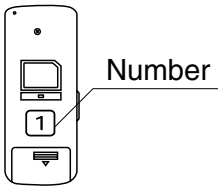


II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.





Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as "1")

2. The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.

- If the set temperature is not proper.
- If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
- If the air flow angle is not proper.

Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

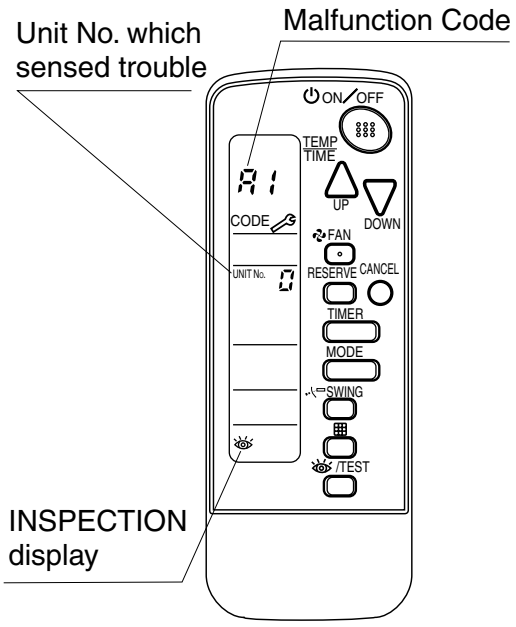
⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

3P107422-10S

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote controller and contact the place of purchase. (See Note)

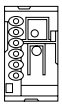
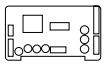
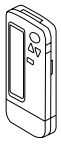
Note : page 137

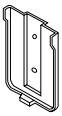
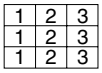
1.7.2 Installation

1. BEFORE INSTALLATION

1-1 ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver		(3) Relay harness - long	(4) Relay harness - short	Wireless remote controller	Screw
	(1) Light receiver assembly	(2) Transmission PC-board				
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.
Shape						

Name	Remote controller holder	(5) Unit No. nameplate	(6) Receiver label	Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)	(7) Clamp
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.
Shape					

Name	Operation manual	Installation manual
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.

1-2 NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

2. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

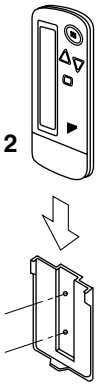
⟨Installing wireless remote controller⟩

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

C: 3P091240-1-2

Installing to a wall or a pillar

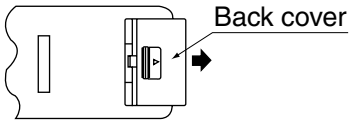
1. Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.



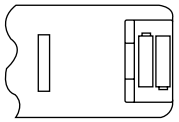
2. Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

How to insert the batteries

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the back cover as before.



3. RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

Remove the service lid and the front grill. See the installation manual that came with the main indoor unit for details on removal.

(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

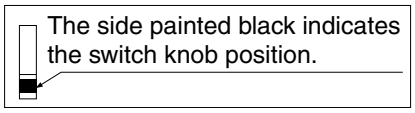
If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

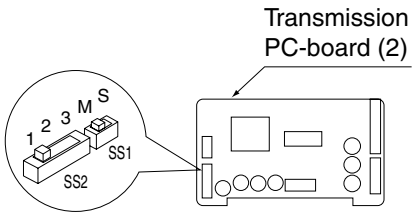
1. Setting the receiver

Set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmission PC-board (2) according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			



When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.
(The wired remote controller will be “MAIN”.)



	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)		

C: 3P091240-1-3

2. Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

1. Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)

2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".

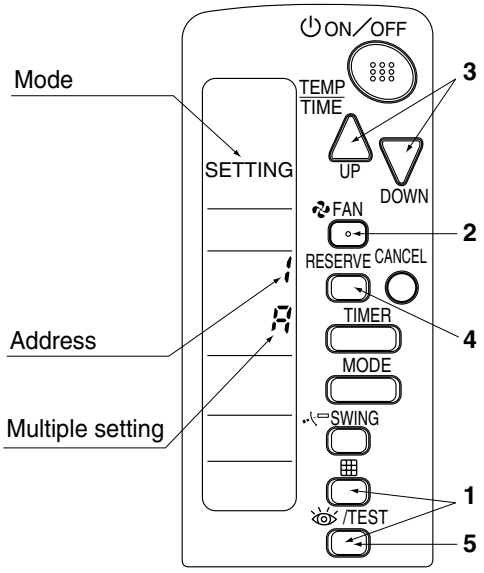
3. Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

→1→2→3→4→5→6

Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)

4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.

5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



Multiple settings A/b

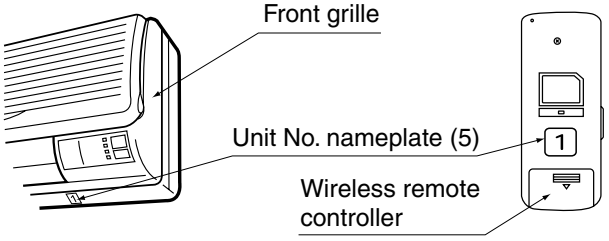
When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Movement when the operation is controlled by the other air conditioners and equipment
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	
A: Standard	All items displayed.	When operation changeover, temperature setting or the like is carried out from the remote controller, the indoor unit rejects the instruction. (Signal receiving sound "peeh" or "pick-pick-pick") As a result, a discrepancy between the operation state of the indoor unit and the indication of the remote controller display occurs.
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted. (Signal receiving sound "pick-pick") Since the indication of the remote controller is turned off, no discrepancy such as mentioned above occurs.

3. Attach the included unit No. nameplate (5) to the front grill on the indoor unit and the back of the wireless remote controller.

[PRECAUTIONS]

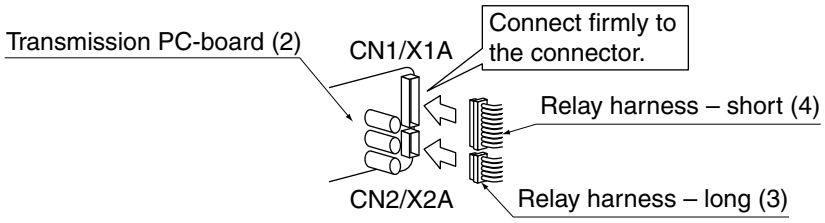
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.



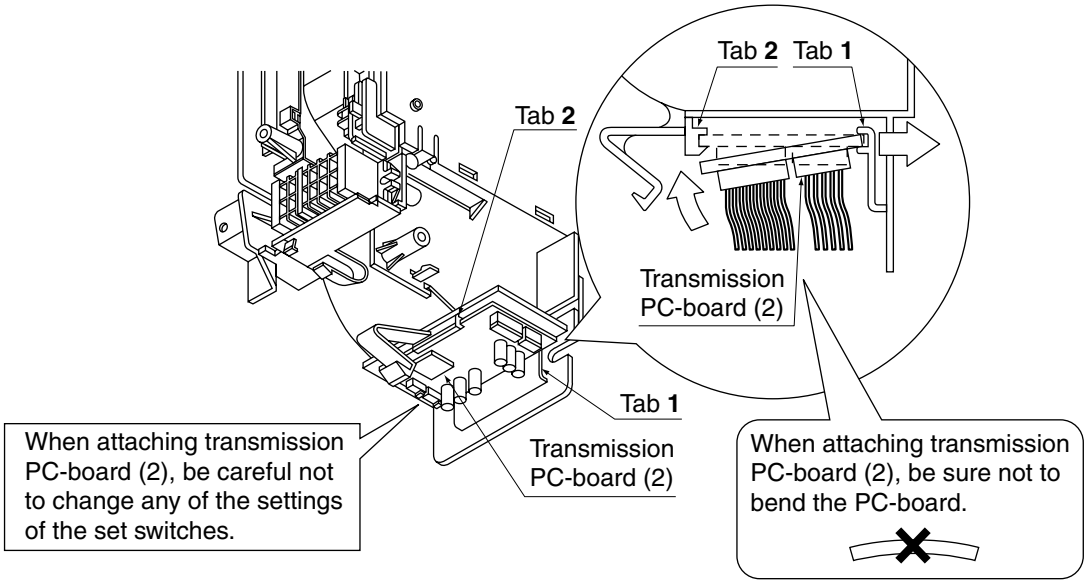
C: 3P091240-1-4

(3) Attaching the receiver

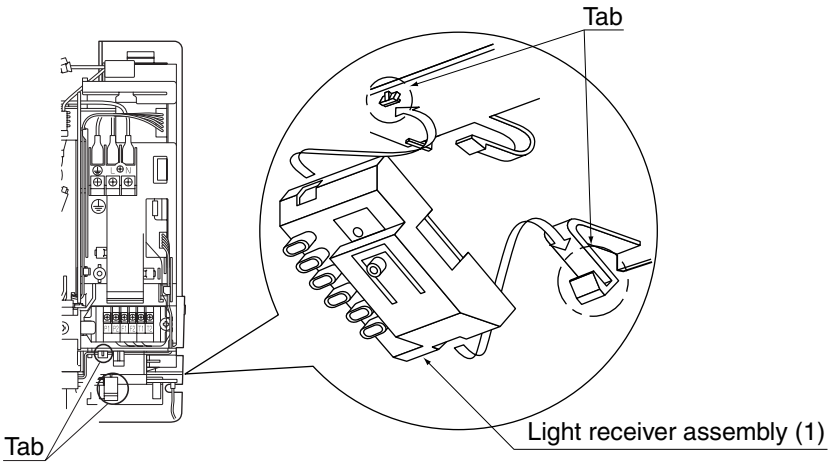
1. Connect the included relay harness – long (3) and relay harness – short (4) relay harnesses to the connector on the transmission PC-board (2).



2. Following the figure, insert transmission PC-board (2) into tab **1**, then insert into tab **2** while pushing tab **1** in the direction of the arrow.

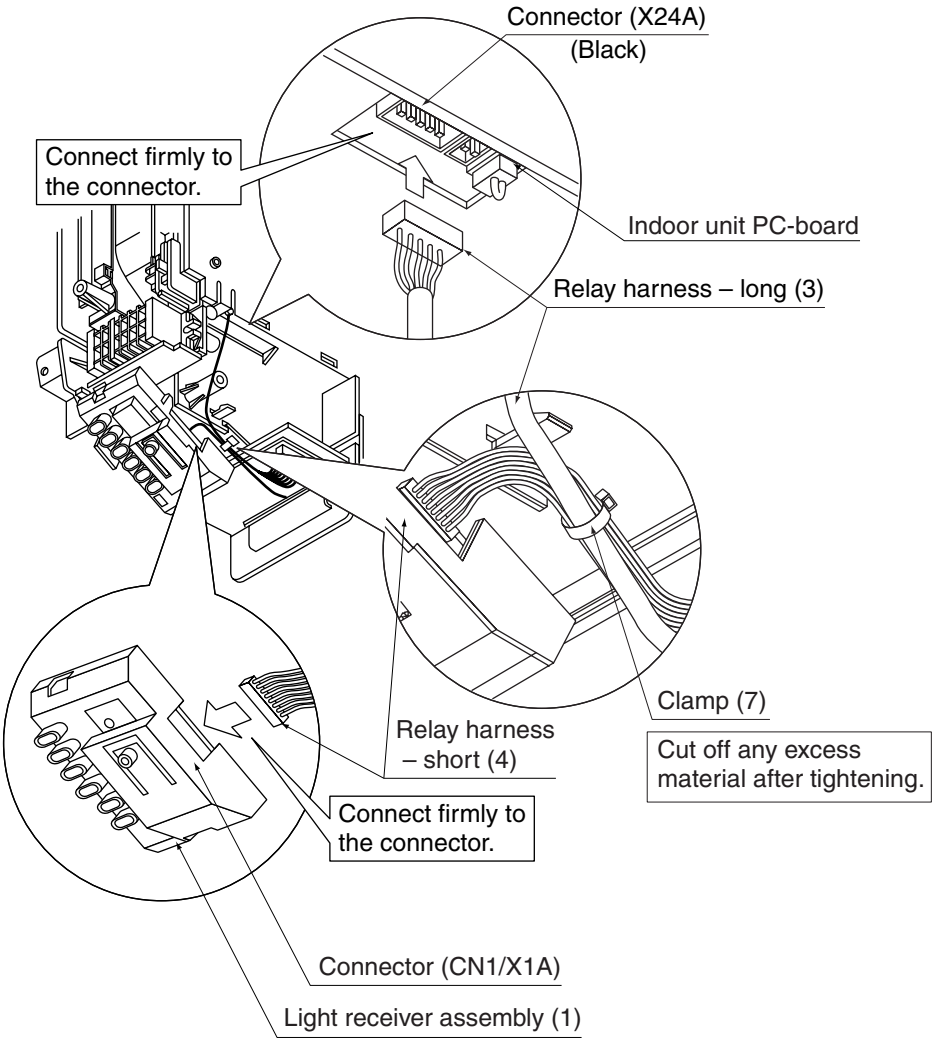


3. Attach the included light receiver assembly (1) to the 2 tabs on the indoor unit, as per the figure.

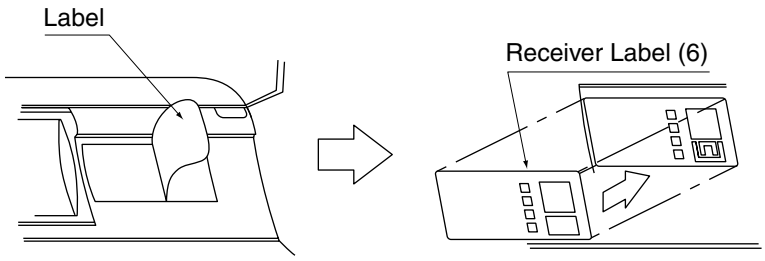


C: 3P091240-1-5

4. Connect the relay harnesses which were connected to the transmission PC-board (2) in step **1.** as follows.
Relay harness – long (3) to connector X24A on the indoor unit PC-board
Relay harness – short (4) to connector CN1/X1A on the light receiver assembly (1)
After making these connection, clamp down relay harness – long (3) and relay harness – short (4) relay harnesses using the included clamp (7).



(4) Attaching the receiver label
Remove label on the front grill. Detach the adhesive.
Attach the receiver label (6) as the main indoor unit.

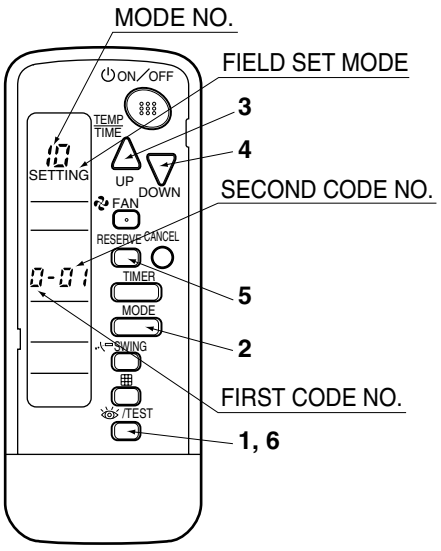


Following the installation manual that came with the main indoor unit, attach the front grill.

C: 3P091240-1-6

4. FIELD SETTING

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.



Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " ▲ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▼ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy", set Mode No. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING	SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
			01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Light	Approx. 200 hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 100 hrs.	–
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)	Display		Do not display		–
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)	Forced OFF input		ON/OFF		–
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)	1˚C		0.5˚C		–
13	0	Airflow rate increase mode (to be set upon user's request)	Standard		A little increase		Increase

NOTE
The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to "01".
Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal.
(For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

5. TEST OPERATION

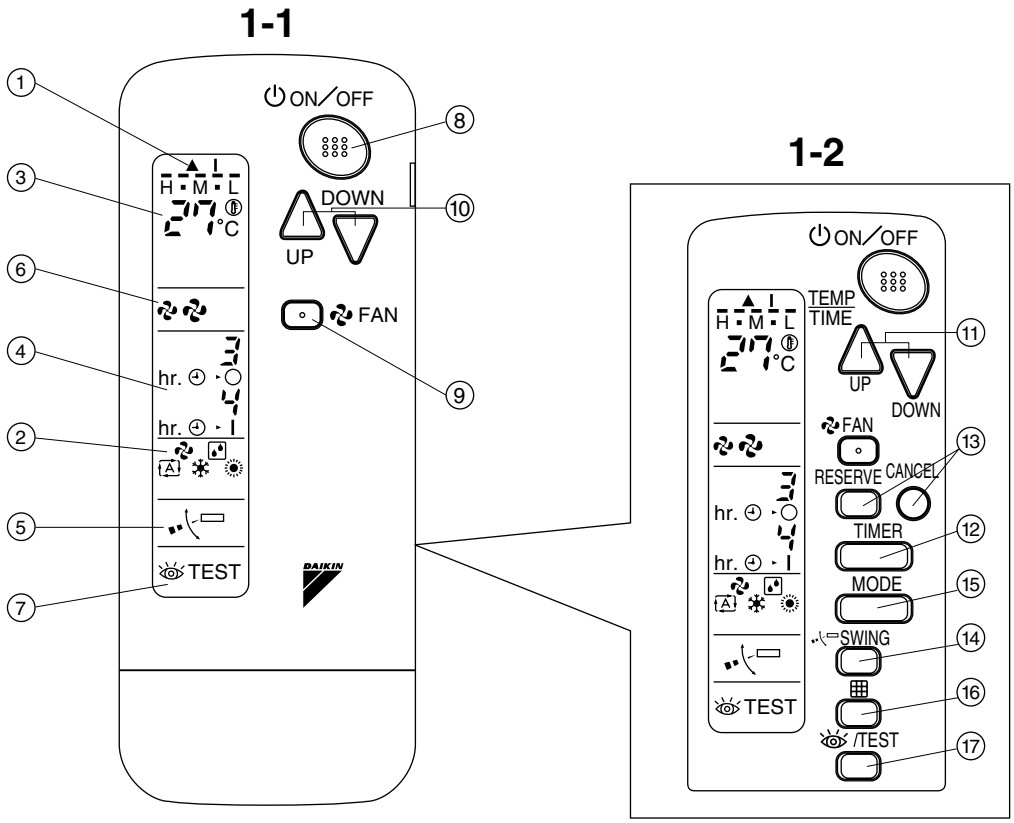
Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

[PRECAUTIONS]
1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

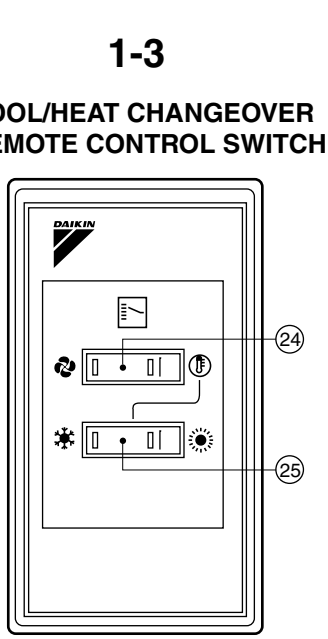
C: 3P091240-1-7

1.8 BRC7E530W / BRC7E531W (for FXZQ)

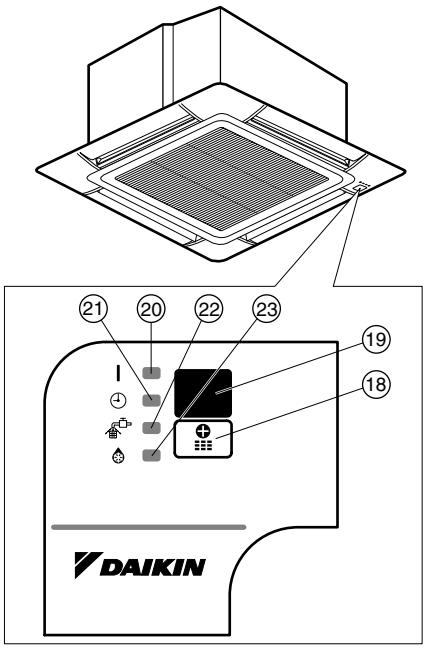
1.8.1 Operation



1



1



2

3P107422-1S

1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

To gain full advantage of the air conditioner's functions and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling, we recommend that you read this instruction manual carefully before use. This air conditioner is classified under "appliances not accessible to the general public".

The precautions described herein are classified as WARNING and CAUTION. They both contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions without fail.

⚠ **WARNING** ..... Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.

⚠ **CAUTION** ..... Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

After reading, keep this manual in a convenient place so that you can refer to it whenever necessary. If the equipment is transferred to a new user, be sure also to hand over the manual.

⚠ WARNING

Be aware that prolonged, direct exposure to cool or warm air from the air conditioner, or to air that is too cool or too warm can be harmful to your physical condition and health.

When the air conditioner is malfunctioning (giving off a burning odor, etc.) turn off power to the unit and contact your local dealer.
Continued operation under such circumstances may result in a failure, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer to install your equipment.
Doing the work yourself may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Consult your local dealer regarding modification, repair and maintenance of the air conditioner or the remote controller.
Improper workmanship may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Do not place objects, including rods, your fingers, etc., in the air inlet or outlet.
Injury may result due to contact with the air conditioner's high-speed fan blades.

Beware of fire in case of refrigerant leakage.
If the air conditioner is not operating correctly, i.e. not generating cool or warm air, refrigerant leakage could be the cause. Consult your dealer for assistance.
The refrigerant within the air conditioner is safe and normally does not leak. However, in the event of a leakage, contact with a naked burner, heater or cooker may result in generation of noxious gas. Do not longer use the air conditioner until a qualified service person confirms that the leakage has been repaired.

Consult your local dealer regarding what to do in case of refrigerant leakage.
When the air conditioner is to be installed in a small room, it is necessary to take proper measures so that the amount of any leaked refrigerant does not exceed the concentration limit in the event of a leakage. Otherwise, this may lead to an accident due to oxygen depletion.

Contact professional personnel about attachment of accessories and be sure to use only accessories specified by the manufacturer.
If a defect results from your own workmanship, it may result in water leaks, electric shock or fire.

Consult your local dealer regarding relocation and reinstallation of the air conditioner.
Improper installation work may result in leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.

Be sure to use fuses with the correct ampere reading.
Do not use improper fuses, copper or other wires as a substitute, as this may result in electric shock, fire, injury or damage to the unit.

Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker.
Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to earth the unit.
Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, lightning conductor or telephone earth lead. Imperfect earthing may result in electric shocks or fire.
A high surge current from lightning or other sources may cause damage to the air conditioner.

Consult the dealer if the air conditioner submerges owing to a natural disaster, such as a flood or typhoon.
Do not operate the air conditioner in that case, or otherwise a malfunction, electric shock, or fire may result.

Do not start or stop operating the air conditioner with the power supply breaker turned ON or OFF.
Otherwise, fire or water leakage may result. Furthermore, the fan will rotate abruptly if power failure compensation is enabled, which may result in injury.

Do not use the product in the atmosphere contaminated with oil vapor, such as cooking oil or machine oil vapor.
Oil vapor may cause crack damage, electric shocks, or fire.

Do not use the product in places with excessive oily smoke, such as cooking rooms, or in places with flammable gas, corrosive gas, or metal dust.
Using the product in such places may cause fire or product failures.

Do not use flammable materials (e.g., hairspray or insecticide) near the product.
Do not clean the product with organic solvents such as paint thinner.
The use of organic solvents may cause crack damage to the product, electric shocks, or fire.

Be sure to use a dedicated power supply for the air conditioner.
The use of any other power supply may cause heat generation, fire, or product failures.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than those for which it is intended.
Do not use the air conditioner for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art as this may adversely affect the performance, quality and/or longevity of the object concerned.

Do not remove the outdoor unit's fan guard.
The guard protects against the unit's high speed fan, which may cause injury.

Do not place objects that are susceptible to moisture directly beneath the indoor or outdoor units.
Under certain conditions, condensation on the main unit or refrigerant pipes, air filter dirt or drain blockage may cause dripping, resulting in fouling or failure of the object concerned.

To avoid oxygen depletion, ensure that the room is adequately ventilated if equipment such as a burner is used together with the air conditioner.

3P107422-1S

After prolonged use, check the unit stand and its mounts for damage.
If left in a damaged condition, the unit may fall and cause injury.

Do not place flammable sprays or operate spray containers near the unit as this may result in fire.

Before cleaning, be sure to stop unit operation, turn the breaker off or remove the power cord.
Otherwise, an electric shock and injury may result.

To avoid electric shocks, do not operate with wet hands.

Do not place appliances that produce naked flames in places exposed to the air flow from the unit as this may impair combustion of the burner.

Do not place heaters directly below the unit, as resulting heat can cause deformation.

Do not allow a child to mount on the outdoor unit or avoid placing any object on it.
Falling or tumbling may result in injury.

Do not block air inlets nor outlets.
Impaired air flow may result in insufficient performance or trouble.

Be sure that children, plants or animals are not exposed directly to airflow from the unit, as adverse effects may ensue.

Do not wash the air conditioner or the remote controller with water, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not place water containers (flower vases, etc.) on the unit, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.

Do not install the air conditioner at any place where there is a danger of flammable gas leakage.
In the event of a gas leakage, build-up of gas near the air conditioner may result in fire hazards.

Do not put flammable containers, such as spray cans, within 1 m from the blow-off mouth.
The containers may explode because the warm air output of the indoor or outdoor unit will affect them.

The batteries must be removed from the appliance before it is scrapped and they are disposed of safely.

Arrange the drain to ensure complete drainage.
If proper drainage from the outdoor drain pipe does not occur during air conditioner operation, there could be a blockage due to dirt and debris build-up in the pipe. This may result in a water leakage from the indoor unit. Under these circumstances, stop air conditioner operation and consult your dealer for assistance.

The appliance is not intended for use by unattended young children or infirm persons.
Impairment of bodily functions and harm to health may result.

Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the unit or its remote controller.
Accidental operation by a child may result in impairment of bodily functions and harm health.

Do not let children play on or around the outdoor unit.
If they touch the unit carelessly, injury may be caused.

Consult your dealer regarding cleaning the inside of the air conditioner.
Improper cleaning may cause breakage of plastic parts, water leakage and other damage as well as electric shocks.

To avoid injury, do not touch the air inlet or aluminum fins of the unit.

Do not place objects in direct proximity of the outdoor unit and do not let leaves and other debris accumulate around the unit.
Leaves are a hotbed for small animals which can enter the unit. Once in the unit, such animals can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire when making contact with electrical parts.

Never touch the internal parts of the controller.
Do not remove the front panel. Touching certain internal parts will cause electric shocks and damage to the unit. Please consult your dealer about checking and adjustment of internal parts.

Do not leave the remote controller wherever there is a risk of wetting.
If water gets into the remote controller there is a risk of electrical leakage and damage to electronic components.

When using the wireless remote controller, do not put a strong light beam or install an inverter fluorescent lamp near the receiving section on the main unit.
A malfunction may occur.

Watch your steps at the time of air filter cleaning or inspection.
High-place work is required, to which utmost attention must be paid.
If the scaffold is unstable, you may fall or topple down, thus causing injury.

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For cooling only type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 3.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 4.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH**
	This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.

3P107422-1S

Note 1 : page 155, Note 2 : page 156, Note 3 : page 156, Note 4 : page 155

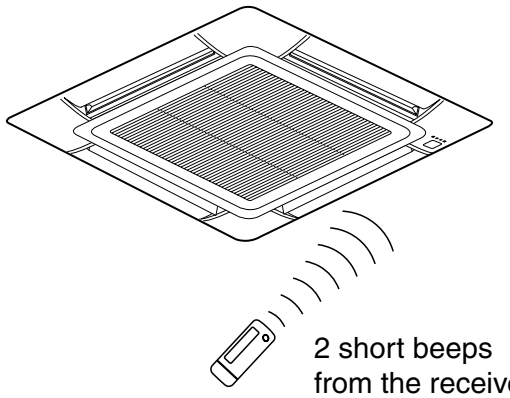
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started. (For cooling only type this lamp does not turn on.)
24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.
- The Defrost Lamp will flash when the power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller
Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.
If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



2 short beeps from the receiver indicates that the transmission is properly done.

Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.
It may be damaged.

Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

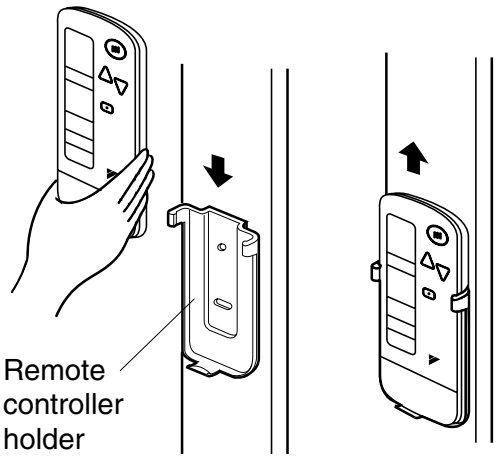
Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder

Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

Placing the remote controller	Removing the remote controller
Slide from above	Pull it upward

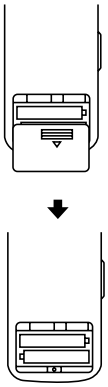


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries

Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]

- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

IN THE CASE OF CENTRALIZED CONTROL SYSTEM

If the indoor unit is under centralized control, it is necessary to switch the remote controller's setting.
In this case, contact your DAIKIN dealer.

4. OPERATION RANGE

SKYAIR System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		INDOOR HUMIDITY	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
RS50 · 60 RKS25 · 35 · 50 · 60 RXS25 · 35 · 50 · 60	DB	21 to 32	80% or below	DB	– 10 to 46
	WB	14 to 23			
3MKS50 4MKS58 · 75 · 90 3MXS52 4MXS68 · 80	DB	21 to 32	80% or below	DB	– 10 to 46
	WB	14 to 23			

HEATING [°C]

OUTDOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
RXS25 · 35 · 50 · 60	DB	10 to 30	DB	– 14 to 24
			WB	– 15 to 18
3MXS52 4MXS68 · 80	DB	10 to 30	DB	– 14 to 21
			WB	– 15 to 15.5

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB: Wet bulb temperature

3P107422-1S

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

VRV System
See the operation manual provided with the air conditioner.

5. OPERATION PROCEDURE

Refer to figure 1 (Note 1)

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and cooling only type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system type.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

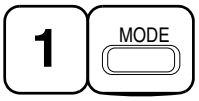
COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC, FAN, AND PROGRAM DRY OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by Heat pump split system.
- For cooling only type, “COOLING”, and “FAN” and “DRY”operation are able to select.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1, 2 (Note 2)



OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ❄ ”
- HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ☀ ”
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION..... “ A ”
  - In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted.
- FAN OPERATION ..... “ ”
- DRY OPERATION..... “ ”
  - The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
  - Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
  - This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.



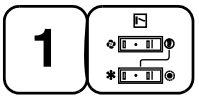
ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button
OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE
- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

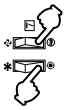
⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH⟩⟩

Refer to figure 1-1,3 (Note 3)



OPERATION MODE SELECTOR

(1) Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... “ ” 
- HEATING OPERATION ..... “ ” 

3P107422-1S

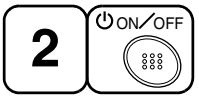
Note 1 : page 146, Note 2 : page 146, Note 3 : page 146

■ FAN OPERATION ..... “  ”

■ DRY OPERATION ..... “  ”

- See “FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH” for details on dry operation.

(2) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select “ ”
(This operation is only available during dry operation.)



ON/OFF

Press ON/OFF button

OPERATION lamp lights up or goes off and the system starts or stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes.
  Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]
DEFROST OPERATION

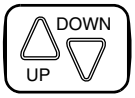
- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

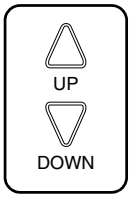
ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE, FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.



TEMPERATURE SETTING

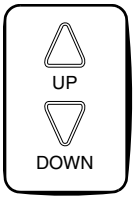
Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “H” side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to “L” side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

NOTE

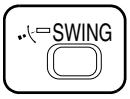
- The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C to 32°C.

3P107422-1S



FAN SPEED CONTROL

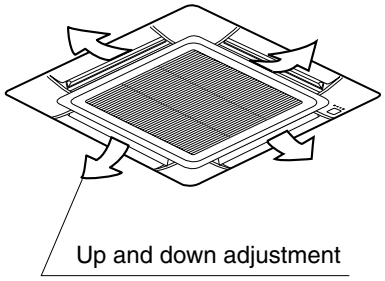
Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.
High or Low fan speed can be selected.
The micro computer may sometimes control the fan speed in order to protect the unit.



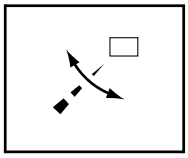
AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST

UP AND DOWN DIRECTION

- The movable limit of the flap is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.



Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes the air flow direction is fixed (Fixed air flow direction setting).

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Heating
Operation conditions	• When starting operation • When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation (The flaps blow horizontally to avoid blowing cold air directly on the occupants of the room.)

NOTES

- If you try cooling or programmed drying, while the flaps are facing downward, air flow direction may change unexpectedly. There is nothing wrong with the equipment. This serves to prevent dew formed on parts in the air discharge outlet from dripping.
- Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION

Operate in the following order.

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.
  Programming the stop time (◷ ▸ ○)
  .... The system stops
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
  Programming the start time (◷ ▸ |)
  .... The system starts
  operating after the set time has elapsed.
- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

3P107422-1S

1 TIMER MODE START/ STOP

Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.

For setting the timer stop .... "◷ ▸ ○"

For setting the timer start .... "◷ ▸ |"

2 PROGRAMMING TIME

Press the PROGRAMMING TIME button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.

UP — When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

DOWN — When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

3 TIMER RESERVE

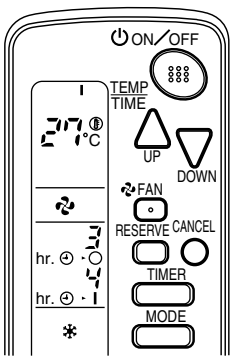
Press the TIMER RESERVE button.

The timer setting procedure ends.
The display or changes from flashing light to a constant light.

4 TIMER CANCEL

Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

NOTES

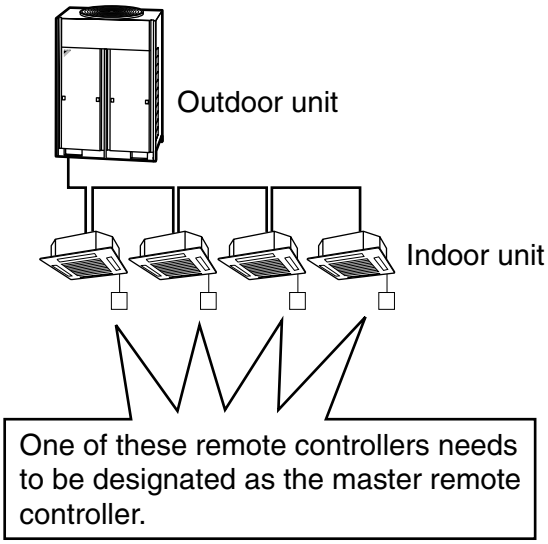
- When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For VRV system)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

■ For Heat pump system

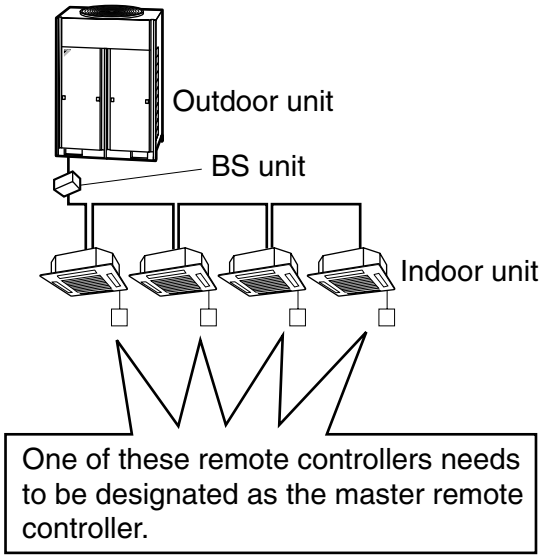
When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



3P107422-1S

■ **For Heat recovery system**

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only Heat recovery system) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.

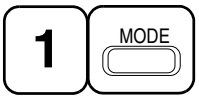
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.

When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.

Only with Heat recovery system, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

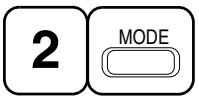
How to designate the master remote controller

Operate in the following order.



Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “ ◷ ” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.



Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “ ◷ ” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps 1 and 2.

EMERGENCY OPERATION

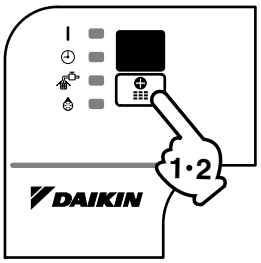
When the remote controller does not work due to battery failure or the absence thereof, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

[START]



To press the emergency operation switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.



3P107422-1S

[STOP]

2 **Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.**

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

- Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

6. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

7. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

1 TEST

Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

2 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from 3 to 6.

1 short beep ..... Perform 3 and 6 steps.

1 long beep..... Normal state

3 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

4 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

5 MODE

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

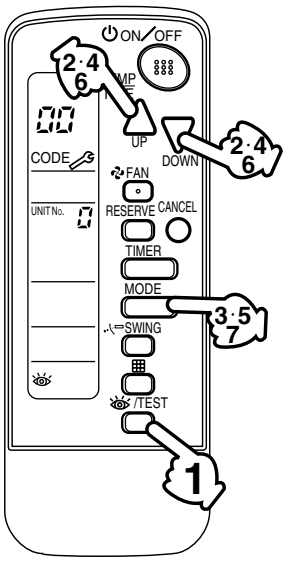
6 UP DOWN

Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.
The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

7 MODE **Reset of the display**

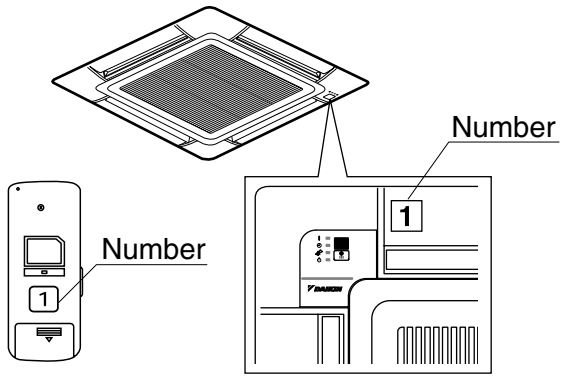
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.



3P107422-1S

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. **The unit does not operate at all.**
   - Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
   - Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
   - Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.



Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as “1”)

2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

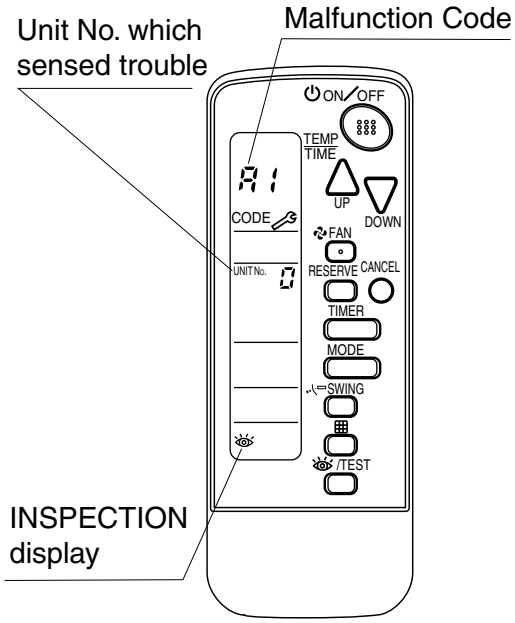
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 - UF) on the remote controller.
Notify and inform the model name and what the malfunction code indicates to your Daikin dealer.

3P107422-1S

1.8.2 Installation

1. SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read this "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly. After completing the installation, make sure at start up operation that the unit operates properly. Please instruct the customer how to operate the unit and keep maintenance.

Meaning of caution symbols

CAUTION ..... If the caution is not observed, it may cause injury or damage to equipment.

NOTE ..... These instructions will ensure proper use of the equipment.

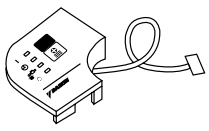
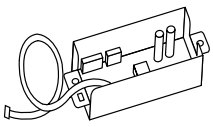
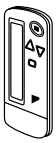
CAUTION

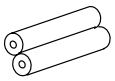
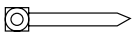
- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit and the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
- Confirm that following conditions are satisfied prior to installation.
  - Ensure that nothing interrupts the operation of the wireless remote controller. (Ensure that there is neither a source of light nor fluorescent lamp near the receiver. Also, ensure that the receiver is not exposed of direct sunlight.)
  - Ensure that the operation display lamp and other indicators are easy to see.
- The installation position of this kit is 1 position of the decoration panel. Therefore, confirm that its position is set so that the single form the wireless remote controller can be easily transmitted and its display can be easily seen.

2. BEFORE INSTALLATION

2-1 ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver	Transmitter board	Tapping screw for transmitter board	Wireless remote controller	Remote controller holder
Quantity	1 set.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape					

Name	Dry cell battery LR03 (AM4)	Unit No. label	Screw for installing remote controller holder	Operation manual	Clamp
Quantity	2 pcs.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape					

2-2 NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

3P107423-1B

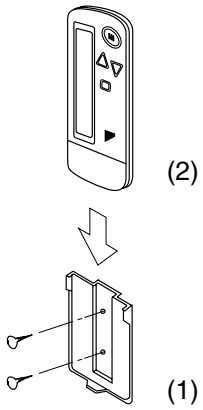
3. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

<Installing wireless remote controller>

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

Installing to a wall or a pillar

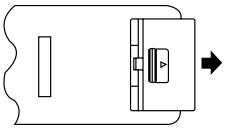
(1) Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.



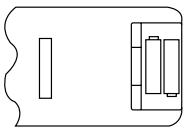
(2) Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.

- **How to insert the batteries**

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.

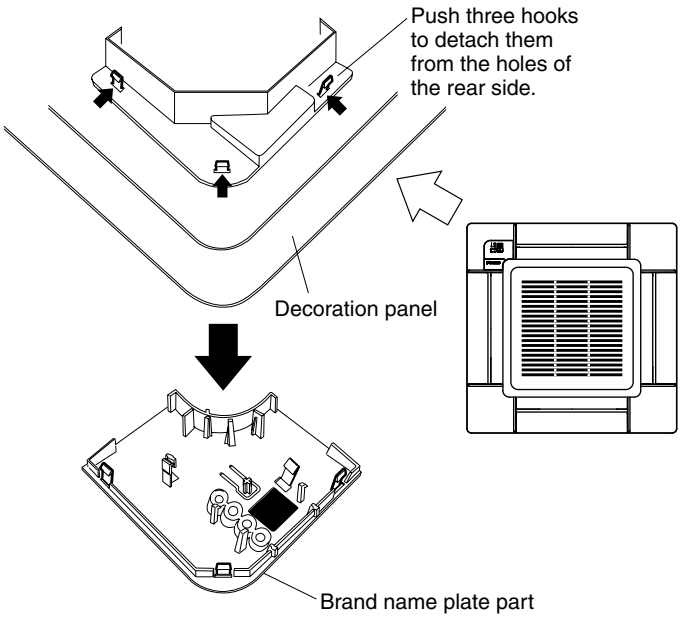


3P107423-1B

4. RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Preparations before installation

1. Detach the brand name plate part of the decoration corner panel piece, before attaching the decoration panel. This part is not needed hereafter.
2. Next, remove the suction grille and the air filter according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
3. Remove the control box lid according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit. (Be sure to turn off power, before removing the control box lid.)



(2) Determination of address and MAIN/ SUB remote controller.

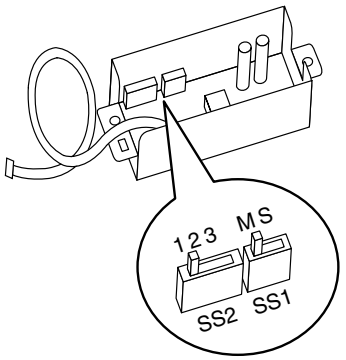
If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.
If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

SETTING PROCEDURE

1. Setting the receiver

Set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the transmitter board according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			



When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/ SUB switch (SS1) of the transmitter board to SUB.

	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)		

3P107423-1B

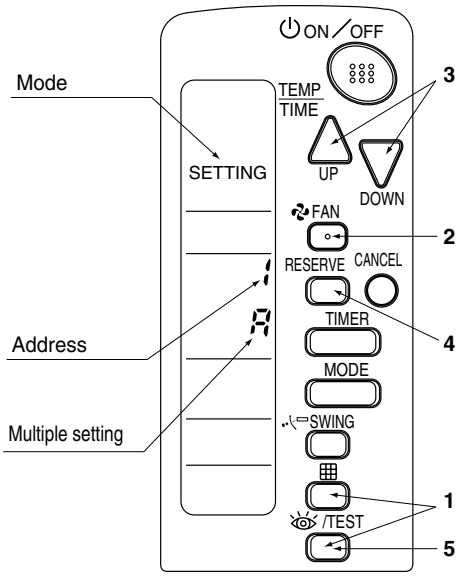
2. Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to " 1 ")

Setting from the remote controller

1. Hold down the [▦] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)
2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".
3. Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

   1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6

   Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)
4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.
5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



Multiple settings A/b

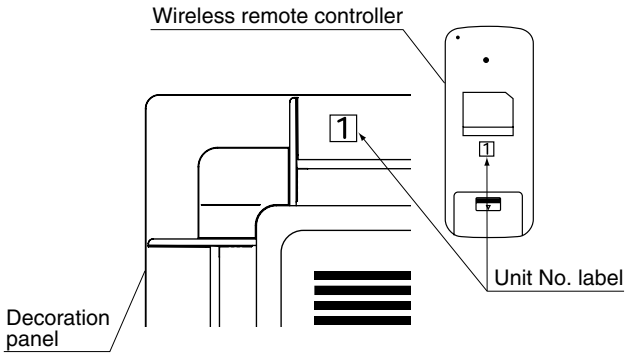
When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Movement when the operation is controlled by the other air conditioners and equipment
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	
A: Standard	All items displayed.	When operation changeover, temperature setting or the like is carried out from the remote controller, the indoor unit rejects the instruction. (Signal receiving sound "peeh" or "pick-pick-pick") As a result, a discrepancy between the operation state of the indoor unit and the indication of the remote controller display occurs.
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	Since the indication of the remote controller is turned off, no discrepancy such as mentioned above occurs.

3. Stick the Unit No. label on the air outlet of the decoration panel and the back of the wireless remote controller.

[PRECAUTIONS]

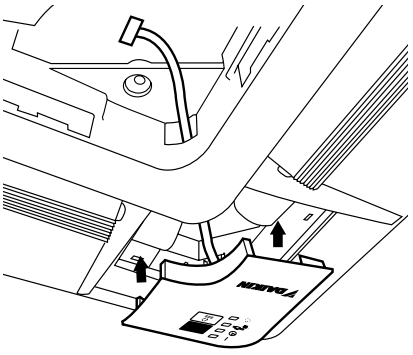
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differ, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.



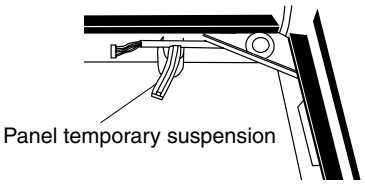
3P107423-1B

(3) Receiver installation

1. As shown at right, pass the harness from the receiver through the wiring hole of the decoration panel. Then, attach the receiver to the decoration panel.

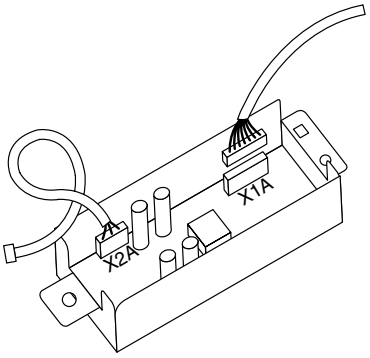


2. Hook the harness from the receiver on the upper part of the panel temporary suspension of the decoration panel.
Be sure to push the harness to the groove.

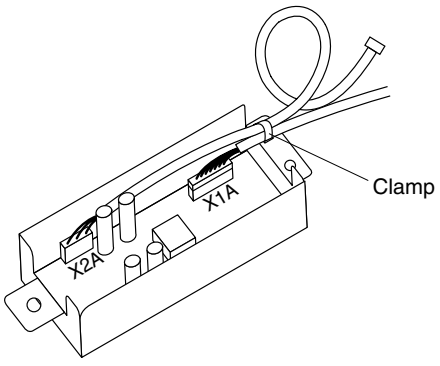


3. Attach the decoration panel to the indoor unit.
(Refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.)

4. Connect the harness from the receiver to the connector X1A on the transmitter board.

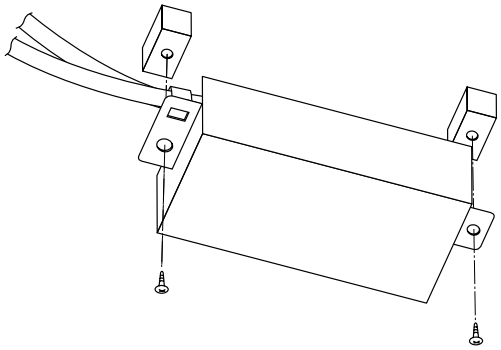


After connecting, use the attached clamp to fix the two harnesses to the transmitter board box.

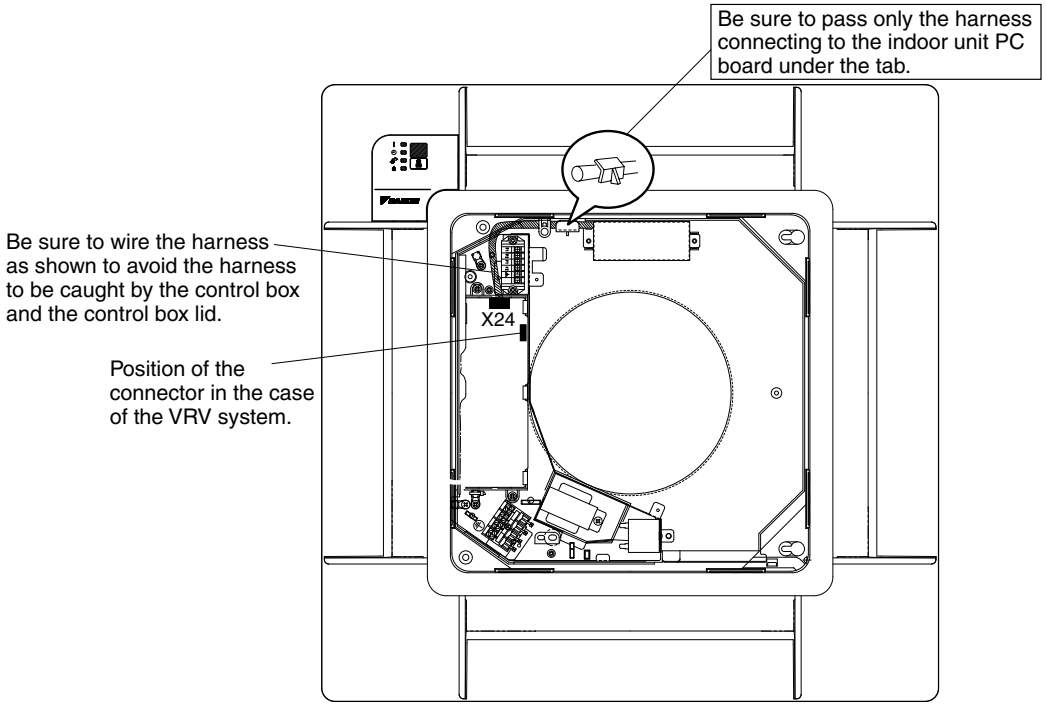


3P107423-1B

5. Use two tapping screws to attach the transmitter board to the indoor unit, as shown in the figure.



6. Connect the harness from the transmitter board to the connector X24 on the indoor unit PC board.

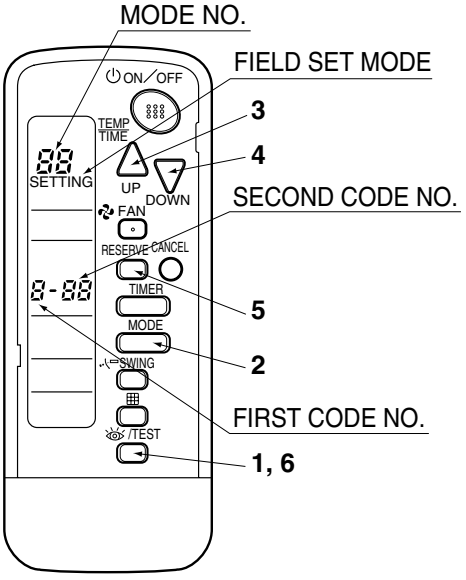


5. FIELD SETTING

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.

Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " ▲ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▽ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.



3P107423-1B

(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to “Filter Contamination-Heavy”, set Mode No. to “10”, FIRST CODE NO. to “0”, and SECOND CODE NO. to “02”.

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING	SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
			01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved) Long-life type	light	approx. 2,500 hours	heavy	approx. 1,250 hours	-
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)	Display		Do not display		-
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)	Forced OFF input		ON/OFF		-
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)	1˚C		0.5˚C		-
13	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a sealing member of air discharge outlet kit has been installed)	F		T		W
	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting	Upper		Normal		Lower

NOTE
- The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to “01”. However, for the following cases it is set to “02”.
  - Air Flow Direction Range Setting

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal. (For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

3P107423-1B

6. TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

[PRECAUTIONS]

1. Refer to malfunction code of installation manual attached to the indoor unit, if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify for 6 hours.
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

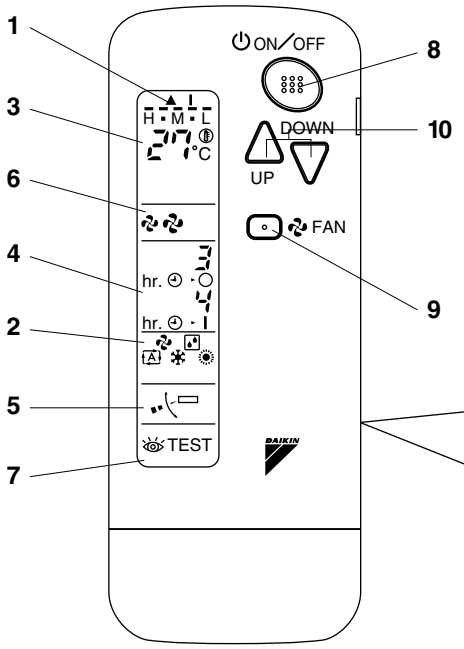
3P107423-1B

1.9 BRC7CA528W / BRC7CA529W (for FXUQ)

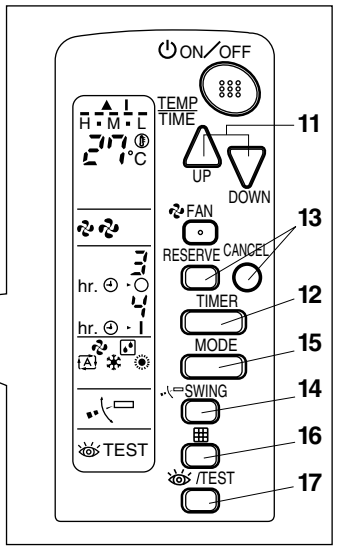
1.9.1 Operation

1

1-1

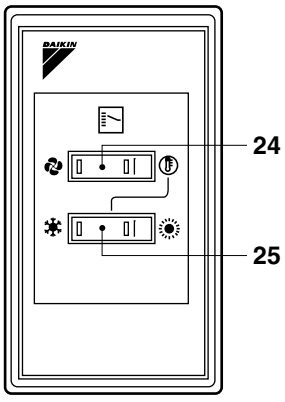


1-2

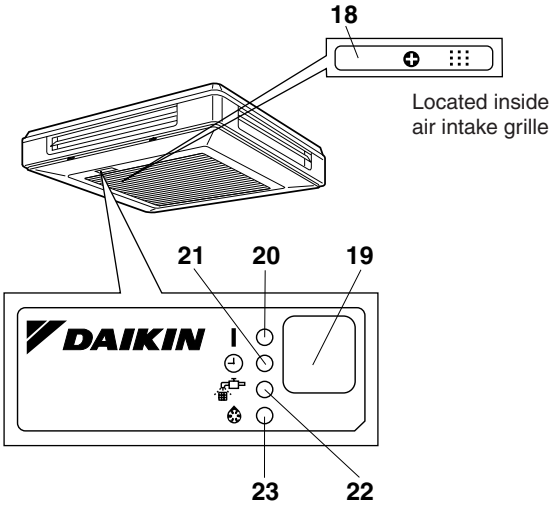


1-3

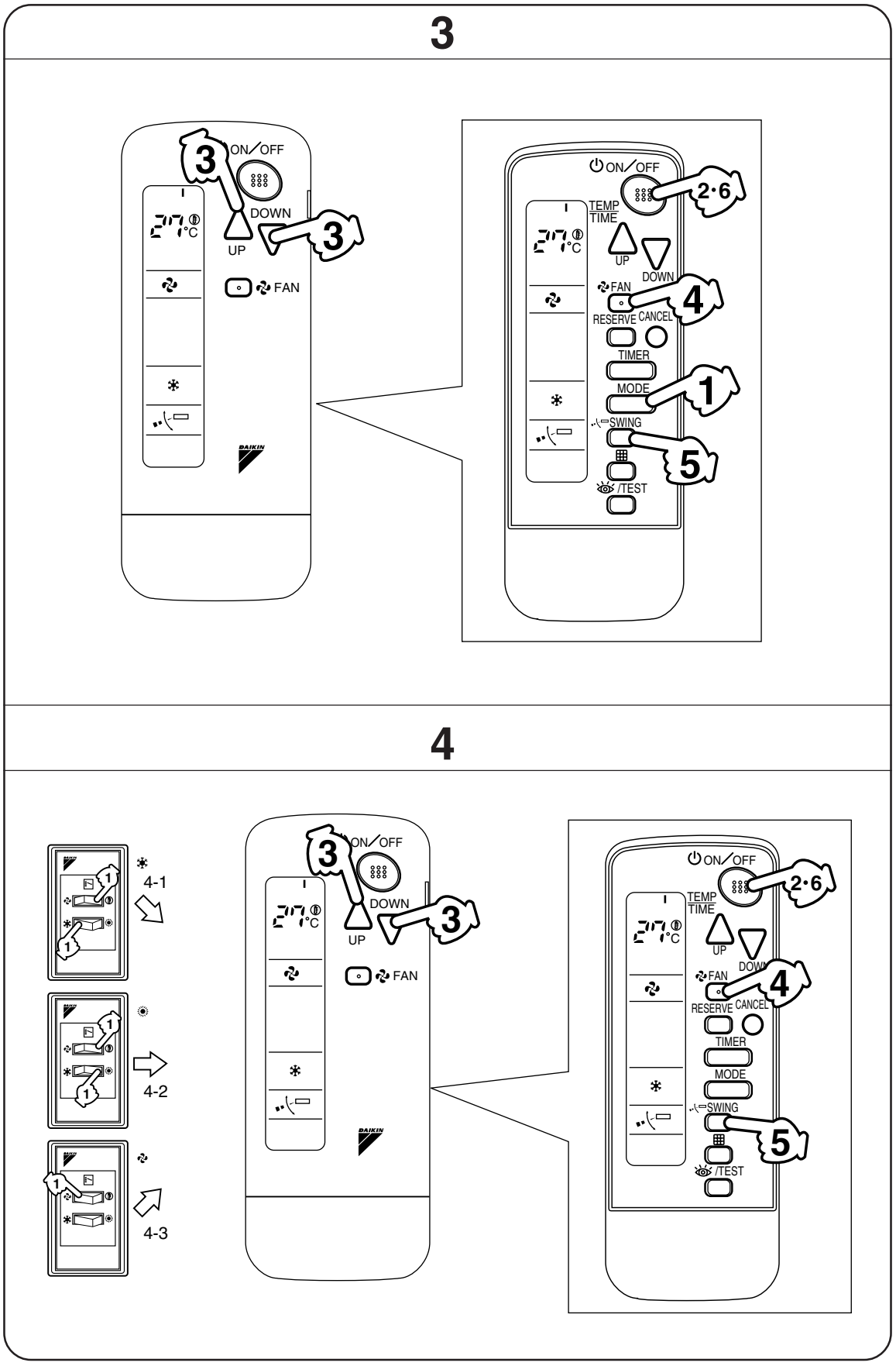
COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH



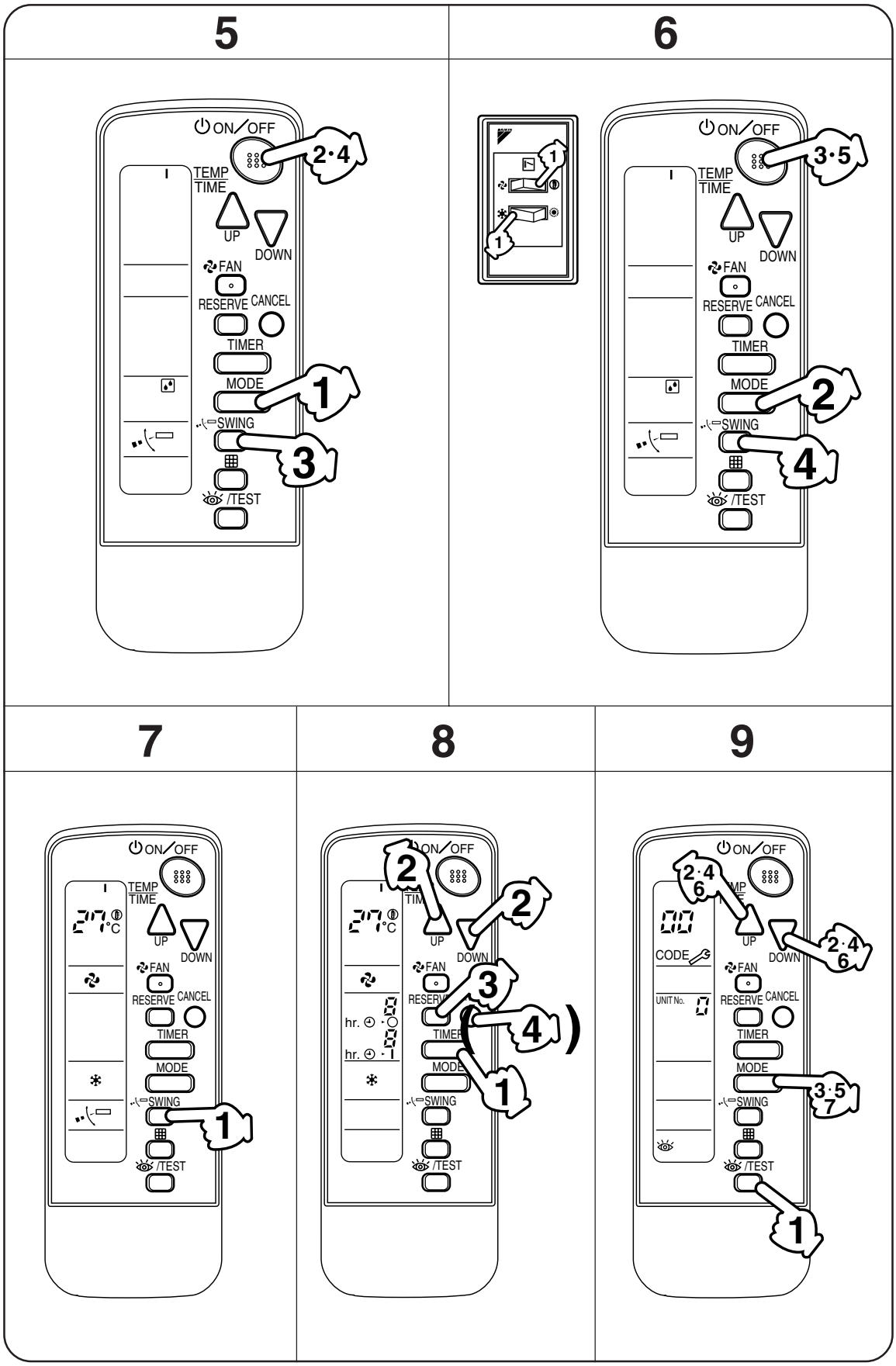
2



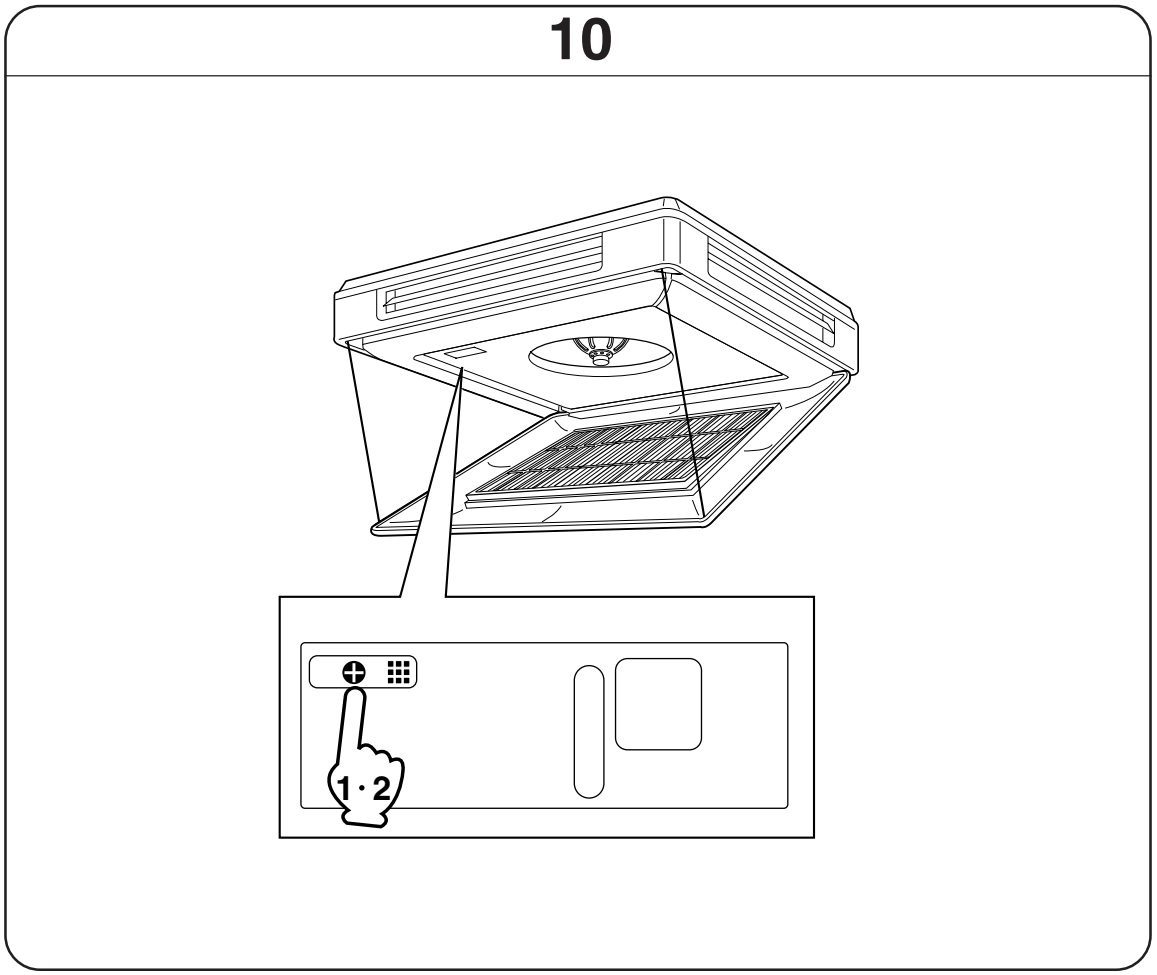
C: 3P107422-7S



C: 3P107422-7S



C: 3P107422-7S



C: 3P107422-7S

2. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**DISPLAY " ▲ " (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)**
	This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.
2	**DISPLAY " " " " " " " " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)**
	This display shows the current OPERATION MODE. For straight cooling type, " " (Auto) and " " (Heating) are not installed.
3	**DISPLAY " " (SET TEMPERATURE)**
	This display shows the set temperature.
4	**DISPLAY " " (PROGRAMMED TIME)**
	This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.
5	**DISPLAY " " (AIR FLOW FLAP)**
	Refer to Note 1.
6	**DISPLAY " " " " (FAN SPEED)**
	The display shows the set fan speed.
7	**DISPLAY " TEST " (INSPECTION/ TEST OPERATION)**
	When the INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.
8	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
9	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON**
	Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
10	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON**
	Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.)
11	**PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON**
	Use this button for programming "START and/or STOP" time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.)
12	**TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 2.
13	**TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 3.
14	**AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON**
	Refer to Note 4.
15	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
16	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.
17	**INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON**
	This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
18	**EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH (Located inside air intake grille)**
	This button can be used to start the unit when the remote controller does not work.
19	**RECEIVER**
	This receives the signals from the remote controller.
20	**OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.
21	**TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)**
	This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.
22	**AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)**
	Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.
23	**DEFROST LAMP (Orange)**
	Lights up when the defrosting operation has started.

C: 3P107422-7S

Note 1 : page 178, Note 2 : page 179, Note 3 : page 179, Note 4 : page 178

24	**FAN/AIR CONDITIONING SELECTOR SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (FAN) for FAN and " " (A/C) for HEAT or COOL.
25	**COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER SWITCH**
	Set the switch to " " (COOL) for COOL and " " (HEAT) for HEAT.

NOTES

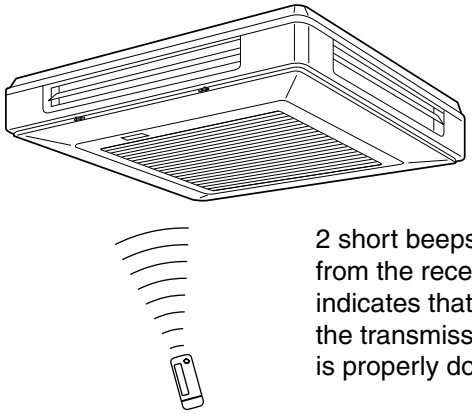
- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown on the display in Figure 1 contrary to actual running situations.
- Fig. 1-2 shows the remote controller with the front cover opened.
- Fig. 1-3 shows this remote controller can be used in conjunction with the one provided with the VRV system.
- If the air filter cleaning time indicator lamp lights up, clean the air filter as explained in the operation manual provided with the indoor unit.
  After cleaning and reinstalling the air filter, press the filter sign reset button on the remote controller. The air filter cleaning time indicator lamp on the receiver will go out.

3. HANDLING FOR WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER

Precautions in handling remote controller

Direct the transmitting part of the remote controller to the receiving part of the air conditioner.

If something blocks the transmitting and receiving path of the indoor unit and the remote controller as curtains, it will not operate.



Transmitting distance is approximately 7 m.

Do not drop or get it wet.
It may be damaged.

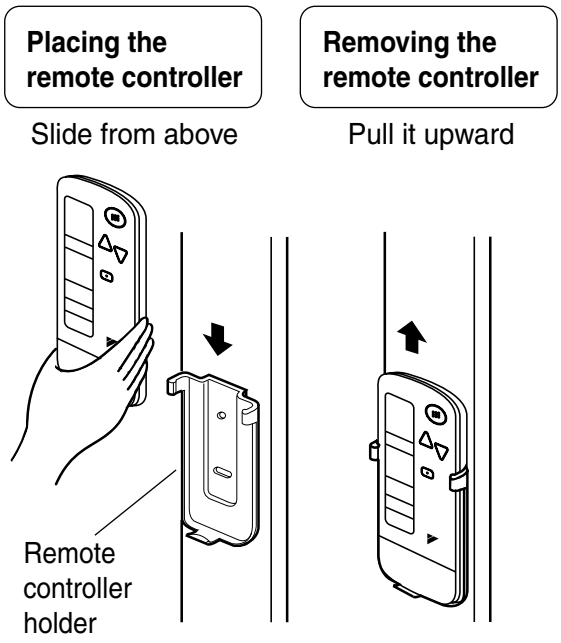
Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object.
The remote controller may be damaged.

Installation site

- It is possible that signals will not be received in rooms that have electronic fluorescent lighting. Please consult with the salesman before buying new fluorescent lights.
- If the remote controller operated some other electrical apparatus, move that machine away or consult your dealer.

C: 3P107422-7S

Placing the remote controller in the remote controller holder
Install the remote controller holder to a wall or a pillar with the attached screw. (Make sure it transmits)

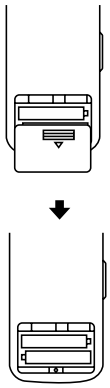


How to put the dry batteries

(1) Remove the back cover of the remote controller to the direction pointed by the arrow mark.

(2) Put the batteries
Use two dry cell batteries (AAA.LR03 (alkaline)). Put dry batteries correctly to fit their (+) and (–).

(3) Close the cover



— When to change batteries
Under normal use, batteries last about a year. However, change them whenever the indoor unit doesn't respond or responds slowly to commands, or if the display becomes dark.

[CAUTIONS]
- Replace all batteries at the same time, do not use new and old batteries intermixed.
- In case the remote controller is not used for a long time take out all batteries in order to prevent liquid leak of the battery.

4. OPERATION RANGE

Split System

If the temperature or the humidity is beyond the following conditions, safety devices may work and the air conditioner may not operate, or sometimes, water may drop from the indoor unit.

COOLING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR			OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
		TEMPERATURE		HUMIDITY		
STRAIGHT COOLING TYPE	R71 • 100 • 125	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	–15 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 • 100 • 125	DB	18 to 35	80% or below	DB	–5 to 46
		WB	12 to 25			

HEATING [°C]

	OUT-DOOR UNIT	INDOOR TEMPERATURE		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE	
HEAT PUMP TYPE	RY71 • 100 • 125	DB	15 to 27	DB	– 9 to 21
				WB	– 10 to 15.5

DB: Dry bulb temperature
WB:Wet bulb temperature

The setting temperature range of the remote controller is 16°C ~ 32°C.

For VRV systems, see the instruction manual provided with the air conditioner.

C: 3P107422-7S

5. OPERATION PROCEDURE

- Operating procedure varies with heat pump type and straight cooling type. Contact your Daikin dealer to confirm your system types.
- To protect the unit, turn on the main power switch 6 hours before operation.
- If the main power supply is turned off during operation, operation will restart automatically after the power turns back on again.

COOLING, HEATING, AUTOMATIC AND FAN OPERATION (Fig. 3, 4)

- AUTOMATIC OPERATION can be selected only by RSEY series or sprit system.
- RSX series or sprit system cooling only type give selection of FAN or COOLING OPERATION only.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 3)⟩⟩

1 Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select the OPERATION MODE of your choice as follows.

- COOLING OPERATION ..... " ❄ "
- HEATING OPERATION ..... " ☀ "
- AUTOMATIC OPERATION ..... " Ⓐ "
- FAN OPERATION ..... " 🌀 "

On AUTOMATIC OPERATION
In this operation mode, COOL/HEAT changeover is automatically conducted at a present indoor temperature.

2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 4)⟩⟩

1 Select OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH as follows.

- COOING OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-1 (⏻ , ❄)
- HEATING OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-2 (⏻ , ☀)
- FAN OPERATION ..... Refer to fig. 4-3 (🌀)

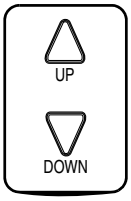
2 Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

For programming TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED and AIR FLOW DIRECTION, follow the procedure shown below.

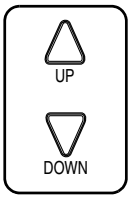
3 Press TEMPERATURE SETTING button and program the setting temperature.



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature rises 1°C.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature lowers 1°C.

In case of automatic operation



Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "H" side.

Each time this button is pressed, setting temperature shifts to "L" side.

[°C]

	H	•	M	•	L
Setting temperature	25	23	22	21	19

- The setting is impossible for fan operation.

C: 3P107422-7S

Press FAN SPEED CONTROL button.

High or Low fan speed can be selected.

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (Note 1) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

Press ON/OFF button once again.

OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

[EXPLANATION OF HEATING OPERATION]

DEFROST OPERATION

- As the frost on the coil of an outdoor unit increase, heating effect decreases and the system goes into DEFROST OPERATION.
- The fan operation stops and the DEFROST lamp of the indoor unit goes on. After 6 to 8 minutes (maximum 10 minutes) of DEFROST OPERATION, the system returns to HEATING OPERATION.

Heating capacity & Outdoor air temperature

- Heating capacity drops as outdoor air temperature lowers. If feeling cold, use another heater at the same time as this air conditioner.
- Hot air is circulated to warm the room. It will take some time from when the air conditioner is first started until the entire room becomes warm. The internal fan automatically turns at low speed until the air conditioner reaches a certain temperature on the inside. In this situation, all you can do is wait.
- If hot air accumulates on the ceiling and feet are left feeling cold, it is recommended to use a circulator. For details, contact the place of purchase.

PROGRAM DRY OPERATION (Fig. 5, 6)

- The function of this program is to decrease the humidity in your room with the minimum temperature decrease.
- Micro computer automatically determines TEMPERATURE and FAN SPEED.
- This system does not go into operation if the room temperature is below 16°C.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITHOUT COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 5)⟩⟩

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select "💧" (PROGRAM DRY OPERATION).

Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and system starts OPERATION.

ADJUSTMENT

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (Note 2) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

Press ON/OFF button again.

OPERATION lamp goes off and the system stops OPERATION.

⟨⟨FOR SYSTEMS WITH COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH (Fig. 6)⟩⟩

Select COOLING OPERATION MODE with the COOL/HEAT CHANGEOVER REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH.

C: 3P107422-7S

Note 1 : page 178, Note 2 : page 178

Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button several times and select PROGRAM DRY "".

Press ON/OFF button.

OPERATION lamp lights up and the system starts.

Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button.

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION" (Note) for details.

STOPPING THE SYSTEM

Press ON/OFF button once again.

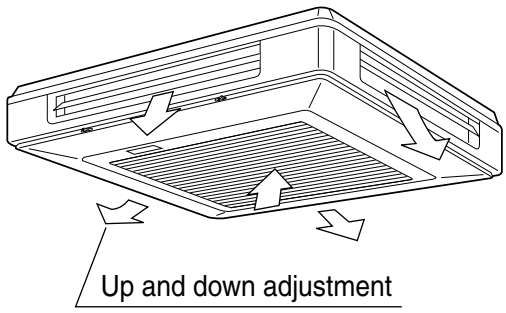
OPERATION lamp goes off, and the system stops OPERATION.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF power immediately after the unit stops. Then, wait no less than 5 minutes. Water is leaking or there is something else wrong with the unit.

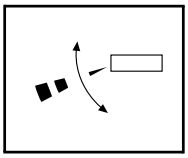
ADJUSTING THE AIR FLOW DIRECTION (Fig. 7)

Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to adjust the air flow angle.



- The movable limit of the blade is changeable. Contact your Daikin dealer for details.

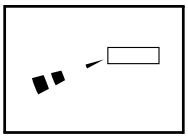
Press the AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction as shown below.



DISPLAY appears and the air flow direction continuously varies. (Automatic swing setting)



Press AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST button to select the air direction of your choice.



DISPLAY vanishes and the desired air flow direction is fixed. (Fixed air flow setting)

MOVEMENT OF THE AIR FLOW FLAP

For the following conditions, micro computer controls the air flow direction so it may be different from the display.

Operation mode	Cooling	Heating
Operation conditions	• When room temperature is lower than the set temperature	• When room temperature is higher than the set temperature • At defrost operation
	• When operating continuously at horizontal air flow direction	

Operation mode includes automatic operation.

PROGRAM TIMER OPERATION (Fig. 8)

- The timer is operated in the following two ways.

  Programming the stop time (▸)
  ....The system stops operating after the set time has elapsed.

  Programming the start time (▸ |)
  .... The system starts operating after the set time has elapsed.

Note : page 178

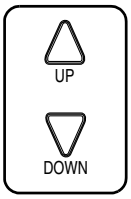
C: 3P107422-7S

- The timer can be programmed a maximum of 72 hours.
- The start and the stop time can be simultaneously programmed.

(1) Press the TIMER MODE START/STOP button several times and select the mode on the display.

The display flashes.
For setting the timer stop.....“⏲ ▸ ◯”
For setting the timer start .....“⏲ ▸ | ”

(2) Press the PROGRAMMING TIMER button and set the time for stopping or starting the system.



When this button is pressed, the time advances by 1 hour.

When this button is pressed, the time goes backward by 1 hour.

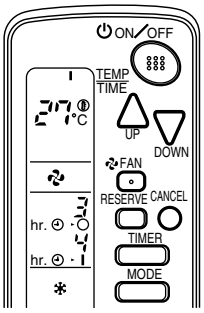
(3) Press RESERVE button.

The timer setting procedure ends.
The display changes from flashing light to a constant light.

NOTE

- When setting the timer Off and On at the same time, repeat the above procedure from (1) to (3) once again.

For example.



When the timer is programmed to stop the system after 3 hours and start the system after 4 hours, the system will stop after 3 hours and then 1 hour later the system will start.

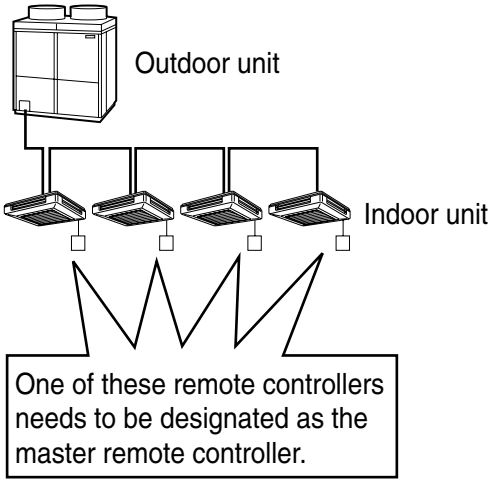
- After the timer is programmed, the display shows the remaining time.
- Press the TIMER OFF button to cancel programming. The display vanishes. ((4))

HOW TO SET MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER (For RSXY and RSEY series)

- When the system is installed as shown below, it is necessary to designate the master remote controller.

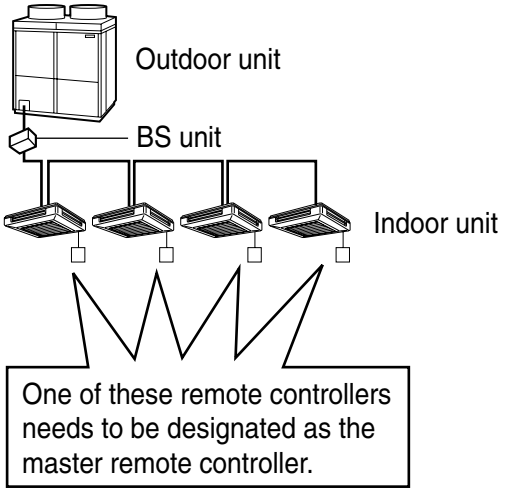
⟨⟨For RSXY series⟩⟩

When one outdoor unit is connected with several indoor units.



⟨⟨For RSEY series⟩⟩

When one BS unit is connected with several indoor units.



C: 3P107422-7S

- Only the master remote controller can select HEATING, COOLING or AUTOMATIC (only RSEY series) OPERATION.

When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “COOL”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN”, “DRY” and “COOL”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “HEAT”, you can switch over operation mode between “FAN” and “HEAT”.
When the indoor unit with master remote controller is set to “FAN”, you cannot switch operation mode.
When attempting settings than that consented above, a “peep” is emitted as a warning.
Only with RSEY series, you can set the indoor unit to AUTOMATIC. Attempting to do so, a “peep” will be emitted as a warning.

How to designate the master remote controller

1 Continuously press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button for 4 seconds.

The displays showing “⏲” of all slave indoor unit connected to the same outdoor unit or BS unit flash.

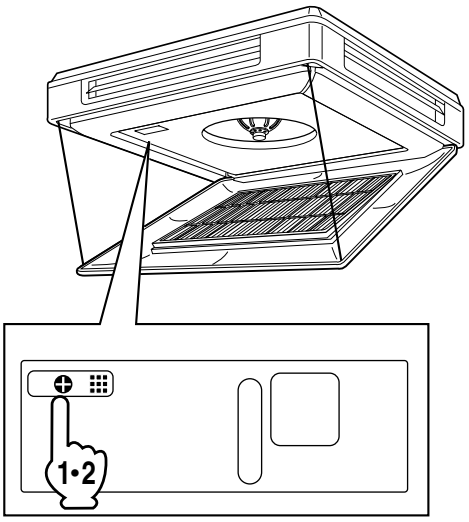
2 Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR button to the indoor unit that you wish to designate as the master remote controller. Then designation is completed. This indoor unit is designated as the master remote controller and the display showing “⏲” vanishes.

- To change settings, repeat steps 1 and 2.

EMERGENCY OPERATION (Fig. 10)

When the remote controller does not work due to dead batteries or it is missing, use this switch which is located beside the discharge grille on the main unit. When the remote controller does not work, but the battery low indicator on it is not lit, contact your dealer.

Local start button (Located inside air intake grille)



The local start button can be seen in the upper left-hand corner when the air intake grille is open.

[START]

1 Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch.

The machine runs in the previous mode. The system operates with the previously set air flow direction.

[STOP]

2 Press the EMERGENCY OPERATION switch again.

C: 3P107422-7S

PRECAUTIONS FOR GROUP CONTROL SYSTEM OR TWO REMOTE CONTROLLER CONTROL SYSTEM

This system provides two other control systems beside individual control (one remote controller controls one indoor unit) system. Confirm the following if your unit is of the following control system type.

■ **Group control system**
One remote controller controls up to 16 indoor units.
All indoor units are equally set.

■ **Two remote controller control system**
Two remote controllers control one indoor unit. (In case of group control system, one group of indoor units)
The unit follows individual operation.

NOTES

- Cannot have two remote controller control system with only wireless remote controllers. (It will be a two remote controller control system having one wired and one wireless remote controllers.)
- Under two remote controller control system, wireless remote controller cannot control timer operation.
- Only the operating indicator lamp out of 3 other lamps on the indoor unit display functions.

NOTE

Contact your Daikin dealer in case of changing the combination or setting of group control and two remote controller control systems.

6. NOT MALFUNCTION OF THE AIR CONDITIONER

The following symptoms do not indicate air conditioner malfunction

I. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT OPERATE

- **The system does not restart immediately after the ON/OFF button is pressed.**
  If the OPERATION lamp lights, the system is in normal condition. It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **The system does not restart immediately when TEMPERATURE SETTING button is returned to the former position after pushing the button.**
  It does not restart immediately because a safety device operates to prevent overload of the system. After 3 minutes, the system will turn on again automatically.
- **If the reception beep is rapidly repeated 3 times (It sounds only twice when operating normally.)**
  Control is set to the optional controller for centralized control.
- **If the defrost lamp on the indoor unit's display is lit when heating is started.**
  This indication is to warn against cold air being blown from the unit. There is nothing wrong with the equipment.

C: 3P107422-7S

7. HOW TO DIAGNOSE TROUBLE SPOTS (Fig. 9)

I. EMERGENCY STOP

When the air conditioner stops in emergency, the run lamp on the indoor unit starts blinking. Take the following steps yourself to read the malfunction code that appears on the display. Contact your dealer with this code. It will help pinpoint the cause of the trouble, speeding up the repair.

(1) Press the INSPECTION/TEST button to select the inspection mode " 0 ".

" 0 " appears on display and blinks. "UNIT" lights up.

(2) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the unit number.

Press to change the unit number until the indoor unit beeps and perform the following operation according to the number of beeps.

Number of beeps

3 short beeps .... Perform all steps from (3) to (6)

1 short beep ..... Perform (3) and (6) steps

1 long beep..... Normal state

(3) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the left-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(4) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit beeps twice.

(5) Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON.

" 0 " on the right-hand of the malfunction code blinks.

(6) Press PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON and change the malfunction code.

Press until the indoor unit makes a long beep.

The malfunction code is fixed when the indoor unit makes a long beep.

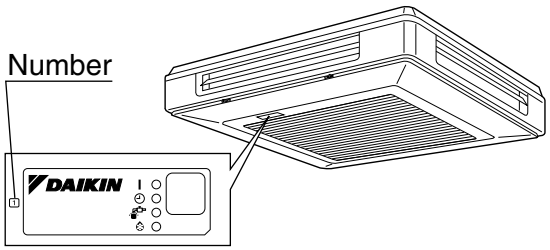
(7) Reset of the display.

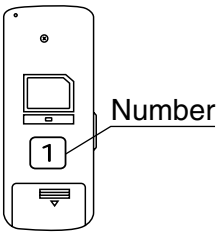
Press OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON to get the display back to the normal state.

II. IN CASE BESIDES EMERGENCY STOP

1. The unit does not operate at all.

- Check if the receiver is exposed of sunlight or strong light. Keep receiver away from light.
- Check if there are batteries in the remote controller. Place the batteries.
- Check if the indoor unit number and wireless remote controller number are equal.

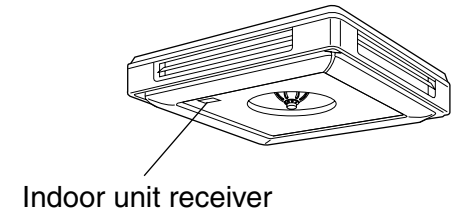


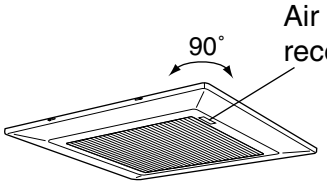


Operate the indoor unit with the remote controller of the same number.
Signal transmitted from a remote controller of a different number cannot be accepted. (If the number is not mentioned, it is considered as "1")

C: 3P107422-7S

The receiver on the air intake grille is not positioned under the receiver on the indoor unit itself.





Turn the air intake grille 90° and attach to the indoor unit.

2. **The system operates but it does not sufficiently cool or heat.**
   - If the set temperature is not proper.
   - If the FAN SPEED is set to LOW SPEED.
   - If the air flow angle is not proper.

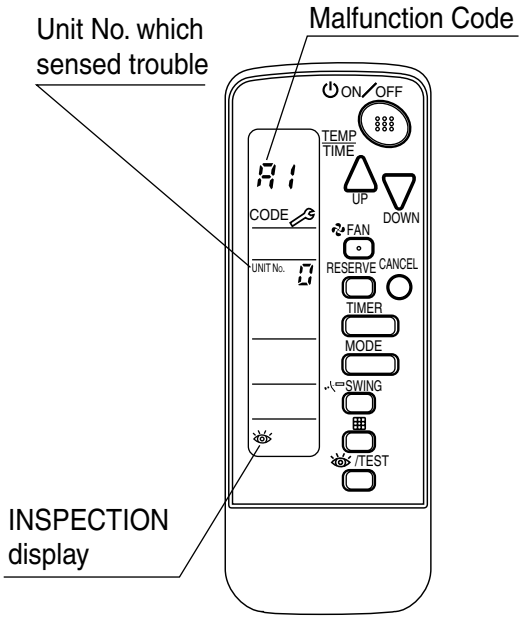
Contact the place of purchase in the following case.

⚠ WARNING

When you detect a burning odor, shut OFF power immediately and contact the place of purchase. Using the equipment in anything but proper working condition can result in equipment damage, electric shock and/or fire.

[Trouble]

The RUN lamp of the indoor unit is flashing and the unit does not work at all.



[Remedial action]

Check the malfunction code (A1 ~ UF) on the remote control and contact the place of purchase. (See Note)

Note : page 182

C: 3P107422-7S

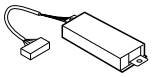
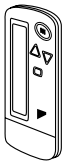
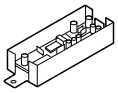
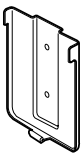
1.9.2 Installation

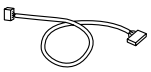
1. BEFORE INSTALLATION

- Install the wireless remote controller in the indoor unit before hanging the unit from the ceiling.
- When using the wireless remote controller, the air intake grille must be attached in a specific direction. Check which way the grille will open before selecting a location for the indoor unit.

1-1 ACCESSORIES

Check if the following accessories are included with your unit.

Name	Receiver	Wireless remote controller	Transmitter board	Remote controller holder	Faceplate for receiver
Quantity	1 set	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.
Shape					

Name	Relay harness	Unit No. label	Drycell battery LR03 (AM4)	Screw for installing remote control holder	Tapping screw	Cable clamp	Operation manual
Quantity	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	2 pcs.	4 pcs.	2 pcs.	1 pc.
Shape							

1-2 NOTE TO THE INSTALLER

- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

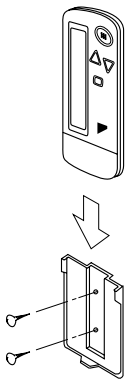
2. REMOTE CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

⟨Installing wireless remote controller⟩

- Do not throw the remote controller or impose large shocks. Also, do not store where it may be exposed to moisture or direct sunlight.
- When operating, point the transmitting part of the remote controller in the direction of the receiver.
- The direct transmitting distance of the remote controller is approximately 7 meters.
- The signal cannot be transmitted if something such as curtains blocks the receiver and the remote controller.

C: 3PA59585-21Z

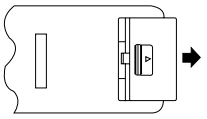
• Installing to a wall or a pillar
Slide the remote controller into the remote controller holder from the top.



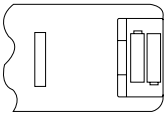
Fix the remote controller holder with the screws.

• How to insert the batteries

1. Open the back cover of the remote controller by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



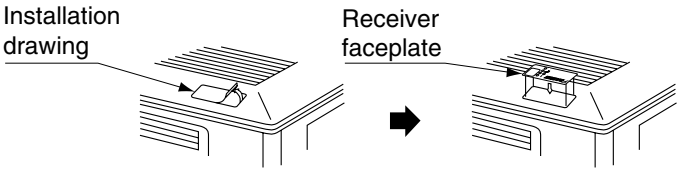
2. Insert the attached dry cell batteries. Properly insert, set the batteries by matching the (+) and (–) polarity marks as indicated. Then close the cover as before.



3. RECEIVER INSTALLATION

(1) Attaching the receiver faceplate.

- Remove the installation drawing from the indoor unit. The drawing is glued down and can be peeled off.
- Attach the included receiver faceplate so that it fits the receiver frame.



(2) Determination of address and MAIN/SUB remote controller.

If setting multiple wireless remote controllers to operate in one room, perform address setting for the receiver and the wireless remote controller.

If setting multiple wired remote controllers in one room, change the MAIN/SUB switch of the receiver.

C: 3PA59585-21Z

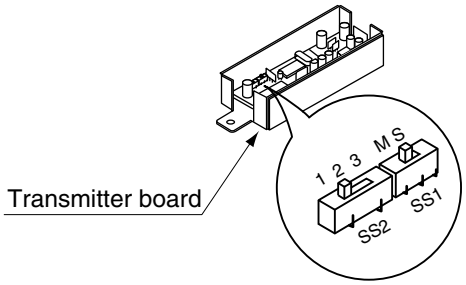
SETTING PROCEDURE

1. Setting the receiver

Through the small opening on the back of the receiver, set the wireless address switch (SS2) on the printed circuit board according to the table below.

Unit No.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
Wireless address switch (SS2)			

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN/SUB switch (SS1) of the receiver to SUB.



	MAIN	SUB
MAIN/SUB switch (SS1)		

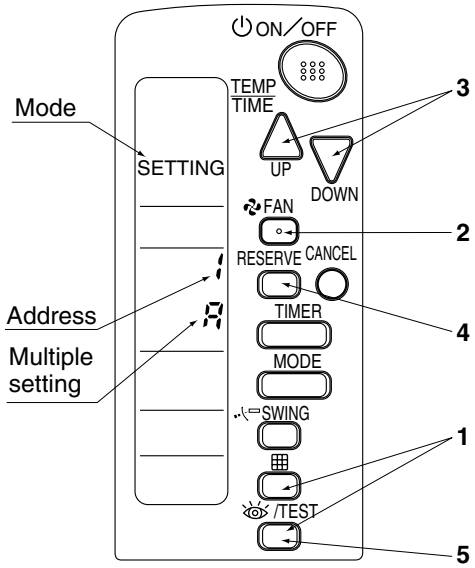
2. Setting the address of wireless remote controller (It is factory set to "1")

〈Setting from the remote controller〉

1. Hold down the [⊞] button and the [/TEST] button for at least 4 seconds to get the Field Set mode. (Indicated in the display area in the figure at right.)
2. Press the [FAN] button and select a multiple setting (A/b). Each time the button is pressed the display switches between "A" and "b".
3. Press the " △ UP " button and " ▽ DOWN " button to set the address.

   1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6

   Address can be set from 1 to 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)
4. Press the [RESERVE] button to enter the setting.
5. Hold down the [/TEST] button for at least 1 second to quit the Field Set mode and return to the normal display.



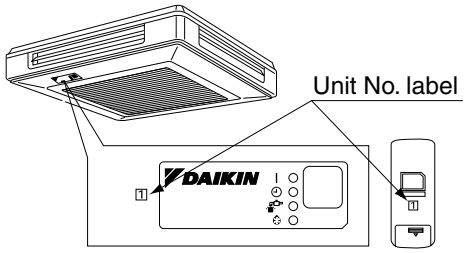
C: 3PA59585-21Z

Multiple settings A/b

When the indoor unit is being operating by outside control (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF and temperature setting commands from this remote controller. Check what setting the customer wants and make the multiple setting as shown below.

Remote controller		Indoor unit	
Multiple setting	Remote controller display	To control other air conditions and units	For other than on left
A: Standard	All items displayed.	Commands other than ON/OFF and temperature setting accepted. (1 LONG BEEP or 3 SHORT BEEPS emitted)	
b: Multi System	Operations remain displayed shortly after execution.	All commands accepted (2 SHORT BEEPS)	

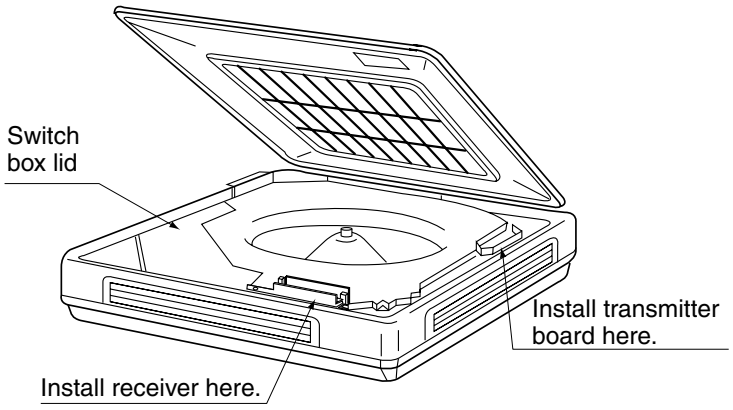
3. Stick the Unit No. label to the indoor unit and the back of the wireless remote controller.



[PRECAUTIONS]
Set the Unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be equal. If the settings differs, the signal from the remote controller cannot be transmitted.

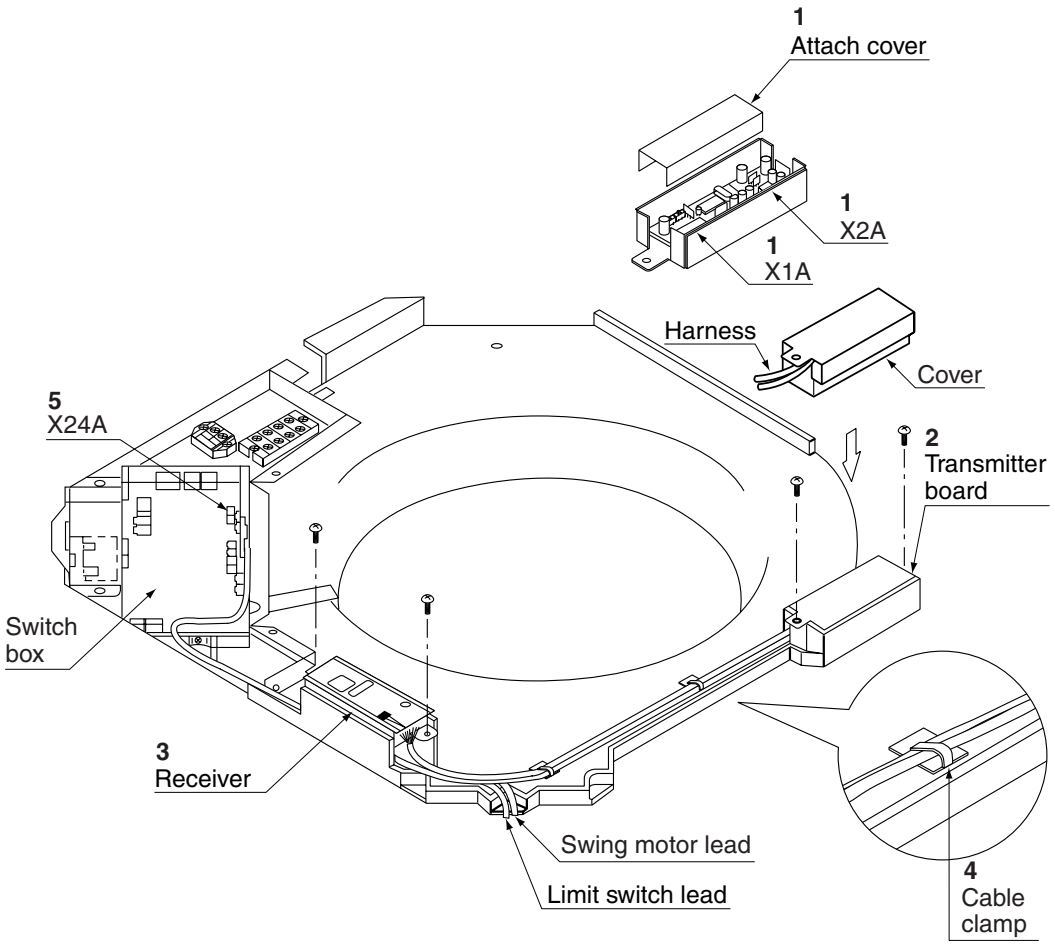
(3) PC board installation.
- Detach the air intake grille and switch box lid (screws × 2) as explained in the installation instructions of the indoor unit.
- Install the transmitter board and receiver in the locations indicated at right.

NOTE:
When using the wireless remote controller, the indoor unit must be opened/closed in the direction shown at right.



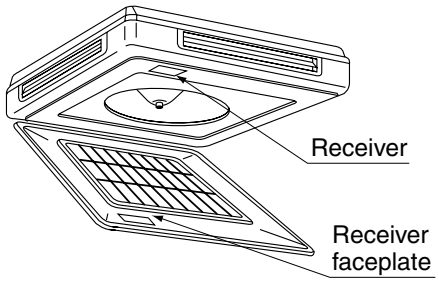
C: 3PA59585-21Z

1. Connect the relay harness from the receiver to connector X1A on the transmitter board and the relay harness included in this kit to connector X2A on the transmitter board. After making the connections, attach the cover as before.
2. Install the transmitter board in the indoor unit. (Screws × 2)
3. Install the receiver in the indoor unit. (Screws × 2)
   When doing so, feed the swing motor lead, limit switch lead and relay harness under the receiver.
4. Bundle the two harnesses together with the included cable clamps in the two locations shown at right.
5. Connect the relay harness from the transmitter board to connector X24A on the PC board in the switch box.
6. Attach the lid to the indoor unit's switch box.



(4) Attaching the air intake grille.

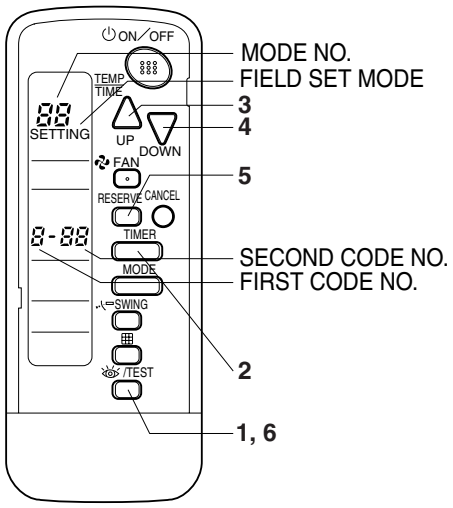
- Attach the air intake grille as explained in the installation instructions of the indoor unit. When doing so, make sure the receiver faceplate on the air intake grille lines up with the receiver on the indoor unit.



C: 3PA59585-21Z

4. FIELD SETTING

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual (optional hand book) for each optional accessory.)



Procedure

1. When in the normal mode, press the [/TEST] button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.
2. Select the desired MODE NO. with the [MODE] button.
3. Push the " △ UP " button and select the FIRST CODE NO.
4. Push the " ▽ DOWN " button and select the SECOND CODE NO.
5. Push the [RESERVE] button and the present settings are SET.
6. Push the [/TEST] button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example)
If the time to clean air filter is set to "Filter Contamination-Heavy", set Mode No. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

MODE NO.	FIRST CODE NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SETTING		SECOND CODE NO. NOTE)				
				01		02		03
10	0	Filter Contamination-Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Long Life Filter	Light	Approx. 2,500 hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 1,250 hrs.	—
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do not display		—
11 (Sprit system)	0	Setting the number of connected simultaneous operation system indoor units.		Pair		Twin		Triple
12 (VRV system)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (Set to enable starting/stopping from remote.)		Forced OFF input		ON/OFF		—
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (Set when using remote controller thermostat sensor.)		1˚C		0.5˚C		—
13	0	High ceiling setting (Setting for when installed in a ceiling higher than 2.7 m)		Normal		High Ceiling 1		High Ceiling 2
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)		F		T		W

Do not use any settings not listed in the table.
For group control with a wireless remote controller, initial settings for all the indoor units of the group are equal.
(For group control, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for group control.)

C: 3PA59585-21Z

5. TEST OPERATION

- Perform test operation according to the instructions in the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping, and electric wiring, operate according to the table to protect the unit.

[PRECAUTIONS]

1. Refer to malfunction diagnosis label attached to the unit if it does not operate.
2. Refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for individual operation system types.

Order	Operation
(1)	Open gas side stop valve.
(2)	Open liquid side stop valve.
(3)	Electrify crank case heater for 6 hours. (Not necessary for cooling type units)
(4)	Set to cooling with the remote controller and push [ON/OFF] button to start operation.
(5)	Push [/TEST] button twice and operate in TEST OPERATION mode for 3 minutes.
(6)	Push [SWING] button and confirm its operation.
(7)	Push [/TEST] button and operate normally.
(8)	Confirm its function according to the operation manual.

C: 3PA59585-21Z

2. Remote Controller (Wired Type)

2.1 BRC1C62

2.1.1 Features



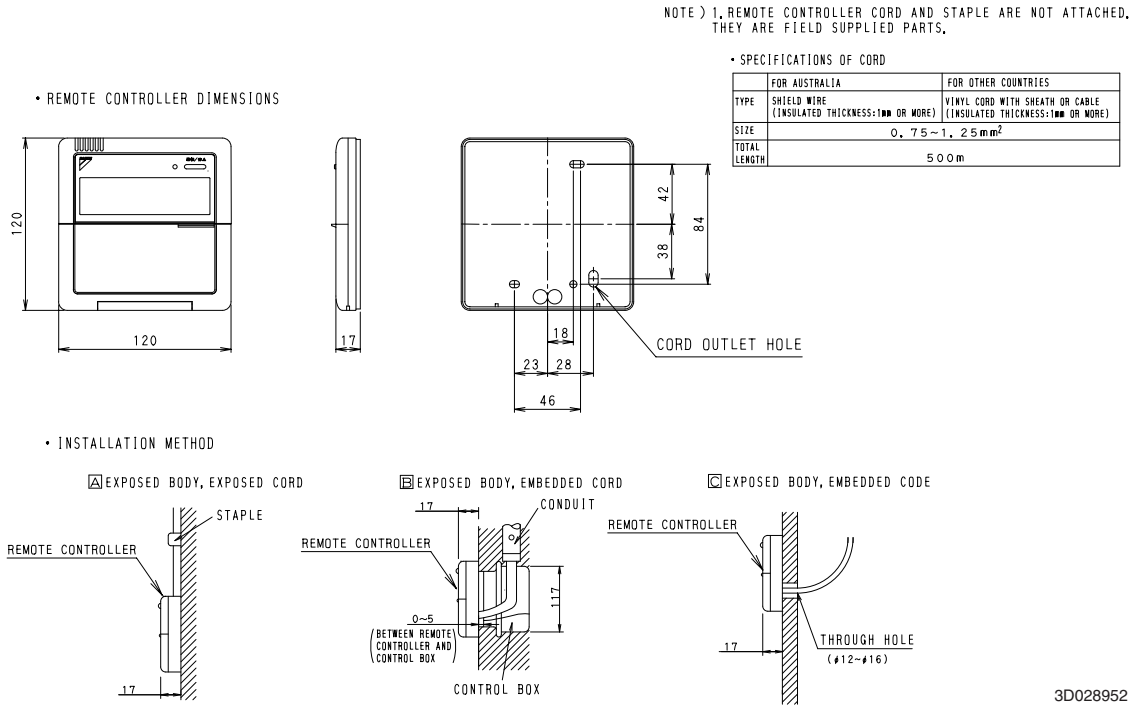
Operation Functions with HRV	BRC1C62
ON / OFF Operation with Air Conditioner	○
Independent operation in intermediate season	○
Ventilation mode change over (Auto / HRV / Normal)	○
Air flow change over (Auto / High / Low)	○
Setting of precooling / preheating	□
Setting of fresh-up operation	□
Filter sign display	○

□: Initial Setting Only (Field setting by well known service person)

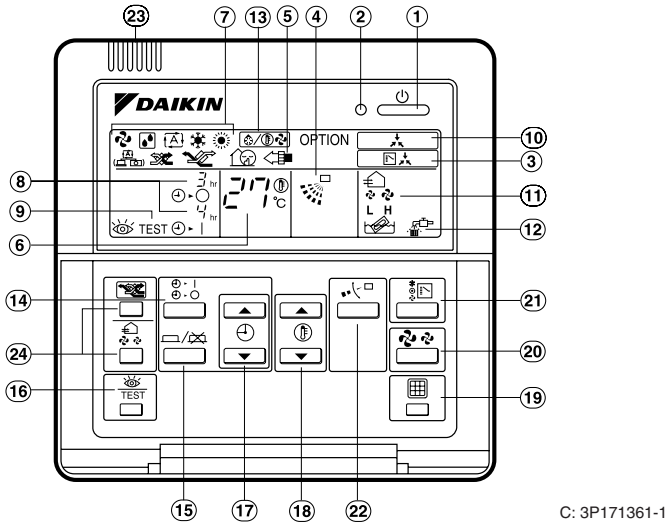
- Easier to read because LCD screen is larger.
- Digital display lets you set temperature in 1°C units.
- Lets you individually program by timer the respective times for operation start and stop within a maximum of 72 hours.
- Equipped with a thermostat sensor in the remote controller that makes possible more comfortable room temperature control.
- Enables you to select cool/heat/fan operation mode with the indoor remote controller of your choice without using the cool/heat selector.
- Constantly monitors malfunctions in the system for 80 items, and is equipped with a "self-diagnosis function" that lets you know by message immediately when a malfunction occurs.
- Lets you carry out various field settings by remote controller.
- Enables you to select the ventilation mode and the volume of the HRV.
- The rubber switch and the oil-resisting resin casing have been adopted for durability.

*When the auto-swing function is not available, the message, THIS FUNCTION IS NOT AVAILABLE is displayed when the wired direction adjustment button is pressed.

2.1.2 Dimensions



2.1.3 Name and Function



1. **On/off button**
   Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
2. **Operation lamp (red)**
   The lamp lights up during operation.
3. **Display " " (changeover under control)**
   It is impossible to changeover heat/cool with the remote controller which display this icon.
4. **Display " " (air flow flap)**
5. **Display " OPTION " (ventilation/air cleaning)**
   This display shows that the ventilation unit are in operation. (these are optional accessories)
6. **Display " " (set temperature)**
   This display shows the temperature you have set.
7. **Display " " " " " " " " " " (operation mode)**
   This display shows the current operation mode.
8. **Display " " (programmed time)**
   This display shows the programmed time of the system start or stop.
9. **Display " TEST " (inspection/test operation)**
   When the inspection/test operation button is pressed, the display shows the mode in which the system actually is.
10. **Display " " (under centralized control)**
    When this display shows, the system is under centralized control. (This is not a standard specification.)
11. **Display " " (fan speed)**
    This display shows the fan speed you have selected.
12. **Display " " (time to clean air filter)**
13. **Display " " (defrost/hot start)**
14. **Timer mode start/stop button**
15. **Timer on/off button**
16. **Inspection/test operation button**
    This button is only used by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.
17. **Programming time button**
    Use this button for setting the programming start and/or stop time.
18. **Temperature setting button**
    Use this button for setting the desired temperature.
19. **Filter sign reset button**
    Refer to the operation manual of indoor unit.
20. **Fan speed control button**
    Press this button to select the fan speed of your preference.
21. **Operation mode selector button**
    Press this button to select the operation mode of your preference.
22. **Air flow direction adjust button**
23. **Thermistor**
    It sense the room temperature around the remote controller.
24. **These button are used when the ventilation unit are installed (These are optional accessories)**
    Refer to the operation manual of the ventilation unit.

NOTE

- In contradistinction to actual operating situations, the display on figure 1 shows all possible indications.
- Above figure shows the remote controller which is opened the cover.
- If that particular function is not available, pressing the button may display the words "NOT AVAILABLE" for a few seconds.
  When running multiple units simultaneously the "NOT AVAILABLE" message will only be appear if none of the indoor units is equipped with the function. If even one unit is equipped with the function, the display will not appear.

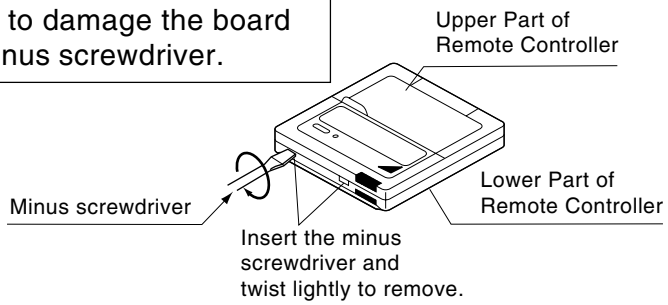
C: 3P171361-1

2.1.4 Installation

1.Remove the upper part of remote controller.

Insert minus screwdriver into the slots in the lower part of remote controller (2 places), and remove the upper part of remote controller.

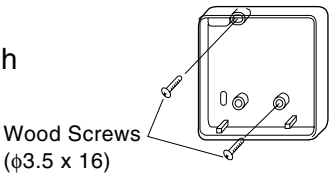
The PC board is mounted in the upper part of remote controller. Be careful not to damage the board with the minus screwdriver.

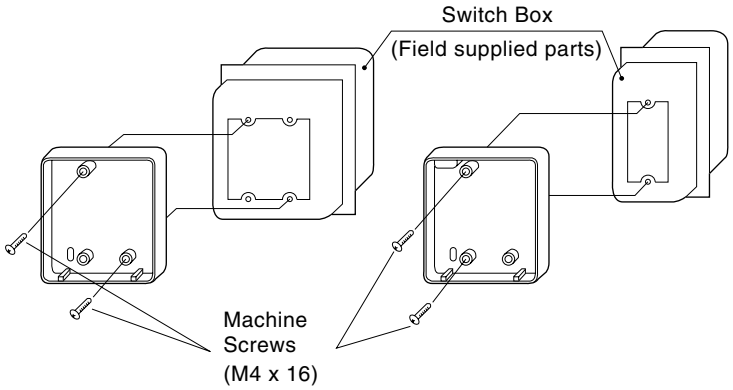


2.Fasten the remote controller.

① For exposed mounting, fasten with the included wood screws (2).

② For flush-mounting, fasten with the included machine screws (2).





For the field supplied switch box, use optional accessories KJB111AA or KJB211AA.

NOTE

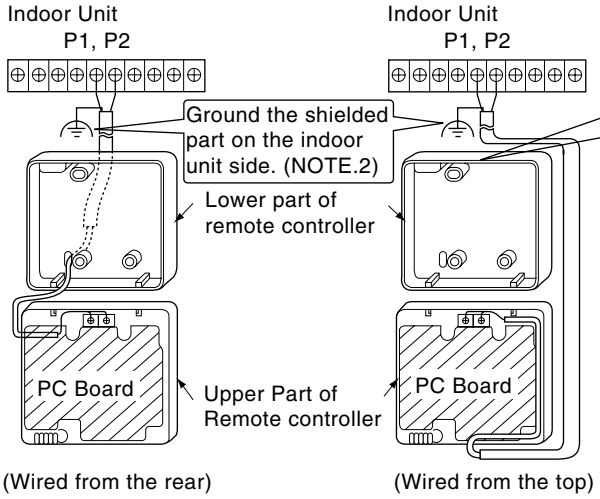
Choose the flattest place possible for the mounting surface. Be careful not to distort the shape of the lower part of remote controller by over-tightening the mounting screws.

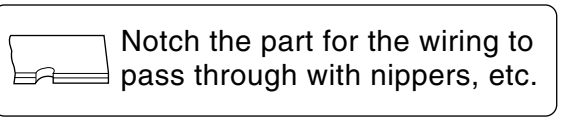
C: 2P068938-1

3.Wire the indoor unit.

Connect the terminals on top of the upper part of remote controller (P1, P2), and the terminals of the indoor unit (P1, P2). (P1 and P2 do not have polarity.)

NOTE
When wiring, run the wiring away the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise).

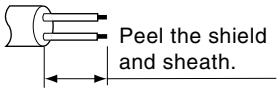




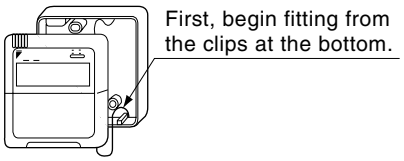
Wiring Specifications

Wiring Type	Sheathed vinyl code or cable (2 wire) (NOTE.2)
Size	0.75 – 1.25 mm^2

NOTE) 1.Peel the shield and sheath for the part that is to pass through the inside of the remote controller case, as shown in the figure below.



2. Shield wire (2 wire) can be used for remote controller wiring, but it must confirm to EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (European Directive).



4.Reattach the upper part of remote controller.

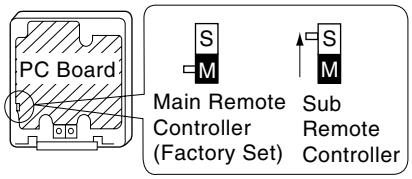
Be careful not to pinch the wiring when attaching.

NOTE

1.The switch box and wiring for connection are not included.
2.Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

If controlling one indoor unit with two remote controllers

Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting as described below.



Set one remote controller to“main,” and the other to “sub.”

NOTE

- If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to “main.”
- Set the remote controller before turning power supply on.

“ 88 ” is displayed for about one minute when the power supply is turned on, and the remote controller cannot be operated in some cases.

2P068938-1

2.1.5 Field Setting

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual for each optional accessory.

Procedure

① When in the normal mode, press the " TEST " button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

② Select the desired MODE NO. with the " " button.

③ During group control, when setting by each indoor unit (mode No. 20, 21 and 23 have been selected), push the " " button and select the INDOOR UNIT NO to be set. (This operation is unnecessary when setting by group.)

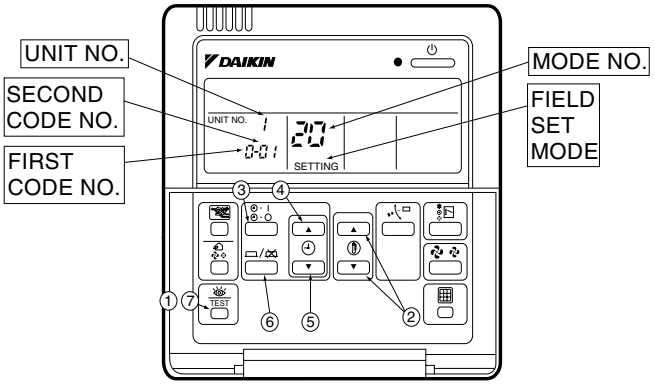
④ Push the " " upper button and select FIRST CODE NO.

⑤ Push the " " lower button and select the SECOND CODE NO.

⑥ Push the " " button once and the present settings are SET.

⑦ Push the " TEST " button for about one second to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example) If during group setting and the time to clean air filter is set to FILTER CONTAMINATION - HEAVY, SET MODE NO. to "10," FIRST CODE NO. to "0," and SECOND CODE NO to "02."



Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of Setting		SECOND CODE No. Note) 2				
				01		02		03
10(20)	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra-long-life type	Light	Approx. 10,000 hours	Heavy	Approx. 5,000 hours	—
			Long-life type		Approx. 2,500 hours		Approx. 1,250 hours	
			Standard type		Approx. 200 hours		Approx. 100hours	
	1	Long-life filter type (Setting of filter sign indication time) (Change setting when Ultra-long-life filter is installed)		Long-life filter		Ultra-long-life filter (1)		—
	3	Spacing Time of Display Time to Clean Air Filter Count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do Not Display		—
11(21)	0	Setting Number of Connected Skyair Simultaneous Operation System Indoor Units(Setting for Simultaneous Operation System)		Pair		Twin		—
13(23)	0	High Celling Setting (Setting for when installed in a Ceiling higher than 2.7m)		Normal		High Ceiling 1		High Ceiling 2
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)		F		T		W
	3	Air Flow Direction Adjust Function (To be set when decoration panel for air outlet is installed)		Equippeed		No Equippeed		—
	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting		Upper		Normal		Lower
	6	Setting the External Static Pressure (Setting according to the connected duct resistance) (For FHYK, follow the High Ceiling Setting)		Normal (Normal)		High Static Pressure (High Ceiling)		Low Static Pressure —

Note:

1. Setting is carried out in the group mode, however, set the mode number inside the ( ) for individual setting of the each indoor unit or confirmation after setting.
2. The SECOND CODE number is set to "01" when shipped from the factory.
   However for the following cases it is set to "02".
   ●Air flow direction range setting.
3. Do not make any settings not given in the table above.
4. Not displayed if the indoor unit is not equipped with that function.
5. When returning to the normal mode, "88" may be displayed in the LCD in order for the remote controller to initialize itself.

2P068938-1

3. Navigation Remote Controller (Wired Remote Controller)

3.1 BRC1E61

3.1.1 Features



- Clear Display ····· Equipped with backlight and large sized character display and buttons.
- Stylish ····· Basic tone is white and arrow keys are located at the center.
- Simple Operation ····· Simple operation used with arrow keys and menu-driven method.
- Multilingual Display ····· Available for selection of 10 languages to display arbitrarily
- Other Features ····· Wide variety of functions to meet customer needs such as schedule setting and contact address display.

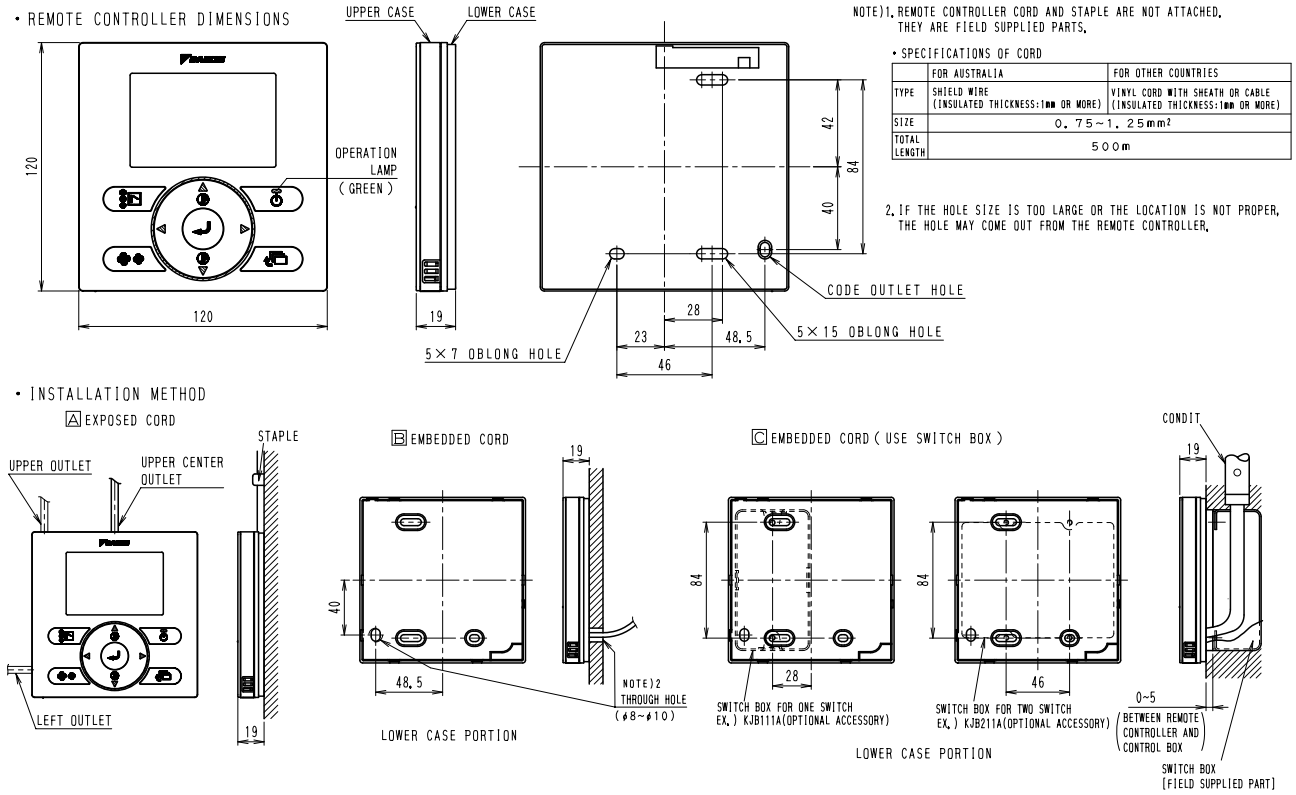
3.1.2 Functions

Category	Function	BRC1E61
Basic Functions	Drawing display	LCD
	Operation method	Menu selection
	Backlight function	○
Convenient Functions	Clock function (time display)	○
	Display switch function	○ *1
	Keylock function	○
	Schedule (weekly) timer*4	○
Maintenance/Services	Model name display	○ *2
	Contact dealer display	○ *2
	Operation time display	○ *3
	Operational data display	○*3

○: Possible

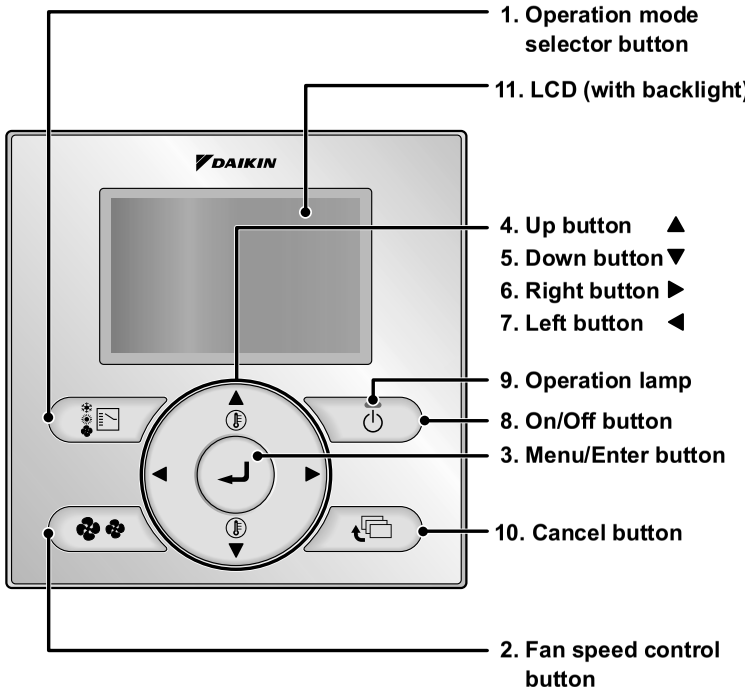
*1 Used for setting Normal Display mode or Detailed Display mode.
*2-1 When an error occurs, the error code blinks and the contact address and model names appear.
2-2 The contact address must be registered when the controller is installed.
2-3 For some models, model codes are displayed instead of model names.
*3 Can display for some model only.
*4 Setback function

3.1.3 Dimensions



3D064037

Names and Functions



Functions other than basic operation items (i.e., On/Off, Operation mode selector, Fan speed control, and temperature settings) are set from the menu screen.

NOTE

- **Do not install the remote controller in places exposed to direct sunlight. Otherwise, the LCD may become discolored and nothing may be displayed.**
- **Do not pull or twist the remote controller cord. Otherwise, the remote controller may error.**
- **Do not press the buttons on the remote controller with objects with sharp ends. Otherwise, the remote controller may receive damage or error.**

1. Operation mode selector button

- Press this button to select the operation mode of your preference. **(See page 14.)**
  * Available modes vary with the connecting model.

2. Fan speed control button

- Press this button to select the fan speed of your preference. **(See page 15.)**
  * Available fan speed vary with the connecting model.

3. Menu/Enter button

- Used to indicate the main menu. **(See page 24 for the menu items.)**
- Used to enter the setting item selected.

4. Up button ▲ (Be sure to press the part with the symbol ▲)

- Used to raise the set temperature.
- The next items on the upper side will be highlighted. (The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is kept pressed.)
- Used to change the item selected.

5. Down button ▼ (Be sure to press the part with the symbol ▼)

- Used to lower the set temperature.
- The next items on the lower side will be highlighted. (The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is kept pressed.)
- Used to change the item selected.

6. Right button ▶ (Be sure to press the part with the symbol ▶)

- Used to highlight the next items on the right-hand side.
- Each screen is scrolled in the right-hand direction.
- Home leave settings are enabled with this button kept pressed for at least four seconds. **(See page 19.)**

7. Left button ◀ (Be sure to press the part with the symbol ◀)

- Used to highlight the next items on the left-hand side.
- Each screen is scrolled in the left-hand direction.
- Home leave settings are enabled with this button kept pressed for at least four seconds. **(See page 19.)**

8. On/Off button

- Press this button and system will start.
- Press this button again and system will stop.

9. Operation lamp (Green)

- This lamp lights up during operation.
- This lamp blinks if a error occurs.

10. Cancel button

- Used to return to the previous screen.

11. LCD (with backlight)

- The backlight will be light for approximately 30 seconds by pressing any operation button. Operate buttons excluding the On/Off button while the backlight is lit.
- If two remote controllers are used to control a single indoor unit, the backlight of the remote controller operated earlier than the other one will be lit.

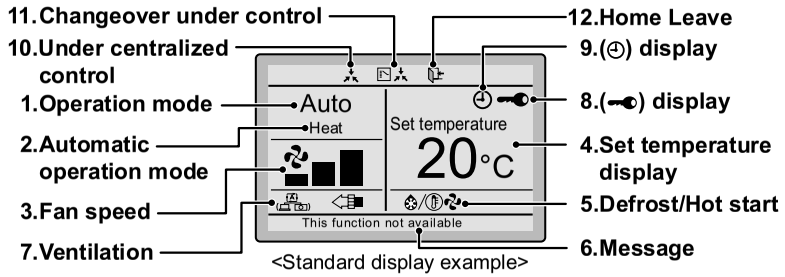
3P243520-1B

Names and Functions

Liquid Crystal Display

- Two types of liquid crystal display (LCD) are available. The standard display is by default set.
- To go to the detailed display, select the detailed display in the main menu. **(See page 46.)**
- The displayed contents of the screen vary with the operation mode of the equipment interlocked. (The following display will appear when the air conditioner is in automatic heating operation.)

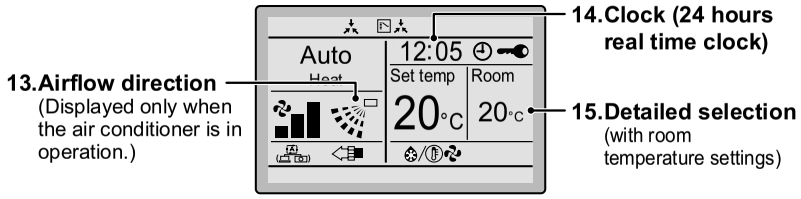
Standard display



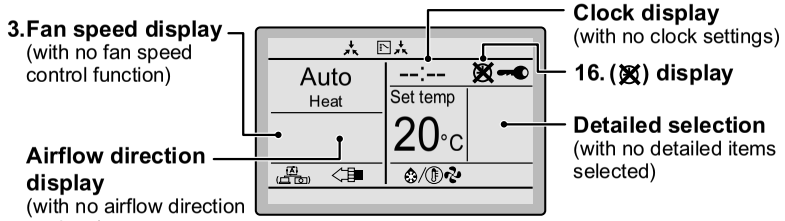
<Standard display example>

Detailed display

■ **The airflow direction, clock, and detailed selection items appear on the detailed display screen in addition to the items appearing on the standard display.**



<Detailed display example 1>



<Detailed display example 2>

1. Operation mode

- Used to display the present operation mode Cool, Heat, Vent, Fan, Dry or Auto mode.

2. Automatic operation mode

- Used to display the present automatic operation mode (Cool or Heat).

3. Fan speed

- Used to display the fan speed that is set for the air conditioner.
- The fan speed will not be displayed if the air conditioner does not have fan speed control function.

4. Set temperature display

- Used to display the temperature set for the air conditioner.

5. Defrost/Hot start "❄/🔥"

(See page 16.)

If Ventilating operation "🏠" is displayed:

- Displayed when a total heat exchanger unit, such as the Ventiair, is connected. For details, refer to the Operation Manual of the Ventiair.

6. Message

The following messages are displayed.
"This function not available."

- Displayed for a few seconds when an operation button is pressed if the indoor unit is not provided with the corresponding function.
- If a number of indoor units are in operation, the message will appear only if none of the indoor units is provided with the corresponding function, i.e., the message will not appear if at least one of the indoor units is provided with the corresponding function.

"Error: Press Menu Button."
"Warning: Press Menu Button."

- Displayed if the error or warning is detected **(see page 53)**.

"Quick Cool/Heat" (SkyAir only)

- Displayed if the quick cooling/heating function is turned ON **(see page 31).**

"Clean the filter."
"Clean the element."
"Clean the filter and element."

- Displayed when the time to clean the filter or element has come **(see page 51).**

7. Ventilation / Purifying

- Displayed when a total heat exchanger unit, such as the Ventiair, is connected.
- **Ventilation mode icon.**"🏠 ⚙ 🍃" These icons indicate the current ventilation mode (HRV only) (AUTOMATIC, HEAT EXCHANGE, BYPASS).
- **AIR Purifying ICON "🍃"** This icon indicates that the air cleaning unit (option) is operational.

8. 🔑 display (See page 23.)

- Displayed when the key lock is set.

9. 🕘 display (See page 34.)

- Displayed if the schedule timer or OFF reminder timer is enabled.

10. Under Centralized control "⚙"

- Displayed if the system is under the management of central control equipment (optional accessories) and the operation of the system through the remote controller is prohibited.

11. Changeover under control "⊡⚙"

(VRV only)

- Displayed on the remote controller if the remote controller has no cooling/heating selection eligibility mode **(see page 21)**.

Names and Functions

12.Home leave “ ” (See page 19.)

- The home leave icon shows the status of the home leave function.

ON	Home leave is enabled
FLASHING	Home Leave is active
OFF	Home Leave is disabled

13.Airflow direction “ ”

- Displayed when the airflow direction and swing are set **(see page 28)**.
- This item is not displayed if the system is not provided with a function to set airflow directions.

14.Clock (24 hours real time clock)

- Displayed if the clock is set **(see page 48)**.
- If the clock is not set, “ -- : -- ” will be displayed.

15.Detailed selection

- Displayed if the detailed display items are selected **(see page 47)**.
- No detailed items are by default selected.

16. display

- Displayed to inform that the clock needs setting again.
- The schedule timer function will not work unless the clock is set again.

1. Safety Precautions

■ Also see installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

Please read these “Safety Precautions” carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly.

- The precautions described herein are classified as WARNING and CAUTION. They both contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions without fail.

⚠ **WARNING**	Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.
⚠ **CAUTION**	Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.

- After completing installation, conduct a trial operation to check for faults and explain to the customer how to operate the air conditioner and take care of it with the aid of the operation manual. Ask the customer to store the installation manual along with the operation manual for future reference.

⚠ WARNING
Ask your dealer or qualified personnel to carry out installation work. Do not attempt to install the remote controller yourself. Improper installation may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire.
Consult your local dealer regarding relocation and reinstallation of the remote controller. Improper installation work may result in leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards.
Install the remote controller in accordance with the instructions in this installation manual. Improper installation may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire.
Be sure to use only the specified accessories and parts for installation work. Failure to use the specified parts may result in the unit falling, water leakage, electric shocks or fire.
Install the remote controller on a foundation strong enough to withstand the weight of the remote controller. A foundation of insufficient strength may result in the remote controller falling and causing injury.
Electrical work must be performed in accordance with relevant local and national regulations and with instructions in this installation manual. Be sure to use a dedicated power supply circuit only. Insufficiency of power circuit capacity and improper workmanship may result in electric shocks or fire.
Always perform installation work with the power supply shut-off. Touch with energized electric parts causes an electric shock.
Do not disassembly, reconstruct or repair. Electric shock and/or fire are caused.
Make sure that all wiring is secured, the specified wires are used, and that there is no strain on the terminal connections or wires. Improper connections or securing of wires may result in abnormal heat build-up or fire.
The choice of materials and installations must comply with the applicable national and international standards.

⚠ CAUTION
To avoid leakage and electric shock due to entry of water or insects, fill the wiring through hole with putty.
To avoid electric shocks, do not operate with wet hands.
Do not wash the remote controller with water, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.
Install the indoor and outdoor units, power cord and connecting wires at least 1 meter away from televisions or radios to prevent picture interference and noise. (Depending on the incoming signal strength, a distance of 1 meter may not be sufficient to eliminate noise.)
Do not install the air conditioner in the following locations: 1. Where there is a high concentration of mineral oil spray or vapour (e.g. a kitchen). Plastic parts will deteriorate, parts may fall off and water leakage could result. 2. Where corrosive gas, such as sulphurous acid gas, is produced. Corroding of copper pipes or soldered parts may result in refrigerant leakage. 3. Near machinery emitting electromagnetic radiation. Electromagnetic radiation may disturb the operation of the control system and result in a malfunction of the unit. 4. Where flammable gas may leak, where there is carbon fibre or ignitable dust suspensions in the air, or where volatile flammables such as paint thinner or gasoline are handled. Operating the unit in such conditions may result in fire. 5. High temperature area or directly flamed point. Heating and/or firing may be caused. 6. Moist area, or place where may be exposed to water. If water enters inside of the remote controller, electric shock may be caused and inner electronics may fail.
When remote controller thermo function is used, select the installation location considering the followings. ● A place where average temperature in the room can be detected. ● A place where is not exposed to direct sunlight. ● A place where is far apart from heat source. ● A place where is not affected by outside air due to door opening/closing or the like.

2. Accessories

The following accessories are included.

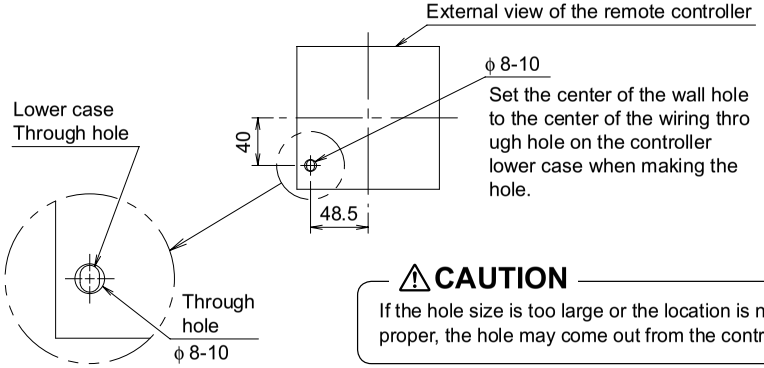
Wood screw	Small screw	Clamp	Operation manual	Installation manual	Wiring retainer
(ϕ3.5×16)	(M4×16)				
					
(2 pcs.)	(2 pcs.)	(1 pc.)	(1 pc.)	(1 pc.)	(1 pc.)

3. Remote controller installation procedure

3-1 Determine where to install the remote controller.

Make sure to follow "**1. Safety Precautions**" when determining the location.

3-2 Make a wiring through hole on the wall if the wires are taken out from the back side.



⚠CAUTION

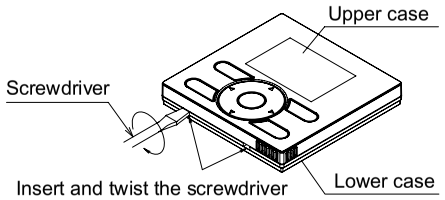
If the hole size is too large or the location is not proper, the hole may come out from the controller.

3-3 Remove upper case.

Insert a screwdriver in the recess of lower case to remove the upper case (2 points).

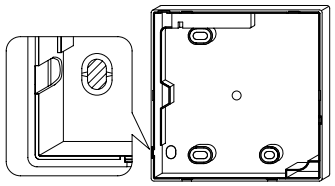
Remote controller PC-board is installed on the upper case. Take care not to damage the PC-board with the screwdriver.

Take care that dust or moisture does not touch the PC-board of removed upper case.



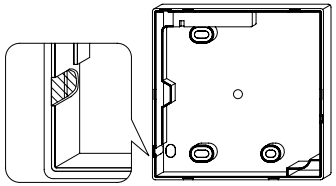
3-4 Determine the direction of controller wiring outlet (back outlet, left outlet, upper center outlet, upper outlet).

3-4-1 Back outlet



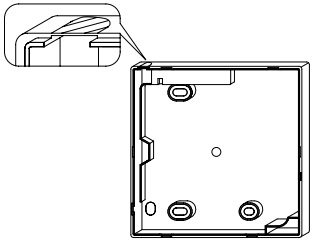
Cut off resin area (hatched area).

3-4-2 Left outlet



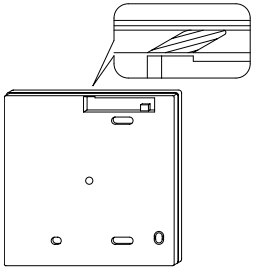
Cut off thin area (hatched area) with nippers or the like, and then remove burr with a file or the like.

3-4-3 Upper outlet



Cut off thin area (hatched area) with nippers or the like, and then remove burr with a file or the like.

3-4-4 Upper center outlet



Cut off thin area (hatched area) with nippers or the like, and then remove burr with a file or the like.

3-5 Conduct wiring.

⚠CAUTION

1. Switch box and transmission wiring are not attached.
2. Do not directly touch the remote controller PC-board.

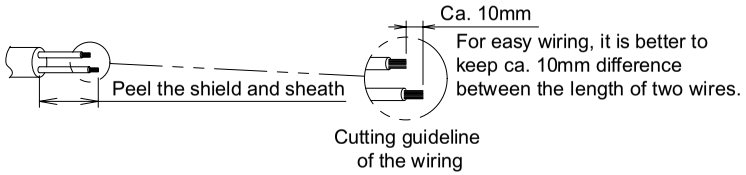
Wiring Specifications

Wiring Type	Sheathed vinyl cord or cable (2 wire) (NOTE)
Wiring Size	0.75-1.25mm²

NOTE

Shield wire (2 wire) can be used for remote controller wiring, but it must confirm to EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (Australian regulation)

Sheath part in the remote controller case should be stripped.

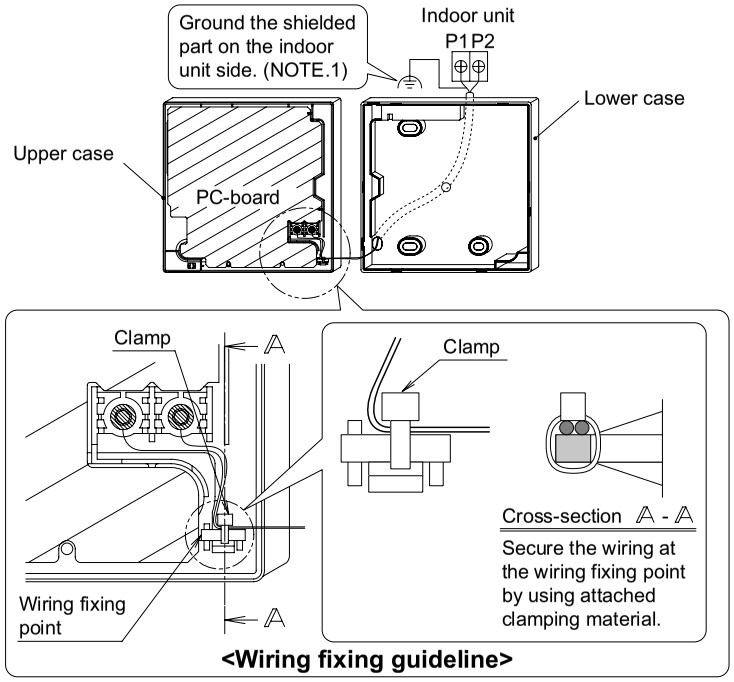


Sheath stripping length:

- Ca. 150mm for upper outlet
- Ca. 200mm for upper center outlet

Connect the terminals (P/P1, N/P2) of the remote controller upper case with the terminals (P1, P2) of the indoor unit. (P1 and P2 have no polarities.)

3-5-1 Back outlet

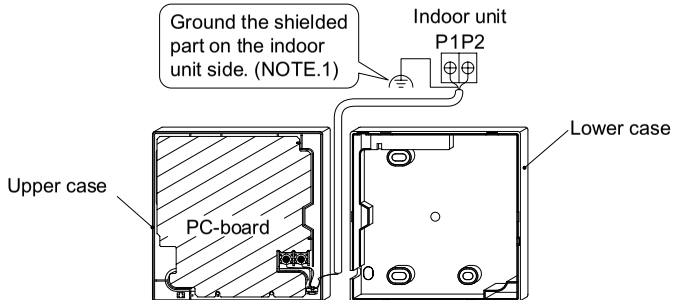


<Wiring fixing guideline>

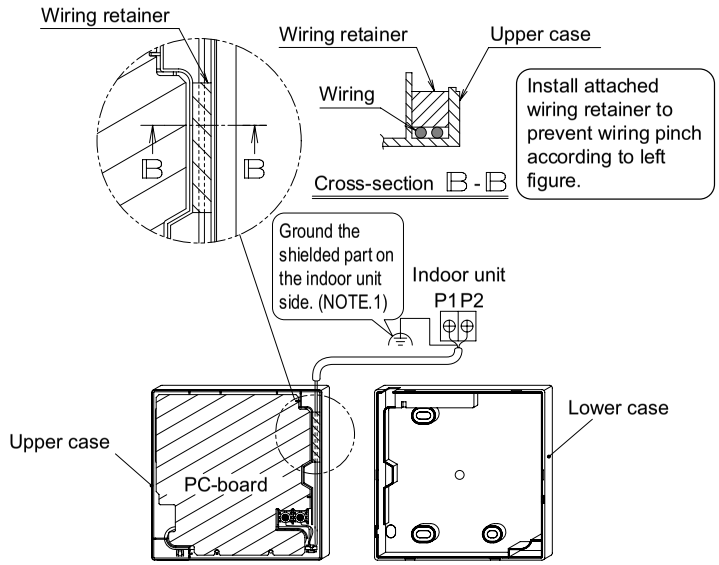
NOTE

1) Shield wire (2 wire) can be used for remote controller wiring, but it must confirm to EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (Australian regulation)

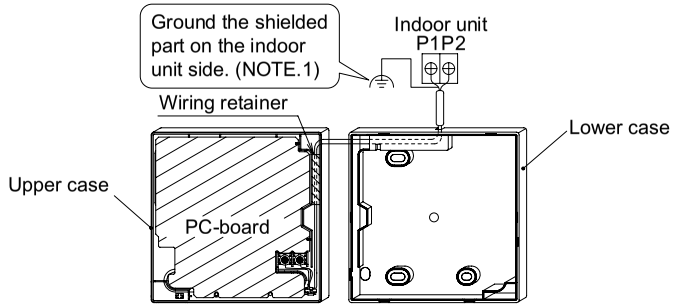
3-5-2 Left outlet



3-5-3 Upper outlet



3-5-4 Upper center outlet



⚠CAUTION

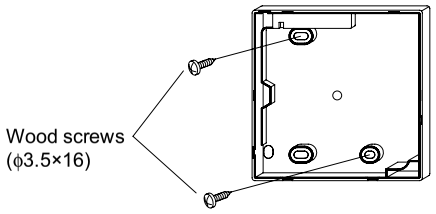
- Perform wiring apart from a power line not to receive electrical noise (external noise) during the wiring.
- Seal wiring draw-in port securely with putty (field supply) to prevent entry of insects or the like.

3-6 Fixing procedure of lower case.

In the case of wiring center upward drawing or rearward drawing, see wiring procedure first as wiring with the case is needed before fixing.

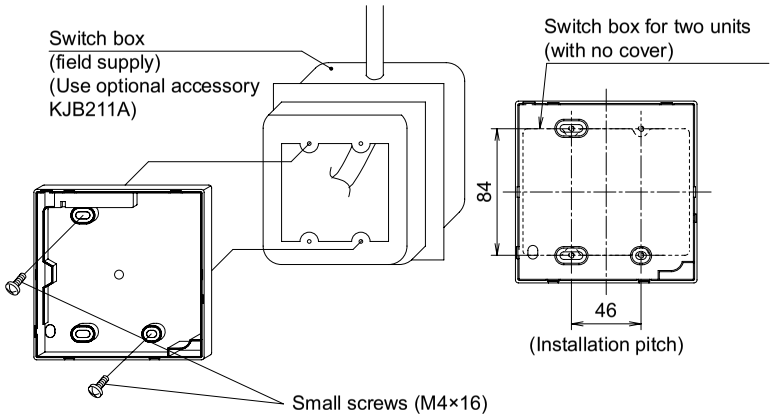
3-6-1 In the case of installation on the wall

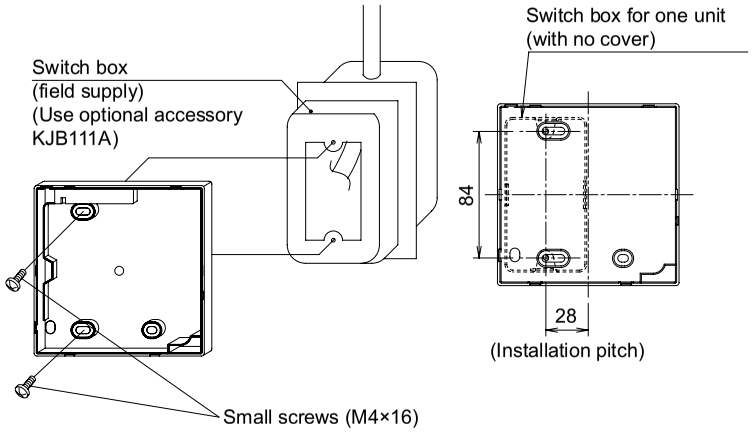
Secure by using attached wood screws (2 pcs.).



3-6-2 In the case of installation on the switch box

Secure by using attached small screws (2 pcs.).



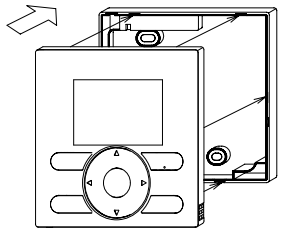


⚠CAUTION

- Select flat place for installation face as possible.
- And, do not tighten the installation screws too much not to deform the lower case.

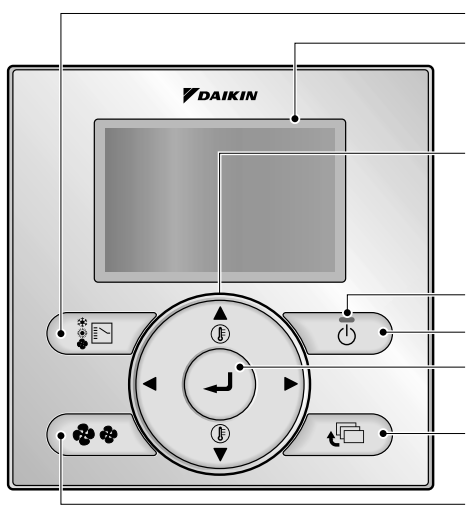
3-7 Install the upper case as original condition.

- Align the upper case with tabs of the lower case (6 points), inset and install the upper case.
- Install the wiring with care to prevent the pinch.
- Peel off a protective seal which is attached on the upper case.



4. Functions and menu items of remote controller buttons

4-1 Functions and menu items



(1) Operation mode selector button
Used to change the mode.

(2) Fan speed control button
Used to change the fan control.

(3) Menu/Enter button
- Used to indicate the main menu. (For details of main menu, see the operation manual.)
- Used to enter the setting item selected.

Main menu

Set temp mode changeover
Airflow Direction
Quick Cool/Heat On/Off
Ventilation
Timer setting
Service Contact/Model Info
Convenient functions
Setting status list
Clock setting
Language changeover

*Depending on connected model

(4) Up button ▲
- Used to raise the set temperature.
- The next items on the upper side will be highlighted. (The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is kept pressed.)
- Used to change the item selected.

(5) Down button ▼
- Used to lower the set temperature.
- The next items on the lower side will be highlighted. (The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is kept pressed.)
- Used to change the item selected.

(6) Right button ▶
- Used to highlight the next items on the right-hand side.
- Display contents are changed to next screen per page.

Note : page 210

(7) Left button ◀
- Used to highlight the next items on the left-hand side.
- Display contents are changed to previous screen per page.

(8) On/Off button
Press once to operate, and press once again to stop.

(9) Operation lamp
Green lamp lights up during operation. The lamp will blink if an malfunction occurs.

(10) Cancel button
- Used to return to the previous screen.
- Press and hold this button for 4 seconds or longer to display field setting menu.

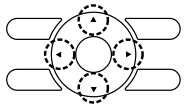
(11) LCD (with backlight)
The backlight will be light for approximately 30 seconds by pressing any operation button.

Field setting menu

Test operation ON/OFF
Register Service Contract
Field setting list
Group No. setting
Indoor unit Airnet No. set
Outdoor unit Airnet No. set
Error record
Indoor status display
Outdoor status display
Fan forced operation ON
Main/Sub changeover
Filter element sign OFF

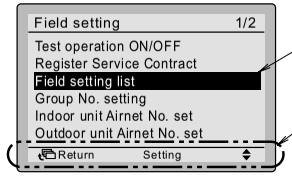
*Depending on connected model

⚠CAUTION
- Operate the button during backlight lit. However, On/Off may be operated concurrently with backlight lit.
- When 1 indoor unit is controlled by 2 remote controllers, a remote controller backlight which is operated first light.
- To operate Up/Down/Left/Right button, always press ▲ of the button.



4-2 Displays for button operation descriptions

<Field setting menu screen>



Highlighted display (selected items)

In the highlighted display (selected items) setting screen, button operation descriptions are displayed.

5. Power-on

- Check for completion of indoor/outdoor units wiring.
- Check for closing of EL. COMPO. BOX cover of indoor and outdoor units before power-on.

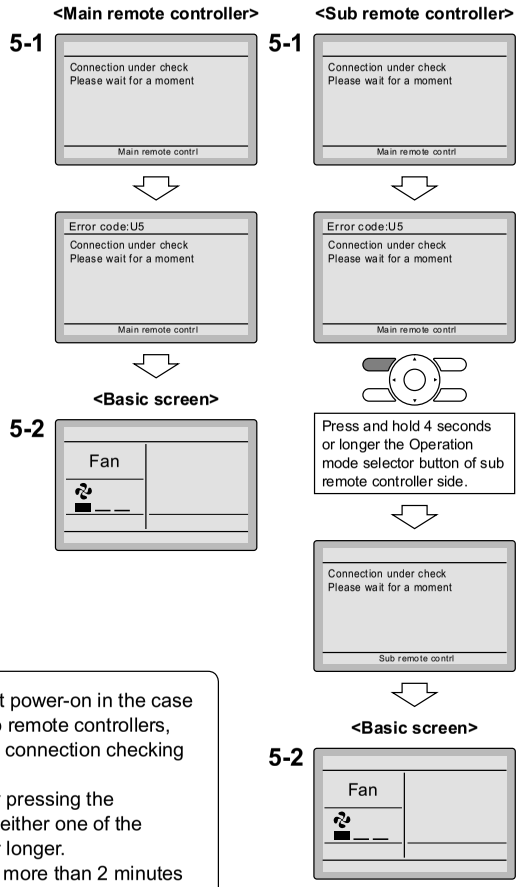
5-1 Followings are displayed after power-on.
"Connection under check
Please wait for a moment"

During above display, backlight does not light by button operation.

When 1 indoor unit is controlled by 2 remote controllers:

Be sure to set sub remote controller during above display. Press and hold 4 seconds or longer the Operation mode selector button of the remote controller to be set.
When the display is changed from main remote controller to sub remote controller, the setting is completed.

5-2 Basic screen is displayed.



⚠CAUTION
If sub remote controller is not set at power-on in the case of one indoor unit controlled by two remote controllers, "Error code: U5" is displayed in the connection checking screen.
Select the sub remote controller by pressing the Operation mode selector button of either one of the remote controllers for 4 seconds or longer.
If the basic screen is not displayed more than 2 minutes after "sub remote controller" display, shut off the power supply and check the wiring.

NOTE
When selecting a different language, refer to **12. Language changeover**. (See Note)

6. Field setting method

6-1 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer.
Field setting menu is displayed.

6-2 Select Field setting list in the field setting menu, and press Menu/Enter button.
Field setting list screen is displayed.

6-3 Highlight the mode, and select desired "Mode No." by using ▲▼ (Up/Down) button.

6-4 In the case of setting per indoor unit during group control (When Mode No. such as 20 , 21 , 22 , 23 , 25 are selected), highlight the unit No. and select "Indoor unit No." to be set by using ▲▼ (Up/Down) button.
(In the case of group total setting, this operation is not needed.)

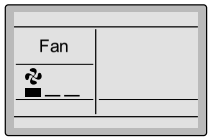
> In the case of individual setting per indoor unit, current settings are displayed. And, SECOND CODE NO. " - " means no function.

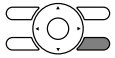
6-5 Highlight SECOND CODE NO. of the FIRST CODE NO. to be changed, and select desired "SECOND CODE NO." by using ▲▼ (Up/Down) button. Multiple identical mode number settings are available.

> In the case of group total setting, all of SECOND CODE NO. which may be set are displayed as " ＊ ". " ＊ " is changed to SECOND CODE NO. to be set. And, SECOND CODE NO. " - " means no function.

<Basic screen>

6-1

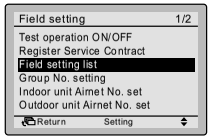


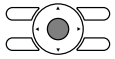


Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer during backlight lit.

<Field setting menu screen>

6-2



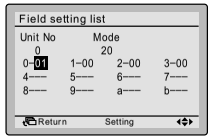


Press Menu/Enter button.

<Field setting screen>

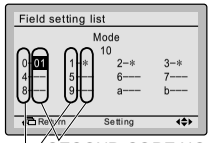
In the case of individual setting per indoor unit

6-3
6-4
6-5

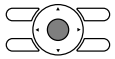


In the case of group total setting

6-3
6-5



SECOND CODE NO.
FIRST CODE (SW) NO.



Press Menu/Enter button.

6-6 Press Menu/Enter button. Setting confirmation screen is displayed.

6-7 Select Yes and press Menu/Enter button. Setting details are determined and field setting list screen returns.

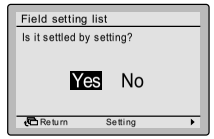
6-8 In the case of multiple setting changes, repeat "**6-3**" to "**6-7**".

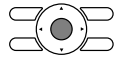
6-9 After all setting changes are completed, press Cancel button twice.

6-10 Backlight goes out, and "Connection under check Please wait for a moment" is displayed for initialization. After the initialization, the basic screen returns.

<Setting confirmation screen>

6-6
6-7





Press Menu/Enter button.

Setting confirmation

⚠CAUTION

- When an optional accessory is installed on the indoor unit, settings of the indoor unit may be changed. See the manual of the optional accessory.
- For field setting details of the outdoor unit, see installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of setting		SECOND CODE NO. Note) 2			
				01	02	03	04
10 (20)	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra long life filter	Light: Approx. 10.000 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 5.000 hrs.	———	———
			Long life filter	Light: Approx. 2.500 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 1.250 hrs.	———	———
			Standard filter	Light: Approx. 200 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 100 hrs.	———	———
	1	Long-life filter type (setting of filter sign indication time). (Change setting when ultra-long filter is installed)		Long-life filter	Ultra-long life filter	———	———
	2	Thermostat sensor in remote controller		Use	Not use	———	———
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display	Do not display	———	———
11 (21)	0	Setting number of connected Sky Air simultaneous operation system indoor units (setting for simultaneous operations system)		Pair	Twin	Triple	Double twin

Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of setting	SECOND CODE NO. Note) 2			
			01	02	03	04
12 (22)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (setting for when forced ON/OFF is to be operated from outside).	Forced OFF	ON/OFF operation	————	————
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (setting for when using remote sensor).	1°C	0.5°C	————	————
13 (23)	0	High air outlet velocity (for high ceiling applications).	≤2.7m	>2.7≥3.0m	>3.0≥3.5m	————
	1	Selection of airflow direction (setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed).	4-way flow	3-way flow	2-way flow	————
	3	Selection of airflow function (setting for when using a decoration panel for outlet).	Equipped	Not equipped	————	————
	4	Airflow direction range setting.	Upper	Normal	Lower	————
	6	Setting the external static pressure (setting according to the connected duct resistance) (for FHYK, follow the high ceiling setting)	Normal (Normal)	High static pressure (High ceiling)	Low static pressure ————	———— ————
15 (25)	3	Drain pump operation with humidifying.	Equipped	Not equipped	————	————
1c	1	Thermostat sensor in remote controller (for limit operation and Home leave function only)	Not use	Use	————	————
	3	Permission level setting	Level 2	Level 3	————	————
1e	2	Home leave function	Not permitted	Permitted	————	————

Notes) 1. Though setting is performed totally in the group, set Mode No. in the parenthesis when individual setting per indoor unit or checking after the setting should be performed.
2. SECOND CODE NO. at factory shipment is set to “01”. However for the following cases it is set to “02”.
- Airflow direction range setting (except round flow cassette)
- Thermostat sensor in remote controller (SkyAir only)
- Thermostat sensor in remote controller for limit operation and Home leave function only
- Home leave function

3. Any function which the indoor unit does not have is not displayed.

7. Test operation method (in the case of SkyAir)

∗ In the case of VRV, see the manual attached to the outdoor unit.

Also see installation manuals attached to the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.

- Check that wiring work of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit is completed.
- Check that EL. COMPO. BOX cover of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit is closed.
- After refrigerant piping, drain piping and electric wiring are completed, clean inside of the indoor unit and decorative panel.
- Perform the test operation according to following procedure.

7-1 Make sure to turn on the power supply more than 6 hours before operation start with front panel closed to protect compressor.

7-2 Confirm that stop valves of both liquid and gas are opened.
<Make sure that outer panel and piping cover is closed before operation (danger of electric shock). >
∗ After air purge by vacuum pump, refrigerant pressure may not rise even though the stop valve is opened. The reason is that refrigerant system of the outdoor unit is blocked by electrical expansion valve or the like. Operation is no problem.

7-3 Set the operation mode to cooling by using the remote controller.

7-4 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer. Field setting menu is displayed.

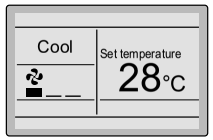
7-5 Select Test operation ON/OFF in the field setting menu, and press Menu/Enter button. Basic screen returns and “Test operation” is displayed.

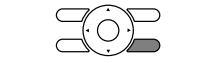
Notes for backlight

- The backlight will be light for approximately 30 seconds by pressing any operation button.
- Operate the buttons during the backlight lit. However, On/Off can be operated concurrently with the backlight lit.

<Basic screen>

7-3
7-4

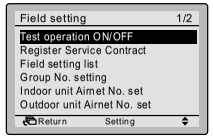


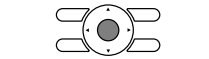


Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer during backlight lit.

<Field setting menu screen>

7-5





Press Menu/Enter button.

7-6 Press On/Off button within about 10 seconds. The test operation starts. Check operation condition for 3 minutes.
∗ Note) In the case of above-mentioned procedures **7-5** and **7-6** in reverse order, test operation can start as well.

7-7 Press Menu/Enter button in the basic screen. Main menu is displayed.

7-8 In the case of a model having airflow direction setting function, select Airflow Direction in the main menu and check that airflow direction is actuated according to the setting. For operation of airflow direction setting, see the operation manual.

7-9 After the operation of airflow direction is confirmed, press Menu/Enter button. Basic screen returns.

7-10 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer in the basic screen.
Field setting menu is displayed.

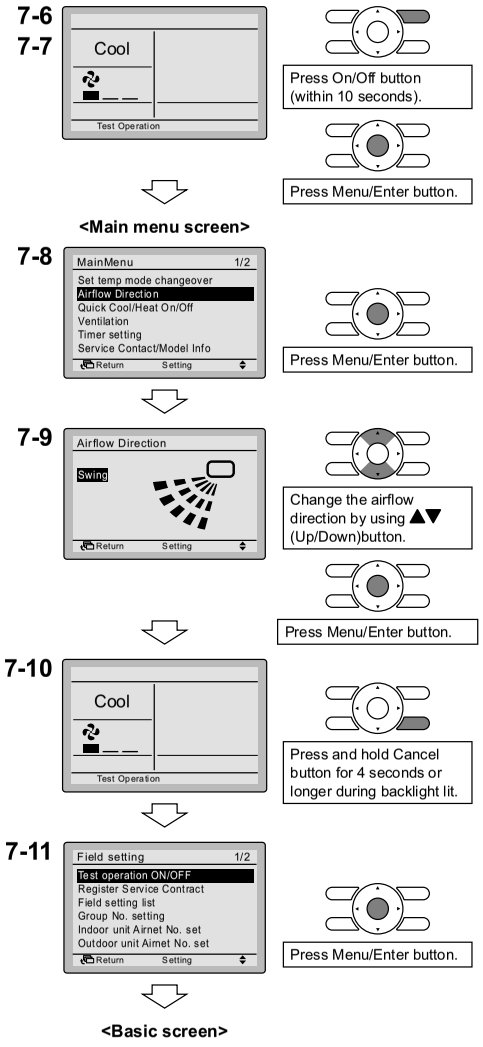
7-11 Select Test operation ON/OFF in the field setting menu, and press Menu/Enter button. Basic screen returns and normal operation is conducted.

7-12 Check the functions according to the operation manual.

7-13 When the decorative panel is not installed, shut off the power supply after the test operation finishes.

- If interior work is not completed after the test operation finish, explain to the customer that operation should not be performed until the interior work completion to protect the indoor unit.

(If the operation is performed, the indoor unit may be contaminated with the materials which arise from paints or adhesives during the interior work, and water splash or water leak may occur.)



⚠CAUTION

- If operation is not available due to any malfunction, refer to following **Failure diagnosis method** .
- After the test operation finishes, check that error code record is not displayed in the Service Contact/Model Information screen of the main menu according to the following procedure.

7-14 Press Menu/Enter button in the basic screen. Main menu screen is displayed.

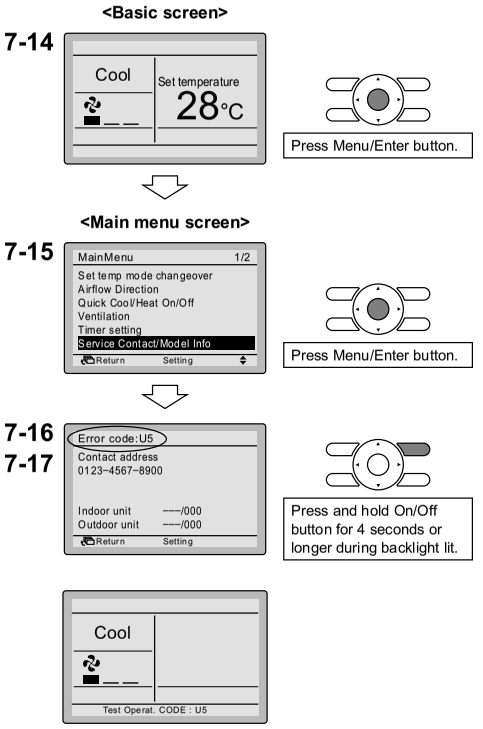
7-15 Select Service Contact/Model Info in the main menu, and press Menu/Enter button.

7-16 Service Contact/Model Information screen is displayed. Check that error code record is not displayed in the screen.
∗ Screen which does not display the error code record means normal status.

7-17 If the error code record is displayed, conduct the failure diagnosis referring to <Error code list> in the installation manual of the indoor unit.
After the failure diagnosis finishes, press and hold On/Off button for 4 seconds or longer in the "Service Contact/Model Info" screen to erase the error code record.

Failure diagnosis method

- When the remote controller displays any item in following table, inspect the details in the table.
- If a error occurs, "code" is displayed in the LCD like right figure.
  Conduct the failure analysis referring to "Error code list" in the installation manual of the indoor unit.
  And when the unit No. which detected the error during group control is confirmed, refer to "**8. Checking procedure of error record**".



Remote controller display	Description
No display	● Power outage, power voltage error or open-phase ● Wrong wiring (between indoor and outdoor units) ● Indoor PC-board assembly failure ● Remote controller wiring disconnection ● Remote controller failure ● Fuse blow (outdoor unit)
Display of “Connection under check Please wait for a moment” is turned on. ∗	● Indoor PC-board assembly failure ● Wrong wiring (between indoor and outdoor units)

∗ Though
“Connection under check
Please wait for a moment” is displayed for 90 seconds at maximum after power-on, this does not mean a failure. (Determine after 90 seconds.)

8. Checking procedure of error record

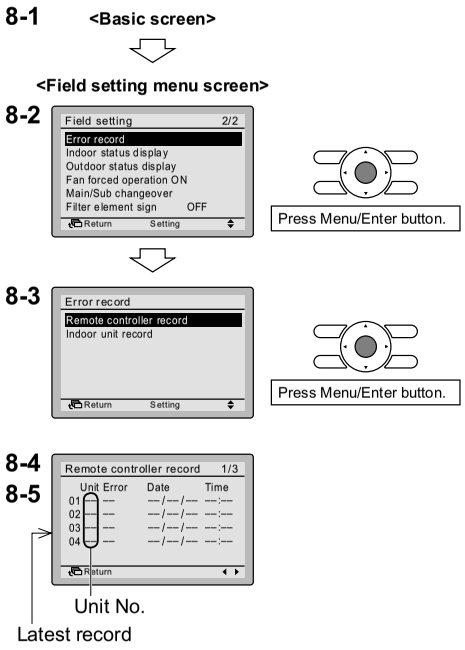
8-1 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer in the basic screen. Field setting menu is displayed.

8-2 Select Error record in the field setting menu, and press Menu/Enter button. The error record menu screen is displayed.

8-3 Select Remote controller record in the error record menu, and press Menu/Enter button.
Error codes and unit No. can be confirmed in the error record display screen.

8-4 In the error record, 10 items from the latest are displayed in order.

8-5 Press Cancel button in the error record display screen 3 times.
The basic screen returns.



9. Registration method of the service contract

● Registration of the service contract.

9-1 Press and hold Cancel button for 4 seconds or longer in the basic screen.
Field setting menu is displayed.

9-2 Select Register Service Contract in the field setting menu, and press Menu/Enter button. “Register service contract” menu screen is displayed.

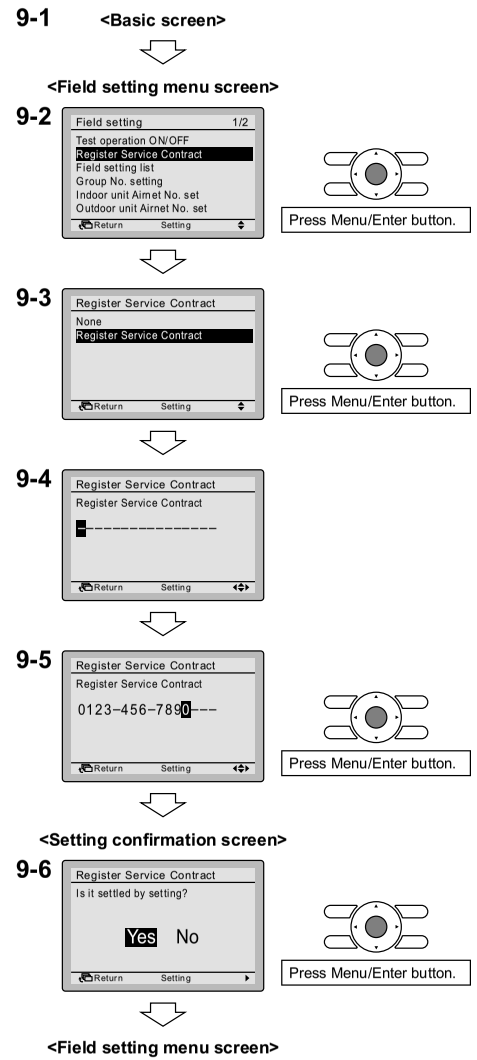
9-3 Select Register Service Contract , and press Menu/Enter button.

9-4 Enter the telephone number.
Numeric varies by using ▲▼ (Up/Down) button. Enter from the left end, and blank digit should be left as “ - ”.

9-5 Press Menu/Enter button.
Setting confirmation screen is displayed.

9-6 Select Yes and press Menu/Enter button.
Setting details are determined and field setting menu screen returns.

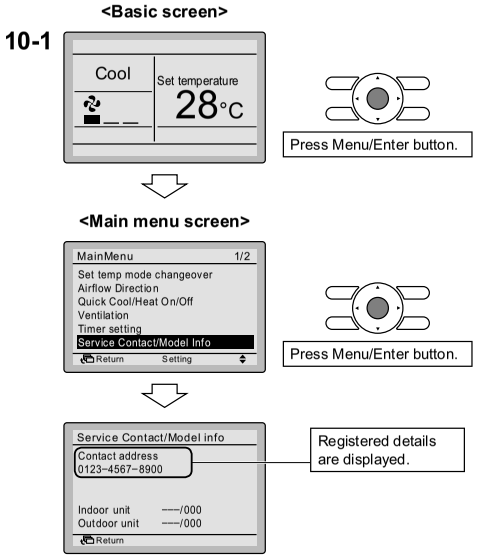
9-7 Press Cancel button once.
The basic screen returns.



10. Confirmation of registered details

10-1 Press Menu/Enter button in the basic screen.
Main menu is displayed.
Select Service Contact/Model Info in the main menu, and press Menu/Enter button.

10-2 Press Cancel button twice.
The basic screen returns.



11. Clock Setting

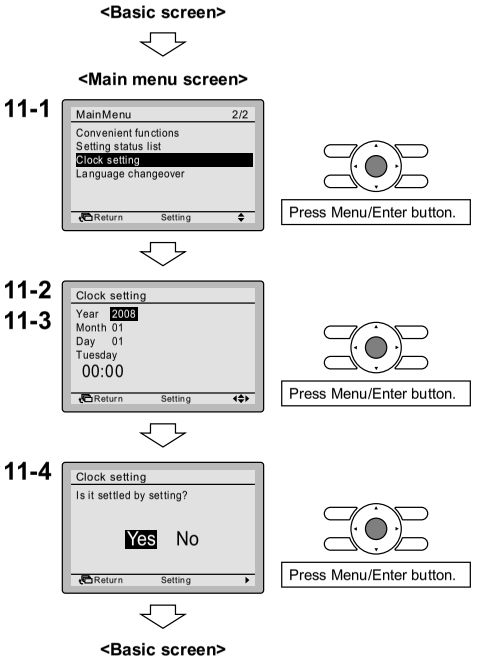
11-1 Press Menu/Enter button in the basic screen.
Main menu is displayed.
Select Clock setting in the main menu, press Menu/Enter button.

11-2 Select “year”, “month”, “day” and “time” by using ◀▶ (Left/Right) button and set by using ▲▼ (Up/Down) button in the clock setting screen. During the button is pressed and held, numeric changes continuously.
∗ Day of the week is set automatically.

11-3 Press Menu/Enter button.
Setting confirmation screen is displayed.

11-4 Select Yes and press Menu/Enter button.
Setting details are confirmed and basic screen returns.

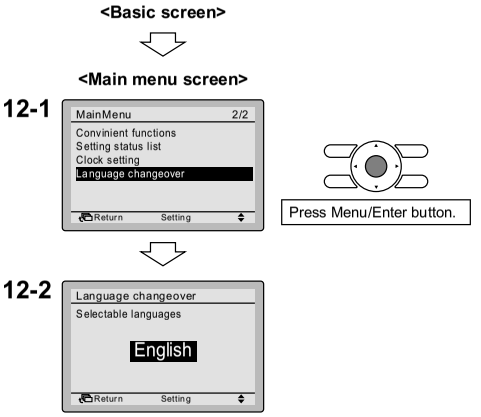
∗ If duration of power outage exceeds 48 hours, reset is needed.



12. Language changeover

12-1 Press Menu/Enter button in the basic screen.
Main menu is displayed.
Select Language changeover in the main menu, press Menu/Enter button.

12-2 Press ▲▼ (Up/Down) buttons to select “Language” on the language change-over screen.
English/Deutsch/ Français/Español/ Italiano/Ελληνικά/Nederlands/ Portugues/Русский/Türkçe
Pressing Menu/Enter button.
Setting details are confirmed and basic screen returns.



4. Wired Remote Controller with Weekly Schedule Timer

4.1 BRC1D61

Adds new, advanced functions to those of the wired remote controller.



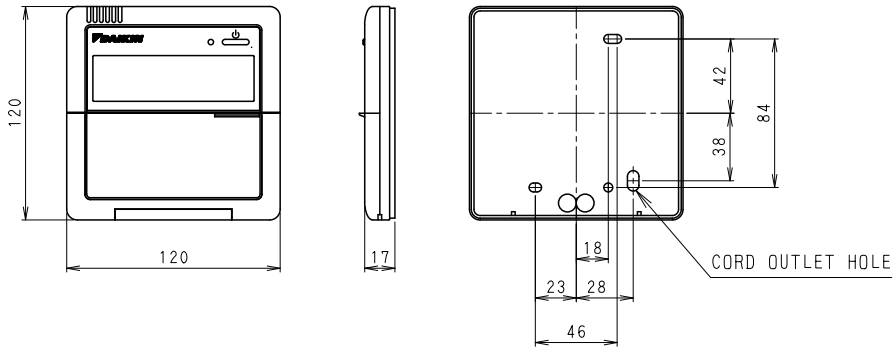
BRC1D61

- Includes ventilation mode and airflow rate switching, the main functions of HRV series.
- 24-hour clock function (1-hour backup for power failures).
- Programming function for each day of week.
- Scheduling possible of start/stop and temperature limit (5 settings/day).
- Programming can be enabled or disabled.
- Copy function for programmed schedules.

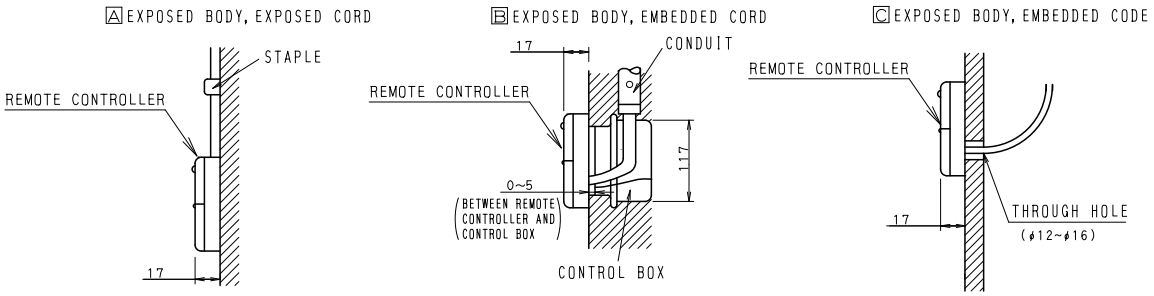
4.1.1 Dimensions

Unit (mm)

• REMOTE CONTROLLER DIMENSIONS



• INSTALLATION METHOD



NOTE) 1. REMOTE CONTROLLER CORD AND STAPLE ARE NOT ATTACHED. THEY ARE FIELD SUPPLIED PARTS.

• SPECIFICATIONS OF CORD

	FOR AUSTRALIA	FOR OTHER COUNTRIES
TYPE	SHIELD WIRE (INSULATED THICKNESS:1mm OR MORE)	VINYL CORD WITH SHEATH OR CABLE (INSULATED THICKNESS:1mm OR MORE)
SIZE	0.75~1.25mm²	
TOTAL LENGTH	500m	

3D048117

4.1.2 Features and Functions

The BRC1D61 is a state of the art remote controller that offers full control over your installation.

1 BASIC REMOTE CONTROLLER

The basic remote controller functions are:
- ON/OFF,
- operation mode change-over,
- temperature adjustment,
- air volume adjustment
- air flow direction adjustment.

2 CLOCK FUNCTION

The clock functions are:
- 24 hours real time clock,
- day of the week indicator.

3 SCHEDULE TIMER FUNCTION

The schedule timer functions are:
- a maximum of 5 actions can be programmed for each day of the week (totalling 35 actions),
- schedule timer can be enabled/disabled at any time,
- linked to a set temperature or a LIMIT operation or an OFF operation,
- "last command" overrules previous command until next scheduled command.

4 LIMIT OPERATION

Limit operation provides thermostat control within the range of the set minimum and maximum temperature. The minimum temperature setting will trigger heating, the maximum temperature setting will trigger cooling.

5 LEAVE HOME

The leave home function prevents the room temperature from dropping when the occupants are out for a longer period. If the room temperature drops below 10°C, heating is started automatically. As soon as 15°C is reached, the controller returns to its original status.

6 BUTTON PERMISSION LEVEL

Three hierarchical permission levels can be set to limit the user action.

4.1.3 Names and Functions

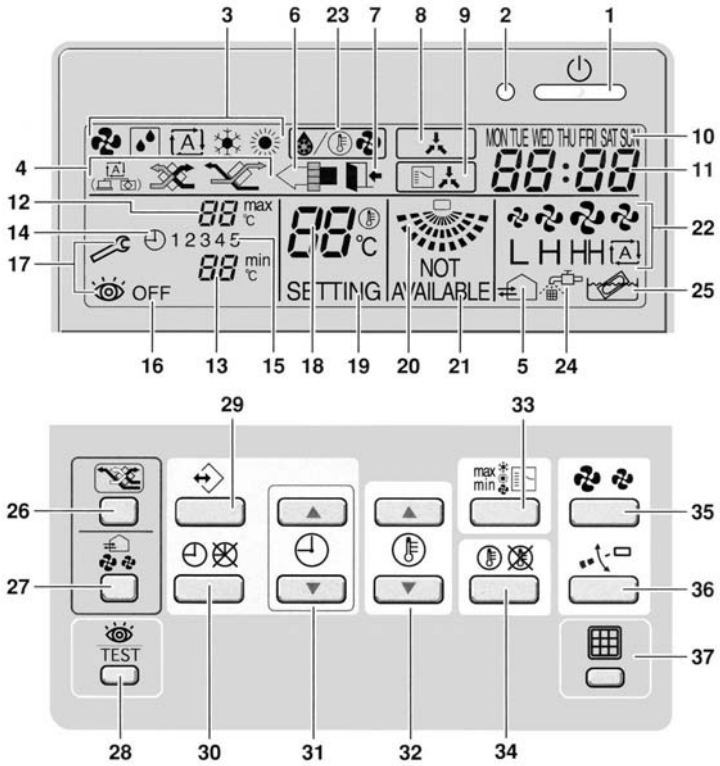


Figure 1

3P107422-3D

4.1.4 Name and Function of Switches and Icons (Refer to figure 1)

1 ON/OFF BUTTON

Press the ON/OFF button to start or stop the system.

2 OPERATION LAMP

The operation lamp lights up during operation or blinks if a malfunction occurs.

3 OPERATION MODE ICON

These icons indicate the current operation mode (FAN, DRY, AUTOMATIC, COOLING, HEATING).

4 VENTILATION MODE ICON

These icons indicate the current ventilation mode (HRV only) (AUTOMATIC, HEAT EXCHANGE, BYPASS).

5 VENTILATION ICON

The ventilation icon appears when the ventilation is adjusted with the ventilation amount button (HRV only). Simultaneously, the ventilation amount is indicated by the fan speed icon (see 22).

6 AIR CLEANING ICON

This icon indicates that the air cleaning unit (option) is operational.

7 LEAVE HOME ICON

The leave home icon shows the status of the leave home function.

ON	Leave home is enabled
FLASHING	Leave home is active
OFF	Leave home is disabled

8 EXTERNAL CONTROL ICON

This icon indicates that another controller with higher priority is controlling or disabling your installation.

9 CHANGE-OVER UNDER CENTRALISED CONTROL ICON

This icon indicates that the change-over of the installation is under centralised control assigned to another indoor unit or optional cool/heat selector connected to the outdoor unit (= master remote controller).

10 DAY OF THE WEEK INDICATOR
MON TUE WED THU FRI SAT SUN

The day of the week indicator shows the current week day (or the set day when reading or programming the schedule timer).

11 CLOCK DISPLAY 88:88

The clock display indicates the current time (or the action time when reading or programming the schedule timer).

12 MAXIMUM SET TEMPERATURE 88 max °C

The maximum set temperature indicates the maximum set temperature when in limit operation.

13 MINIMUM SET TEMPERATURE 88 min °C

The minimum set temperature indicates the minimum set temperature when in limit operation.

14 SCHEDULE TIMER ICON

This icon indicates that the schedule timer is enabled.

15 ACTION ICONS 1 2 3 4 5

These icons indicate the actions for each day of the schedule timer.

16 OFF ICON OFF

This icon indicates that the OFF action is selected when programming the schedule timer.

17 INSPECTION REQUIRED and

These icons indicate that inspection is required. Consult your installer.

18 SET TEMPERATURE DISPLAY 88 °C

This indicates the current set temperature of the installation (not shown in LIMIT operation or in FAN or DRY mode).

19 SETTING SETTING

Not used, for service purposes only.

20 AIR FLOW DIRECTION ICON

This icon indicates the air flow direction (only for installations with motorised air flow flaps).

21 NOT AVAILABLE NOT AVAILABLE

NOT AVAILABLE is displayed whenever a non-installed option is addressed or a function is not available.

22 FAN SPEED ICON L H HH A

This icon indicates the set fan speed.

23 DEFROST/HOTSTART MODE ICON

This icon indicates that the defrost/hotstart mode is active.

24 AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME ICON

This icon indicates the air filter must be cleaned. Refer to the manual of the indoor unit.

25 ELEMENT CLEANING TIME ICON

This icon indicates the element must be cleaned (HRV only).

26 VENTILATION MODE BUTTON

The ventilation mode button operates the HRV ; refer to the HRV manual for more details.

3P107422-3D

27 VENTILATION AMOUNT BUTTON

This button sets the ventilation amount; refer to the HRV manual for more details.

28 INSPECTION/TEST OPERATION BUTTON

Not used, for service purposes only.

29 PROGRAMMING BUTTON

This button is a multi-purpose button.

Depending on the previous manipulations of the user, the programming button can have various functions.

30 SCHEDULE TIMER BUTTON

This button enables or disables the schedule timer.

31 TIME ADJUST BUTTON

These buttons are used to adjust the clock or, when in programming mode, to adjust the programmed action time. Both buttons have an auto-repeat function.

32 TEMPERATURE ADJUST BUTTONS

These buttons are used to adjust the current setpoint or, when in programming mode, to adjust the programmed setpoint temperature (step = 1°C). Both buttons are also used to adjust the day of the week.

33 OPERATION CHANGE/MIN-MAX BUTTON

This button is a multi-purpose button. Depending on the previous manipulations of the user, it can have following functions:

1 select the operation mode of the installation (FAN, DRY, AUTOMATIC, COOLING, HEATING)

2 toggle between minimum temperature and maximum temperature when in limit operation

34 SETPOINT/LIMIT BUTTON

This button toggles between setpoint, limit operation or OFF (programming mode only).

35 FAN SPEED BUTTON

This button toggles between L (Low), H (High), HH (very High), (Automatic).

36 AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON

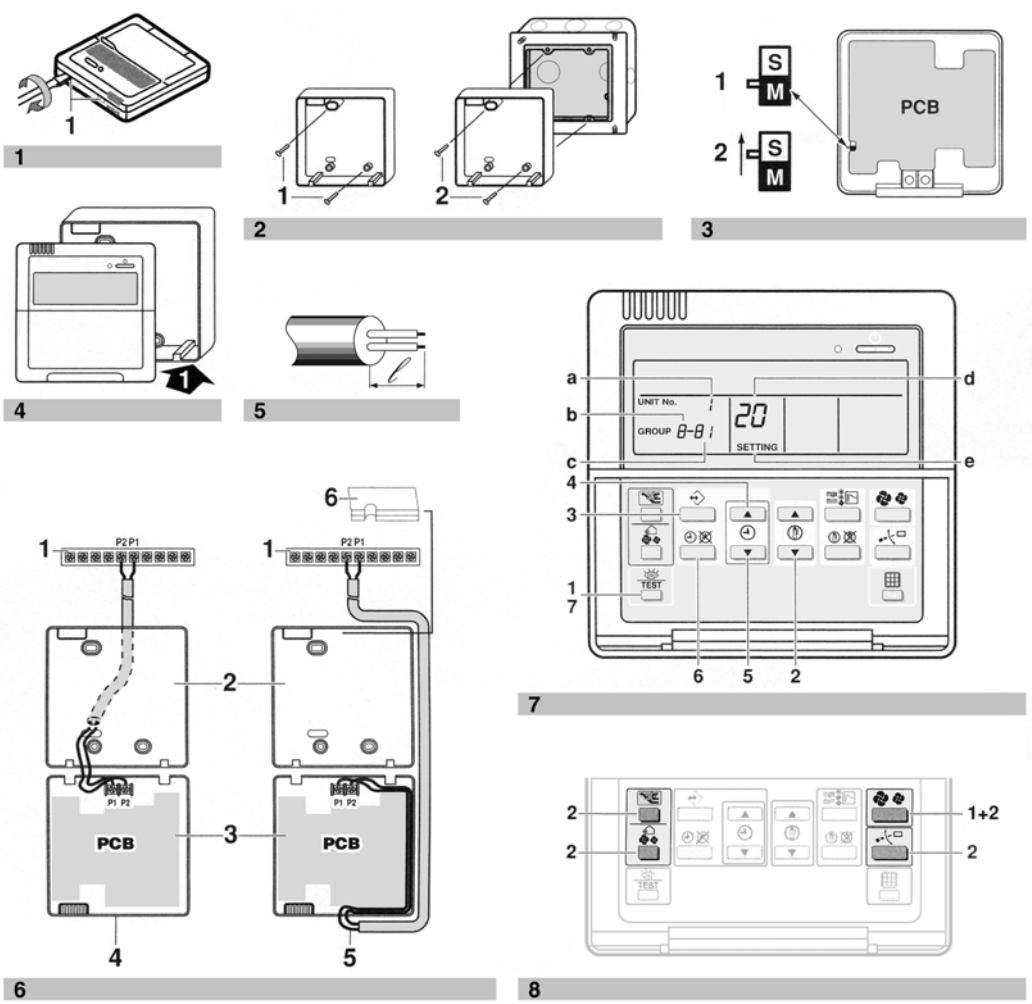
This button enables to adjust the air flow direction.

37 AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME ICON RESET BUTTON

This button is used to reset the air filter cleaning time icon.

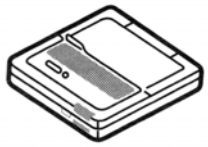
3P107422-3D

4.1.5 Installation



3P107422-4D

The kit includes the following parts:

Remote controller	Wood screws
	

Wall plugs	Machine screws
	

1. Remove the upper part of remote controller (Refer to figure 1)

Insert a minus screwdriver into the slots (1) in the lower part of the remote controller (2 places), and remove the upper part of the remote controller.

The PC board is mounted in the upper part of the remote controller. Be careful not to damage the board with the minus screwdriver.

2. Fasten the remote controller (Refer to figure 2)

1 for exposed mounting, fasten with the two included wood screws (Ø4x30) and plugs.

2 for flush-mounting, fasten with the two included machine screws (M4x16).

For the field supplied switch box, use optional accessory KJB111A or KJB211A.

NOTE Choose the flattest place possible for the mounting surface. Be careful not to distort the shape of the lower part of the remote controller by overtightening the mounting screws.

3. Wire the indoor unit (Refer to figure 6)

1 indoor unit

2 lower part of the remote controller

3 upper part of the remote controller

4 wired from the rear

5 wired from the top

6 notch the part for the wiring to pass through with nippers, etc.

Connect the terminals on top of the upper part of the remote controller (P1, P2), and the terminals of the indoor unit (P1, P2). (P1 and P2 do not have polarity.)

NOTE When wiring, run the wiring away from the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise).

Wiring specifications

Wiring type	Size
2 wire	0.75–1.25 mm^2

NOTE Peel the shield for the part that has to pass through the inside of the remote controller case (⁄). Refer to figure 5.

4. Reattach the upper part of the remote controller

Be careful not to pinch the wiring when attaching.

Refer to figure 4:

First begin fitting from the clips at the bottom.

NOTE
1. The switch box and wiring for connection are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

If controlling one indoor unit or one group of indoor units with two remote controllers

Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting as described below (Refer to figure 3).

1 Main remote controller (factory set)

2 Sub remote controller

Set one remote controller to “main”, and the other to “sub”.

NOTE
1. If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to “main”.
2. Set the remote controller before turning the power supply on.

“88” is displayed for about one minute when the power supply is turned on. During this time the remote controller can not be operated.

3P107422-4D

5. Permission level function

■ If required, you can limit the user action by restricting the number of operable buttons. Refer to the chapter "Field settings".

Level	Operable buttons
1	All
2	• on/off button • schedule timer button • temperature adjust button • operation change/MIN-MAX button • fan speed button • air flow direction adjust button
3	• on/off button • temperature adjust button • fan speed button

■ For switching between level 1 permission and the selected level in service, proceed as follows:

1 Keep the fan speed button " " pressed,

2 and press the 3 other indicated keys simultaneously while keeping the fan speed button " " pressed.

Refer to figure 8.

■ If you want to limit the user action on the remote controller to be defined as "sub", start with only connecting this controller to the unit. Make sure that this controller is set to "main" (factory set) first, change the permission level to the setting you prefer and only then set the remote controller to "sub".
You can now proceed with connecting the remote controller to be defined as "main".

6. Field settings

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual for each optional accessory.

Refer to figure 7.

a Unit NO
b First Code NO
c Second Code NO
d Mode NO
e Field set mode

Procedure (Refer to figure 7)

1 When in the normal mode, press the " TEST " button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

2 Select the desired MODE NO. with the " " button.

3 During group control, when setting by each indoor unit (mode No. 20, 21, 22 and 23 have been selected), push the " " button and select the INDOOR UNIT NO. to be set. (This operation is unnecessary when setting by group.)

4 Push the " " upper button and select FIRST CODE NO.

5 Push the " " lower button and select the SECOND CODE NO.

6 Push the " " button once and the present settings are SET.

7 Push the " TEST " button to return to the NORMAL MODE.

Example

If during group setting and the time to clean the air filter is set to FILTER CONTAMINATION - HEAVY, SET MODE NO. to "10", FIRST CODE NO. to "0", and SECOND CODE NO. to "02".

NOTE

1. Setting is carried out in the group mode, however, if the mode number inside the parentheses is selected, indoor units can also be set individually.
2. The SECOND CODE number is set to "01" when shipped from the factory.
3. Do not make any settings not given in the table.
4. Not displayed if the indoor unit is not equipped with that function.
5. When returning to the normal mode, "88" may be displayed in the LCD in order for the remote controller to initialize itself.
6. It is not possible to change field settings on the remote controller that is set to "sub".

3P107422-4D

Mode No. Note 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of setting		SECOND CODE NO. Note 2			
				01	02	03	04
10(20)	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra long life filter	Light: Approx. 10.000 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 5.000 hrs.	—	—
			Long life filter	Light: Approx. 2.500 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 1.250 hrs.		
			Standard filter	Light: Approx. 200 hrs.	Heavy: Approx. 100 hrs.		
	1	Long-life filter type (setting of filter sign indication time). (Change setting when ultra-long filter is installed)		Long-life filter	Ultra-long life filter	—	—
	2	Thermostat sensor in remote controller		Use	Not use	—	—
	3	Spacing time of display time to clean air filter count (setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display	Do not display	—	—
11(21)	0	Setting number of connected Sky Air simultaneous operation system indoor units (setting for simultaneous operations system)		Pair	Twin	Triple	Double twin
12(22)	1	ON/OFF input from outside (setting for when forced ON/OFF is to be operated from outside).		Forced OFF	ON/OFF operation	—	—
	2	Thermostat differential changeover (setting for when using remote sensor).		1°C	0.5°C	—	—
13(23)	0	High air outlet velocity (for high ceiling applications).		≤2.7 m	>2.7≤3.0 m	>3.0≤3.5 m	—
	1	Selection of air flow direction (setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed).		4-way flow	3-way flow	2-way flow	—
	3	Selection of air flow function (setting for when using a decoration panel for outlet).		Equipped	Not equipped	—	—
	4	Air flow direction range setting.		Upper	Normal	Lower	—
	6	Setting the external static pressure (setting according to the connected duct resistance) (for FHYK, follow the high ceiling setting)		Normal (Normal)	High static pressure (High ceiling)	Low static pressure —	—
15(25)	3	Drain pump operation with humidifying.		Equipped	Not equipped	—	—
1b	0	Permission level setting		Level 2	Level 3	—	—
	1	Leave home function		Not permitted	Permitted	—	—
	2	Thermostat sensor in remote controller (for limit operation and leave home function only)		Use	Not use	—	—

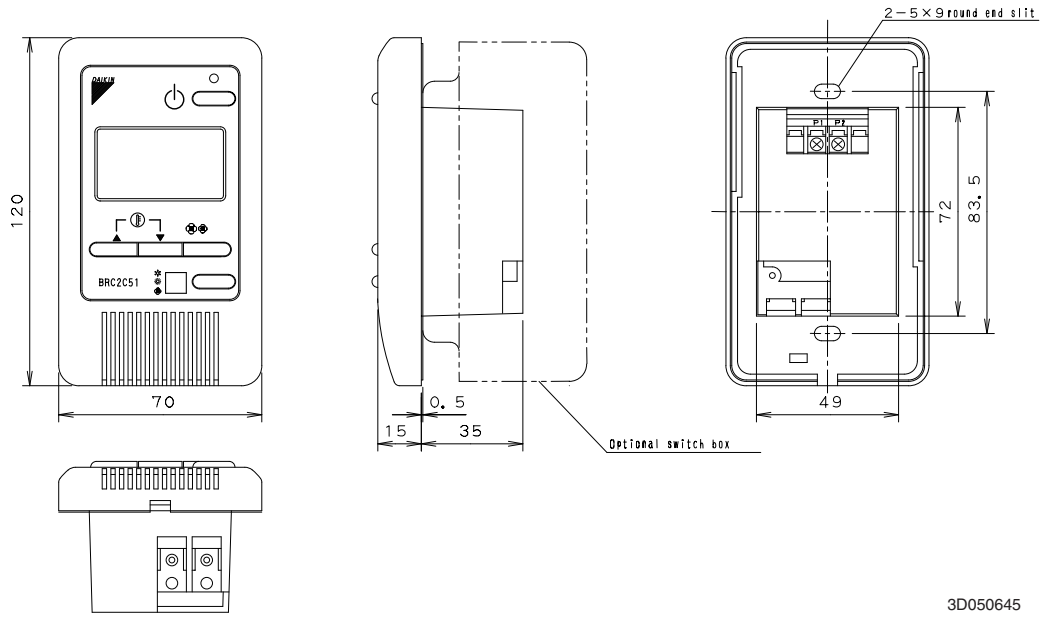
3P107422-4D

5. Simplified Remote Controller

5.1 BRC2C51

5.1.1 Dimension

Unit: mm

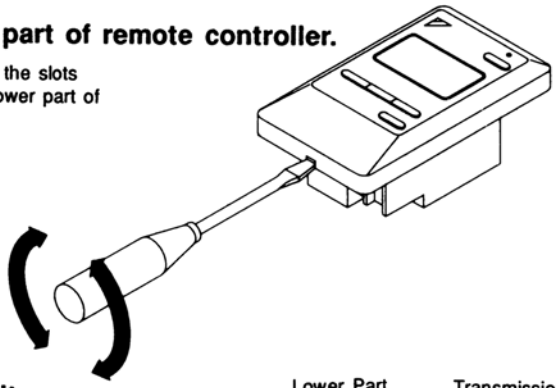


3D050645

5.1.2 Installation

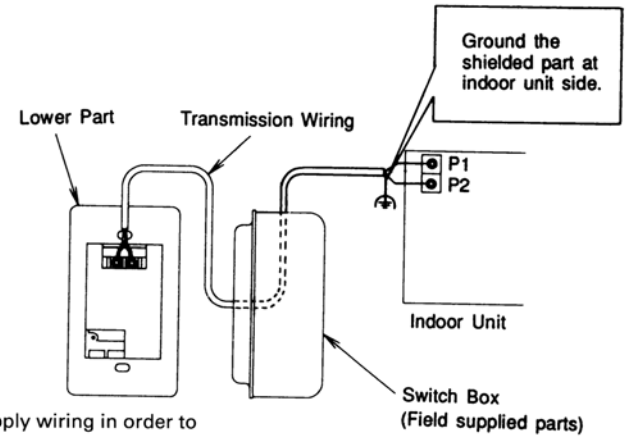
1. Remove the upper part of remote controller.

Insert minus screwdriver into the slots between the upper and the lower part of remote controller.



2. Wire the indoor unit.

Connect terminals P1 and P2 on the rear of the lower part of remote controller to terminals P1 and P2 on the indoor unit. (Terminals P1 and P2 have no polarity.)



NOTE

1. When wiring, run the wiring away from the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (external noise).
2. When wiring, refer to the wiring diagram of indoor unit (attached to indoor unit) as well.

WIRING SPECIFICATION

Wiring type	Shield wire (2 wire) (See NOTE 2,3)
Size	0.75 – 1.25 mm^2

NOTE) 1. Treat the terminal for the wire to be connected to the remote controller so the shielded part does not touch any other part.
2. Sheathed wire may be used for transmission wirings, but they do not comply with EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (European Directive).
When using sheathed wire, EMC must conform to Japanese standards stipulated in the Electric Appliance Regulatory Act.
(If using a sheathed wire, the grounding shown the figure on the right is unnecessary.)

3PA52943C

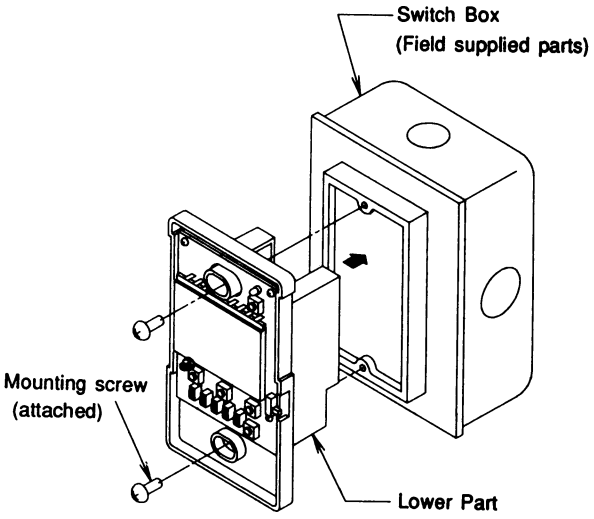
3. Fasten the remote controller.

Attach the lower part of remote controller to the switch box (field supplied parts).

NOTE

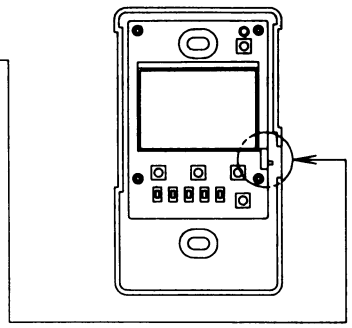
Choose the flattest place possible for the mounting surface. Be careful not to distort the shape of the lower part of remote controller by over-tightening the mounting screws.

For the field supplied switch box, use optional accessories KJB111A.



4. Initial setting

Change the MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting as described below.
If controlling one indoor unit with two remote controllers.
Set one remote controller to "main," and the other to "sub."





Main Remote Controller (Factory Set)



Sub Remote Controller

NOTE

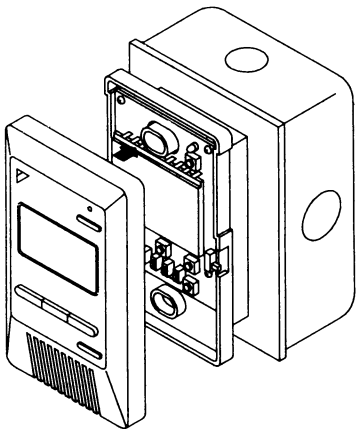
- If controlling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to "main."
- Set the remote controller before turning power supply on.

"88" is displayed for about one minute when the power supply is turned on, and the remote controller cannot be operated in some cases.

5. Reattach the upper part of remote controller.

NOTE

1. The switch box and wiring for connection are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.



3PA52943C

FIELD SETTING

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual for each optional accessory.

Procedure

① Remove the upper part of remote controller.

② When in the normal mode, press the BS6 BUTTON (field set), and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

③ Select the desired MODE No. with the BS2 BUTTON (temperature setting ▲) and the BS3 BUTTON (temperature setting ▼).

④ During group control, when setting by each indoor unit (mode No. 20, 22 and 23 have been selected), push the BS8 BUTTON (unit no.) and select the INDOOR UNIT NO. to be set. (This operation is unnecessary when setting by group.)

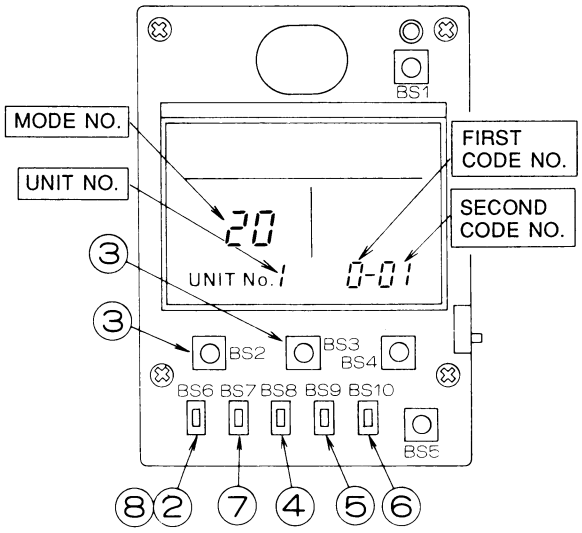
⑤ Push the BS9 BUTTON (set A) and select FIRST CODE NO.

⑥ Push the BS10 BUTTON (set B) and select SECOND CODE NO.

⑦ Push the BS7 BUTTON (set/cancel) once and the present settings are SET.

⑧ Push the BS6 BUTTON (field set) to return to the NORMAL MODE.

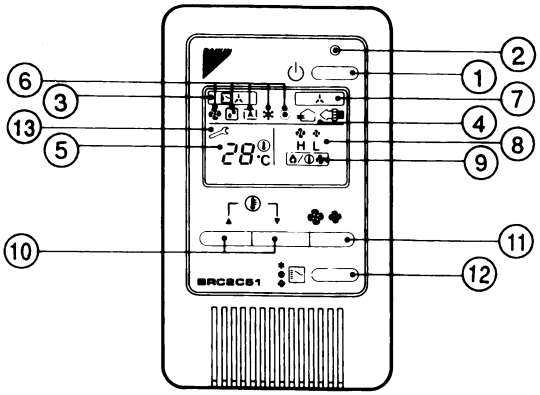
(Example) If during group setting and the time to clean air filter is set to FILTER CONTAMINATION - HEAVY, SET MODE NO. to "10," FIRST CODE NO. to "0," and SECOND CODE NO. to "02."



Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE No.	Description of Setting		SECOND CODE No. Note) 2					
				01		02		03	
10(20) Note) 6	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Long Life Filter	Light	Approx. 2,500 Hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 1,250 Hrs.	—	
			Standard Filter		Approx. 200 Hrs.		Approx 100 Hrs.		
	3	Spacing Time of Display Time to Clean Air Filter Count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do Not Display		—	
12(22)	1	ON/OFF Input from Outside. (Setting for when forced ON/OFF is to be operated from outside.)		Forced OFF		ON/OFF Operation			
	2	Thermostat Differential Changeover (Setting for when using the remote sensor) FXYC, FXYF, FXYK or FXYH only		1°C		0.5°C		—	
13(23)	0	High Air Outlet Velocity (Setting for when installed in a high ceiling) FXYF only		2.7 m or less		More than 2.7 m; 3.0 m or less		More than 3.0 m; 3.5 m or less	
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed) FXYF only		4-way flow		3-way flow		2-way flow	
15(25)	1	Humidifying with thermostat OFF		Not equipped		Equipped			
	3	Drain pump operation with humidifying		Not equipped		Equipped			

NOTE) 1. Setting is carried out in the group mode, however, if the mode number inside the parentheses is selected, indoor units can also be set individually.
2. The SECOND CODE number. is set to "01" when shipped from the factory.
3. Do not make any settings not given in the table on the left.
4. Not displayed if the indoor unit is not equipped with that function.
5. When returning to the normal mode, "88" may be displayed in the LCD in order for the remote controller to initialize itself.
6. This mode is used to set the time until the display time to clean air filter lights up when using central remote controller.

3PA52946A



REMOTE CONTROLLER: NAME AND FUNCTION OF EACH SWITCH AND DISPLAY	
①	**ON/OFF BUTTON** Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
②	**OPERATION LAMP (RED)** The lamp lights up during operation. Blinks in case of stop due to malfunction.
③	**DISPLAY " [⇄ 人] " (CHANGEOVER UNDER CONTROL)** It is impossible to changeover heat/cool with the remote controller when it shows this display. (As for details, see " SETTING OF MASTER REMOTE CONTROLLER" in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.)
④	**DISPLAY " OPTION " (VENTILATION)** This display shows that the total heat exchanger (HRV) are in operation.
⑤	**DISPLAY "28 °C "(SET TEMPERATURE)** This display shows the set temperature. Only given during a cooling or heating operation.
⑥	**DISPLAY " " " " " A " " " " " (OPERATION MODE)** This display shows current OPERATION MODE. " " is not available with outdoor units specially designed for cooling only. " A " is reserved only for outdoor units capable of heat recovery.
⑦	**DISPLAY " 人 " (UNDER CENTRALIZED CONTROL)** When this display shows, the system is UNDER CENTRALIZED CONTROL. (This is not a standard specification)
⑧	**DISPLAY " H L " (FAN SPEED).** The display shows the fan speed: "HIGH" or "LOW".
⑨	**DISPLAY " [💧/◑] " (DEFROST/ HOT START)** Indicates that defrost or hot start (during which the fan is stopped till the temperature of air supply rises enough at the start of a heating run) is progress.
⑩	**TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON** Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE of the thermostat. ▲ ; Each press raises the set temperature by 1°C. ▼ ; Each press lowers the set temperature by 1°C. The variable temperature range is 16°C to 32°C.
⑪	**FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON** Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.
⑫	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON** Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.
⑬	**DISPLAY " 🔧 " (MALFUNCTION)** Indicates malfunction and blinks if the unit stops operating due to malfunction. (As for details, see "TROUBLE SHOOTING" in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.)
For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown in the figure above contrary to actual running situations.	

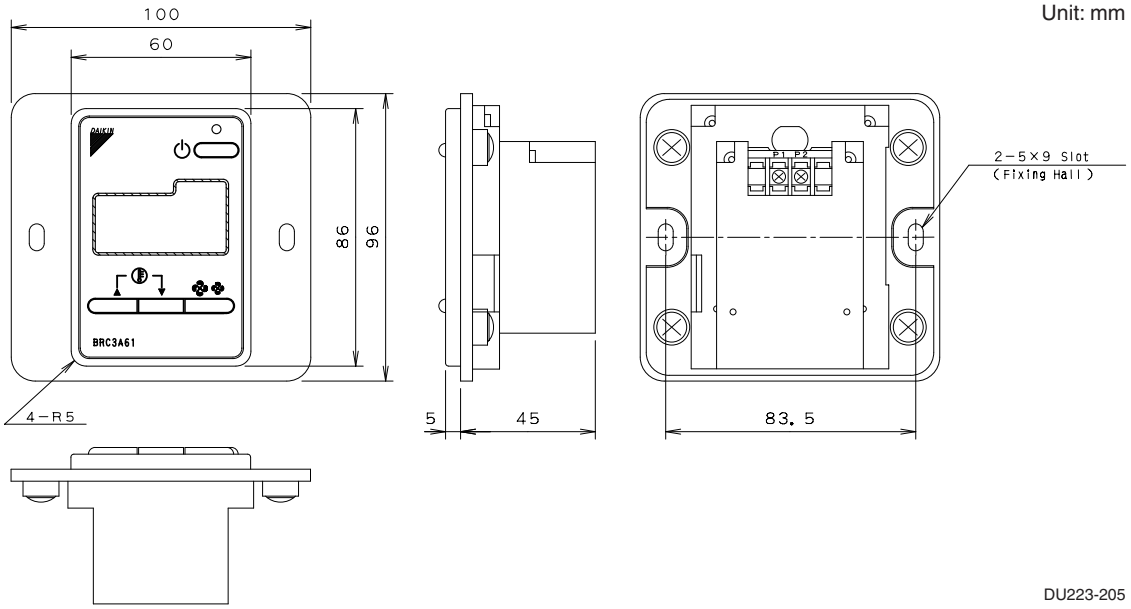
C: 2PA52942

6. Remote Controller for Hotel Use

6.1 BRC3A61

6.1.1 Dimension

Unit: mm

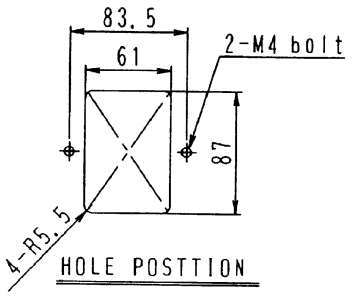


DU223-205

6.1.2 Installation

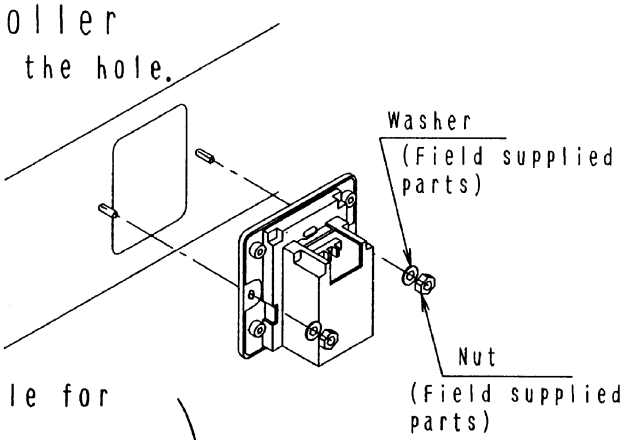
1, Prepare for the fixing panel

Open a hole in the panel and install two mounting bolt at below.



2, Attach the remote controller

Attach the remote controller to the hole.



(Choose the flattest place possible for the mounting surface.
Be careful not to distort the shape of the casing of remote controller by over-lightening the nuts.)

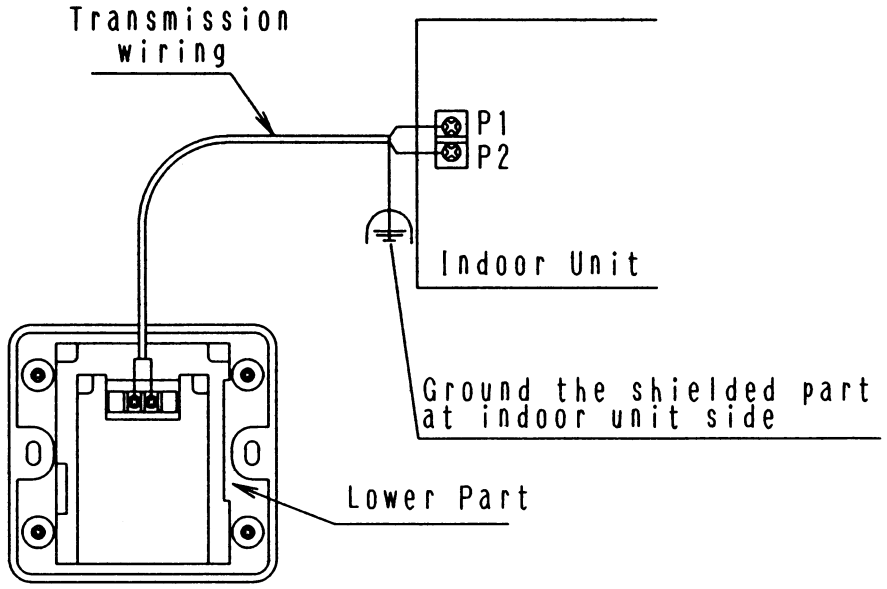
《 PRECAUTION 》

1. The washers and nuts are not included.
2. Do not directly touch the PC board with your hand.

3PA61527

3, Wire the indoor unit.

Connect terminals P1 and P2 on the rear of the lower part of remote controller to terminals P1 and P2 on the indoor unit. (Terminals P1 and P2 have no polarity)



《 PRECAUTION 》

① When wiring, run the wiring away the power supply wiring in order to avoid receiving electric noise (ex-ternal noise)

② When wiring, refer to the wiring diagram of indoor unit (attached to indoor unit) as well.

WIRING SPECIFICATION

Wiring type	Shield wire (2 wire)(See NOTE 2)
Size	0.75～1.25mm²

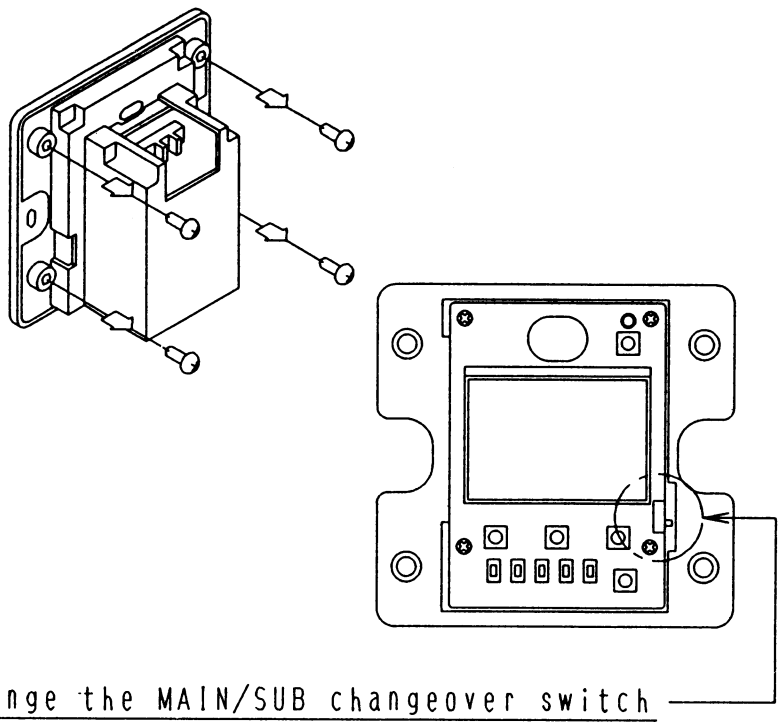
NOTE)

1. Treat the terminal for the wire to be connected to the remote controller so the shielded part does not touch any other part.
2. Sheathed wire may be used for transmission wirings. If using a sheathed wire, as for Electromagnetic Compatibility the system must conform to the Electrical Appliance And Material Control Law Of Japan.

3PA61527

4, Initial setting

Remove the screws(×4) and remove the lower part of remote controller.



If controlling one indoor unit with two remote controlles setting as described below. Set one remote controller to 'MAIN', and the other to' SUB'



Main Remote Controller (Factory Set)



Sub Remote Controller

《 PRECAUTION 》

- If controling with one remote controller, be sure to set it to 'MAIN'
- Set the remote controller before turning power supply on.

'88' is displayed for about one minute when the power supply is turned on, and the remote controller cannot be operated in some cases.

3PA61527

FIELD SETTING

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual for each optional accessory.)

Procedure

① Remove the upper part of remote controller.

② When in the normal mode, press the [BS6] BUTTON (field set), and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

③ Select the desired MODE No. with the [BS2] BUTTON (temperature setting ▲) and the [BS3] BUTTON (temperature setting ▼).

④ During group control, when setting by each indoor unit (mode No. 20, 22 and 23 have been selected), push the [BS8] BUTTON (unit no.) and select the INDOOR UNIT NO. to be set. (This operation is unnecessary when setting by group.)

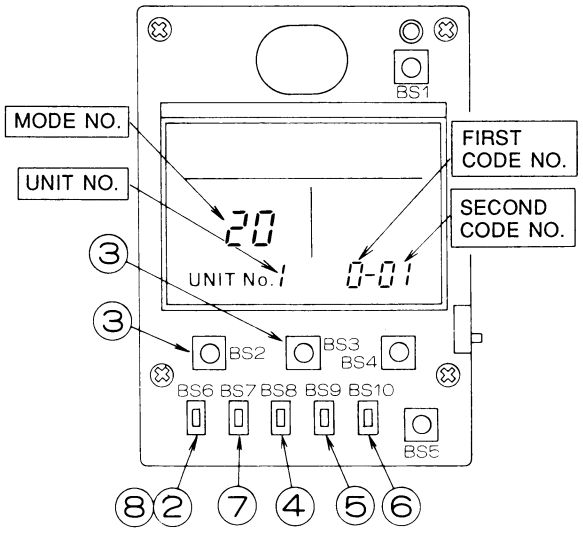
⑤ Push the [BS9] BUTTON (set A) and select FIRST CODE NO.

⑥ Push the [BS10] BUTTON (set B) and select SECOND CODE NO.

⑦ Push the [BS7] BUTTON (set/cancel) once and the present settings are SET.

⑧ Push the [BS6] BUTTON (field set) to return to the NORMAL MODE.

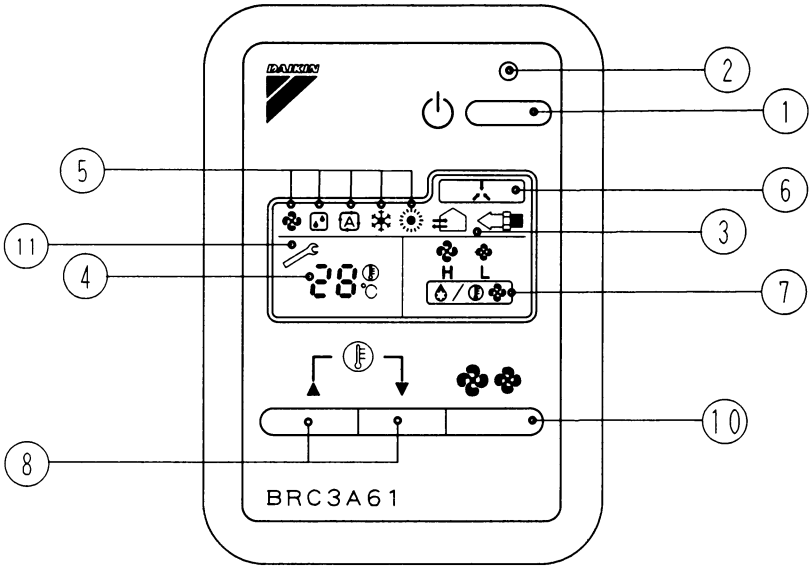
(Example) If during group setting and the time to clean air filter is set to FILTER CONTAMINATION - HEAVY, SET MODE NO. to "10," FIRST CODE NO. to "0," and SECOND CODE NO. to "02."



Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE No.	Description of Setting		SECOND CODE No. Note) 2					
				01		02		03	
10(20) Note) 6	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time of display time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Long Life Filter	Light	Approx. 2,500 Hrs.	Heavy	Approx. 1,250 Hrs.	—	
			Standard Filter		Approx. 200 Hrs.		Approx 100 Hrs.		
	3	Spacing Time of Display Time to Clean Air Filter Count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do Not Display		—	
12(22)	1	ON/OFF Input from Outside. (Setting for when forced ON/OFF is to be operated from outside.)		Forced OFF		ON/OFF Operation			
	2	Thermostat Differential Changeover (Setting for when using the remote sensor) FXYC, FXYF, FXYK or FXYH only		1°C		0.5°C		—	
13(23)	0	High Air Outlet Velocity (Setting for when installed in a high ceiling) FXYF only		2.7 m or less		More than 2.7 m; 3.0 m or less		More than 3.0 m; 3.5 m or less	
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed) FXYF only		4-way flow		3-way flow		2-way flow	
15(25)	1	Humidifying with thermostat OFF		Not equipped		Equipped			
	3	Drain pump operation with humidifying		Not equipped		Equipped			

NOTE) 1. Setting is carried out in the group mode, however, if the mode number inside the parentheses is selected, indoor units can also be set individually.
2. The SECOND CODE number. is set to "01" when shipped from the factory.
3. Do not make any settings not given in the table on the left.
4. Not displayed if the indoor unit is not equipped with that function.
5. When returning to the normal mode, "88" may be displayed in the LCD in order for the remote controller to initialize itself.
6. This mode is used to set the time until the display time to clean air filter lights up when using central remote controller.

3PA52946A



REMOTE CONTROLLER: NAME AND FUNCTION OF EACH SWITCH AND DISPLAY

①	ON/OFF BUTTON Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.
②	OPERATION LAMP(RED) The lamp lights up during operation. Blinks in case of stop due to malfunction.
③	DISPLAY' OPTION' (VENTILATION/AIR CLEANING) This display shows that the total heat exchange are in operation. (This is optional accessory)
④	DISPLAY' 28 ' (SET TEMPERATURE) This display shows the set temperature. Only given during a cooling or heating operation.
⑤	DISPLAY' '' '' '' '' ' (OPERATION MODE) This display shows current OPERATION MODE. ' ' is not available whis outdoor units specially designed for cooling only. ' ' is reserved only for outdoor units capable of heat recovery.
⑥	DISPLAY' ' (UNDER CENTRALIZED CONTROL) When this display shows, the system is UNDER CENTRALIZED CONTROL (This is not a standard specification)
⑦	DISPLAY' H L ' (FAN SPEED) The display shows the fan speed: 'HIGH' or 'LOW'.
⑧	DISPLAY' ' (DEFROST/HOT START) Indicates that defrost or hot start (during which the fan is stopped till the temperature of air supply rises enough at the start of a heating run)is progress.
⑨	TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE of the thermostat. ▲:Each press raises the set temperature by 1℃ ▼:Each press lowers the set temperature by 1℃ The variable temperature range is 16℃ to 32℃.
⑩	FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGHT or LOW, of your choice.
⑪	DISPLAY' ' (MALFUNCTION) Indicates malfunction and blinks if the unit stops operating due to malfunction. (As for details, see 'TROUBLE SHOOTING' in the operation manual attached to the indoor uint or the outdoor unit.)

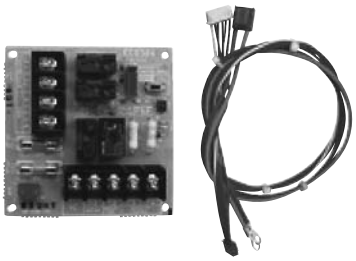
(NOTE)

- For the sake of explanation, all indications are shown in the figure above contrary to actual running situations.
- This remote controller does not have "AIR FLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON." Don't operate the flap adjusting air flow direction by your hand. (FXYF, FXYC, FXYH, FXYA, FXYK)

3PA61137

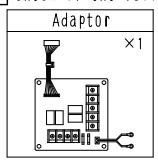
7. Adaptor for Wiring

7.1 KRP1B61



Item \ Model	KRP1B61
Dimensions (mm)	100×100
Length of lead wire (mm)	400
Accessories	PC board support. Clamp. Installation manual.

Accessories Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

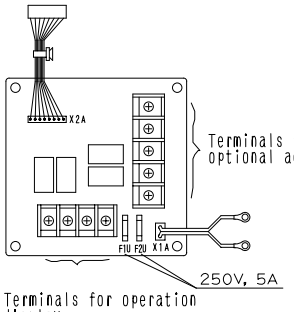


PC board support	×4
Clamp	×3
Installation manual	×1

Notes
- Kits vary according to applicable models.
- A special adaptor fixing plate and box are required for the following models.

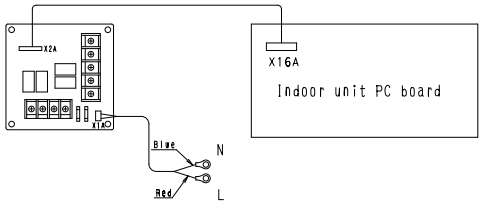
FXC(Q) ・・・・・・・・・・・・・KRP1B96

1 NAMES OF PARTS



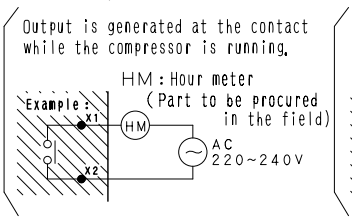
2 ELECTRIC WIRING

- Refer to the WIRING DIAGRAM attached to the indoor unit before attempting to wire.
  〔Make sure wires to units do not pass over the PC board when wiring.〕
- Wire the adaptor to the indoor unit as shown below.

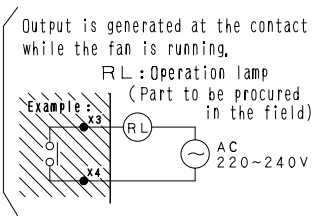


① Fetching the operation display signal

- Attaching an hour meter



- Fan ON display



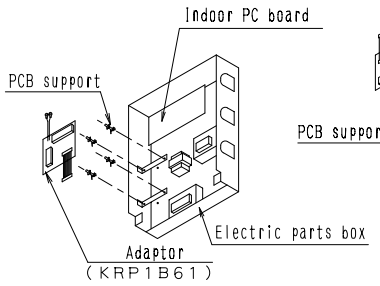
② If optional accessories are installed(auxiliary electric heater, humidifier)
- Wire correctly in accordance with the attached installation manual.
- Refer to the wiring diagram applied to the indoor unit when running electric wiring.

C: 2PA61563C

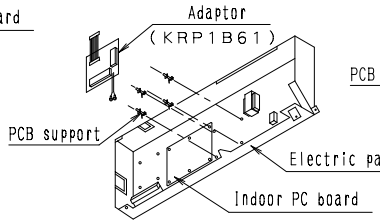
③ INSTALLATION

- Installation differs according to models as shown below.
- Do not bundle low and high voltage wires together.
- Bundle any axcess wires with the attached clamps so as to keep loose wirings off the indoor unit PC board.

《Ceiling mounted built-in type》 FXS

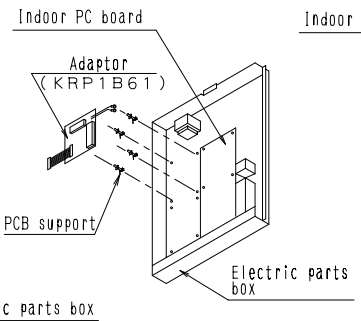


《Ceiling mounted cassette type》 FXK(Q) (Corner model)

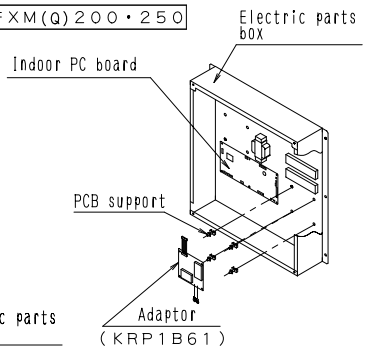


《Ceiling mounted duct type》

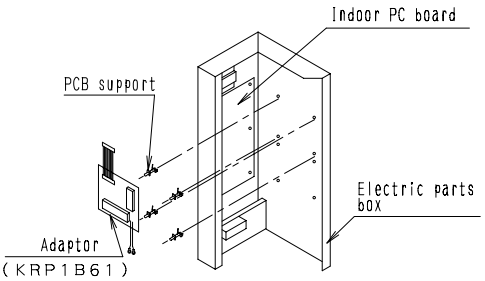
FXM40~125



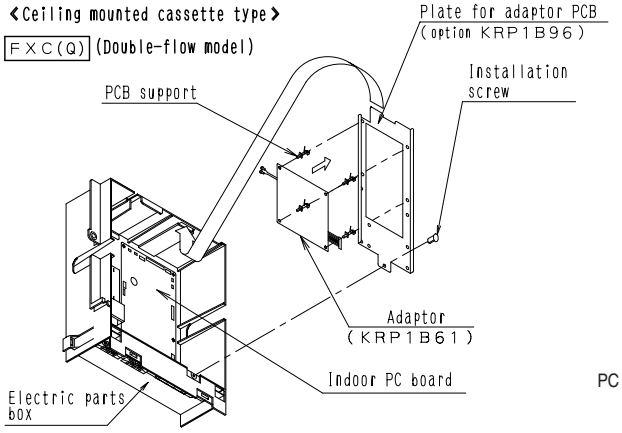
FXM(Q)200・250



《Floor-standing type》 FXL(Q) FXN(Q)



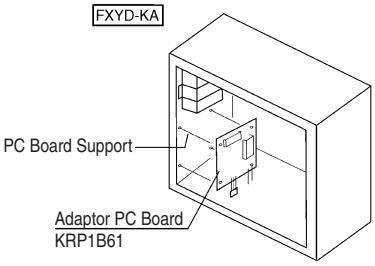
《Ceiling mounted cassette type》 FXC(Q) (Double-flow model)



NOTE) A separate plate is needed to install the adaptor PCB.

<<Ceiling mounted low silhouette duct type>>

FXYD-KA



Note: Installation box is necessary for second adaptor

C: 2PA61563C

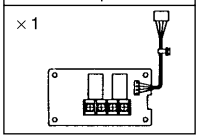
7.2 KRP1BA54 / KRP1B56 / KRP1BA57 / KRP1BA59



Item \ Model	KRP1BA54	KRP1B56	KRP1BA57	KRP1BA59
Dimensions (mm)	85×49			
Length of lead wire (mm)	250	2,000	1,500	500
Component parts	Wiring adaptor PCB. PCB support. Clamp. Installation manual.			

Accessories Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

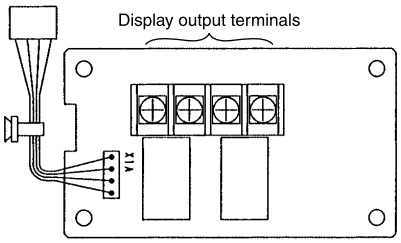
Adaptor
×1



PCB support	×4
Clamp	×3
Installation manual	×1

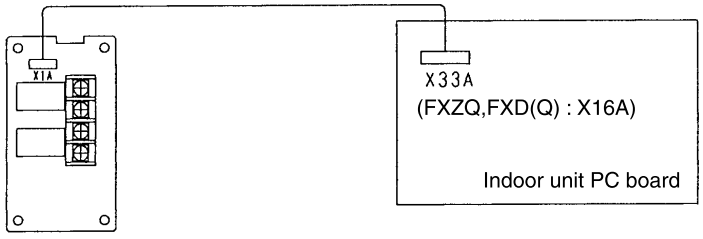
NOTE
- Kits vary according to applicable models.
- A special adaptor fixing plate and box are required for the following models.
  FXF-L·····KRP1DA98
  FXZQ, FXD(Q)·····KRP1BA101

1 NAMES OF PARTS



2 ELECTRIC WIRING

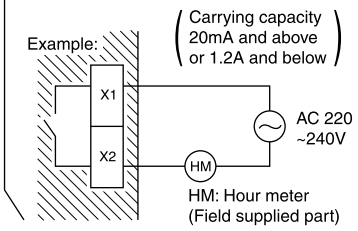
- Refer to the WIRING DIAGRAM attached to the indoor unit before attempting to wire.
  [Make sure wires to units do not pass over the PC board when wiring]
- Wire the adaptor to the indoor unit as described below.



○Fetching the operation display signal

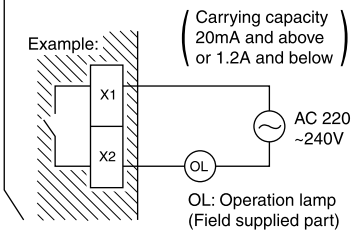
• Attaching an hour meter

Output is generated at the contact while the compressor is running.



• Fan ON display

Output is generated at the contact while the fan is running.



C: 1PA60037E

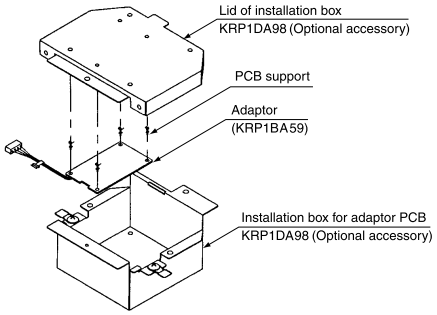
3 INSTALLATION

- Installation differs according to models as shown below. Do not bundle low and high voltage wires together.
- Bundle any excess wires with the attached tie wraps so as to keep loose wirings off the indoor unit PC board.

《Ceiling-mounted cassette type》

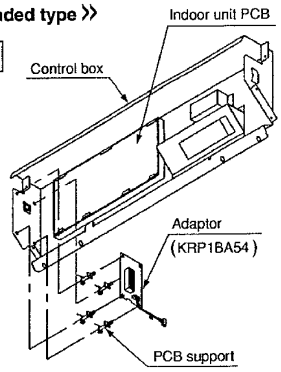
FXF (Multi-flow type)

NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.



《Ceiling suspended type》

FHQ · FXH(Q)

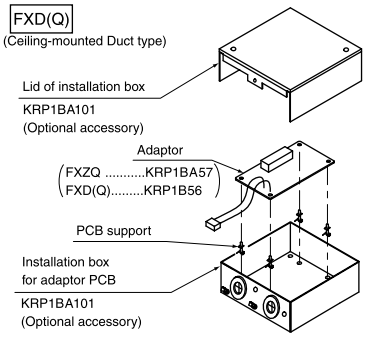


《Ceiling-mounted cassette type》
《Ceiling-mounted Duct type》

FXZQ (Compact Multi-flow type)

NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

FXD(Q) (Ceiling-mounted Duct type)



C: 1PA60037E

7.3 KRP1C63

Accessories Check if the following accssories are included in the kit.

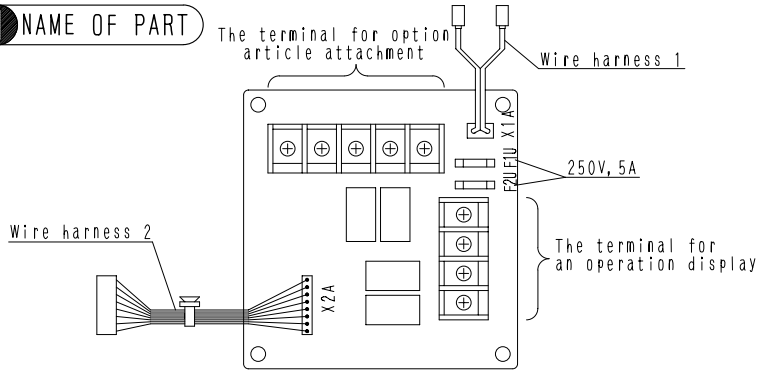
Adapter	Wire harness 1	Wire harness 2	PCB support	Clamp	Installation manual
					
×1	×1	×1	×4	×3	×1

Note

- Keep in mind that a kit changes with application models.
- An adapter attachment box is required for the following model separately.

FCQ(N)-KVEA, FXFQ-PVE・・・・・・・・・・・・KRP1H98

1 NAME OF PART

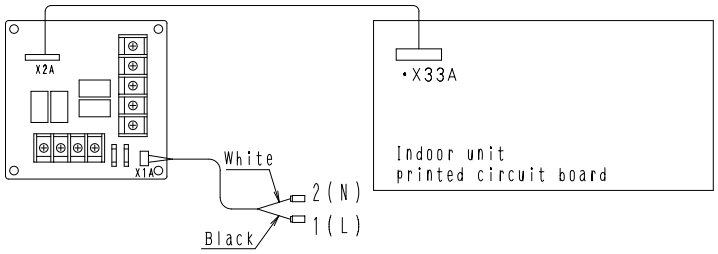


2 ELECTRIC WIRING

- Please be sure for electric wiring to do the upper work of reference of the electric wiring figure of pasting on an indoor unit.

[Be careful for wiring to apparatus not to pass along a substrate top at the time of wiring.]

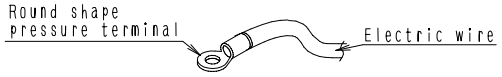
- Please wire an indoor unit main part in the following way.



The connection with the terminal base for wiring between units should use a round shape pressure connection terminal.
When you cannot use it unavoidably, Please be sure to keep the following matter.

2P178844B

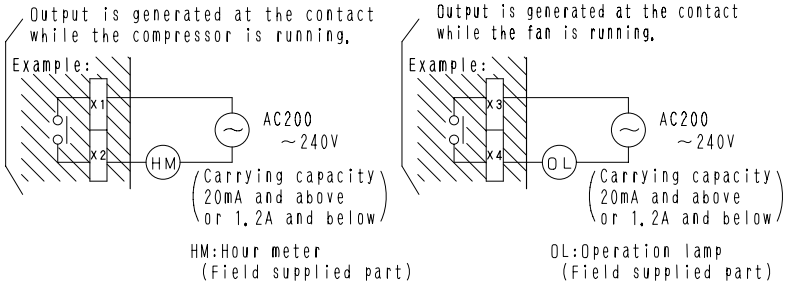
≪Attention at the time of power-source wiring≫



- Please do not connect two diameter electric wires of different to the terminal base for wiring between units.
  (There is fear of unusual generation of heat according to looseness of an electric wire etc.)
- It connects certainly using a predetermined electric wire, and external force wiring in a terminal part. Please fix not to be added.
- Please use a proper driver for bolting of a terminal screw thread.
  The driver of small size damages a screw-head part, and cannot perform proper bolting.
- A screw thread may be damaged if a terminal screw thread is bolted too much.
- Refer to the right table for the torque with a bunble of a terminal screw thread.

Torque with a bunble (N・m)	
The terminal base for wiring between units	1.18～1.44

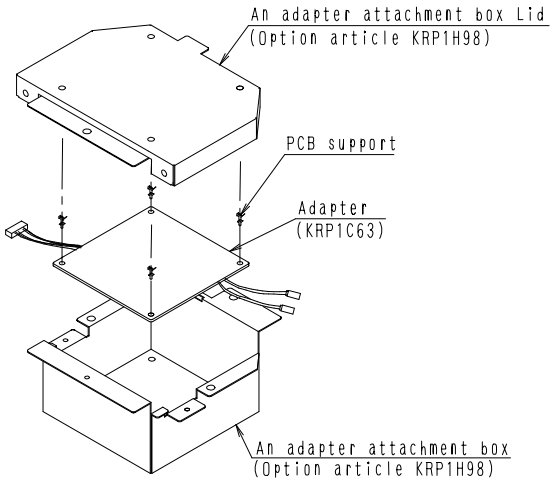
○Fetching the operation display signal.
●Attaching the operation display signal ●Fan ON display



③INSTALLATION

- Means of attachment are shown below.
  However, a strong electric wire and a weak-electric-current line should not band together simultaneously.
- Please remain so that wiring does not wire on the indoor PCB, and bundle wiring of a part by attached Thailand Rapp.

FCQ(N)-KVEA
FXFQ~PVE



NOTE) An adapter attachment box is required for attachment separately.
- Please use substrate support of attachment by an adapter and attach in the adapter attachment box cover side.

2P178844B

7.4 KRP1C64

Caution

- This unit is wiring adaptor for indoor unit of ceiling-mounted duct type. Check the indoor unit model name. (As below mentioned table)
- This unit is needed to plate for adaptor PC separately.
- Refer to installation manual of plate for adaptor PC, while installing this unit.

Adaptor for wiring	Indoor unit	Plate for adaptor PC kit
KRP1C64	FBQ-DV1, FBQ-DVET FXMQ～PVE	KRP4A96

Accessories

- Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

< Remarks >

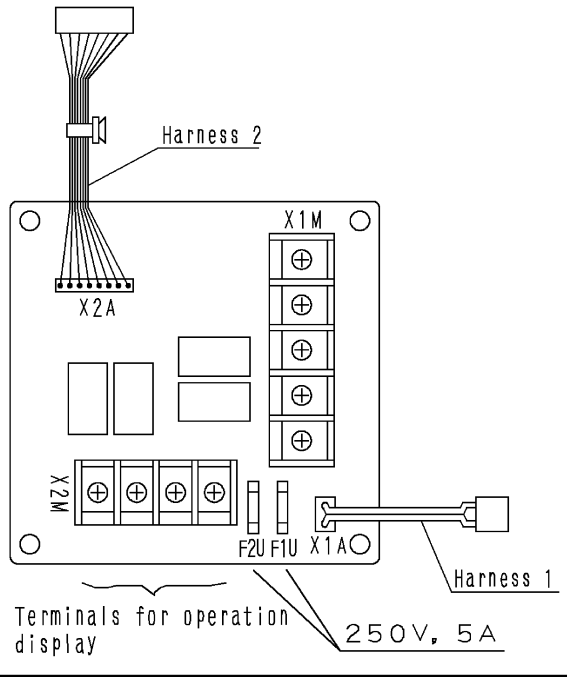
Don't throw away all parts until finished installation, because these parts are necessary for installation work.

Name	Adaptor for wiring	Harness 1	Harness 2	PC board support	Clamp	Installation manual
Shape						
Quantity	1	1	1	4	4	1

< Caution >

- All wiring must be performed by an authorized electrician.
- For electric wiring work, refer to also "Wiring diagram" attached to the control box lid and this manual.
- All wiring must be worked after shutting down power supply.
- All field supplied parts and materials and electric works must conform to local codes.
- A circuit breaker capable of shutting down power supply to the entire system must be installed.

1 NAMES OF PARTS



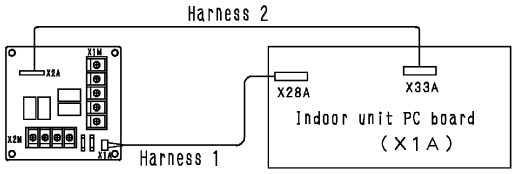
C: 3P226298

②ELECTRIC WIRING

- Refer to the WIRING DIAGRAM attached to the indoor unit before attempting to wire.

〔Make sure wires to units do not pass over the PC board when wiring.〕

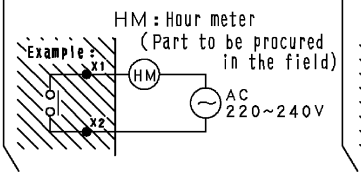
- Wire the adaptor to the indoor unit as shown below.



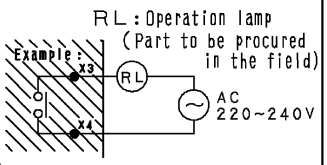
Fetching the operation display signal

- Attaching an hour meter
- Fan ON display

Output is generated at the contact while the compressor is running.

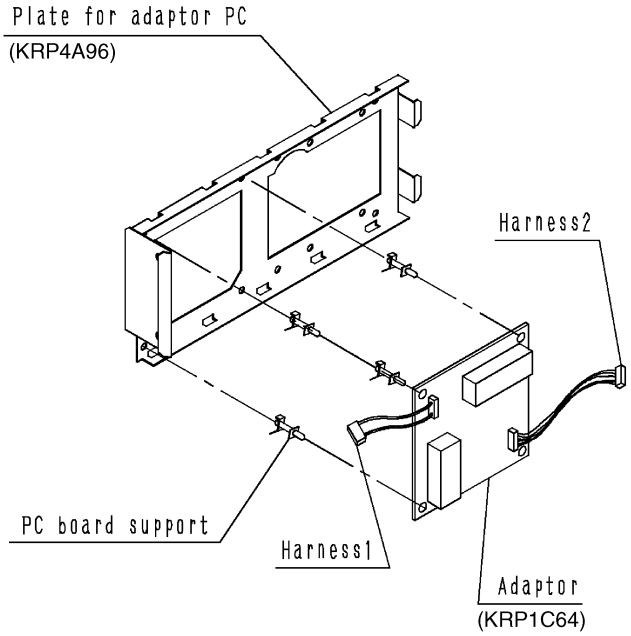


Output is generated at the contact while the fan is running.



③INSTALLATION

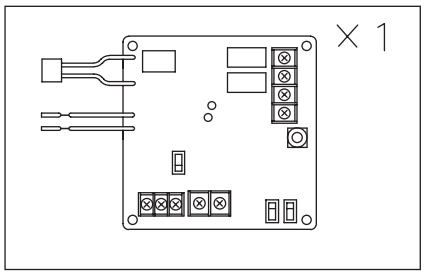
- Do not bundle low and high voltage wires together.
- Bundle any axcess wires with the attached clamps so as to keep loose wirings off the indoor unit PC board.
- Set up adaptor to the plate refer to below figure direction.



3P226298

8. Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (1) (2)

8.1 KRP2A61 / KRP2A62 / KRP2A53



Item \ Model	KRP2A53	KRP2A61	KRP2A62
Dimensions (mm)	100×100		
Length of lead wire (mm)	2,000	500	1,300
Component parts	Wiring adaptor PCB. PCB support. Clamp. Installation manual.		

System Configuration

The KRP2A61·62·53 enables operation by remote control (ON/OFF control, temperature setting, operation display, error display). With it, the following system can be built. Note however that the adaptor cannot be used with other optional controllers for centralized control.

1. Zone Control

(Unified control of a max. 64 groups of a max. 16 indoor units each. But, the max. of indoor units is 128.)

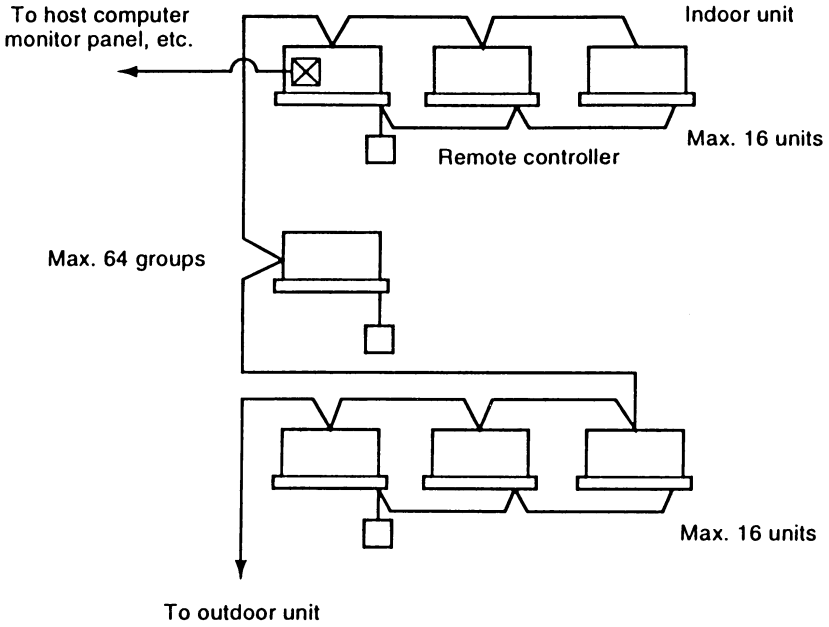
This system requires the following parts.

- Wiring Adaptor for Electrical Appendices (1)
  ... KRP2A61 or KRP2A62 or KRP2A53
- Remote controller switches (For control)

...BRC1C62
BRC2C51
BRC3A61
} Per group

(Ex.) Zone control for 8 FXYC63KVE units (control groups of 4, 3 and 1)

KRP2A61×1 kit
BRC1C62×3 kits
} 1 set required for each group.

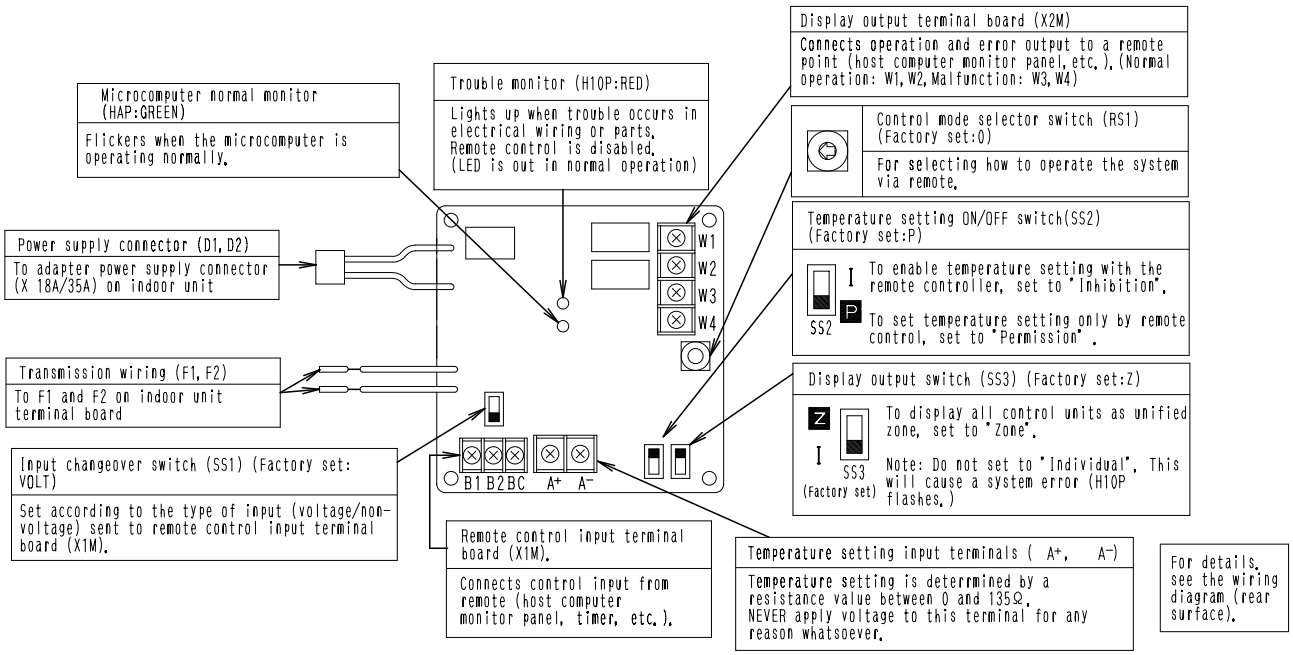


Note:

1. Individual indoor units connected to the centralized line cannot be displayed individually.

C: 1PA63641J

Names of Parts and Functions

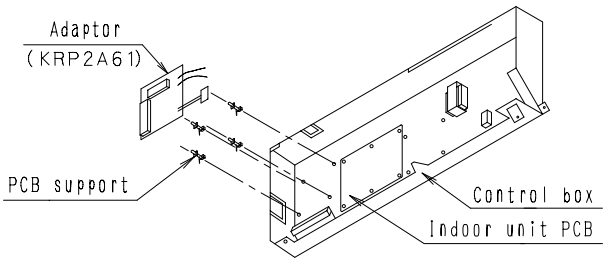


1PA63641-1J

Installation

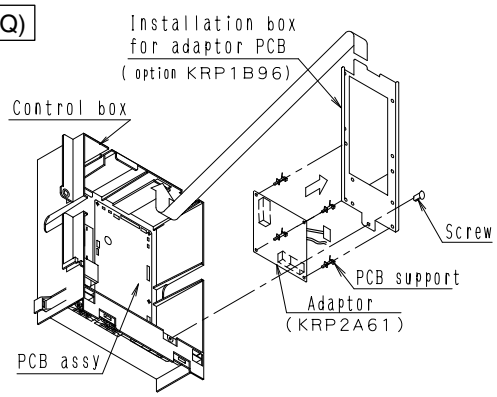
Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type

FXK(Q)



Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Double-Flow)

FXC(Q)

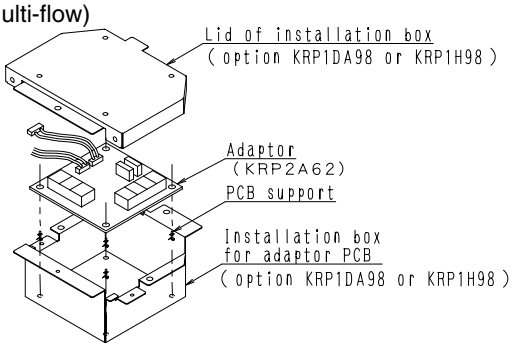


NOTE :Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type

FXFQ (Round-flow)

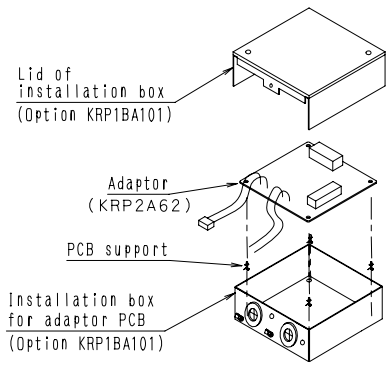
FXF (Multi-flow)



NOTE) Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Compact Multi-Flow)

FXZQ



NOTE :Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

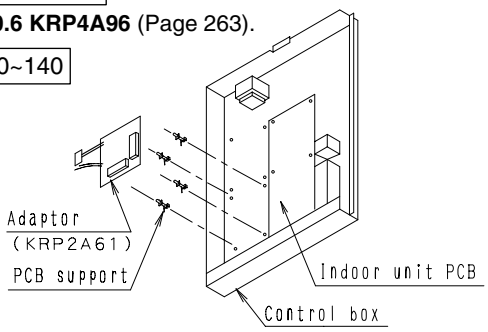
C: 1PA63641J

Ceiling Mounted Duct Type

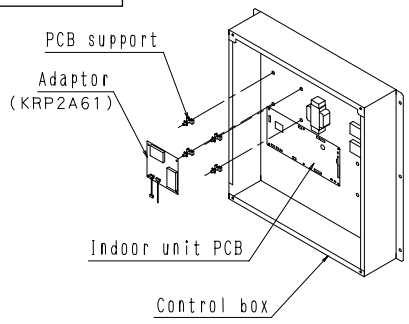
FXMQ20~140P

See **10.6 KRP4A96** (Page 263).

FXM20~140

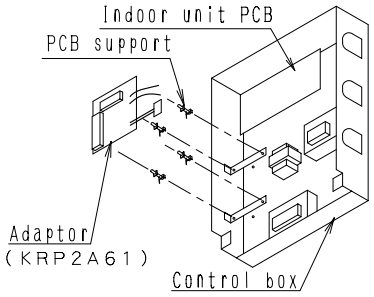


FXM(Q)200 · 250



Ceiling Mounted Built-In Type
Ceiling Mounted Built-In Type (Rear Suction)

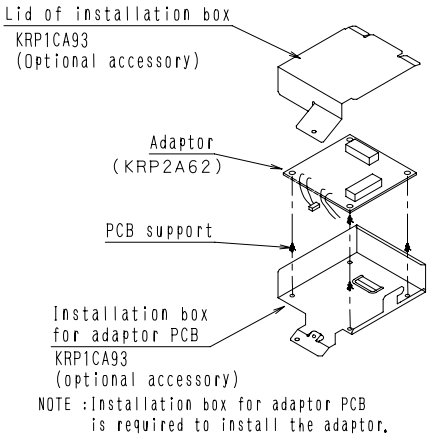
FXS
FXSYQ
FXYB



Note :
Installation box is necessary for second adaptor (FXS (Q)).

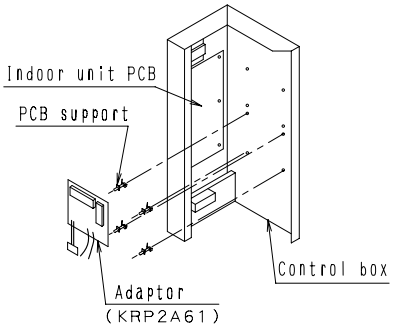
Ceiling Suspended Type

FXH(Q)



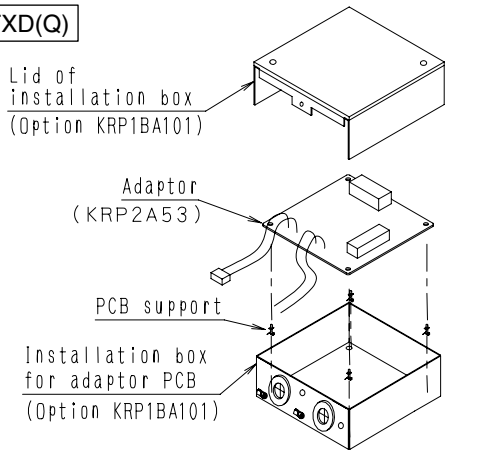
Floor Standing Type

FXL(Q)
FXN(Q)



Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct Type

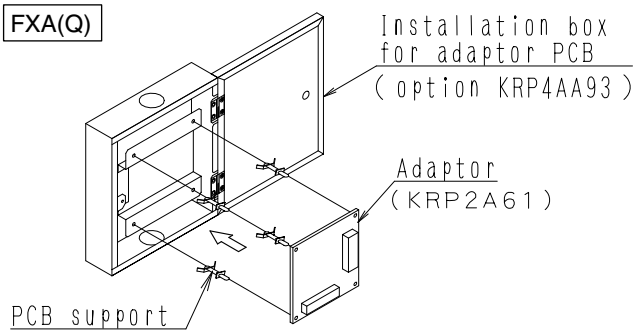
FXD(Q)



NOTE :Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

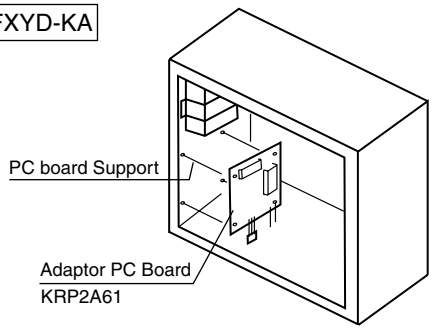
Wall Mounted Type

FXA(Q)



Ceiling Mounted Low Silhouette Duct Type

FXYD-KA



Note:
Installation box is necessary for second adaptor.

C : 1PA63641J

Electric Wiring Work

1. First, wire between the indoor and outdoor units, then to the separate power supply, and between the indoor units and the remote controllers. Then, check wiring is correct. (If wanting group control by remote controller, check transmission wiring.) For details, see the installation manual of the indoor and outdoor units.

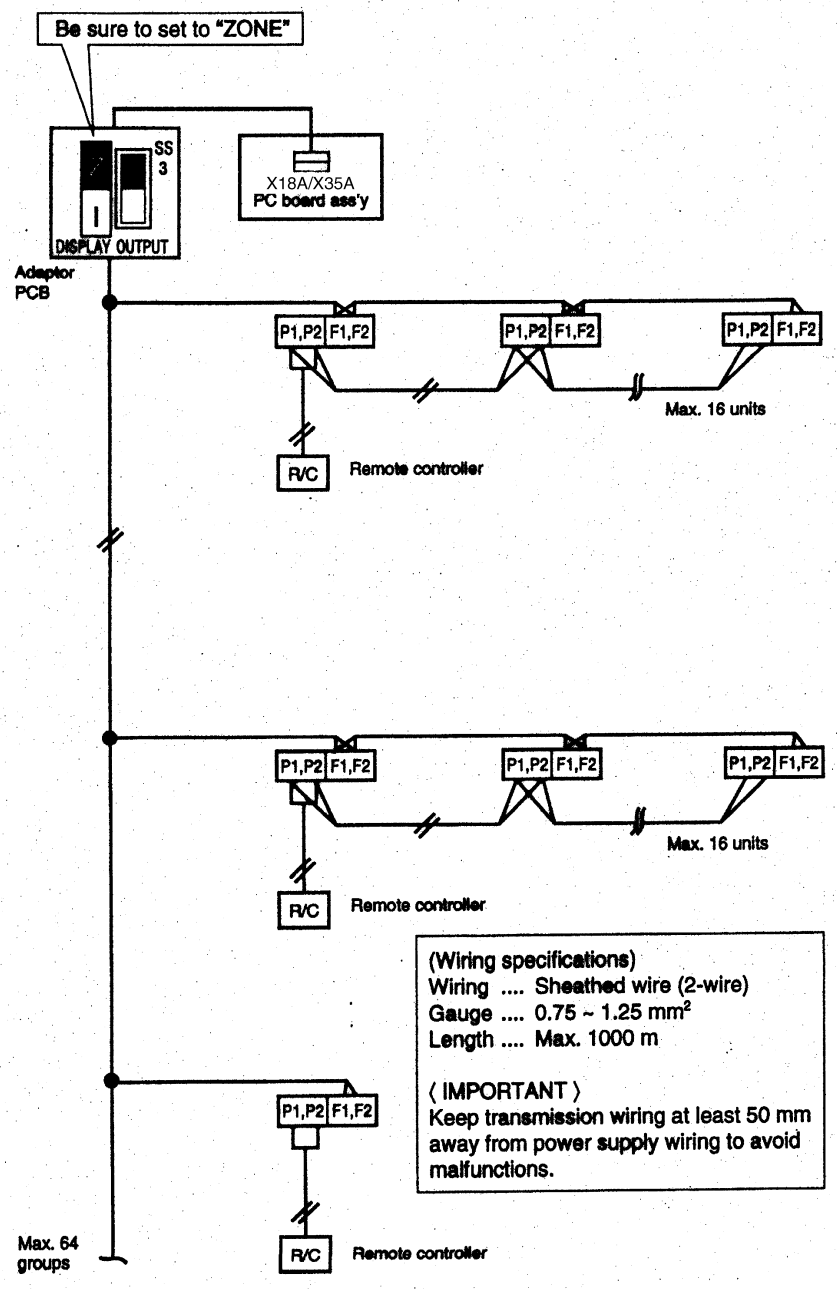
2. Next, wire between the wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (1) and the indoor units. For details, see **Wiring to indoor units**.

3. Finally, wire between external units such as the host computer monitor panel, and make the necessary settings. For details, see **Wiring to external units (host computer monitor panel)**.

Note:
It is not necessary to set address No. for centralized control.
(Setting is automatic.)

Wiring to Indoor Units

1. For Zone Control



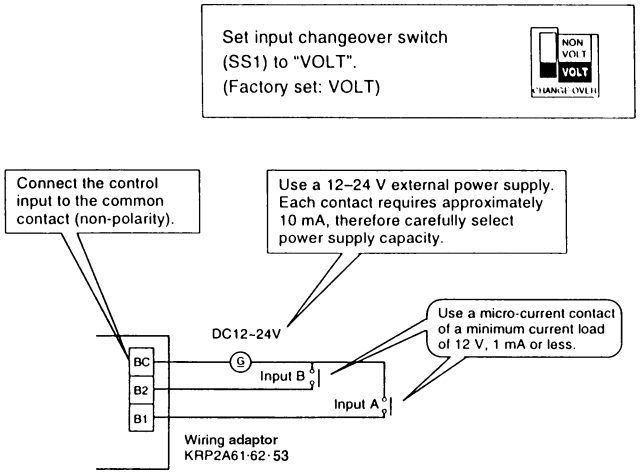
1PA63642C

Wiring to External Units (Host Computer Monitor Panel)

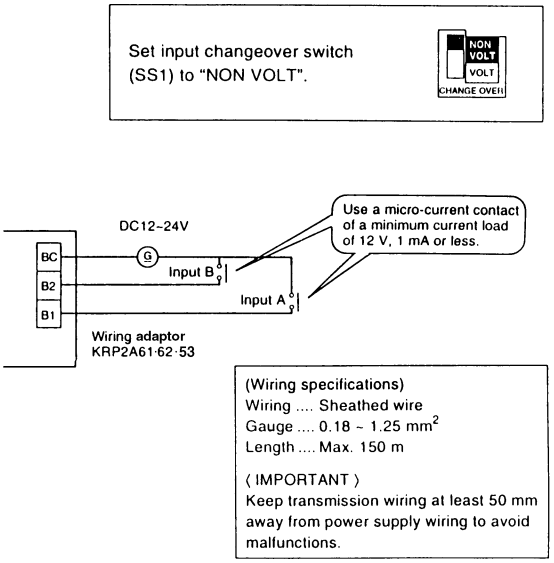
1. Remote Control Input (Operation Control)

Wire as described below. Wiring differs depending on whether using a voltage or non-voltage input.

■ For voltage input

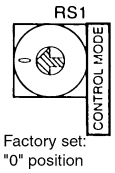


■ For non-voltage input



2. Setting Control Mode Selector Switch (RS1)

Using control mode selector switch (RS1), select the control mode as described below.



Factory set:
"0" position

(1) When operating with only individual display function

Position	Function
0	Individual Display (Input Ignored)

(2) When operating with constant input from A

Position	Function	Contents when input A is ON	Contents when input A is OFF
1	Remote controller rejection	Operation (remote controller is normally rejected)	Stop + remote controller rejection
2	Central priority	Operation + remote controller accepted	
3	Stop by remote controller acceptable	Operation + stop by remote controller acceptable (No operation by the remote controller)	
4	Remote controller acceptance/ rejection	Remote controller acceptance only (No operation by the remote location)	

Note:

■ Input B is for forced-OFF. When ON, stop + remote controller is rejected, and input A is ignored. When OFF, even if A is ON, the contents of when input A is ON, are not achieved. Input A must therefore be re-input.

C : 1PA63642C

(3) When operating with momentary input from A
(Use a momentary input of ON time 200 milli-sec. or longer.)

Position	Function	Contents of Input A	Function of Input B
5	Remote controller rejected	Stop for ON while operating, operate for ON while stopping	Input B will be forced stop function (When ON, stop + remote controller is rejected, input A is ignored.)
6	Last command priority	Stop for ON while operating, operate for ON while stopping (Remote controller is normally accepted.)	

- For demand control from input B

Position	Function when input A is ON	Function when input B is ON
C	Remote controller rejected (Same as position “5”)	Forced thermostat OFF command
D		Forced temperature shift command
E	Last command priority (Same as position “6”)	Forced thermostat OFF command
F		Forced temperature shift command

- Forced thermostat OFF command
  Forces indoor unit to operate the fan only.
- Forced temperature shift command
  The indoor unit operates at 2°C higher (cooling) or 2°C lower (heating) than the set temperature.

Note:
- In zone control, operation is displayed as long as one indoor unit is running. When in the last command priority mode, some units are not operating while ON.
- In such case, even if input A is ON, the unit and all other units in the same zone will stop.

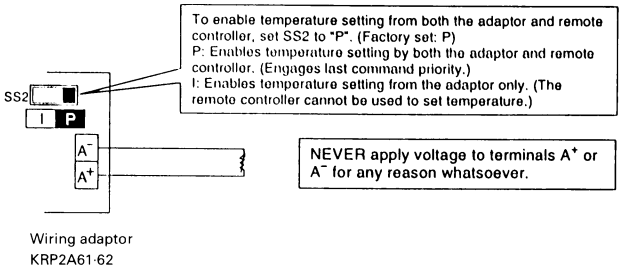
(4) When operating with dual momentary inputs from A and B (Use a momentary input of 200 milli-sec. or longer.)

Position	Function	Contents when Input A is ON	Contents when Input A is OFF
7	Remote controller rejection	Operation (remote controller is normally rejected)	Stop + remote controller rejection
8	Central priority	Operation + remote controller accepted	
9	Stop by remote controller acceptable	Operation + stop by remote controller acceptable (No operation by the remote controller)	
A	Remote controller acceptance/ rejection	Remote controller acceptance only (No operation by the remote location)	
B	Last command priority	Operation (remote controller is normally accepted)	Stop (remote controller normally accepted)

Note:
- Doing constant input A with position 7-A, it will be forced OFF function (input A is ignored).
- Constant input cannot use for input B with position B.

1PA63642C

3. Temperature Setting Input



Temperature setting corresponds to resistance values in the range of 0 to 135Ω. Their relationship is as shown below.

Temperature Setting (°C)	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
Resistance (Ω)	0.0~3.4	5.0~11.6	13.8~20.0	22.4~28.4	31.0~36.4	39.4~44.8	48.2~52.8	56.6~61.2	65.2~69.4

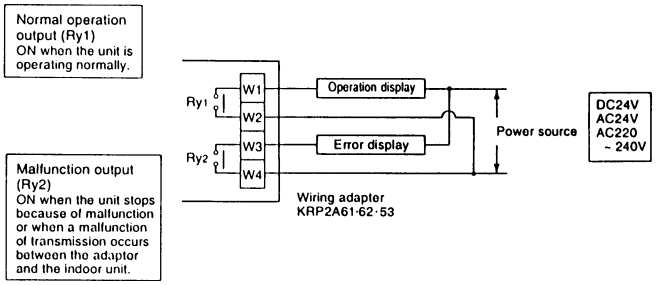
Temperature Setting (°C)	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32
Resistance (Ω)	73.8~77.8	82.4~85.8	91.0~94.0	99.4~102.2	108.6~110.4	117.2~119.2	125.8~127.4	134.2~140.0

Note:
Wiring resistance included in above figures.

(Wiring specifications)
Wiring ... Sheathed wire
Gauge ... 1.25~2.00 mm²
Length ... Max. 70 m
(IMPORTANT)
Keep transmission wiring at least 50 mm away from power supply wiring to avoid malfunctions.

4. Canceling Display Signals

Operation output terminals (W1 and W2) and malfunction output terminals (W3 and W4) are non-voltage constant contact output.
(Allowed electric current per contact is between 10 mA and 3 A.)



Note:
If using a 220~240V power supply, keep transmission wiring at least 50 mm away from incoming power supply wiring.

Output / System	Both Ry1 and Ry2 OFF	Ry1 only ON	Ry2 only ON
Zone control	All zones OFF	At least one unit running normally, no malfunction	Even 1 unit stopped due to malfunction or malfunction of transmission between adaptor and indoor unit

Display output is described by system in the below table.

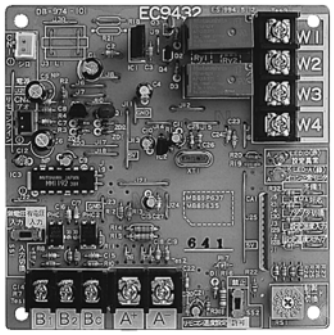
Note:
If rewiring F1 and F2 after running the system, turn ON power for 5 minutes, then turn it OFF and ON again. Changes to wiring can sometimes disable control from the wiring adaptor.

C: 1PA63642C

8.2 KRP4AA51 / KRP4AA52 / KRP4AA53 / KRP4A54

Outline / Features

This adaptor is an interface required to connect the indoor unit with the central monitoring panel. And by installing this adaptor in the indoor unit, it enables you to have various remote controls (ON/OFF, temperature setting, operation status display and malfunction display). One adaptor can control simultaneously the group of units (Max. 16 units) connected to the remote control wiring line (P1, P2).



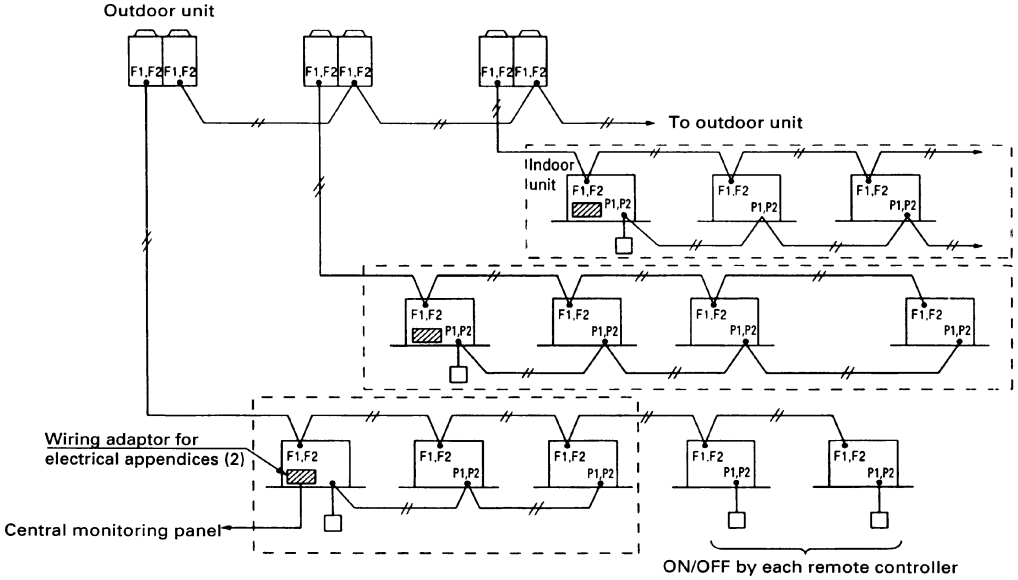
Note:

1. This adaptor cannot be used together with central control equipment and data station.
2. The model of adaptor differs according to the type of indoor unit to be installed.

Applied Model

Applied Model		Remark	Applied Model	Remark	Note
VRV Systems	VRV Plus Series	○	SkyAir Series	○	
	VRV Inverter “K(A)” “K(U)” Series	○	Room Air-Conditioner	×	
	VRV Heat Recovery Series	○	Other Air-Conditioner	×	
	VRV II, III Series	○	HRV Unit	○	BRC1B61, 62 etc. are required.

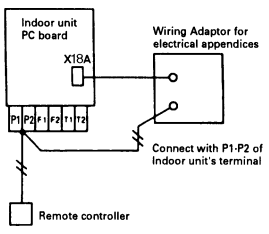
System Configuration



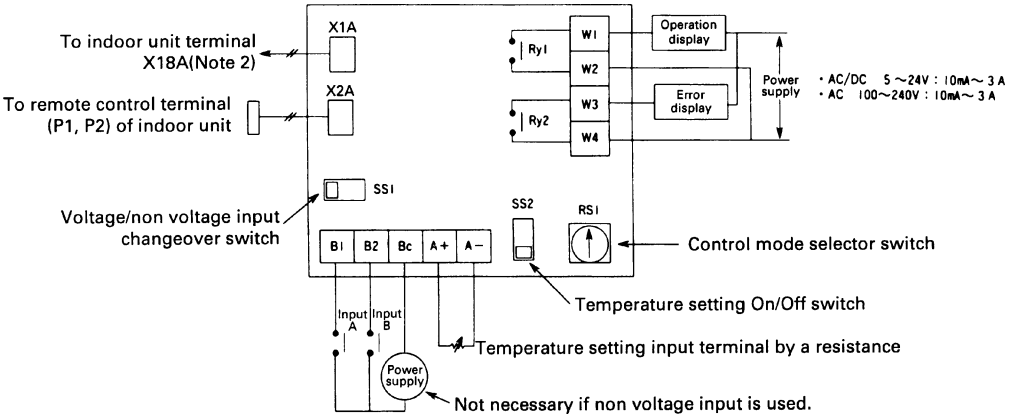
Note:

1. Marked ▨ shows wiring adaptor for electrical appendices.
2. Marked ⬚ indicates the same control range.
3. The wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (2) can control simultaneously the group of the units (Max. 16 units) connected to the remote control wiring line (P1, P2). In another words, all the units connected between P1 and P2 terminal have the same control.

■ **Point of wiring**



Names and Functions of Operating Part



Note:

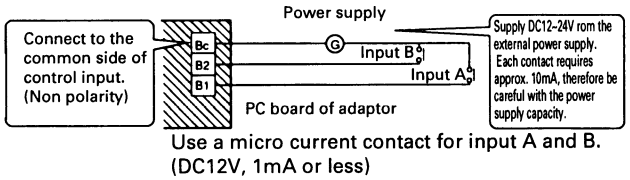
1. This is valid only for the indoor unit, which has a temperature setting function.
2. Terminal No. X18A is for the indoor unit of VRV system. For SkyAir series and other air-conditioner, connect to the relevant terminal for each units.

Input/Output for External Control

1. Depending on whether [voltage input] or [non voltage input], connect the wiring as shown below.

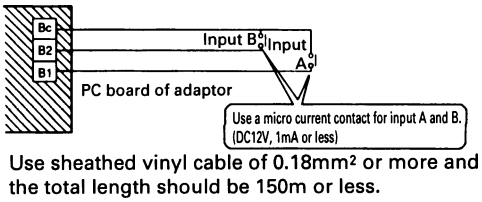
■ **Input with Voltage.**

Set the Voltage/Non voltage changeover switch (SS1) to VOLT.



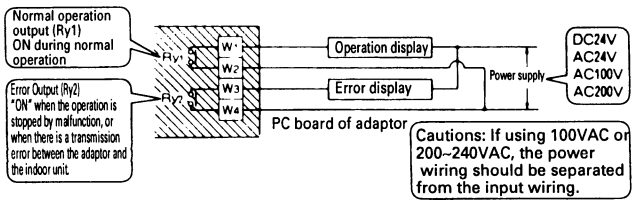
■ **Input with No Voltage.**

Set the Voltage/Non voltage changeover switch (SS1) to NON VOLT.



2. Display Signal Retrieval (Output)

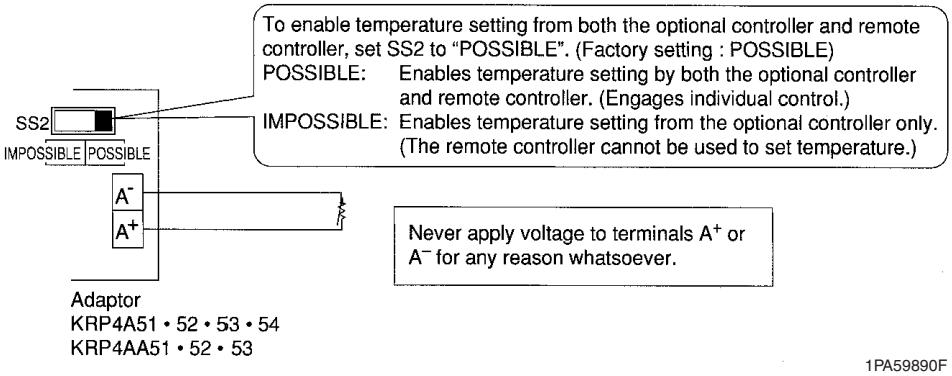
The normal operation output terminals (W1, W2) and error output terminals (W3, W4) are non-voltage output contacts. (Permissive current is 10mA~3A per contact.)



Output is as given below.

Output / System	Both Ry1 and Ry2 is OFF.	Only Ry1 is ON.	Only Ry2 is ON.
Group control	OFF	All normal operation	At least one unit is stopped due to error or transmission error between the adaptor and the indoor unit.

3. Temperature Setting Input



Temperature setting corresponds to resistance values in the range of 0 to 135Ω.
Their relationship is as shown below.

Relation between the setting temperature and the resistance are as follows.

Setting temperature (°C)	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32
Resistance (Ω)	0.0 ~ 3.4	5.0 ~ 11.6	13.8 ~ 20.0	22.4 ~ 28.4	31.0 ~ 36.4	39.4 ~ 44.8	48.2 ~ 52.8	56.6 ~ 61.2	65.2 ~ 69.4	73.8 ~ 77.8	82.4 ~ 85.8	91.0 ~ 94.0	99.4 ~ 102.2	108.6 ~ 110.4	117.2 ~ 119.2	125.8 ~ 127.4	134.2 ~ 140.0

Note:

- The value of resistance includes the resistance of wiring.
- The setting temperature is limited within the setting range of indoor unit. If you set the temperature outside of the range by the adaptor, it controls at the nearest setting range.

Setting of Control Mode Selector Switch (RS1)

Position	Functions	Description of Operation by Input Mode A and B	
		Input A (Between B1~Bc)	Input B (Between B2~Bc)
0	Input Ignored	—	—
1	Remote Control Rejection	Start at ON, and stop at OFF	Stop at ON (remote control rejection), Input A acceptance at OFF
2	Central Priority	Start at ON (remote control acceptance), stop at OFF (remote control rejection)	
3	Remote Control Acceptance/ Rejection	The same as position 1 (Only stop is accepted by remote controller)	
4	Remote Control Acceptance/ Rejection, OFF	Start at ON (remote control acceptance), stop at OFF (remote control rejection)	
5	Remote Control Rejection	Start/Stop (Repeats)	
6	Last Command Priority	The same as position 5 (remote control acceptance all the time)	Stop at ON remote control acceptance), start at OFF (remote control rejection)
7	Remote Control Rejection	Start at ON	Stop at ON.
8	Last Command Priority	Start at ON (remote control acceptance)	Stop at ON (remote control rejection)
9	Remote Control OFF Acceptance	The same as position 7 (Only stop is accepted by remote controller)	The same as position 7
A	Remote Control Acceptance/ Rejection, OFF	Start at ON (remote control acceptance)	Stop at ON (remote control rejection)
B	Last Command Priority	The same as position 7 (remote control acceptance all the time)	The same as position 7
C	Position 5 + Energy Saving Control	The same as position 5	Forced thermostat OFF at ON
D	Position 5 + Temperature Set-Back		Setting temperature shift command at ON
E	Position 6 + Energy Saving Control	The same as position 6	Forced thermostat OFF at ON
F	Position 6 + Temperature Set-Back		Setting temperature shift command at ON

Note:

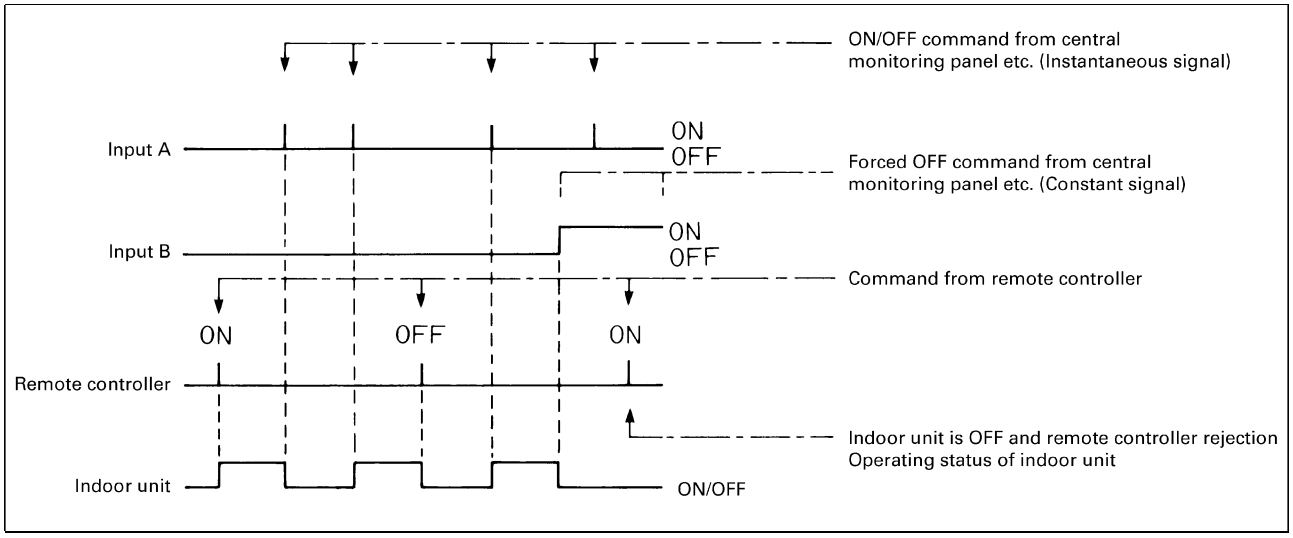
1. When constant input is used for input B at position 7~A, the system is shut-down forcibly (Ignored input A). Constant input cannot be used for input B at position B.
2. Refer to the followings for the outline of above functions.

■ **Description of Functions (Outline)**

1. Remote Control Rejection.....	For when you want to turn ON/OFF only by central remote controller. (ON/OFF cannot be controlled by remote controller for indoor unit.)
2. Remote controller OFF Only Accepted	For when you want to turn ON only by the central remote controller, and turn OFF only by remote controller for indoor unit.
3. Central Priority	For when you want to turn ON only by the central remote controller, and during the set time, turn ON/OFF freely by remote controller for indoor unit.
4. Individual Priority (Last command priority)	For when you want to turn ON/OFF by both central remote controller and remote controller for indoor unit.
5. Remote Controller Permission Timer	For when you want to turn ON/OFF by remote controller for indoor unit during set time, and you want to start the operation by remote controller for indoor unit at the programmed time of system start.

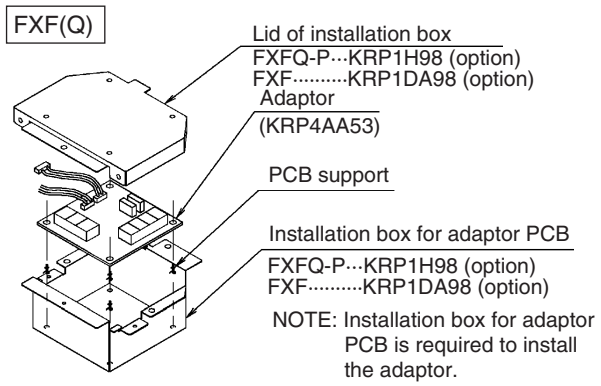
<Example when the control mode selector switch is set at position 6>

The following is the time chart for the command by remote controller and the indoor unit against input signal.



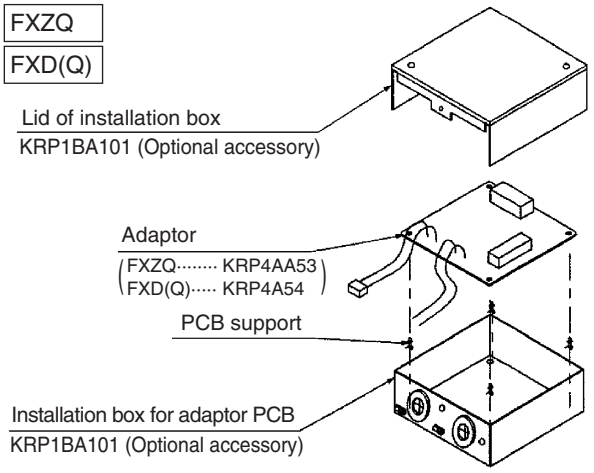
Instruction for Installation

Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type



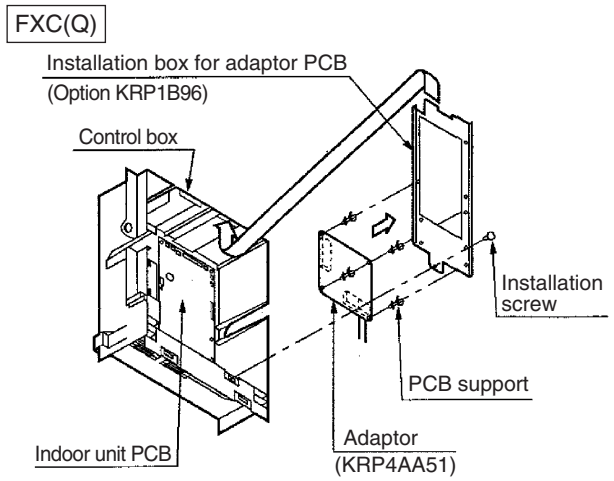
NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct Type
Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Multi-Flow) 600×600



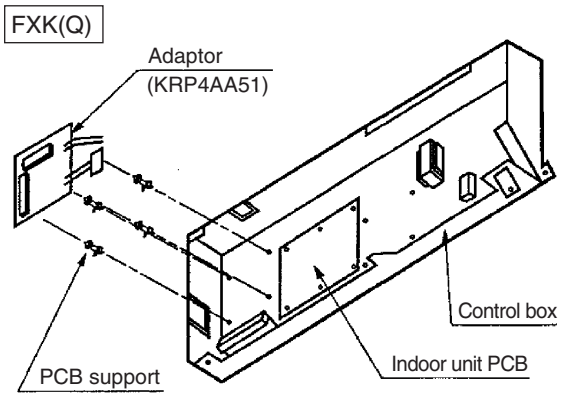
NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Double-Flow)

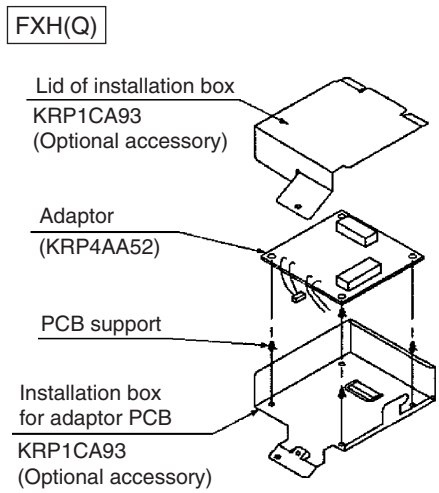


NOTE) A separate plate is needed to install the adaptor PCB.

Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type

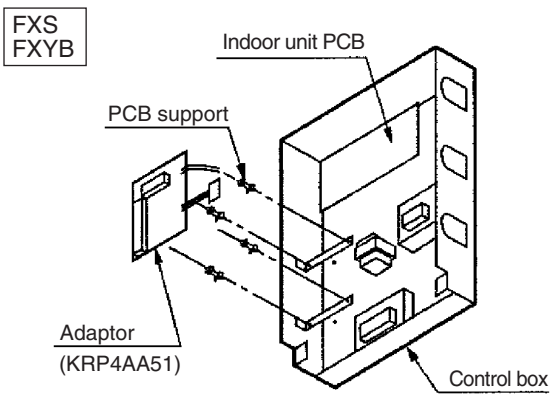


Ceiling Suspended Type



NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

Ceiling Mounted Built-In Type



Note :
Installation box is necessary for second adaptor (FXS).

Note:
The above shows the installation for VRV indoor unit. For the SkyAir series and other air-conditioner, it may be different from the ones showed above and refer to its engineering data for the details.

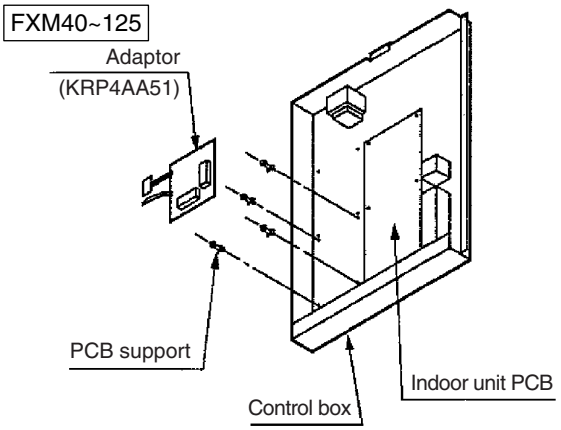
C: 1PA59889K

Ceiling Mounted Duct Type

FXMQ20~140P

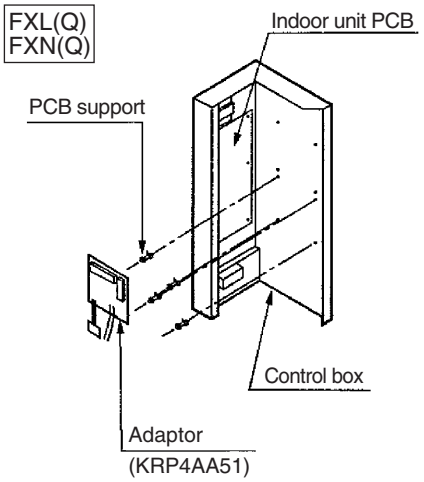
See **10.6 KRP4A96** (Page 263).

FXM40~125

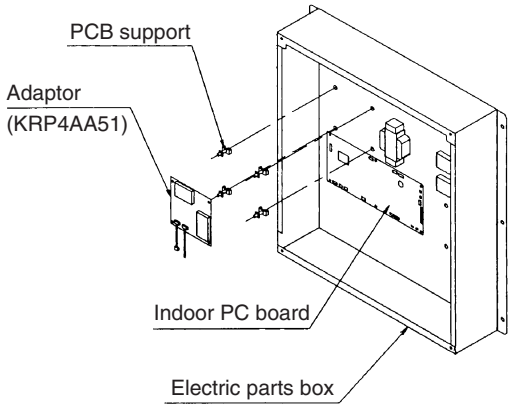


Floor Standing Type

FXL(Q)
FXN(Q)

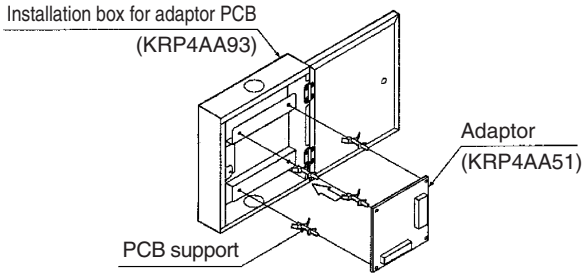


FXM(Q)200 · 250



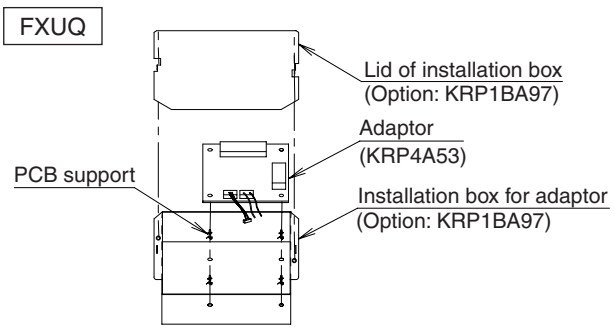
Wall Mounted Type

FXA(Q)



Ceiling Suspended Cassette Type

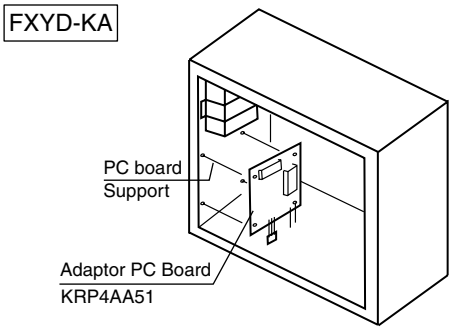
FXUQ



Note:
Installation box for adaptor (option) is required to install.

Ceiling Mounted Low Silhouette Duct Type

FXYD-KA



Note:
Installation box is necessary for second adaptor.

Note:
The above shows the installation for VRV indoor unit. For the SkyAir series and other air-conditioner, it may be different from the ones showed above and refer to its engineering data for the details.

C: 1PA59889K

9. Remote Sensor (For Indoor Temperature)

9.1 KRCS01-1B / KRCS01-4B



Item	Model	KRCS01-1B	KRCS01-4B
Length of branch wiring	m	12	
Appearance		Light ivory (with the Daikin logo)	
Box material		ABS resin	
Mass (Weight)	kg	0.3	
Dimensions	mm	W50 × H60 × D15	
Component parts		Remote sensor. Extension cord (12m). Screws. Clamps. Installation manual.	

- Recommended for ceiling suspension and ceiling-embedded types which often result in a difference between set temperature and actual temperature.
- The sensor for detecting the temperature can be placed away from the indoor air conditioner. (Branch wiring is included in the kit.)

Caution

- Select a location for the sensor where it can detect the average temperature. Avoid the following locations.

1. Locations in direct sunlight.
2. Locations where the outlet air from the air conditioner is directed.
3. Locations close to other heat sources.
4. Locations near doors which might be affected by air coming in.

Installation

Remote sensor INSTALLATION MANUAL

KRCS01-1B
KRCS01-4B

Be sure to read this manual before installation and follow the instruction.

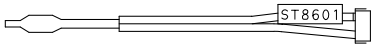
3K019189-1B

Note

● The kit modeles vary according to the model of air conditioners as follows:

KRCS01-1B	Skyair, VRV, Other air-cooled package air conditioners, High efficiency year round cooling only air conditioners, Round-flow type is excluded. Note 1)
KRCS01-4B	Skyair Round-flow type Note 2)
	VRV Round-flow type
	Duct type, FBQ~DVET、FBQ~DV1、FXMQ~PVE

Note 1) If you are unsure if this kit can be used for your indoor unit, check if the type of the thermistor (for detection of inlet air temperature) is as same as the type in this kit (ST8601).
The shape of the thermistor for detection of the indoor unit inlet air temperature is shown below.



Note 2) When installed on these models, the dehumidification by detection of humidity does not operate.

Components

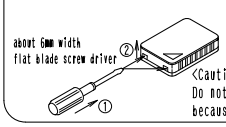
Check the following components.

Designation	Remote sensor (sensor box)	Extension cable (2-core, 12m)	Clamps	Installation manual (this drawing)	Sensor box mounting screws (M4X16)
shape					
Pieces	1 Piece	1 Piece	2 Pieces	1 sheet	2 Pieces

1 Mounting

1)Selecting the mounting location
The thermistor for temperature detection is incorporated into the remote sensor. Select the mounting location taking the following cautions into account.
①where the average temperature of an air conditioned room can be detected.
②where it is not exposed to the direct sunlight.
③where it is not influenced by other heat sources.
④where it is not exposed to the direct discharge air from the air conditioner.
⑤whera it is not exposed to the outdoor air infiltrated into the room by opening the door.

2)Mounting
●Remove the cover of the sensor box.

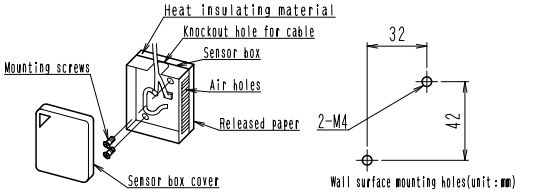


Insert a flat blade screw driver into the sensor box concave part (2 locations)and remove the cover pushig up the nail to the cover of the sensor box.

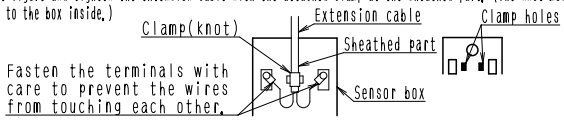
<Cautions>
Do not push the nail powerfully with a narrow flat blade screw driver, because you may break off the nail.

C: 3K019189B

①When mounting on the wall

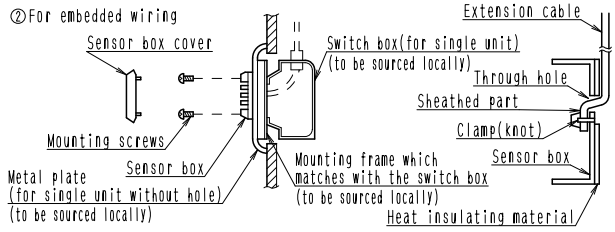


- Break open the knockout hole in the sensor box with a nipper or a similar tool. Pass the extension wires through the hole and fasten the wires to the terminals with screws.
- To avoid tensile force on the terminals, pass the attached clamp through the holes shown in the below right figure and tighten the extension cable with the attached clamp at the sheathed part. (The knot must come to the box inside.)

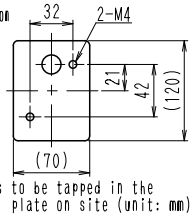


- Screw the sensor box securely to the wall surface with screws M4X16(2 places). If the sensor box cannot be screwed to wall surface, tear off the released paper and mount it on the wall surface

②For embedded wiring

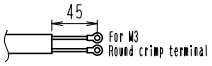


- Pass the extension cable through the switch box cable hole and carry out the wiring.
- Pass the attached clamp though the clamp holes and tighten the extension cable at the sheathed part as shown in the upper right drawing.
- Tap M4 screw holes in the metal plate (to be sourced locally) as shown in the right drawing and mount the switch box on the metal plate.



<Cautions>

- Give caution when wiring so that the air holes will not be blocked.
- When the extension cable is longer than necessary, cut it to the appropriate length, peel the insulation, attach the round crimp terminal for M3 (to be sourced locally) and carry out the wiring. The length of insulation to be peeled off is as shown. (Work carefully so that the connector side may not be cut.)



❷ Wiring method

Connect the extension cable connector side to the indoor unit PCB (printed circuit board) For connection to the indoor unit, follow the procedure shown below.

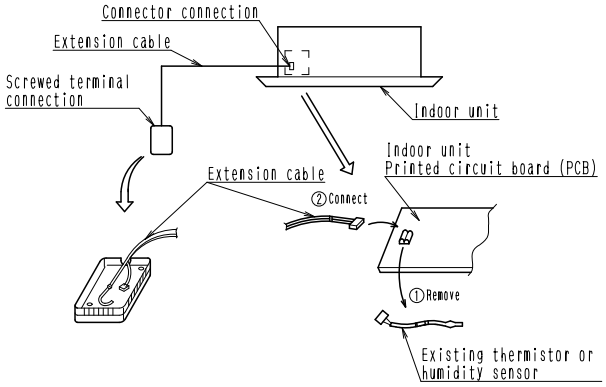
⚠ Caution

1) Make sure to turn off the power supply before starting the wiring work and do not turn on until all the work is completed. Read also the installation manual and the wiring diagram of the indoor unit when carrying out the work.
2) When wiring the extension cable, do not pass where the extension cable may be affected by the power line or noise.
3) Make sure to securely connect the connectors. Defective connection may result in incorrect detection of room temperature or malfunction.
4) Do not splice wires.
5) Since the connector marking of the thermistor for detection of inlet air temperature differ depending on the indoor unit type, make sure to check the indoor unit wiring diagram and follow it correctly.
6) Lay and clamp the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box just like the low voltage line(cord for remote controller). And do not pass where the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box may be affected by the power line(cord for the indoor unit and the other electric line).

<Procedure>

1. When wiring to the indoor unit PCB, remove the existing thermistor (for detection of inlet air temperature) and then connect the extension cable.

<For Skyair and VRV>



2. Lay and clamp the extension cable inside the indoor unit switch box just like the existing thermistor. Provide protection of the existing cable for thermistor without affecting other components.
3. Fit the sensor box cover into the sensor box.

❸ Operation test after mounting the sensor

Conduct cooling and heating operation test after the sensor is mounted and the wiring is completed.

3K019189B

10. Installation Box for Adaptor PCB

10.1 KRP1H98

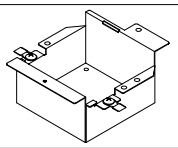
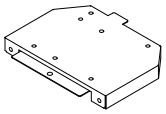
Item \ Model	KRP1H98
Material	Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Applicable adaptor	KRP1C63 / KRP2A62 / KRP4AA53
Accessories	Clamp : 2 Code sticker : 6 Screws for adaptor box cover : 1 Installation manual. Wire clamp material : 8 Mounting screws : 3 Earth wire (length 1060m) : 1

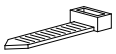
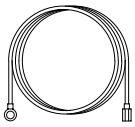
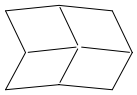
Caution

- This box is mountable on the ceiling mounted cassette type (round-flow type) unit. After confirming the indoor unit model name, mount this box on the unit listed in the table shown bottom.
- When mounting the box, see also the indoor unit installation manual and the adapter PCB (Printed Circuit Board) mounting instruction.

Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible	
KRP1H98	SkyAir	FCQ(N)71 • 100 • 125 • 140KVEA
	VRV	FXFQ 25 • 32 • 40 • 50 • 63 • 80 • 100 • 125 PVE

Accessories Check if the following accessories are included with your kit.

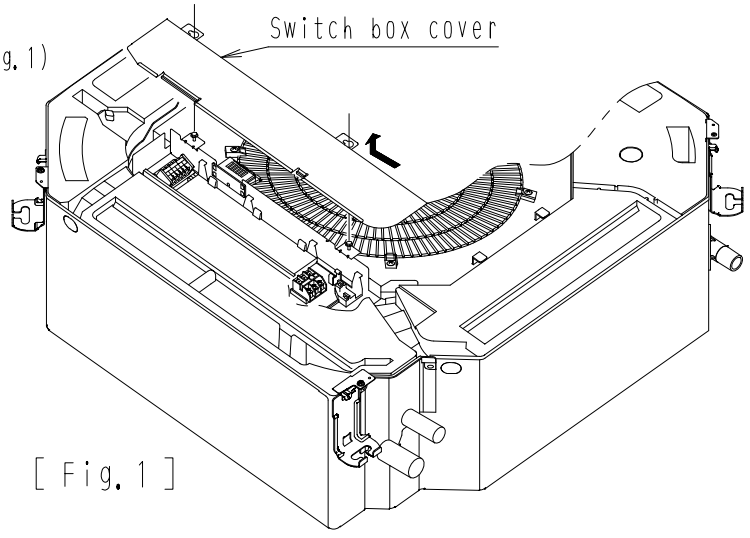
Name	Adapter box	Adapter box cover	Screw(1)	Screw(2)
Quantity	1PC.	1PC.	2PCS.	1PC.
Shape			 M4×12	 M4×8

Name	Clamp	Earth wire	Screw for earth wire	Installation manual
Quantity	8PCS.	1PC.	1PC.	1PC.
Shape				

1 Mounting the adapter box

《Preparation before wiring》

Remove the switch box cover. (Fig.1)

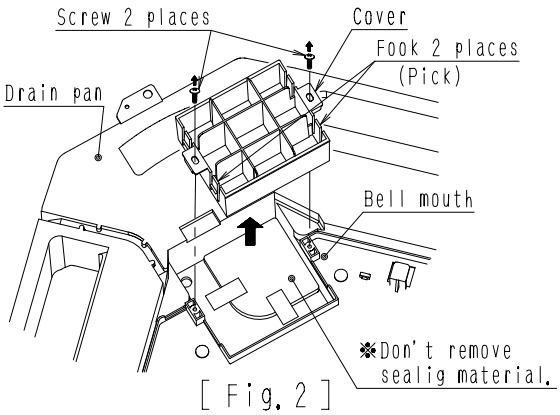


[Fig.1]

C: 2P196605A

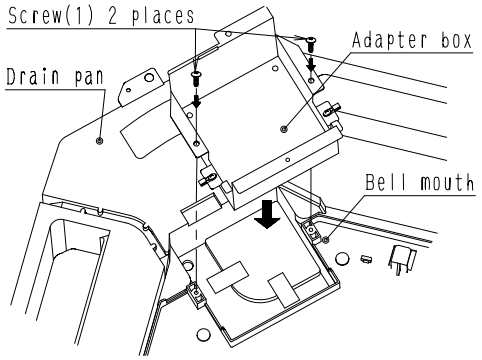
《Mounting the adapter box》

①Remove the cover, when the cover is attached. (Fig. 2)



[Fig. 2]

②Fix the box with the attached fixing screws (1) at two places. (Fig. 3)



[Fig. 3]

② Mounting the adapter PCB

《How to mount the adapter PCB》

①Connect the wiring to the adapter PCB.
(The work is easier if the wiring is connected to the PCB first.)

- See the instruction attached to the adapter PCB for where to connect the wiring.

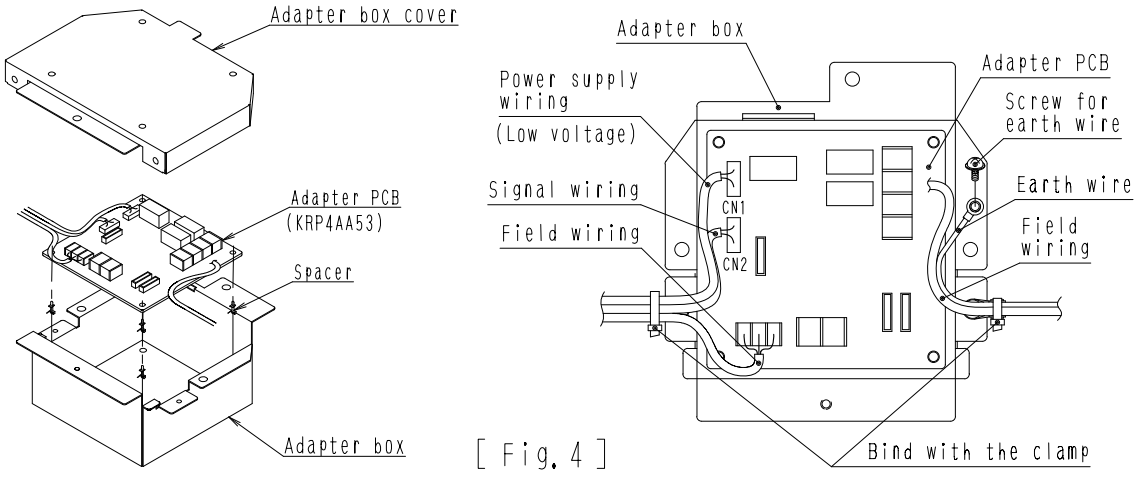
②Mount the adapter PCB on the adapter box and the adapter box cover.

Adapter PCB	Place where to mount
KRP4AA53 KRP2A62	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box. (Fig. 4)
KRP1C63	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box cover. (Fig. 5)
KRP1BA57	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box cover. (Fig. 6)

- For the mounting position of the adapter PCB, see the instruction attached to the adapter PCB.

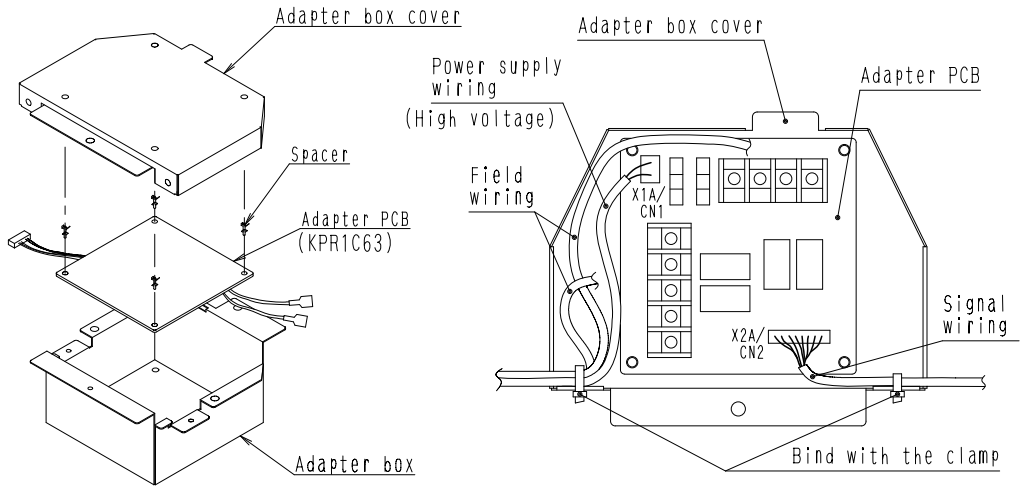
③Fix the earth wire with the attached fixing screw for earth wire. (Fig. 4)

④Bind the wiring from the adapter PCB with the attached clamp. (Fig. 4~6)

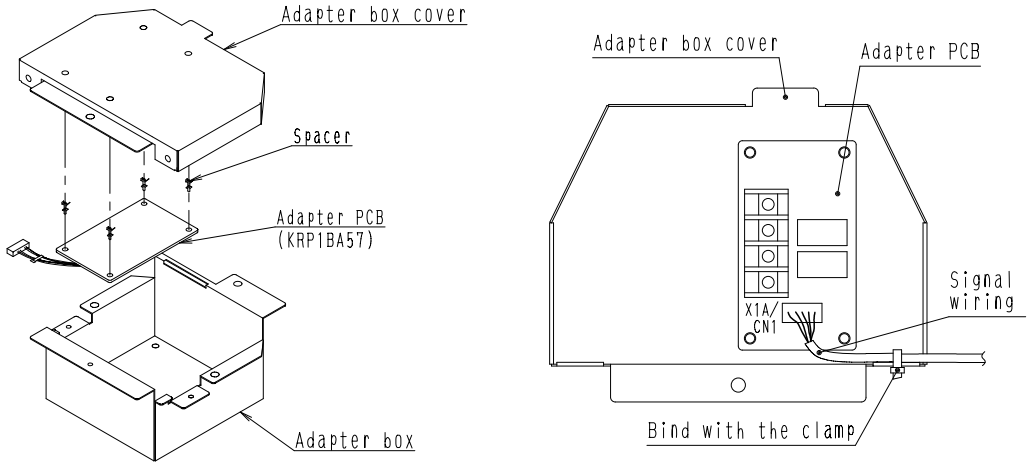


[Fig. 4]

C: 2P196605A



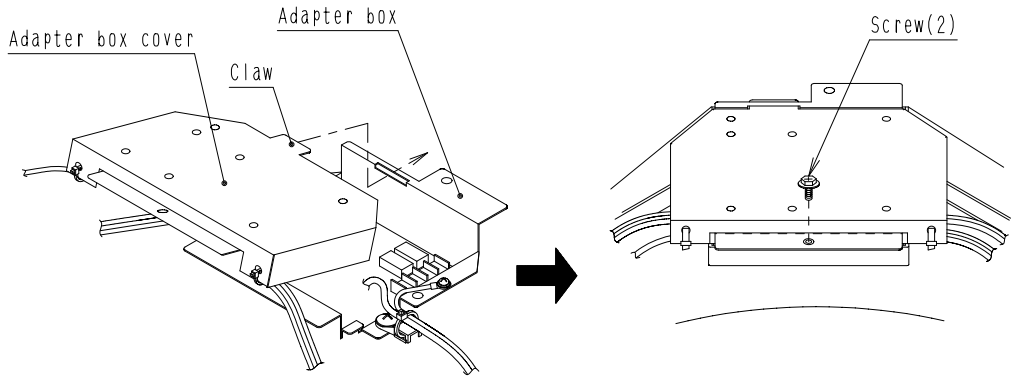
[Fig. 5]



[Fig. 6]

⑤ After putting the claw of the cover into the hole of the box, fix them with the attached screw (2). (Fig. 7)

- Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.



[Fig. 7]

C: 2P196606A

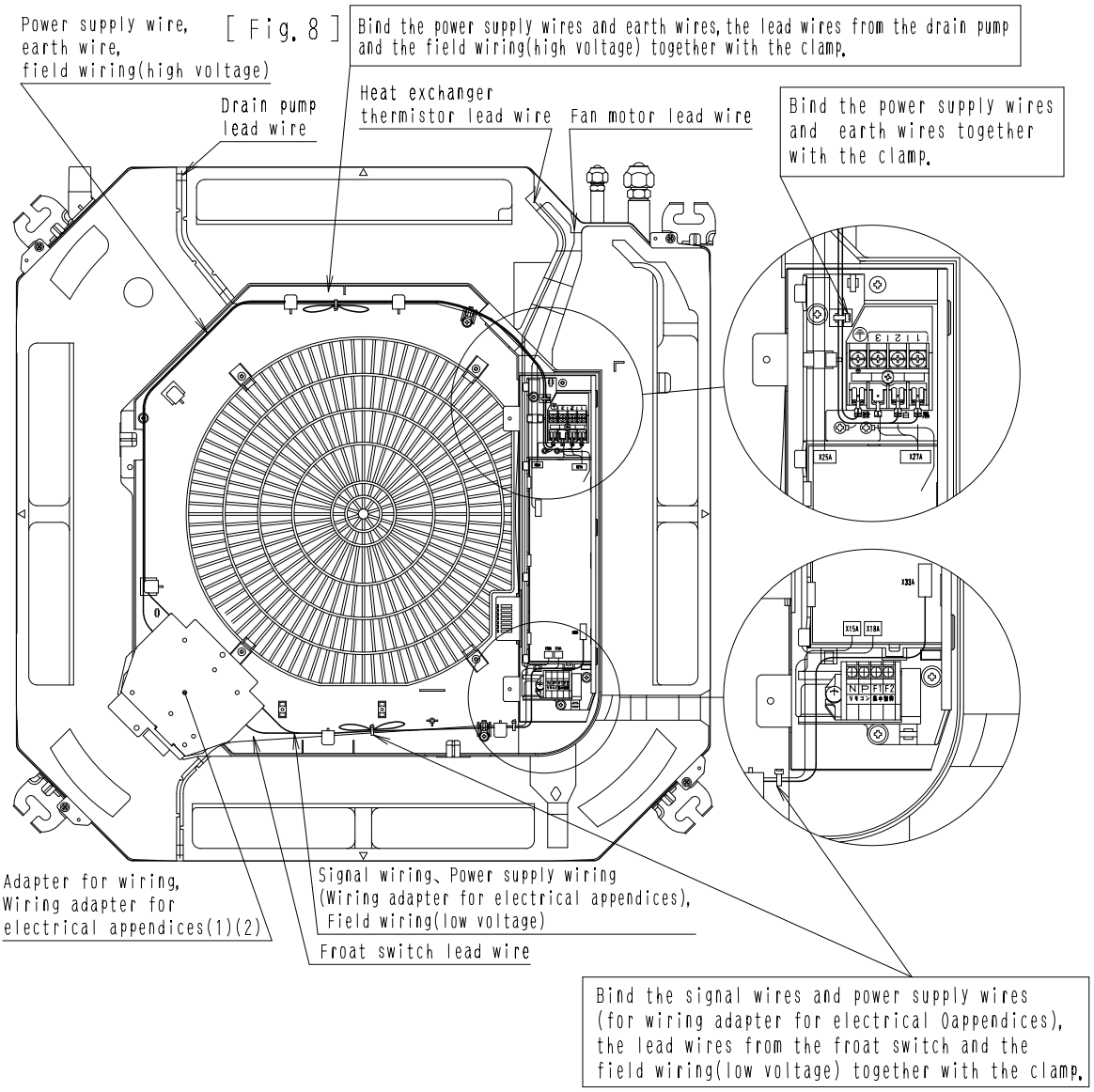
❸ How to handle the wiring

《Wiring to the indoor unit》

- Connect the wiring from the adapter PCB to the indoor unit. (signal wires, power supply wires, earth wires) (See the installation manual of indoor unit and wiring diagram lavel for where to connect the wiring.)
- See the instruction attached to the adapter PCB for the place where to connect the wires on the indoor unit.

① Fix the internal wirings.
- Bind the wiring from the adapter box to the indoor unit switch box according to the drawing shown on the right with the attached clamp.
- Bind the the surplus wires and the other wiring together with the clamp.

② Secure firmly the switch box cover in place in opposite order of removing.
- Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.



2P196606A

10.2 KRP1BA101

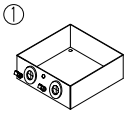
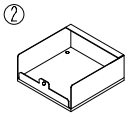


Notes

- One kit is required for each adaptor.
- Refer to the installation manuals attached to the indoor unit and adaptor.

Kit name	Indoor unit
KRP1B101 KRP1BA101	FXZQ20・25・32・40・50MVE FXD20・25・32・40・50・63MVE(T)(5) FXDQ40・50・63NBVE(T) FXD20・25・32PVE(T)(5) FXDQ20・25・32PBVE(T)

Accessories Check the following accessories are included in this kit.

Name	Installation box	Lid of installation box	Clamp	Screws	Cord sticker	Installation manual		Screws
Quantity	x 1	x 1	x 3	x 3	x 3	KRP1B101	English x 1	x 2
						KRP1BA101	English x 1, Japanese x 1	
Shape	① 	② 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 	⑥  (This manual)		⑦ 

Applicable adaptor

(IN CASE OF FXZQ TYPE)

Adaptor	Kit name
Adaptor for wiring	KRP1BA57
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(1)	KRP2A62
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(2)	KRP4AA53
External control adaptor for outdoor units	DTA104A62

Applicable adaptor

(IN CASE OF FXD, FXDQ TYPE)

Adaptor	Kit name
Adaptor for wiring	KRP1B56
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(1)	KRP2A53
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(2)	KRP4A54
External control adaptor for outdoor units	DTA104A53

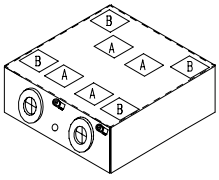
<IN CASE OF FXZQ TYPE>

❶ Method of attaching the adaptor

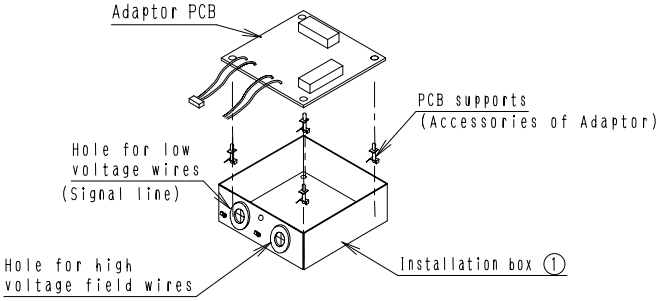
Attach the adaptor

Attach the adaptor in the Installation box ①by the PCB supports.
(PCB supports are accessories of adaptor.)

- Detach the aluminum tape of the Installation box ① to insert the PCB supports.
  Adaptor : KRP1BA57 --- Detach the aluminume tapes A.
  KRP2A62, KRP4AA53, DTA104A62 --- Detach the aluminume tapes B.



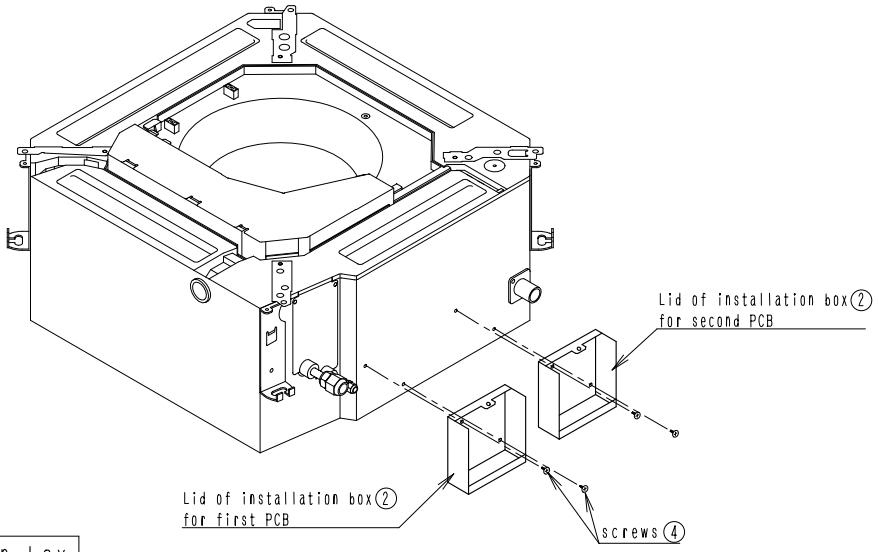
- Connect wires with the adaptor before attaching to the Installation box①.
- Low voltage wires and high voltage wires should be kept space at least 50mm from each other.



C: 1P107687C

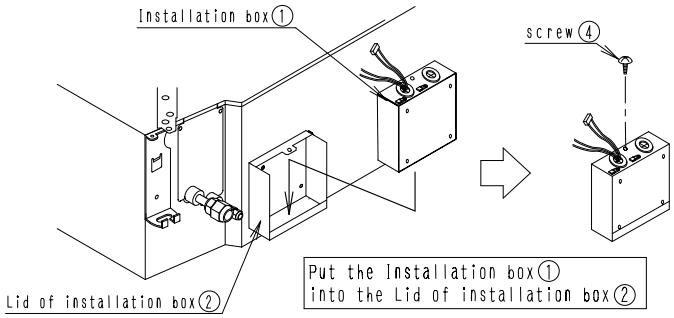
Attach the Lid of installation box

Attach the Lid of installation box ② to indoor unit with two screws.
If two adaptors are installed, the second adaptor is attached to side of first one.



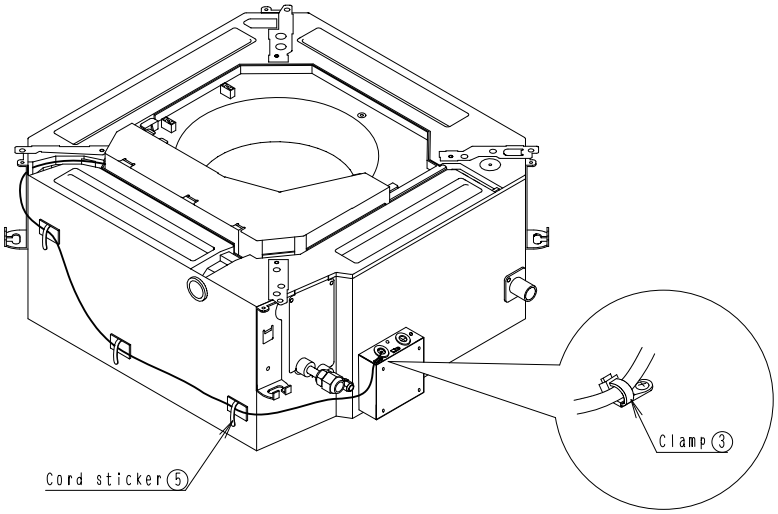
Attach the Installation box

Attach the Installation box ① into the Lid of installation box ② with the screw.



❷ Method of wiring processing

- Connect wires with the control box. (Refer to the installation manual attached to the adaptor.)
- After connecting wires with the control box, clamp wires by using the cord stickers ⑤ and the clamps ③ as shown in the below drawing.



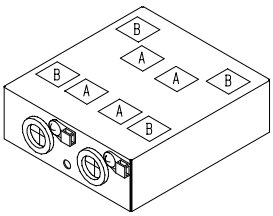
1P107687C

<IN CASE OF FXD, FXDQ TYPE>

❶ Method of attaching the adaptor

Attach the adaptor

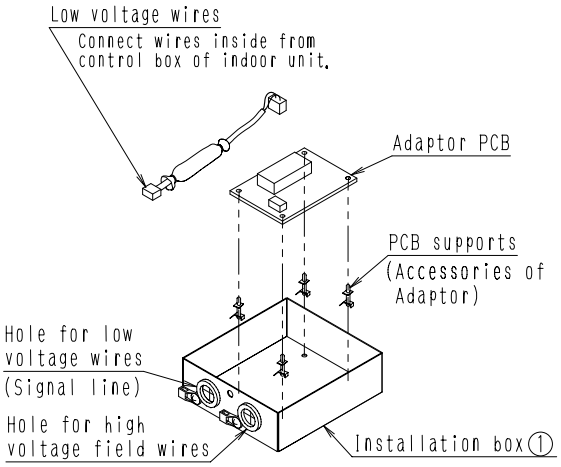
- Detach the aluminum tape of the Installation box ① to insert the PCB supports.
  Adaptor : KRP1BA56 --- Detach the aluminume tapes A.
  Adaptor : KRP2A53, KRP4A54, DTA104A53 --- Detach the aluminume tapes B.



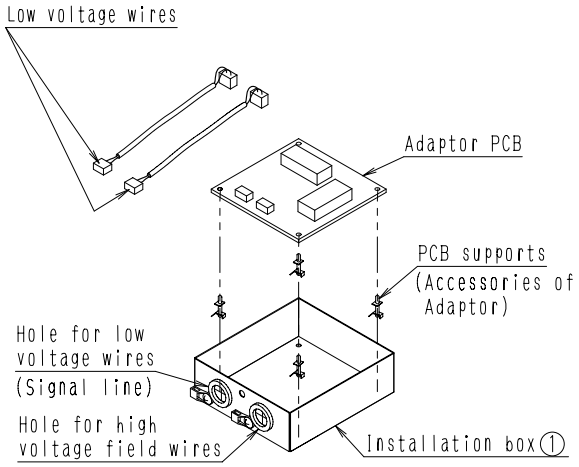
Attach the adaptor in the Installation box ① by the PCB supports.
(PCB supports are accessories of adaptor.)

- Connect wires with the adaptor before attaching to the Installation box①.
- Low voltage wires and high voltage wires should be kept space at least 50mm from each other.

IN CASE OF KRP1B56 TYPE

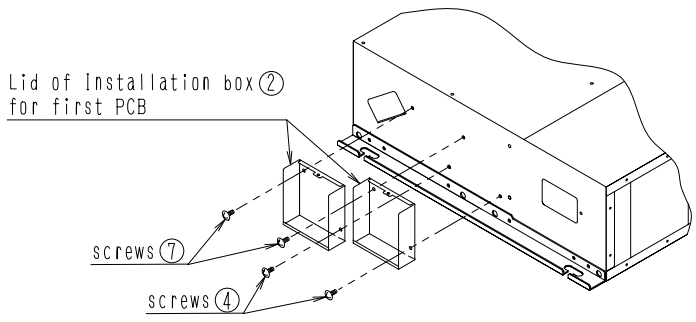


IN CASE OF KRP2A53, KRP4A54, DTA104A53 TYPE



Attach the Lid of installation box

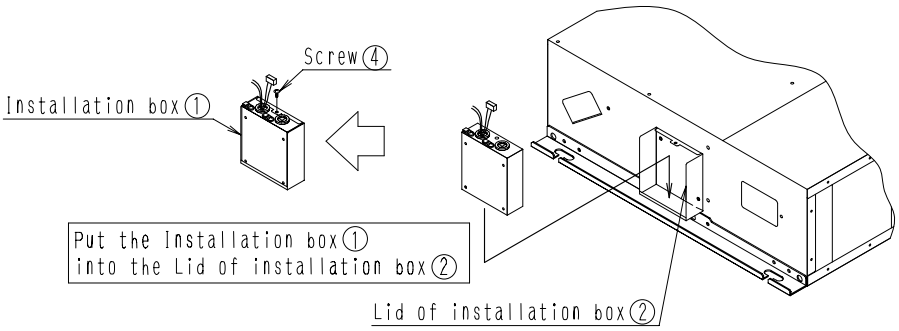
- Attach the Lid of installation box② to indoor unit with two screws④.
- If two adaptors are installed, the second adaptor is attached to side of first one.
- When the Insulation kit is used together, attach the Lid of installation box② to indoor unit with two screws⑦.



1P133507

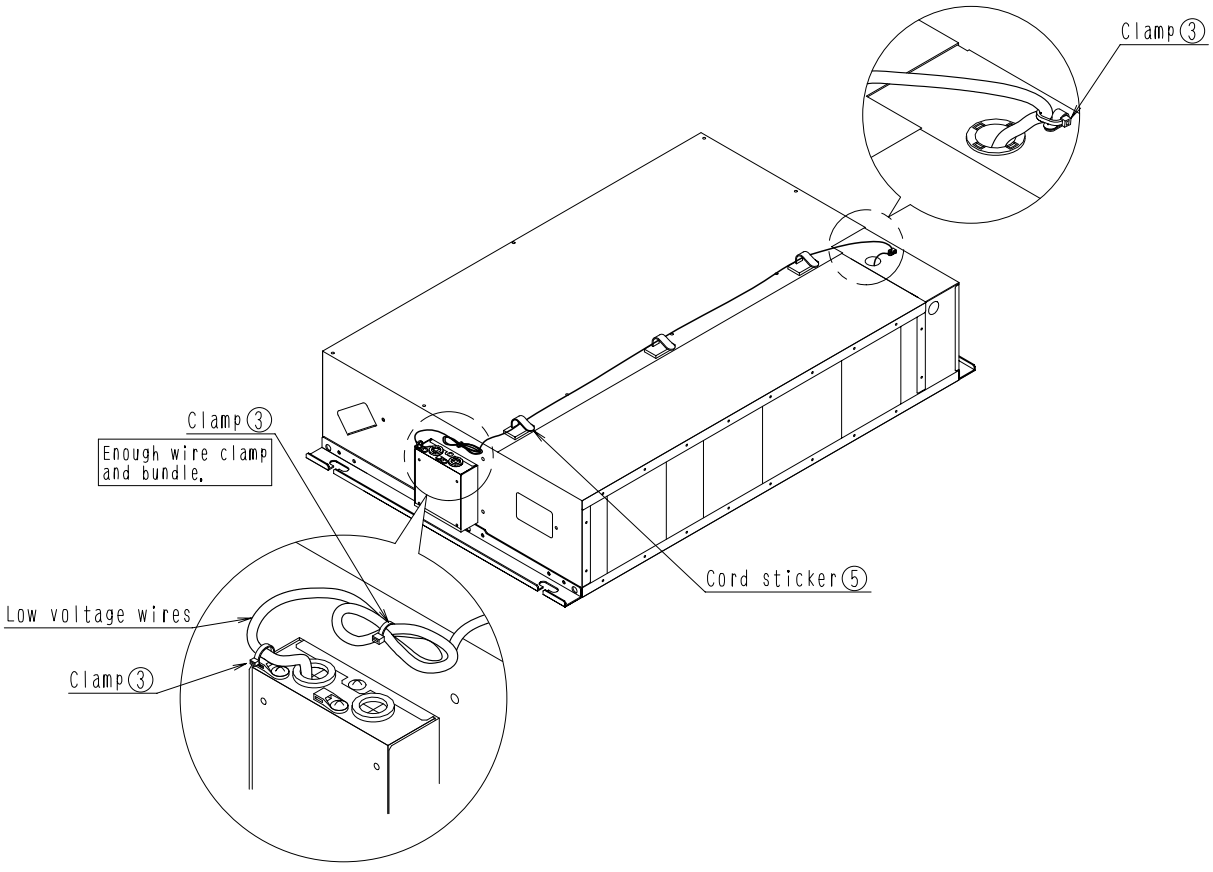
Attach the Installation box

Attach the Installation box ① into the Lid of installation box ② with the screw ④.



② Method of wiring processing

- Connect wires with control box. (Refer to the installation manual attached to the adaptor.)
- After connecting wires with the control box, clamp wires by using the cord stickers ⑤ and the clamps ③ as shown in the below drawing.



1P133507

10.3 KRP1DA98

Installation

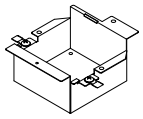
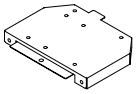
Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible	
KRP1DA98	VRV	FXF25・32・40・50・63・80・100・125LVE

Caution

- This box is mountable on the ceiling mounted cassette type (multi-flow type) unit. After confirming the indoor unit model name, mount this box on the unit listed in the table shown right.
- When mounting the box, see also the indoor unit installation manual and the adapter PCB (Printed Circuit Board) mounting instruction.

Accessories

Check if the following accessories are included with your kit.

Name	Adapter box	Adapter box cover	Clamp	Screw(1)	Screw(2)	Installation manual
Quantity	1PC.	1PC.	8PCS.	2PCS.	2PCS.	1PC.
Shape				 M4×12	 M4×8	

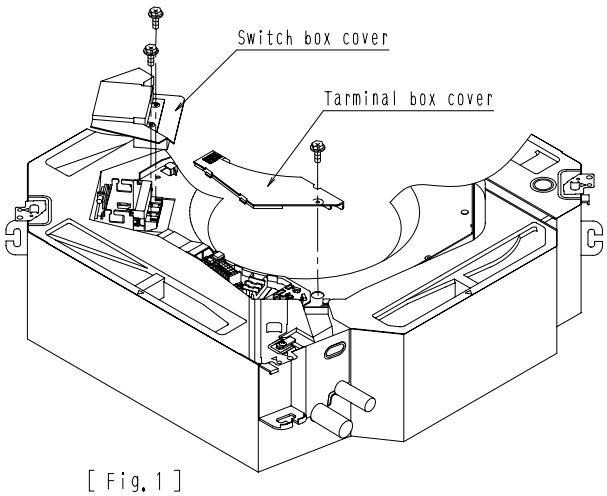
❶ Mounting the adapter box

《Preparation before wiring》

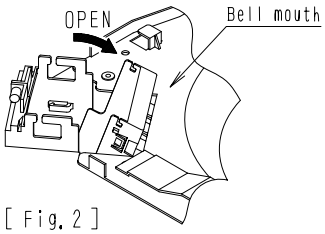
①Remove the switch box cover and the terminal cover. (Fig.1)
②Open the switch box until it almost touches the bell mouth. (Fig.2)

《Mounting the adapter box》

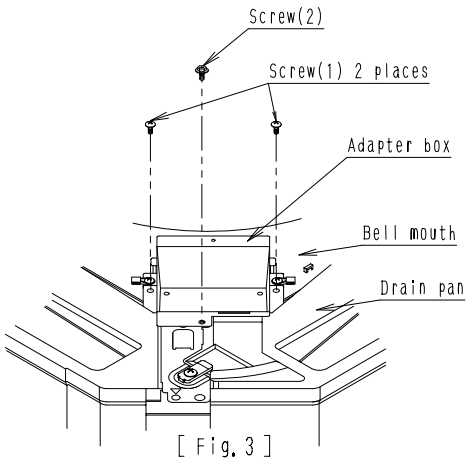
①Fix the box with the attached fixing screws (1) at two places and the fixing screw (2) at one place. (Fig.3)



[Fig.1]



[Fig.2]



[Fig.3]

C: 1P086302B

❷ Mounting the adapter PCB

《How to mount the adapter PCB》

①Connect the wiring to the adapter PCB.
(The work is easier if the wiring is connected to the PCB first.)
- See the instruction attached to the adapter PCB for where to connect the wiring.

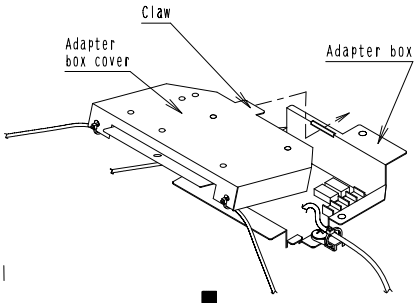
②Mount the adapter PCB on the adapter box and the adapter box cover.

Adapter PCB	Place where to mount
Adapter for wiring	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box cover. (Fig. 1)
Wiring adapter for electrical appendices(1)(2)	The PCB to be mounted on the adapter box. (Fig. 2)

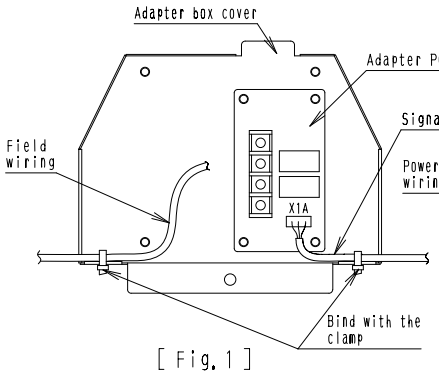
- For the mounting position of the adapter PCB, see the instruction attached to the adapter PCB.

③Bind the wiring from the adapter PCB (signal wires, power supply wires) with the attached clamp. (Fig. 1) (Fig. 2)

④After putting the claw of the cover into the hole of the box, fix them with the attached screw (2). (Fig. 3)
- Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.

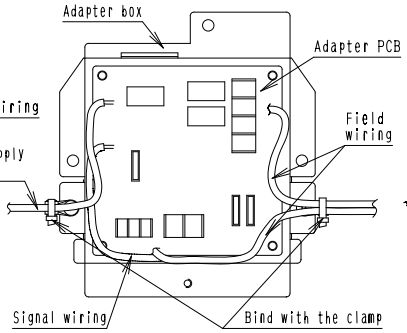


〈Adapter for wiring〉

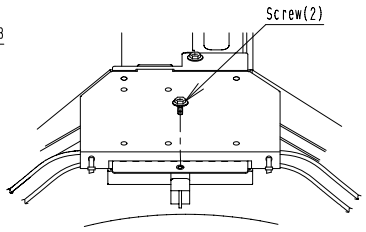


[Fig. 1]

〈Wiring adapter for electrical appendices(1)(2)〉



[Fig. 2]



[Fig. 3]

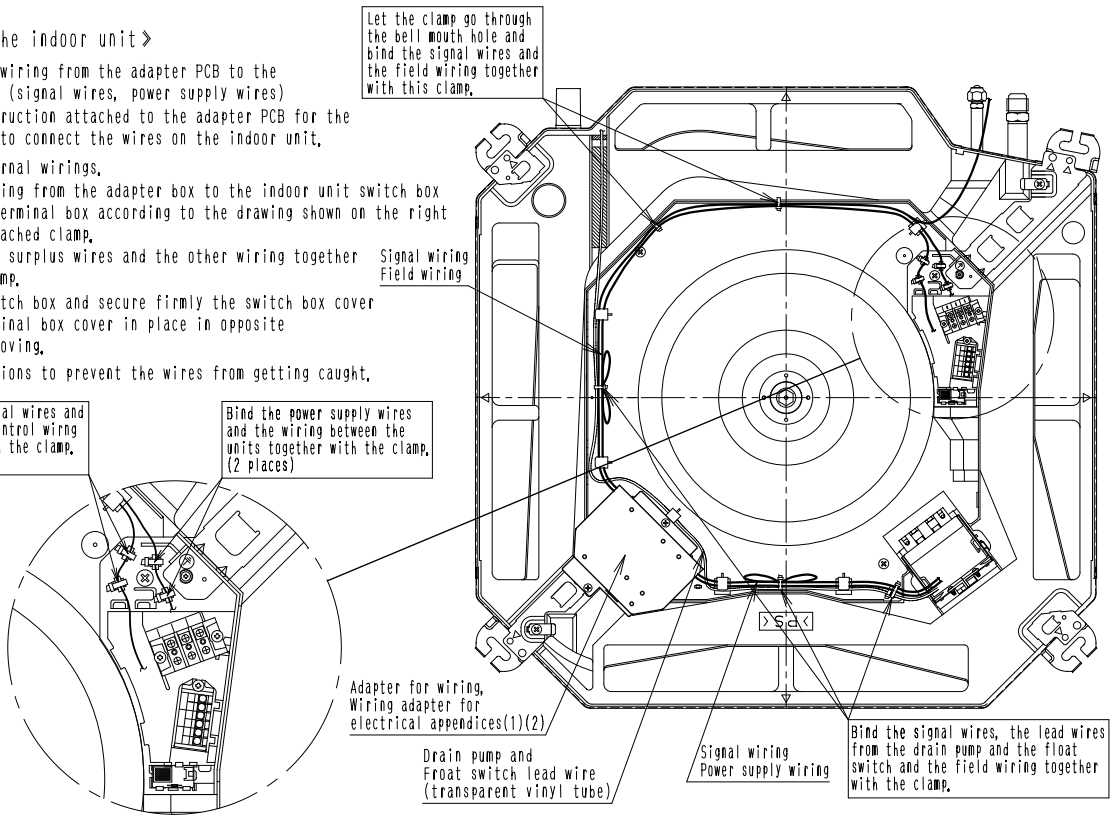
❸ How to handle the wiring

《Wiring to the indoor unit》

Connect the wiring from the adapter PCB to the indoor unit. (signal wires, power supply wires)
- See the instruction attached to the adapter PCB for the place where to connect the wires on the indoor unit.

①Fix the internal wirings.
- Bind the wiring from the adapter box to the indoor unit switch box and to the terminal box according to the drawing shown on the right with the attached clamp.
- Bind the the surplus wires and the other wiring together with the clamp.

②Shut the switch box and secure firmly the switch box cover and the terminal box cover in place in opposite order of removing.
- Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.

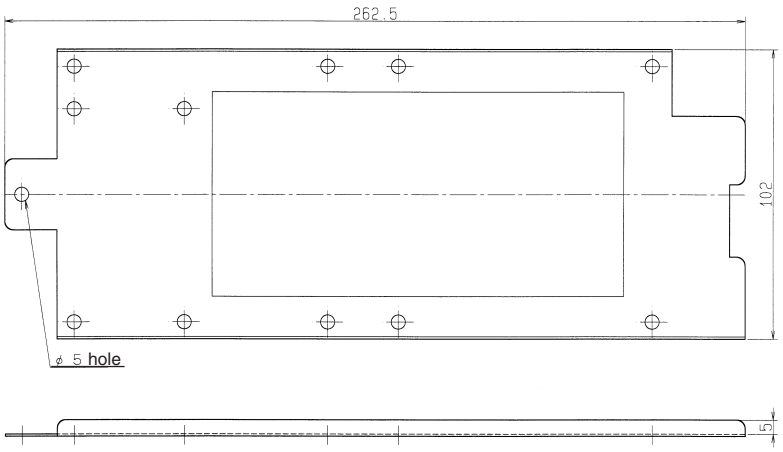


1P086302B

10.4 KRP1B96 / KRP4A91

Dimensions

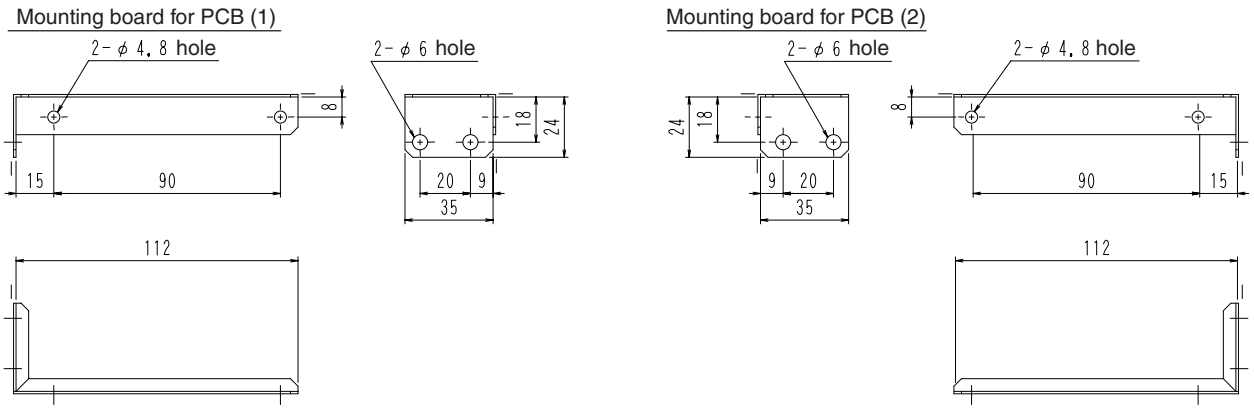
KRP1B96 Unit: mm



Material: Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet

D3K1581

KRP4A91 Unit: mm



Material: Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet

D3K2797

10.5 KRP1B100

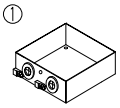
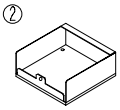
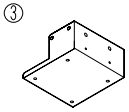
Notes

- This kit can be used with the indoor air conditioners (duct type).
- One kit is required for each adaptor PC board.
- Refer to the installation manual of the indoor air conditioners and adaptor PCB additionally when this kit is installed.

Kit name	Indoor air conditioner in which this kit is installed.
KRP1B100	FDY06・08・10・15・20K FXYD-KAVE

Accessories

Check whether the following accessories are included in this kit.

Name	Installation box	Cover for installation box	Support plate for installation box	Clamp material	Screws	Cord sticker	Installation manual
Quantity	x1	x1	x1	x2	x5	x3	x1
Shape	① 	② 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 	⑥ 	⑦  (This manual)

Applicable adaptor PCB

Adaptor PCB	Kit name
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices	KRP4A53

Adaptor PCB	Kit name
Adaptor for wiring	KRP1B57

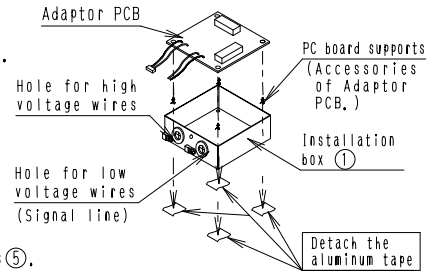
NOTE ✱)
In case of only FDY_K Series,
The adaptor for wiring
and the interface adaptor for Skyair series
can be not installed together.

❶ Method of installing the adaptor PCB

Installation of adaptor PCB

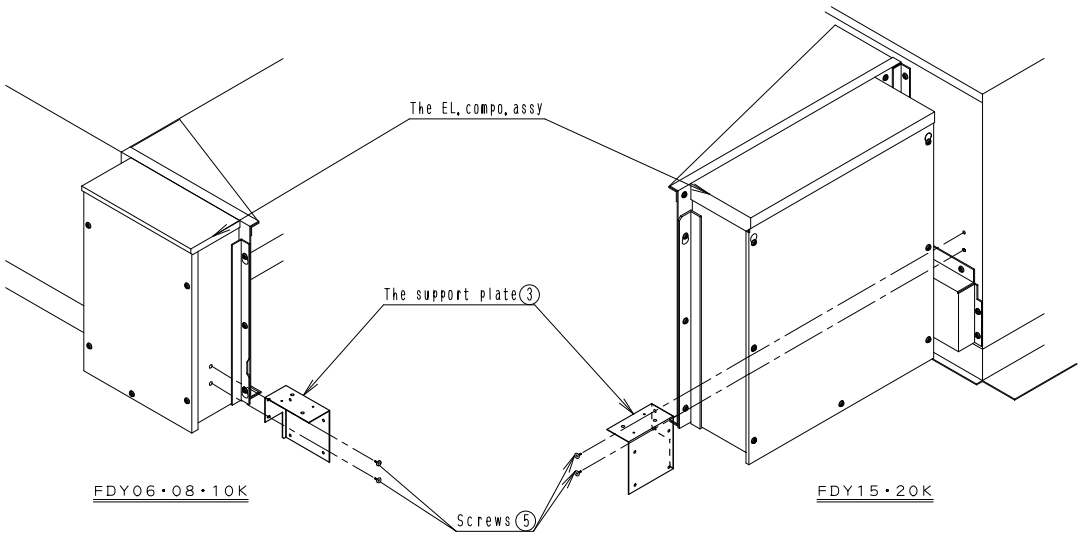
The adaptor PCB is installed in the installation box ①by the PC board supports .

- Detach the aluminum tape of the hole of the installation box ① which inserts the PC board supports .
- Connect wires with the adaptor PCB before attaching to the installation box ①.
- Be sure to pass the hole with the space of high and low voltage wires kept.



Attaching the support plate for installation box

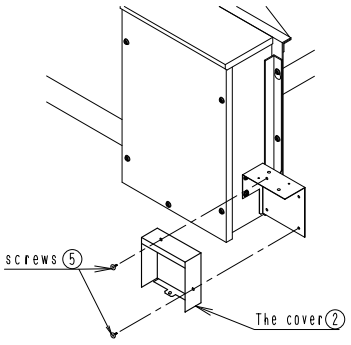
Attach the support plate③to the indoor unit (EL.compo.assy) with the two screws⑤.



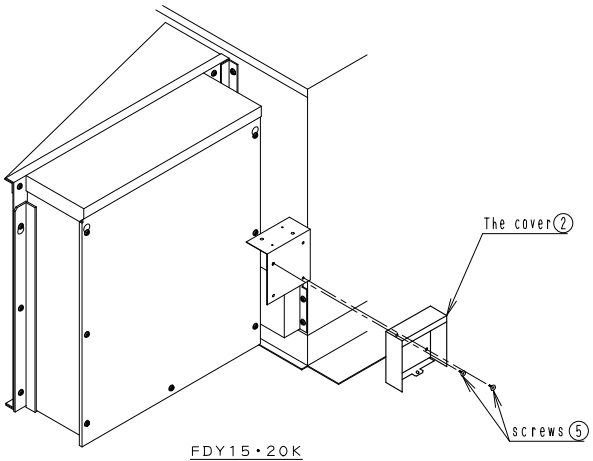
C: 1P078423

Attaching the cover for installation box

Attach the cover② in the support plate③with two screws.



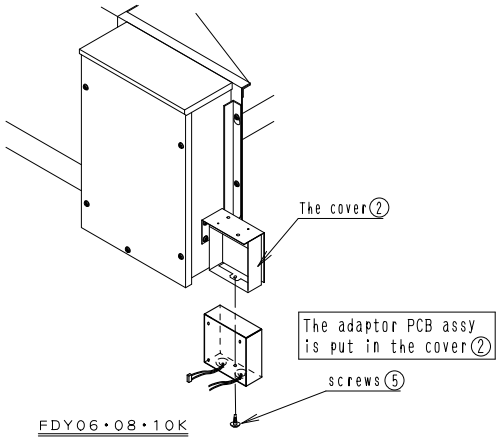
FDY06・08・10K



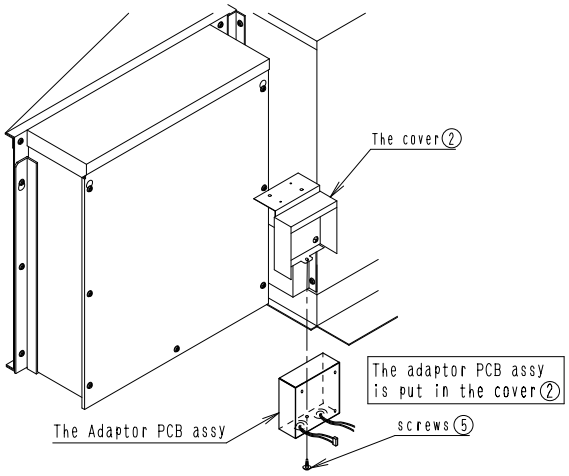
FDY15・20K

Attaching the adaptor PCB assy.

Attach the adaptor PCB assy to the cover②with the screw.



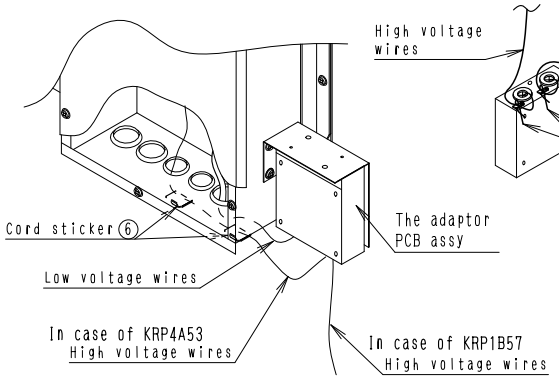
FDY06・08・10K



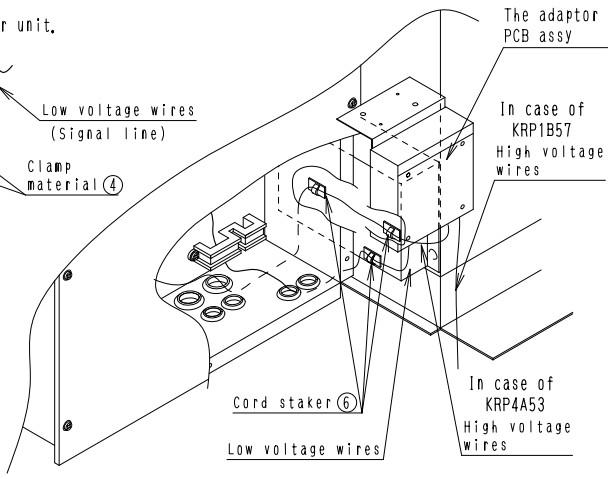
FDY15・20K

❷ Method of wiring processing

- Wire the adaptor PCB as explained in the installation manual provided with the adaptor PCB.
- After connecting wiring with the EL. compo. assy, clamp wires by using the cord sticker⑥and teh clamp material④ as shown in the below drawing.
  Be careful that neither wires are twisted or bent.
- Check after wiring and attaching the adaptor PCB assy to indoor unit.



FDY06・08・10K



FDY15・20K

C: 1P078423

10.6 KRP4A96

Caution

- This plate is mountable on the ceiling mounted duct type unit. After confirming the indoor unit model name, mount this plate on the unit listed in the table shown bottom.
- When mounting the plate, see also the indoor unit installation manual and the adaptor PCB (Printed Circuit Board) mounting instruction.
- Fixing method is not on the installation manual attached to the adapter PCB. Please follow directions on this sheet.

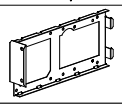
Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible		
KRP4A96	Ceiling mounted duct type unit	SkyAir	FBQ-DV1 FBQ-DVET
		VRV	FXMQ-PVE

*See the DAIKIN catalog for the details

Accessories

- Check if the following accessories are included with your kit.

〈Precaution〉
The accessories are required for the installation of the air conditioner. Be sure to keep them until the installation work is completed.

Name	Adaptor plate	Screw	Sealing material	Clamp	Installation manual
Quantity	1PC.	2PCS.	2PC.	8PCS.	1PC.
Shape		 M4×8			

〈Caution〉

- All field supplied parts and materials and electric works must conform to local codes.
- Use copper wire only.
- For electric wiring work, refer to also "Wiring diagram" attached to the control box lid.
- All wiring must be performed by an authorized electrician.
- A circuit breaker capable of shutting down power supply to the entire system must be installed.

❶ Mounting the adaptor plate

《Wiring to the indoor unit》

① Remove the control box lid. [Fig.1]

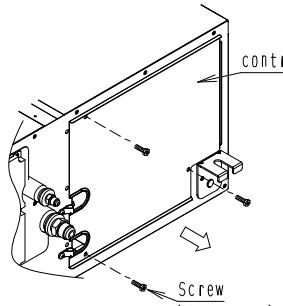
② Connect the wiring to the indoor unit. (The work is easier if the wiring is connected first.)

- See the instruction attached to the adaptor PCB for the place where to connect the wires on the indoor unit.
- Please see the connector location on (figure 1) on the ❷ How to mount the adaptor PCB and handle the wiring .

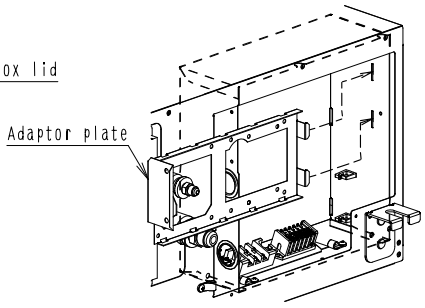
《Mounting the adaptor plate》

① Putting the claw of the adaptor plate into the hole of the box. [Fig.2]

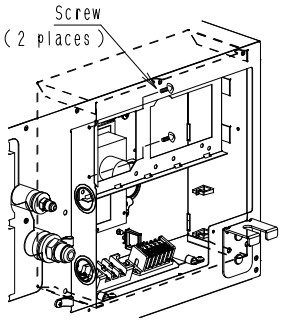
② Fix the box with the attached fixing screws at two places. [Fig.3]



[Fig.1]



[Fig.2]

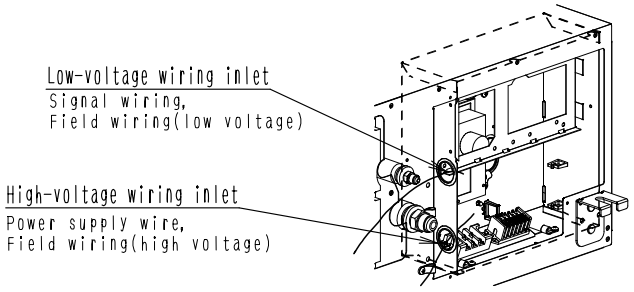


[Fig.3]

❷ How to mount the adaptor PCB and handle the wiring

《How To Lead-in External Wires 》

Lay the wires in the control box through the wire inlet on the side of the control box.



C: 2P226887

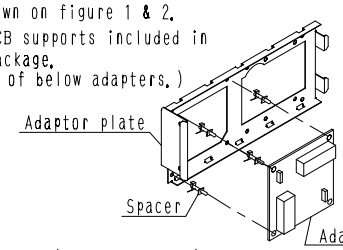
《How to mount the adaptor PCB》

① Connect the wiring to the adaptor PCB.
(The work is easier if the wiring is connected to the PCB first.)

● See the instruction attached to the adaptor PCB for where to connect the wiring.

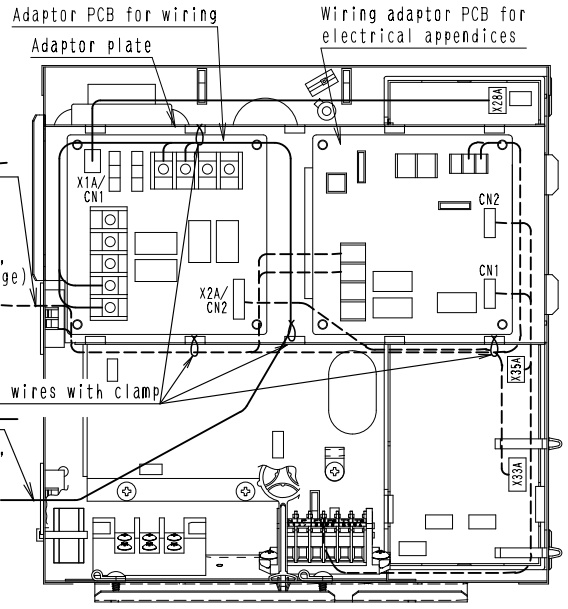
② Mount adapter PCB onto the mounting plate (in the direction) as shown on figure 1 & 2.

● Use PCB supports included in the package.
(for any of below adapters.)



《Caution》If (adapter PCB is) mounted in a wrong direction, electric noise may cause malfunction of the system, or may influence upon other devices.

〈Adaptor for wiring, Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices〉



(Fig. 1)

Adaptor PCB		Place where to mount
Adaptor for wiring	KRP1C64	(Fig. 1)
Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (※1)	KRP4AA51 KRP2A61	(Fig. 1)
External control adaptor for outdoor unit (※1)	DTA104A61	(Fig. 2)

(※1) adapter cannot be mounted 2 or more together.

《How to handle the wiring》

《Caution》Do not make high-voltage and low-voltage wires run in parallel. Electric noise may cause malfunction of the system, or may influence upon other devices.

① Fix the internal wirings.
Bind the wiring from the adaptor plate to the indoor unit control box according to the drawing shown on the right with the attached clamp.
(Put the clamping materials through the corner holes to fix wires.)

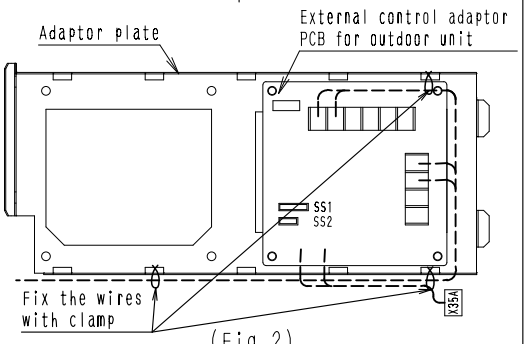
● Bind the the surplus wires and the other wiring together with the clamp.

② Put the control box lid, and wrap the wire sealing material around the wires so as to block the wire through holes.

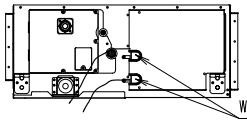
● Take precautions to prevent the wires from getting caught.

● After all the wiring connections are done, fill in any gaps in the through holes with putty or insulation (procured locally) to prevent small animals and insects from entering the unit from outside.
(If any do get in, they could cause short circuits in the control box.)

〈External control adaptor for outdoor unit〉



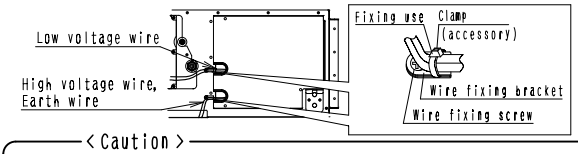
(Fig. 2)



⚠Warning
Trim and lay the wiring neatly and attach the control box lid securely.
An electric shock or fire may result if the control box lid catches any wiring or the wires push up the lid.

③ Connect round crimp-style terminals provided with insulation sleeves to the terminal block for power supply.

● See the instruction attached to the indoor unit.



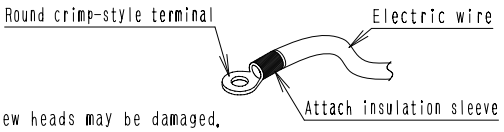
〈Caution〉

● Connect proper wires securely and fix the wires so that external force will not be imposed on the terminals.

● Use an appropriate screwdriver to tighten the terminal screws. The screw heads may be damaged if the screwdriver is too small and the terminal screws will not be tightened properly.

● Do not tighten the terminal screws excessively, or otherwise the screw heads may be damaged.

● Refer to the table below for the required tightening torque values of the terminal screws.



	Tightening torque (N・m)
Terminal block for remote controller and transmission wires	1.18 – 1.44
Terminal block for power supply, and wiring the units	1.18 – 1.44

C: 2P226887

10.7 KRP4AA93



Item \ Model		KRP4AA93
Applicable Adaptor		KRP4AA51 / KRP4AA52 / KRP4AA53 / KRP4A54
Installation		External
Material		Hot-dip zinc-coated steel sheet for painting
Dimensions	Width	160
	Height	180
	Thickness	50

Installation

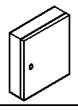
REMARKS

- This box can be mounted on the small wall mounted type indoor unit.
  One box is required for every adaptor.
- When mounting the box, see the installation manual of the indoor unit as well as the installation manual of the box.

Combination table

Kit model name	Model name of indoor unit which allows the box to be mounted	
KRP4AA93	SkyAir	FAQ71BVV1B
	VRV	FXA 20・25・32 L type FXA 45・56・63 L type FXAQ 20・25・32・45・56・63 M(A)type

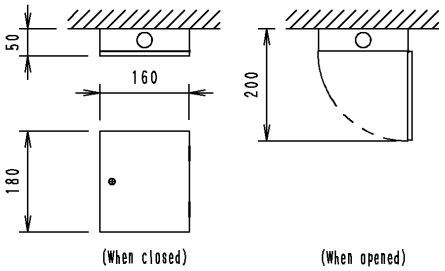
Parts included Make sure that the following parts are included.

Name	Installation box for adaptor PCB	Screw for fixing door	Plastic washer	Installation manual
Quantity	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 sheet
Shape	① 	② 	③ 	④  (This sheet)

❶ Selection of mounting location

- The location of the box must be near the indoor unit and where open/ close of the door can be handled smoothly.

Caution
- Make sure to select the flat area for mounting.

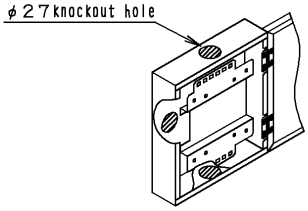


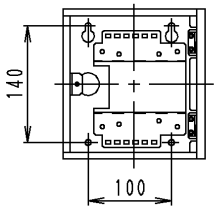
❷ Mounting the box

① Determine the wiring outlet side and open the knockout hole on the box.
- Three knockout holes for wiring outlet are located on the upper, the lower and the rear sides. (Shown right figs.)

② Determine the box mounting location properly so that it suits the wiring length and outlet location.

③ Fix the box with 4 screws (Field supplied)
- The dimensions for mounting is shown right.



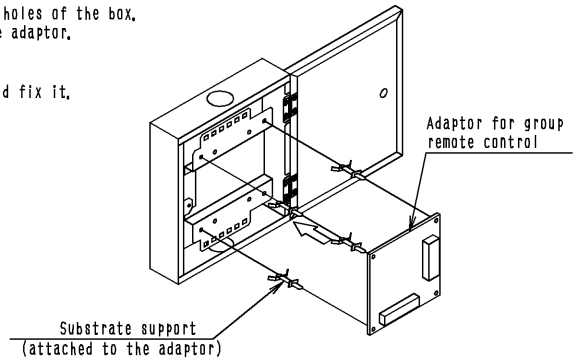


C: 3K012186D

❸ Mounting the adaptor

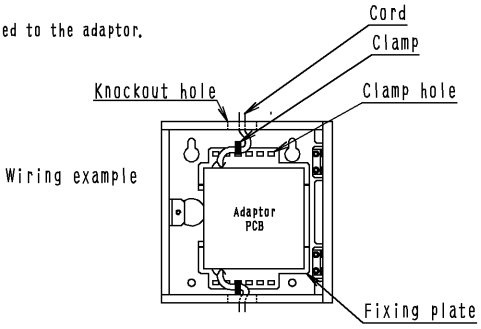
- Fix 4 pieces of substrate supports to the holes of the box.
  The substrate supports are attached to the adaptor.

- Match the adaptor to substrate supports and fix it.



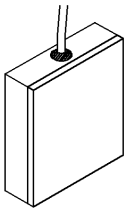
- For wiring, follow the installation manual attached to the adaptor.

- For wiring, fix the fixing plate with the clamp attached to the adaptor.

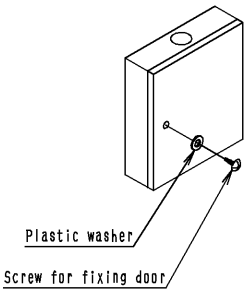


⚠Caution

- When passing wiring through the knockout holes, remove burrs around the knockout holes and protect the wiring with protective tape or conduit or bushing (field supply).
- If small animals or bugs might enter the unit, block off any gaps (hatching parts in below figure) with sealer (field supply).



- After checking the wiring, close the door and fix the door with the plastic washer and the fixing screws.



3K012186D

10.8 KRP1CA93



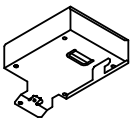
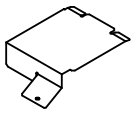
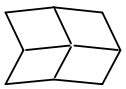
Item \ Model		KRP1CA93
Installation		Interior of unit
Material		Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Dimensions (mm)	Width	109
	Length	124
	Depth	38
Component parts		Installation box. Box cover. Clamp. Screws. Installation Manual.

Installation

NOTE:

- This box can be installed to the ceiling-hang type unit.
- Each adapter plate requires one kit.

Parts included: Check the following parts are include with your unit.

Part name	Installation box main body	Installation box lid	Installation screw	Fixing screw for lid	Fixture	Installation manual	Clamp
Shape			 M4×8	 M4×12			
Quantiity	1	1	2	2	2	1	4

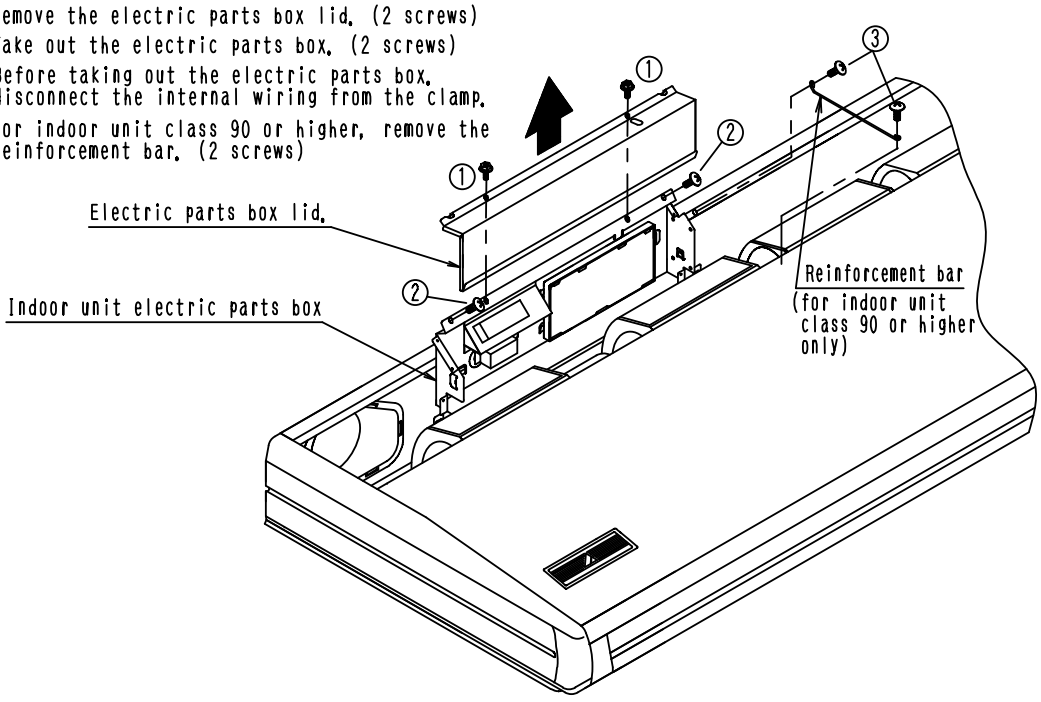
Applicable adapter plate

Adapter plate name	Kit name
(Group) Remote control adapter	KRP2A62, KRP4AA52

1 Installation preparation

① Remove the electric parts box lid. (2 screws)
② Take out the electric parts box. (2 screws)
- Before taking out the electric parts box, disconnect the internal wiring from the clamp.

③ For indoor unit class 90 or higher, remove the reinforcement bar. (2 screws)



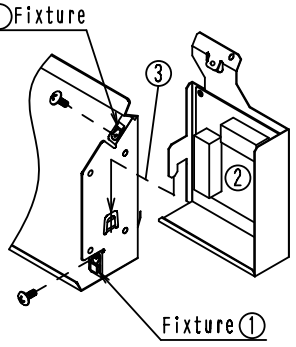
3K09595B

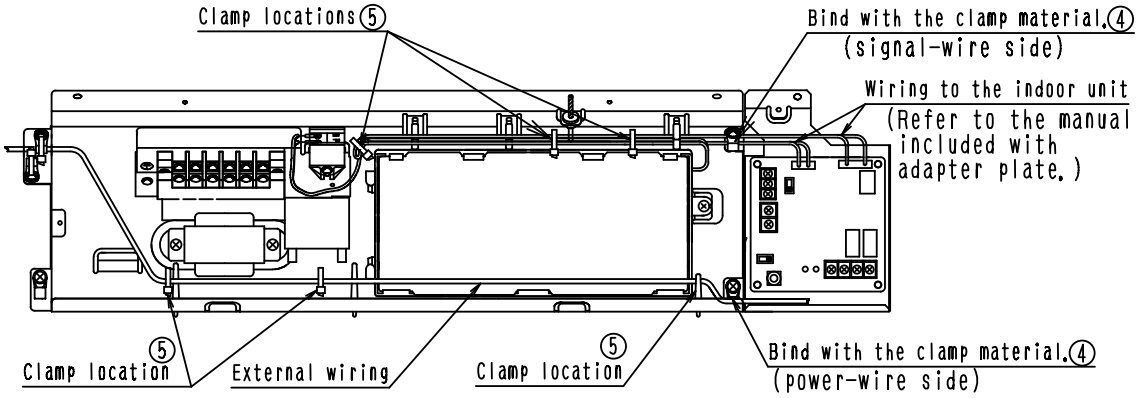
❷ Installation of Adapter Plate

①Install the fixture included with the kit to the electric parts box. (2 locations)
②Install the adapter plate to the adapter installation box.
- ●For installation direction of the adapter plate, refer to the installation manual included with the adapter plate.

③Temporarily hang the adapter installation box on the electric parts box of the indoor unit.
④Connect wires to the adapter plate and the indoor unit.
- ●For wiring locations, refer to the manual included with the adapter plate.
- ●Separate power wires and signal wires. Refer to the figure below on how to wire inside the electric parts box.
- ●Bind the wires taken out of the adapter plate together with the fixture installed in ① using the included clamp material.

⑤Fix the intemal wiring.
- ●Refer to the figure below on how to fix the wires inside the electric parts box to the clamp material.
- ●Bind the remaining wires with the clamp material, and house them inside the electric parts box.



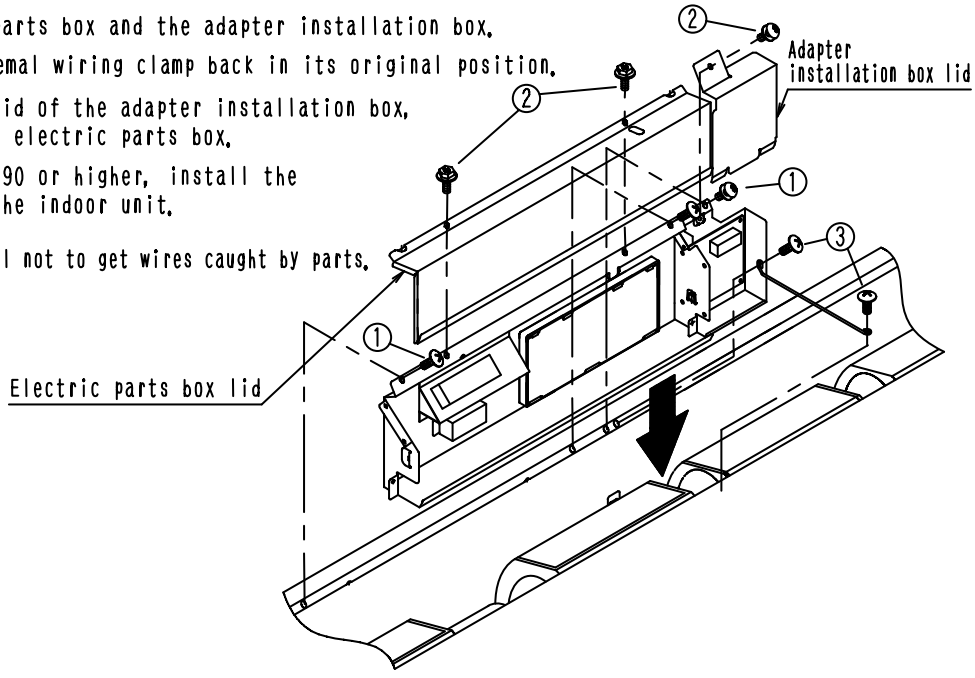


❸ Installation to the Indoor Unit

①Install the electric parts box and the adapter installation box.
- ●Place the removed intemal wiring clamp back in its original position.

②After installing the lid of the adapter installation box, install the lid of the electric parts box.
③For indoor unit class 90 or higher, install the reinforcement bar to the indoor unit.

*When installing, be careful not to get wires caught by parts.



3K09595B

10.9 KRP1BA97



Item \ Model		KRP1BA97
Adaptor for Wiring		KRP4AA53
Installation		Interior
Material		Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Dimensions (mm)	Width	110
	Length	165
	Depth	41

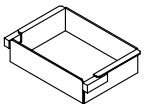
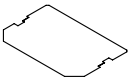
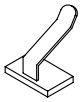
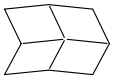
Installation

Notes

- This kit is also attachable to the ceiling-suspended unit.
- Also refer to the indoor unit body installation manual before installation.

Description of Parts

Make sure that the following parts are included.

Name	Installation box body	Installation box cover	Mounting screw	Cable Tie	Installation manual
Shape			 M4 × 12		
Quantity	1 unit	1 pc.	2 pcs.	2 pcs.	1 pc.

1. Preparation for mounting

(1) Remove the suction grill and open the cover of the switch box. (2 screws)
(2) Remove the lead wire of the swing motor and suction thermistor from the bell mouth (Fig. 1-1).
(3) Remove the bell mouth from the indoor unit body (No. of screws: 3) (Fig. 1-2).
(4) Use a nipper or cutter to cut two openings for bell mouth wiring (Fig. 1-3).
(5) Drill two holes in the concave of the bell mouth for the mounting screws (Fig. 1-3).

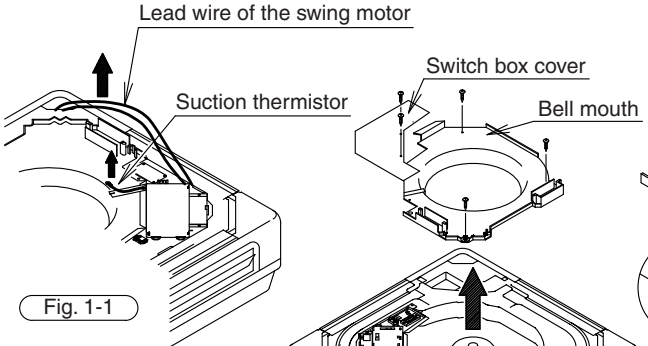


Fig. 1-1

Fig. 1-2

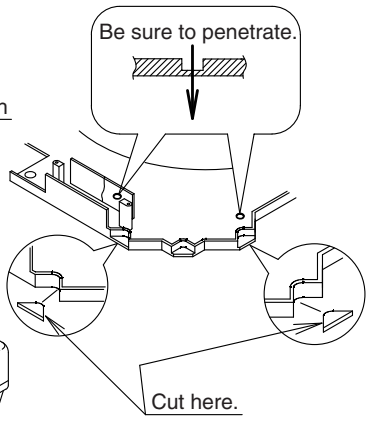


Fig. 1-3

J: 2P002952C

2. Mounting the adapter (Also refer to the installation manual supplied with the adapter.)

(1) Attach circuit board supports (4 pieces) to the holes of the installation box body (Fig. 2-1).
(Attach them before mounting the adapter.)
Circuit board supports are supplied with the adapter.

(2) Mount the adapter according to the position of the circuit board supports.
Also connect the external wires to the adapter.

(3) Attach the installation box body to the bell mouth with two screws supplied (Fig. 2-2).

(4) Attach the bell mouth to the indoor unit body (Fig. 2-3).

(5) Return the swing motor lead wire and the suction thermistor to the original positions and fix them.

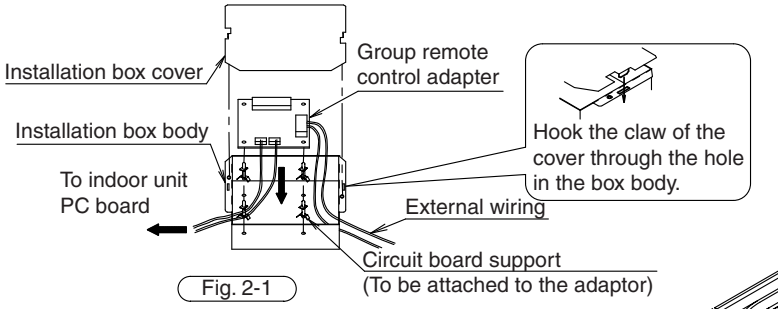
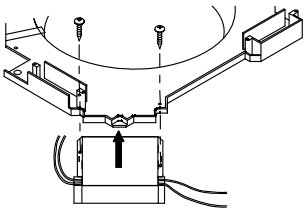
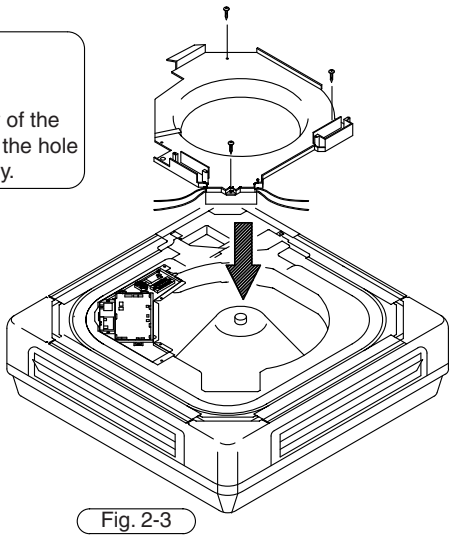


Fig. 2-1


Fig. 2-2


Fig. 2-3

3. Wiring method

Refer to the installation manual supplied with the adapter for electric wiring.

(1) After completing the installation work, attach the cable sticker supplied to fix the cable as shown in the figure below. Pay attention not to bend the cable.

(2) Coil excess lead wire in the switch box and secure it with a tie wrap supplied with the adapter (Fig. 3-1).

(3) Mount the switch box cover (Fig. 3-2).

(4) Mount the suction grill.

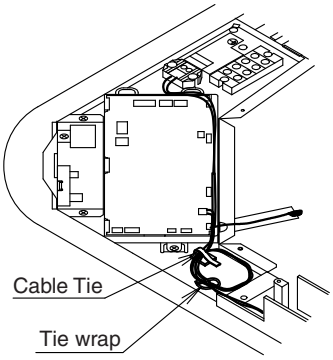


Fig. 3-1

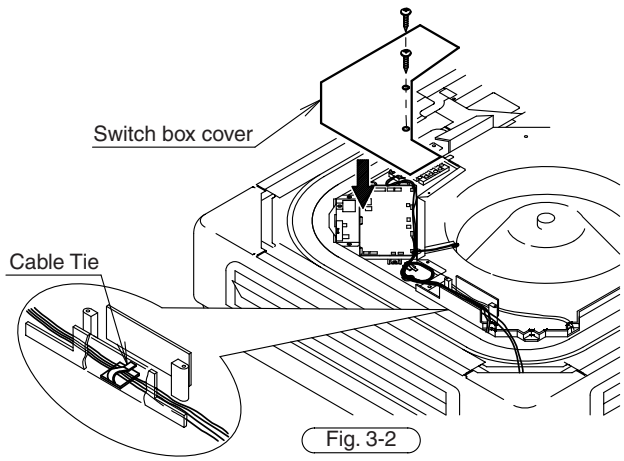


Fig. 3-2

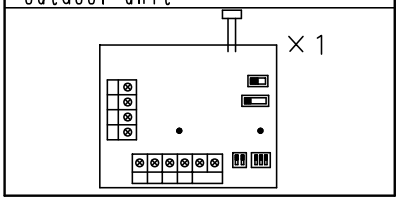
J: 2P002952C

11. External Control Adaptor for Outdoor Unit

11.1 DTA104A61 / DTA104A62 / DTA104A53

Accessories Check the following accessories are included in the kit before the installation.

External control adaptor for outdoor unit × 1



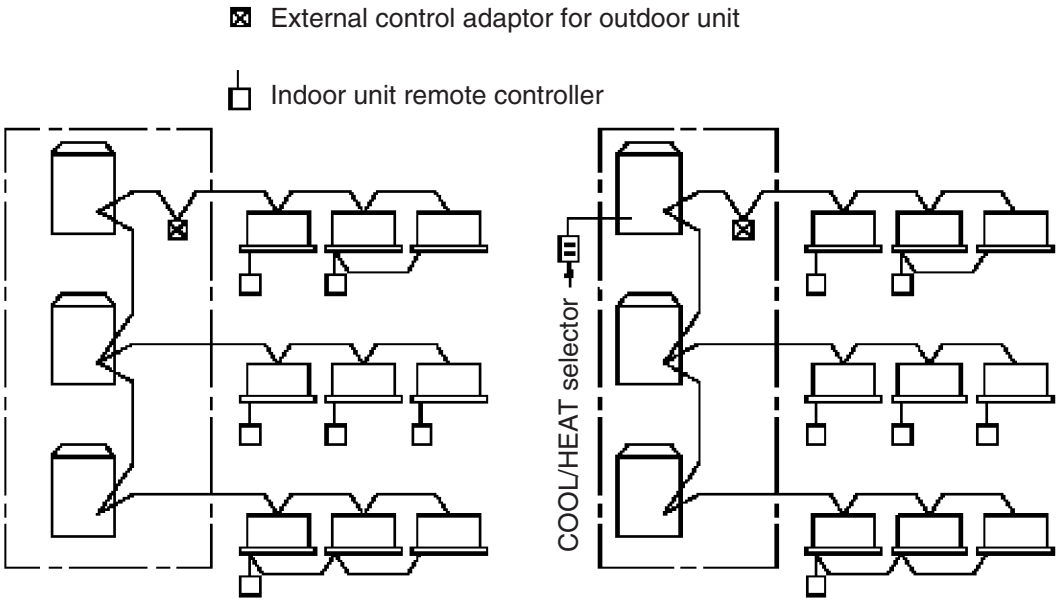
PCB support	× 4
Clamp	× 3
Installation manual	× 8

NOTES
- The kit type (DTA104A61 type, DTA104A62 type, DTA104A53 type)varies according to air conditioner model.
- The installation box for adaptor PCB are required with the following air conditioner models.

FXC(Q) KRP1B96
FXFQ-P KRP1H98
FXF KRP1DA98
FXH(Q) KRP1CA93
FXA(Q) KRP4AA93
FXD(Q), FXZQ KRP1BA101
FXMQ-P KRP4A96
FXYD KRP1B100
FXS, FXSYQ KRP4A91

1 General description of system

With the external control adaptor, outdoor units are controlled as follows.
1.Operation mode (COOL/HEAT/FAN) is switched simultaneously for more than one outdoor unit.
- If switching operation mode by indoor unit remote controller or COOL/HEAT selector.
- Except RSEY-K

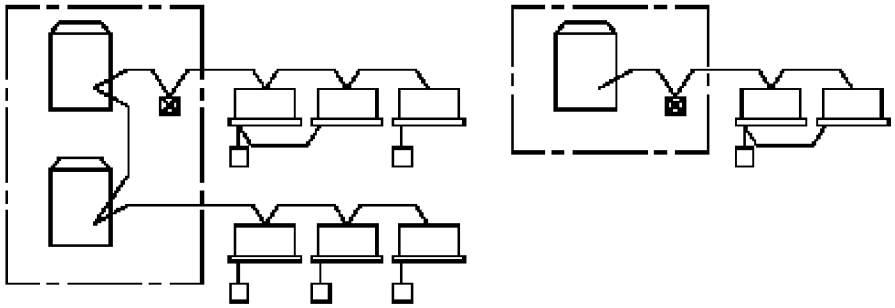


You can simultaneously switch operation mode for outdoor units in [ ].

C: 1PA63164E

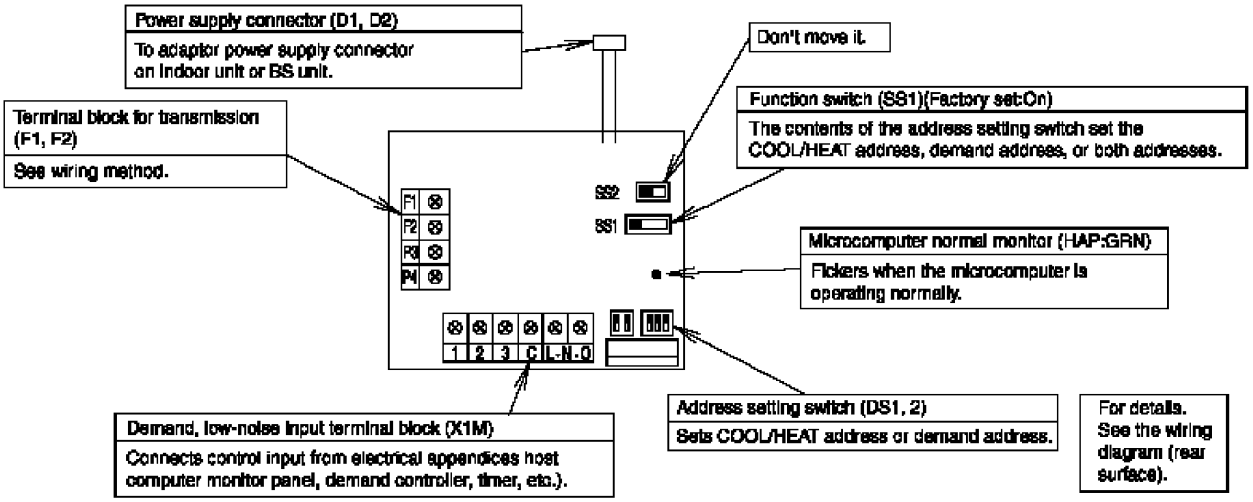
2.Demand control and low-noise control are executed simultaneously for more than outdoor unit.

• Except RSEY-K



Demand control and low-noise control are executed simultaneously for outdoor units in .

2 Names of parts and functions



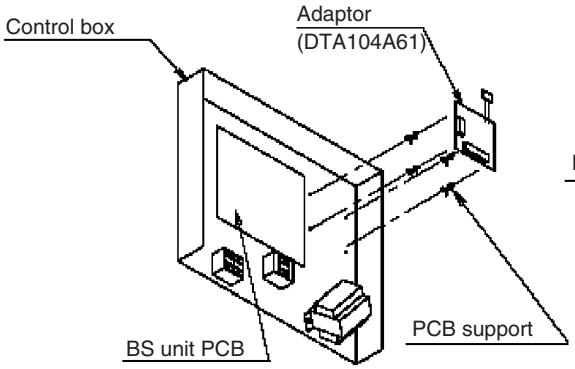
C: 1PA63164E

❸ Installation

- Install the adaptor inside the electric parts box of indoor unit of same refrigerant circuit.
- If installing on a BS unit, install the adaptor inside the electric parts box of the BS unit.

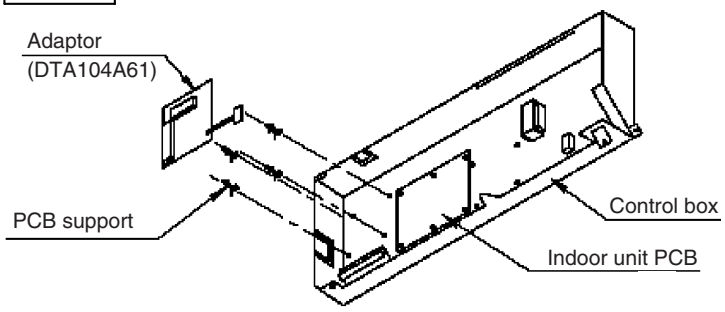
《BS Unit》

BSV(Q)



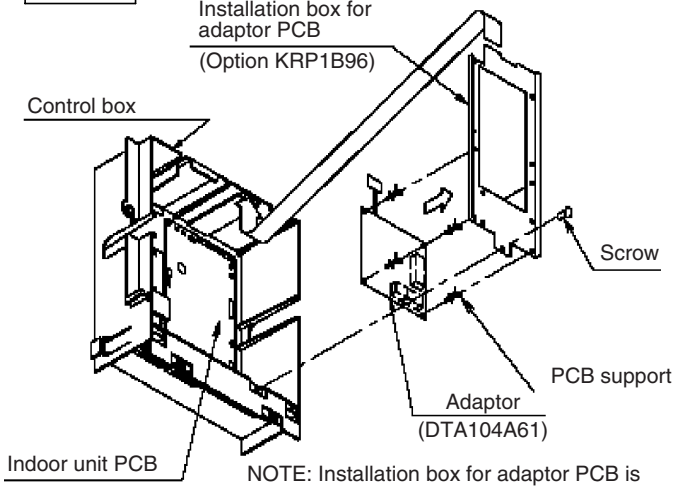
《 Ceiling-mounted cassette type 》

FXK(Q) (Corner model)



《 Ceiling-mounted cassette type 》

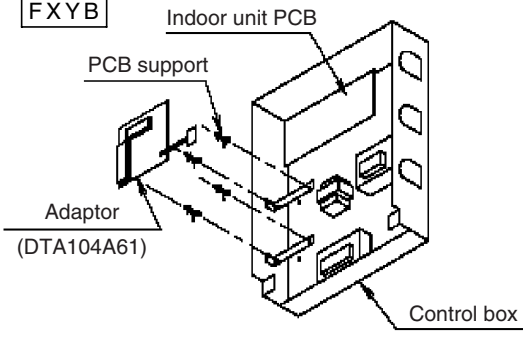
FXC(Q) (Double-flow model)



NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

《 Ceilling-mounted Built-in type》

FXS
FXYB



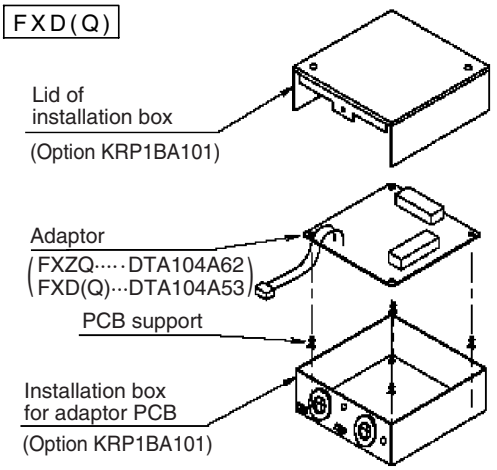
Note :
Installation box is necessary for second adaptor (FXS) .

《 600x600 Ceilling mounted cassette type 》

<Slim ceiling mounted duct type>

FXZQ

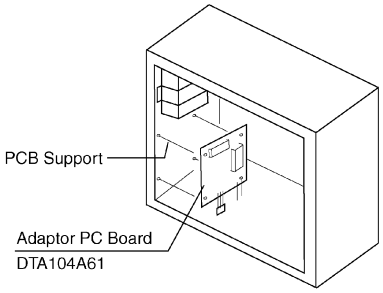
FXD(Q)



NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

《Ceiling Mounted Duct Type 》

FXYD-KA



Note:
Installation box is necessary for second adaptor.

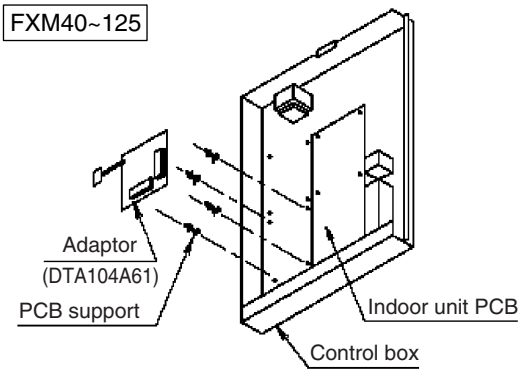
C: 1PA63164E

《 Ceilling - mounted Duct type 》

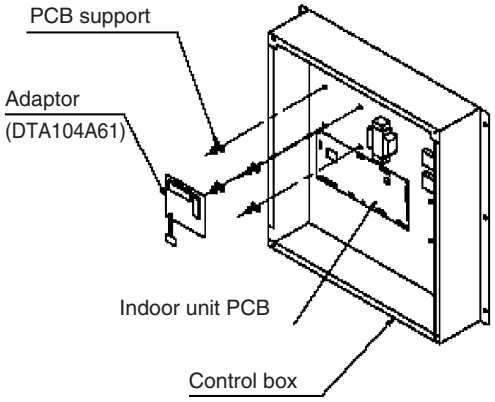
FXMQ20~140P

See **10.6 KRP4A96** (Page 263).

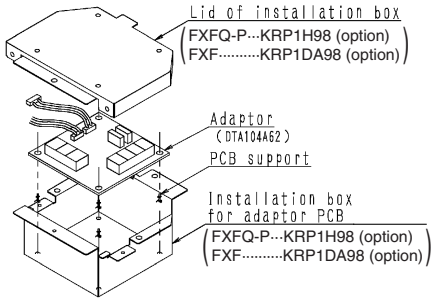
FXM40~125



FXM(Q)200 · 250



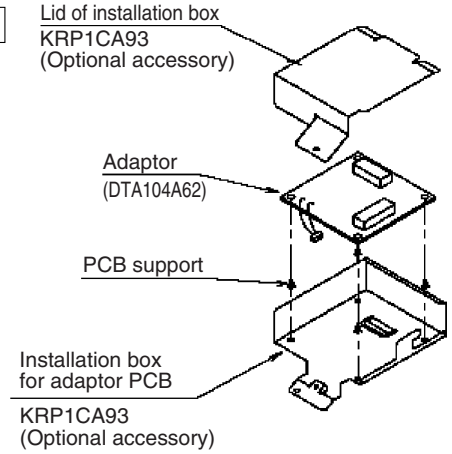
FXF(Q)



Note:
Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

《 Ceiling Suspended type 》

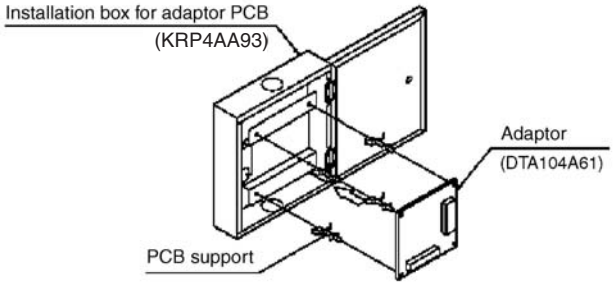
FXH(Q)



NOTE: Installation box for adaptor PCB is required to install the adaptor.

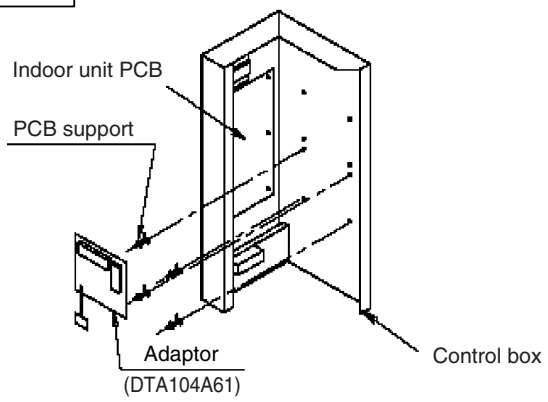
《 Wall mounted type 》

FXA(Q)



《 Floor-standing type 》

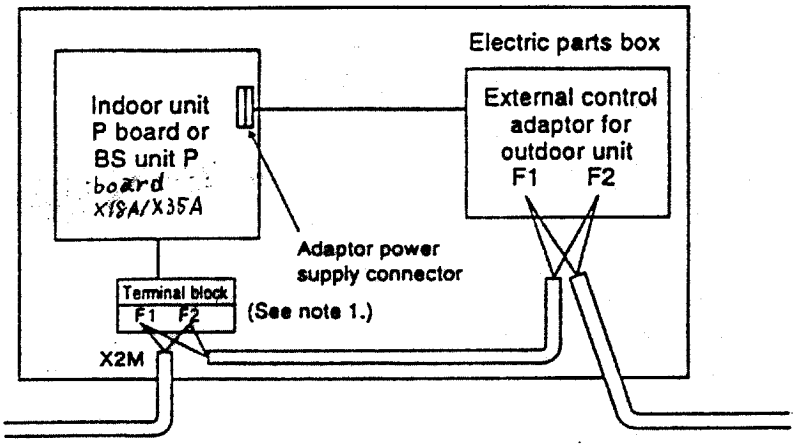
FXL(Q)
FXN(Q)



C: 1PA63164E

④ Electrical wiring

① Connect the power supply wiring from the adaptor to the adaptor power supply connector on the PCB of the Indoor unit or BS unit.
② Connect the transmission wiring to the various terminal blocks, and to the F1 and F2 terminals on the PCB. (Use double-core wiring with no polarity.)
③ Using the attached wiring ties, clamp the transmission wiring to weak field wiring, etc.



Note 1: If mounting on a BS unit, connect the BS unit's terminal block (F1 and F2, indoor unit side) with F1 and F2 of the adaptor.

NOTES

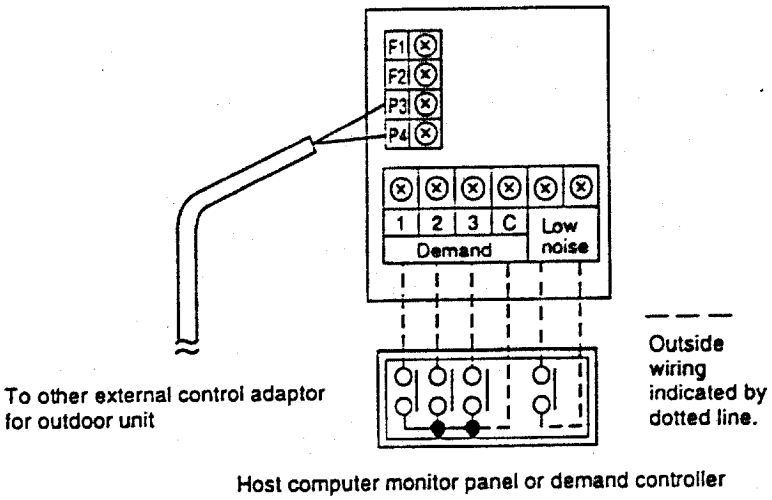
- (Transmission wiring specifications)

Sheathed wire
(2 wire)
0.75 ~ 1.25 mm^2

- (Transmission wiring length)

Malfunction of transmission may occur if the following limits are exceeded.
(Total wiring length: Max. 1000 m
No. of branches: Max. 16)

④ If carrying out demand or low-noise input, connect the adaptor's terminals as shown below.



1PA63165A

[Input signal]
Constant a contact
Input current is approx. 10 mA per contact.
For the relay contact, use a weak current contact.
[Outside wiring specifications]
Recommended wiring: 0.75 ~ 2 mm^2 sheathed wire
Wiring length: Within 150 m
Keep a mimimum 50 mm from power supply wiring to prevent malfunction.

Demand input terminal

Short circuit between (Demand 1) – (C)... As a guideline, demand should be about 70%.
Short circuit between (Demand 2) – (C)... As a guideline, demand should be about 40%.
Short circuit between (Demand 3) – (C)... Forced thermo OFF

Low-noise input terminal

When terminals are short-circuited during cooling, capacity save (outdoor unit fan low-speed turn, compressor frequency control) is carried out.
Use only at night when load is slight.

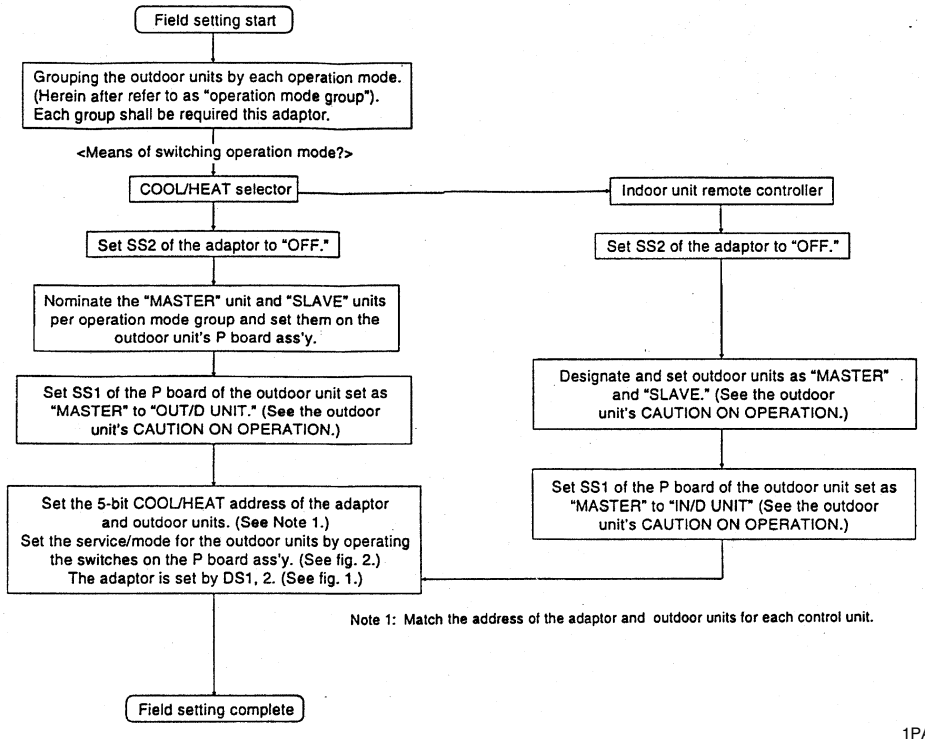
How to set demand control in the field

1. Outdoor unit field setting
   - Setting mode 1 . . . Turn ON low noise control as explained in the outdoor unit's service manual.
   - Setting mode 2 . . . Match low noise and demand addresses to the external control adaptor address.
2. External control adaptor settings
   - Function switch (SS1)
     Set SSI to either "BOTH" or "DE".
   - Address setting switch (DS1, DS2)
     Match DS1 and DS2 to the low noise and demand addresses of the outdoor unit.

5 Field settings

1. The contents of the various settings for unified switching of the operation mode (cool, heat, fan) are as follows.

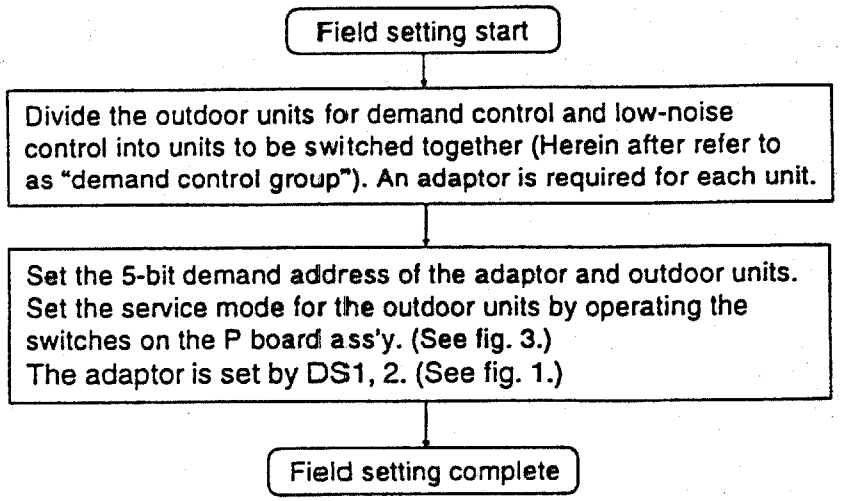
Setting switches cannot be switched unless the power is turned on. Be sure, therefore, to turn the power off after switching the switches.



Note 1: Match the address of the adaptor and outdoor units for each control unit.

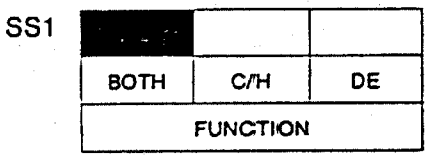
1PA63165A

2. The contents of the various settings for unified switching of demand and low noise operation are as follows.



3. To carry out operation mode switching and demand control simultaneously

You can carry out operation mode switching and demand control simultaneously by setting function switch SS1 on the adaptor to "BOTH." Only one address, however, can be set on the adaptor, so the "operation mode switch unit" and "demand control unit" are the same.



Factory set to "BOTH."

Set the COOL/HEAT address, demand address and low noise address, or both as needed.



Left (BOTH)



Middle (C/H)



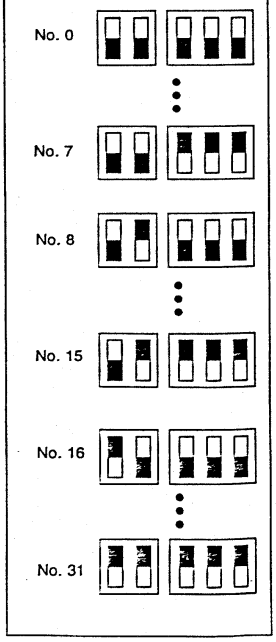
Right (DE • LOW NOISE)

Note 2: The outdoor unit can have an independent "COOL/HEAT address" and "demand address". You can therefore set the "operation mode group" and "demand control group" to different ranges.

1PA63165A

Fig. 1 Setting of 5-bit cool/heat address by DS1, 2.

Designate and set cool/heat addresses 0 – 31 for each operation mode switch unit.



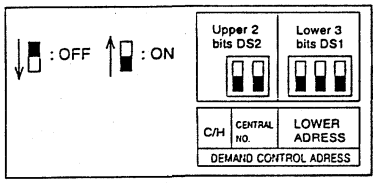


Fig. 2 (Ex.) To set the outdoor unit's cool/heat address to No. 15:

● — Off ○ — On ◑ — Flicker

Procedure	Setting contents	MODE	TEST	5-bit C/H SELECT IND	5-bit C/H SELECT MASTER	5-bit C/H SELECT SLAVE	5-bit L.N.O.P.	5-bit SEQ. START
When power turned on	Setting mode (factory set)	● LED20	● LED21	○ LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	○ LED26
Hold down next page button for 5 secs.	Enters address setting.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	● LED26
Push operation button one time.	Enters cool/heat address setting.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	○ LED26
Push confirmation button one time.	Make sure cool/heat address has been entered.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	● LED26
Push operation button 15 times. (Address No. = Times pushed)	Sets cool/heat address.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	◑ LED23	◑ LED24	◑ LED25	◑ LED26
Push confirmation button two times.	Check cool/heat address.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	● LED26
Push next page button one time.	Returns to set mode.	● LED20	● LED21	○ LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	○ LED26

Fig. 3 (Ex.) To set the outdoor unit's demand address to No. 7:

● — Off ○ — On ◑ — Flicker

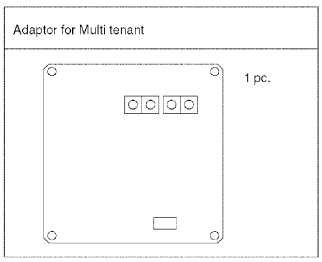
Procedure	Setting contents	MODE	TEST	5-bit C/H SELECT IND	5-bit C/H SELECT MASTER	5-bit C/H SELECT SLAVE	5-bit L.N.O.P.	5-bit SEQ. START
When power turned on	Setting mode (factory set)	● LED20	● LED21	○ LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	○ LED26
Hold down next page button for 5 secs.	Enters address setting.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	● LED26
Push operation button two times.	Enters demand address setting.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	○ LED25	● LED26
Push confirmation button one time.	Make sure demand address has been entered.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	● LED26
Push operation button 7 times. (Address No. = Times pushed)	Sets demand address.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	◑ LED24	◑ LED25	◑ LED26
Push confirmation button two times.	Check demand address.	○ LED20	● LED21	● LED22	● LED23	● LED24	● LED25	● LED25
Push next page button one time.	Returns to set mode.	● LED20	● LED21	○ LED22	● LED23	● LED24	◑ LED25	○ LED25

1PA63165A

12. Adaptor for Multi Tenant

12.1 DTA114A61

Accessories Check that the following accessories are provided with the adaptor before installation.



PCB support	4 pcs.
Tiewrap	4 pcs.
Relay harness	4 pcs. (see the table on the right-hand side for applicable models)
Installation Manual	1 pc.

Applicable models	Relay harness
FXFQ~P	700 — White — White, 4 pins — UL electric wire
FXMQ~P	350 — White — White, 4 pins — UL electric wire
BSVQ~P	260 — White — Blue, 3 pins — UL electric wire
FXAQ~M	1900 — White — White, 3 pins — VCTF electric wire

Note

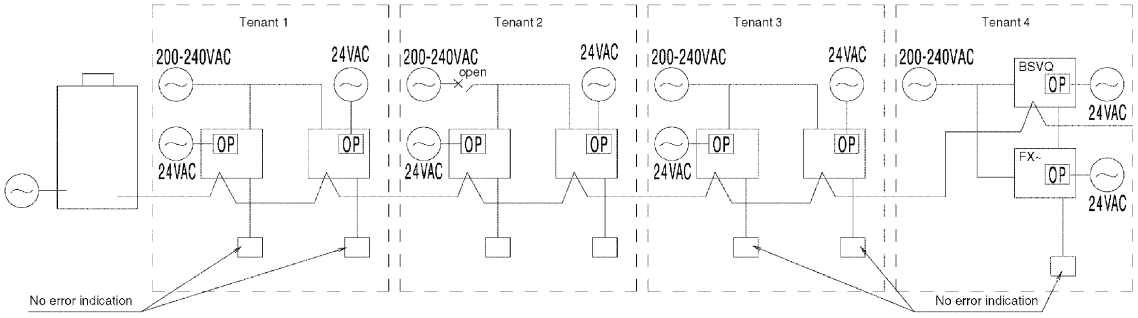
- An adaptor mounting plate and mounting box are required in addition to the provided component parts in the case of mounting the adaptor to the following models.

FXFQ~P: KRP1H98
FXMQ~P: KRP4A96
FXAQ~M: KRP4AA93

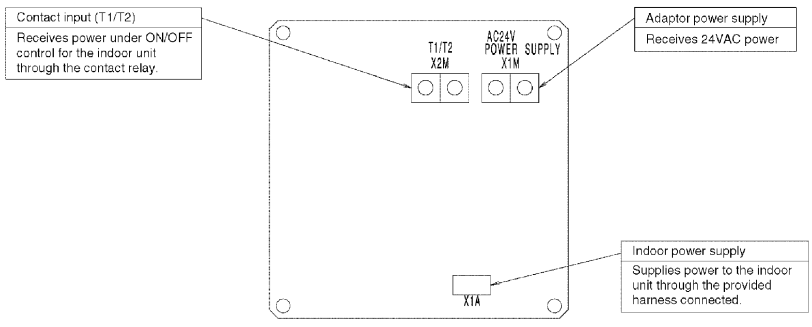
- Both ends of harness are for connection of PCB of indoor unit (or BS unit) and for connection of adaptor for multi tenant. Be careful when connecting them.

❶ GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM

- The use of this adaptor allows the system to operate with no system error indication in the event of the interruption of power supply to other indoor units. (In the case of the following diagram, there will be no error indication on the remote controllers of tenant 1 or tenant 3 or tenant 4 in the event of the interruption of power supply to tenant 2.)



❷ NAMES AND FUNCTIONS

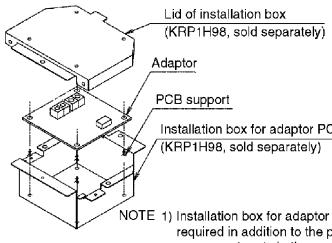


1P223254A

❸ INSTALLATION

⟨⟨Ceiling-mounted Cassette Round-flow Type⟩⟩

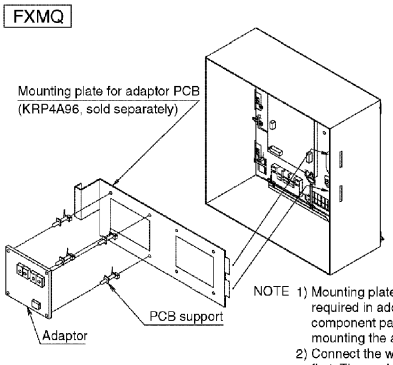
FXFQ



NOTE 1) Installation box for adaptor PCB is required in addition to the provided component parts in the case of mounting the adaptor.
2) Connect the wiring to the adaptor PCB first. The work will be easier.
(Refer to ❺ METHOD OF WIRING.)

⟨⟨Ceiling-mounted Duct Type⟩⟩

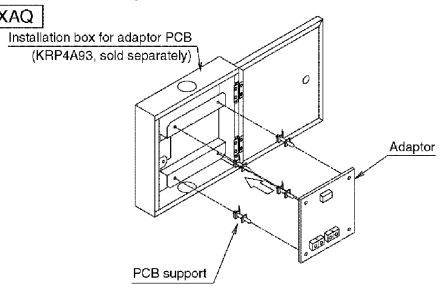
FXMQ



NOTE 1) Mounting plate for adaptor PCB is required in addition to the provided component parts in the case of mounting the adaptor.
2) Connect the wiring to the indoor PCB first. The work will be easier.
(Refer to ❺ METHOD OF WIRING.)

⟨⟨Wall-mounted type⟩⟩

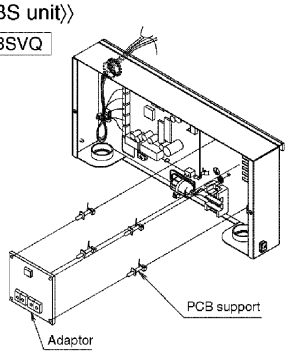
FXAQ



NOTE) Installation box for adaptor PCB is required in addition to the provided component parts in the case of mounting the adaptor.

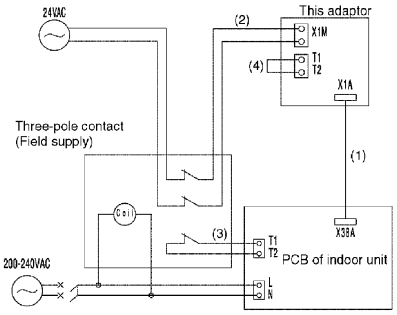
⟨⟨BS unit⟩⟩

BSVQ



❹ ELECTRIC WIRING

• Example with FXFQ, FXAQ, and FXMQ

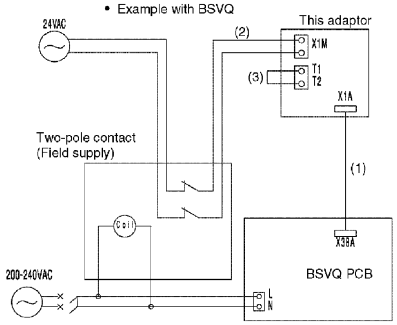


(1) Connect this adaptor and the PCB of the indoor unit with the provided relay harness (varying with each indoor unit model).
(2) Connect the 24VAC (±20%) power supply to the X1M terminals of the adaptor through the normally closed contacts of the relay. Be sure to contact the relay contacts to both poles of the power supply so that the positive and negative lines of the power supply will be turned off simultaneously. A transformer may be used for the 24VAC power supply provided for each adaptor on the condition that the transformer has a capacity of 24VA or over.
(3) Provide a relay (with a normally closed contact) between the T1 and T2 terminals of the PCB.

Minimum contact load: 1mA normally closed contact at 15VDC
Rated current: 3 A min.
Wire specifications: Vinyl cord with sheath or cable (2 wire)
Wiring thickness: 0.75 to 1.25 mm²
Wiring length: 100 m max.

(4) Short-circuit the T1 and T2 terminals of the adaptor.

• Example with BSVQ



(1) Connect the adaptor and BSVQ PCB through the relay harness.
(2) Connect the 24VAC (±20%) power supply to the X1M terminals of the adaptor through the normally closed contacts of the relay. Be sure to contact the relay contacts to both poles of the power supply so that the positive and negative lines of the power supply will be turned off simultaneously. A transformer may be used for the 24VAC power supply provided for each adaptor on the condition that the transformer has a capacity of 24VA or over.

(3) Short-circuit the T1 and T2 terminals of the adaptor.

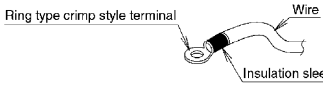
Minimum contact load: 1mA normally closed contact at 15VDC
Rated current: 3 A min.
Wire specifications: Vinyl cord with sheath or cable (2 wire)
Wiring thickness: 0.75 to 1.25 mm²
Wiring length: 100 m max.

1P223254A

5 METHOD OF WIRING

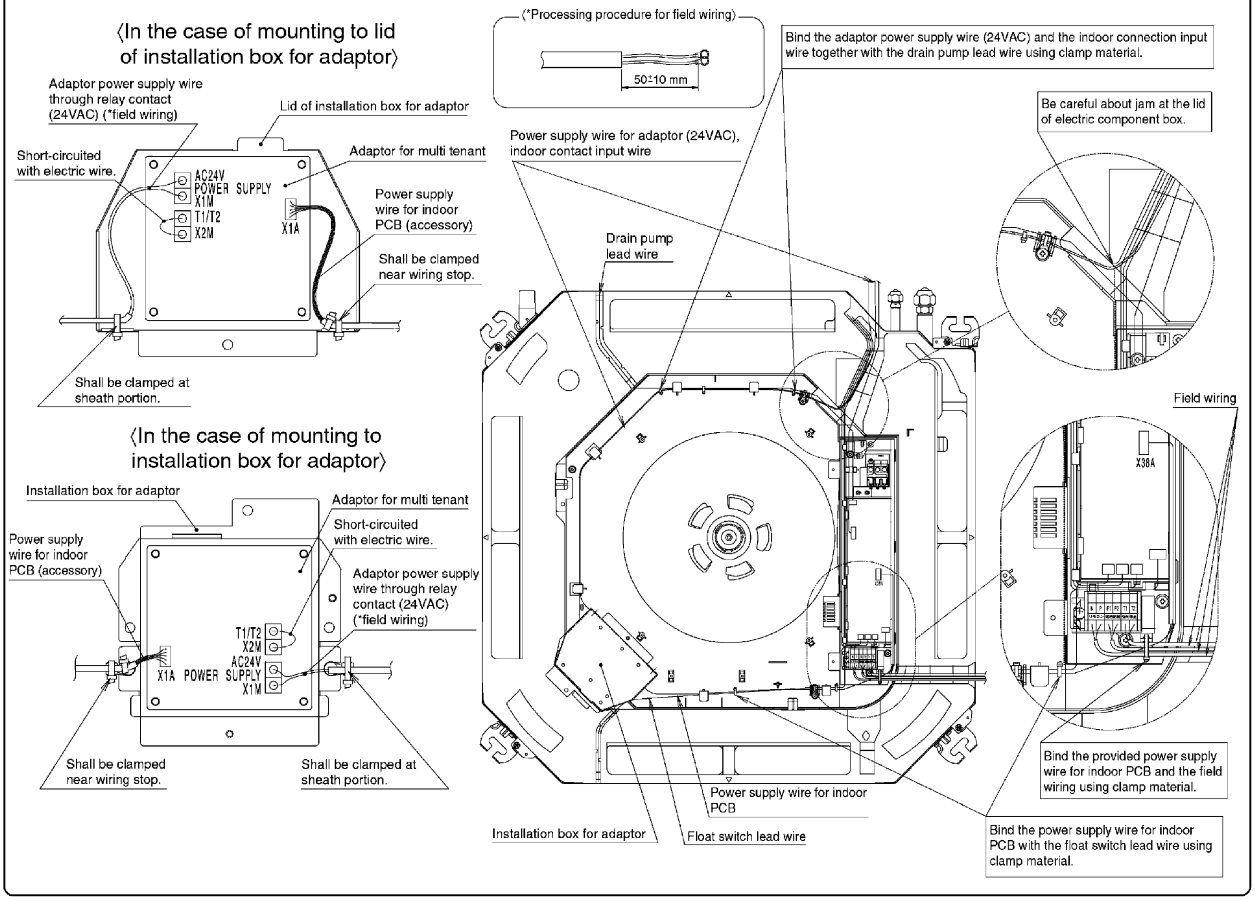
〈CAUTION〉

- For connection to the terminal block, be sure to use a ring type crimp style terminal. Also insulate the crimping portion, for example, by mounting an insulation sleeve.
- For wiring, use the specified wire to connect it securely and fix it so that external force is not applied to the terminal.
- For tightening the terminal screw, use a proper screwdriver. A smaller size screwdriver may damage the screw head, resulting in improper tightening.
- If the terminal screw is secured too tightly, the screw may be damaged. For tightening torque for terminal screw, see the table on the right-hand side.

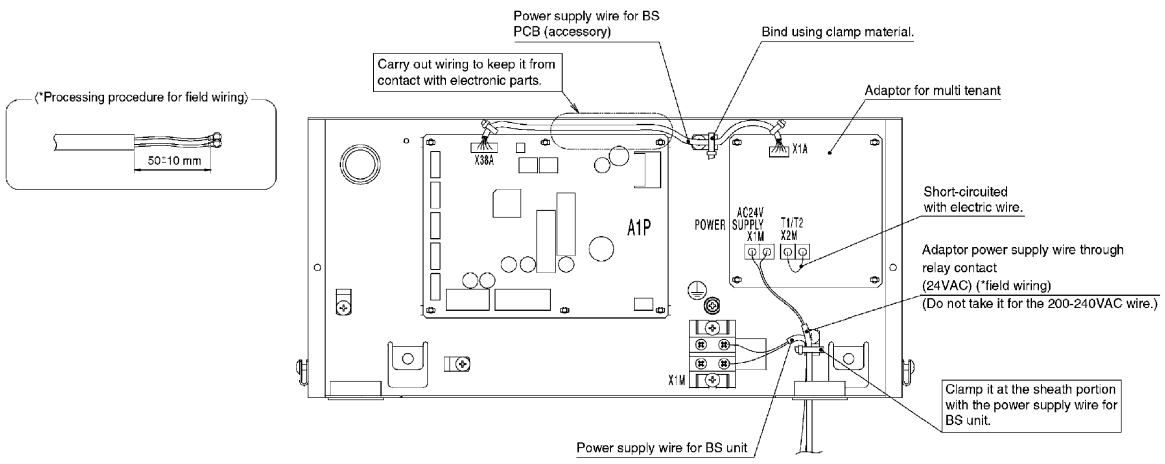


	Tightening torque (N · m)
Terminal block of adaptor for multi tenant (X1M, X2M)	1.18~1.44

● FXFQ (Ceiling-mounted Cassette Round-flow Type)

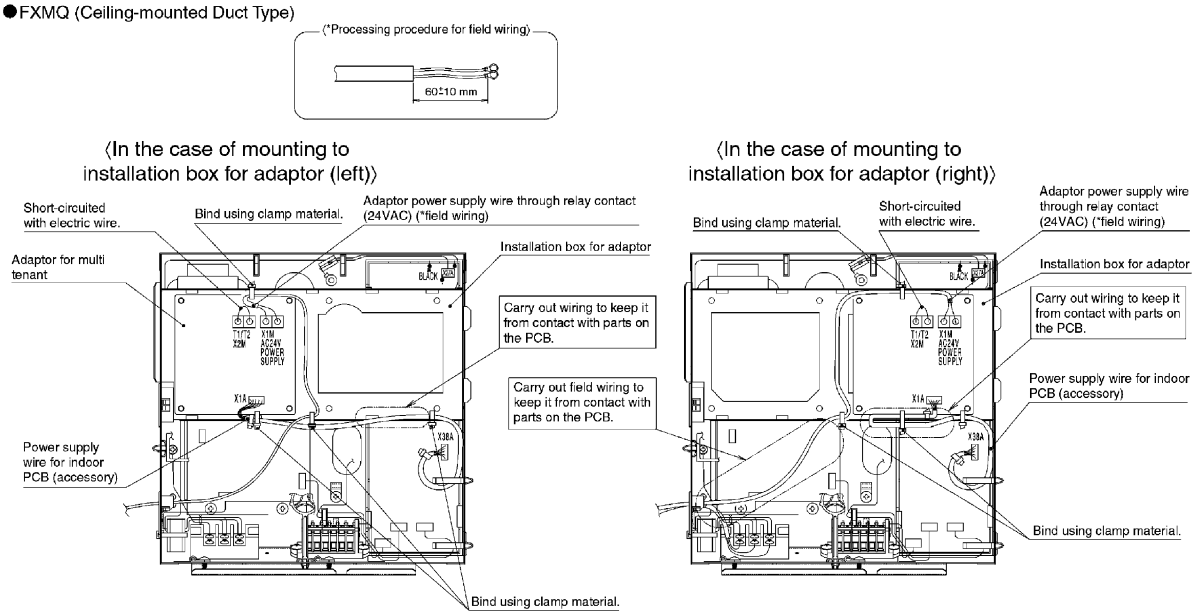


●BSVQ (BS unit)

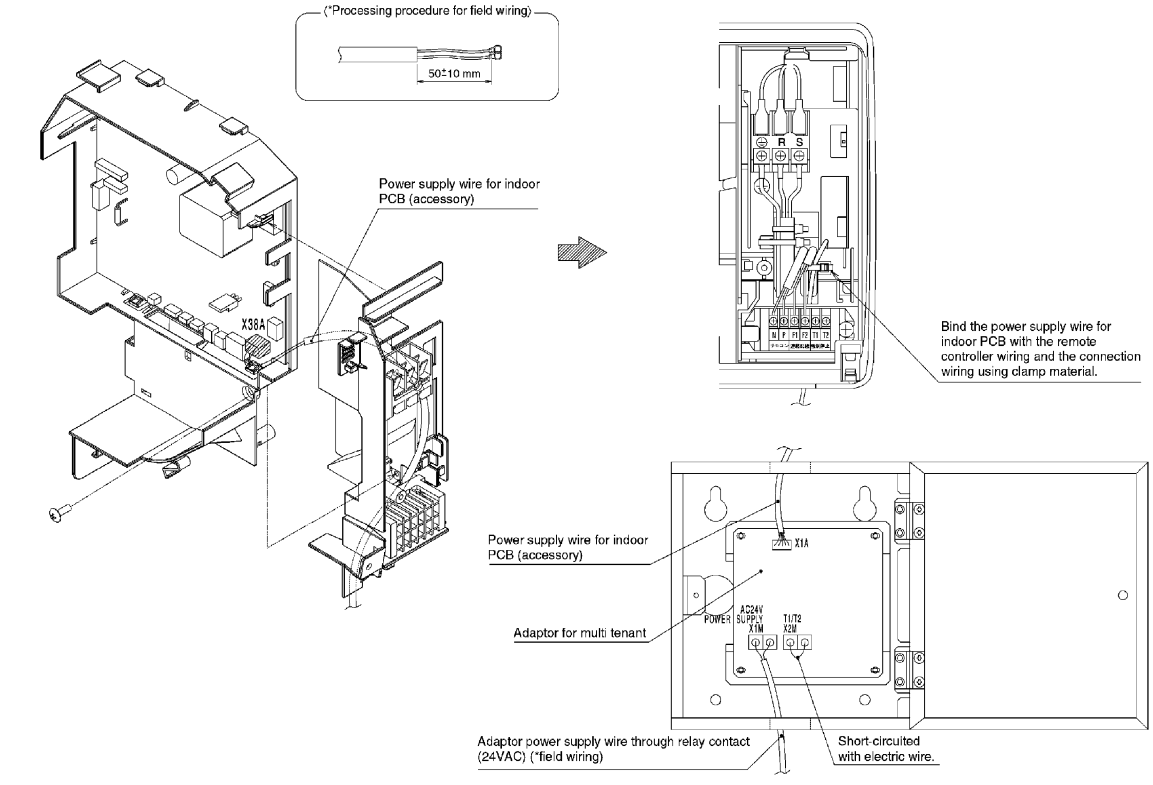


1P224646A

● FXMQ (Ceiling-mounted Duct Type)



● FXAQ (Wall-mounted type)



6 FIELD SETTING

Follow the "FIELD SETTING" in the installation manual of the remote controller for the indoor unit and make a necessary field setting in the remote controller after turning the air conditioner ON.

- Set the remote controller to field set mode, select Mode No. "12", and set the FIRST CODE NO. to "1" and the SECOND CODE NO. to "04".
  (The SECOND CODE NO. is factory set to "01".)
  Note: The remote control terminals (T1 and T2) of the indoor unit is for multi-tenant use. Therefore, the COMPUTERIZED CONTROL of the indoor unit is not available.

1P224646A

13. Residential Central Remote Controller

13.1 DCS303A51

13.1.1 Features



- Large, easy-to-read Liquid Crystal Display.
- Dot Matrix area shows which button to press next.
- Backlight equipped for easy operation.
- Each unit is identified for easier operation by individual group selection buttons.
- Frequently used functions are easily operated without opening the lid.

* Limit connection to the VRV system to household use.

13.1.2 Function

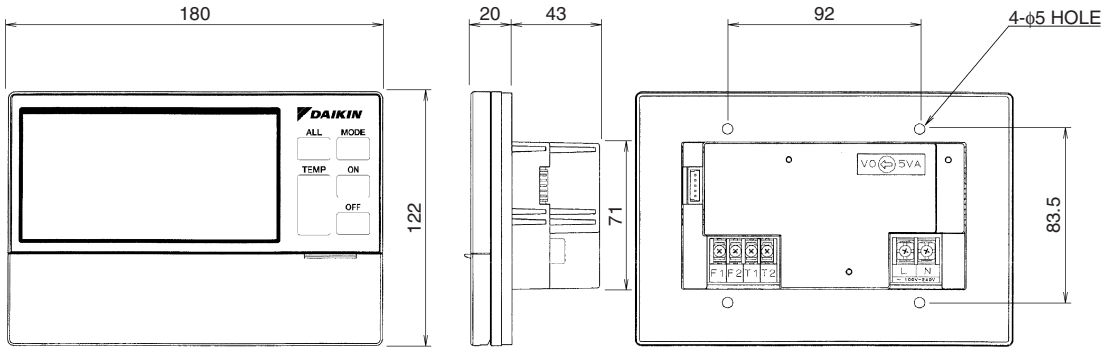
			Residential Central Remote Controller	Schedule Timer	Central Remote Controller
			DCS303A51	DST301BA61	DCS302CA61
Number of Management Groups			16	128	64
Monitoring	Command, State Monitoring	Start/Stop	○	Δ	○
		Operation Mode	○	×	○
		Set Temperature	○	×	○
		Inhibition / Permission by Remote Controller	○	×	○
		Room Temp. (Suction Temp.)	○	×	×
		Outside Temp.	○	×	×
		Malfunction Monitoring	○	Δ	○
		Air Filter, Element Monitoring	○	×	○
Setting and Control	Individual Control	Start/Stop	○	×	○
		Operation Mode	○	×	○
		Set Temperature	○	×	○
		Inhibition / Permission by Remote Controller	○	×	○
	All Start/Stop		○	○	○
	Schedule Control	Weekly schedule	○	○	×
	Emergency stop in case of fire		○	×	○

○: OK
Δ : There are some restrictions about each function.
× : NG

13.1.3 Specifications

Model		DCS303A51/61/61D
Power Supply		Externally supplied 200~240V AC, 50/60Hz
Installation Method		Japanese Industrial Standard triple plug socket switch box embedded in indoor wall
Conditions for use	Ambient temperature/ Humidity	0- 40°C, less than 85% RH
Dimensions	Panel Size	180 mm (W) x 122 mm (H) x 20 mm (D)
Overseas Compatibility Certification	Safety	EN60335-2-40
	EMC(EMI, EMS)	EN50022 (CISPR22 Class-B) EN50024 (CISPR24)
LCD Panel	Size/Backlight color	120.4 mm (W) x 60.5 mm (H)/White light
Input	Buttons	6 buttons on the front panel and 24 buttons in the lid
Communication Line	DIII-NET	1 line of A/C equipment DIII-NET for communication use
Input terminals	Contact	Forced Shutdown input
Clock Accuracy		Within +/- 30 sec./month
Power consumption		Max. 3 W

13.1.4 Dimensions



3D059845

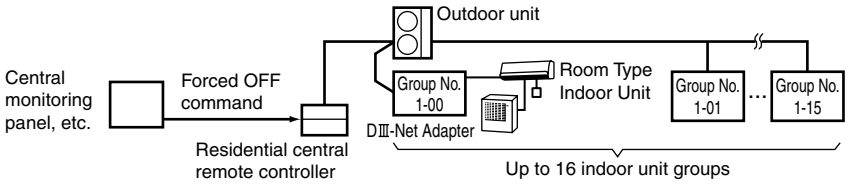
13.1.5 System Overview

This central remote controller can monitor and control up to 16 “indoor unit groups”.
By using eight units of this central remote controller, maximum of 128 “indoor unit groups” can be monitored and controlled.

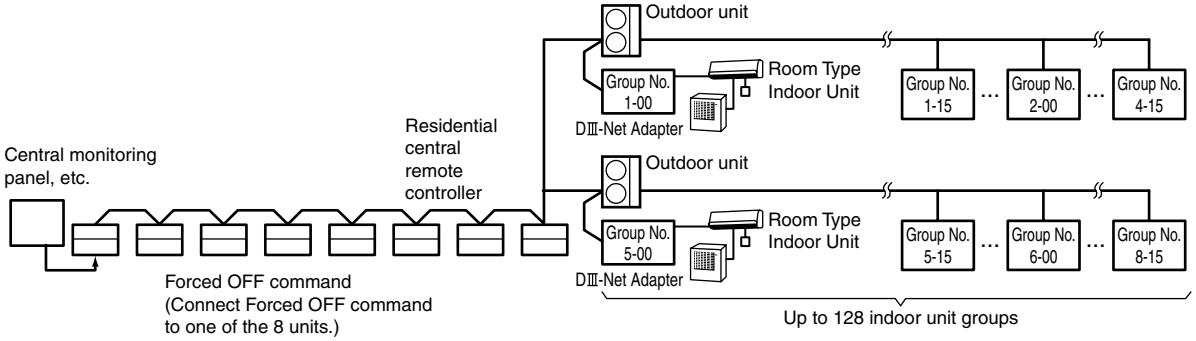
Main Functions

1. Simultaneous ON/OFF control of all indoor units connected to the central remote controller.
2. Setting of operating conditions (such as ON/OFF and set temperature) of indoor units individually by “group”.
3. Monitoring of operating conditions such as operation mode and set temperature.
4. Connection of an external key system, central monitoring panel, etc. via Forced OFF input (T1, T2).

■ When using one central remote controller unit



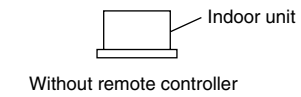
■ When using eight central remote controller units



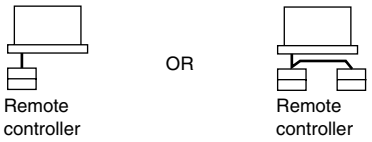
(The central remote controller cannot be used together with the optional remote control adaptor PCB or group remote control adaptor.)

* An “indoor unit group” refers to one of the following:

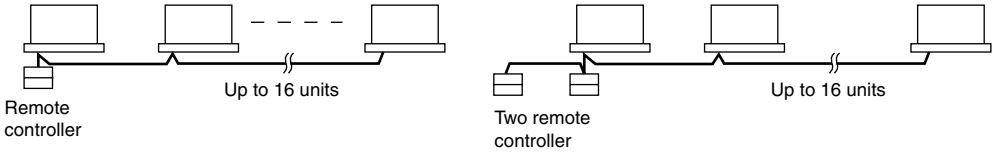
1. One indoor unit without remote controller



2. One indoor unit controlled by one or two remote controllers



3. Up to 16 indoor units group-controlled by one or two remote controllers

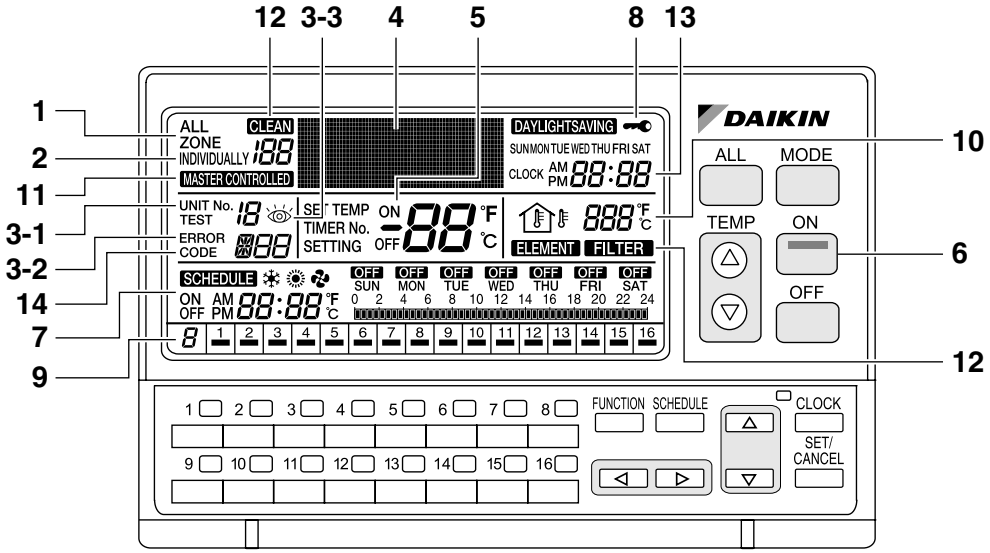


* “Group control” is a setting which enables simultaneous control of multiple indoor units from a single remote controller.

13.1.6 Names and Functions of the Operating Section

■ **External View**

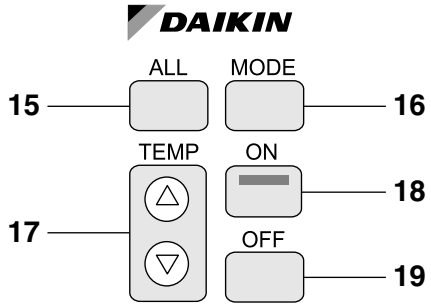
(All indications are displayed in the following diagram of screen for the explanation purpose. Actual indications displayed during operation will vary.)



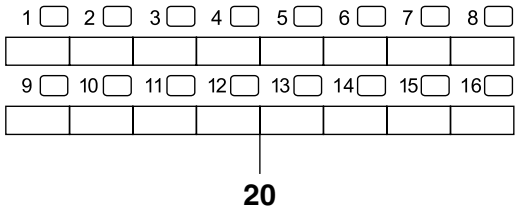
1	**ALL**
	This indicates that the display shows the ALL screen.
2	**INDIVIDUALLY**
	This indicates that the display shows the INDIVIDUALLY screen for the currently selected air conditioner No.
3	**ERROR CODE DISPLAY**
	When an equipment malfunction occurs, the malfunction UNIT No. (**3-1**), ERROR CODE (**3-2**) and (**3-3**) indications blink.
4	**OPERATION MODE DISPLAY (Dot Matrix)**
	This section displays the operation status.
5	**SET TEMP DISPLAY**
	This section displays the set temperature.
6	**ON LAMP**
	This lamp lights when one or more indoor units under control are operating.
7	**SCHEDULE SETTING DISPLAY**
	This section displays the programmed operation details.
8	**KEY LOCK DISPLAY**
	This symbol appears when the key lock has been activated.
9	**OPERATION MONITOR**
	Each box shows the No. of connected air conditioner (group) and its operation status.
10	**OUTDOOR TEMP DISPLAY**
	In the ALL screen, this displays the outside temperature detected by the outdoor unit connected to the air conditioner (group) with a cooling/heating selection privilege(*) that has the smallest unit No. In the INDIVIDUALLY screen, this displays the outside temperature detected by the outdoor unit connected to the selected air conditioner (group). If Total Heat Exchanger is selected, outdoor temperature is not displayed. (*An air conditioner (group) with a cooling/heating selection privilege is a unit which allows switching of the operation mode between cooling and heating.)
11	**MASTER-CONTROLLED DISPLAY**
	This indication appears when the selected air conditioner (group) does not have a cooling/heating selection privilege.
12	**CLEAN SIGN**
	The FILTER and ELEMENT indications appear when the filter and element need to be cleaned.
13	**CLOCK DISPLAY**
	This shows the current time.
14	**OPERATION CODE DISPLAY**
	This displays the operation code (prohibit remote controller, central control priority, last button priority, etc.) during the setting of operation details.

13.1.7 Names and Functions of the Operating Section

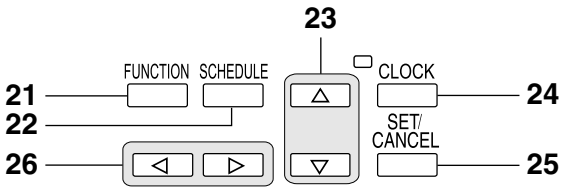
■ **Names of Operation Buttons**



15	**ALL BUTTON**
	Changes the display to the ALL screen.
16	**MODE BUTTON**
	Used to select the operation mode.
17	**TEMP BUTTONS**
	Used to set the temperature.
18	**ON BUTTON**
	Turns on all indoor units or individual unit (group).
19	**OFF BUTTON**
	Stops all indoor units or individual unit (group).



20	**INDIVIDUAL UNIT (GROUP) SELECTION BUTTONS**
	Changes the display to the INDIVIDUALLY screen for monitoring or setting the air conditioner (group) of the indicated No.



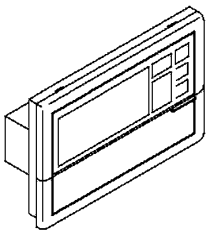
21	**FUNCTION BUTTON**
	Changes the display to the Function Menu setting screen.
22	**SCHEDULE BUTTON**
	Changes the display to the SCHEDULE setting screen.
23	△▽ **BUTTONS**
	Used to select a menu.
24	**CLOCK BUTTON**
	Changes the display to the current time setting screen.
25	**SET/CANCEL BUTTON**
	Enters or cancels settings.
26	◁▷ **BUTTONS**
	Used to set an operation schedule or current time.

13.1.8 Installation

■ **Components**

Check the following components are included in this optional accessory before installation.

Body



Installation screw (M4 × 16)	4 pcs.
Operation manual	1 pc.
Installation manual	1 pc.
Indoor label	1 pc.
Clamp	2 pcs.

When installing, 1 electric parts box is necessary.

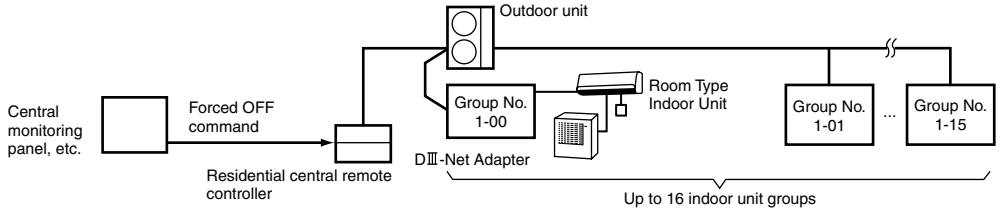
■ **System Configuration**

With the central remote controller, unified operation/stop is possible with up to a maximum 16 groups of indoor units.

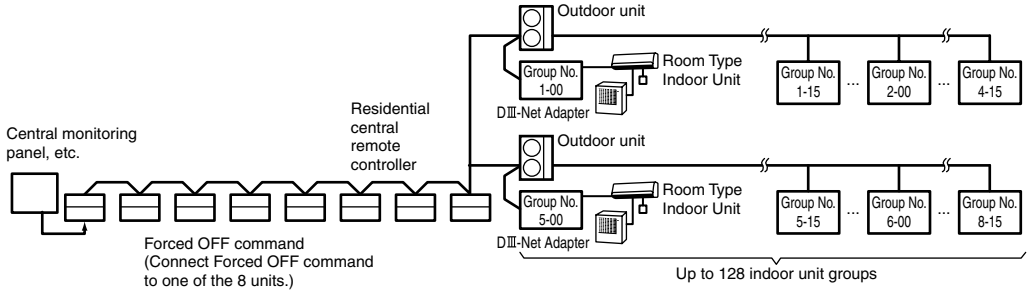
When using 8 central remote controllers, unified operation is possible with up to a maximum 128 groups of indoor units.

The remote controller can be set individually by group while it enables to display the operation state such as operation mode or set temperature. It can be connected with the external central monitoring panel, etc., through Forced OFF input (T1, T2).

■ When using 1 central remote controller



■ When using 8 central remote controllers



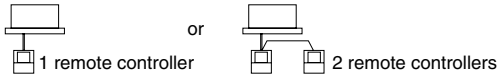
(The central remote controller and the separately sold remote control adapter or group remote control adapter cannot be used together.)
The combination of indoor units includes 3 modes specified here below:

(1) One indoor unit, without remote controller

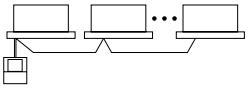


Without remote controller

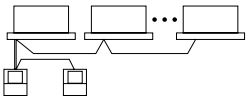
(2) One indoor unit controlled by 1 or 2 remote controllers



(3) A maximum of 16 indoor units controlled by 1 or 2 remote controllers



1 remote controller A maximum of 16 indoor units

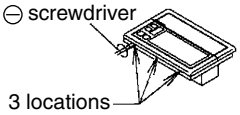


2 remote controllers A maximum of 16 indoor units

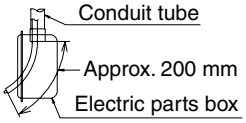
■ **Installation**

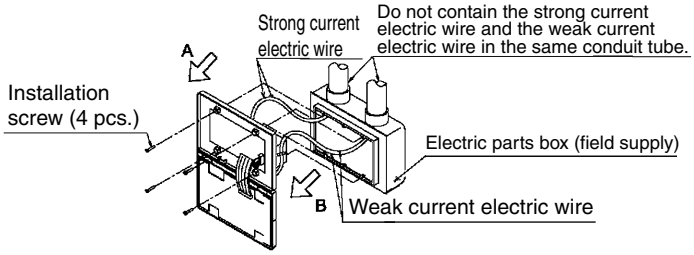
(1) Open the upper part of remote controller.
Insert a ⊖ screwdriver (3 locations) into the recess between the upper part and the lower part of remote controller and twist the screwdriver lightly.

PC board is attached with both the upper and lower part of remote controller. Do not damage the board with the screwdriver.



(2) Open the upper part of remote controller and install the electric parts box (field supply) with the attached installation screws (M4 × 16).

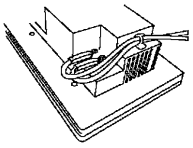




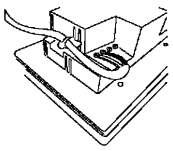
NOTE

Suitable length of the electric wire is about 200 mm (from electric parts box).

(3) Please refer to A-direction view and B-direction view to configure and fix wires for strong current and weak current respectively.



A direction view



B direction view

■ **Initial Setting**

Settings (1) and (2) are initialized when power is turned ON, therefore complete settings BEFORE activating the power.

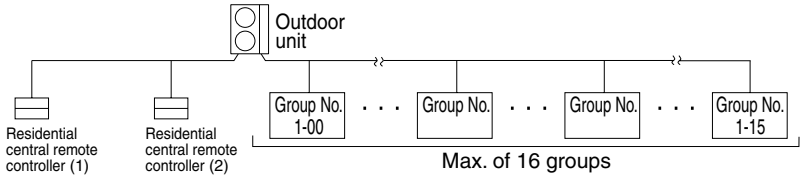
(1) Connector for setting master controller (X1A) (Provided with connector at factory set)

- When using only 1 central remote controller, do not disconnect the connector for setting master controller. (Use the unit with the connector in the state in which it was delivered.)
- When using multiple central remote controllers, make settings as indicated in the below table. It is not allowed to be used along with other centralized units.

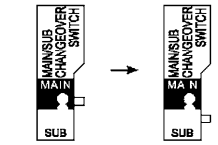
	Connector for setting master controller (X1A)
1 to 16 units	Set 1 to "Used" and all the rest to "Not used".

(2) MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting

With 2 central remote controllers, centralized control (indoor units) is possible from different locations. In this kind of set-up, it is necessary to set the MAIN/SUB changeover switch.



One of the 2 central remote controllers (1) to (2) is set to "MAIN" while the other is set to "SUB".



(Factory set)

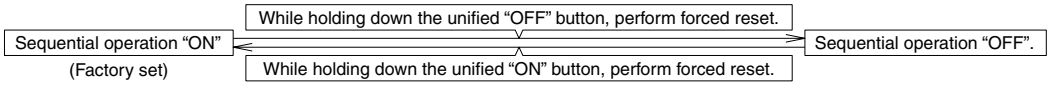
NOTE

- When using 1 central remote controller, it is necessary to set to "MAIN".
- Be sure to set before turning the power ON.

(3) Setting of the sequential operation function

The central remote controller is equipped with a sequential operation function that sequentially turns indoor units on in about 2-second intervals during unified operation. (Sequential operation is factory set to "ON".)

To switch sequential operation ON or OFF, set as follows:



NOTE

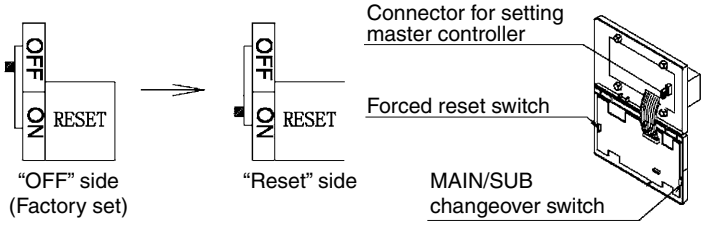
The sequential operation function is designed to reduce the load on the power supply equipment, but does not guarantee that compressors will not be started simultaneously.

You cannot therefore count on a capacity reduction effect by power supply equipment breaker selection.

(4) Forced reset switch

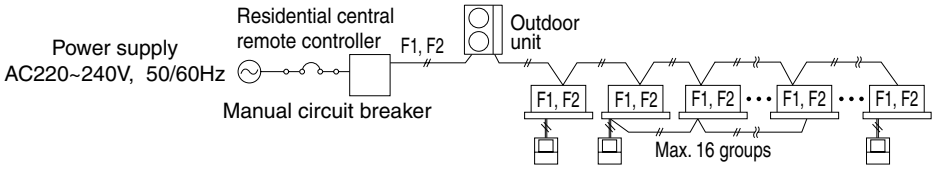
When changing the setting of the connector for setting master controller, you can reset simply by setting it to the reset side once and returning to the normal side, without turning the power OFF.

(For normal operation, set the switch to the normal side.)

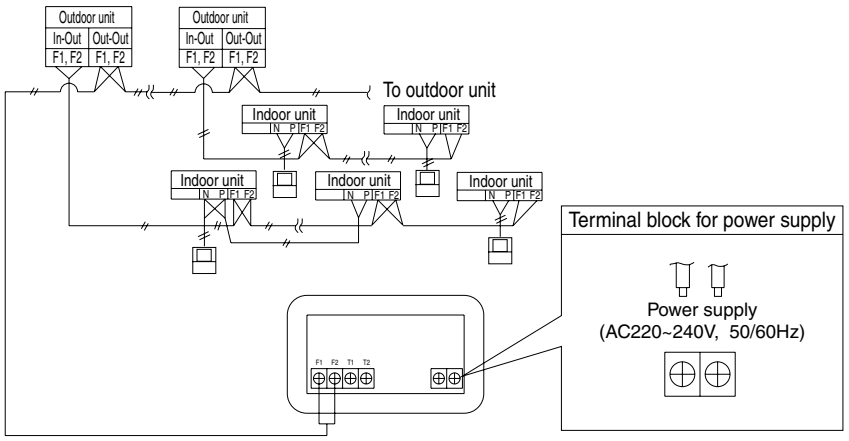


■ Electric Wiring

WIRING OUTLINE



WIRING TO THE INDOOR UNIT AND OUTDOOR UNIT



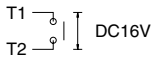
Wiring specifications

Power supply wiring	2mm^2
Transmission wiring for control	0.75 - 1.25 mm^2 sheathed vinyl cord or cable (balanced type) - maximum length 1000 m (total overall wiring length 2000 m)
Manual circuit breaker	15 A or 10 A

Check the wiring of the indoor units to the outdoor units and between all power, indoor units, and remote controllers. See the installation manual included with the indoor and outdoor units for details.

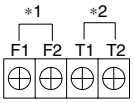
CONTROL TERMINAL BLOCK

*1 For connecting indoor unit (F1, F2)
*2 Forced OFF input (T1, T2)
When the Forced OFF input (T1, T2) is “ON”, all indoor units connected will stop running.
Use only contactors which guarantee the minimum applicable load DC16 V, 10 mA.



NOTE

Use instantaneous contactor of over 200 m sec energizing time, when necessary.



Wire Forced OFF input only when necessary.

NOTE

Do not connect the power supply wiring (AC220 V, 50 Hz) to the control terminal block. If connected by mistake, it may damage or burn electrical parts of central remote controller and indoor unit. It may result in serious damage. Be sure to check wirings before turning the power ON.

■ **Setting Language and Group No. for Centralized Control (When the Power Supply is Turned On)**

The initial language for the central remote controller is “ENGLISH”.
The initial value of centralized the group No. for the central remote controller is “1”.
(the controlling scope of centralized Group No.: 1-00~1-15)

Please set in accordance with the items specified here below while switching the initial language and initial values of the centralized group No. from “1”.

(1) Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and central remote controller. (Unless the power is ON, no setting can be made.)
* Check that the installation and electrical wiring are correct before turning the power supply ON again.

(2) When the power supply is turned ON, all LCD will be displayed once, and switch to language setting mode.
Select language with ◁ or ▷ button and set language with “SET/CANCEL” button.
(↔ ENGLISH ↔ FRENCH ↔ GERMAN ↔ ITALIAN ↔ SPANISH ↔ PORTUGUESE ↔)
After “SET CANCEL” button is pressed, “88” will appear in about 1 minute.

(3) When the “88” appears, hold down the “MODE” button and the single air conditioner selecting button “16” for a minimum of 4 seconds.

(4) When the “88” disappears, switch to Centralized Group No. Setting mode.
The centralized group No. setting appears, and the display of centralized group No. at the left below switches from light-on to light-off.

(5) Select the centralized group No. through buttons “1” to “8” of single air conditioner, and the selected No. will be displayed at left below (refer to Table 1).
The operation will be null in the case the buttons “9” to “16” are hold downed, and the centralized group No. displayed on the left of operation monitoring side will not be changed.

(6) Press the “OFF” button to determine the group No.
The display of the group No. at the left below will be switched from flash to light. After the set operation is completed, the “88” will appear on the central part.
* Please make sure that the “OFF” button has been hold downed. If the set of Group is uncertain, it will not be ended.

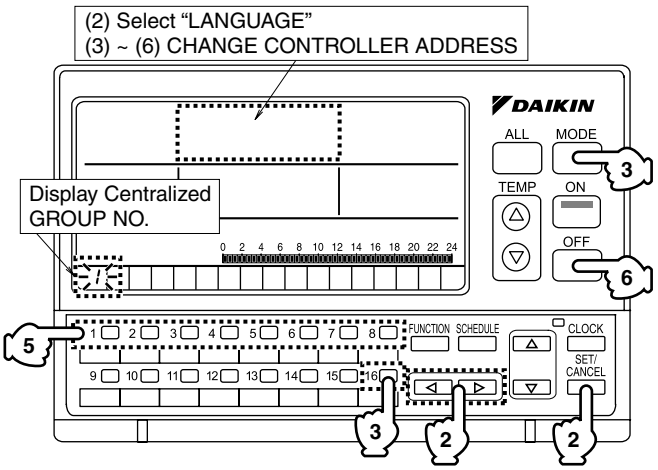


Table 1

Group No. for centralized control	Control range
1	1-00~1-15
2	2-00~2-15
3	3-00~3-15
4	4-00~4-15
5	5-00~5-15
6	6-00~6-15
7	7-00~7-15
8	8-00~8-15

■ **Setting the Group No.**

Set the group No. of indoor units by remote controller. (In the case that the remote control is absent, the group No. shall also be set by connecting to a remote controller, which shall be removed after the set operation.)

(1) Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and central remote controller.
(Unless the power is ON, no setting can be made.)
Check that the installation and electrical wiring are correct before turning the power supply ON again.
(When the power supply is turned ON, all LCD appear once. Then, the unit may not accept the operation for about 1 minute with the display of "88".)

(2) Enter into set mode
Hold down the "TEST" button for a minimum of 4 seconds and the remote controller will enter into Field set mode.

(3) Select mode No.
Press "▲▼" up and down button to select mode No. "00".

(4) Select the group No.
Press "▲▼" up and down button to select the group No.
(Group No. increase in the order of 1-00, 1-01, ...1-15, 2-00, ...8-15.)
Please refer to Table 2 for the relation between the centralized group No. of remote controller and central remote controller.

(5) Setting the group No.
Press the "□/▭" button to select the group No. for each group.

(6) Return to normal mode.
Press "TEST" button.

NOTES

- For simplified remote controller, see the installation table.
- See the manuals which came with all the heat exchangers and each adapter (i.e., multi-purpose adapters) for details on their Group No. settings.

NOTICE

Enter the group No. and installation place of the indoor unit into the installation table in the operation manual. Be sure to store the installation manual along with the operation manual for maintenance.

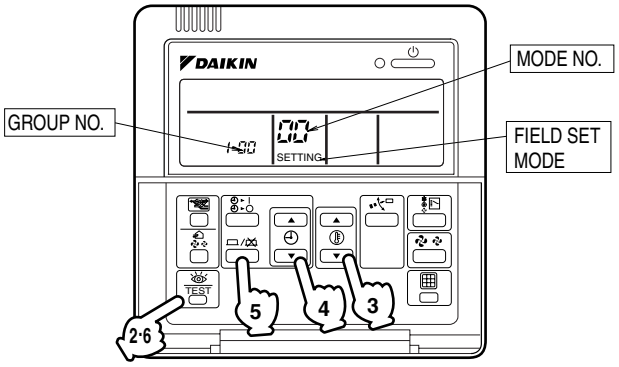


Table 2 Cross Reference List for Centralized Group No. of Remote Controller and Central Remote Controller

Display of the remote controller of air conditioner	Display of the centralized Group No. of central remote controller	Display of the remote controller of air conditioner	Display of the centralized Group No. of central remote controller
1-00	1	1-08	9
1-01	2	1-09	10
1-02	3	1-10	11
1-03	4	1-11	12
1-04	5	1-12	13
1-05	6	1-13	14
1-06	7	1-14	15
1-07	8	1-15	16

*In the case that the Group No. is "2" to "8", please replace the part "1-" of Table 2.

■ **Test Operation**

Before starting test operation, check that the power is supplied to the indoor and outdoor units, and central remote controller.
Press “ON” button on the remote controller within 10 seconds after entering into the test operation mode.
Operate the unit for 30 minutes.
Press “OFF” button to stop operating. If the operation lamp flashes, it indicates a malfunction.
Call the group of flashing display, confirm malfunction code, and check the source of malfunction.
(The operation manual lists all error codes, so refer to it.)

NOTICE

- For test operation, refer to the installation manual of the outdoor unit.
- After turning the power supply ON, if the unit does not accept operation for 2 minutes or more with the display of “88”, check the following points.
  - Check that setting of the connector for setting master controller is correct.
  - Check that the group No. for centralized control has been set.

2P219071-1A

14. Central Remote Controller

14.1 DCS302CA61



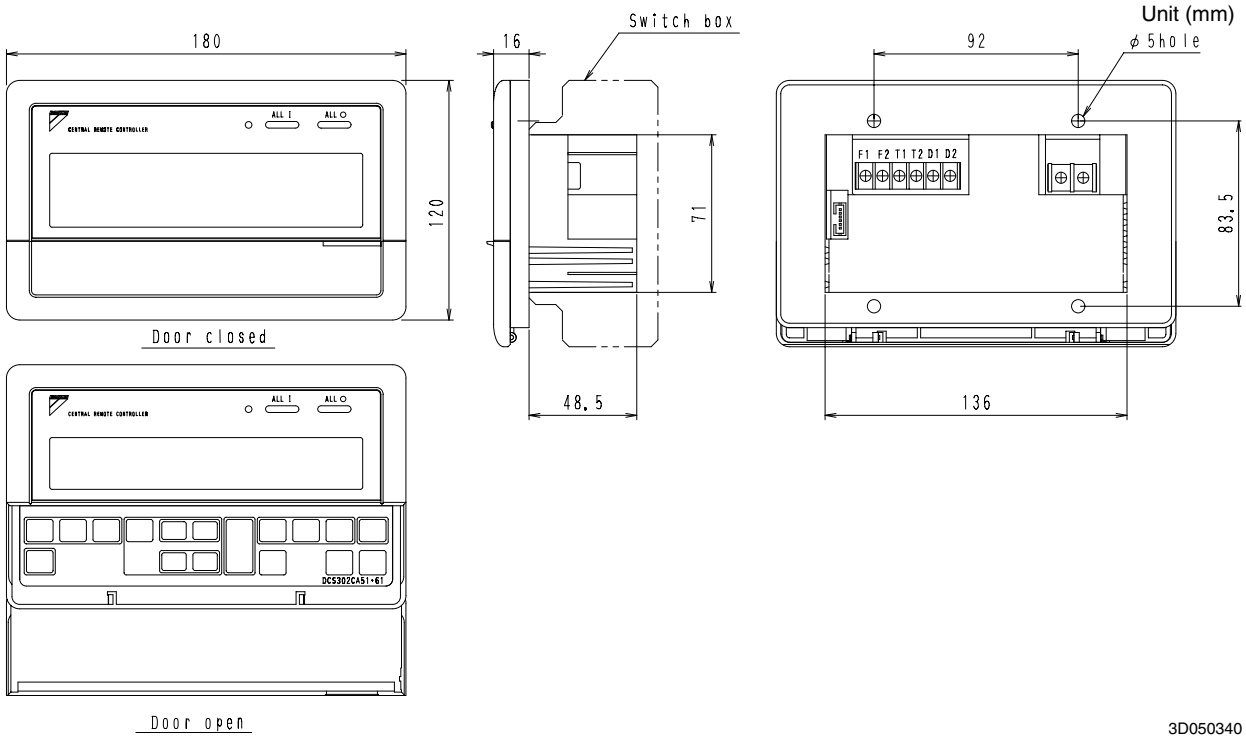
14.1.1 Specifications / Dimensions

Specifications

	DCS302CA61
Power supply voltage / frequency	AC100~240V ±10% 50/60Hz
Power consumption	Max. 8W
Setting data backup	Non-volatile memory (Data preserved semi-permanently)
Effects of instantaneous power failure	No effect for 20 milli-sec. or less
Forced OFF input Operation on the local side cannot be carried out during forced OFF input.	■ No-voltage normal open contact ■ Micro-current contact capable of handling 16VDC and approx. 10mA. ■ Max. 150 m cable length
Power supply for schedule timer	Power can be supplied to schedule timer. (Max. 1 unit)
Operating ambient temperature /humidity condition	-5~40°C, 95% RH or less (no condensation)
Size (width × height × depth)	180×120×64.5 mm exposed portion of front panel : 16 mm
Weight (Mass)	Approx. 420 g

Dimensions

DCS302CA61



14.1.2 Operation

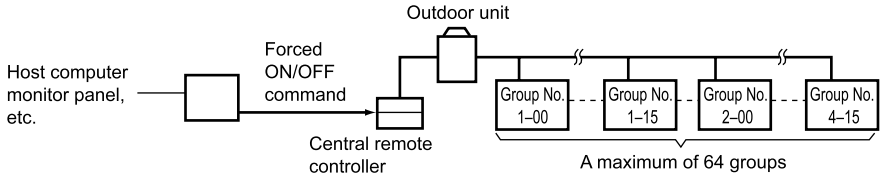
■ GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM

This central remote controller can monitor and control up to 64 indoor unit groups.
Using two central remote controllers allows monitoring and controlling of up to 128 indoor unit groups.

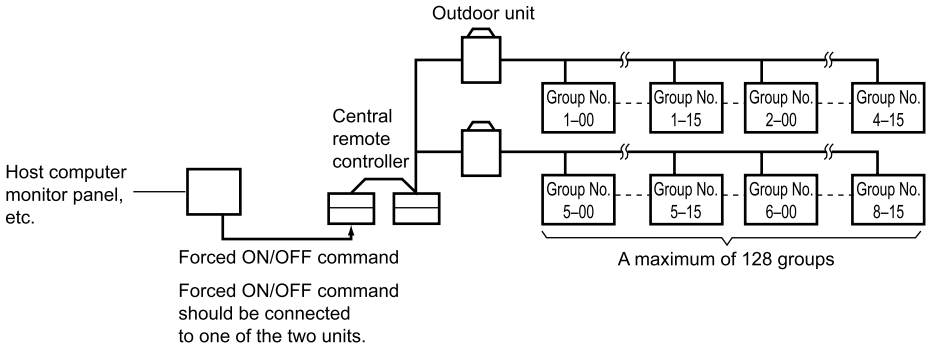
Main Functions

1. Batch starting and stopping of indoor units connected to the central remote controller.
2. Handling of operation settings such as start/stop, timer operation, remote controller prohibition/permission, etc., and operation status settings such as temperature.
3. Operation status monitoring of operation mode, set temperature, etc.
4. Can be connected to an external central monitor panel and key system using the forced stop input (non-voltage a connector).

- When using 1 central remote controller



- When using 2 central remote controllers

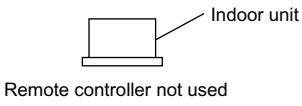


(The central remote controller and the separately sold remote control adapter circuit board or group remote control adapter cannot be used together.)

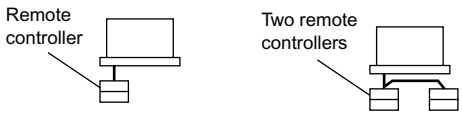
∗ GROUP OF INDOOR UNIT refers to the below.

1. A single indoor unit without remote controller

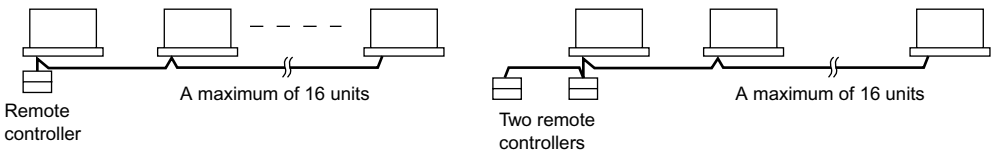
1. A single indoor unit without remote controller



2. A single indoor unit controlled by one or two remote controllers

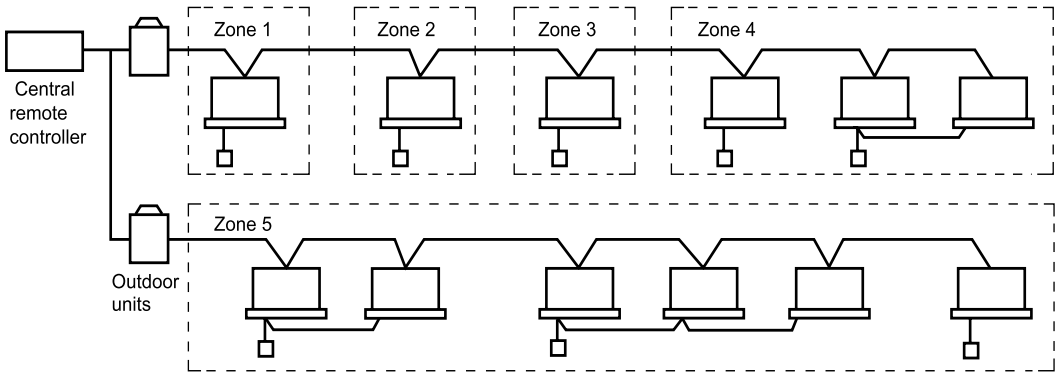


3. Maximum of 16 indoor units, group-controlled by one or two remote controllers



3P124623-8D

* Zone control from the central remote controller
Zone control is available from the central remote controller. With it, it is possible to make unified settings for multiple groups, so setting operations are greatly simplified.



- Any setting you make within a given zone will apply to all groups in the said zone.
- A maximum of 64 zones can be set from a single central remote controller. (Each zone contains a maximum of 64 groups.)
- Zones can be set randomly from the central remote controller.

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

Please read these “SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS” carefully before installing air conditioning equipment and be sure to install it correctly.
After completing the installation, make sure that the unit operates properly during the start-up operation.
Please instruct the customer on how to operate the unit and keep it maintained.
Also, inform customers that they should store this installation manual along with the operation manual for future reference.
This air conditioner comes under the term “appliances not accessible to the general public”.

Meaning of warning, caution and note symbols.

⚠ **WARNING** .... Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** .... Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

⚠ **NOTE**..... Indicates situation that may result in equipment or property-damage-only accidents.

Keep these warning sheets handy so that you can refer to them if needed.
Also, if this equipment is transferred to a new user, make sure to hand over this operation manual to the new user.

⚠ WARNING

In order to avoid electric shock, fire or injury, or if you detect any abnormality such as smell of fire, turn off power and call your dealer for instructions.

Ask your dealer for installation of the air conditioner.
Incomplete installation performed by yourself may result in a water leakage, electric shock, and fire.

Ask your dealer for improvement, repair, and maintenance.
Incomplete improvement, repair, and maintenance may result in a water leakage, electric shock, and fire.

Improper installation or attachment of equipment or accessories could result in electric shock, short-circuit, leaks, fire or other damage to the equipment. Be sure only to use accessories made by Daikin which are specifically designed for use with the equipment and have them installed by a professional.

Ask your dealer to move and reinstall the air conditioner or the remote controller.
Incomplete installation may result in a water leakage, electric shock, and fire.

Never let the indoor unit or the remote controller get wet.
It may cause an electric shock or a fire.

Never use flammable spray such as hair spray, lacquer or paint near the unit.
It may cause a fire.

Never replace a fuse with that of wrong ampere ratings or other wires when a fuse blows out.
Use of wire or copper wire may cause the unit to break down or cause a fire.

Never inspect or service the unit by yourself.
Ask a qualified service person to perform this work.

Cut off all electric waves before maintenance.

Do not wash the air conditioner or the remote controller with excessive water.
Electric shock or fire may result.

Do not install the air conditioner or the remote controller at any place where flammable gas may leak out.
If the gas leaks out and stays around the air conditioner, a fire may break out.

Do not touch the switch with wet fingers.
Touching a switch with wet fingers can cause electric shock.

CISPR 22 Class A Warning:
This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

3P124623-8D

Fig. 1

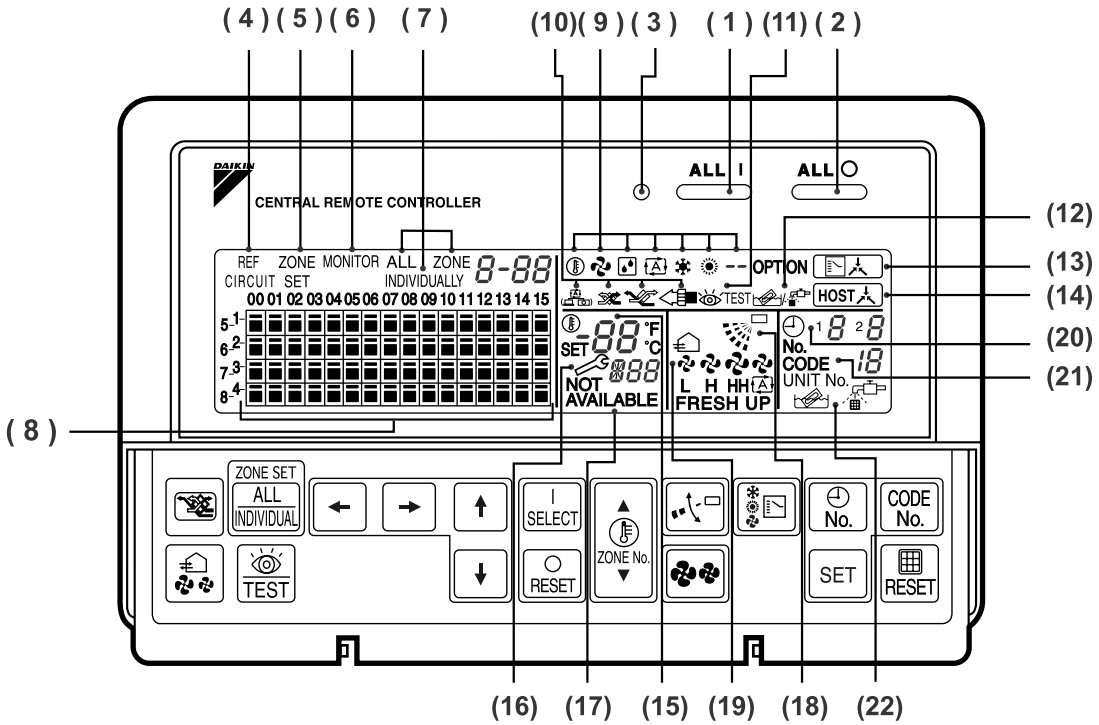
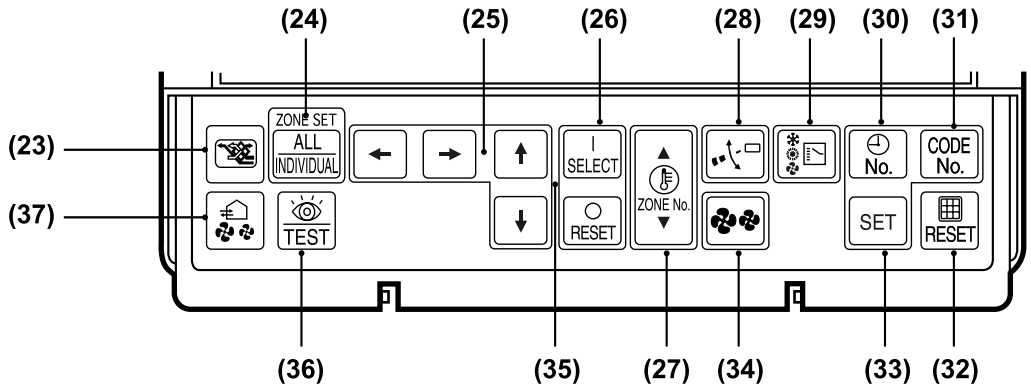


Fig. 2



3P124623-8D

Fig. 3

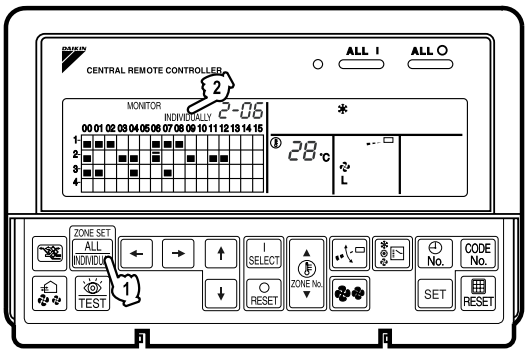


Fig. 4

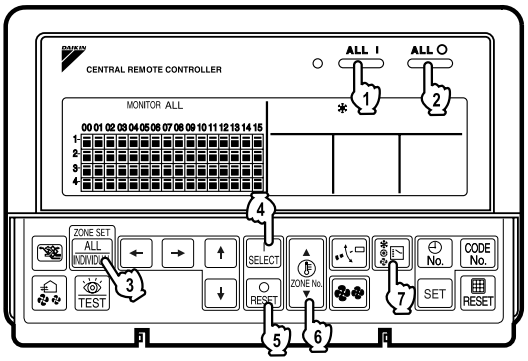


Fig. 5

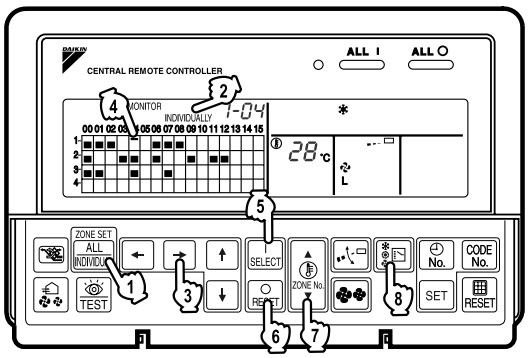
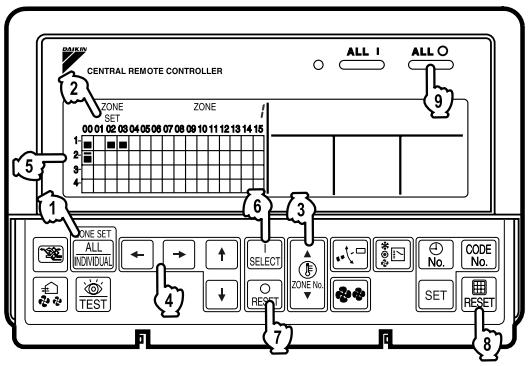


Fig. 6



3P124623-8D

Fig. 7

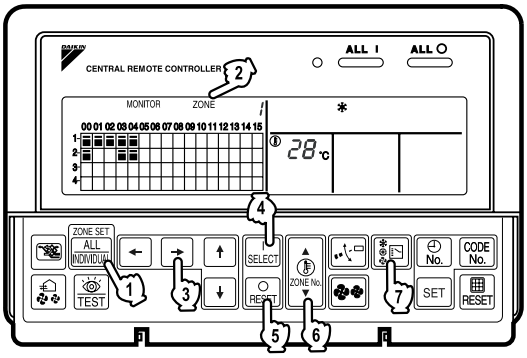


Fig. 8

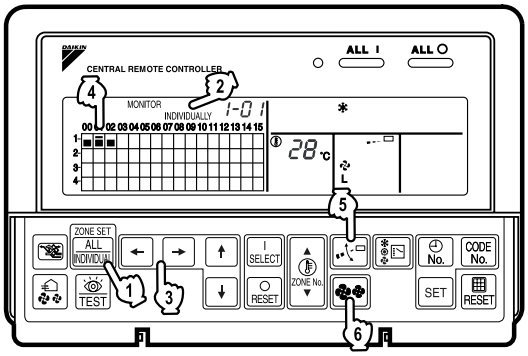
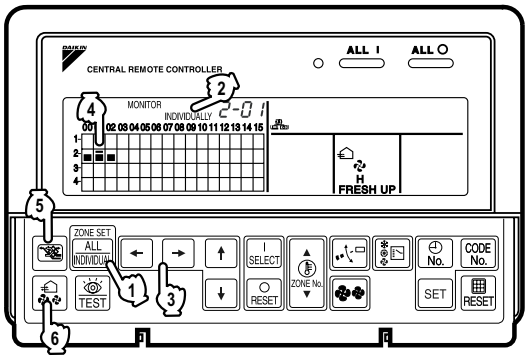


Fig. 9



3P124623-8D

Fig. 10

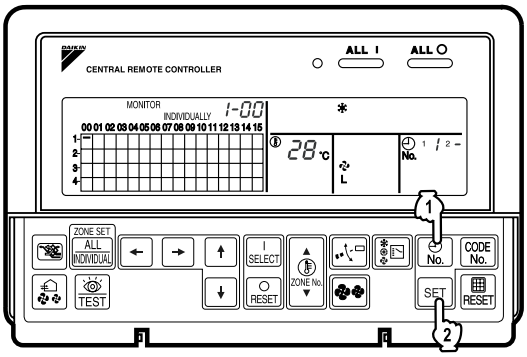


Fig. 11

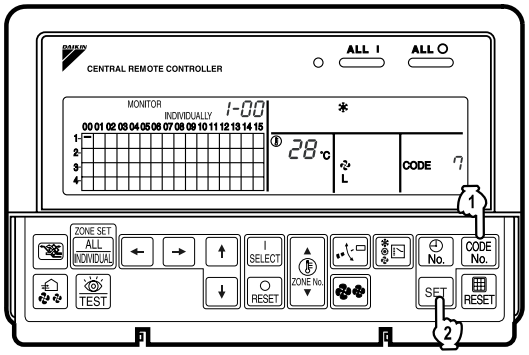
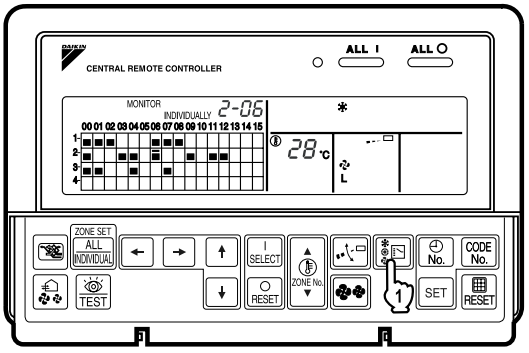


Fig. 12



3P124623-8D

Fig. 13

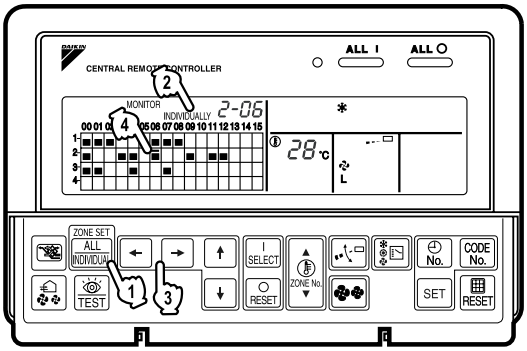


Fig. 14

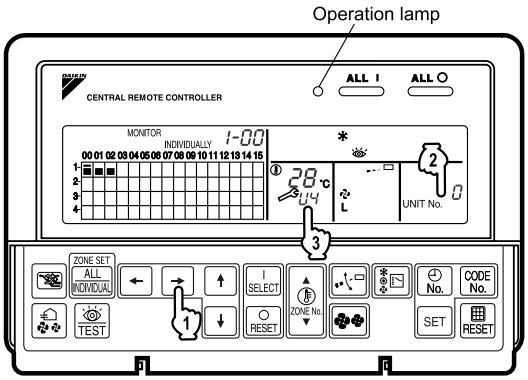
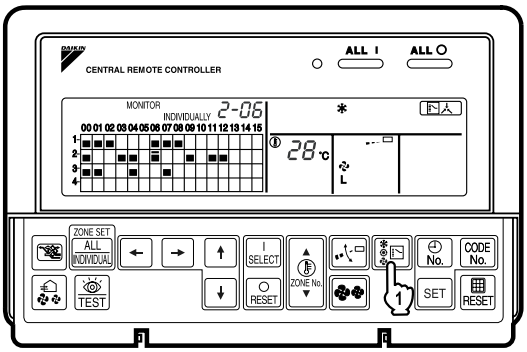
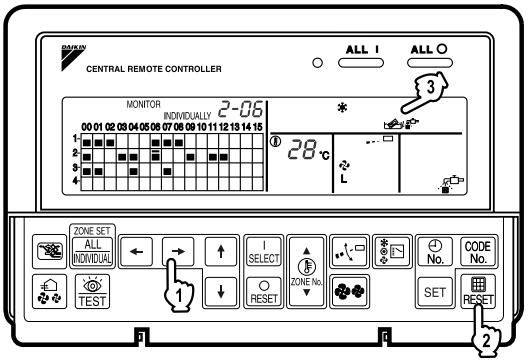


Fig. 15



3P124623-8D

Fig. 16



3P124623-8D

FEATURES AND FUNCTIONS

■ **Operation menu**
This central remote controller can operate and stop machines by either group or zone.
Batch operation and batch stop functions are also available. When used in combination with the schedule timer (optional accessory), timer operation and stop functions are available.

Note 1

■ **Various operation modes.**
You can operate the system from both this unit and the remote controller, so to enable various operation control patterns. Twenty different operation modes are available including five operation patterns:

1. Start/stop:	remote controller prohibition, remote controller stop-only permission, central priority, after-press priority, remote controller permission timer
2. Operation modes:	remote controller prohibition, remote controller permission
3. Set temperature:	remote controller prohibition, remote controller permission

Note 2

■ **Zone control for simpler setting procedures**
You can control a maximum of 64 groups of indoor units by using this central remote controller. You don't have to repeat the same setting operations by group because you can make each of the following settings by zone.
A functions is available for setting all groups in one batch.
- Operation mode
- Control mode
- Setting temperature
- Programming time No. (Used in conjunction with the schedule timer)

Note 3

■ **Monitoring all indoor unit information**
The following information can be displayed by group.
- Operation information such as operation mode, set temperature, etc., for indoor units
- Maintenance information such as cleaning signs for filters or elements
- Error codes and other malfunction diagnosis information

Note 4

■ **Function of refrigerant system display**
This display helps you understand, at a glance, the indoor units sharing the same outdoor unit and the particular indoor unit among them that is set as the master remote controller.

Note 5

- Room air conditioners and multi-purpose air conditioners may also be connected by using separately-sold adapter boards.
  This may limit functionality, so consult the manuals that come with each adapter board.

3P124623-8D

Note 1 : page 306 - 310, Note 2 : page 311 - 313, Note 3 : page 306 - 314
Note 4 : page 314 - 319, Note 5 : page 318

NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF THE OPERATING SECTION (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**UNIFIED OPERATION BUTTON**
	Press to operate all indoor units.
2	**UNIFIED STOP BUTTON**
	Press to stop all indoor units.
3	**OPERATION LAMP (RED)**
	Lit white any of the indoor units under control is in operation.
4	**“ REF CIRCUIT ” DISPLAY (REFRIGERANT SYSTEM DISPLAY)**
	This indication in the square is lit while the refrigerant system is being displayed.
5	**“ ZONE SET ” DISPLAY (ZONE SETTING)**
	The lamp is lit while setting zones.
6	**“ MONITOR ” DISPLAY (OPERATION MONITOR)**
	The lamp is lit while operation is being monitored.
7	**“ ALL ” “ ZONE ” “ INDIVIDUALLY ” DISPLAY**
	The status displays indicates either batch functions or which zone or individual unit (or group) are being used.
8	**OPERATION MONITOR**
	Each square displays the state corresponding to each group.
9	**“ ” “ ” “ ” “ ” “ ” “ ” “ – – ” DISPLAY (OPERATION MODE)**
	Displays operating state.
10	**“ ” “ ” “ ” “ ” DISPLAY (VENTILATION CLEANING DISPLAY)**
	This is displayed when a Ventiair total enthalpy heat exchanger unit or other such unit is connected.
11	**“ TEST ” DISPLAY (INSPECTION/TEST)**
	Pressing the maintenance/test run button (for service) displays this. This button should not normally be used.
12	**“ ” DISPLAY (TIME TO CLEAN)**
	It lights up when any individual unit (group) has reached the time for the filter or element to be cleaned.
13	**“ ” DISPLAY (COOLING/HEATING SELECTION PRIVILEGE NOT SHOWN)**
	For zones or individual units (groups) for which this is displayed, cooling and heating cannot be selected.
14	**“ HOST ” DISPLAY (UNDER HOST COMPUTER INTEGRATED CONTROL)**
	While this display is lit up, no settings can be made. It lights up when the upper central machines are present on the same air conditioning network.
15	**“ SET 88 °C ” DISPLAY (PRESET TEMPERATURE)**
	Displays the preset temperature.
16	**“ U4 ” DISPLAY (MALFUNCTION CODE)**
	This displays (flashes) the content of errors when an error failure has occurred. In maintenance mode, it displays the latest error content.
17	**“NOT AVAILABLE” DISPLAY (NO FUNCTION DISPLAY)**
	If a function is not available in the indoor unit even if the button is pressed, “NOT AVAILABLE” is may be displayed for a few seconds.
18	**“ ” DISPLAY (FAN DIRECTION SWING DISPLAY)**
	This displays whether the fan direction is fixed or set to swing.
19	**“ ” “ L ” “ H ” “ HH ” “ ” “FRESH UP” DISPLAY (VENTILATION STRENGTH/SET FAN STRENGTH DISPLAY)**
	This displays the set fan strength.
20	**“ No. ” DISPLAY (TIME NO.)**
	Displays the operation timer No. when used in conjunction with the schedule timer.

3P124623-8D

21	**“ CODE UNIT No. 18 ” DISPLAY (OPERATION CODE AND UNIT NUMBER DISPLAY)**
	The method of operation (remote controller prohibited, central operation priority after-press operation priority, etc.) is displayed by the corresponding code. This displays the numbers of any indoor units which have stopped due to an error.
22	**“” “” DISPLAY (TIME TO CLEAN AIR CLEANER ELEMENT/ TIME TO CLEAN AIR FILTER)**
	Displayed to notify the user it is time to clean the air filter or air cleaner element of the group displayed.
23	**VENTILATION MODE BUTTON**
	This is pressed to switch the ventilation mode of the total enthalpy heat exchanger.
24	**ALL/INDIVIDUAL BUTTON**
	Pressing this button scrolls through the “all screen”, “zone screen”, and “individual screen”.
25	**ARROW KEY BUTTON**
	This button is pressed when calling an individual indoor unit or a zone.
26	**ON/OFF BUTTON**
	Starts and stops ALL, ZONE, and INDIVIDUAL units.
27	**TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT BUTTON (ZONE NUMBER BUTTON)**
	This button is pressed when setting the temperature. Select the zone number if any zones have been registered.
28	**FAN DIRECTION ADJUSTMENT BUTTON**
	This button is pressed when setting the fan direction to “fixed” or “swing”.
29	**OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON**
	This sets the operation mode. The dry setting cannot be done.
30	**TIME NO. BUTTON**
	Selects time No. (Use in conjunction with the schedule timer only).
31	**CONTROL MODE BUTTON**
	Selects control mode.
32	**FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON**
	This button is pressed to erase the “clean filter” display after cleaning or replacement.
33	**SET BUTTON**
	Sets control mode and time No.
34	**FAN STRENGTH ADJUSTMENT BUTTON**
	Pressing this button scrolls through “weak”, “strong”, and “fast”.
35	**ZONE SETTING BUTTON**
	Zone registration mode can be turned on and off by pressing the start and stop buttons simultaneously for at least four seconds.
36	**INSPECTION/TEST RUN BUTTON (FOR SERVICE)**
	Pressing this button scrolls through “inspection”, “test run”, and “system display”. This button is not normally used.
37	**VENTILATION STRENGTH ADJUSTMENT BUTTON**
	This button is pressed to switch the ventilation strength (“fresh up”) of the total enthalpy heat exchanger.

(Notes)
1. Please note that all the displays in the figure appear for explanation purposes or when the cover is open.
2. If the unit is used in conjunction with other optional central controllers, the OPERATION LAMP of the unit that is not under operation control may light up and go out a few minutes behind schedule. This shows that the signal is being exchanged, and does not indicate any failure.

OPERATION

■ Individual screen, all screen, zone screen (Fig. 3)

This controller can perform operations in the individual screen, all screen, or zone screen.

- Individual screen — The individual screen is used when performing group operations.
- All screen — The all screen is used when performing operations for all units at once.
- Zone screen — The zone screen is used when performing zone operations.

1. ☞(1) Select the screen by pressing the “ALL/INDIVIDUAL” button.

☞(2) Every time the “ALL/INDIVIDUAL” button is pressed, the selection scrolls through INDIVIDUAL → ALL → ZONE.
If nothing is done in the all or zone screens for one minute, it automatically goes to the individual screen.

3P124623-8D

- If the zone number in the zone screen is displayed as "---," this indicates that no units are registered in a zone.
  Please perform zone registration before proceeding in the zone screen. (See page 9)

■ Batch operation and stop method (Fig. 4)

This is for operating or stopping all connected units at once.

A. What to do when operating or stopping all connected units at once.

1. Press either ☞ "ALL ❙" or ☞ "ALL ○".

- Operation can be performed from the individual screen, the all screen, or the zone screen.
- The "TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT" and "OPERATION MODE SELECTOR" buttons cannot be used.
  To set the temperature and operation mode, use B. batch operation.

B. Batch Operation

1. ☞ Press the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL button" to enter the all screen.

The " ▭ " display lights up on all registered units.

2. ☞ Press the "SELECT" button.

The " ■ " display lights up on all connected units.

☞ Press the "RESET" button.

The " ■ " display goes off on all connected units.
Operation and stop in the batch screen are done the same as with the batch operation and batch stop buttons.

3. ☞ Press the "TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT" button.

The temperature rises 1° every time the (▲) button is pressed.
The temperature drops 1° every time the (▼) button is pressed.

Set to " -- " when you do not wish to use batch setting for the temperature setting.
Setting to 1° above or below the temperature setting range displays " -- ".

4. ☞ Call up the desired mode by pressing the "OPERATION MODE SELECTOR" button.

Set to " -- " when you do not wish to use batch setting for the operation setting.

■ Group operation and stop method (Fig. 5)

This is for operating or stopping connected units in groups.

[Group operation]

1. Press the ☞ "ALL/INDIVIDUAL button" to enter the ☞ individual screen.

The unit will enter the individual screen automatically if nothing is done for one minute.

2. ☞ Using the arrow keys, ☞ move the " ▭ " to select the units to operate or stop.

Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.

The " ▭ " in this screen has selected unit 1-04.

3. ☞ Press the "SELECT" button.

The " ■ " display lights up in the group.

☞ Press the "RESET" button.

The " ■ " display goes off in the group.

4. ☞ Press the "TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT" button.

The temperature rises 1° every time the (▲) button is pressed.
The temperature drops 1° every time the (▼) button is pressed.
Temperature adjustment cannot be done if the selected group's air conditioners are in fan mode.

5. ☞ Call up the desired mode by pressing the "OPERATION MODE SELECTOR" button.

■ Registering zones (Fig. 6)

It is possible to set multiple groups as one zone and control each zone separately.
No zones are registered when the unit is shipped from the factory.
Zone registration can be done in the individual screen, all screen, or zone screen.

[Registration]

1. ☞ Pressing the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL" button for four seconds. ☞ Displays ZONE SET.

Zone Number 1 will be displayed, and if there are any groups already registered displayed zone, a " ■ " will light up on the operation monitor.

3P124623-8D

2. ☞ Select the Zone Number to be registered using the "ZONE NUMBER" button.
Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.

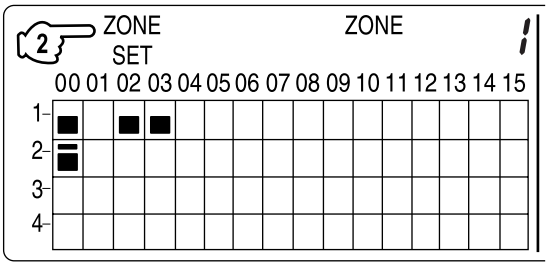
3. ☞ " ▬ " to the group you wish to ☞ register using the arrow keys.
Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.

4. ☞ Press the "SELECT" button to register that group to the zone.

The " ■ " display lights up on all the selected units.

☞ Pressing the "RESET" button removes the group from that zone, and " ■ " goes off.

Repeat steps 3 and 4 until all the units you wish to register to the zone have been added.



In this example, a screen is shown with units 1-00, 1-02, 1-03, and 2-00 registered to Zone Number 1.

5. Repeat steps 2 to 4 to register to the next zone.

6. Once zone registration is complete, ☞ press the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL" button to turn off "ZONE SET" display and return to the individual screen.
The display returns to the normal screen if nothing is done for one minute when in zone registration mode.

(NOTE)
- It is impossible to register one group to several different zones.
  If this is done, the last zone registered to will be valid.

[Batch deletion of zone registration]

1. ☞ Pressing the " ALL ○ " for at least four seconds while ☞ pressing the "FILTER SIGN RESET" button when ☞ "ZONE SET" is displayed will delete all zone registrations.
The zone registrations for all units will be lost.

■ Zone operation and stop method (Fig. 7)

This is for operating or stopping connected units in zones.

[Zone operation]

1. ☞ Press the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL button" to enter the zone screen.

2. ☞ Using the arrow keys, select the zone number to operate or stop.

Pressing [←] and [↓] reduces the zone number while [→] and [↑] raise the number.
Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.
- If the zone number is displayed as "---," this indicates that no units are registered in a zone. Please perform zone registration before using a zone. (See Note)

3. ☞ Press the "SELECT" button.

The " ■ " display lights up in the group.

☞ Press the "RESET" button.

The " ■ " display goes off in the group.

4. ☞ Press the "TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT" button.
The temperature rises 1° every time the (▲) button is pressed.
The temperature drops 1° every time the (▼) button is pressed.

Set to " -- " when you do not wish to use zone setting for the temperature setting.
Setting to 1° above or below the temperature setting range displays " -- ".

5. ☞ Call up the desired mode by pressing the "OPERATION MODE SELECTOR" button.

Set to " -- " when you do not wish to use zone setting for the operation mode.

3P124623-8D

Note : page 307

■ Changing the fan direction and fan strength (Fig. 8)

This changes the fan direction and strength settings in the air conditioner.
Changing the fan direction and strength is done in the individual screen.

[Registration]

1. **☞① Press the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL button" to enter the ☞② individual screen.**
   The unit will enter the individual screen automatically if nothing is done for one minute.
2. **☞③ Using the arrow keys, ☞④ move the "▭" to select the units to fan direction adjustment or fan strength adjustment.**
   Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.
3. **☞⑤ Press the "FAN DIRECTION ADJUSTMENT" button.**
   This sets "fixed" or "swing" for the fan direction.
   ☞⑥ Press the "FAN STRENGTH ADJUSTMENT" button.
   Pressing this button scrolls through "L", "H", and "HH".
   Depending on the indoor unit, only "L" and "H" may be available.

The functions included in the indoor units may vary. Pressing a button for a function which is not available will cause "NOT AVAILABLE" to be displayed.

■ Changing the ventilation mode and ventilation strength (Fig. 9)

This changes the ventilation mode and strength settings in the total enthalpy heat exchanger.
Changing the ventilation mode and strength is done in the individual screen.

[Registration]

1. **☞① Press the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL button" to enter the ☞② individual screen.**
   The unit will enter the individual screen automatically if nothing is done for one minute.
2. **☞③ Using the arrow keys, ☞④ move the "▭" to select the units to ventilation mode or ventilation strength adjustment.**
   Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.
3. **☞⑤ Press the "VENTILATION MODE" button.**
   It will scroll through "(A)" → "⇄" → "⇄" → "(A)".
   ☞⑥ Press the "VENTILATION STRENGTH ADJUSTMENT" button.
   It will scroll through "L" → "H" → "L FRESH UP" → "H FRESH UP" → "L".
   The fresh up function may not be available depending on the connected unit model.

The functions included in the indoor units may vary. Pressing a button for a function which is not available will cause "NOT AVAILABLE" to be displayed.

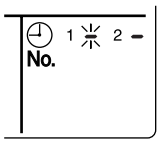
- **Ventilation Mode and Amount**
  If these are changed using the remote controller depending on the unit model, they cannot be displayed on the central remote controller.
  To monitor the ventilation mode and amount, check the values on the remote controller.

■ Timer Number Setting (Fig. 10)

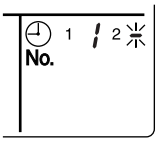
(Only when used with the schedule timer)
Using this together with the schedule timer makes it possible to set on and off times four times a day.

[Registration]

1. **☞① Pressing the "TIMER NO." button causes the number set for timer number 1 to blink.**
   If no timer setting has been made "–" will be displayed.
   Select the desired timer number by pressing the ☞① "TIMER NO." button.



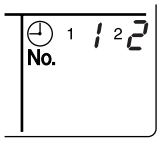
2. **☞② Once the desired timer number is displayed, press the "SET" button.**
   Press the ☞② "SET" button within 10 seconds after the timer number is displayed.
   The display will return to how it was after 10 seconds.
   The display for timer number 1 will stop blinking and then timer number 2 will start blinking.



3P124623-8D

3. ☞ Select the desired timer number by pressing the "TIMER NO." button.

Once the desired timer number is displayed, ☞ press the "SET" button.
The display for timer number 2 will stop blinking.



The " No. " display will disappear after 3 seconds.

Select " – " in the timer number when you do not wish to set a timer number.
It is possible to set only one timer number.
(The times for turning the unit(s) on and off twice a day can be set with a single timer number.)

- **Timer Number Setting**
  Group control: select the unit in the individual screen and set the timer number.
  Batch control: set the timer numbers for all connected units.
  Zone control: set the timer numbers for all zone-registered units.
  Call up the zones which you wish to set in the zone screen and set the timer numbers.
- **Since the timer number will be set to after-press priority, the timer number in the last screen set will be valid for the connected units.**

  Example 1
  Setting timer number 1 for unit 1-00 to "1" and timer number 2 to "2" in the individual screen and then setting timer number 1 to "3" and timer number 2 to "4" in the batch screen causes the timer numbers for all units to be set, so timer number 1 for unit 1-00 will be "3" and timer number 2 will be "4".

  Example 2
  To prevent leaving units on, timer number 1 is set to "5" in the batch screen.
  Setting timer number 1 in zone number 1 to " – " in the zone screen after that will change the timer number for zone number 1, so the setting to prevent leaving the units on will be lost for zone number 1 only.

  If a timer number is set incorrectly by accident, redo the setting in the desired screen.
- **What happens when the timer number on time and off time are set to the same time**

  When the on time and off time are set to the same time for the same timer number, operation does not change.
  When the on time and off time are set to the same time for different timer numbers, the off time is given priority.

When using timer operation, make sure the times do not overlap when setting the program of the schedule timer.

■ Setting the Operation Code (Fig. 11)

[Registration]

1. ☞ Pressing the "CONTROL MODE" button causes the currently set operation code to blink.
Call up the desired code number by pressing the ☞ "CONTROL MODE" button.
Scroll through the code numbers.

2. ☞ Once the code number is displayed, press the "SET" button.
The display will stop blinking.
The operation code display will disappear after 3 seconds.

[The Operation Code Setting]

Group control: select the unit in the individual screen and set the operation code.
Batch control: set the operation code for all connected units.
Zone control: set the operation code for all zone-registered units.
Call up the zones which you wish to set in the zone screen and set the operation code.

Since the operation code will be set for after-press priority, setting the operation code in the zone and individual screens after setting the operation code in the batch screen, will cause the operation codes set afterwards to be valid.

3P124623-8D

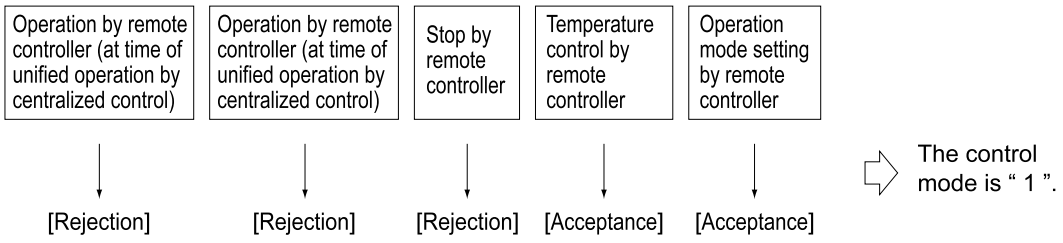
The following five operation control modes can be selected along with the temperature setting and operation mode by remote controller, for a total of twenty different modes. These twenty modes are set and displayed with control modes of 0 to 19. (For further details, see **EXAMPLE OF OPERATION SCHEDULE** on the next page.)

- ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller..... Use this mode when operating and stopping from the central remote controller only. (ON/OFF control by the remote controller is disabled.)
- Only OFF control possible by remote controller ..... Use this mode when executing the operation only by the central remote controller, and executing only the stop by remote controller.
- Centralized ..... Use this mode when executing the operation only by the central remote controller, and executing start/stop freely by remote controller during the preset hours.
- Individual ..... Use this mode when executing start/stop both by central remote controller and remote controller.
- Timer operation possible by remote controller..... Use this mode when executing start/stop by remote controller during the preset hours, and not starting operation by the central remote controller at the programmed time of system start.

[HOW TO SELECT THE CONTROL MODE]

- Select whether to accept or to reject the operation from the remote controller regarding the operation, stop, temperature setting and operation mode setting, respectively, and determine the particular control mode from the rightmost column of the table below.

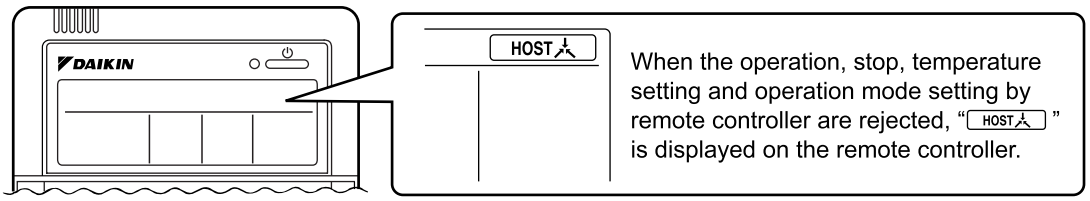
  Example



3P124623-8D

Operation mode	Control by remote controller					Control mode
	Operation		Stop	Temperature control	Operation mode setting	
	Unified operation, individual operation by central remote controller, or operation controlled by timer	Unified stop, individual stop by central remote controller, or timer stop				
ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller	Rejection (Example)	Rejection (Example)	Rejection (Example)	Rejection	Acceptance	0
					Rejection	10
				Acceptance (Example)	Acceptance (Example)	1 (Example)
					Rejection	11
Only OFF control possible by remote controller			Acceptance	Rejection	Acceptance	2
					Rejection	12
				Acceptance	Acceptance	3
					Rejection	13
Centralized	Acceptance			Rejection	Acceptance	4
					Rejection	14
				Acceptance	Acceptance	5
					Rejection	15
Individual		Acceptance		Rejection	Acceptance	6
					Rejection	16
				Acceptance	Acceptance	7
					Rejection	17
Timer operation possible by remote controller	Acceptance (During timer at ON position only)	Rejection (During timer at OFF position)		Rejection	Acceptance	8
					Rejection	18
				Acceptance	Acceptance	9
					Rejection	19

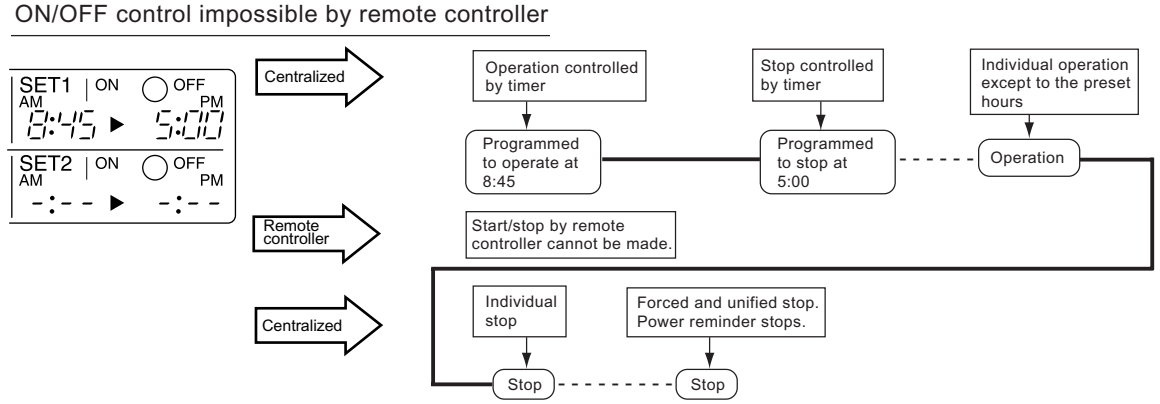
Note) Do not select the timer operation possible without the remote controller. In this case, timer operation is disabled.



EXAMPLE OF OPERATION SCHEDULE

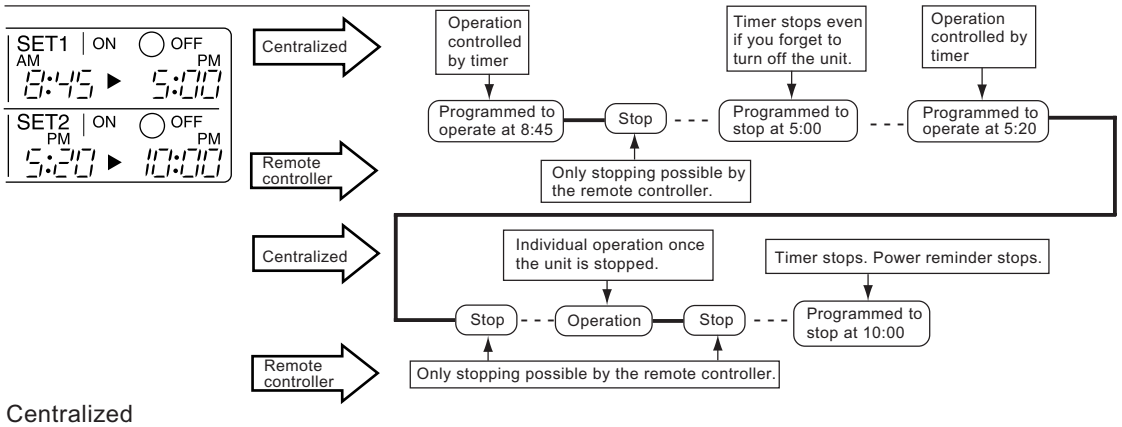
Operation schedule is possible only in conjunction with the schedule timer (optional accessory).

Liquid crystal display of schedule timer

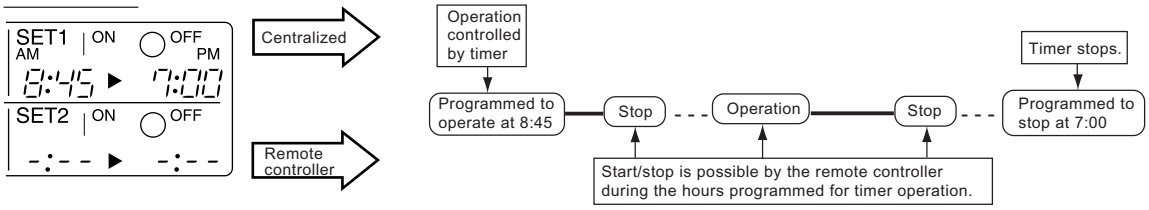


3P124623-8D

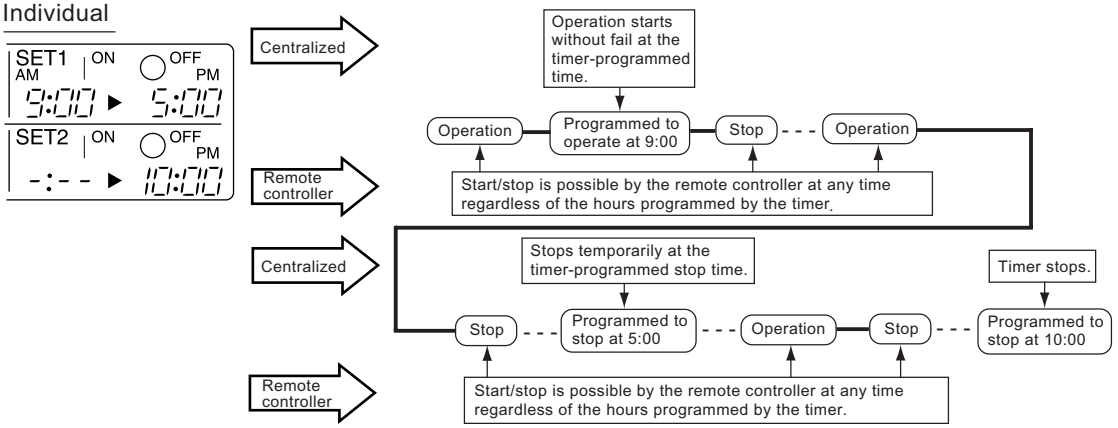
Only OFF control possible by remote controller



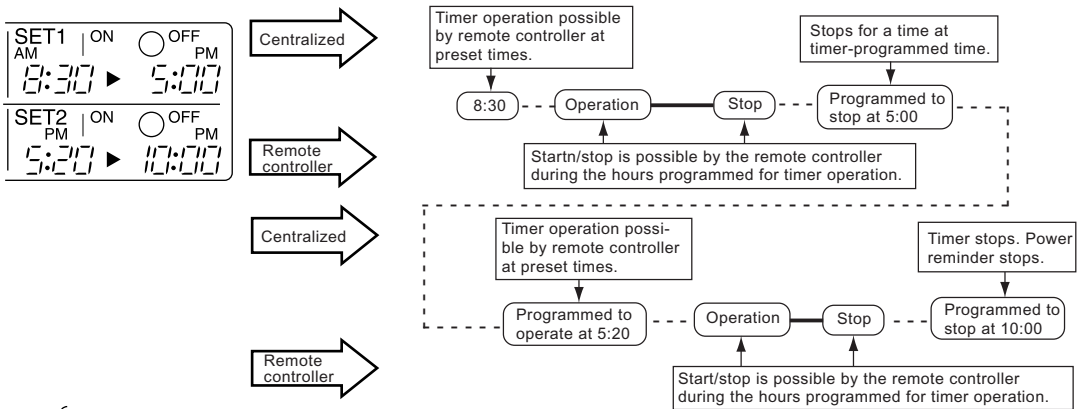
Centralized



Individual



Timer operation possible by remote controller



Air conditioner now operating.
Air conditioner now stopping.
Command by central remote controller
Command by remote controller

3P124623-8D

■ Setting operation mode (Fig. 12)

[Registration]

1. ☞ Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON. Each time you press this button, the display rotates as shown on the below list.

- **List of operations which can be set**
  In the below list, " ○ " refers to the acceptable setting, while " × " refers to the not acceptable setting.

Display	**A**: Zones and groups with no " " display. Setting	Contents of setting
	×	
	○	Can be set in individual zones or groups
	○ ∗ 1	Can be set in individual zones or groups
	○	Can be set in individual zones or groups
	○	Can be set in individual zones or groups
or or	○ ∗ 1	Can be set in individual zones or groups ∗ 3
	○ ∗ 1	Can be set in individual zones or groups
	○	Select this display if you don't wish to set by zone.

Display	**B**: Zones and groups with a " " display. Setting	Contents of setting
	○	To be set by zone ∗ 2
	○	Can be set in individual zones or groups
	×	
	×	The displays are shown by group ∗ 4
	×	The displays are shown by group ∗ 4
or or	○ ∗ 1	Can be set in individual zones or groups ∗ 3
	○ ∗ 1	Can be set in individual zones or groups
	○	Select this display if you don't wish to set by zone.

∗1: Setting may not be acceptable depending on the type of indoor unit with which this unit is connected.
∗2: In zone control, the units run in temperature adjustment mode (heating or cooling) for the outdoor system for the groups registered to those zones. Heating or cooling selection is not available.
*3: or or
Changing the ventilation mode cannot be done in the zone screen. Changing the ventilation mode should be done in the individual screen.
∗4: In group control, the units run in temperature adjustment mode (heating or cooling) for the group outdoor system. Heating or cooling selection is not available.

- **The Zone consists of the following two cases.**

A. Zone without display" "
The group with master remote controller setting exists in this zone.
Setting the master remote controller enables cool/heat selection.
Operations other than cool/heat operations can also be set for some operations. For further details, see the list on the left.

B. Zone with display" "
No group with master remote controller setting exists in this zone.
The cool/heat selection is not available because the master remote controller has not been set.
Some operations other than cool/heat operations can be set. For further details, see the list in the left.

See Note 1 if the display" " is flashing.

- Fan operation can be performed for each zone using the central remote controller even if there is no cooling/heating selection right during cooling or heating. Also, if a Ventiair is connected in the zone, ventilation and ventilation cleaning operation is possible. See the included operating manuals for details.
- When the indoor unit is in heat operation, change the setting to FAN operation through the central remote controller; then, you can switch the fan speed to the extremely low fan speed. Warm air may blow if any other indoor unit belonging to the same system is in heat operation.
- The indoor fan stops during defrost/hot start.
- DRY cannot be set from the central remote controller.

■ Group monitoring (Fig. 13)

Utilize the group monitor function in each of the following cases:
1. Check the malfunction code. (See the next page.)
2. Check the group that requires cleaning of the air filter and air cleaner element. (See Note 2)
3. Change the setting of the master remote controller. (See Note 3)
4. Check the group(s) sharing the same outdoor unit. Or, check the particular group(s) with the master remote controller setting. (See page 20.)
5. Check the conditions of other individual groups.

3P124623-8D

Note 1 : page 318, Note 2 : page 319, Note 3 : page 318

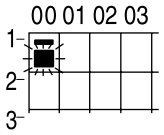
When in zone screen
The zone screen will revert to the individual screen automatically if nothing is done in it for one minute.

[Registration]

1. **Press the "ALL/INDIVIDUAL" button to switch to the "INDIVIDUAL" screen.**
2. **Using the arrow key, move the " " to select the unit to be monitored.**
   Keeping the button pressed down will move it rapidly.
   The " " lights up and the status of that unit is displayed in the LCD. The cursor in the screen Fig. 13 has selected unit 2-06.

■ Error diagnosing function (Fig. 14)

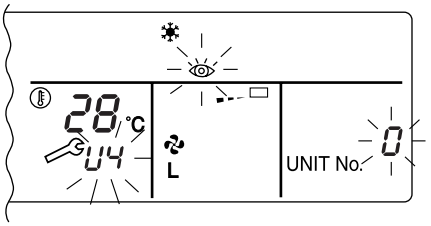
This central remote controller is provided with a diagnosing function, for when an indoor unit stops due to malfunction. In case of actuation of a safety device, disconnection in transmission wiring for control or failure of some parts, the operation lamp, inspection display and unit No. start to flash; then, the malfunction code is displayed. Check the contents of the display, and contact your DAIKIN dealer because the above signs can give you the idea on the trouble area.



The display " " flashes under the group No. where the indoor unit that has stopped due to malfunction.

[Registration]

1. **Press the ARROW KEY BUTTON to call up the group that has stopped due to malfunction.**
   The unit No. the malfunction code is flashing because of an error failure.



Operation lamp	Maintenance display	Unit No.	Malfunction code	Error content
☼	●	◑	**64**	Indoor air thermistor error
☼	●	◑	**65**	Outdoor air thermistor error
☼	●	◑	**68**	HVU error (Ventiair dust-collecting unit)
☼	●	◑	**6A**	Dumper system error
◑	◑	◑	6A	Dumper system error + Thermistor error
☼	●	◑	**6F**	Simple remote controller error
☼	●	◑	**6H**	Door switch (Ventiair dust-collecting unit), relay harness fault (Ventiair dust-collecting/humidifier unit)
◑	◑	◑	94	Ventiair internal transmission error (between total enthalpy – fan unit)
◑	◑	◑	A0	Indoor unit · external safety device error
◑	◑	◑	A1	Indoor unit · BEV unit (Sky-Air connection unit) PC board assembly fault
☼	●	◑	**A1**	Indoor unit · PC board assembly fault
◑	◑	◑	A3	Indoor unit · Drain level error (33H)
◑	◑	◑	A6	Indoor unit · Fan motor (51F) lock, overload
☼	●	◑	**A7**	Indoor unit · Fan direction adjustment motor (MA) error
◑	◑	◑	A9	Indoor unit · BEV unit, electric expansion valve motor (20E) error
☼	●	◑	**AF**	Indoor unit · Malfunctioning drain
☼	●	◑	**AH**	Indoor unit · Dust-collector error
◑	◑	◑	AJ	Indoor unit · Insufficient capacity setting, address setting fault

◑	◑	◑	C4	Indoor unit · Liquid piping thermistor (Th2) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
◑	◑	◑	C5	Indoor unit · BEV unit, gas piping thermistor (Th3) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
◑	◑	◑	C9	Indoor unit · Intake air thermistor (Th1) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
◑	◑	◑	CA	Indoor unit · Outlet air thermistor (Th4) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	●	☼	**CJ**	Indoor unit · remote controller sensor error
◑	◑	◑	E0	Outdoor unit · Safety device operation
◑	◑	◑	E1	Outdoor unit · PC board assembly fault
☼	●	◑	**E1**	Outdoor unit · PC board assembly fault
◑	◑	◑	E3	Outdoor unit · High-pressure switch fault
◑	◑	◑	E4	Outdoor unit · Low-pressure switch fault
◑	◑	◑	E9	Outdoor unit · Electric expansion valve motor (20E) error
☼	●	◑	**EC**	Heat source unit · Intake water temperature inter-lock operation (fan operation)
◑	◑	◑	EF	Outdoor unit · Ice thermal storage unit error
◑	◑	◑	F3	Outdoor unit · Discharge piping temperature error
☼	●	◑	**H3**	Outdoor unit · High-pressure switch operation
◑	◑	◑	H4	Outdoor unit · Low-pressure switch operation
◑	◑	◑	H9	Outdoor unit · Outdoor air thermistor (Th1) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	●	◑	**H9**	Outdoor unit · Outdoor air thermistor (Th1) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	●	◑	**HC**	Outdoor unit · Water temperature sensor system error
☼	●	◑	**HF**	Ice thermal storage unit error, ice thermal storage controller error, error in outdoor unit during ice thermal storage operation
◑	◑	◑	HJ	Outdoor unit · water system fault
◑	◑	◑	J1	Outdoor unit · pressure sensor error
◑	◑	◑	J3	Outdoor unit · Discharge piping thermistor (Th3) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
☼	●	◑	**J3**	Outdoor unit · Discharge piping thermistor (Th3) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
◑	◑	◑	J5	Outdoor unit · Intake piping thermistor (Th4) Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
◑	◑	◑	J6	Outdoor unit · Heat exchange thermistor (Th2) error
☼	●	◑	**J6**	Outdoor unit · Heat exchange thermistor (Th2) error Error (faulty connection, cut wire, short circuit, fault)
◑	◑	◑	J7	Outdoor unit · Header thermistor (Th6) error
◑	◑	◑	JA	Outdoor unit · Discharge piping pressure sensor error
◑	◑	◑	JC	Outdoor unit · Intake piping pressure sensor error
◑	◑	◑	JF	Outdoor unit · Oil temperature sensor (Th5) system error
☼	●	◑	**JH**	Outdoor unit · Oil temperature sensor (Th5) system error
◑	◑	◑	L0	Outdoor unit · Inverter system fault
◑	◑	◑	L4	Outdoor unit · Inverter cooler fault
◑	◑	◑	L5	Outdoor unit · Ground circuit for compressor motor, short circuit, or power unit short circuit

3P124623-8D

◑	◑	◑	L6	Outdoor unit · Ground circuit for compressor motor, short circuit
☼	◑	◑	L8	Outdoor unit · Compressor overload, compressor motor wire disconnection
◑	◑	◑	L9	Outdoor unit · Compressor lock
◑	◑	◑	LA	Outdoor unit · Power unit error
◑	◑	◑	LC	Outdoor unit · Transmission error between inverter and outdoor control unit
☼ or ●	◑	◑	M1	Central controller: PC board fault
☼ or ●	◑	◑	M8	Transmission error between central controllers
☼ or ●	◑	◑	MA	Central controller: Incorrect combination
☼ or ●	◑	◑	MC	Central controller: Address setting fault
◑	●	◑	**P0**	Insufficient gas (thermal storage)
◑	◑	◑	P1	Outdoor unit · Power voltage imbalance, phase loss
◑	◑	◑	P4	Outdoor unit · Power unit temperature sensor error
☼	●	◑	**U0**	Pressure drop due to insufficient refrigerant, electric expansion valve fault, etc.
◑	◑	◑	U1	Reversed or lost phase
◑	◑	◑	U2	Power voltage error, momentary electrical stoppage
◑	◑	◑	U4	Transmission error between indoor unit/BEV unit and outdoor/BS unit, Transmission error between outdoor unit and BS unit
◑	◑	◑	U5	Transmission error between remote controller and indoor control unit
●	☼	●	U5	Remote controller board fault or remote controller setting fault
◑	◑	◑	U6	Transmission error between indoor units
◑	◑	◑	U7	Transmission error between outdoor units Transmission error between outdoor unit and ice thermal storage unit
☼	●	◑	**U7**	Transmission error between outdoor units (cooling/heating batch, low-noise operation)
◑	◑	●	U8	Transmission error between master remote controller and slave remote controller (slave remote controller error) Incorrect combination of indoor unit and remote controller within a single system (model)
◑	◑	◑	U9	Transmission error between indoor unit/BEV unit and outdoor unit within a single system Transmission error between BS unit and indoor unit/BEV unit and outdoor unit within a single system
◑	◑	◑	UA	Incorrect combination of indoor, BS, and outdoor units within a single system (model, number of units, etc.) Incorrect combination of indoor unit and remote controller (remote controller in question) BS unit connection position fault
☼	●	☼	**UC**	Central control group numbers overlap
◑	◑	◑	UE	Transmission error between indoor unit and central controller
◑	◑	◑	UF	Unset system, incorrect settings between BEV unit and indoor unit
◑	◑	◑	UH	System fault

▬ error codes (in outline font) do not display “maintenance” and the system will run, but please check the content of the display and contact your dealer.

3P124623-8D

■ Setting master remote controller (Fig. 15)

You must set the master remote controller of the operation mode for one of the indoor units, if two or more such indoor units with the remote controller are connected with the outdoor unit where the operation modes such as cool/heat operation and FAN operation can be set by remote controller and central remote controller.

1. Preparations

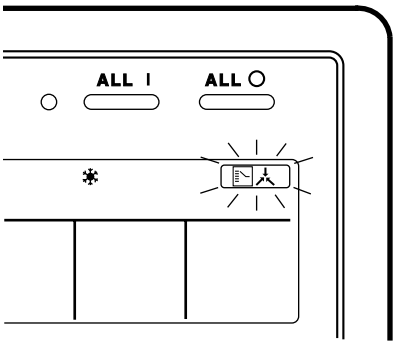
When you want to fix settings

- **Check the particular group with the master remote controller setting for the refrigerant system you wish to reset. (See the below.)**
- **Call up the group without the display "[ ]" (See Note)**

  ☞ Hold the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON down for about four seconds while the above group is being called up.

  The display "[ ]" flashes on the liquid crystal display of the remote controller for all the groups sharing the same outdoor unit or BS unit.

  When you turn on the power switch for the first time, the display"[ ]" flashes.



2. Setting selection right

Pall up the desired group to set the master remote controller, and ☞ press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON. The master remote controller is set for this group, and the display "[ ]" goes out. The display "[ ]" appears for the other groups.

Setting is finished now.

When switching operation

● In case of operation switch

Call up the zone including the group with the setting of master remote controller.

(Zone without the display "[ ]")

☞ Press the OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON several times, and switch to the desired operation mode.

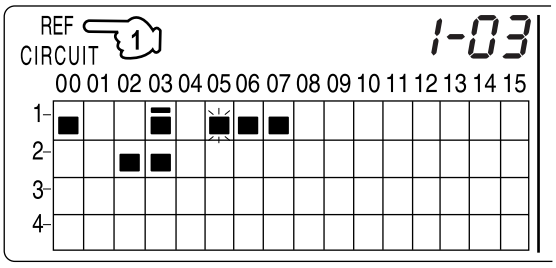
Each time you press it, the display is switched to " " " " " " and " − − " in sequence.

NOTE

- However, the displays " " " " and "VENTILATION MODE" may appear in some zones, depending on the type on indoor unit with which they are connected.
  (VENTILATION MODE)
  or or

[System Display]

1. Test run mode is necessary to display the system display.
2. In order to turn on test run mode, select the appropriate air conditioner on the individual screen with the cursor and then set its operation mode to either cooling or heating. (The air conditioner does not need to be running. It doesn't matter if it is, though.)
3. Press the "inspection/test run" button twice to put it into test run mode.
4. Pressing the "inspection/test run" button for four or more seconds in test run mode will display ☞ the "REF CIRCUIT."



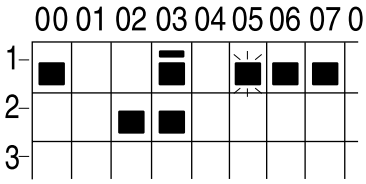
3P124623-8D

Note : page 314

Call the unit whose system you wish to look up using the arrow keys.

The " ■ " on all groups in the same system as the displayed group will light up.

Of those, the " ■ " display in all groups which have cooling/heating selection privilege will blink.



In this example, individual units 1-00, 1-03, 1-05, 1-06, 1-07, 2-02, and 2-03 are in the same system, and 1-05 has the cooling/heating selection privilege.

To look up other systems, call up all the units you wish to look up using the arrow keys.

Pressing the inspection/test run button one more time gets rid of the system display and ends it.

The unit will enter the individual screen automatically if nothing is done for one minute in the system display screen.

This function may not be available for all connected outdoor units, in which case "REF CIRCUIT" will blink. It will also not be correctly displayed if DIII-NET extension ADP is used.

■ Display of time to clean (Fig. 16)

This central remote controller displays the time to clean the air filter or air cleaner element for each group or any given group by utilizing two types of signs. The display " " tells the time to clean the air filter or the air cleaner element of some group.

If a cleaning sign is displayed

A filter or element in some group is ready to be cleaned.

1. ☞ Press the ARROW KEY BUTTON, and search the groups displaying " " or " " (The group may be plural.)

Clean or change the air filter or air cleaner element.

For further details, see the operation manual attached to each indoor unit. (Clean or change the air filter or air cleaner element of all the groups displaying " " or " ".)

2. ☞ Press the FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON, and the display " " disappears. (Including all the groups where the air filter has been cleaned.)

NOTE

Be sure to check the display ☞ " " has disappeared at this point. The appearance of the above display is a sign that the air filter or air cleaner element of some group still needs cleaning.

3P124623-8D

INSTALLATION TABLE

When installing the equipment, mark the zone No. of each group and installation location in the below table.

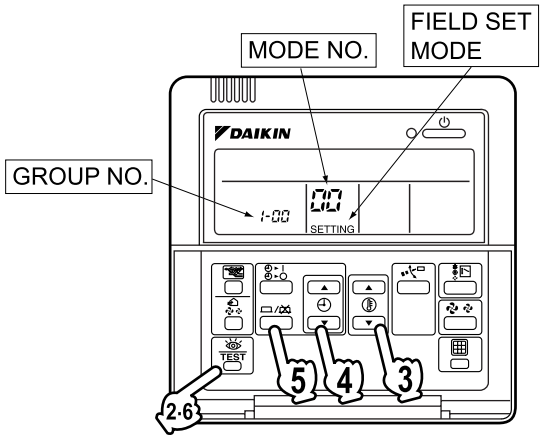
Setting group No.
(Setting is not possible unless power is activated to both the central remote controller and indoor unit.)

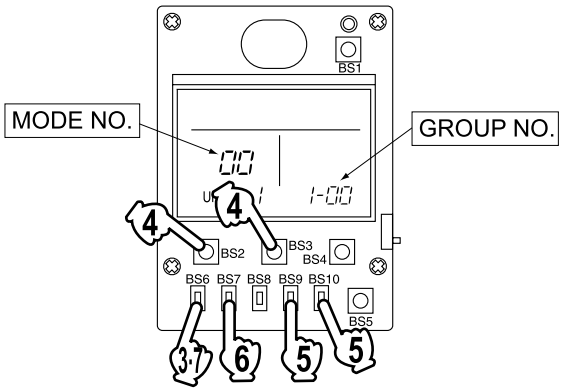
Operated by remote controller

1. Activate power to both the central remote controller and indoor unit.
2. While in the normal mode, hold down the " TEST " button for a minimum of 4 seconds. The unified ON/OFF controller will enter the FIELD SET MODE.
3. Select the MODE No. " 00 " with the " " button.
4. Use the " " button to select the group No. for each group. (Group No. increases in the order of 1-00, 1-01 ... 1-15, 2-00, ... 8-15.)
5. Press " " to set the selected group No.
6. Press " TEST " to return to the NORMAL MODE.

Operated by simplified remote controller

1. Activate power to both the central remote controller and indoor unit.
2. Remove the upper part of the remote controller.
3. Press the BS6 BUTTON (field set) on the PC board. The controller will enter the FIELD SET MODE.
4. Select the MODE No. " 00 " with the BS2 BUTTON and BS3 BUTTON (temperature setting).
5. Use the BS9 BUTTON (set A) and BS10 BUTTON (set B) to select the group No. for each group. (Group No. increases in the order of 1-00, 1-01 ... 1-15, 2-00, ... 8-15.)
6. Press BS7 BUTTON (set/cancel) to set the selected group No.
7. Press BS6 BUTTON (field set) to return to the NORMAL MODE.



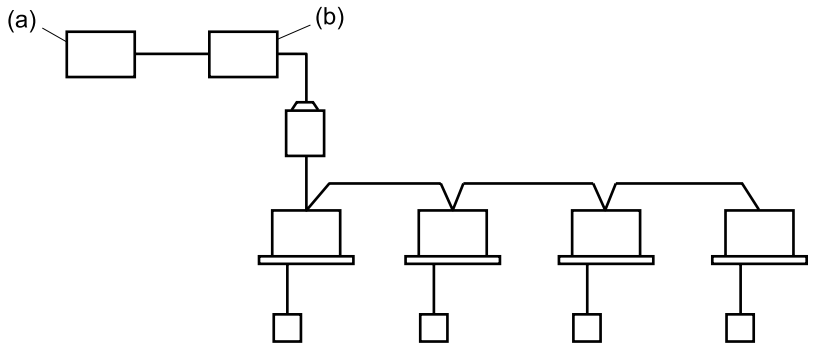


Zone No.																
Group No.	–00	–01	–02	–03	–04	–05	–06	–07	–08	–09	–10	–11	–12	–13	–14	–15
Indoor unit Quantity of units Controlled by																
Location																
Zone No.																
Group No.	–00	–01	–02	–03	–04	–05	–06	–07	–08	–09	–10	–11	–12	–13	–14	–15
Indoor unit Quantity of units Controlled by																
Location																

3P124623-8D

Zone No.																
Group No.	–00	–01	–02	–03	–04	–05	–06	–07	–08	–09	–10	–11	–12	–13	–14	–15
Indoor unit Quantity of units Controlled by																
Location																
Zone No.																
Group No.	–00	–01	–02	–03	–04	–05	–06	–07	–08	–09	–10	–11	–12	–13	–14	–15
Indoor unit Quantity of units Controlled by																
Location																

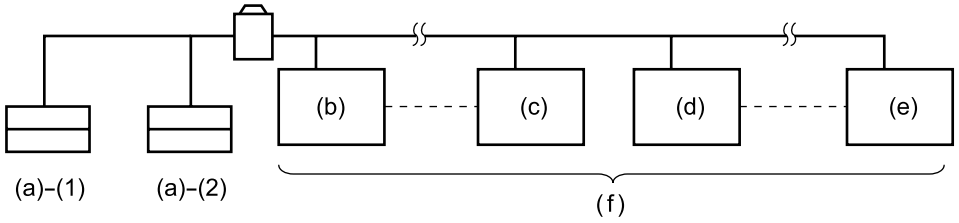
OPTIONAL ACCESSORIES



You can perform the normal operation, take off the malfunction contact point and unified start/stop by contact point, all by connecting this unit with the unification adaptor for computerized control. For further details, ask your DAIKIN dealer.

(a) Unification adaptor for computerized control (b) Central remote controller

DOUBLE CENTRAL REMOTE CONTROLLERS



With two central remote controllers, centralized control (indoor units) is possible from different locations.

(a) Central remote controller (b) Group No. 1 – 00 (c) Group No. 1 – 15 (d) Group No. 2 – 00
(e) Group No. 4 – 15 (f) A maximum of 64 groups

Note)

- For control alignment and settings for double central remote controllers, contact your dealer.

3P124623-8D

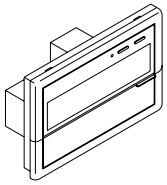
14.1.3 Installation

❶ COMPONENTS

Check the following components are included in this optional accessory before installation.

Installation screw (M4 × 16)	4
Operation manual	1
Installation manual	1
Installation table	1

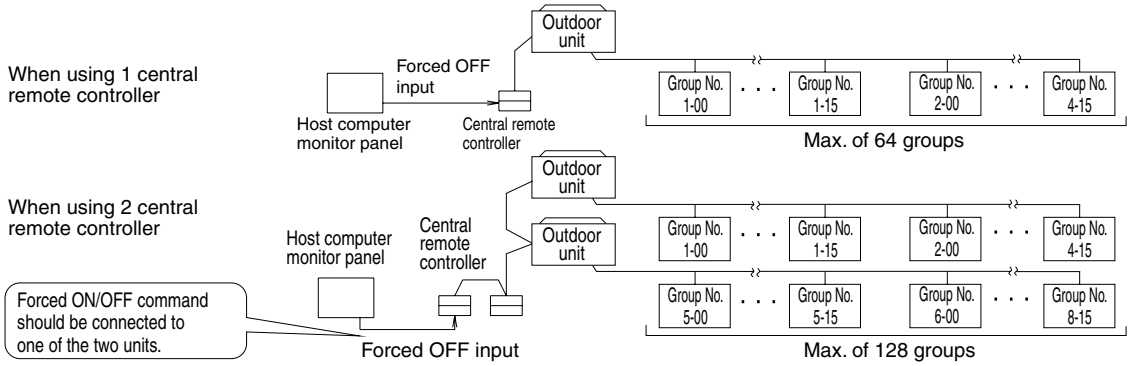
Body



When using this optional accessory an electric parts box of KJB311A is required.
For installation, a steel electric parts box to be embedded is necessary.

❷ SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

With the central remote controller, unified operation/stop is possible with up to a maximum 64 groups of indoor units.
When using 2 central remote controllers, unified operation is possible with up to a maximum 128 groups.
With this optional accessory, setting of control modes including operation, stop, operation controlled by timer, and ON/OFF control possible/impossible by remote controller can be set individually by zones while it enables to control and display the operation state such as set temperature.
It can be connected with the external key system, host computer monitor panel, etc., through forced OFF input (no-voltage normally open contactor).
A zone is a one or more groups together. In general, the same settings are used throughout a zone.



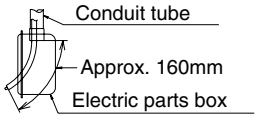
The central remote controller and the separately sold remote control adapter circuit board or group remote control adapter cannot be used together. See the D-BACS design guide for details.

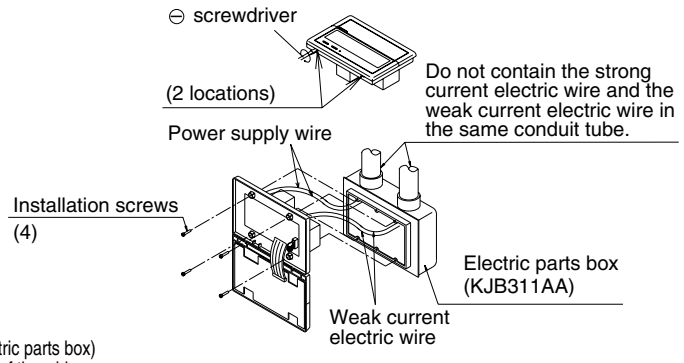
❸ INSTALLATION

(1) Open the upper part of remote controller.
Insert a ⊖ screwdriver(2 locations) into the recess between the upper part and the lower part of remote controller and twist the screwdriver lightly.

PC board is attached with both the upper and lower part of remote controller. Do not damage the board with the screwdriver.

(2) Open the upper part of remote controller and install the Electric parts box with the attached installation screws (M4 × 16).





NOTE) Suitable length of the electric wire is about 160mm. (from electric parts box)
If it is difficult to contain a long wiring, strip the sheathed part of the wiring.

❹ INITIAL SETTING

Setting (1) through (3) are initialized when power is turned ON, therefore complete settings BEFORE activating the power. (The positions of connectors and switches used for settings in this section are shown in Fig. 1.)

(1) Connector for setting master controller (X1A) (Provided with connector at factory set)

- When using only 1 central remote controller, do not disconnect the connector for setting master controller. (Use the unit with the connector in the state in which it was delivered.)
- When using multiple central remote controllers, or using the central remote controller in conjunction with the optional controllers for centralized control, makes settings as indicated in the below table.

Pattern of connection of optional controllers for centralized control			Connector for setting master controller (X1A) Setting, Removed		
Central remote controller	Unified ON/OFF controller	Schedule timer	Central remote controller	Unified ON/OFF controller	Schedule timer
1 to 4	1 to 16	1	Set one to "Used" and all the rest to "Not used"	Set all to "Not used"	"Not used"
		1			"Not used"

(Remove all the connectors for the central remote controller, the on/off controller, and the schedule timer when using the unit together with the Ve-UP controller, the master station II, the DMS interface, the payment management unit, or the parallel interface station.)

(2) Address setting

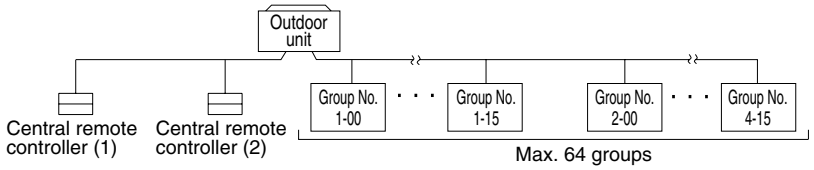
Two central remote controllers can be used as shown in ❷ SYSTEM CONFIGURATION, to control anywhere up to a max. 128 groups of indoor units. In this case, group address must be set. This is done with the switch for setting each address (SS3).

SS3 setting	Indoor unit address
SETTING EACH ADDRESS 5-00 ~ 8-15 (1-00 ~ 4-15)	To control indoor units from group Nos. 1-00 through 4-15

SS3 setting	Indoor unit address
SETTING EACH ADDRESS 5-00 ~ 8-15 (1-00 ~ 4-15)	To control indoor units from group Nos. 5-00 through 8-15

(3) MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting

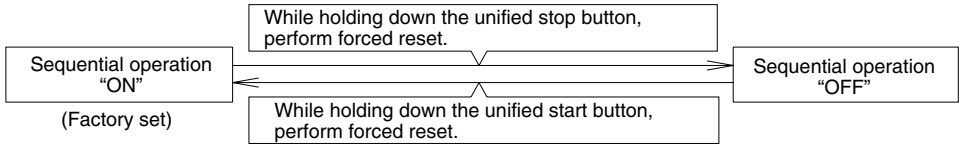
With two central remote controllers, centralized control (indoor units) is possible from different locations. In this kind of set-up, it is necessary to set the MAIN/SUB changeover switch.



One of the two central remote controllers (1) · (2) is set to "MAIN" while the other is set to "SUB".

(4) Setting of the sequential operation function

The central remote controller is equipped with a sequential operation function that sequentially turns indoor units on in 2-second intervals during unified operation. (Sequential operation is factory set to "ON.") To switch sequential operation ON or OFF, set as follows.



NOTE: The sequential operation function is designed to reduce the load on the power supply equipment, but does not guarantee that compressors will not be started simultaneously. You cannot therefore count on a capacity reduction effect by power supply equipment breaker selection.

(5) Forced reset switch

When changing the setting of the connector for setting master controller, etc., you can reset simply by setting it to the reset side once and returning to the normal side, without turning the power OFF.
(For normal operation, set the switch to the normal side.)

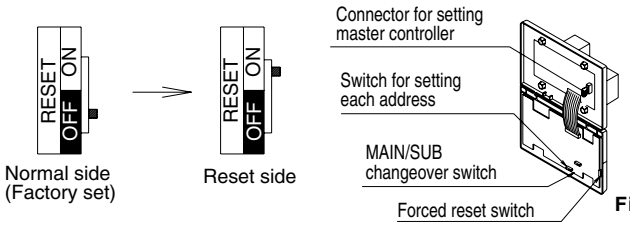
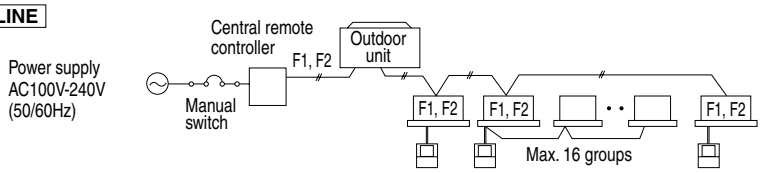


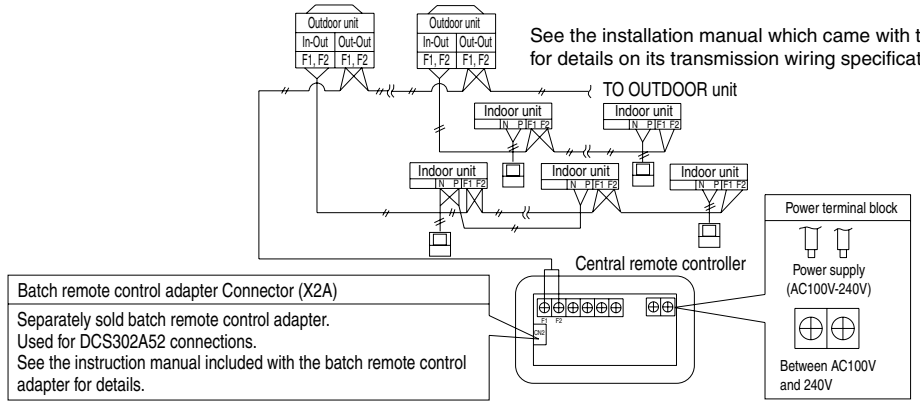
Fig. 1

5 ELECTRIC WIRING

WIRING OUTLINE



WIRING TO THE INDOOR UNIT AND OUTDOOR UNIT



Wiring specifications

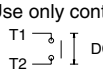
Power supply wiring	2mm²
Transmission wiring for control	0.75 – 1.25 mm² sheathed vinyl cord or cable (balanced type) – maximum length 1000 m (total overall wiring length 2000 m)
Manual switch	10A or 15A

Wire the indoor units to the outdoor units and between all power, indoor units, and remote controllers. See the instruction manual included with the indoor and outdoor units for details.

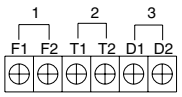
CONTROL TERMINAL STRIP

*1 For connecting Indoor unit (F1, F2)

*2 Forced OFF input (T1, T2)
None of the indoor units connected to the forced OFF input contact (non-voltage contact with minimal current) will operate when it is shut off.
Use only contactors which guarantee the minimum applicable load DC 16V, 10mA.



NOTE) Use instantaneous contactor of over 200m sec. energizing time, when necessary.



*3 For schedule timer (D1, D2)
Power can be supplied to the schedule timer (DST301B51· 61) separately sold. For details, refer to the installation manual of the schedule timer.

Wire *2 and *3 only when necessary.

(NOTE)
Do not connect the power supply wiring (100 to 240V) to the control terminal strip. If connected by mistake, it may damage or burn electrical parts of optional controllers for centralized control and indoor unit. It may result in serious danger. Be sure to check wirings before turning the power ON.

6 SETTING GROUP NO. FOR CENTRALIZED CONTROL

Set the group number of each group of the indoor unit from the remote controller. (In case of no remote controller, also connect the remote controller and set the group No. Then, remove the remote controller.)

(1) Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and central remote controller.
(Unless the power is ON, no setting can be made.)
Check that the installation and electrical wiring are correct before turning the power supply ON.
(When the power supply is turned ON, all LCD appear once and the unit may not accept the operation for about one minute with the display of "88".)

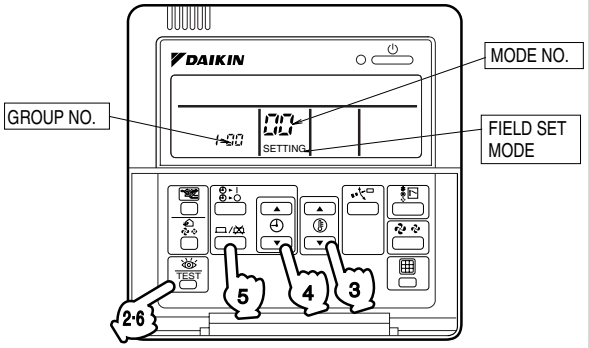
(2) While in the normal mode, hold down the " TEST " button for a minimum of 4 seconds.
The remote controller will enter the FIELD SET MODE.

(3) Select the MODE No. "00" with the " " button.

(4) Use the " " button to select the group No. for each group.
(Group numbers increase in the order of 1-00,1-01,···1-15, 2-00, ···8-15.)

(5) Press " " to set the selected group No.

(6) Press " TEST " to return to the NORMAL MODE.



NOTES)
- For simplified remote controller, see the installation table.
- See the instruction manuals which came with the Ventiair and adapters (i.e., multi-purpose adapters) for details on their Group No. settings.

NOTICE Enter the group No. and installation place of the indoor unit into the installation table in the operation manual.
Be sure to keep the operation manual for maintenance.

7 TEST OPERATION (Perform a test operation in the individual screen before registering zones.)

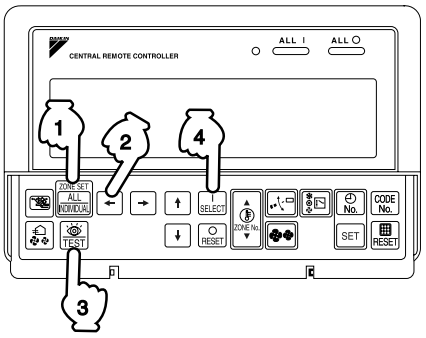
Before starting test operation, check that the power is supplied to the indoor and outdoor units, and central remote controller.

(1) Select the display "INDIVIDUALLY"
Press " " button to display "INDIVIDUALLY"

(2) Select the group to be tested.
Select the group No. with " " " " " " " " button.

(3) Press " TEST " button to select the test operation mode.
" TEST " is displayed.
" HOST " is displayed on the remote controller.

(4) Press " SELECT " button within 10 seconds after entering into the test operation mode.
Operation the unit for 30 minutes.
When pressing the " RESET " button, the unit stops operating.
If the operation lamp flashes, it indicates a malfunction.
Call the group of flashing display, confirm malfunction code, and check the source of malfunction.
(The operation manual lists all error codes, so refer to it.)



NOTES
- For test operation, refer to the installation manual of the outdoor unit.
- After turning the power supply ON, if the unit does not accept operation for two minutes or more with the display of "88", check the following points.
  - Check that setting of the connector for setting master controller is correct.
  - Check that the group No. for centralized control has been set.

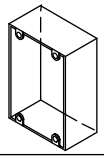
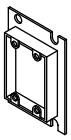
15. Electrical Box with Earth Terminal

15.1 KJB212AA / KJB311AA / KJB411AA

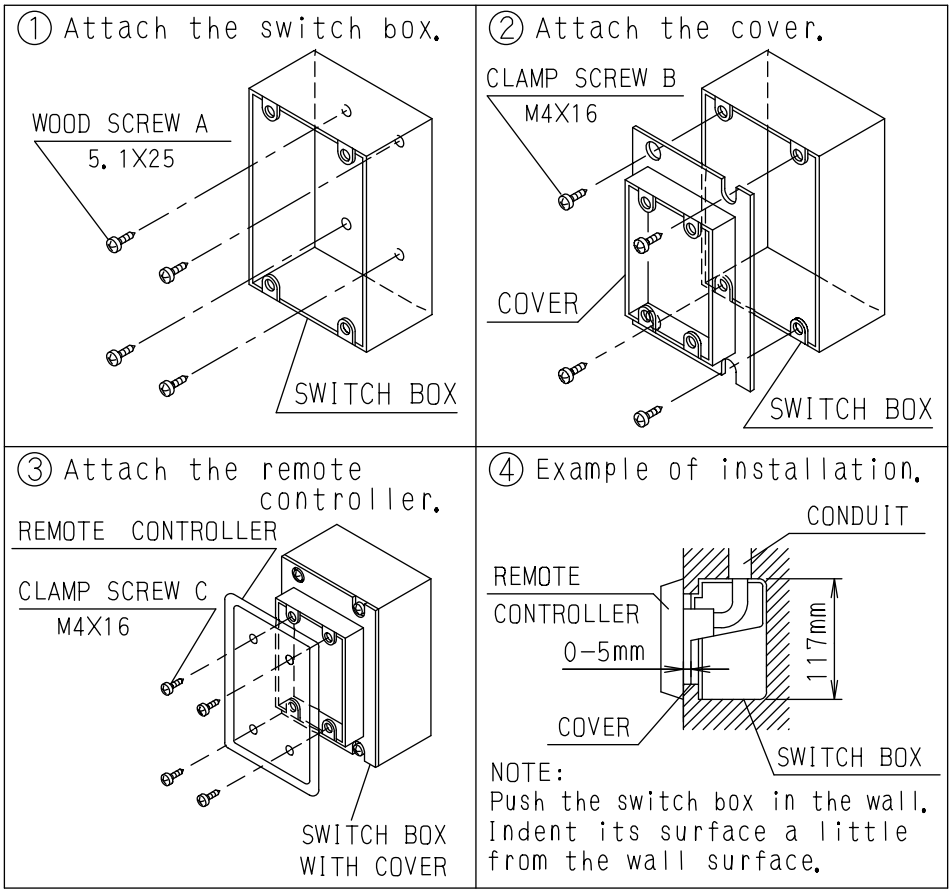


INSTALLATION POINT OF SWITCH BOX

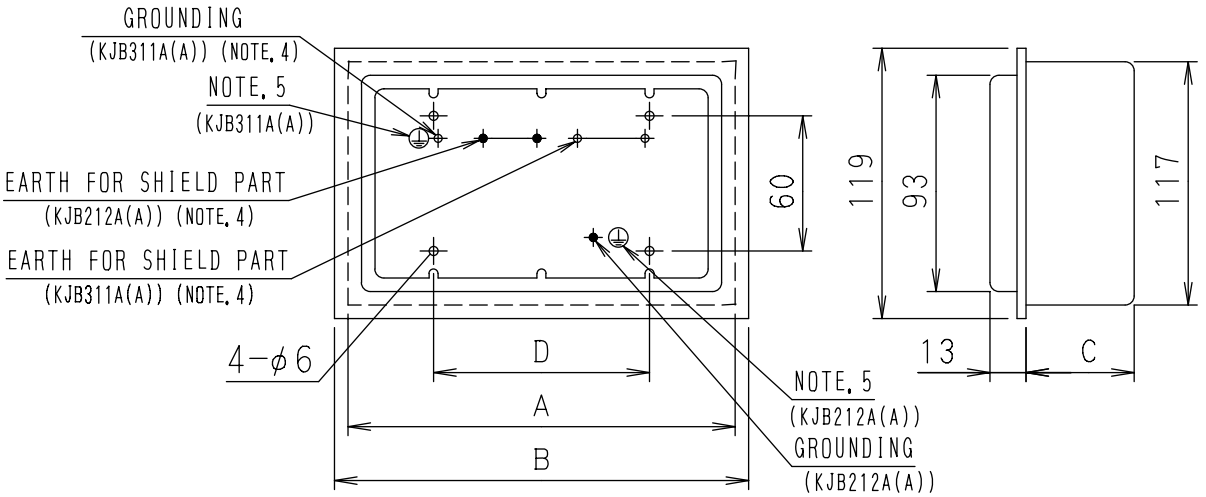
PARTS • Check the parts according to the list shown below.

NAME		SWITCH BOX	COVER	WOOD SCREW A (5.1×25)	CLAMP SCREW B (M4×16)	EARTH SCREW (M4×12)	C-CUP WASHER	LABEL FOR EARTH
Q	KJB212A(A)	1	1	4	4	3	2	1
T	KJB311A(A)	1	1	4	4	3	3	1
Y	KJB411A	1	1	4	4	—	—	—
SHAPE								

INSTALLATION



C: 3PA34878C



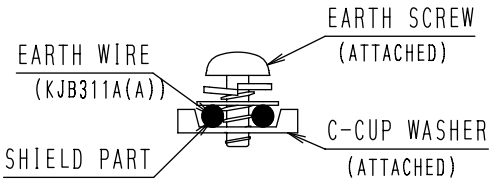


Fig. 1

MODEL	SIZE (mm)			
	A	B	C	D
KJB212A(A)	136	138	44	70
KJB311A(A)	182	184	44	110
KJB411A	228	230	54	155

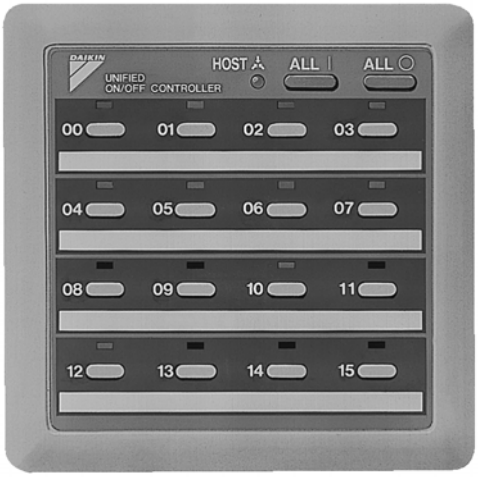
NOTES: 1. Refer to the installation of each remote controller.
2. Do not bind the lead wires for switch box with the power cord and the link wiring.
This may cause erratic operation.
3. The remote controller and the clamp screw C are one kit.
They are sold separately and attach to the switch box.
4. Ground the shield part of shielded wire or earth wire (only KJB311A(A)) as shown in the Fig. 1.
5. Stick the label for earth attached to the equipment.

C: 3PA34878C

16. Unified ON/OFF Controller

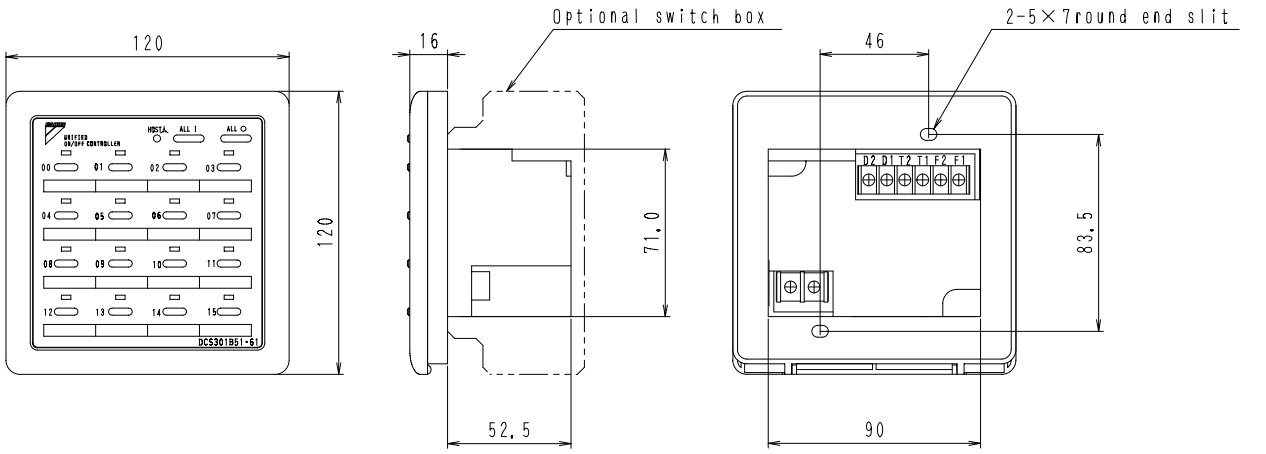
16.1 DCS301BA61

Turns up to 16 groups of indoor units (max. 128 units) on/off (operation/stop) by individual group or all at once, and lets you check display of operation/malfunction at the same time.



- For a maximum of 16 groups of indoor units (max. 128 units), unified operation/stop or individual operation/stop can be performed with this optional accessory. Also allows you check operation/error display at a glance.
- By combining with a central remote controller and schedule timer, you can construct a system that matches the size and use of the building.
- Up to 8 units connectable within 1 system.
  Up to 16 units in the double central control mode.
- Features thin design of a mere 16mm in thickness. (Uses JIS recessed box for 2.)
- Wiring can be up to 1km in length. Applicable wiring methods include bus and star in addition to crossover type.
- Can be used in combination with other D-BACS equipment.

Dimensions Unit (mm)



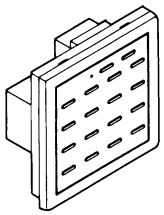
3D050339

16.1.1 Installation

1 COMPONENTS

Check the following components are included in this optional accessory before installation.

Body



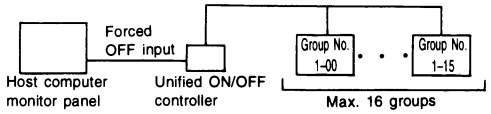
Installation screw (M4 x 16)	2
Operation manual	1
Installation manual	2
Installation table	2
Switch display sticker	1

For installation, a steel electrical box to be embedded is necessary.

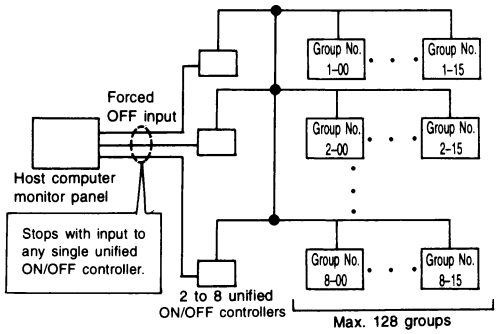
2 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

This unified ON/OFF controller enables individual and unified operation/stop for a maximum of 16 groups of indoor units. With 2 to 8 unified ON/OFF controllers, individual and unified control is possible with up to a maximum 128 groups of indoor units.

- When using 1 unified ON/OFF controller



- When using 2 to 8 unified ON/OFF controllers



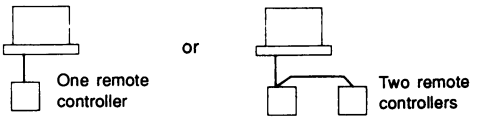
(This optional accessory can not be used in conjunction with wiring adaptor for electrical appendices (optional accessory).)

The groups of indoor units are as follows:

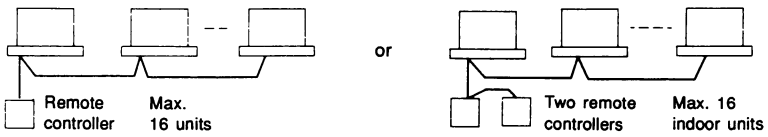
① One indoor unit without remote controller



② One indoor unit controlled by one or two remote controllers



③ A maximum of 16 indoor units controlled in groups by one or two remote controllers



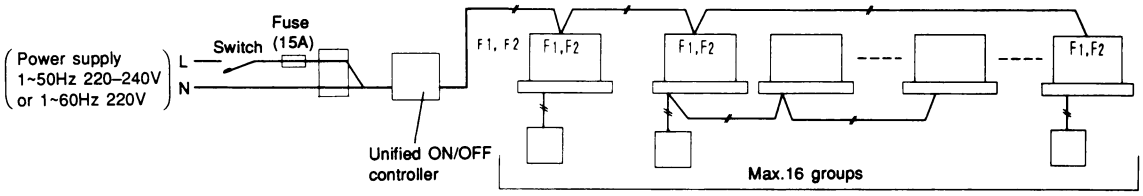
1P162827

3 ELECTRIC WIRING

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

- All wiring, components and materials to be procured on the site must comply with the applicable local and national codes.
- Use copper conductors only.
- All field wiring and components must be provided by licensed electrician.
- Unit shall be grounded in compliance with the applicable local and national codes.
- Fit the power supply wiring with a fuse and a switch.
- After wiring work, check power to the equipment shuts OFF when switch is shut OFF.

WIRING OUTLINE



Wiring specification

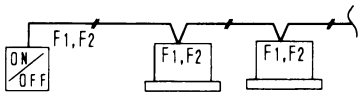
	Type	Size
Power supply wiring	,H05VV-U3G	(NOTE 1)
Transmission wiring	Sheathed wire (2 wire) (NOTE 2)	0.75 – 1.25 mm^2

NOTES) 1. The size of power supply wiring must comply with the applicable national and local codes.
2. Allowable length of transmission wiring is as follows. Max. 1000m (Total wiring length: 2000m)

Connect the wiring between indoor and outdoor units, indoor/outdoor units and power supply, and indoor units and remote controllers.
For details, refer to the installation manuals of indoor and outdoor units.

EXAMPLES OF WIRING FOR TRANSMISSION

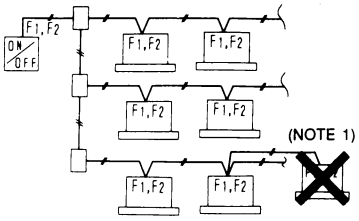
① Series wiring



1P162827

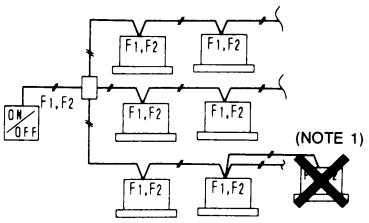
② Bus type wiring (Can be branched up to 16 branchings)

Example of 3 branchings



③ Star type wiring (Can be branched up to 16 branchings)

Example of 3 branchings



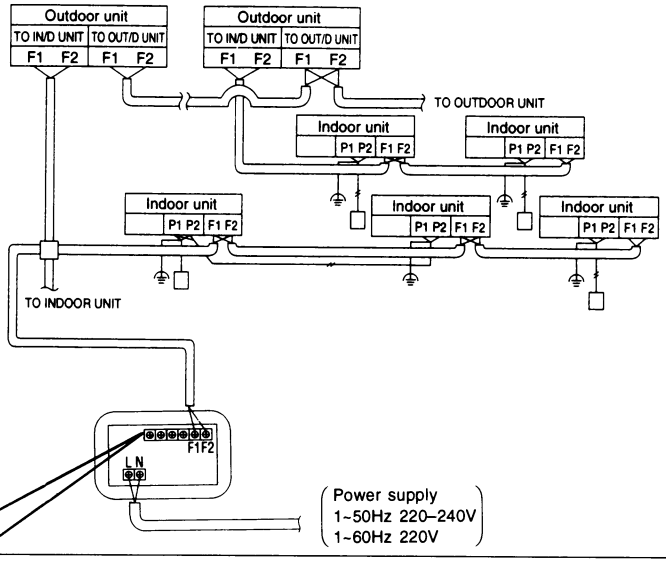
ON/OFF : Unified ON/OFF controller

Terminal board : (Part to be procured in the field)

: Indoor unit

NOTES) 1. No branching is allowed after branching.
2. Use a relay terminal board (part to be procured in the field) to branch more than 3 control wirings from the same terminal board.

WIRING TO THE INDOOR UNIT AND OUTDOOR UNIT



CONTROL TERMINAL STRIP

✱1 For connecting indoor unit (F1, F2)

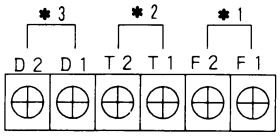
✱2 Forced OFF input (T1, T2)
While the forced OFF input (no voltage contactor, for micro current) is ON (energized), all the connected indoor units are stopped and can not be operated.
Use only contactors which guarantee the minimum applicable load ⎓ 16V, 10mA.

T1 T2 ⎓ 16V

NOTE) Use instantaneous contactor of over 200msec. energizing time, when necessary.

✱3 For schedule timer (D1, D2)
Power can be supplied to the schedule timer (DST301B61/optional accessory). For details, refer to the installation manual of the schedule timer.

Wire ✱2 and ✱3 only when necessary.



(NOTE)
Do not connect the power supply wiring (220 to 240V) to the control terminal strip. If connected by mistake, it may damage or burn electrical parts of optional controllers for centralized control and indoor unit. It may result in serious danger. Be sure to check wirings before turning the power ON.

1P162827

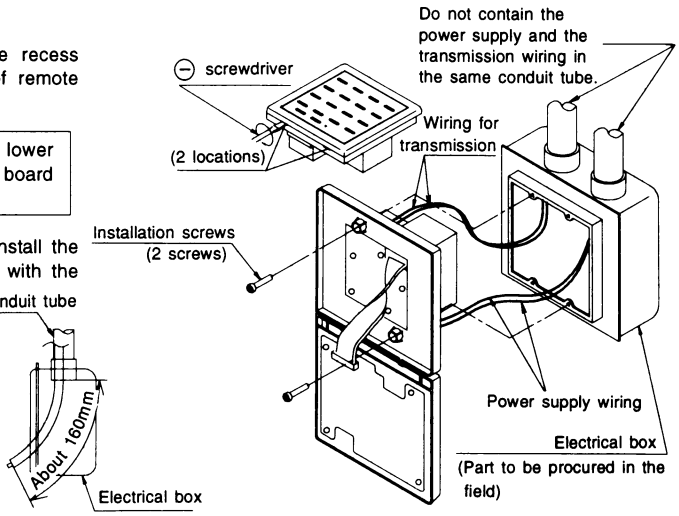
4 INSTALLATION

① Open the upper part of remote controller.
Insert a ⊖ screwdriver (2 locations) into the recess between the upper part and the lower part of remote controller and twist the screwdriver lightly.

PC board is attached with both the upper and lower part of remote controller. Do not damage the board with the screwdriver.

② Open the upper part of remote controller and install the electrical box (part to be procured in the field) with the attached installation screws (M4 x 16).

NOTE) Suitable length of the electric wire is about 160mm from the inlet of the electrical box. If it is difficult to contain a long wiring, strip the sheathed part of the wiring.



5 INITIAL SETTING

Setting ① through ③ are initialized when power is turned ON, therefore complete settings BEFORE activating the power.

① Connector for setting master controller (X1A) (Provided with connector at factory set)
- When using 1 unified ON/OFF controller, do not disconnect the connector for setting master controller. (Use the unit with the connector in the state in which it was delivered.)
- When using multiple unified ON/OFF controllers, or using the unified ON/OFF controller in conjunction with other optional controllers for centralized control, makes settings as indicated in the right table.

1P162827

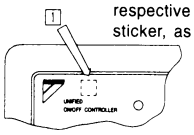
Pattern of connection of optional controllers for centralized control			Connector for setting master controller (X1A) Settings		
Unified ON/OFF controller	Central remote controller	Schedule timer	Unified ON/OFF controller	Central remote controller	Schedule timer
1 to 16			Set one to "Used" and all the rest to "Not used".		
	1 to 4		Set all to "Not used".	(Note)	
		1	Set one to "Used" and all the rest to "Not used".		"Not used"
	1 to 4	1	Set all to "Not used".	(Note)	"Not used"

(Note) For instructions on how to set the connector for setting master controller on the central remote controller, see the installation manual provided with the central remote controller.

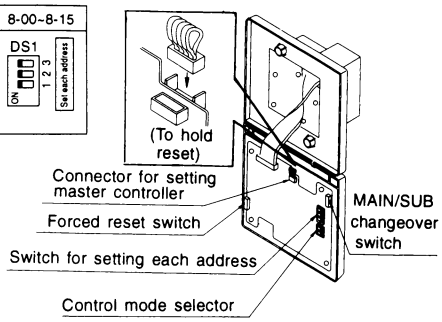
② Switch for setting each address (DS1)
These switches are used to set group control address.
Groups Nos. 1–00 through 1–15 are grouped in the same control group when the unit is shipped from the factory.

Each Address	1-00~1-15	2-00~2-15	3-00~3-15	4-00~4-15	5-00~5-15	6-00~6-15	7-00~7-15	8-00~8-15
DS1 setting	DS1 ON 1 2 3 Set each address (Factory setting)	DS1 ON 1 2 3 Set each address	DS1 ON 1 2 3 Set each address	DS1 ON 1 2 3 Set each address	DS1 ON 1 2 3 Set each address	DS1 ON 1 2 3 Set each address	DS1 ON 1 2 3 Set each address	DS1 ON 1 2 3 Set each address

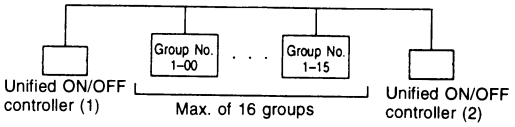
After setting, attach the number seal applicable to respective control range of the attached switch display sticker, as shown in the diagram below.



(Example)
In the case of 1-00 to 1-15, attach 1

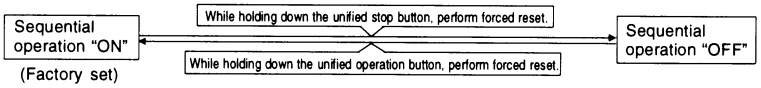


③ MAIN/SUB changeover switch setting
With two unified ON/OFF controllers, centralized control (indoor units) is possible from different locations. In this kind of set-up, it is necessary to set the MAIN/SUB changeover switch.



One of the two unified ON/OFF controllers (1)•(2) is set to "MAIN" while the other is set to "SUB".

④ Setting of the sequential operation function
The unified ON/OFF controller is equipped with a sequential operation function that sequentially turns indoor units on in 2-second intervals during unified operation. (Sequential operation is factory set to "ON.") To switch sequential operation ON or OFF, set as follows.



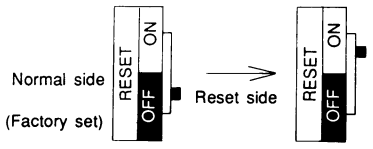
NOTE: The sequential operation function is designed to reduce the load on the power supply equipment, but does not guarantee that compressors will not be started simultaneously. You cannot therefore count on a capacity reduction effect by power supply equipment breaker selection.

⑤ Control mode selector (DS2)
The following four patterns of control mode can be set.

Control mode	Individual	Centralized	Timer operation possible by remote controller	ON/OFF control impossible by remote controller
Content	Operation/stop is controlled by both unified ON/OFF controller and remote controller.	After operated by unified ON/OFF controller, operation/stop is freely controlled by remote controller until stopped by unified ON/OFF controller.	When used in conjunction with schedule timer, operation/stop is controlled freely by remote controller during the set time but operation is not available when schedule timer is ON.	Operation/stop is controlled by unified ON/OFF controller only. (This unit can not be operated/stopped by remote controller.)
DS2 setting	DS2 2 1 CONTROL MODE ON (Factory set)	DS2 2 1 CONTROL MODE ON	DS2 2 1 CONTROL MODE ON	DS2 2 1 CONTROL MODE ON

NOTES)
- ■ indicates the position of switches.
- Set control mode before turning power supply ON.
- When used in conjunction with central remote controller, the control modes of the central remote controller has the priority.

⑥ Forced reset switch (SS1)
When changing the setting of the connector for setting master controller, etc., you can reset simply by setting it to the reset side once and returning to the normal side, without turning the power OFF.
(For normal operation, set the switch to the normal side.)



1P162827

6 SETTING GROUP NO. FOR CENTRALIZED CONTROL

Set the group number of each group of the indoor unit from the remote controller. (In case of no remote controller, also connect the remote controller and set the group No. Then, remove the remote controller.)

① Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and unified ON/OFF controller. (Unless the power is ON, no setting can be made.)
Check that the installation and electrical wiring are correct before turning the power supply ON.
When the power supply is turned ON, all LCD appear once and the unit may not accept the operation for about one minute with the display of " HOST " flashing (an interval of ON, ON, and OFF).

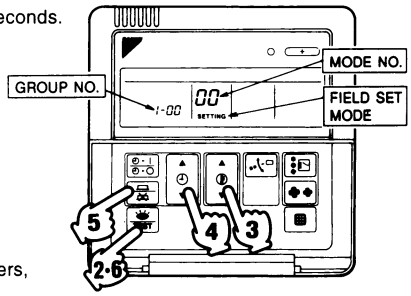
② While in the normal mode, hold down the " TEST " button for a minimum of 4 seconds.
The remote controller will enter the FIELD SET MODE.

③ Select the MODE No. " 00 " with the " ⏱ " button.

④ Use the " ⏱ " button to select the group No. for each group.
(Group numbers increase in the order of 1-00, 1-01, ... 1-15, 2-00, ... 8-15.)

⑤ Press " ▭ " to set the selected group No.

⑥ Press " TEST " to return to the NORMAL MODE.



NOTES) • For simplified remote controller, see the installation table.
• For setting group No. of HRV and wiring adaptor for other air conditioners, etc., refer to the instruction manual attached.

NOTICE Enter the group No. and installation place of the indoor unit into the attached installation table. Be sure to keep the installation table with the operation manual for maintenance.

7 CONFIRMING OPERATION

Before starting test operation, supply power to the indoor units, outdoor units, and unified ON/OFF controller and press the ON/OFF BUTTON.
If the operation lamp flashes, it indicates a malfunction in the indoor unit of the applicable group.
If the display of " HOST " flashes, it indicates a malfunction in the optional controllers for centralized control. Check for such malfunctions.

NOTES ○ For test operation of indoor and outdoor units, refer to the installation manual attached with the outdoor unit.
○ After turning the power supply ON, if the unit does not accept operation for two minutes or more with the display of " HOST " flashing, check the following points.
• Check that setting of the connector for setting master controller is correct.
• Check that the group No. for centralized control has been set.

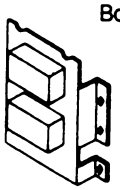
1P162827

17. Noise Filter (For Electromagnetic Interface Use only)

17.1 KEK26-1A

1 COMPONENTS

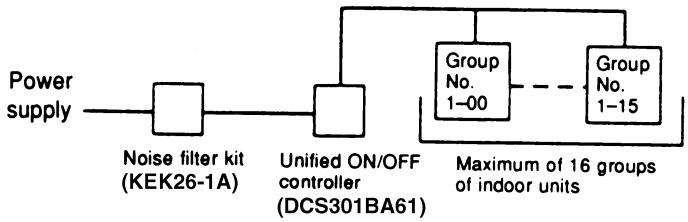
- Check the following components are included in this optional accessory before installation.

 Body	Installation screw 4
	Clamp 2
	Relay harness 1
	Installation manual 2

- Store this optional accessory in the control box.
- When supplying a control box at site, prepare a control box whose dimensions are equal to or larger than the figures shown below.
  Wide x Height x Depth = 136 x 117 x 44 mm

2 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

- **When connecting this optional accessory to the unified ON/OFF controller for VRV series, it is applicable to EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (European Directive).**



The groups of indoor units are as follows:

① One indoor unit without remote controller



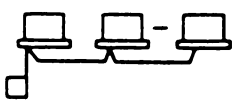
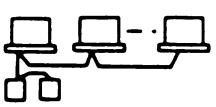
Without remote controller

② One indoor unit controlled by one or two remote controllers


or


One remote controller　　Two remote controllers

③ A maximum of 16 indoor units controlled in groups by one or two remote controllers


or


One remote controller
Max. 16 units

Two remote controllers
Max. 16 indoor units

C: 2PA54937C

3 ELECTRIC WIRING

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

- All wiring, components and materials to be procured on the site must comply with the applicable local and national codes.
- Use copper conductors only.
- All wiring and components must be provided by licensed electrician.
- Unit shall be grounded in compliance with the applicable local and national codes.
- Fit the power supply wiring with a fuse and a switch.
- Before wiring work, turn the switch OFF and confirm that power to the equipment shuts OFF.

〈 **Wiring specification** 〉

	Type	Size
Power supply wiring	H05VV-U3G	(NOTE 1)
Transmission wiring	(NOTE 2)	0.75–1.25mm^2

NOTE) 1. The size of power supply wiring must comply with the applicable national and local codes.
2. Transmission wiring must comply with the condition as follows:
① When indoor unit is H series. Use shield wire (2 wire).
② When indoor unit is G series. Use sheathed wire (2 wire).

- You may also use the sheathed wire if the above condition ① is satisfied, but remember that the sheathed wire fails to comply with EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) (European Directive).
- When using sheathed wire, EMC conforms to Japanese standards stipulated in the Electric Appliance Regulatory act.
- The grounding of transmission line as shown in the figure 1 is not required if the sheathed wire is used.

WIRING SPECIFICATION

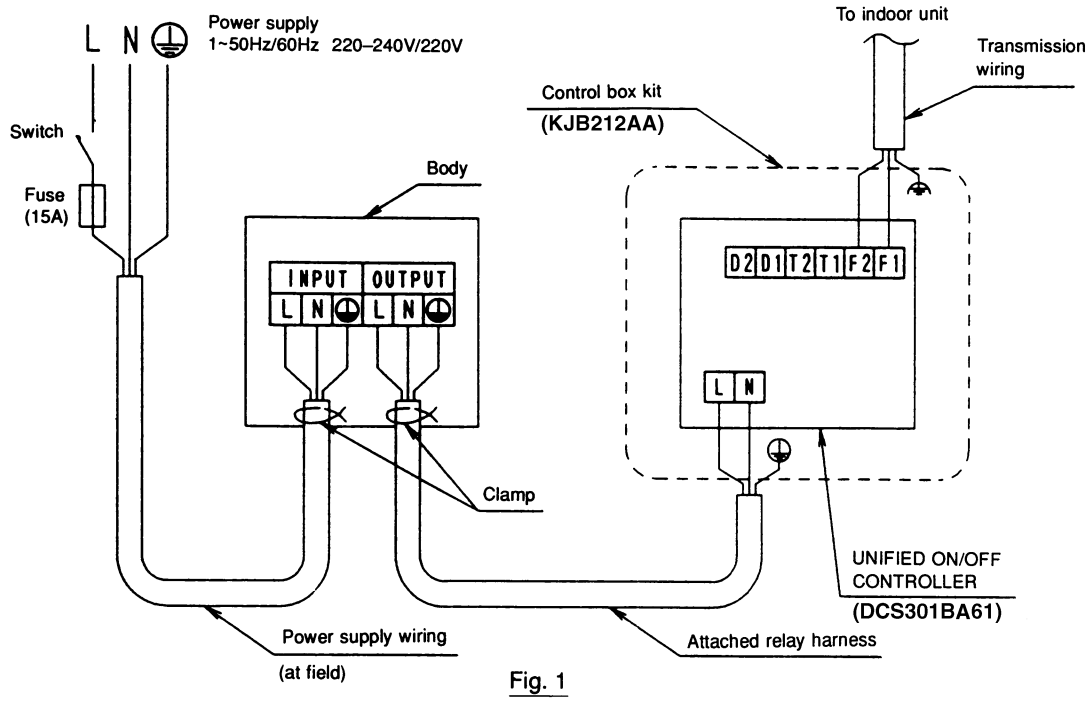


Fig. 1

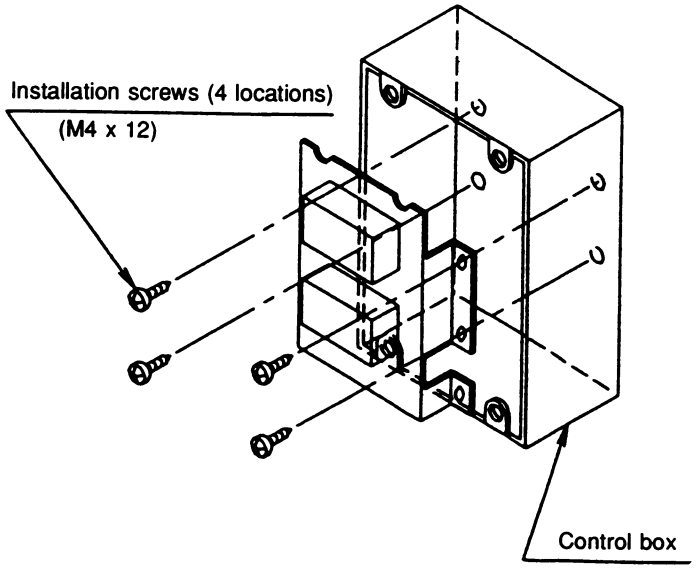
NOTE

- Cramp the field supplied wirings with the body, using the attached tie wraps.

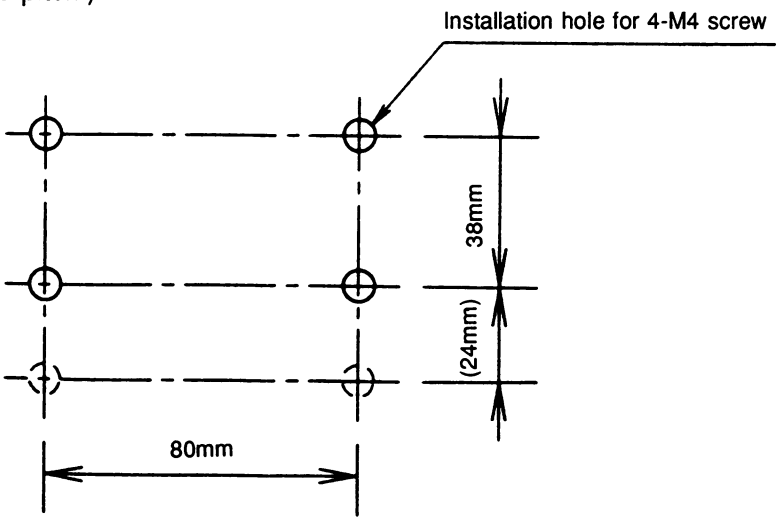
C: 2PA54937C

4 INSTALLATION

Install this optional accessory on the control box (field supplied part) with the attached installation screws.



〈 Installation hole pitch 〉



NOTE

- Lower two installation holes are reserves. Generally, use the upper 4 holes to install this optional accessory.

C: 2PA54937C

18. Schedule Timer

18.1 DST301BA61

Enables you to connect and control weekly schedule for up to 128 indoor units all together.

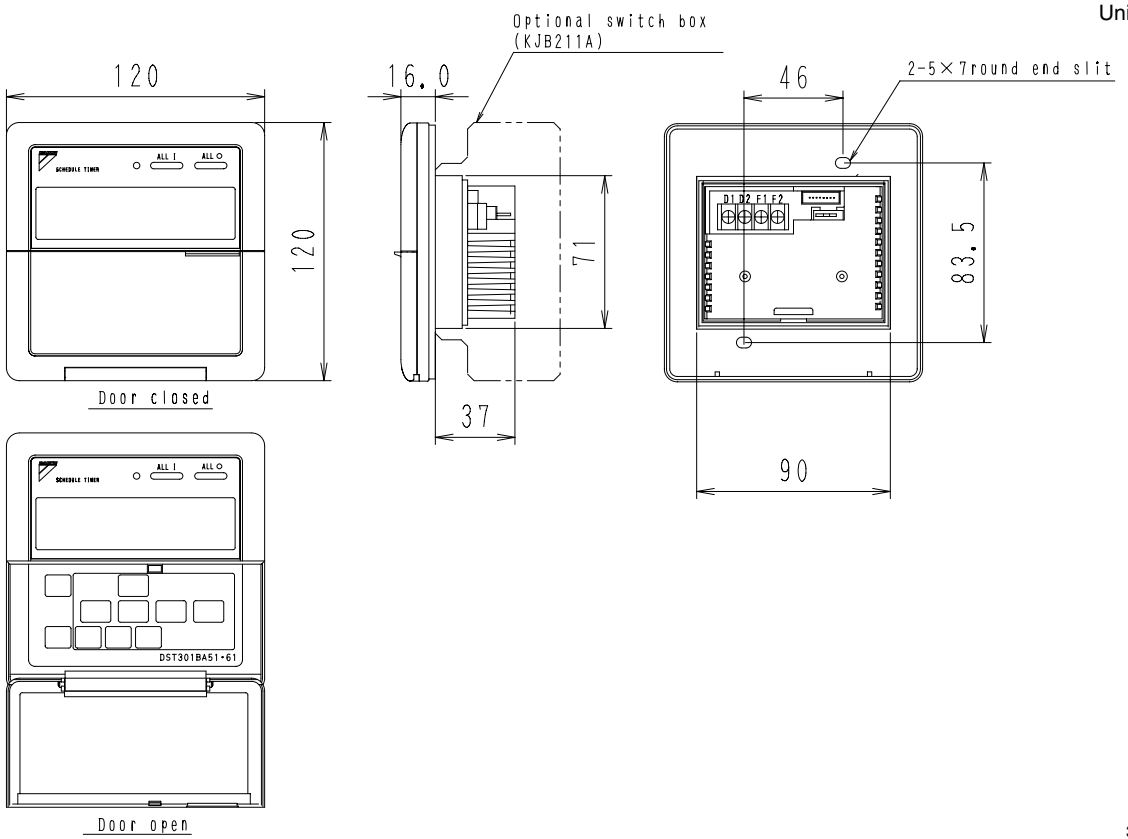


- Simultaneous control of up to 128 indoor units is managed by a week schedule.
- The start and stop time for twice a day can be set for the week in increments of 1 minute.
- By combining with a central remote controller and schedule timer, you can construct a system that matches the size and use of the building.
- If used together with a central remote controller, you can set up to 8 schedule patterns which can be distributed among zones as desired using the central remote controller.
- Is equipped with a compensation function for power failure up to 48 hours.
- Features thin design of a mere 16 mm in thickness. (Uses JIS recessed box for 2.)
- Wiring can be up to 1 km in length. Applicable wiring methods include bus and star in addition to crossover type.
- Can be used in combination with other D-BACS equipment.

18.1.1 Dimensions

Schedule Timer
DST301BA61

Unit (mm)



3D049544

18.1.2 Names and Functions (DST301BA61)

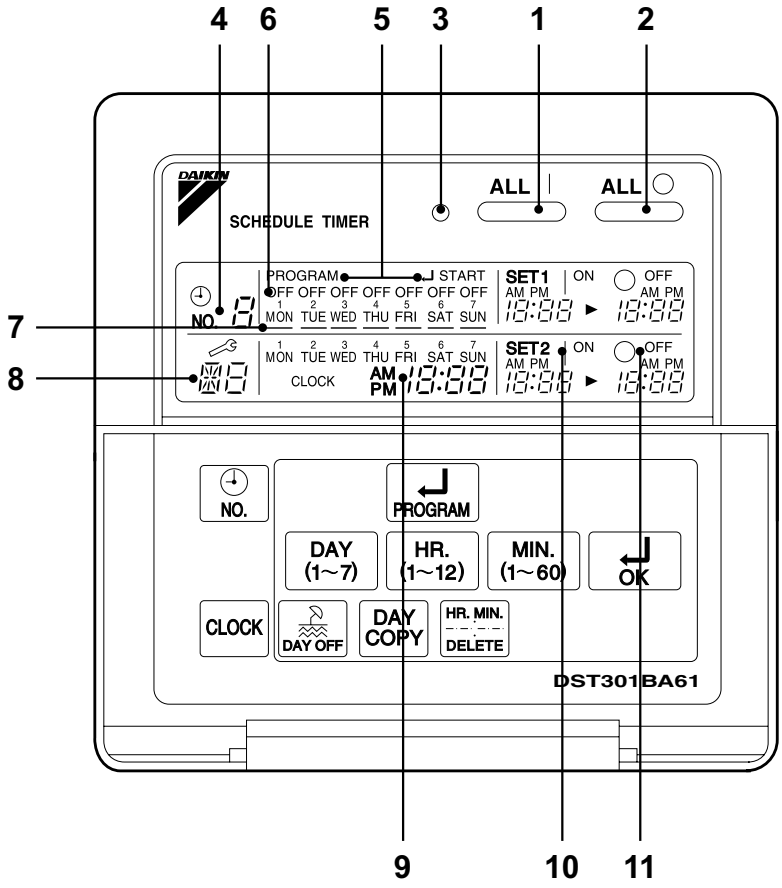


Fig. 1

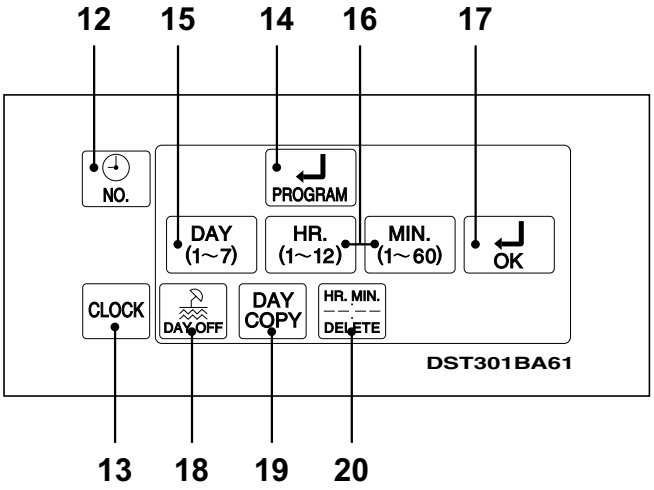


Fig. 2

3P124623-5C

18.1.3 Names and Functions of Operating Section (Fig. 1, 2)

1	**UNIFIED OPERATION BUTTON “ ALL ”**
	Press this button to perform the unified operation regardless of the No. of programmed time.
2	**UNIFIED STOP BUTTON “ ALL ”**
	Press this button to perform the unified stop regardless of the No. of programmed time.
3	**OPERATION LAMP (RED)**
	The light turns on during the operation of the indoor unit.
4	**DISPLAY “ NO. 8 ” (TIME NO.)**
	Displays the time No. only when used in conjunction with the central remote controller.
5	**DISPLAY “PROGRAM ↵START.” (PROGRAMMING START)**
	The light turns on when the timer is programmed.
6	**DISPLAY “ OFF ” (HOLIDAY SETTING)**
	Lights above the day of the week set as holiday. The operation controlled by timer is not available on that day.
7	**DISPLAY “ — ” (SETTING OF DAYS OF A WEEK)**
	Flashes below the day of the week programmed.
8	**DISPLAY “ ” (MALFUNCTION CODE)**
	Displays the contents of malfunction during the stop due to malfunction.
9	**DISPLAY “ MON TUE WED THU FRI SAT SUN CLOCK AM PM 18:88 ” (PRESENT TIME)**
	Displays the present day of the week and time.
10	**DISPLAY “ AM PM 18:88 ON ” (PROGRAMMED TIME OF SYSTEM START)**
	Displays the time programmed to start.
11	**DISPLAY “ OFF AM PM 18:88 ” (PROGRAMMED TIME OF SYSTEM OFF)**
	Displays the time programmed to stop.
12	**TIME NO. BUTTON “ NO. ”**
	Press this button to select time No.
13	**CLOCK ADJUSTING BUTTON “ CLOCK ”**
	Press this button to set the present time.
14	**PROGRAMMING START BUTTON “ PROGRAM ”**
	Press this button to set or check the No. of programmed time. Press it again after you are through with the program.
15	**BUTTON FOR SELECTING DAYS OF A WEEK “ DAY (1~7) ”**
	Press this button to select the day of the week.
16	**HOUR/MINUTE BUTTON “ HR. (1~12) MIN. (1~60) ”**
	Press this button to adjust the present time and the programmed time.
17	**TIMER ON BUTTON “ OK ”**
	Press this button to set the present time and the programmed time.
18	**HOLIDAY SETTING BUTTON “ DAY OFF ”**
	Press this button to set holidays.
19	**BUTTON FOR COPYING PROGRAM OF PREVIOUS DAY “ DAY COPY ”**
	Use this button to set the No. of programmed time same as that of the previous day.
20	**PROGRAM CANCELING BUTTON “ HR. MIN. DELETE ”**
	Use this button to set the programmed time to cancel. The display shows “ – ; – – ”.

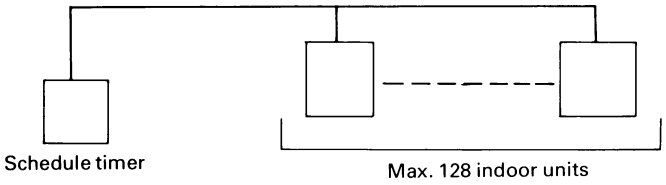
(Note)
1. Please note that all the displays in the figure appear for explanation purpose or when the cover is open.

3P124623-5C

18.1.4 System Configuration and Electric Wiring

With a schedule timer, you can set on/off time twice a day by units of 1 week for up to 128 indoor units.

■ System Configuration



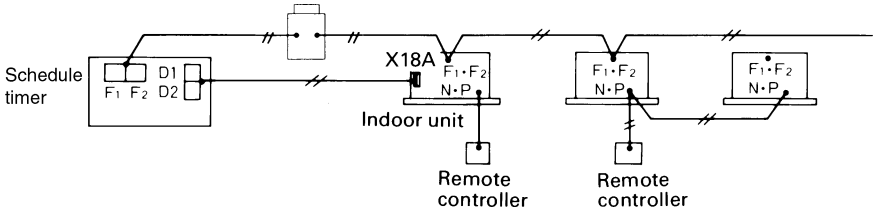
If using the schedule timer alone, you don't have to set the centralized control group No. for group control.

■ Transmission Wiring

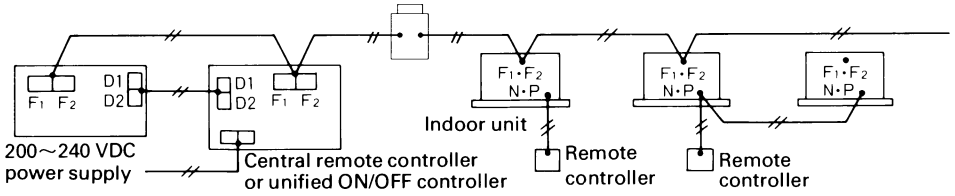
<Indoor Unit Wiring>

1. If using the schedule timer alone:

■ For the schedule timer's power supply, connect the schedule timer (D1, D2) with the connector (X18A) on the indoor unit PC board by crimped style terminal with the attached electric wire.



2. If using in combination with other optional controllers for centralized control:



Transmission wiring for control: 0.75~1.25 mm^2 sheathed vinyl cord or cable (2 wire) ..... Max. 1,000 m (Total Max. 2,000 m)

<Transmission Wiring Connection Example>

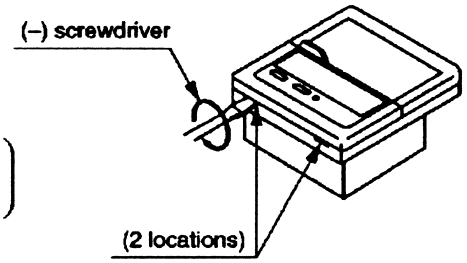
1 series wiring, 2 bus wiring, and 3 star wiring are the same as with the central remote controller.

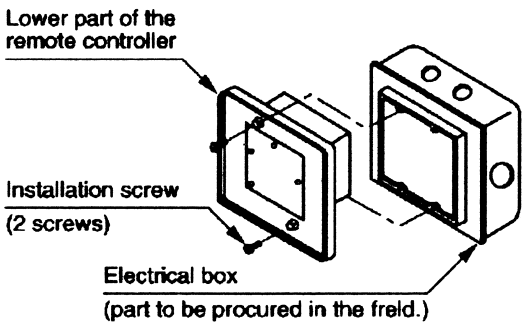
18.1.5 Installation and Initial Setting

1. Remove the upper part of the remote controller.

- Insert a (–) screwdriver (2 locations) into the recess between the upper part and the lower part of the remote controller and twist the screwdriver lightly.

  (The PC board is attached with the upper part of the remote controller. Do not damage electric parts with a screwdriver, etc.)





- Attach the lower part to the electrical box (part to be procured in the field) with the provided installation screws.

  (Select a flat face as a installation place. Do not tighten the installation screws excessively not to damage the lower part of the remote controller.)

  For part to be procured in the field electrical box, use KJB212AA (optional accessory).

3P162015A

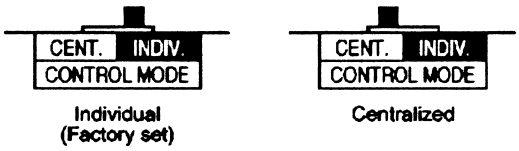
2. Initial setting

① Setting connector for individual use (X1A) (Factory set : OFF) (Set for individual use only)

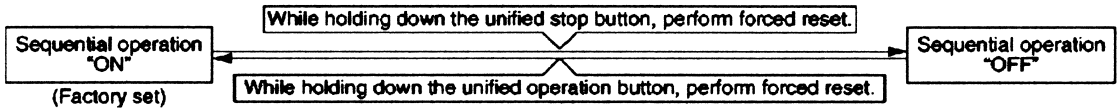
- For individual use of schedule timer
  Insert the connector attached with the body case on the PC board.
- For combined use with other optional controllers for centralized control
  Do not change the factory setting.

② Control mode selector (SS2) (Set for individual use only)
By changing the switch, setting mode of individual and centralized operation is available.

Note) When used with other optional controllers, control mode of central remote controller and unified ON/OFF controller have the priority.

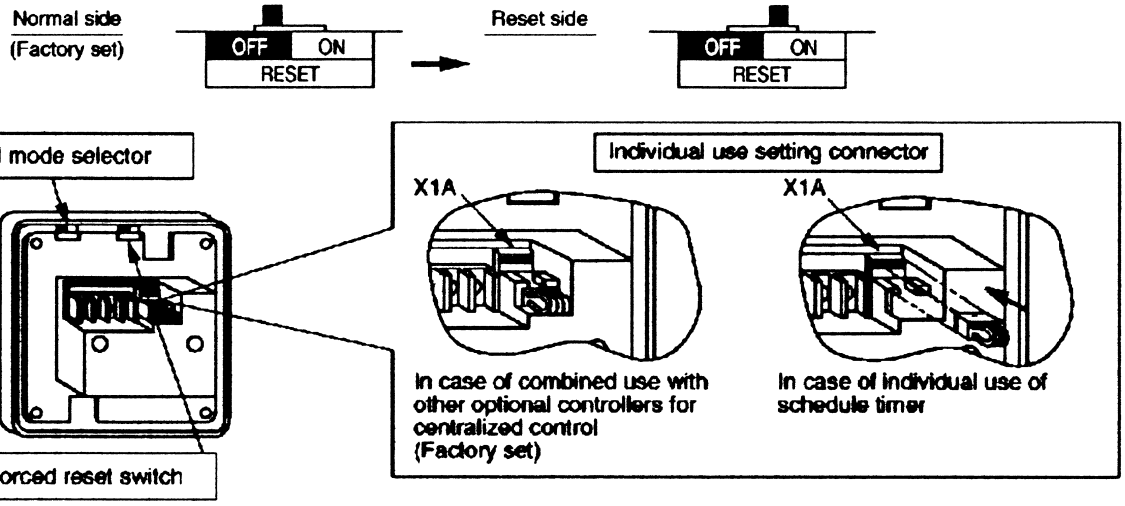


③ Setting of the sequential operation function
The schedule timer is equipped with a sequential operation function that sequentially turns indoor units on in 2-second intervals during unified operation.
(Sequential operation is factory set to "ON.")
To switch sequential operation ON or OFF, set as follows.



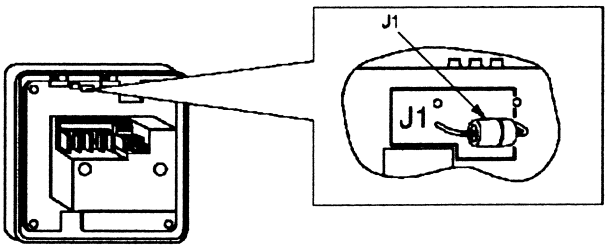
Note) The sequential operation function is designed to reduce the load on the power supply equipment, but does not guarantee that compressors will not be started simultaneously. You cannot therefore count on a capacity reduction effect by power supply equipment breaker selection.

④ Forced reset switch (SS1)
When changing the setting of the connector for individual use, etc., the switch can be reset simply by setting it to the reset side once and returning to the normal side. This procedure enables to reset without turning off the power. (Set the normal side at normal operation.)



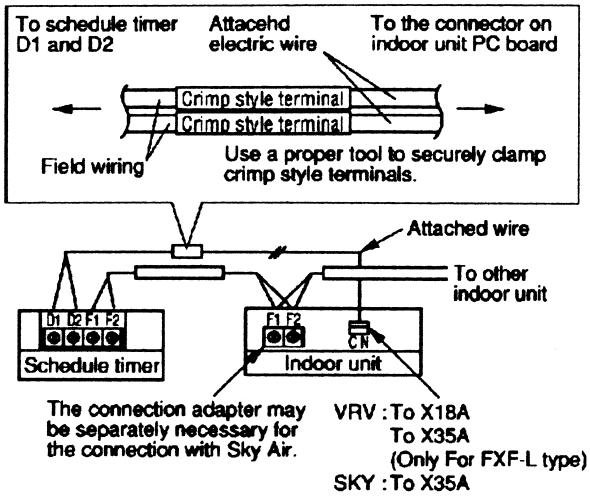
3P162015A

⑤ Setting for special function
When you want to have a programmed operation of a part of indoor units by using only schedule timer, cut off J1 and supply the power again.
You can have a programmed operation of the indoor units set the address for central control by local remote controller.



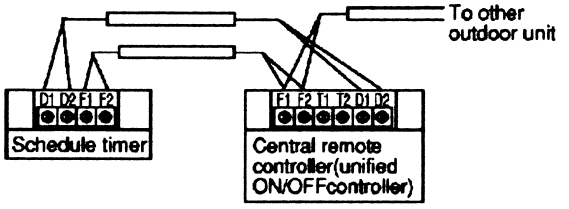
3. Transmission wiring

- In case of individual use of schedule timer
  Connect terminals of the schedule timer (F1. F2) with terminals of the indoor unit (F1. F2). Connect terminals of the schedule timer (D1. D2) and the connector on the indoor unit PC board, using the attached electric wire and crimp style terminals.
  Prevent the connection part of crimp style terminal from getting out of the electric parts box of indoor unit.
- In case of combined use with other optional controllers for centralized control
  Connect terminals of the schedule timer (F1, F2, D1, D2) and the terminals of the central remote controller (or unified ON/OFF controller).



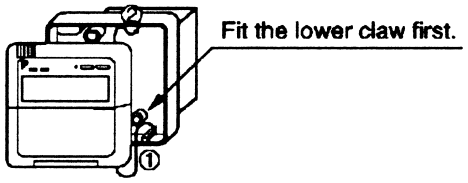
Wiring specifications

	F1, F2	D1, D2
Wiring	Sheathed wire (2-wire)	Sheathed wire (2-wire)
Gauge	0.75 ~ 1.25mm²	0.75 ~ 1.25mm²
Length	Max. 1000m	Max. 150m



NOTES:
1. Electrical box and transmission wiring are not attached.
2. Do not touch the PC board with your hand.
3. Keep transmission wiring at least 50 mm away from power supply wiring to avoid malfunctions.

4. Install the upper part of the remote controller as before.

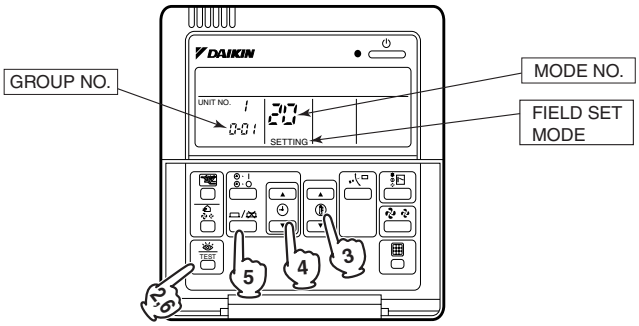


3P162015A

18.1.6 Setting Group No. for Centralized Control

In order to conduct the central remote control using the central remote controller and the unified ON/OFF controller, Group No. settings should be made by group using the operating remote controller.
Make Group No. settings for central remote control using the operating remote controller.

1. While in normal mode, press and hold the [TEST] switch for a period of four seconds or more to set the system to "Field Setting Mode"."
2. Select the MODE No. "*00*" with the " [▲▼] " button.
3. Use the " [▲▼] " button to select the group No. for each group.
   (Group numbers increase in the order of 1-00, 1-01, ... 1-15, 2-00, ... 4-15.)
4. Press " [▭/∞] " to set the selected group No.
5. Press " [TEST] " to return to the NORMAL MODE.



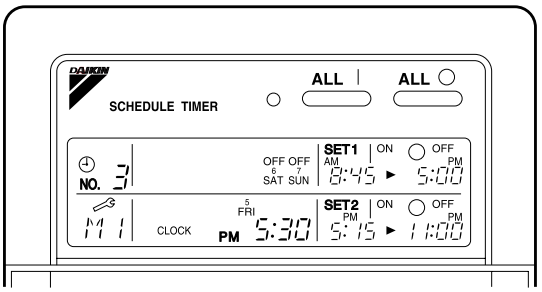
Note:

- For simplified remote controller, see the installation table.
- For setting group No. of HRV and wiring adaptor for other air conditioners, etc., refer to the instruction manual attached.

NOTICE

Enter the group No. and installation place of the indoor unit into the attached installation table. Be sure to keep the installation table with the operation manual for maintenance.

18.1.7 Error Diagnosing Function



This schedule timer is provided with the malfunction diagnosing function. The malfunction code flashes if there occurs any malfunction in communication, etc. between and among the optional controllers for centralized control. In addition, the operation lamp also flashes if there occurs any malfunction in communication with the indoor unit. Check the contents of the display and contact your DAIKIN dealer because the signals give you the idea of the trouble area.

.

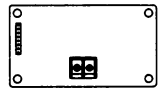
Operation lamp	Malfunction code	Contents of malfunction
Turn off	M1	Failure of PC board of schedule timer. **Fixes** The following causes are possible. Check each one. 1. PC board problems
Turn on or off	M8	Malfunction of transmission between each optional controllers for centralized control. **Fixes** Check all central devices which are connected (e.g., power supply, transmission wiring, etc.).
Turn on or off	MA	Improper combination of optional controllers for centralized control. **Fixes** The following causes are possible. Check each one. 1. Are all central devices combined correctly? 2. Is the master central connector attached to two or more central devices? 3. Are there 128 or more indoor units connected?
Turn on or off	MC	Address failure of schedule timer. **Fixes** The following causes are possible. Check each one. 1. Do the control range addresses in the central remote controller overlap? 2. Do the control range addresses in the on/off controller overlap? 3. Are there 2 or more schedule timers connected?
Flash	UE	Malfunction of transmission between indoor unit and optional controllers for centralized control. **Fixes** Inspect all indoor units which are displaying an error (e.g., power supply, transmission wiring, etc.).
Flash	—	Malfunction in indoor unit (Refer to the malfunction codes of the indoor remote controller, while also read the “ CAUTION FOR SERVICING ” attached to the indoor unit.)

3P124623-5C

19. Interface Adaptor for SkyAir Series

19.1 DTA102A52

Accessories Check if the following accessories are included in the kit.

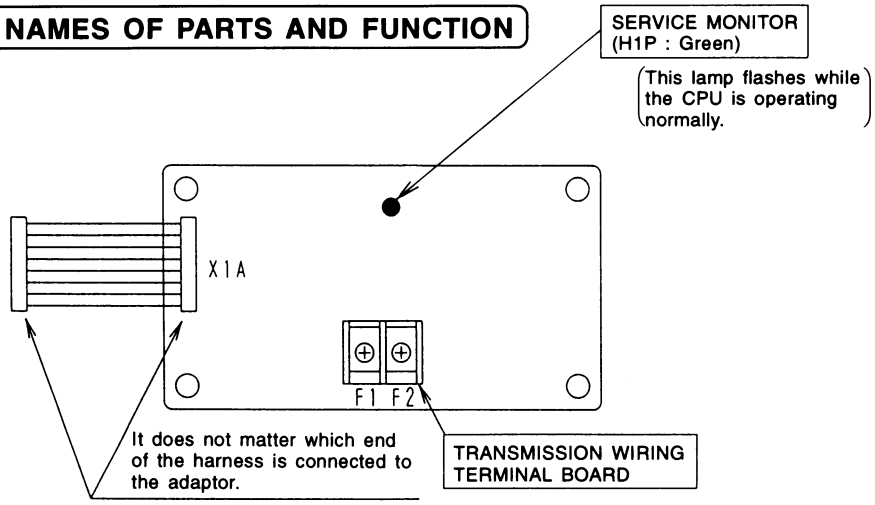
Adaptor	Relay harness
x 1	x 1
	

PC board support	x 4
Tie wrap	x 2
Installation manual	x 1

1 SYSTEM OUTLINE

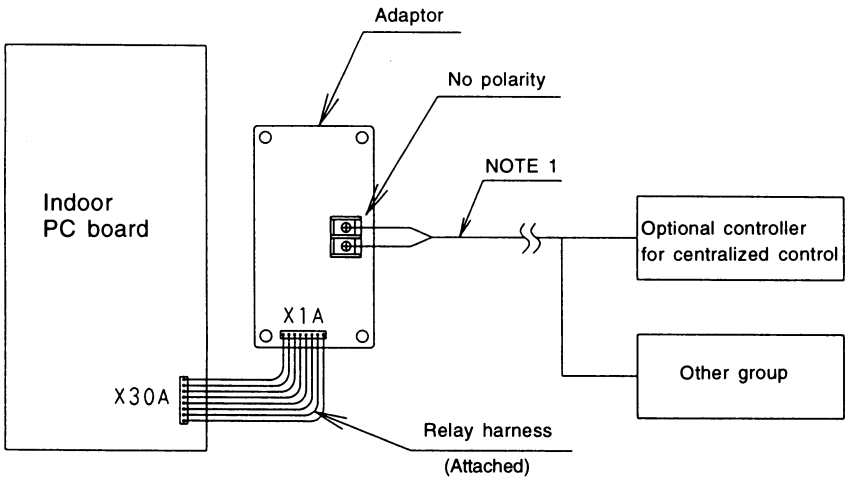
- By connecting this kit to an optional controller for centralized control, all units of the SKY AIR Series in the system can be controlled as a group from the optional controller.
- One kit must be installed onto the master unit of each group.

2 NAMES OF PARTS AND FUNCTION



3 ELECTRIC WIRING

- Wire this kit as described below.
- Make sure wires to units do not pass over the PC board when wiring.



NOTE 1. Wiring specifications . . . Use a 0.75 – 1.25 mm^2 sheathed vinyl cord or cable (2 wire).
2. For details on compatible systems and how to connect to optional controllers, see the instruction manual of the optional controller and technical reference materials.

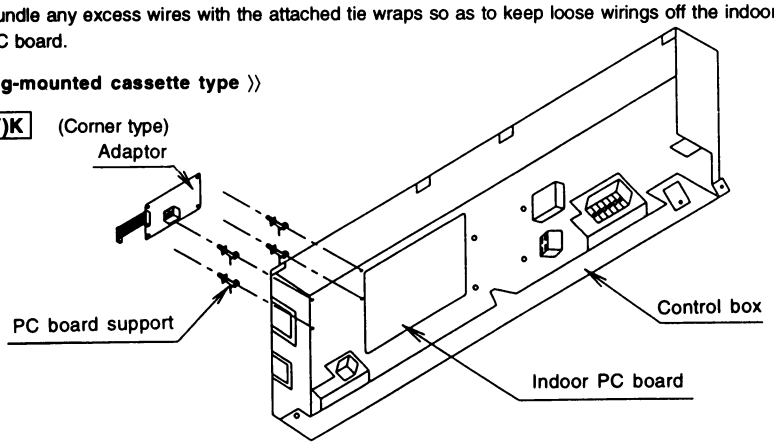
1PA59896

4 INSTALLATION

- Installation differs according to models as shown below.
- Do not bundle low and high voltage wires together.
- Bundle any excess wires with the attached tie wraps so as to keep loose wirings off the indoor unit PC board.

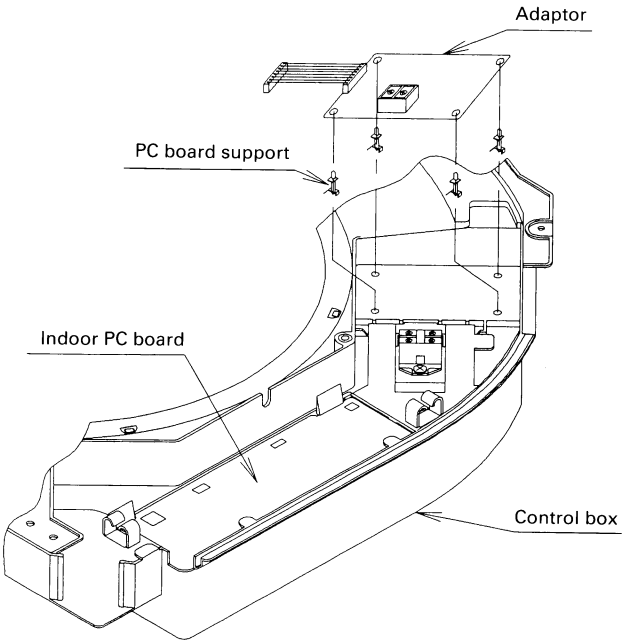
《 **Ceiling-mounted cassette type** 》

FH(Y)K (Corner type)

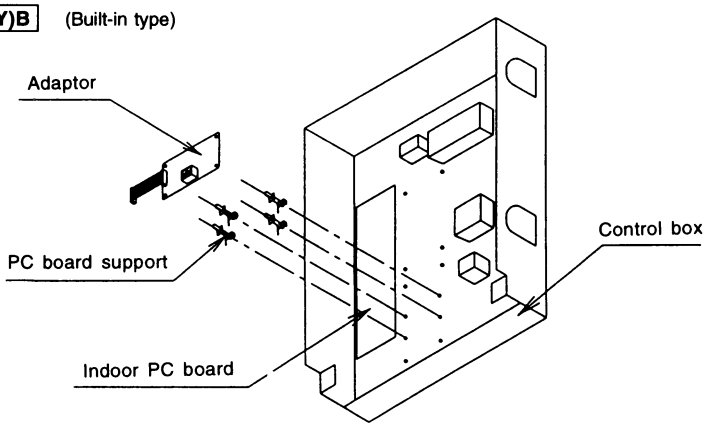


《 **Ceiling-mounted cassette type** 》

FH(Y)C (Multiflow type)



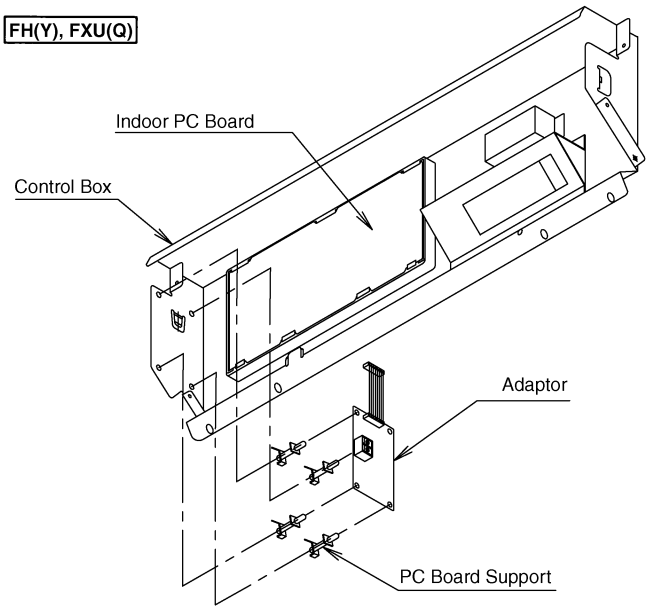
FH(Y)B (Built-in type)



1PA59896

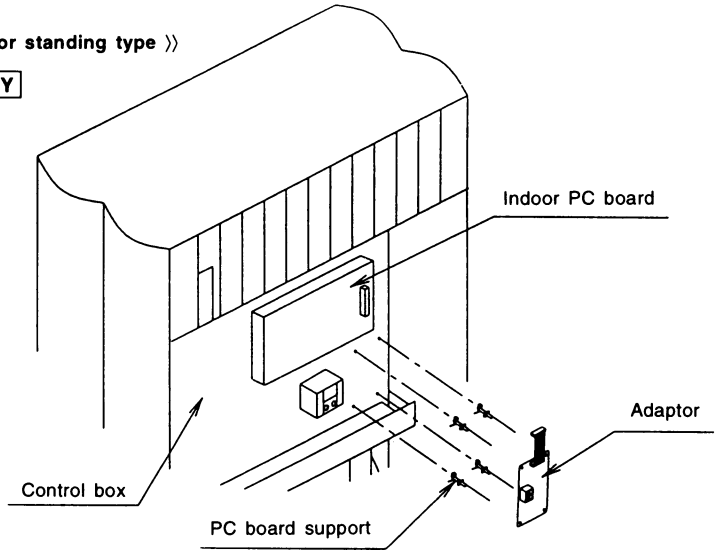
《 **Ceiling suspended type** 》

FH(Y), FXU(Q)



《 **Floor standing type** 》

FVY



C: 1PA59896

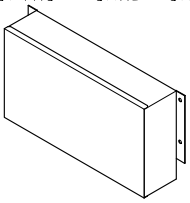
20. Central Control Adaptor Kit

20.1 DTA107A55

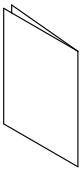
COMPONENTS

Check the following components are included in this optional accessory before installation.

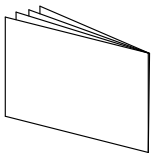
CONTROL BOARD BOX



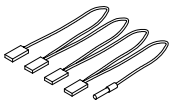
OPERATION MANUAL



INSTALLATION MANUAL



WIRE HARNESS



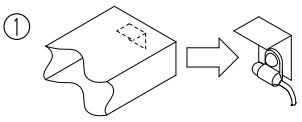
Give to the customer this OPERATION MANUAL certainly.

INSTALLATION

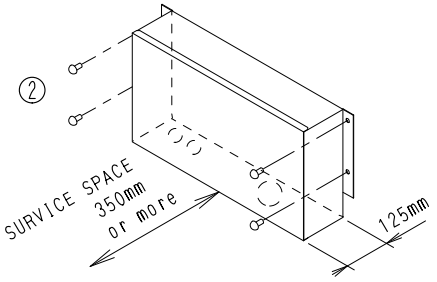
Deside the situation of Control Board Box.
It is affected the situations of the thermistor.
The length of lead wire - Thermistor:2.5m

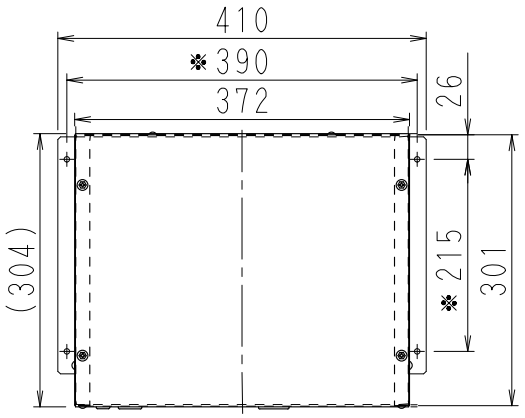
① Install the thermistor (in the control board box) at the inlet duct or the suction grille.
Use the kit:remote sensor(KRCS01-1), if you need the longer length than it.(Can use it untill 12m.)

② Install the control board box on the wall or the pillar.
Make sure the wire inlet is at the bottom of the box.
Use 4 bolts(M5) for fixing the box.
Install the box in the indoor side.
(Example:Set it in the ceiling or in the room.)
Do not install the box in the air conditioner.
Fixing situation : See right Fig. (Height:125mm)
(※ shows the fixing pich.)



Example:Set the thermistor into the inlet duct and clamped by resin clamp and fix plate.





2P042157

ELECTRIC WIRING

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

- All wiring, components and materials to be procured on site must comply with the applicable local and national codes.
- Use copper conductors only.
- All field wiring and components must be provided by licensed electrician.
- Unit shall be grounded in compliance with the applicable local and national codes.
- After wiring work, check power to the equipment shuts OFF when swich is shut OFF.

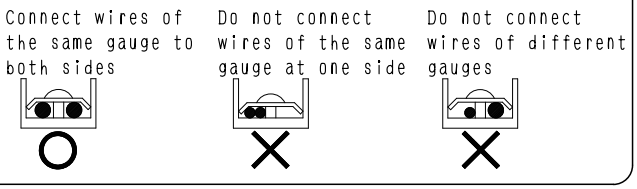
⚠ WARNING

Use ring type crimp style terminal for connection to power supply terminal block.

If is not used, satisfy the following conditions:

- Do not connect wires of different gauge to the same power supply terminal. (Looseness in the connection may cause overheating.)
- When connecting wires of the same gauge, connect them according to the righthand figure.





Wiring specification

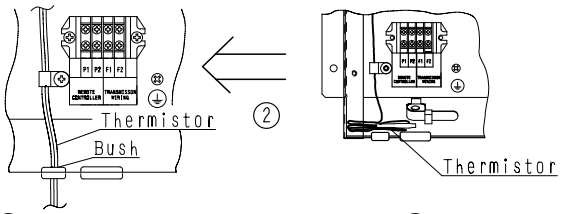
Use the wire shown right for between the unit and the control board box.

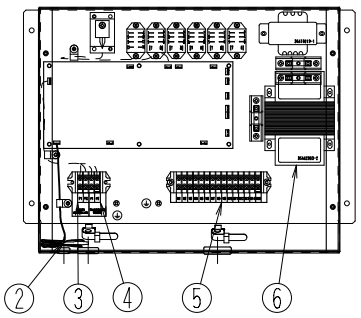
Type	Size
UL1015 AWG18 equivalent	0.75mm^2 each

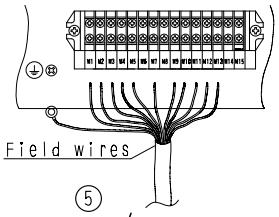
Connect the wiring between indoor and outdoor units, central controllers and remote controller. For details, refer to the installation manual of them.

① Remove the cover of the control board box, after setting it. (Parts situation is shown right Fig.)

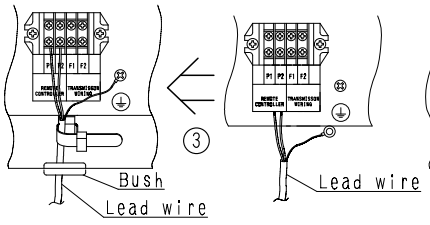
② Install the thermistor throgh the bush. (It is in the control board box. See below Fig.)



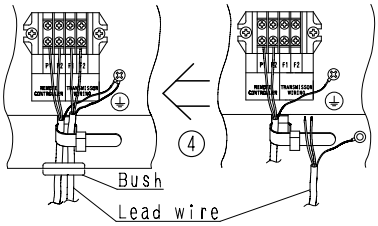


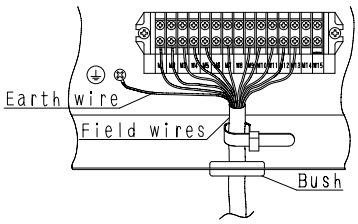


③ Connect the read wires of Remote Controller. (See the below Fig.) Ground the sheild of the cords to the control board box.



④ Connect the read wires of Central Control Unit. (See the below Fig.) Ground the sheild of the cords to the control board box.





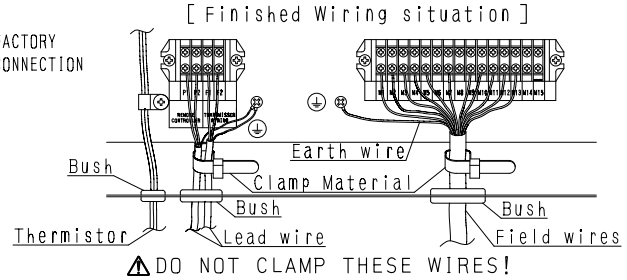
⑤ Connect the field wires to the Air Conditioner. (Details : See the back side.) Ground the control board box.

⑥ Changel the connection of transformer according to the right table. (Especially for Y1 Model.)

VOLTAGE		TERMINAL
PRIMARY	SECONDARY	
220V	200V	✱U-V1
230V	200V	U-V2
240V	200V	U-V3

✱FACTORY CONNECTION

[Finished Wiring situation]



Clamp these wires by clamp materials certainly. (Clamp the earth wire.) (See right Fig.)
Do not clamp the high voltage wires (Field wires) and the low voltage wiers (Lead wire and Thermistor) both inside and outside of the control boad box.

NOTE

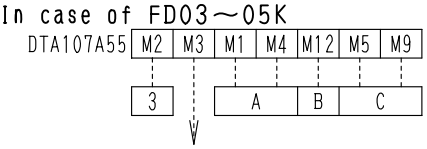
- Prepare the remote controller (BRC1A62). [BRC1A52 is also OK.]
  REASON:The remote controller is needed per each kit for setting the address.

2P042157

CONNECTION OF THE TERMINAL

Connect between the air conditioner and DTA107A55 shown below.

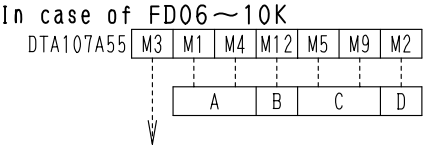
In case of FD03～05K



Connect the wiring between the box of this kit and the EL. COMPO. BOX ASSY of the indoor unit.
〔Refer to the wiring diagram of the indoor unit.〕

See below for connecting the terminal "M3".(The Output of alarm signal)
About these models, we can only output the alarm signal of indoor fan motor.
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the terminal "96" of magnetic contactor of indoor fan motor(K1M).

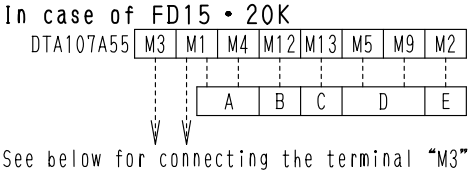
In case of FD06～10K



Connect the wiring between the box of this kit and the EL. COMPO. BOX ASSY of the indoor unit.
〔Refer to the wiring diagram of the indoor unit.〕

See below for connecting the terminal "M3".(The Output of alarm signal)
Use the attached wire harness and change from the wire to it. The wire is connected between K1R(5), K1R(7), K2R(7), and K3R(5). 〔 ( ) is shown the terminal.〕
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the solderless splices butt "M3" of the wire assy.

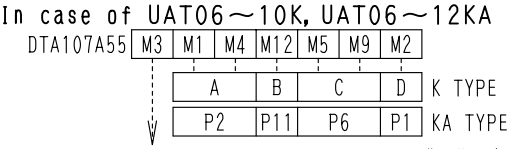
In case of FD15・20K



Connect the wiring between the box of this kit and the EL. COMPO. BOX ASSY of the indoor unit.
〔Refer to the wiring diagram of the indoor unit.〕

See below for connecting the terminal "M3".(The Output of alarm signal)
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M1" and the terminal "6" of K4R(magnetic relay).
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the terminal "4" of K4R(magnetic relay).

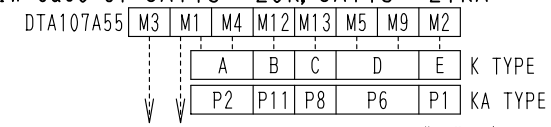
In case of UAT06～10K, UAT06～12KA



Connect the wiring between the box of this kit and the EL. COMPO. BOX ASSY of the air conditioner.
〔Refer to the wiring diagram of the air conditioner.〕

See below for connecting the terminal "M3".(The Output of alarm signal)
Use the attached wire harness and change from the wire to it. The wire is connected between K1R(5), K1R(7), K2R(7), and K3R(6). 〔 ( ) is shown the terminal.〕
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the solderless splices butt "M3" of the wire assy.

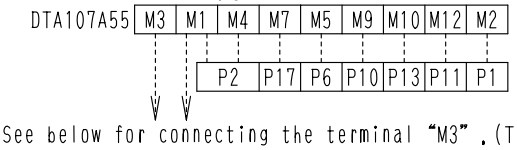
In case of UAT15・20K, UAT15～21KA



Connect the wiring between the box of this kit and the EL. COMPO. BOX ASSY of the air conditioner.
〔Refer to the wiring diagram of the air conditioner.〕

See below for connecting the terminal "M3".(The Output of alarm signal)
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M1" and the terminal "6" of K3R(magnetic relay).
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the terminal "4" of K3R(magnetic relay).

In case of UATY06K

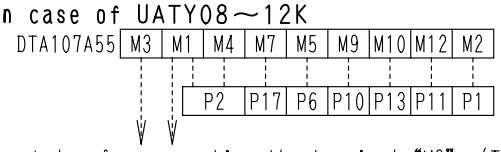


Connect the wiring between the box of this kit and the EL. COMPO. BOX ASSY of the air conditioner.
〔Refer to the wiring diagram of the air conditioner.〕

See below for connecting the terminal "M3".(The Output of alarm signal)
In case of Y1, connect the wiring between the terminal "M1" and the terminal "5" of K2R(magnetic relay).
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the terminal "3" of K2R(magnetic relay).
In case of Y19, connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the terminal "8" of K4R(magnetic relay).
In case of TAL and YAL, use the attached wire harness and change from the wire to it.
The wire is connected between K1R(6), K1R(7), K2R(7), and K3R(6). 〔 ( ) is shown the terminal.〕
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the solderless splices butt "M3" of the wire assy.

2P042158A

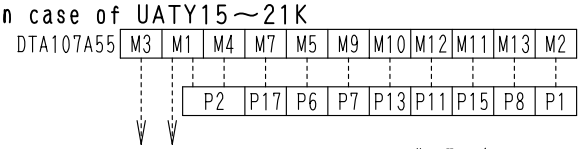
In case of UATY08～12K



Connect the wiring between the box of this kit and the EL. COMPO. BOX ASSY of the air conditioner. (Refer to the wiring diagram of the air conditioner.)

See below for connecting the terminal "M3". (The Output of alarm signal)
In case of Y1, connect the wiring between the terminal "M1" and the terminal "5" of K2R(magnetic relay).
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the terminal "3" of K2R(magnetic relay).
In case of Y19, connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the terminal "8" of K4R(magnetic relay).
In case of TAL and YAL, use the attached wire harness and change from the wire to it.
The wire is connected between K1R(5), K1R(7), K2R(7), and K3R(5). ( ) is shown the terminal.
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the solderless splices butt "M3" of the wire assy.

In case of UATY15～21K



Connect the wiring between the box of this kit and the EL. COMPO. BOX ASSY of the air conditioner. (Refer to the wiring diagram of the air conditioner.)

See below for connecting the terminal "M3". (The Output of alarm signal)
In case of Y1, connect the wiring between the terminal "M1" and the terminal "6" of K2R(magnetic relay).
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the terminal "4" of K2R(magnetic relay).
In case of Y19, connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the terminal "8" of K4R(magnetic relay).
In case of TAL and YAL, connect the wiring between the terminal "M1" and the terminal "6" of K14R(magnetic relay).
Connect the wiring between the terminal "M3" and the terminal "4" of K14R(magnetic relay).

2P042158A

FIELD SETTING

(If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual for each optional accessory.)

Procedure

①When in the normal mode, press the "TEST" button for a minimum of four seconds, and the FIELD SET MODE is entered.

②Select the desired MODE NO. with the "▲▼" button.

③During group control, when setting by each indoor unit (mode No. 20, 21 and 23 have been selected), push the "UNIT NO." button and select the INDOOR UNIT NO to be set. (This operation is unnecessary when setting by group.)

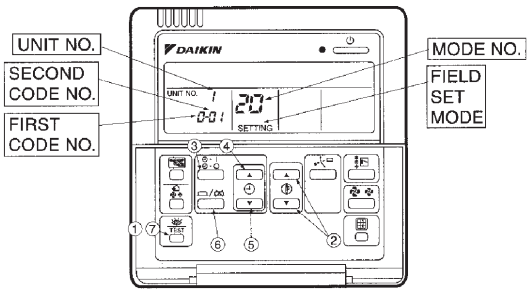
④Push the "▲" upper button and select FIRST CODE NO.

⑤Push the "▼" lower button and select the SECOND CODE NO.

⑥Push the "SET" button once and the present settings are SET.

⑦Push the "TEST" button for about one second to return to the NORMAL MODE.

(Example) If during group setting and the time to clean air filter is set to FILTER CONTAMINATION - HEAVY, SET MODE NO. to "10," FIRST CODE NO. to "0," and SECOND CODE NO. to "02."



Mode No. Note) 1	FIRST CODE NO.	Description of Setting		SECOND CODE No. Note) 2					
				01		02		03	
10(20)	0	Filter Contamination - Heavy/Light (Setting for spacing time of display time to clean air filter) (Setting for when filter contamination is heavy, and spacing time to clean air filter is to be halved)	Ultra-long-life type	Light	Approx. 10,000 hours	Heavy	Approx. 5,000 hours	—	
			Long-life type		Approx. 2,500 hours		Approx. 1,250 hours		
			Standard type		Approx. 200 hours		Approx. 100hours		
	1	Long-life filter type (Setting of filter sign indication time) (Change setting when Ultra-long-life filter is installed)		Long-life filter		Ultra-long-life filter (1)		—	
	3	Spacing Time of Display Time to Clean Air Filter Count (Setting for when the filter sign is not to be displayed)		Display		Do Not Display		—	
11(21)	0	Setting Number of Connected Skyair Simultaneous Operation System Indoor Units (Setting for Simultaneous Operation System)		Pair		Twin		—	
13(23)	0	High Ceiling Setting (Setting for when installed in a Ceiling higher than 2.7m)		Normal		High Ceiling 1		High Ceiling 2	
	1	Selection of Air Flow Direction (Setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed)		F		T		W	
	3	Air Flow Direction Adjust Function (To be set when decoration panel for air outlet is installed)		Equippeed		No Equippeed		—	
	4	Air Flow Direction Range Setting		Upper		Normal		Lower	
	6	Setting the External Static Pressure (Setting according to the connected duct resistance) (For FHYK, follow the High Ceiling Setting)		Normal (Normal)		High Static Pressure (High Ceiling)		Low Static Pressure —	

NOTES)
1. Setting is carried out in the group mode, however, set the mode number inside the ( ) for individual setting of the each indoor unit or confirmation after setting.
2. The SECOND CODE number. is set to "01" when shipped from the factory. However for the following cases it is set to "02"
   • Air flow direction range setting.
3. Do not make any settings not given in the table on the left.
4. Not displayed if the indoor unit is not equipped with that function.
5. When returning to the normal mode, "88" may be displayed in the LCD in order for the remote controller to initialize itself.

2P068938

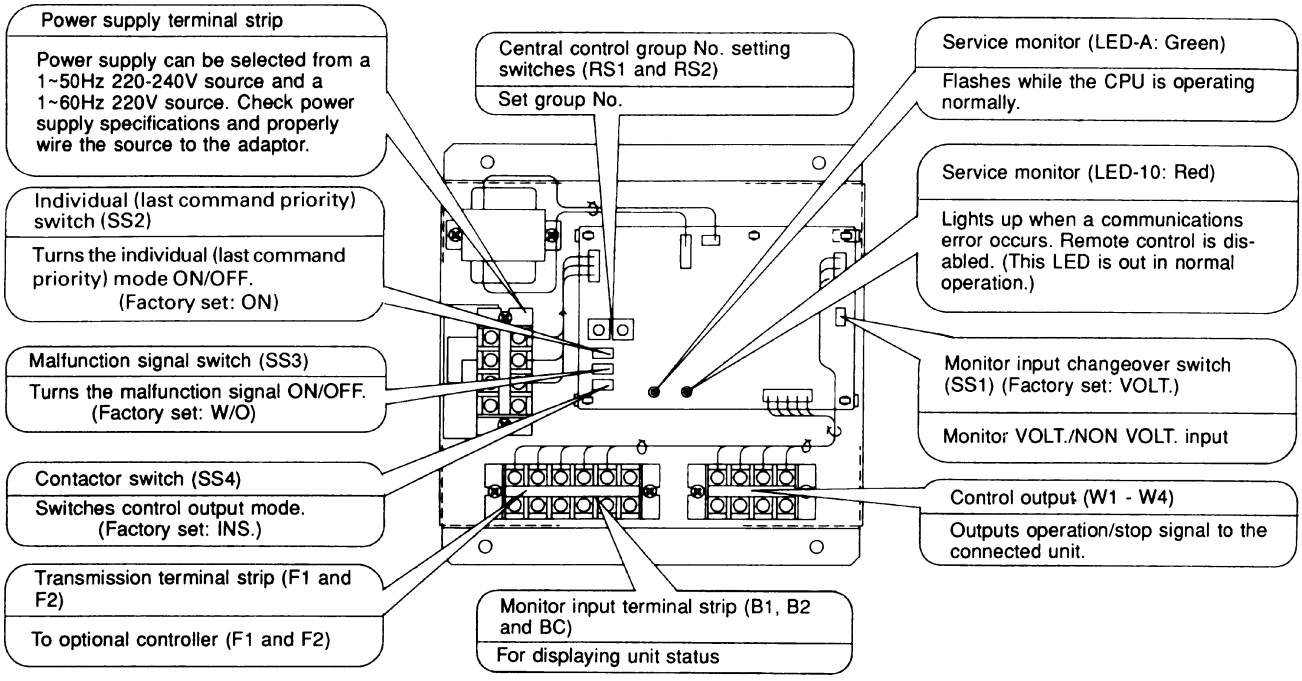
21. Wiring Adaptor for Other Air-Conditioner

21.1 DTA103A51

21.1.1 Function

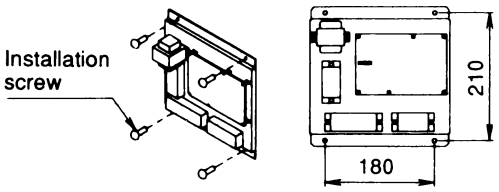
This kit contains an I/O interface adaptor for optional controller for centralized control, used when there is a non-connectable air conditioner. When connected to the central control line, this adaptor enables operation/stop and display of operation/error monitors from the optional controller.

21.1.2 Names of Parts and Function



21.1.3 Installation

Securely install the adaptor with the attached installation screw.



Note:

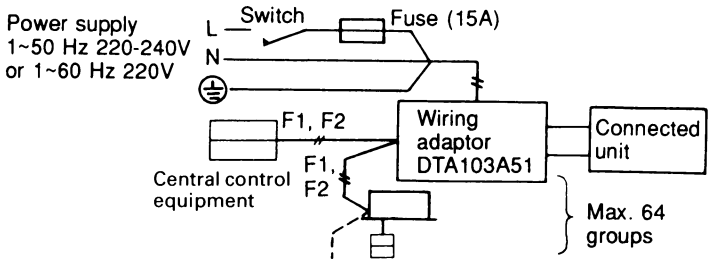
Install the adaptor inside a control box of outer dimensions: 230W × 230D × 60H.

Supply a control box at site with outer dimensions equal to or larger than those shown below. 230W × 230D × 60H.

21.1.4 Electric Wiring Work

<Wiring Requirements>

1. Wire between the adaptor and central control equipment (F1, F2)
2. Wire to the connected units and set all switches. ... For details, refer to WIRING TO CONNECTED UNITS.
3. Wire to the power supply. ... For details, refer to POWER SUPPLY WIRING.



C: 2PA53853

<General Instructions>

- All wiring, components and materials to be procured on the site must comply with the applicable local and national codes.
- Use copper conductors only.
- All field wiring and components must be provided by licensed electrician.
- Unit shall be grounded in compliance with the applicable local and national codes.
- Fit the power supply wiring with a fuse and a switch.
- After wiring work, check power to the equipment shuts OFF when the switch is shut OFF.

<Wiring Specification>

	Type	Size
Power Supply Wiring	H05VV-U3G	(Note 1)
Transmission Wiring	(Note 2)	0.75 - 1.25 mm²

Note:

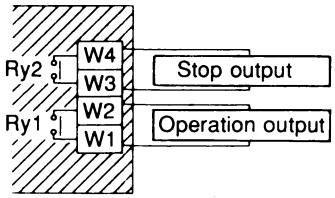
1. Select the size in electric wire in accordance with the local and national standards.
2. You can use the shielded wire, sheathed vinyl cord or cable (2 conductors). See the installation manual of the optional controllers for centralized control to be connected for further details.

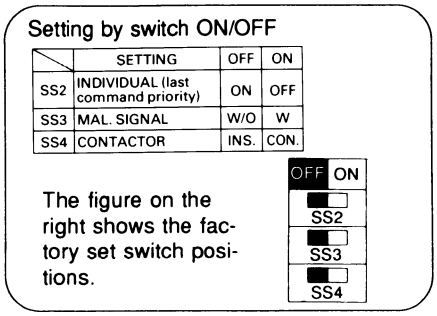
<Wiring to Connected Units>

Control Output

Terminals W1 - W4 are non voltage contacts used in normal operation to output operation display (W1 and W2) and error display (W3 and W4) signals.

Ry1 and Ry2 Contact Specifications		
Voltage	Max. current	Min. Current
1~50Hz 220-240V 1~60Hz 220V	2A	1mA
⎓ 5-24V	3A	1mA



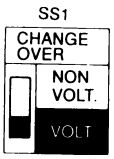


Output modes include instantaneous output and constant output. Mode is changed at the contactor switch (SS4). (Factory set: INS)

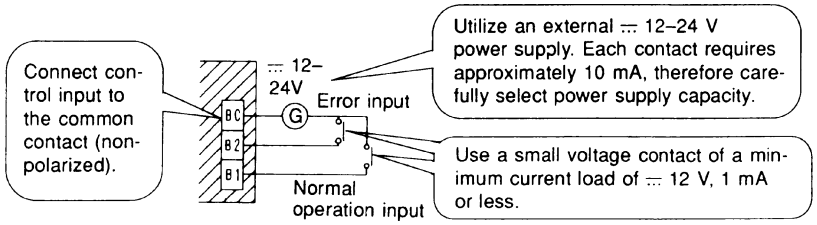
C : 2PA53853

Monitor Input

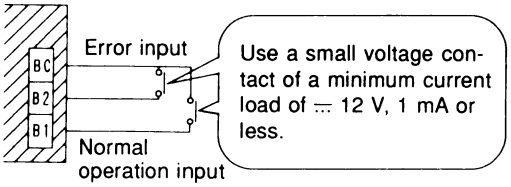
Wire as explained here following, depending on whether input carries a voltage (VOLT.) or not (NON VOLT.). Make the VOLT/NON VOLT. setting at the monitor input changeover switch (SS1).



(For Voltage Charged Input)
Set the monitor input changeover switch to VOLT. (Factory set: VOLT.)



(For Non Voltage Input)
Set the monitor input changeover switch to NON VOLT. (Factory set: VOLT.)



① Switch the malfunction signal switch (SS3) according to needs (Factory set: W/O [OFF]). Set the switch to W (ON) to display errors even if no operation feedback from the indoor unit is available, for example, when power to the indoor unit is OFF. Together, set the individual switch (SS2) to OFF (ON).

Note:
- This switch is ineffective when SS2 is set to ON (OFF).
- The optional controller display will change, as shown on the right, depending on the monitor input state and the malfunction signal switch (SS3) setting.
- After switching the optional controller from stop to operation, it will take from 10 to 30 seconds before the optional controller display will indicate an error.

(SS3) Malfunction Signal	Optional Controller Display at Command Output		
	Monitor Input State		
	Operation Input ON	Operation Input OFF	Error Input ON
W	Operation Display	Error (A1 Display)	Error (A1 Display)
W/O		Operation Display	

2PA53853

② Set the group No. at the central control group No. setting switches (RS1 and RS2). Refer to the below table to set group No. Group No. increases in the order of 1-00, 1-01 ... 1-15, 2-00, ... 4-15. Refer to the installation manual of the optional controller.

RS1 Switch Setting and Upper Group No. Position

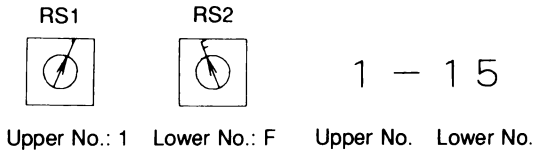
Position	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Group No.	—	1	2	3	4	—	—	—	—	—

RS2 Switch Setting and Lower Group No. Position

Position	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
Group No.	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14	15

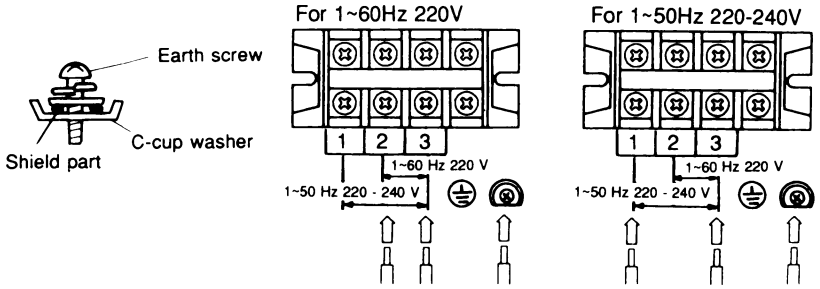
Make Settings before Turning ON The Power.

Note:
Group number need not be set on this adaptor during individual use with either a wiring adaptor for electrical appendices or a schedule timer. Setting is automatic.
Ex. Setting group No. 1-15
First and second group No.s are indicated as below.



Power Supply Wiring

Power supply can be selected from a 1~50 Hz 220-240V source and a 1~60 Hz 220V source. Check power supply specifications and properly wire the source to the adaptor.



Note:
- Ground wires as shown in the figure on the right.
- The adaptor may malfunction or be damaged if improperly wired.
- The fuse is designed for short-circuit protection (Overcurrent protection). Therefore, it may not offer sufficient protection against improper voltage.

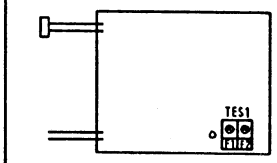
2PA53853

22. DIII-NET Expander Adaptor

22.1 DTA109A51

Accessories Check the following accessories are included in the kit before the installation

Adaptor ×1



PCB support	×4
Clamp	×3
Installation Manual	×1

NOTE This adaptor does not apply to salt damege resistsnce.

1 General description of system

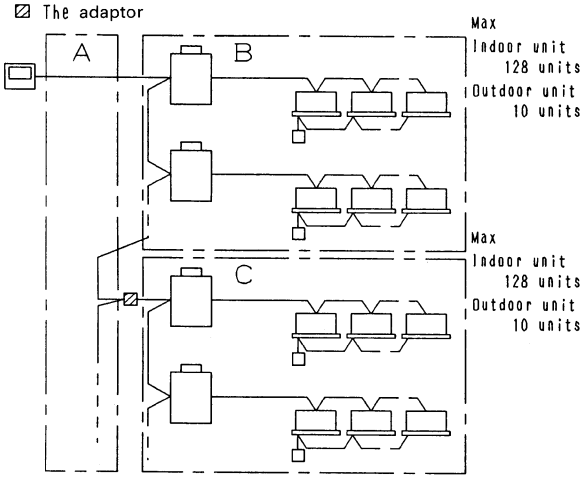
The adaptor allows easy system expansion as long as restrictions are observed.

1. The below systems can be controlled on the Super Wiring System when using the adaptor.

(1) Up to 1024 units can be centrally controlled in 64 different groups. (With 2 central remote controllers, up to 1024 units can be controlled in 128 groups.)

Restrictions on the number of units that can be connected to the Super Wiring System apply to each adaptor.

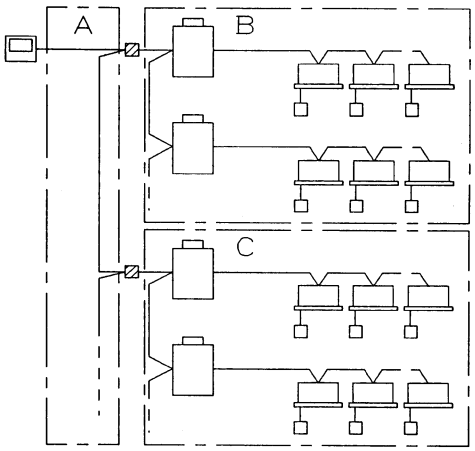
▨ The adaptor



A maximum of 128 indoor units and 10 outdoor units can be connected in each group B and C.

(2) Wiring restrictions (max. length : 1000m, total wiring length : 2000m, max. number of branches : 16) apply to each adaptor.

▨ The adaptor

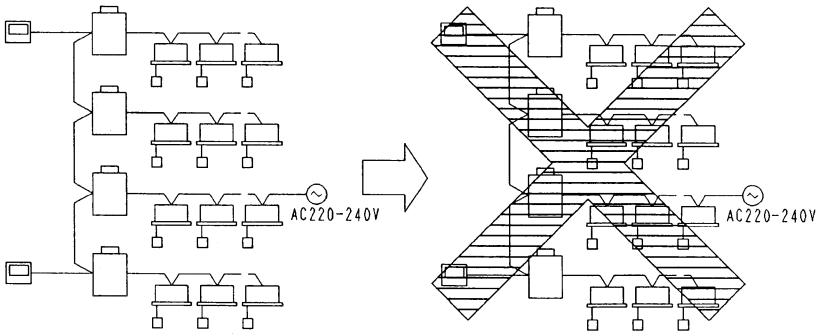


Each group A, B and C can have a maximum wiring length of 1000m, total wiring length of 2000m and a maximum 16 branches.

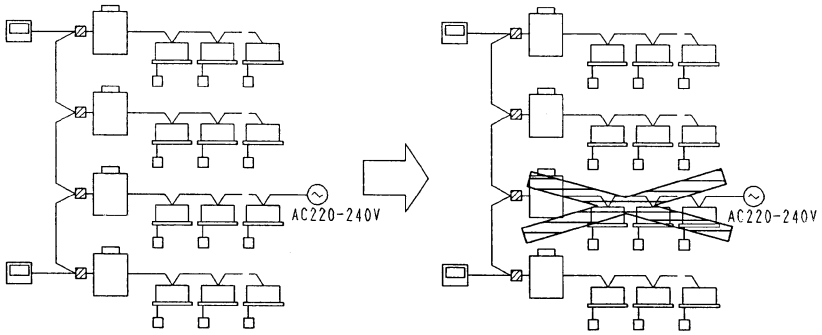
C: 1P013360

(3)Setups risky for centralized control systems are possible.

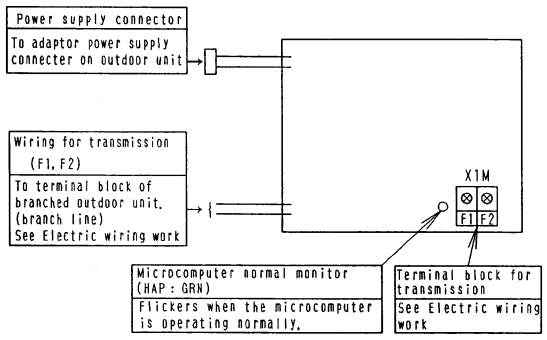
Conventional System Misswiring such as apply 220-240V to circuits could possibly shut down the entire system.



With the adaptor Should trouble occur, only units below the adaptor are shut down. Thus, it is possible to avoid a total system shutdown.



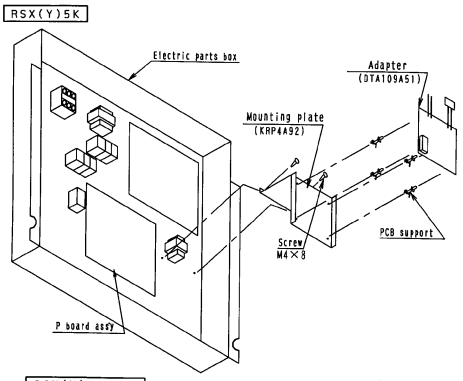
❷Names of parts and functions



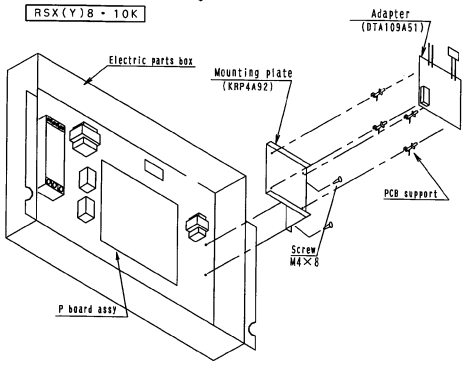
❸Installation

<Outdoor unit>

RSX(Y)5K



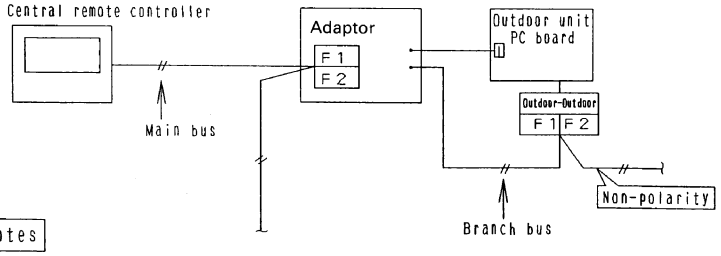
RSX(Y)8・10K



C: 1P013360

④Electric wiring work

(1)Connect the wire from the adaptor to the adaptor power connector on the outdoor unit's PC board.
(For connector Nos., see the electric wiring diagrams for the indoor and function units.)
(2)Connect transmission wires between outdoor units (Outdoor-Outdoor terminal board).
(3)Wire transmission wires to terminal boards as shown below.



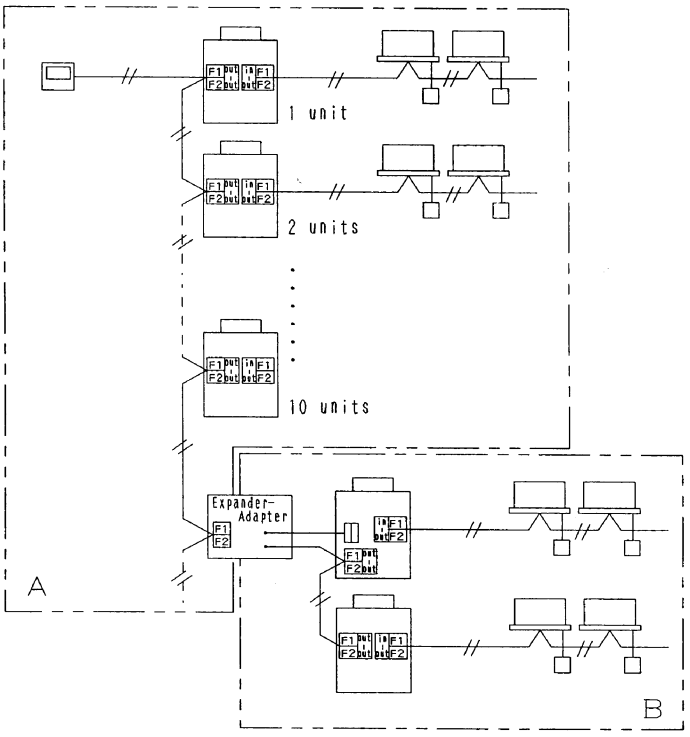
Notes

(Transmission wiring specifications)
- 0.75～1.25mm² sheathed wire (2 wire).

(Transmission wiring length)
- Observe the following limits on transmission wires. The limits apply to each adaptor. If you exceed the limits, it may cause malfunction.
  (Total length : 2000m
  Max. length···1000m
  Max. number of branches : 16)
- At least one outdoor unit and one optional controller for centralized control are required for every main bus and branch bus.
- Up to 8 adaptors can be connected in one system.
- Do not locate adaptors downstream of other adaptors (i.e. : on a branch bus).
- If not used with a central control device, the expander adaptor cannot be used with the wiring adaptor for electrical appendices(KRP2A) or the schedule timer(DST301B51).
- The external control adaptor for outdoor units controls group cooling and demand for each adaptor. (Anything beyond the expansion control falls outside the control domain.)
- Do not turn the system ON/OFF rapidly from the optional controller for centralized control. This can cause temporary erroneous displays.
- Sequential starts is controlled by each expander adaptor.

⑤Wiring example

System with more than 10 outdoor units.

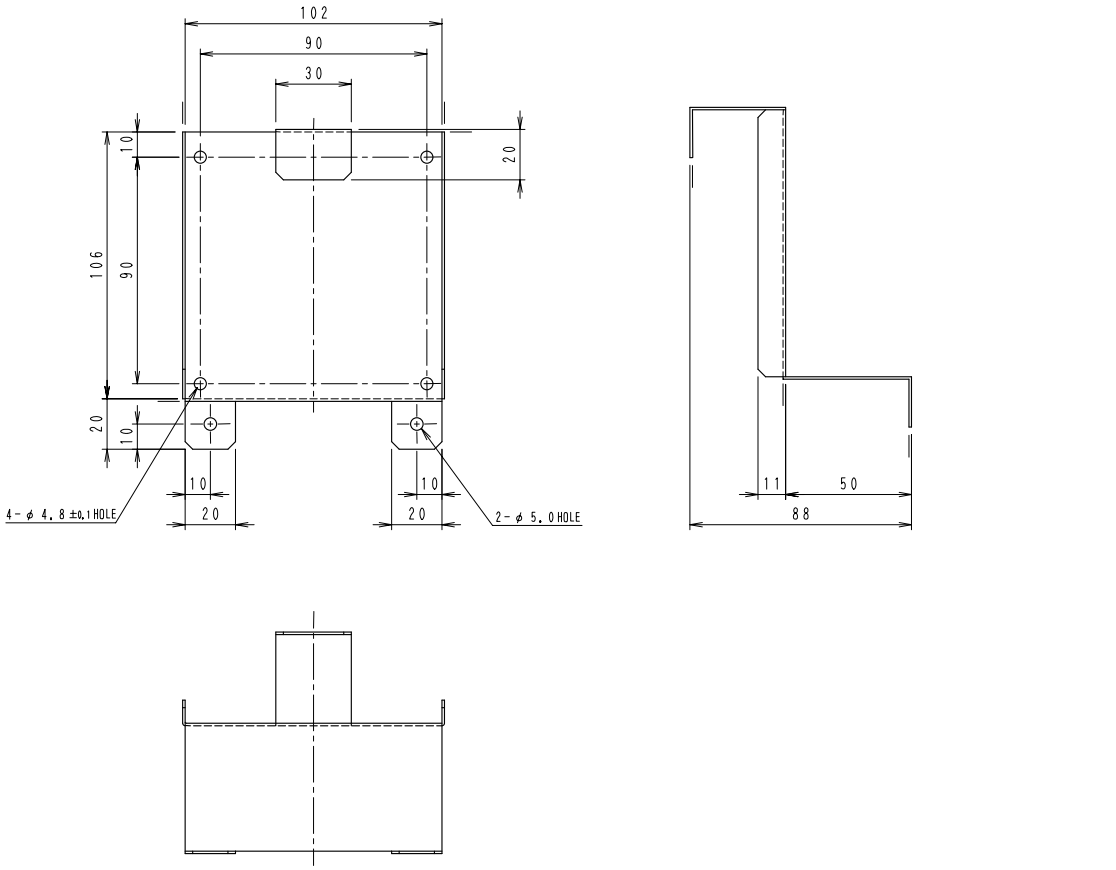


Note Wiring restrictions (see"Electric wiring work") apply to each group A and B.

C: 1P013360

22.2 KRP4A92

Mounting Plate for DTA109A51



NOTE)CHAMFERS OF CORNERS NOT SPECIFIED : C3.

3P022630B

23. intelligent Touch Controller

23.1 DCS601C51

23.1.1 Feature and Specification

This controller is a central remote controller offering higher functions than those of the previous controller DCS302C(A)61, and easier operation.

Up to 64 groups of indoor units may be connected to 1 unit of this controller.



This controller aims to be a product positioned between the current central controlling device (central controller DCS302C(A)61) and the controller intelligent-manager for large scale buildings (in both the viewpoints of application area and functional grade), and is a central controller most suitable for middle and small size buildings.

< Products Features >

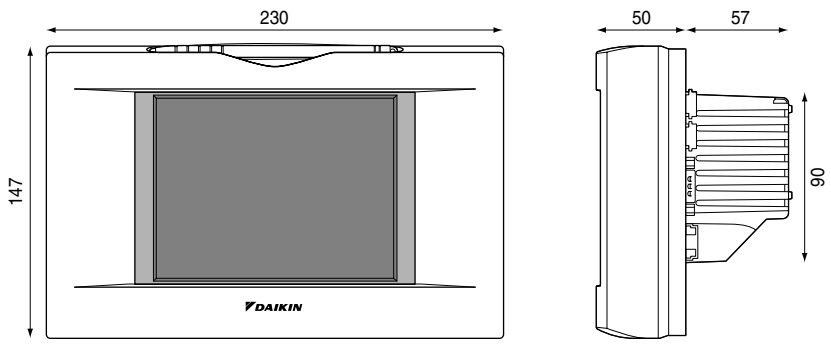
1. High Level Functions
   - Annual schedule control
   - Electricity proportional distribution function (option)
   - Air net function (DCS601C51 only)
2. Easy Operation
   - Color liquid crystal
   - Icon display
   - Touch panel application
   - Air conditioner name and zone name input available
3. D-III NET x 1 line (64 units)
4. Saving expenses
   - Controlling personnel not required (saving control expenses)
   - Energy saving schedule
   - Functions equal to those of a compact monitor panel

Specification

Power		AC100 - 240V 50/60Hz
Power consumption		10 W maximum
Force stop input		Normally-open contact Contact current approximately 10 mA
Operating temperature range	Ambient temperature	0°C~40°C
	Ambient humidity	85%RH (Non condensing)
Storage temperature range	Ambient temperature	-10°C~50°C
	Ambient humidity	85%RH (Non condensing)
Size		230×147×107 (W×H×D)
Weight (Mass)		1.2kg

Dimension

Unit:mm



The specification and appearance of the product may be modified for improvement without prior notice.

C: 3P073677-12R

■ **Operation Menu**

intelligent Touch Controller is capable of starting/stopping of the operation by the group or zone. Collective starting/stopping is also available.

■ **Air Conditioner Detail Setup**

Temperature setting, switching between temperature control modes, switching of speed and direction of wind and remote control mode setting are available by the group, by the zone or collectively.

■ **Monitoring of Various Information on Indoor Units**

Information on operation such as the operation mode and temperature setting of the indoor units, maintenance information including the filter or element cleaning sign, troubleshooting information such as error codes can be displayed by the group or the zone.

■ **Diversified Operation Modes**

Operation can be controlled both with the main unit and the remote control to provide diversified operation management. Setting with the main unit allows the following remote control settings by the group, by the zone or collectively:

1. Start/Stop
   :(Remote control) Inhibited
   :(Remote control) Permitted
   :Priority
2. Operation Mode
   :(Remote control) Inhibited
   :(Remote control) Permitted
3. Temperature Setting
   :(Remote control) Inhibited
   :(Remote control) Permitted

■ **Zone Control Simplifying Complicated Setting Operations**

Up to 64 groups can be controlled with the intelligent Touch Controller.
More than one group can be consolidated into a zone, which can be registered, to allow the following settings by the zone. This eliminates the need for repeating the same setting operation for each group. Function to allow collective setting for all groups is also available.

· Start/stop
· Temperature setting
· Switching between operation modes
· Setting of direction and fan speed
· Disabling/enabling the remote control

■ **Detailed Scheduled Operation Control**

The intelligent Touch Controller allows detailed scheduled operation by the group, by the zone or collectively. Up to 8 options for annual schedule can be set. Each schedule can include four types of plans: for Monday, Tuesday... Sunday, Special day 1~10, Special days 1 and Special days 2. Each of the plans allows setting of up to 16 operations.

■ **Handy Automated Control**

The intelligent Touch Controller can do the following.

· Change Over Settings : automatically switches between cooling and heating according to the room temperature.
· Temperature Limit Setting : Prevents the temperature from rising too high or too low in unmanned rooms.
· Heating Optimization Settings : stops uncomfortable hot air from blowing when the heating the thermo. is off.

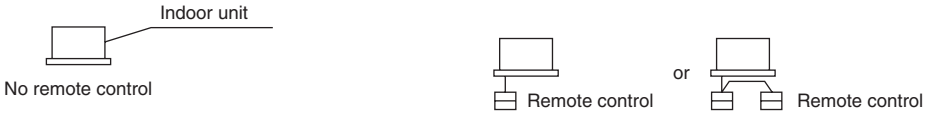
23.1.2 System Overview

This intelligent Touch Controller is capable of controlling / monitoring up to 64 groups of indoor units henceforth termed ***group(s)***.

Main functions of the intelligent Touch Controller :
1. Collective starting / stopping of operation of the indoor units connected to the intelligent Touch Controller.
2. Starting / stopping of operation, temperature setting, switching between temperature control modes and enabling / disabling of operation with the hand-held remote control by zone or group.
3. Scheduling by zone or group.
4. Monitoring of the operation status by zone or group.
5. Display of the air conditioner operation history.
6. Forced STOP contact input from a central monitoring panel (no voltage, normally open contact).
7. Power distribution of the air conditioners. (With the optional DCS002A51)

* A group of indoor units include :

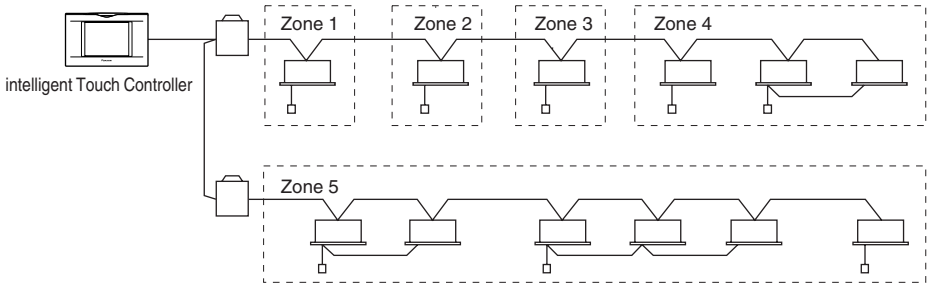
① One indoor unit without a remote control. ② One indoor unit controlled with one or two remote controls.



③ Up to 16 indoor units controlled with one or two remote controls.



* Zone control with the intelligent Touch Controller
* Zone control, which allows collective settings for more than one group, is available with the intelligent Touch Controller, which facilitates the setting operations.

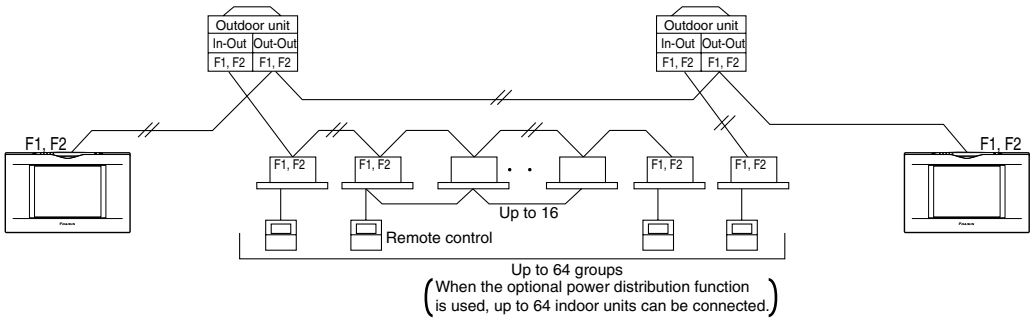


- One setting commands all of the units in one zone.
- Up to 128 zones can be set with one intelligent Touch Controller. (The maximum number of groups in one zone is 64.)
- Groups can be zoned at will with the intelligent Touch Controller.
- Units in one group can be divided into more than one zone.

EM04A055D

23.1.3 Double intelligent Touch Controllers

Using two intelligent Touch Controllers allows central control of indoor units from different places.

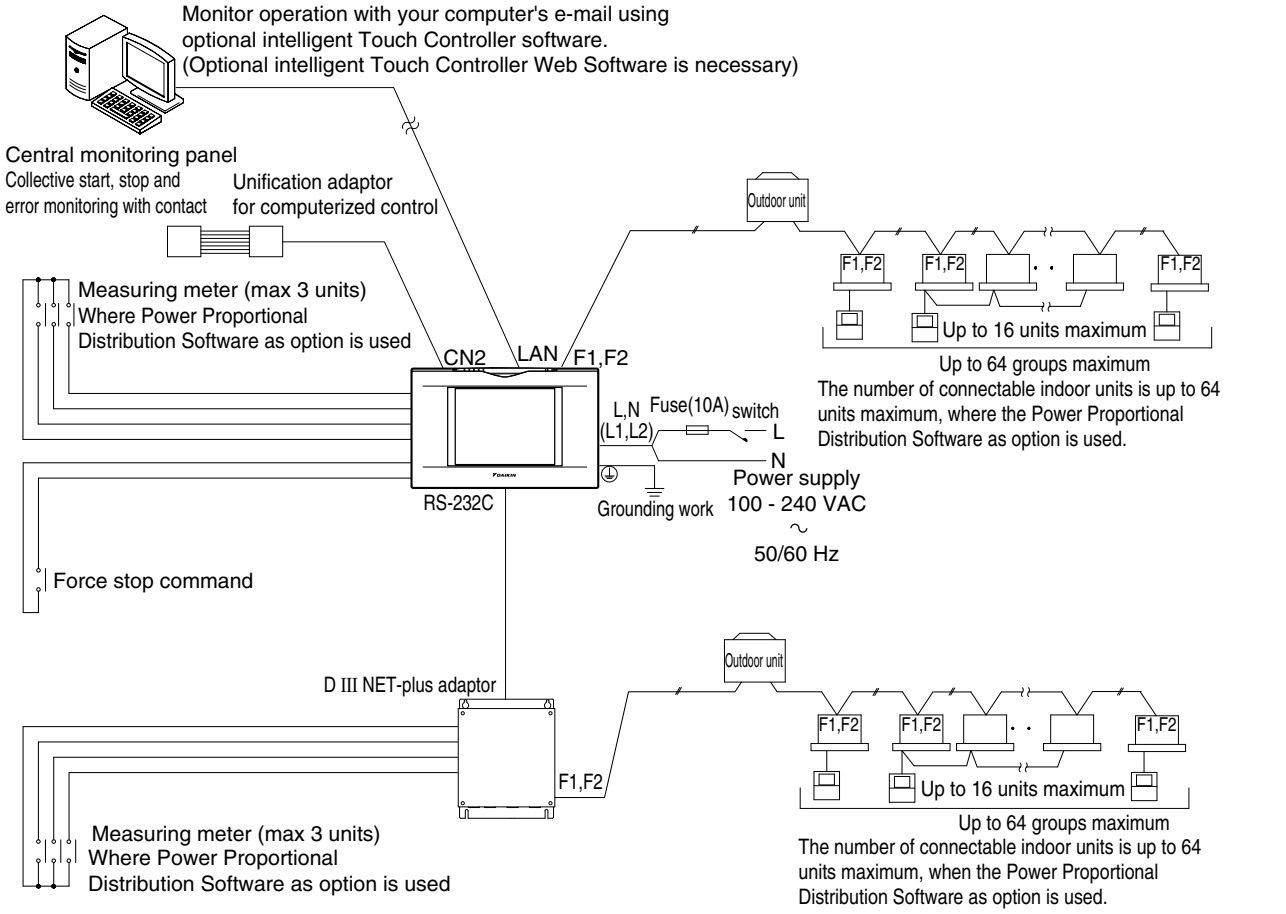


Note

- For combination and settings for double intelligent Touch controllers, be sure to consult the vendor.

23.1.4 Options

Connecting Unification adaptor allows using the contact for normal and abnormal operation signal and collective start/stop with a contact. For details, contact the vendor you purchased the product from.
Also, by connecting D III NET-plus adaptor, it is possible to operate and monitor the indoor units of 64 groups (intelligent Touch Controller plus D III NET - plus adaptor - 128 groups in total) additionally.



EM04A055D

23.1.5 Part Names and Functions



PCMCIA Card Slot

Used when using the optional Power Proportional Distribution (DCS002C51) or updating the intelligent Touch Controller software to a newer version and downloading the other data.

Color LCD with Touch Panel

Provides a display for monitoring and operation.
Monitoring display should be operated with the touch pen.
Be sure to use the touch pen provided for operation.

Touch Pen

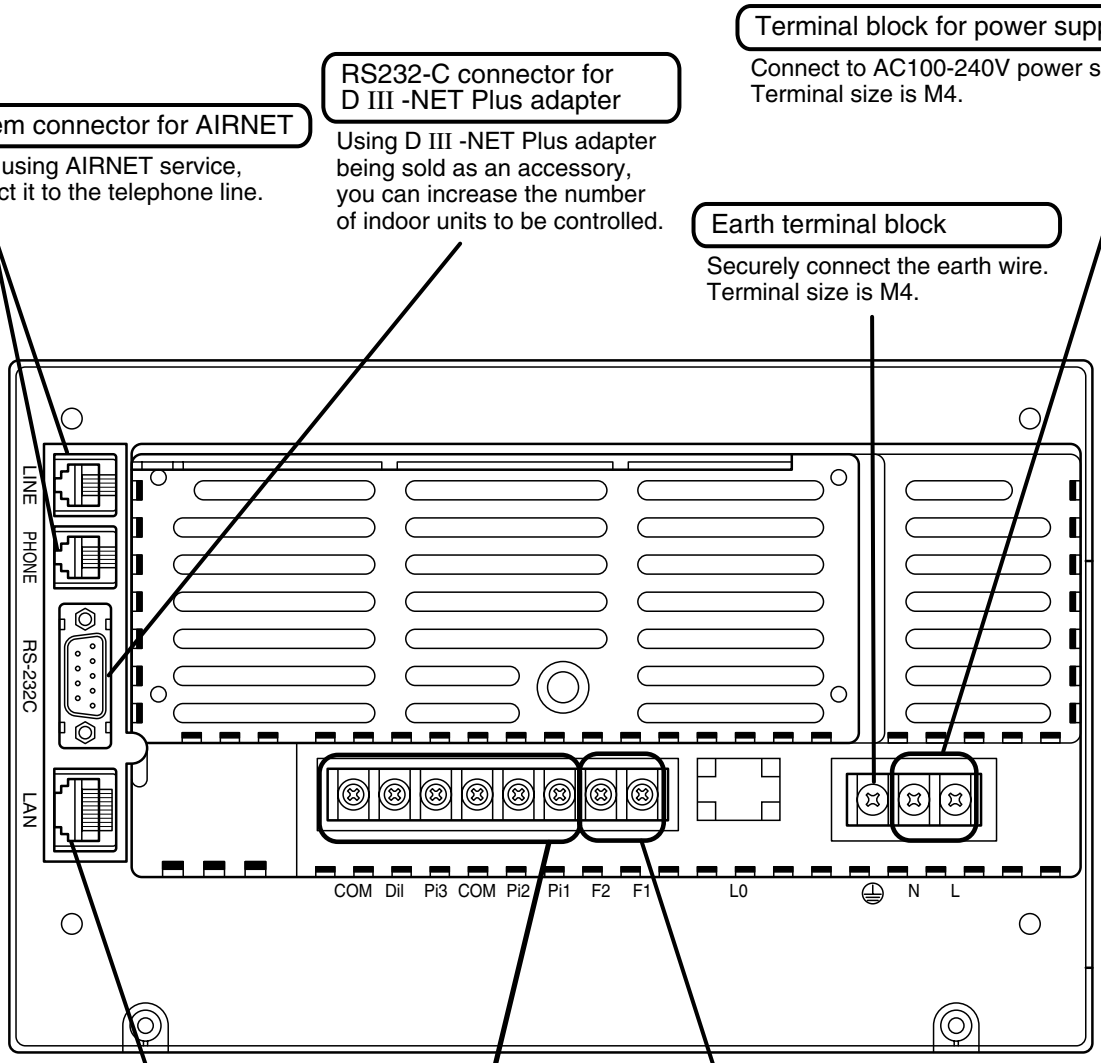
Be sure to operate with the touch pen and take care not to lose it.
In the event it is lost, contract your dealer.
Use the touch pen for operation.

Note

- You must always use the provided touch pen as any other object can damage the panel. Be sure to use the touch pen for operation.

EM04A055D

23.1.6 Terminals on the Back of intelligent Touch Controller



Terminal block for power supply

Connect to AC100-240V power supply.
Terminal size is M4.

RS232-C connector for D III -NET Plus adapter

Using D III -NET Plus adapter being sold as an accessory, you can increase the number of indoor units to be controlled.

Modem connector for AIRNET

When using AIRNET service, connect it to the telephone line.

Earth terminal block

Securely connect the earth wire.
Terminal size is M4.

Ethernet connector for web

When monitoring and operating the indoor units using the optional Web and E-mail function software sold separately, connect to LAN via Ethernet cable.

Terminal block for D III -NET communication

The terminal size of the terminal block for communication with indoor units is M3.5.

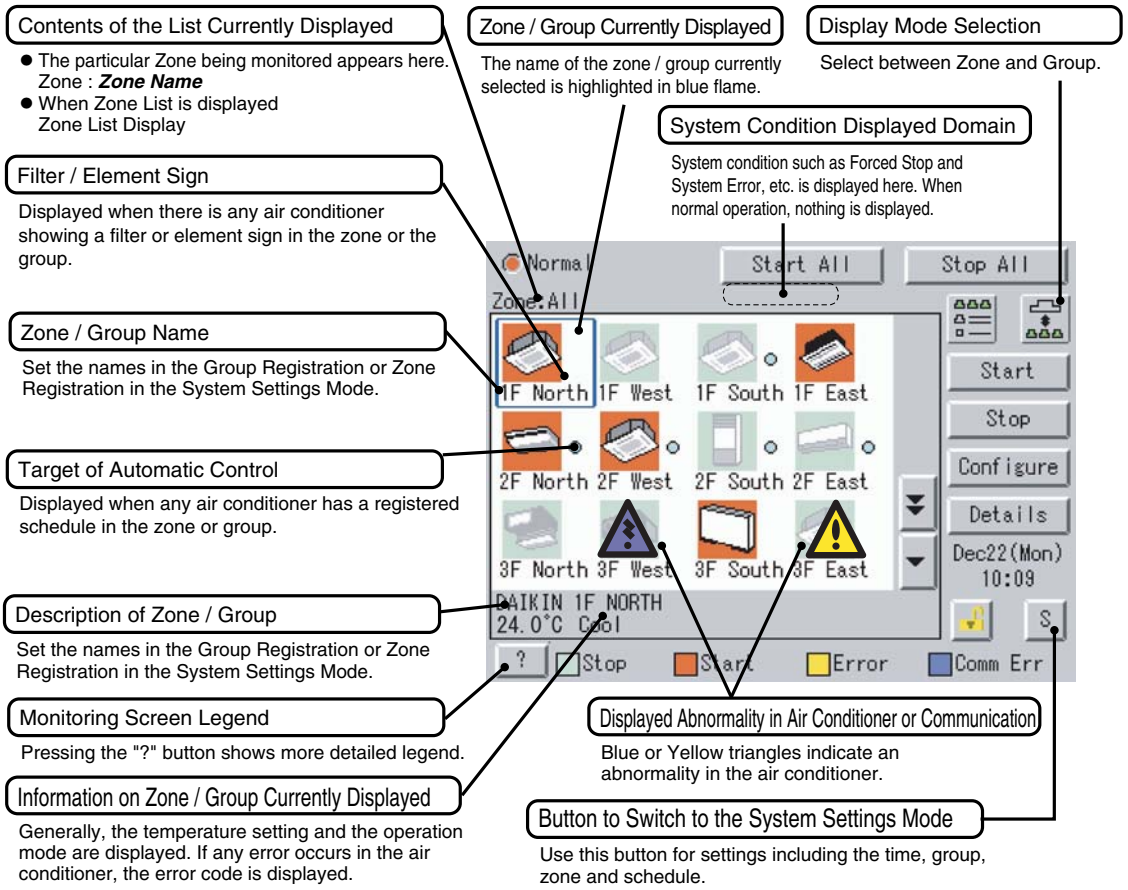
Terminal block for watt hour meter and force stop input of indoor units

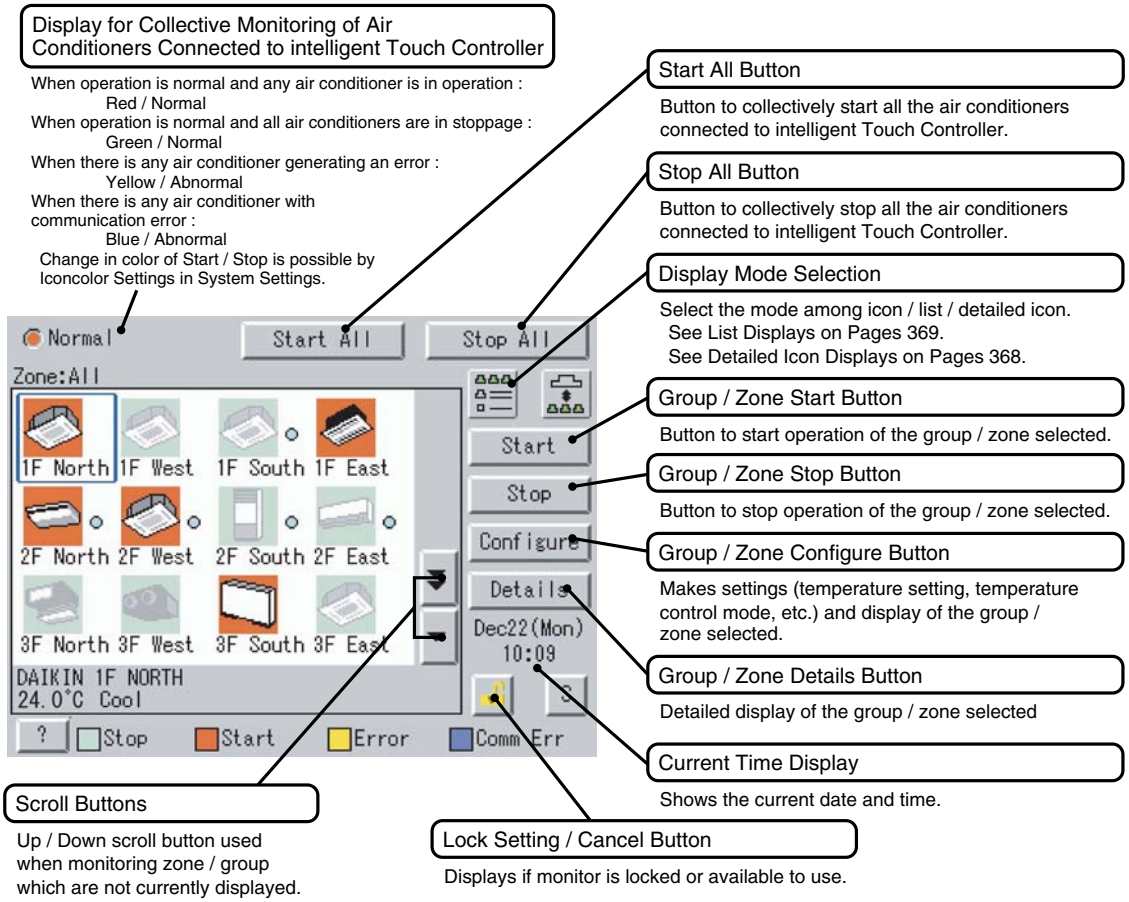
This is used when distributing the power supply to indoor units using optional Power Proportional Distribution software sold separately and when stopping the indoor units compulsorily by contact input.
The size of terminal block is M3.5.

EM04A055D

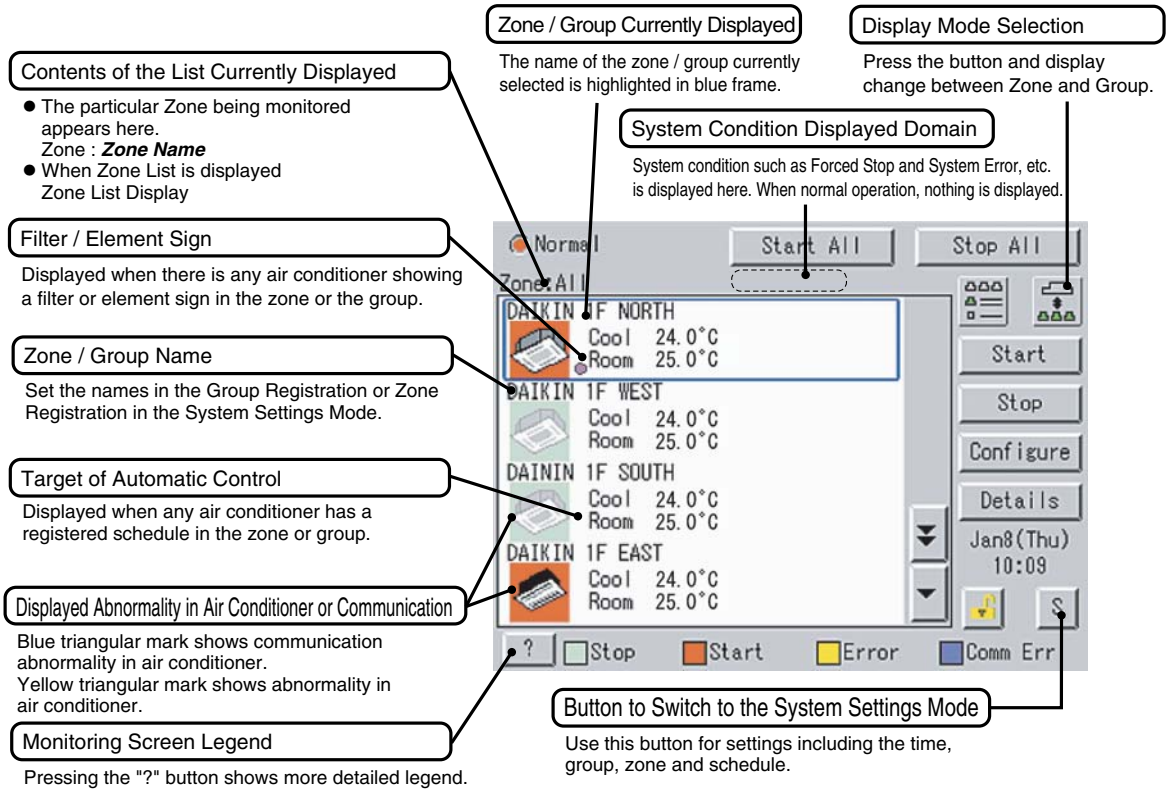
23.1.7 Part Names on the Monitoring Screen and the Functions

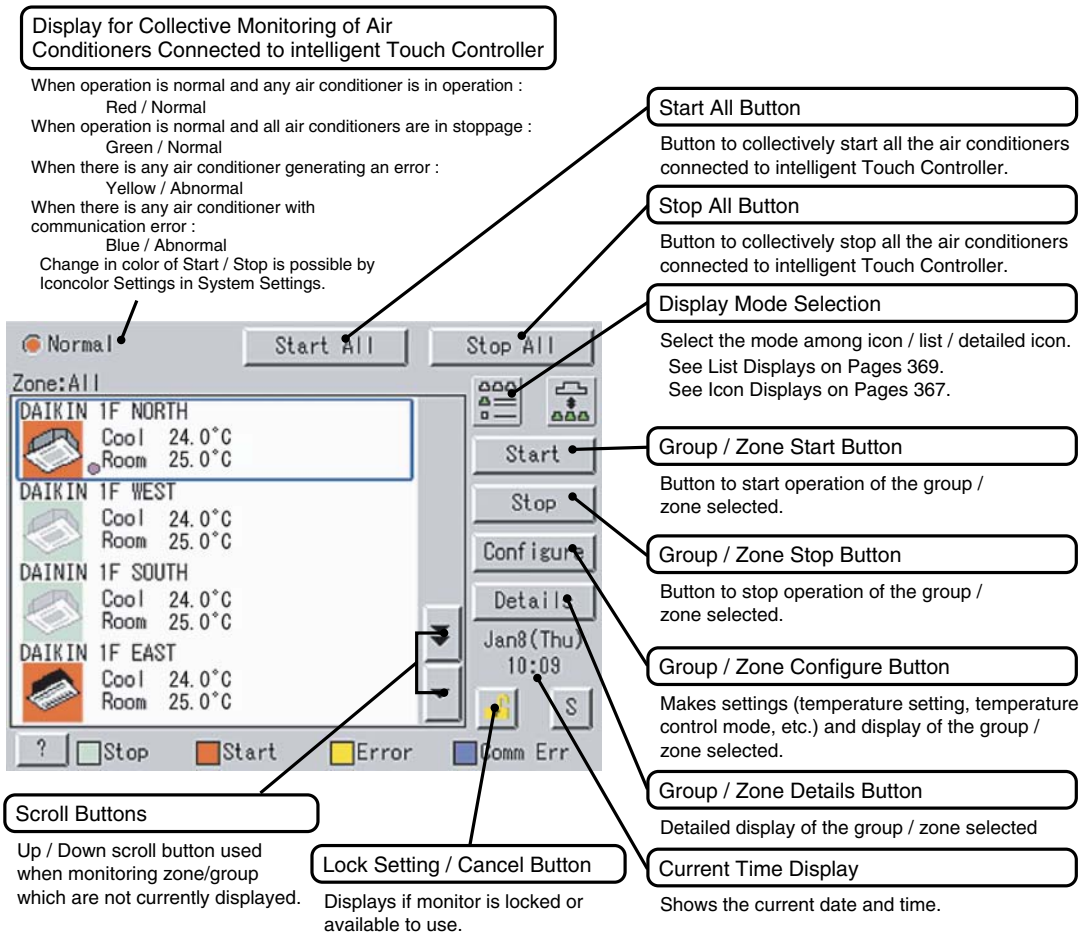
Icon





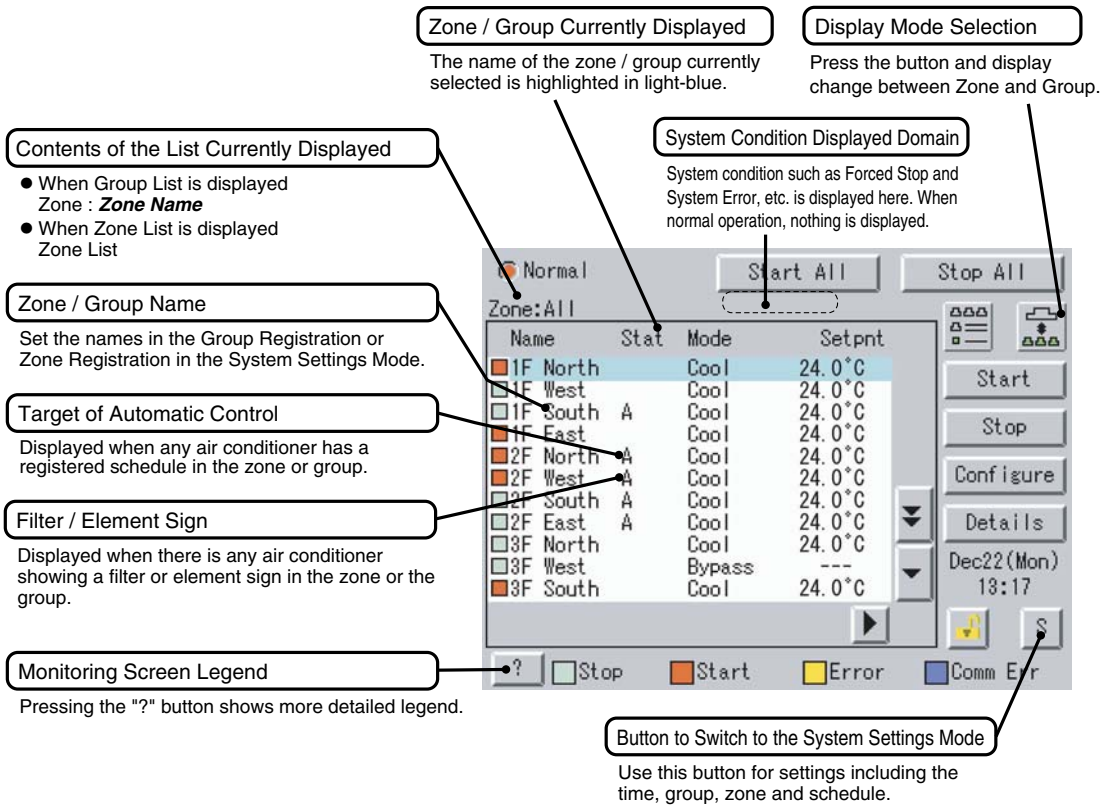
EM04A055D

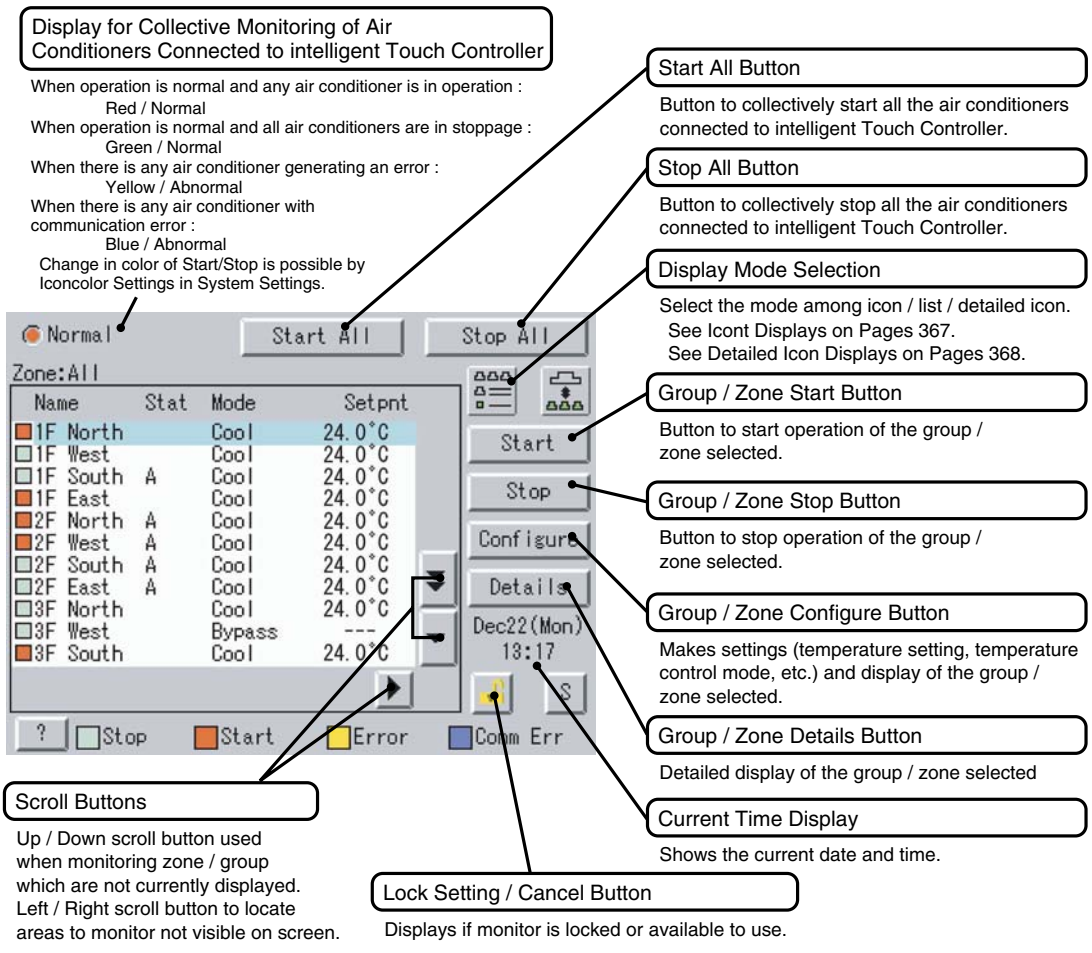

Zone / Group Currently Displayed
The name of the zone / group currently selected is highlighted in blue frame.
Display Mode Selection
Press the button and display change between Zone and Group.
Contents of the List Currently Displayed
● The particular Zone being monitored appears here.
Zone : Zone Name
● When Zone List is displayed
Zone List Display
System Condition Displayed Domain
System condition such as Forced Stop and System Error, etc. is displayed here. When normal operation, nothing is displayed.
Filter / Element Sign
Displayed when there is any air conditioner showing a filter or element sign in the zone or the group.
Zone / Group Name
Set the names in the Group Registration or Zone Registration in the System Settings Mode.
Target of Automatic Control
Displayed when any air conditioner has a registered schedule in the zone or group.
Displayed Abnormality in Air Conditioner or Communication
Blue triangular mark shows communication abnormality in air conditioner.
Yellow triangular mark shows abnormality in air conditioner.
Monitoring Screen Legend
Pressing the "?" button shows more detailed legend.
Normal
Start All
Stop All
Zone:All
DAIKIN 1F NORTH
Cool 24.0°C
Room 25.0°C
DAIKIN 1F WEST
Cool 24.0°C
Room 25.0°C
DAININ 1F SOUTH
Cool 24.0°C
Room 25.0°C
DAIKIN 1F EAST
Cool 24.0°C
Room 25.0°C
Start
Stop
Configure
Details
Jan8(Thu)
10:09
S
?
Stop
Start
Error
Comm Err
Button to Switch to the System Settings Mode
Use this button for settings including the time, group, zone and schedule.


Display for Collective Monitoring of Air Conditioners Connected to intelligent Touch Controller
When operation is normal and any air conditioner is in operation :
Red / Normal
When operation is normal and all air conditioners are in stoppage :
Green / Normal
When there is any air conditioner generating an error :
Yellow / Abnormal
When there is any air conditioner with communication error :
Blue / Abnormal
Change in color of Start / Stop is possible by Iconcolor Settings in System Settings.
Start All Button
Button to collectively start all the air conditioners connected to intelligent Touch Controller.
Stop All Button
Button to collectively stop all the air conditioners connected to intelligent Touch Controller.
Display Mode Selection
Select the mode among icon / list / detailed icon.
See List Displays on Pages 369.
See Icon Displays on Pages 367.
Group / Zone Start Button
Button to start operation of the group / zone selected.
Group / Zone Stop Button
Button to stop operation of the group / zone selected.
Group / Zone Configure Button
Makes settings (temperature setting, temperature control mode, etc.) and display of the group / zone selected.
Group / Zone Details Button
Detailed display of the group / zone selected
Current Time Display
Shows the current date and time.
Scroll Buttons
Up / Down scroll button used when monitoring zone/group which are not currently displayed.
Lock Setting / Cancel Button
Displays if monitor is locked or available to use.
Normal
Start All
Stop All
Zone:All
DAIKIN 1F NORTH
Cool 24.0°C
Room 25.0°C
DAIKIN 1F WEST
Cool 24.0°C
Room 25.0°C
DAININ 1F SOUTH
Cool 24.0°C
Room 25.0°C
DAIKIN 1F EAST
Cool 24.0°C
Room 25.0°C
Start
Stop
Configure
Details
Jan8(Thu)
10:09
S
?
Stop
Start
Error
Comm Err

EM04A055D

List





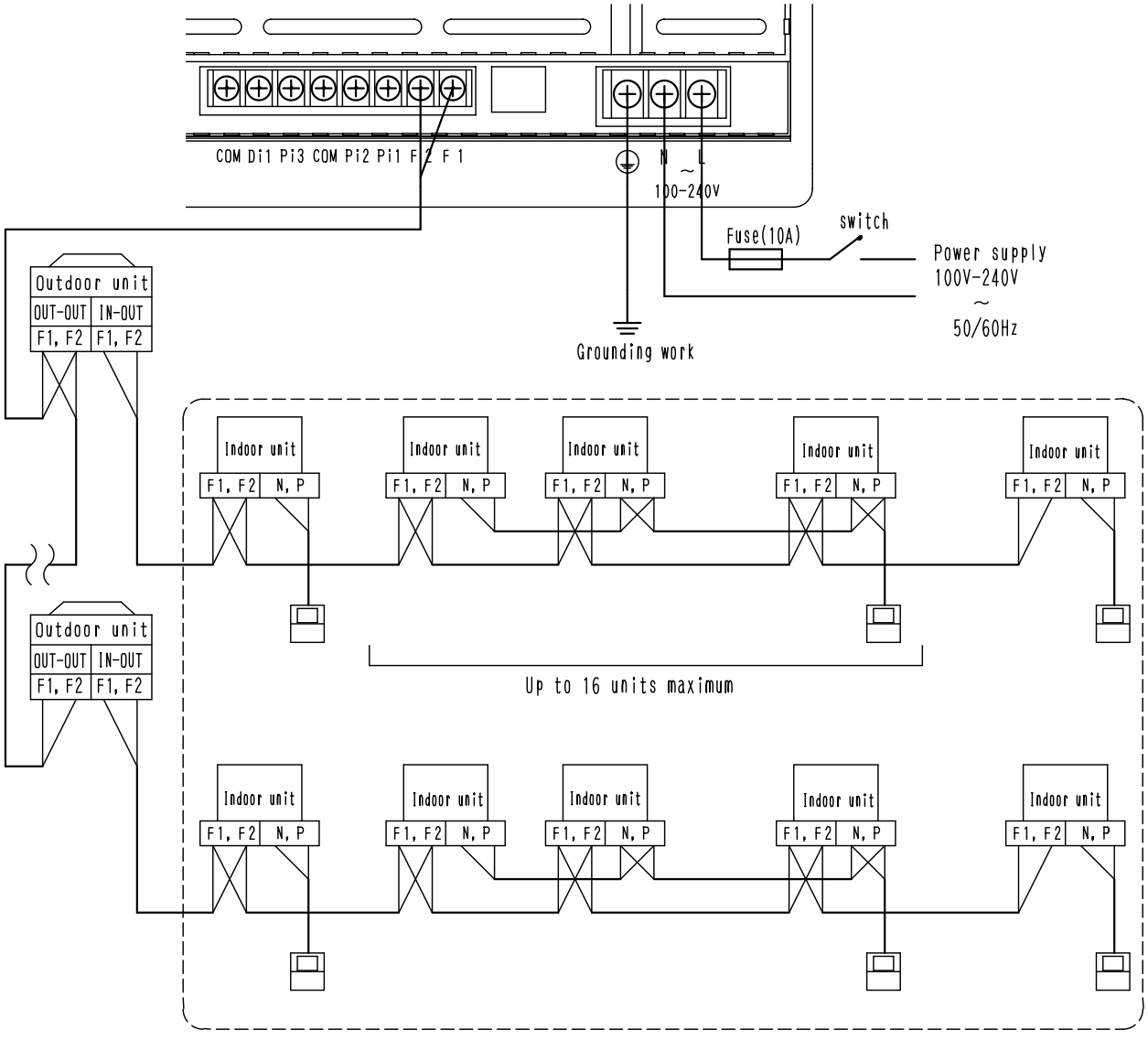
EM04A055D

23.1.8 System Wiring

When wiring, cut off the power supply (using a local switch) and do not apply power until all work has been finished.

Wiring for power supply and Connecting wiring for DⅢ-NET communication of indoor units

In order to perform centralized control of indoor units using this controller, connect the power wiring to terminals L and N, earth wire to earth terminal ⏚ and connecting wiring for DⅢ-NET communication of air-conditioner (indoor unit and outdoor unit) to terminals F1 and F2 respectively as shown in the sketch below.



Power cable wiring	1.25mm²
Fuse	10A
Connecting wiring for DⅢ- NET communication of indoor and outdoor units	0.75 - 1.25 mm² vinyl cord or cable with sheath (2 wire) ---Up to 1000 m maximum (wiring length -- up to 2000 m maximum) (When shield cable is used, the wiring length is available up to 1500m.) For the type of electric wire, refer to the design guide.

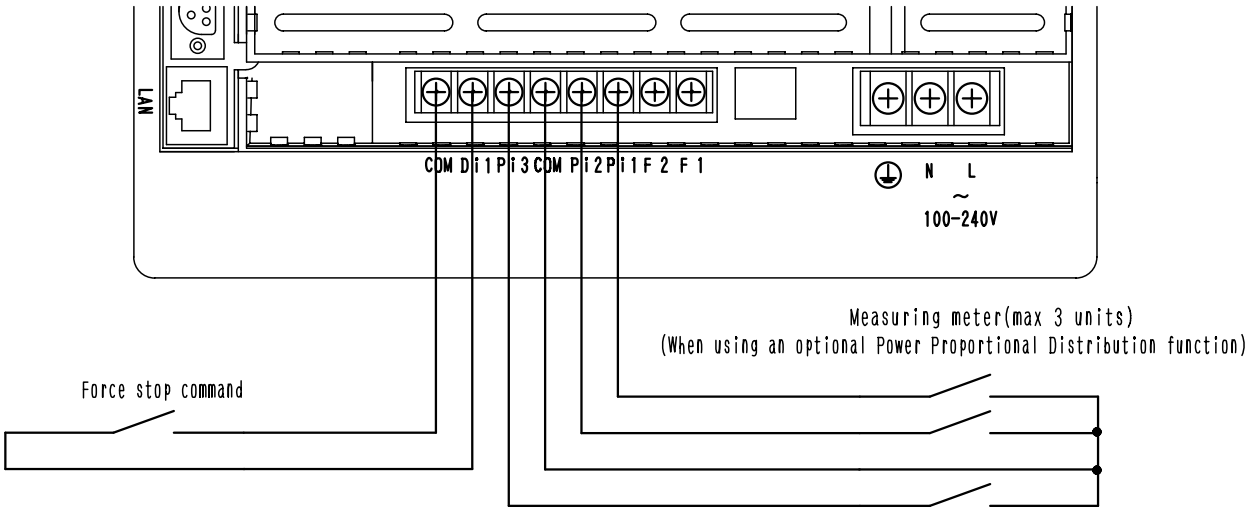
≪CAUTION≫

- Don't fail to perform installation of Grounding work. Don't connect the grounding wire to any of gas pipe, city water pipe, lightning rod, and telephone grounding wire.
- Don't turn ON the power supply (front switch) until all the works are complete.
- The connecting wiring for communication of indoor and outdoor units is a connecting wiring for the control. Don't clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.
- Don't connect the power cable to F1, F2 terminal blocks. Wrong connection to these terminal blocks could result in damage and burning of the centralized control devices and of the electric parts of the indoor and outdoor units. This is very hazardous. Check each wired cable once more before turning ON the power switch.

1P153198D

Wiring for force stop input and for electric power distribution

In order to stop the air-conditioner through force stop input, connect the wiring for force stop input to the terminals Di1 and COM as shown in the sketch below.
In addition, in order to calculate the electric energy using optional Power Proportional Distribution software, connect the wiring for electric energy to the terminals Pi and COM as shown in the sketch below.



Wiring for force stop input	• 0.75 – 1.25 mm^2 vinyl cord or cable with sheath (2 wire) -- up to 150m maximum • When FORCE-STOP INPUT is kept ON, the indoor units connected thereto are unable to be operated because they are force-stopped. • Use a contact which can guarantee minimum application load DC16V and 10mA. • Use an instantaneous contact of 200msec or more in current feed time, where required.

Meter wiring for power distribution(option)	• 0.75 – 1.25 mm^2 vinyl cord or cable with sheath (2 wire) -- up to 150m maximum
	• The number of connectable indoor units is up to 64 units maximum, where the Power Proportional Distribution Card as option is used.
	• The measuring meters to be connected must meet the requirements specified below.
	  • To be a measuring meter with pulse oscillator. (pulse/kwh)
	  • Pulse band of 100msec or mores
	  • Measuring meter which uses semiconductor relay for pulse output and outputs pulses from non-voltage contact

≪CAUTION≫

- Don't clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.
- Terminals COM are inter-connected. Connecting to either one is allowed, but the number of cables connectable to one terminal is limited to 2 pieces.
- Don't connect the power cable to Pi, Di, COM terminal blocks. Wrong connection to these terminal blocks could result in damage and burning of the centralized control devices and of the electric parts of the indoor and outdoor units. This is very hazardous. Check each wired cable once more before turning ON the power switch.

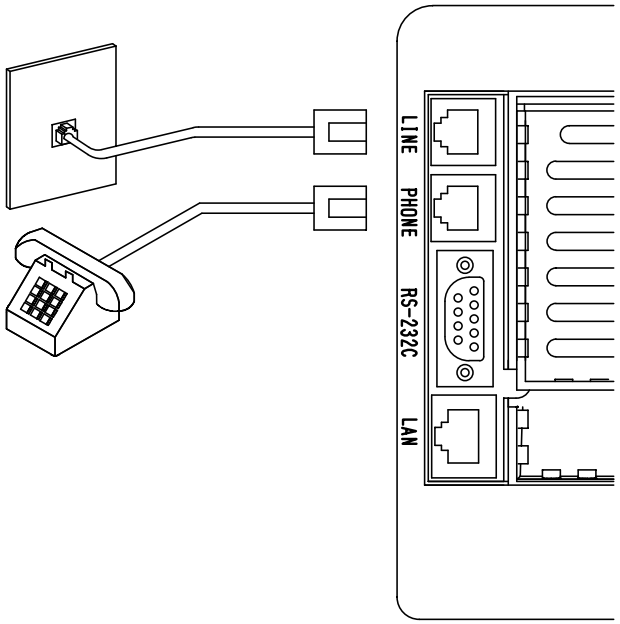
1P153198D

Connection to public telephone line

Connect to the telephone line in order to monitor the air-conditioner via AIRNET service.
Connect to modular cable from the public telephone line to the upper connector with a stamping of LINE, and connect the modular cable of the telephone to the lower connector with a stamping of PHONE, as shown in the sketch below.

≪CAUTION≫

- Don't clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.
- When using AIRNET service, it is necessary to use a separate modem specified by us and enter into Maintenance Agreement with charge.

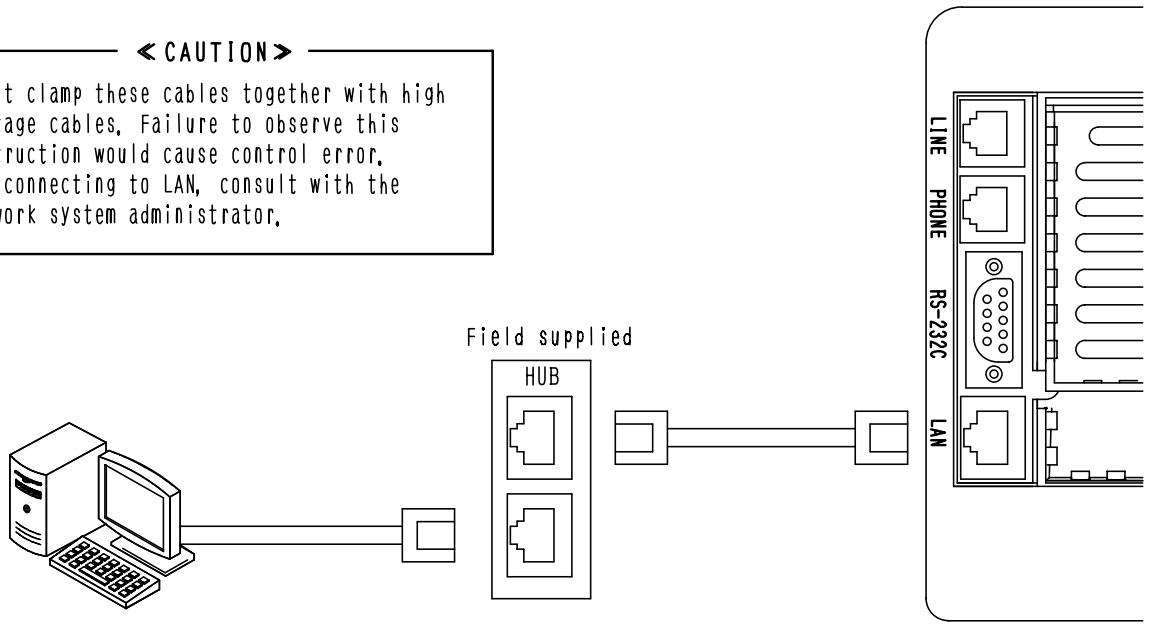


Connection to LAN

In order to monitor/control the air-conditioner using optional Web and E-mail function software sold separately, use a UTP cable to connect to LAN.
Connect the UTP cable to the Ethernet connector with a stamping of LAN.

≪CAUTION≫

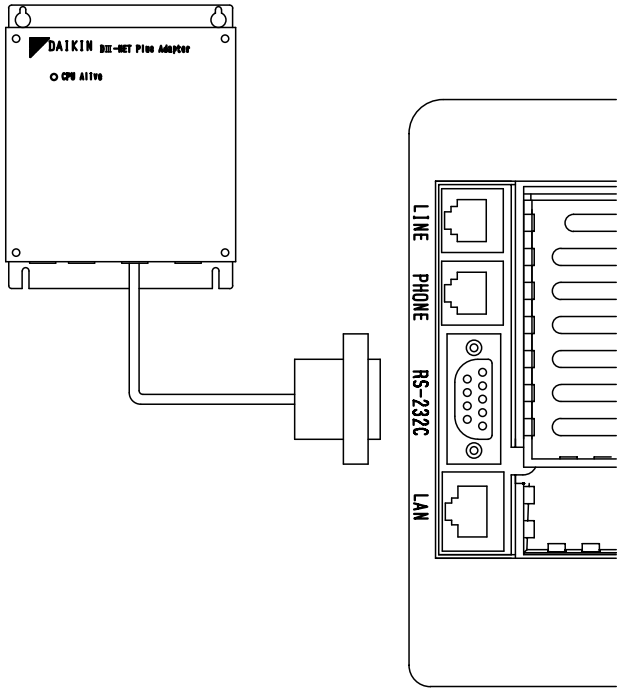
- Don't clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.
- For connecting to LAN, consult with the network system administrator.



1P153198D

DⅢ-NET Plus adaptor connection

In order to increase the number of indoor units to be controlled, connect DⅢ- NET Plus adaptor using RS232-C cable attached to the adaptor.
For details, refer to the installation manual of DⅢ- NET Plus adaptor.

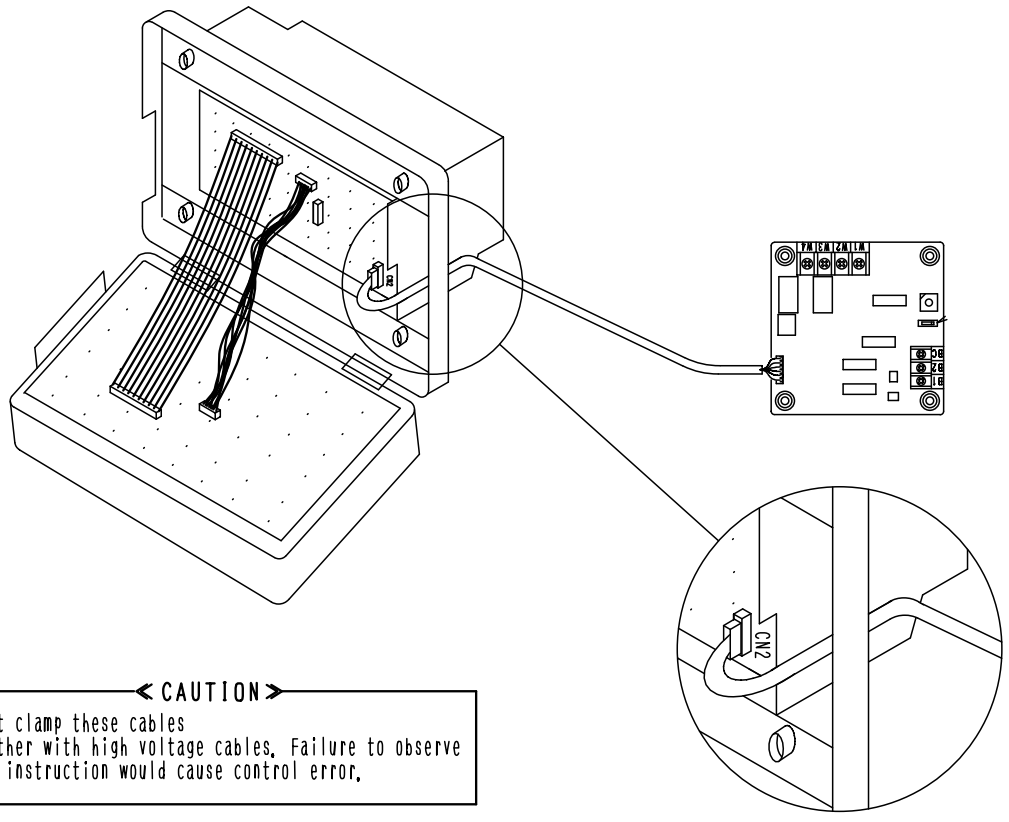


≪CAUTION≫

- Don't clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.

Connection for Unification Adaptor

In order to perform total start and stop/situation monitoring from central supervisory board, etc., connect a Unification Adaptor sold separately.
As shown in the sketch below, open the controller and connect the cable from the Unification Adaptor to CN2 connector located on the printed board on the lower case.
If you route the cable in the cable guide groove on the lower case, you can make a smart connection without any slack of the cable.



≪CAUTION≫

- Don't clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.

1P153198D

23.2 DCS002C51 — Power Proportional Distribution Software

Function and Outline

Power Proportional Distribution Software, in combination with an existing intelligent Touch Controller, enables you to proportionally calculate and display the electricity amount used by an air conditioner per indoor unit.

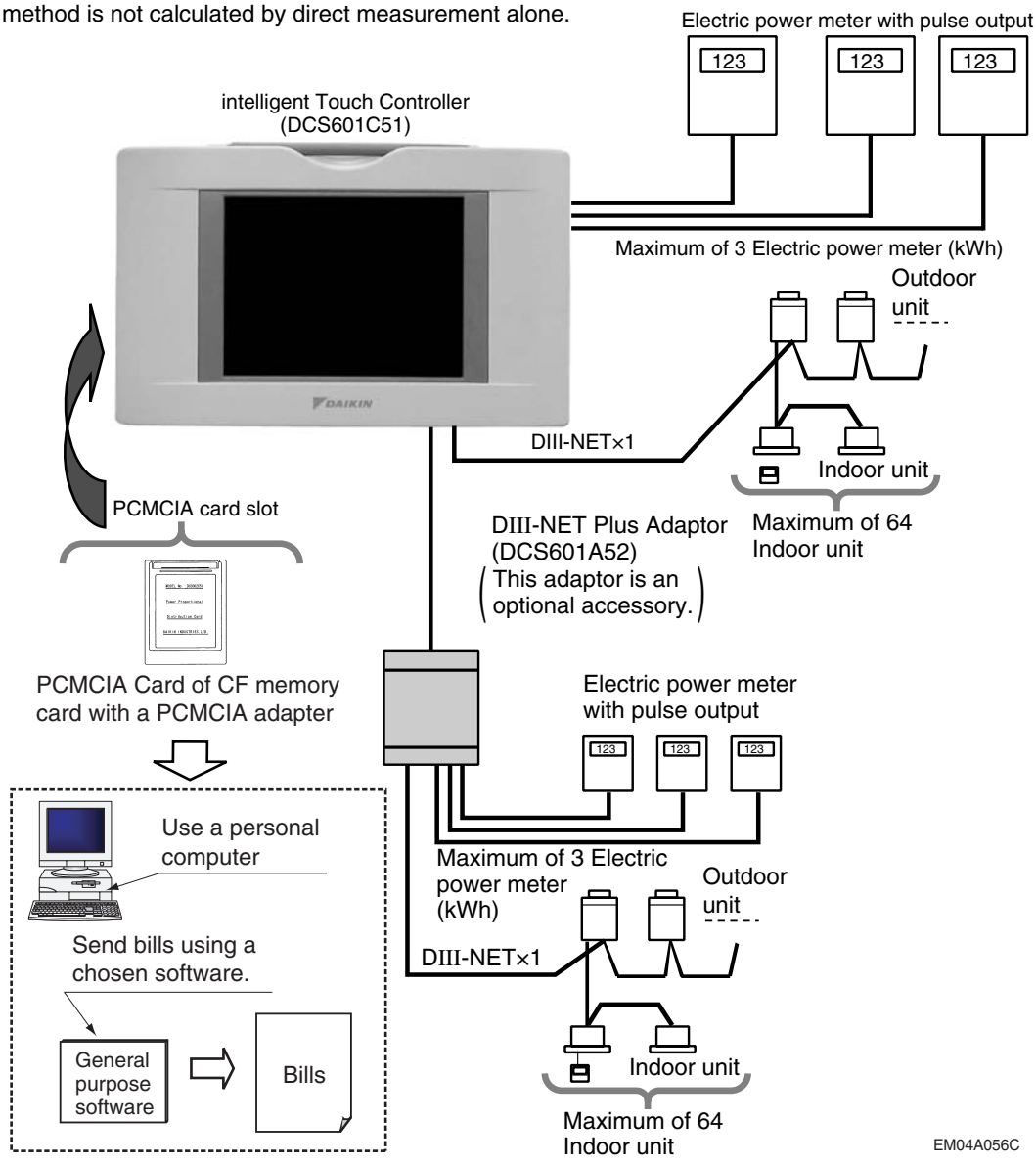
Main Functions

Power proportional distribution results data can be saved for 12 months. (max. 12 months and 30 days)

- Per intelligent Touch Controller, power proportional distribution can be calculated for 64 indoor units maximum.
- When D III -NET Plus Adaptor is connected, power proportional distribution can be calculated for more 64 indoor units at maximum (a total of 128).
- 3 Electric power meters at maximum can be connected to an intelligent Touch Controller.
- When D III -NET Plus Adaptor is connected, more 3 Electric power meters at maximum (a total of 6) can be connected.
- Power proportion distribution results data can be saved or down loaded via web access. Data is saved in the typical CSV computer format.
  Data is saved in the typical CSV computer format, so bills can be issued easily by use of a general purpose table calculation software package.
  A personal computer and a general purpose table calculation software package are available separately.
- The above functions of power proportional distribution are available on the optional web site software as well.

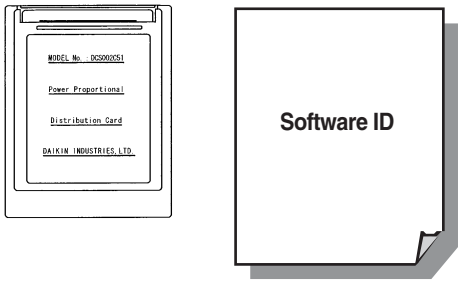
Precautions

This system calculates electricity consumption by size of indoor units, run time, expansion valves status, suction temperature and the number of pulses from the power meters installed at the Outdoor Units.
This method is not calculated by direct measurement alone.



Checking Attachments

Power Proportional Distribution Card includes the following attachments.



EM04A056C

How to Connect

To activate the power proportional distribution function, it is necessary to set the program by use of the attached PCMCIA card and carry out a trial operation.
Before use, consult your supplier.

EM04A056C

23.3 DCS004A51 — Web Software

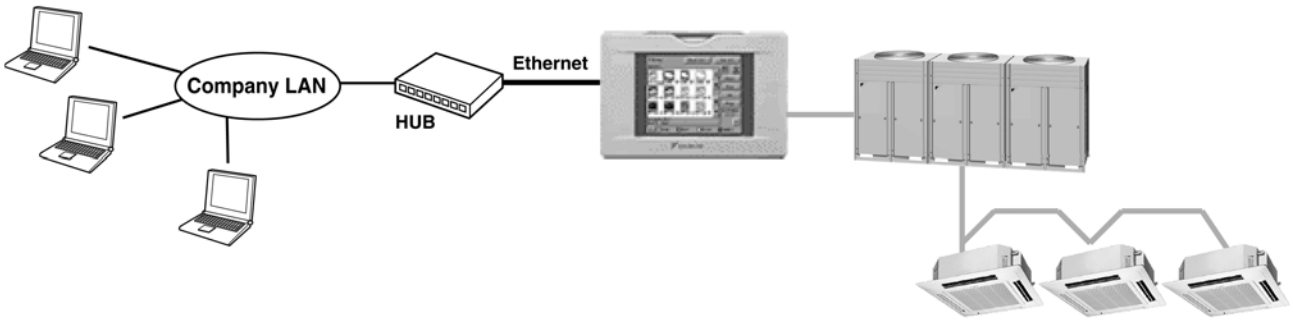
Functions and Outline

Using this software enables you to operate and monitor air conditioners linked to the intelligent Touch Controller on the Windows PC, which is connected with the intelligent Touch Controller and the Ethernet communication (LAN).

* The intelligent Touch Controller functions as a Web server to visit the Website of the intelligent Touch Controller through the Internet Explorer, which is incorporated in the PC like as its standard software, thus making it possible to operate and monitor the air conditioners.

Furthermore, through the use of a mail server, if a malfunction occurs in any of the air conditioners which are linked to the intelligent Touch Controller, it will be able to transmit mails to a pre-assigned address to alert you to the malfunction.

For further information, contact our sales representatives.



Web Interface of the intelligent Touch Controller

Permissions: Privileges Given to Each Login Name

There are two categories of login users: General User who can perform basic operations via the web interface and Administrator who can setup the system and change system settings.

Two Display Modes

You can select the display mode from two modes during login process: the Basic mode which provides a simple and easy-to-use interface and the Advanced mode which allows you to use advanced settings options.

Start/Stop Operation

You can uniformly start or stop all the devices in a group, a zone, or multiple zones at once.

Advanced Settings for Air Conditioners

You can set temperature, operation modes, direction of air flow, air volume, and remote controller mode of all devices in a group, a zone, or multiple zones.

Various Operation Modes

You can operate devices from a web interface, the intelligent Touch Controller console, or a local remote controller. Also the Administrator can permit or prohibit remote controller operations of devices in a specified group or zone using the web interface.

User Administration

The Administrator can register or delete General Users who can operate air conditioners via the web interface, and also set/change his/her own password and General Users' passwords.

Scheduling Function

The Administrator can precisely schedule operations for a specific group or zone of devices. Weekly schedule and 10 extra schedules can be created.

EM04A057D

24. intelligent Manager

24.1 DAM602B51 / DAM602B52

24.1.1 Model Series (Factory in Charge)

iPU Model Name	Number of units to be connected	Number of DIII-NET port	Number of Digital input
DAM602B51	256 units	4	20
DAM602B52	128 units	2	

Optional	Model name
DAM002A51	Power Proportional Distribution software
DAM003A51	ECO software
DAM004A51	Web software

* MADE IN JAPAN



24.1.2 Concept and Main Specifications

<Product concept>

- **A/C monitoring panel targeting the simplified BMS market.**
  The needs of the current i-Manager A/C monitoring panel will be covered continuously, and we make inroads into the BMS market by expansion of functions.
- **Expansion of function to be realized by optional software.**
  Customers can select required functions.
  Price can be set up in accordance with required functions.

<Major Specification>

Major modified functions		I-Manager II	I-Manager III
Constitution of iPU (Number of III ports)		2,3,4 port version	2,4 port version
Power proportional distribution		○	DAM002A51 (option)
ECO (Energy saving/Power limit control)		○	DAM003A51 (option)
Web function	Individual control	—	DAM004A51 (option)
	Monitoring of abnormality *1		
	Control setting *2		
	Power proportional distribution data *3		
Analog interlock function		—	○
Corresponding with air cooled chillers and CHESBAC (Monitoring of AIRNET data)		—	○
Number of control points of control group		Max. 128 points	Max. 1024 points
Optimum starting control (from Jan/2007)		—	○
Indication of history of operation source (from Jan/2007)		—	○
Monitoring of continuous operation time		○	
Calendar		Rotation	1-year use disposable
Use of built-in optional modem for AIRNET		—	○

*1: E-mail communication function is included when the equipment is abnormal.
*2: Schedule control setting, Set temperature control setting
*3: PPD software(DAM002A51) is required for the PPD data available on web.

24.1.3 Installation

Please read these "SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS" carefully before installing this unit and be sure to install it correctly. After completing the installation, make sure that the unit operates properly during the start-up operation.
Please instruct the customer on how to operate the unit and keep it maintained.
Also, inform customers that they should store this installation manual along with the operation manual for future reference. This unit comes under the term "appliances not accessible to the general public".

Meaning of warning, caution and note symbols.
⚠ WARNING Indication a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
⚠ CAUTION Indication a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be sued to alect against unsafe practices.
⚠ NOTE Indication situation that may result in equipment or property-damage-only accidents.

⚠WARNING

Ask your dealer or qualified personnel to carry out installation work. Do not try to install the machine by yourself. Improper installation may result in electric shocks or fire.

Perform installation work in accordance with this installation manual. Improper installation may result in electric shocks or fire.

Be sure to use only the specified accessories and parts for installation work. Failure to use the specified parts may result in electric shocks, fire or the unit falling.

Carry out the specified installation work after taking into account earthquakes. Improper installation work may result in the equipment falling and causing accidents.

Make sure that a separate power supply circuit is provided for this unit and that all electrical work is carried out by qualified personnel according to local laws and regulations and this installation manual. An insufficient power supply capacity or improper electrical construction may lead to electric shocks or fire.

Make sure that all wiring is secured, the specified wires and used, and no external forces act on the terminal connections or wires. Improper connections or installation may result in fire.

When wiring the power supply and connecting the remote controller wiring and transmission wiring, position the wires so that the electric parts box lid can be securely fastened. Improper positioning of the electric parts box lid may result in electric shocks, fire or the terminals overheating.

Before touching electrical parts, turn off the unit.

Ground this unit. Do not connect the ground wire to gas or water pipes, lightning rod or a telephone ground wire. Incomplete grounding may result in electric shocks.

Do not reconstruct or change the settings of the protection devices. If the pressure switch, thermal switch, or other protection device is shorted and operated forcibly, or parts other than those specified by Daikin are used, fire or explosion may result.

Do not touch the switch with wet fingers. Touching a switch with wet fingers can cause electric shock.

Install an leak circuit breaker, as required. If an leak circuit breaker is not installed, electric shock may result.

Do not install this unit in the following locations.

(a) where a mineral oil mist or an oil spray or vapor is produced, for example in a kitchen. Plastic parts may deteriorate and fall off or result in water leakage.

(b) where corrosive gas, such as sulfurous acid gas, is produced. Corroding copper pipes or soldered parts may result in refrigerant leakage.

(C) near machinery emitting electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may disturb the operation of the control system and result in malfunction of the equipment.

(d) where flammable gases may leak, where there are carbon fiber or ignitable dust suspensions in the air, or where volatile flammables such as thinner or gasoline are handled. Operating the unit in such conditions may result in fire.

⚠CAUTION

Be very careful about product transportation.

Safely dispose of the packing materials. Packing materials, such as nails and other metal or wooden parts, may cause stabs or other injuries. Tear apart and throw away plastic packaging bags so that children will not play with them. If children play with a plastic bag which was not torn apart, they face the risk of suffocation.

⚠NOTE

Install this unit, power supply wiring and connecting wires at least 3.5ft. away from televisions or radios in order to prevent image interference or noise. (Depending on the radio waves, a distance of 3.5ft. may not be sufficient enough to eliminate the noise.)

This unit is a class A product.

In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

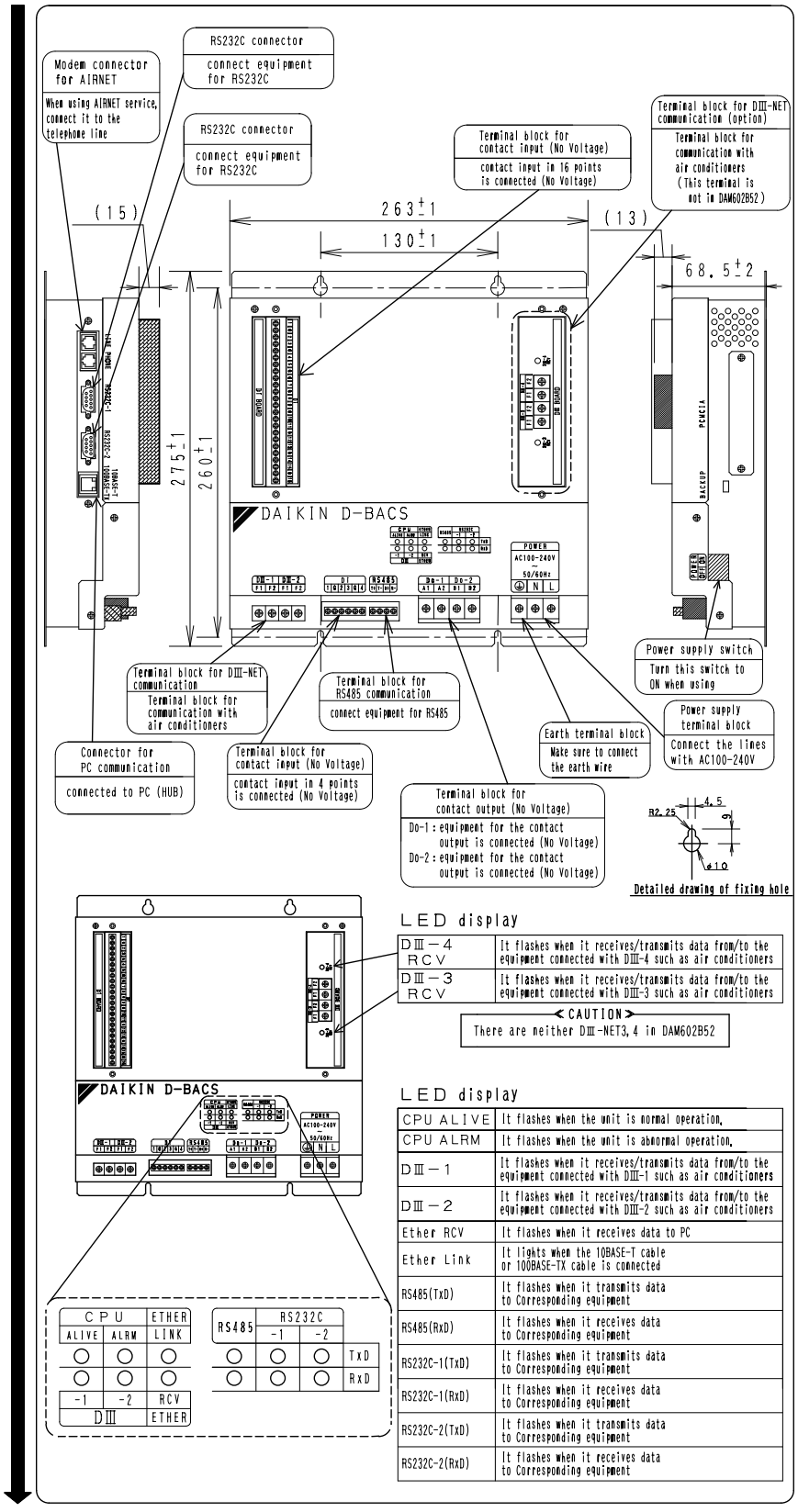
❶ Components

The following parts are attached to this unit.
Make sure to check them before installation.

intelligent Processing Unit	1 set
INSTALLATION MANUAL	1 copy

1P177851C

❷ Names and functions of each part



1P177851C

❸ Installation

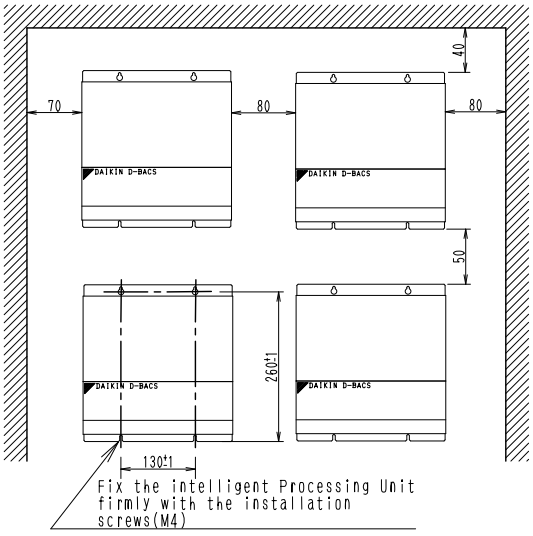
Don't fail to turn OFF the indoor unit power switch before installing intelligent Processing Unit.
Failure to observe this instruction could result in electric shock.

●Location

Make sure to install the unit on the inside of the inaccessible and lockable (or needed to use exclusive tools to open) electrical component box installed indoors where the effect of electromagnetic wave or dust can be avoided.
The minimum depth required for installation is 100mm

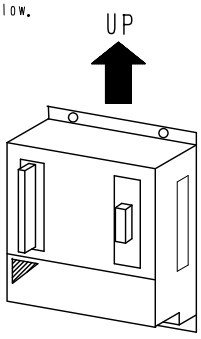
●Required installation space

Keep the minimum amount of space indicated in the below drawing from walls, and between units when installed in series.



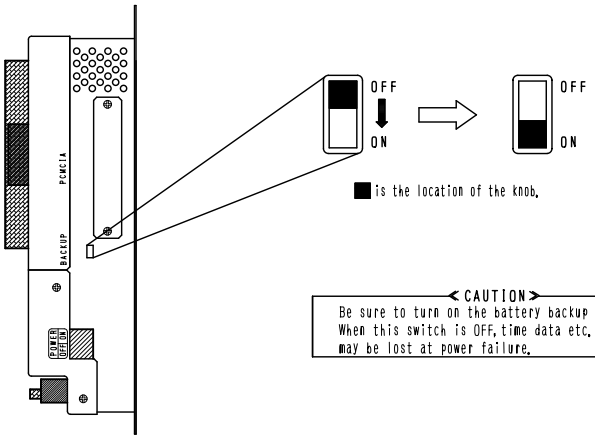
●How to install

For installation direction follow the drawing shown below.



<CAUTION>
Make sure to install the unit vertically. Do not install the unit horizontally, because it may cause malfunction.

Setting "BACK-UP BATTERY VALIDATE" switch
(shifted to OFF when being shipped from the shop. -- Back-up battery set to INVALIDATE)
For the switch to back up the clock, etc. in case of any power failure, actuate it from OFF side (knob is located above) to ON side (knob is located below) as shown in the sketch below.



<CAUTION>
Be sure to turn on the battery backup switch.
When this switch is OFF, time data etc. may be lost at power failure.

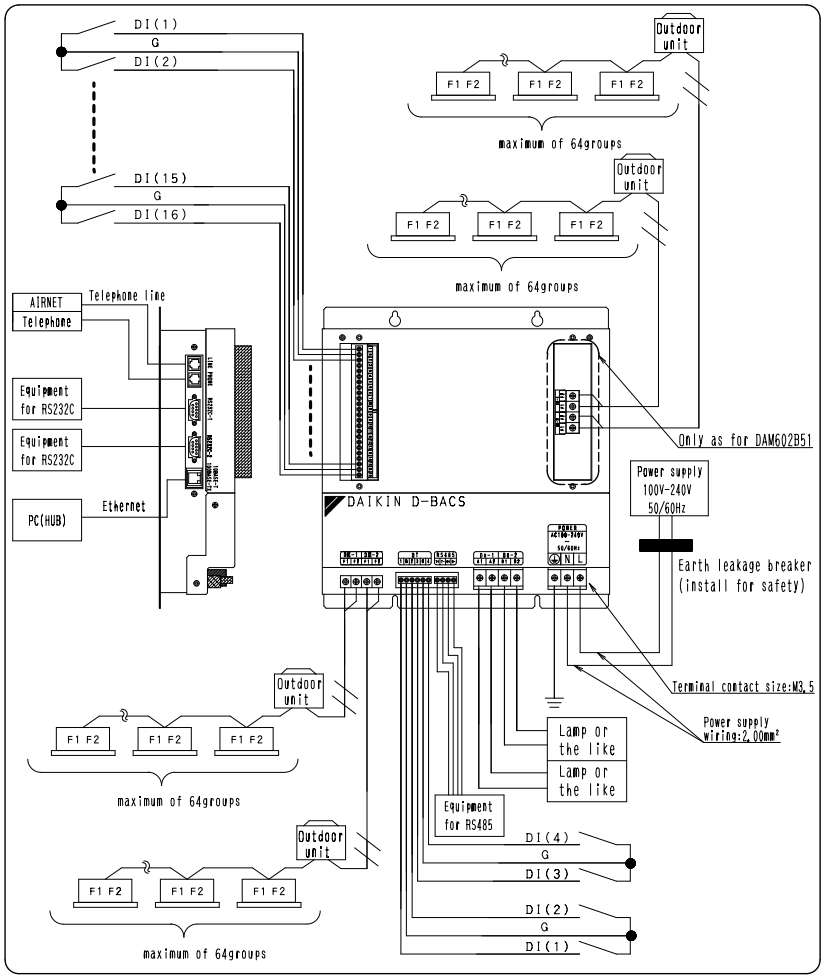
TO BACK

1P177851C

④「DⅢ-NET master」setting

Make sure to connect the unit with 「DⅢ-NET master」
Remove the master central setting connectors of the
intelligent Touch Controller or centralized management controller or ON/OFF controller
When using together with other centralized controllers such as
intelligent Touch Controller or centralized management controller or ON/OFF controller.

⑤Malfunction of unit

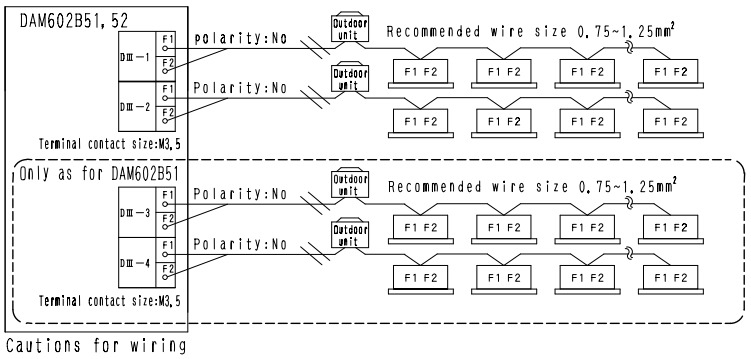


⑥Electric Wiring Connection

Don't fail to turn OFF the indoor unit power switch before installing intelligent Processing Unit.
Failure to observe this instruction could result in electric shock.

■Everything relating with field wiring must be supplied in the field.

● DⅢ-NET wiring



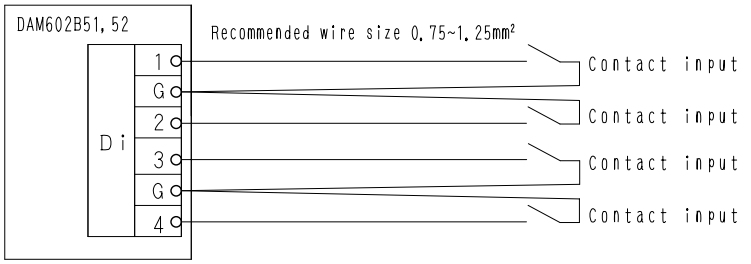
Cautions for wiring

1. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores
2. Use wires of sizes between 0.75mm² and 1.25mm²
3. Do not bind the wire for DⅢ-NET
4. Wirings for DⅢ-NET must be isolated from the power lines
5. Wire length:Max 1000m

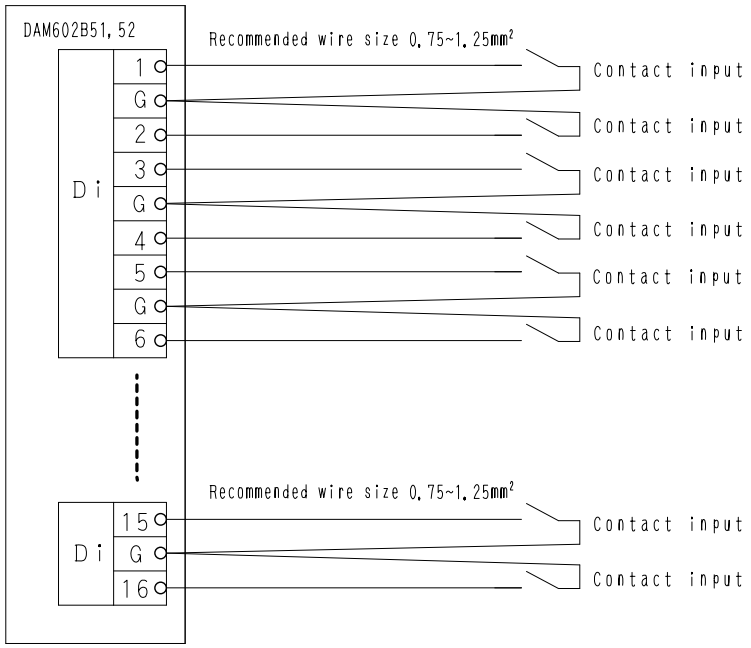
1P177853B

●No voltage contact input wiring

●Di wiring



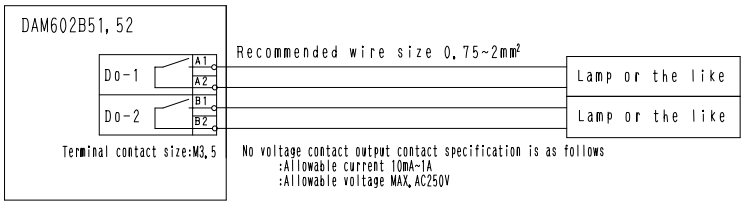
●Di BOARD wiring



Cautions for wiring

1. The input are all the no voltage contact
2. Use a contact which can guarantee minimum application load DC16V and 10mA
3. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores
4. Use wires of sizes between 0.75mm² and 1.25mm²
5. Do not bind the wire for control
6. Wirings for control must be isolated from the power lines
7. Terminals G are inter-connected. Connecting to either one is allowed, but the number of cables connectable to one terminal is limited to 2 pieces
8. Wire length:Max 150m

●No voltage contact output wiring



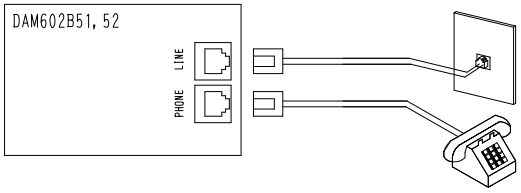
Cautions for wiring

1. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores
2. Use wires of sizes between 0.75mm² and 2mm²
3. Do not bind the wire for control
4. Wirings for control must be isolated from the power lines
5. Wire length:Max 150m

1P177853B

● Connection to public telephone line

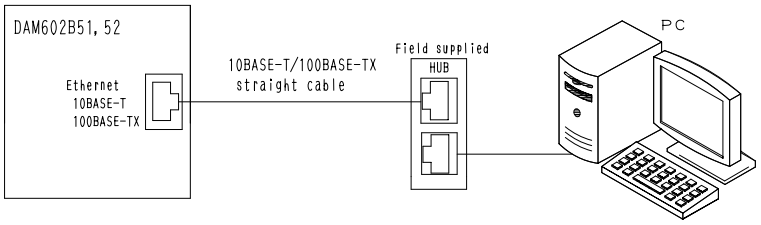
Connect to the telephone line in order to monitor the air-conditioner via AIRNET service.
Connect to modular cable from the public telephone line to the upper connector with a stamping of LINE, and connect the modular cable of the telephone to the lower connector with a stamping of PHONE, as shown in the sketch below.



Cautions for wiring

1. Don't clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.
2. When using AIRNET service, it is necessary to use a separate modem specified by us and enter into Maintenance Agreement with charge.

● Ethernet communication wiring



Cautions for wiring

Don't clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.

7 Setting group No. for centralized control

Set the group number of each group of the indoor unit from the remote controller. (In case of no remote controller, also connect the remote controller and set the group No. Then, remove the remote controller.)

(1) Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and intelligent Processing Unit.
(Unless the power is ON, no setting can be made.)
Check that the installation and electrical wiring are correct before turning the power supply ON.
(When the power supply is turned ON, all LCD appear once and the unit may not accept the operation for about one minute with the display of "88".)

(2) While in the normal mode, hold down the "[SET]" button for a minimum of 4 seconds.
The remote controller will enter the FIELD SET MODE.

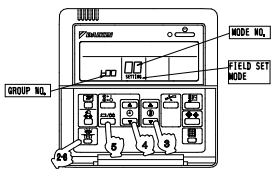
(3) Select the MODE No. "00" with the "[TEMP]" button.

(4) Use the "[TIME]" button to select the group No. for each group.

(Group numbers increase in the order of
1-00, 1-01, • • • 1-15, 2-00, • • • 8-15)

(5) Press "[CLOCK]" to set the selected group No.

(6) Press "[SET]" to return to the NORMAL MODE.



NOTE) • For details on making settings from the simplified remote controller, refer to the instruction manual of the unit.
• See the instruction manuals which came with the Ventiair and adapters(i.e., multi-purpose adapters) for details on their Group No. settings.

NOTICE Be sure to keep the operation manual for maintenance.

1P177853B

25. Optional DIII Ai Unit

25.1 DAM101A51

1 Component parts

The components of the kit are as follows.
Before installing, be sure to check whether they are supplied.

Name	Quantity
Main unit	1
Installation Manual	1
External temperature sensor	1
Harness pressure terminal	2

Name	Quantity
Ferrite core (large)	1
Ferrite core (small)	1
Clamp material with snaps	2
Clamping material	3

Name	Quantity
Hole cover (large)	1
Hole cover (small)	1
Harness for multi-purpose sensor	1

2 Attachment

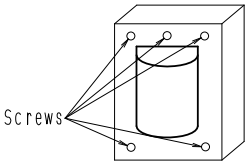
Failure to observe this installation could result in electric shock.
This device is a precision instrument, so caution must be exercised with static electricity. (Static electricity can be avoided by touching a grounded control panel, etc.)

Attachment location

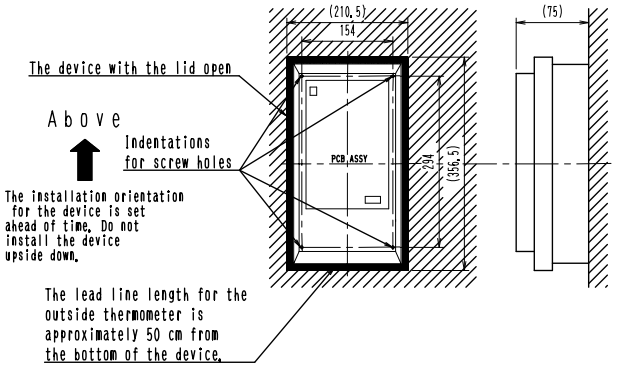
Install this device outside in a location out of direct sunlight and rain. The set height should have at least 30 cm between the floor and the device. The pull-out length of the outdoor thermometer from the bottom of the device is approximately 50 cm. The installation location for the device should be selected with the above in mind.

2－1. Installing the main unit.

First, remove the lid from the main unit. (5 screws) Do not lose the removed screws. You will need them when you close the lid after all work is done.



This device is mounted with 4 screws.
Open the four indentations for the screw holes with self tapping screws or drill them and secure them with the 4 screws.
(The recommended screw size is M4. Screws should be procured locally.)



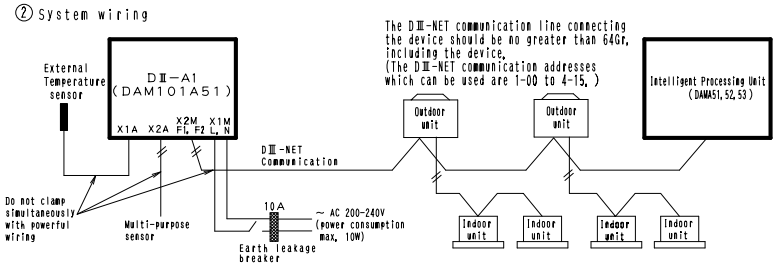
1P108833

2－2. Wiring connections

① There are 4 types of wiring for the device.

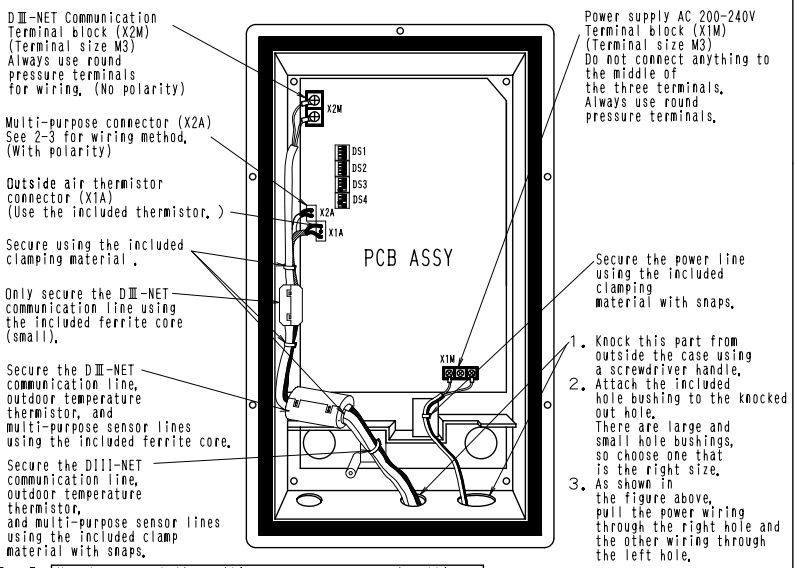
Name	Specifications for electric wiring used	Remarks
Power wiring	1.25mm²	Power supply voltage: max. 200-240V (50/60Hz)
Communication wiring	Sheathed vinyl cord or cable 0.75～1.25mm² (balanced-type) --- max. length 1000m (up to total extension 2000m) (Total extension length 1500m when using shield wire)	No polarity
External temperature sensor	Use the included sensor	-
Multi-purpose sensor	When extending the included harness --- max 15m	DC 0-5V sensor can be connected (procured locally)

② System wiring



Connecting and clamping the wiring (Be sure not to force screws. This may break them.)

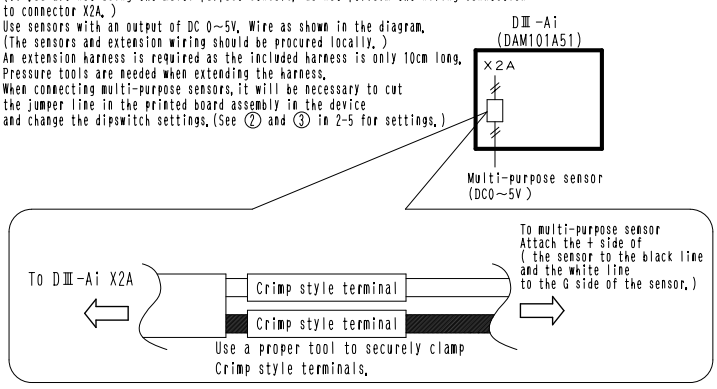
Names and functions of each part



2－3. How to connect the multi-purpose sensors and settings

Other than the supplied outdoor temperature sensor, it is also possible to connect other brand multi-purpose sensors to the device.

This section describes the wiring when connecting the multi-purpose sensors. (If you are not using the multi-purpose sensors, do not perform the wiring connection to connector X2A.)
Use sensors with an output of DC 0～5V. Wire as shown in the diagram. (The sensors and extension wiring should be procured locally.)
An extension harness is required as the included harness is only 10cm long. Pressure tools are needed when extending the harness.
When connecting multi-purpose sensors, it will be necessary to cut the jumper line in the printed board assembly in the device and change the dipswitch settings. (See ② and ③ in 2-5 for settings.)

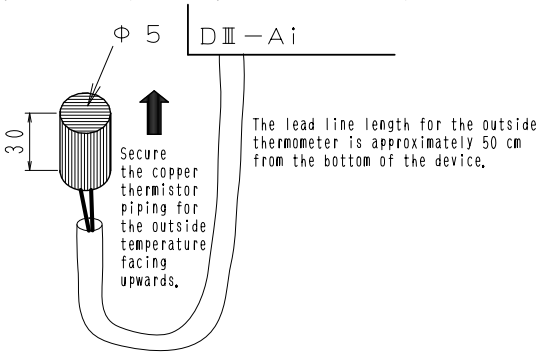


1P108833

2－4. Attaching the outside temperature sensor

Securing the sensor

Always secure the sensor downwards as shown in the diagram. Install in a well-ventilated location where the unit will not be subject to direct rain or sunlight. (If the unit receives direct sunlight, it might detect a temperature higher than the actual temperature.)

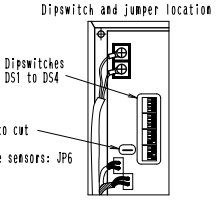


2－5. Setting the dipswitches and cutting the jumper line

Meaning of each dipswitch and jumper line

Number	Meaning
DS1	DⅢ-NET Communication address last digit
DS2	DⅢ-NET Communication address first digit
DS3	Enabling and disabling the sensor
DS4	Switching sensor uses
JP6	When using multi-purpose sensors, cut the main jumper line.

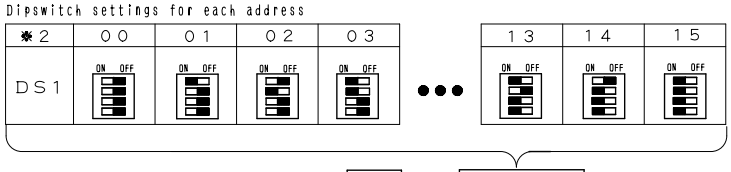
Dipswitch and jumper location



① DS1 and DS2 (DⅢ-NET communication address) settings

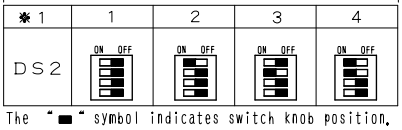
Setting DS1 and DS2" sets the DⅢ-NET communication address.
Set the DⅢ-NET communication address between 1-00 and 4-15.
Normally only one address is used per unit. The factory default is 1-00.
However, when using the settings below in ② to use multi-purpose sensors, two addresses are used per unit. (For example, if the address is set to 2-10 using the DS1 and DS2 settings, 2-10 and 2-11 are thereby used and cannot be set on other AC units.
If the setting is for using the multi-purpose sensors, do not set DS1 and DS2 to 4-15. The multi-purpose sensor detection data cannot be properly monitored by I-Manager.)

Dipswitch settings for each address

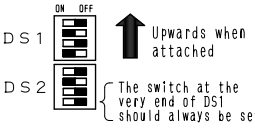


DⅢ－NET Address ※1 － ※2

EX: 3－10

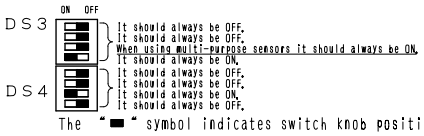


The "■" symbol indicates switch knob position.



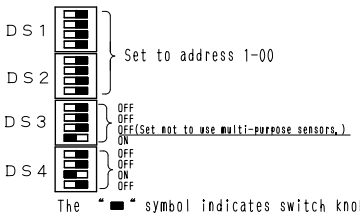
② DS3 and DS4 (sensor-related) settings

DS3 should only have its setting changed if locally-procured sensors are being used.
When using locally procured sensors, set the third switch from the front on.
(The factory default settings are for not using multi-purpose sensors.)
NB: When using multi-purpose sensors, cut the jumper line ③ at the same time as the settings are being done.
There is no need to change the factory default setting for DS4.



The "■" symbol indicates switch knob position.

The following settings should be done for the factory default DS1 to DS4 settings.



The "■" symbol indicates switch knob position.

③ Cutting JP6

When using multi-purpose sensors, cut jumper JP6 on the printed board using nippers, etc.
※: When using multi-purpose sensors, set DS3 at the same time as these settings are being done.
※: Be sure to get rid of line cuttings when cutting the jumper. Failing to remove them may cause the printed board to malfunction.

2－6. Once all settings are complete, Replace the removed cover in 2-1 using the screws.

1P108833

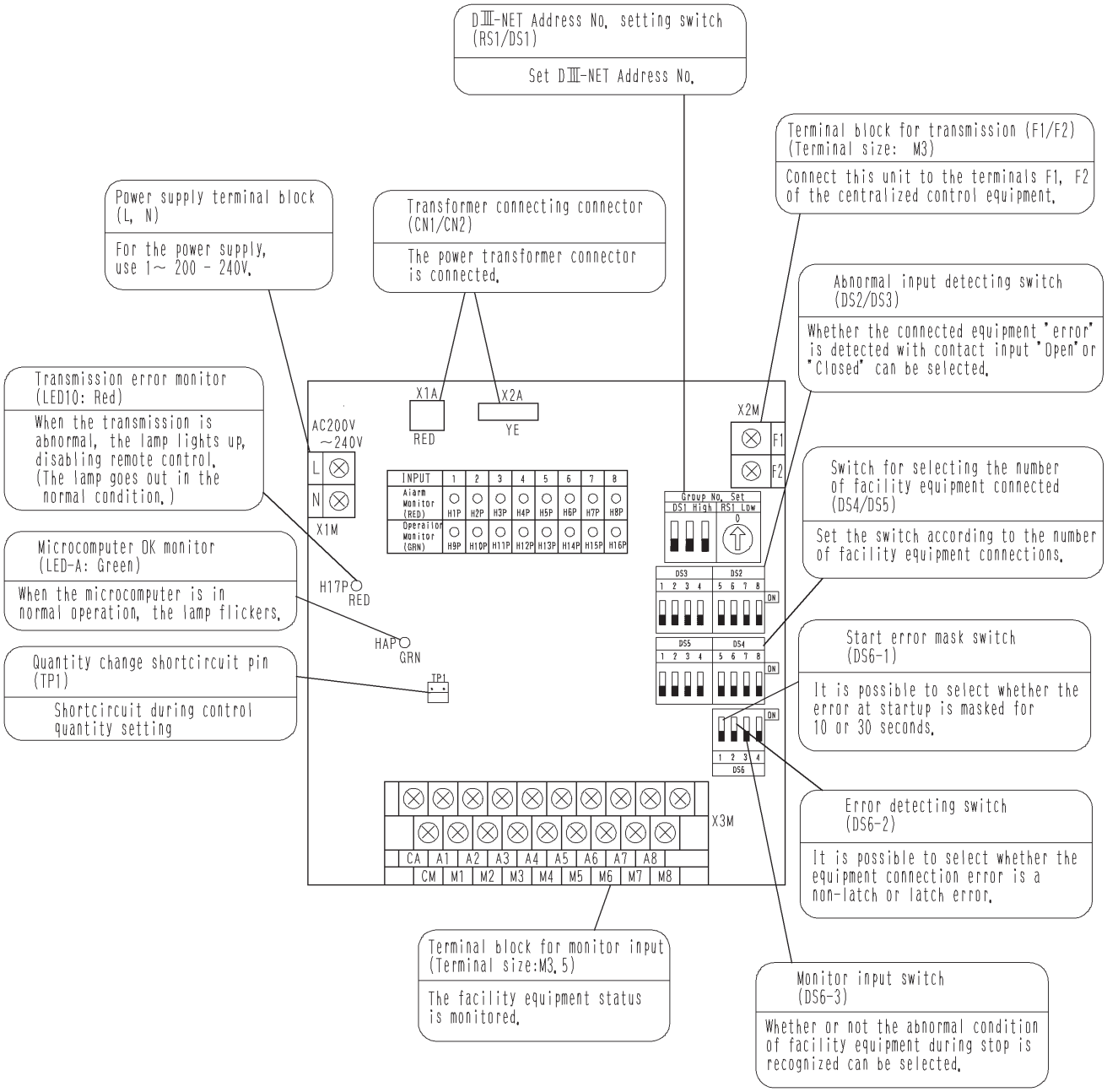
26. Di Unit

26.1 DEC101A51

Appearance

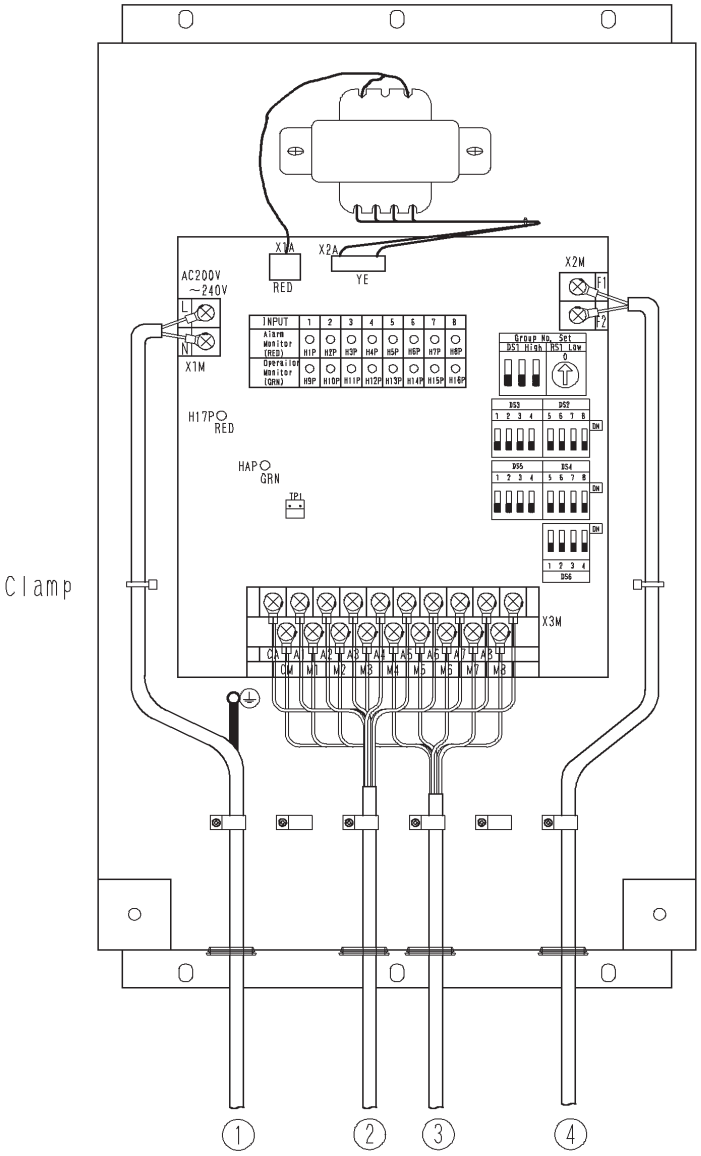


Di Unit
DEC101A51



Wiring Lead-In

For wiring connection, remove the front panel (secured with 2 screws) of this equipment. Upon completion of operation given in this paragraph and "⑥ Initial Setting" below, close the front panel with the screws described above.



① To 1 ~ 200 - 240 V and earth

② To facility equipment

③ To facility equipment

④ To terminals F1, F2 of the centralized control equipment or terminals F1, F2 of other equipment (outdoor unit, DEC101A51, 102A51)

(1)Wire connections and wire clamping should be as shown in the figure above.
(2)No simultaneous clamping is allowed for high-voltage wiring (power supply wiring (L/N) & earth wiring), low-voltage wiring <Communication wiring (F1/F2), operation input wiring (CM, M1 to 8) and abnormal input wiring (CA, A1 to 8)> since malfunctioning may result. Also, in case where the wirings described above are routed in parallel, be sure to connect the wirings at least 50 mm apart from the other.

Specifications

		Di board
Input contacts		16 points. 8 pairs based on a pair of On/Off input and abnormality input
		* Contact information (On/Off, Abnormality) is transmitted to intelligent Touch Controller / intelligent Manager III through DIII-Net communication.
Installation method		Indoor installation
Power supply		To be supplied from outside
Rating		AC200-240V, 50/60Hz
Applied Standard		Safety standard: IEC730, EMC standard: CISPR22-A (EMI), CISPR24 (EMS)
Environment for use	Ambient temperature	–15 to 60 °C
	Ambient humidity	95%RH or less (no condensation)
Environment for storage	Ambient temperature	–20 to 60 °C
	Ambient humidity	95%RH or less (no condensation)

27. Dio Unit

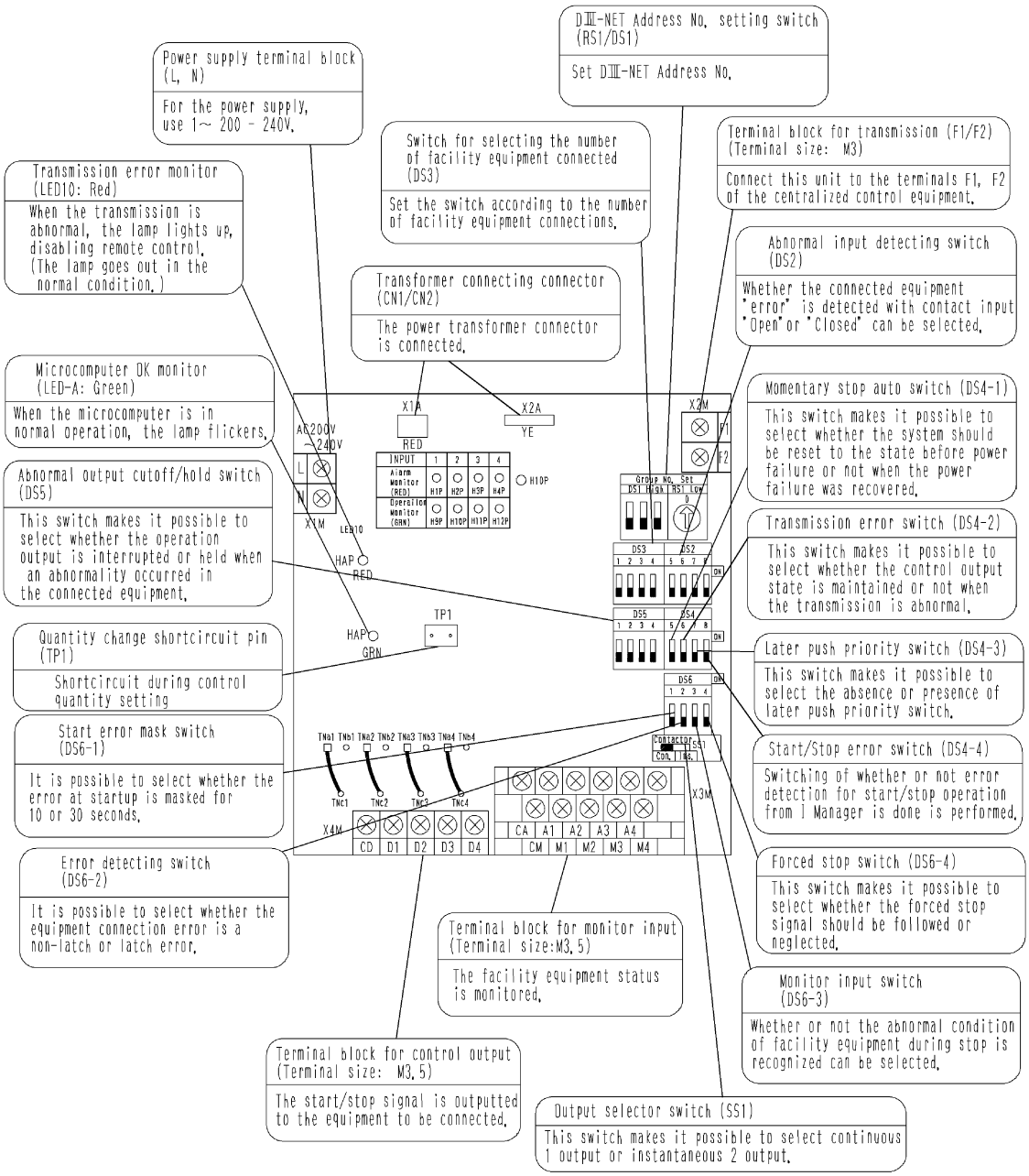
27.1 DEC102A51

Appearance

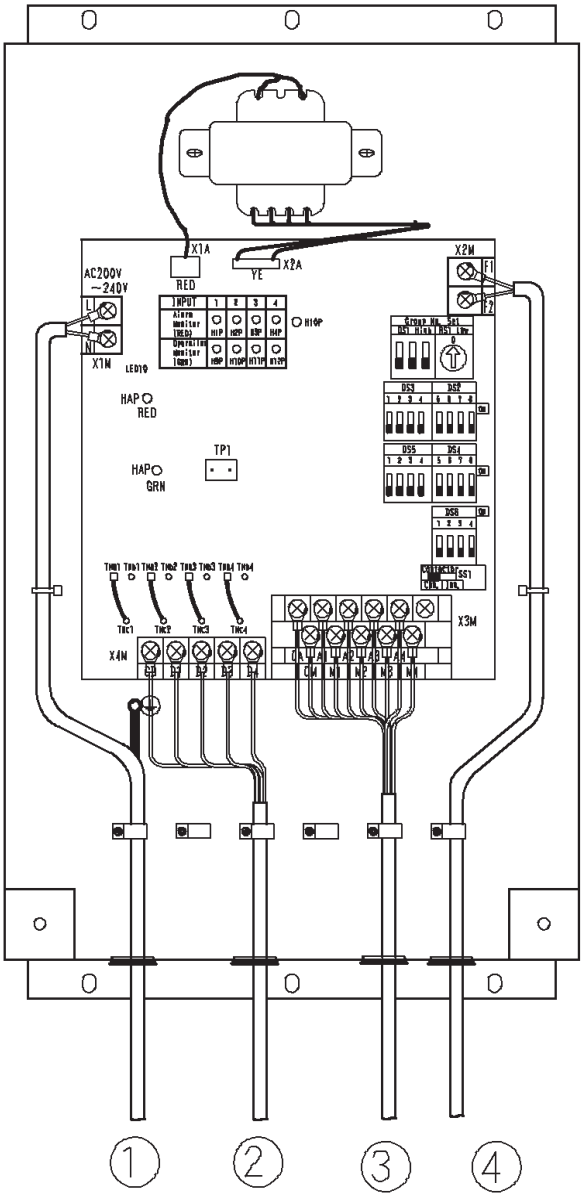


Dio Unit
DEC102A51

The figure below shows the printed circuit board built in this equipment.



Wiring Lead-In



No simultaneous clamping is allowed for high-voltage wiring <power supply wiring (L/N), earth wiring, relay output wiring (CD, D1 to 4)>, low-voltage wiring <communication wiring (F1/F2), operation input wiring (CM, M1 to 4) and abnormal input wiring (CA, A1 to 4)> since malfunctioning may result.
Also, in case where the wirings described above are routed in parallel, be sure to connect the wirings at least 50 mm apart from the other.

① To 1 ϕ 200 - 240 V and earth
② To facility equipment
③ To facility equipment
④ To terminals F1, F2 of the centralized control equipment or terminals F1, F2 of other equipment
(outdoor unit, DEC101A51, 102A51)

Specifications

		Dio board
Input contacts		8 points. 4 pairs based on a pair of On/Off input and abnormality input
		* Contact information (On/Off, Abnormality) is transmitted to intelligent Manager III through DIII-Net communication.
Output contacts		4 points. In case of normally output, 4 units are controllable. In case of instantaneous output, 2 units are controllable.
		* From intelligent Touch Controller / intelligent Manager III, On/Off and control of the equipment with the external contacts are possible through DIII-NET communication.
Installation method		Indoor installation
Power supply		To be supplied from outside
Rating		AC200-240V, 50/60Hz
Applied Standard		Safety standard: IEC730, EMC standard: CISPR22-A (EMI), CISPR24 (EMS)
Environment for use	Ambient temperature	–15 to 60 °C
	Ambient humidity	95%RH or less (no condensation)
Environment for storage	Ambient temperature	–20 to 60 °C
	Ambient humidity	95%RH or less (no condensation)

Output specs: Voltage free 'a' contact

Voltage specs	Maximum current	Minimum current
AC200–240V	1.5 A (resistance load)	10mA
DC5–24V	2.0 A (resistance load)	10mA

Input specs: Voltage free 'a' contact

Micro current load contact input (DC12V, 1 mA or less)

Wiring length: 150 m

28. Interface for use in BACnet®

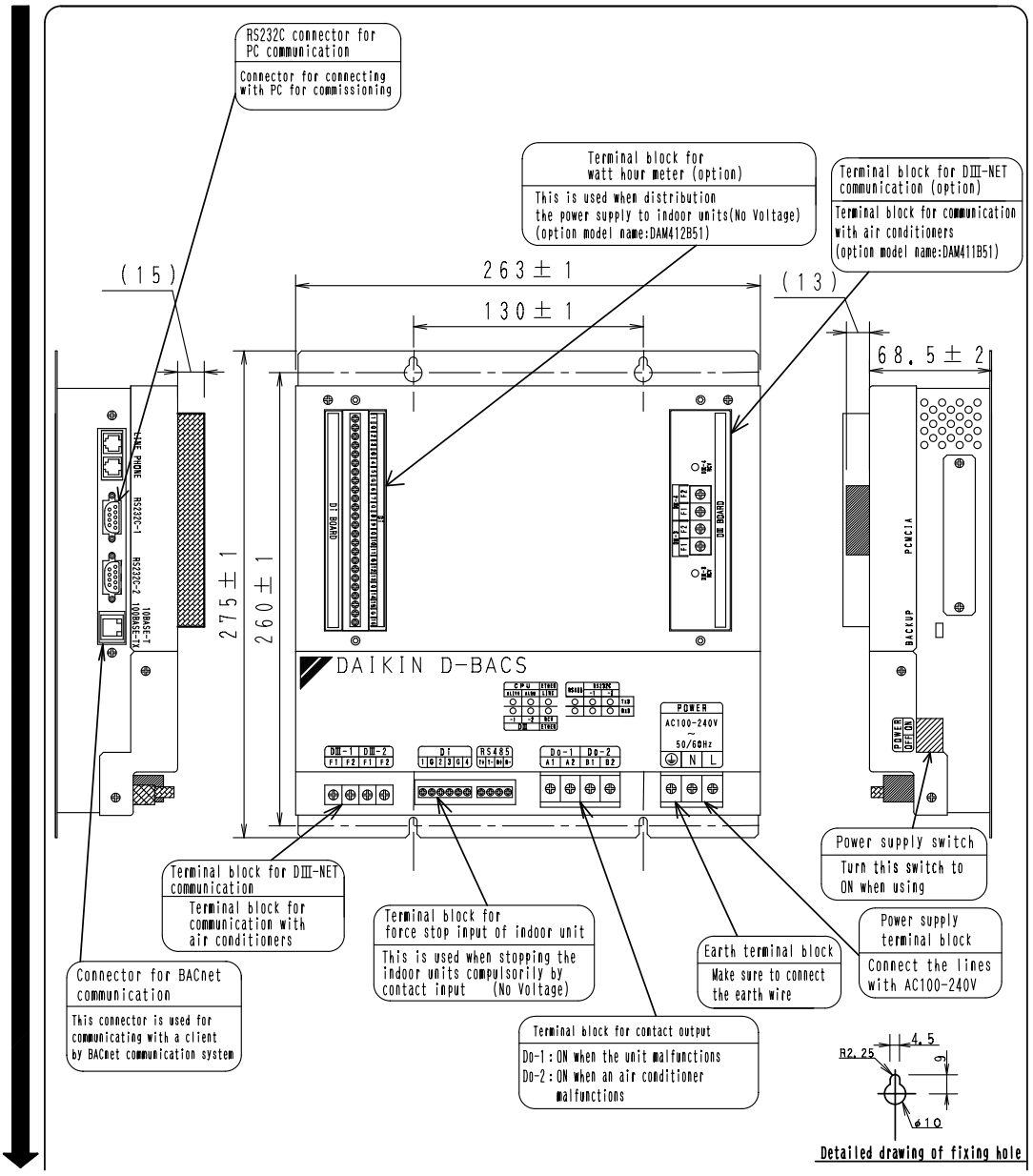
28.1 DMS502B51

❶ Components

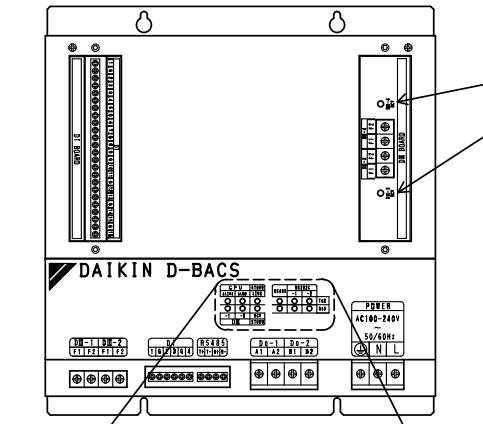
The following parts are attached to this unit.
Make sure to check them before installation.

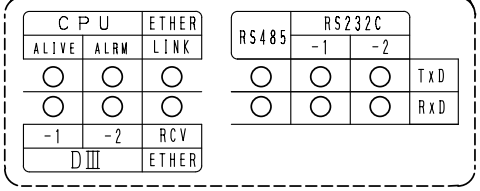
Interface for use in BACnet	1 set
INSTALLATION MANUAL	1 copy

❷ Names and functions of each part



1P191169D





LED display

DⅢ－4 RCV	It flashes when it receives/transmits data from/to the equipment connected with DⅢ-4 such as air conditioners
DⅢ－3 RCV	It flashes when it receives/transmits data from/to the equipment connected with DⅢ-3 such as air conditioners

LED display

CPU ALIVE	It flashes when the unit is normal operation.
CPU ALRM	It flashes when the unit is abnormal operation.
DⅢ－1	It flashes when it receives/transmits data from/to the equipment connected with DⅢ-1 such as air conditioners
DⅢ－2	It flashes when it receives/transmits data from/to the equipment connected with DⅢ-2 such as air conditioners
Ether RCV	It flashes when it receives/transmits data from/to BACnet client
Ether Link	It lights when the 10BASE-T cable or 100BASE-TX cable
RS485(TxD)	This LED display cannot be used with this unit
RS485(RxD)	This LED display cannot be used with this unit
RS232C-1(TxD)	It flashes when it transmits data to PC
RS232C-1(RxD)	It flashes when it receives data to PC
RS232C-2(TxD)	This LED display cannot be used with this unit
RS232C-2(RxD)	This LED display cannot be used with this unit

❸ Installation

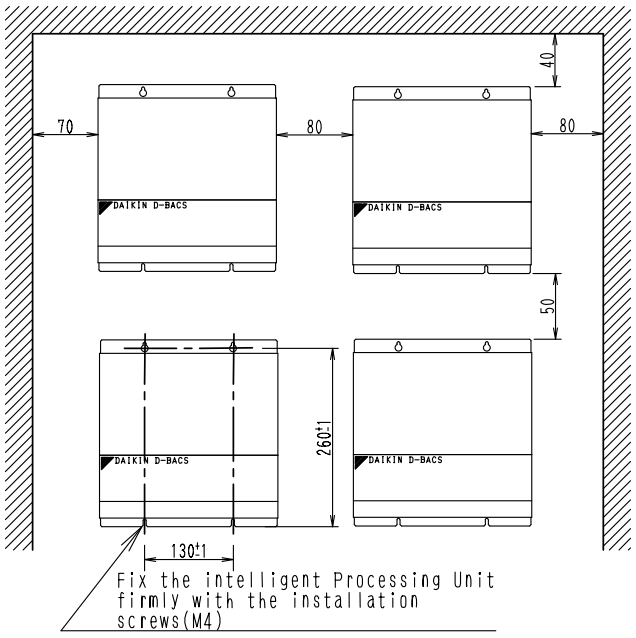
Don't fail to turn OFF the indoor unit power switch before installing Interface for use in BACnet. Failure to observe this instruction could result in electric shock.

●Location

Make sure to install the unit on the inside of the inaccessible and lockable (or needed to use exclusive tools to open) electrical component box installed indoors where the effect of electromagnetic wave or dust can be avoided. The minimum depth required for installation is 100mm

●Required installation space

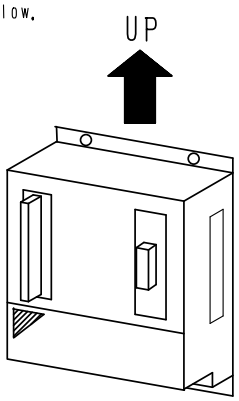
Keep the minimum amount of space indicated in the below drawing from walls, and between units when installed in series.



1P191169D

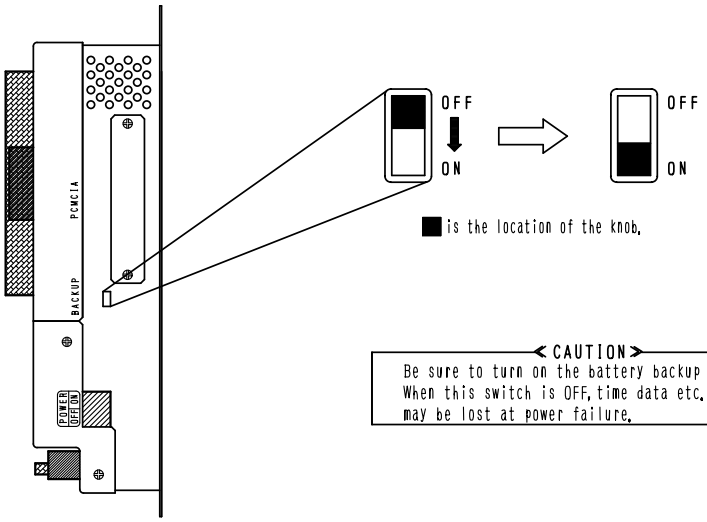
● How to install

For installation direction follow the drawing shown below.



< CAUTION >
Make sure to install the unit vertically. Do not install the unit horizontally, because it may cause malfunction.

Setting "BACK-UP BATTERY VALIDATE" switch
(shifted to OFF when being shipped from the shop. -- Back-up battery set to INVALIDATE)
For the switch to back up the clock, etc. in case of any power failure, actuate it from OFF side (knob is located above) to ON side (knob is located below) as shown in the sketch below.



< CAUTION >
Be sure to turn on the battery backup switch. When this switch is OFF, time data etc. may be lost at power failure.

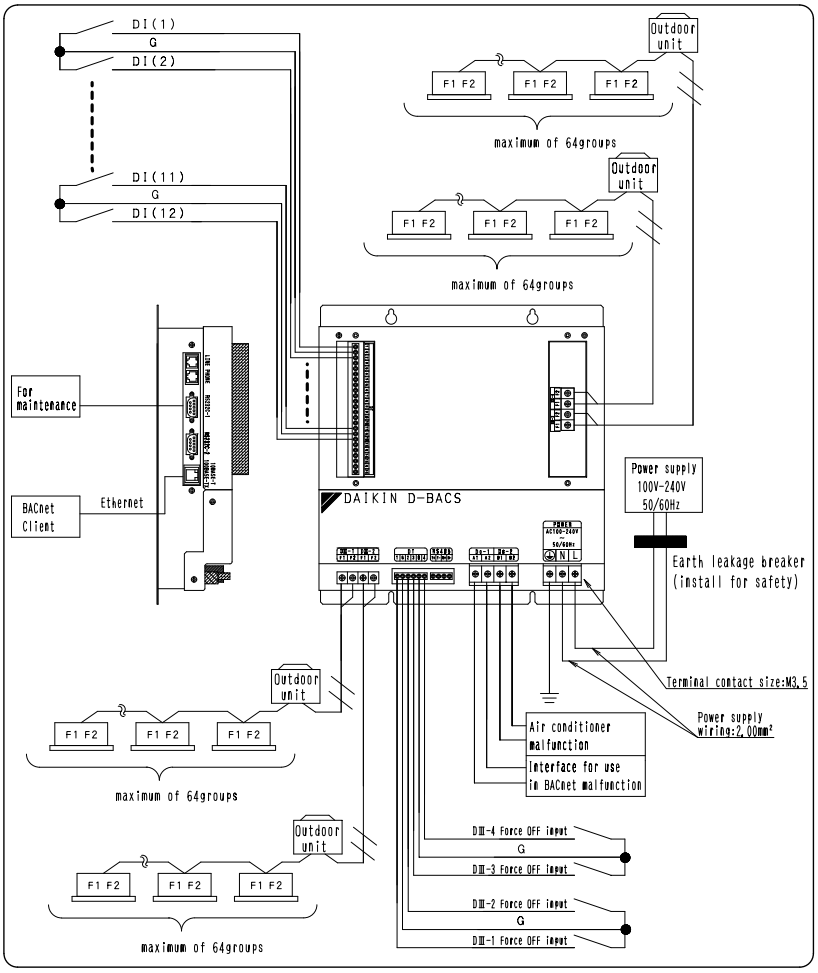
TO BACK

1P191169D

❹「DⅢ-NET master」setting

●Make sure to connect the unit with「DⅢ-NET master」
(Do not remove the master central setting connector.)
Remove the master central setting connectors of the centralized management controllers or ON/OFF controllers When using togeter with other centralized controllers such as centralizedmanagement controllers or ON/OFF controllers.

❺Malfunction of unit

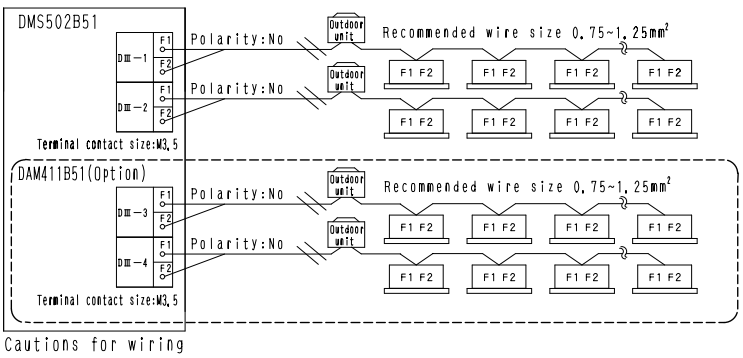


❻Electric Wiring Connection

Don't fail to turn OFF the indoor unit power switch before installing Interface for use in BACnet.
Failure to observe this instruction could result in electric shock.

■Everything relating with field wiring must be supplied in the field.

● DⅢ-NET wiring

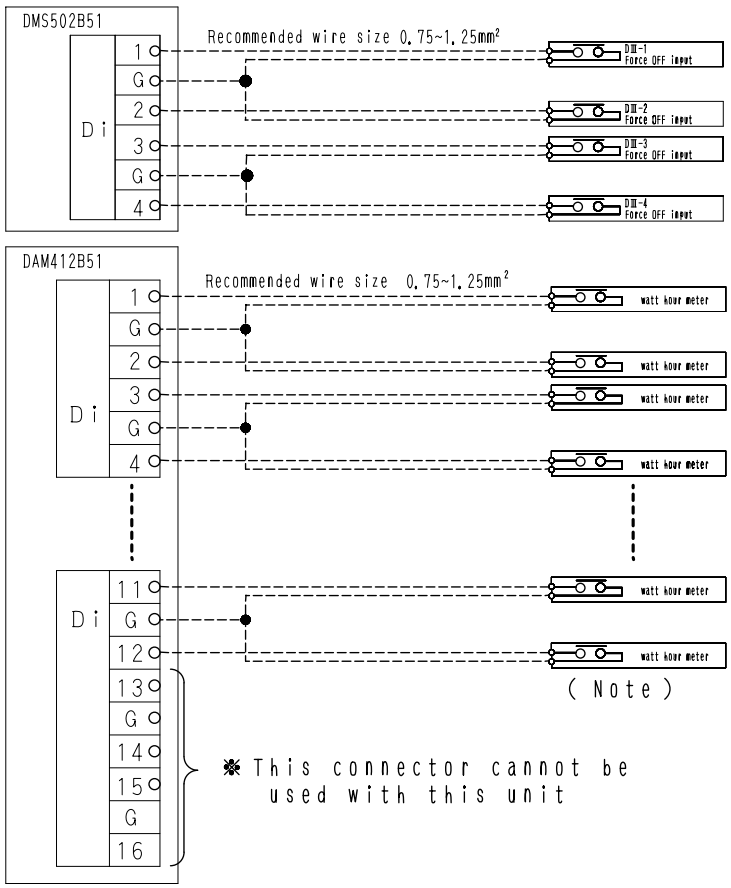


Cautions for wiring

1. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores
2. Use wires of sizes between 0.75mm² and 1.25mm²
3. Do not bind the wire for DⅢ-NET
4. Wirings for DⅢ-NET must be isolated from the power lines
5. Wire length:Max 1000m

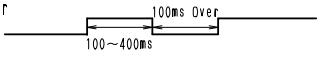
1P191170D

● No voltage contact input wiring



(Note) : Use a meter that outputs one pulse of a width from 100～400ms, per one kWh.

The pulse of watt hour meter



Cautions for wiring

1. The input are all the no voltage contact
2. Use a contact which can guarantee minimum application load DC16V and 10mA
3. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores
4. Use wires of sizes between 0.75mm² and 1.25mm²
5. Do not bind the wire for control
6. Wirings for control must be isolated from the power lines
7. Terminals G are inter-connected. Connecting to either one is allowed, but the number of cables connectable to one terminal is limited to 2 pieces
8. Wire length:Max 150m

● No voltage contact output wiring

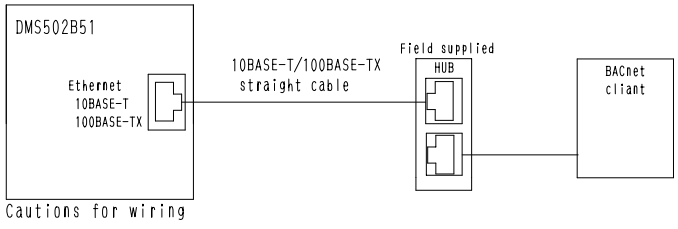


Cautions for wiring

1. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores
2. Use wires of sizes between 0.75mm² and 2mm²
3. Do not bind the wire for control
4. Wirings for control must be isolated from the power lines
5. Wire length:Max 150m

1P191170D

● Ethernet communication wiring



Cautions for wiring

Don't clamp these cables together with high voltage cables. Failure to observe this instruction would cause control error.

❼ Setting group No. for centralized control

Set the group number of each group of the indoor unit from the remote controller. (In case of no remote controller, also connect the remote controller and set the group No. Then, remove the remote controller.)

(1) Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and Interface for use in BACnet.
(Unless the power is ON, no setting can be made.)
Check that the installation and electrical wiring are correct before turning the power supply ON.
(When the power supply is turned ON, all LCD appear once and the unit may not accept the operation for about one minute with the display of "88".)

(2) While in the normal mode, hold down the "[SET]" button for a minimum of 4 seconds.
The remote controller will enter the FIELD SET MODE.

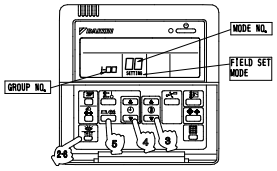
(3) Select the MODE No. "00" with the "[▲▼]" button.

(4) Use the "[▲▼]" button to select the group No. for each group.

(Group numbers increase in the order of
1-00, 1-01, • • • 1-15, 2-00, • • • 4-15)

(5) Press "[SET]" to set the selected group No.

(6) Press "[SET]" to return to the NORMAL MODE.



NOTE) • For details on making settings from the simplified remote controller, refer to the instruction manual of the unit.
• See the instruction manuals which came with the Ventiair and adapters(i.e., multi-purpose adapters) for details on their Group No. settings.

NOTICE Be sure to keep the operation manual for maintenance.

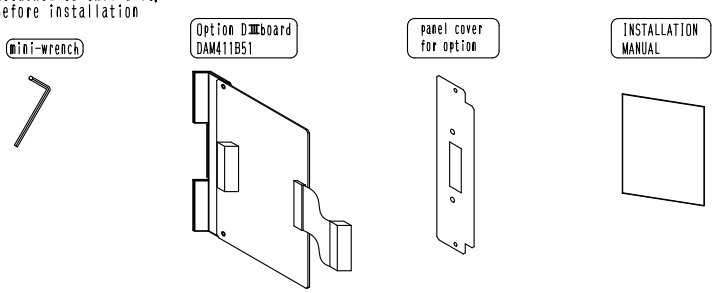
1P191170D

29. Optional DIII Board

29.1 DAM411B51

❶ Components

The following parts are attached to this unit.
Make sure to check them before installation



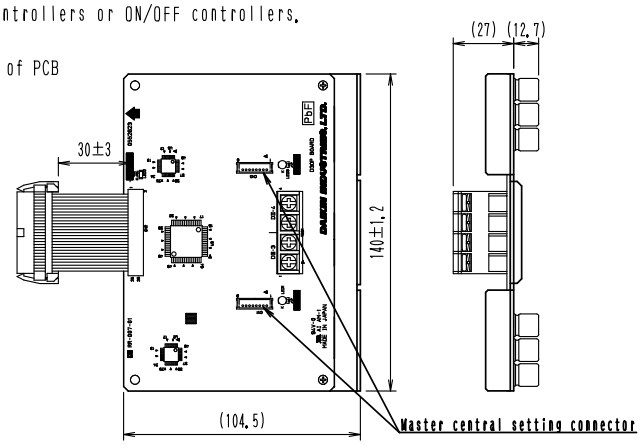
❷ Outline of functions

**Don't fail to turn OFF the indoor unit power switch before Interface for use in BACnet.
Failure to observe this instruction could result in electric shock.**

This unit is for adding 2 port to the DIII-NET communication port by installing it on the Interface for use in BACnet DMS502B51.

●Make sure to connect the unit with 「DIII-NET master」
(Do not remove the master central setting connector.)
Remove the master central setting connectors of the centralized management controllers or ON/OFF contorollers When using togeter with other centralized controllers such as centralized management controllers or ON/OFF controllers.

Outside dimension of PCB



1P191165C

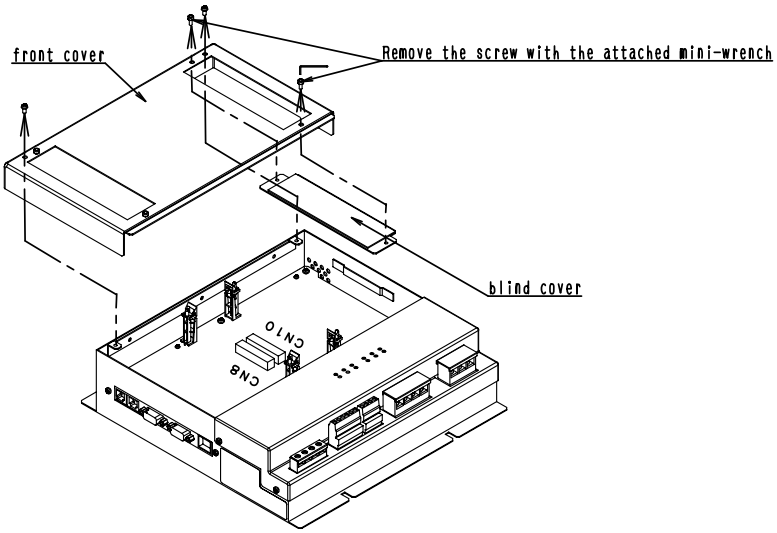
❸ Installation

Don't fail to turn OFF the indoor unit power switch before Interface for use in BACnet.
Failure to observe this instruction could result in electric shock.

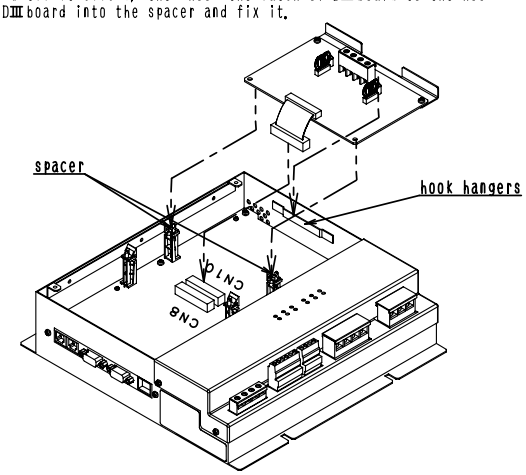
Before installing the PCB, check that the power supply is turned OFF.
Since PCB's are weak to static electricity, make sure to remove the static electricity accumulated in the worker's body.
(The accumulated static electricity can be removed by touching the earthed controlboard and the like.)

① Remove the front cover of Interface for use in BACnet and remove the blind cover attached to the front cover with the attached mini-wrench.

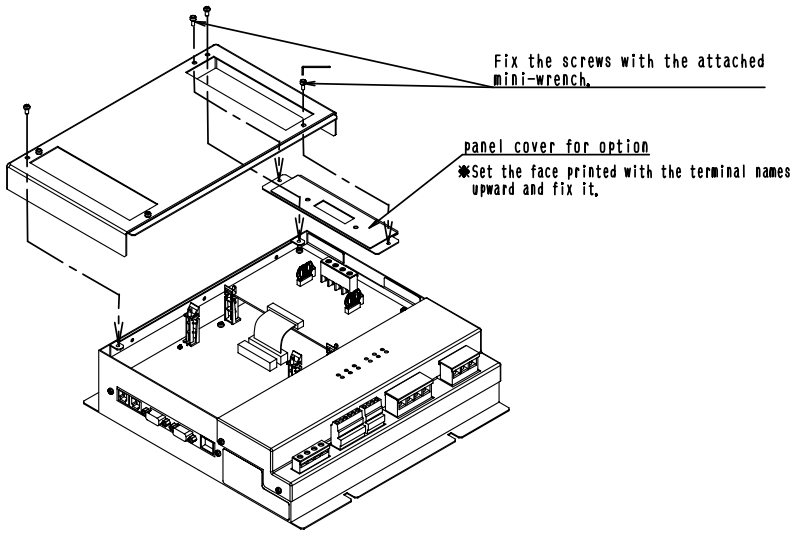
Caution: Keep the removed screws. These screws for fixing the front cover and the blind cover(2 for each) will be required for reassembling.



② As shown in the figure below, insert the connector DⅢboard into the connector CN10 of Interface for use in BACnet until it clicks, then hook the latch of DⅢboard to the hook hanger, and put the hole of DⅢboard into the spacer and fix it.



③ Fix the panel cover for option to the front cover with the attached mini-wrench.
After that, fix the front cover to Interface for use in BACnet.

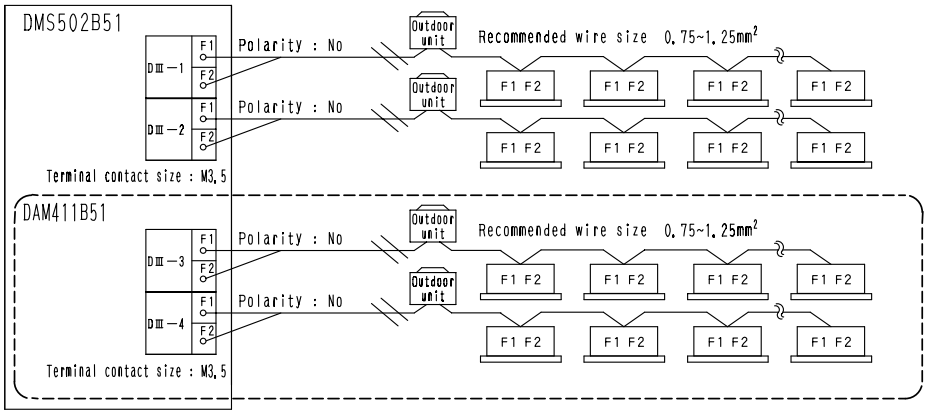


1P191165C

④ For external wiring

(Do not fail to use a round crimp terminal with reinforcing sleeve for safety wiring connection to the Interface for use in BACnet.)

■Everything relating with field wiring must be supplied in the field.



LED display
This unit has the following LED display. When each corresponding port transmits or receives the data the LED flashes.

Cautions for wiring
1. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores
2. Use wires of sizes between 0.75mm² and 1.25mm²
3. Wire length:Max 1000m
4. Do not bind the wires for DIII-NET
5. Wirings for DIII-NET must be isolated from the power lines.
6. Terminal contact size :M3.5

⑤ Setting group No. for centralized control

Set the group number of each group of the indoor unit from the remote controller. (In case of no remote controller, also connect the remote controller and set the group No. Then, remove the remote controller.)

(1) Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and Interface for use in BACnet.
(Unless the power is ON, no setting can be made.)
Check that the installation and electrical wiring are correct before turning the power supply ON.
(When the power supply is turned ON, all LCD appear once and the unit may not accept the operation for about one minute with the display of "88".)

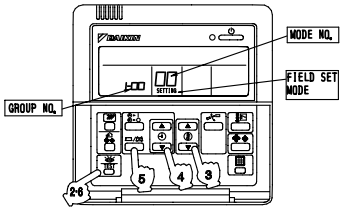
(2) While in the normal mode, hold down the "TEST" button for a minimum of 4 seconds.
The remote controller will enter the FIELD SET MODE.

(3) Select the MODE No. "00" with the "▲▼" button.

(4) Use the "▲▼" button to select the group No. for each group.
(Group numbers increase in the order of
1-00, 1-01, • • • 1-15, 2-00, • • • 4-15)

(5) Press "SET" to set the selected group No.

(6) Press "TEST" to return to the NORMAL MODE.



NOTE) • For details on making settings from the simplified remote controller, refer to the instruction manual of the unit.
• See the instruction manuals which came with the Ventiair and adapters (i.e., multi-purpose adapters) for details on their Group No. settings.

NOTICE Be sure to keep the operation manual for maintenance.

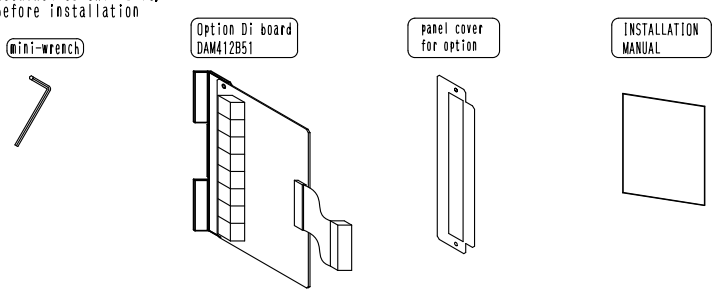
1P191165C

30. Optional Di Board

30.1 DAM412B51

❶ Components

The following parts are attached to this unit.
Make sure to check them before installation

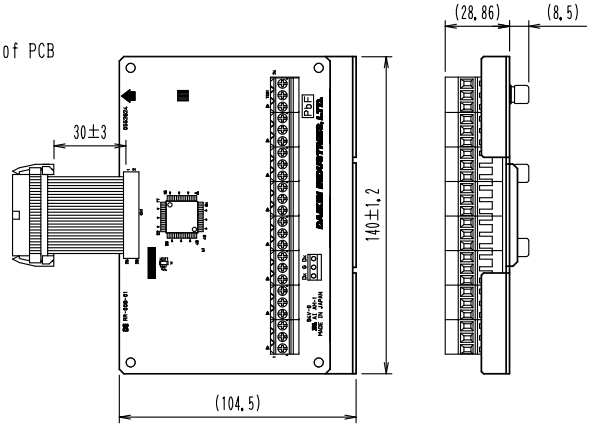


❷ Outline of functions

Don't fail to turn OFF the indoor unit power switch before Interface for use in BACnet.
Failure to observe this instruction could result in electric shock.

This unit is for 12 points of Di input(no voltage contact input) by installing it on the Interface for use in BACnet DMS502B51.

Outside dimension of PCB



1P191166D

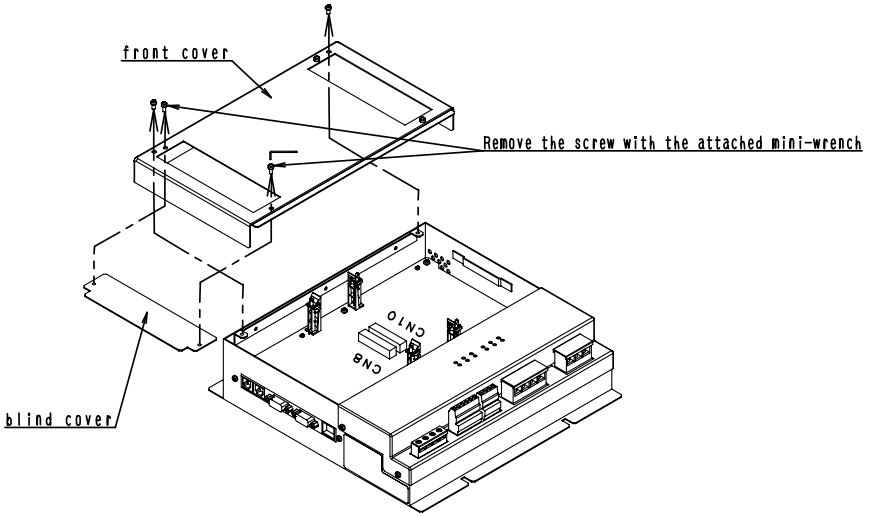
❸ Installation

Don't fail to turn OFF the indoor unit power switch before Interface for use in BACnet. Failure to observe this instruction could result in electric shock.

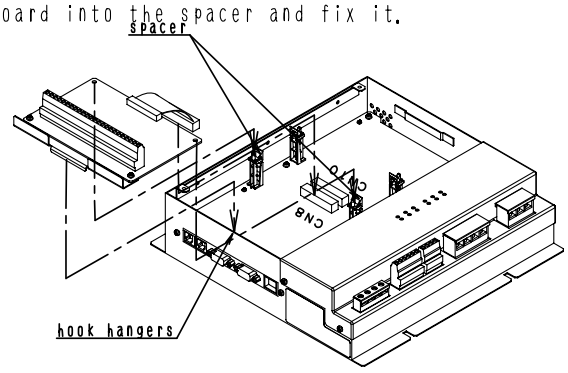
Before installing the PCB, check that the power supply is turned OFF. Since PCB's are weak to static electricity, make sure to remove the static electricity accumulated in the worker's body. (The accumulated static electricity can be removed by touching the earthed controlboard and the like.)

① Remove the front cover of Interface for use in BACnet(DMS502B51) and remove theblind cover attached to the front cover with the attached mini-wrench.

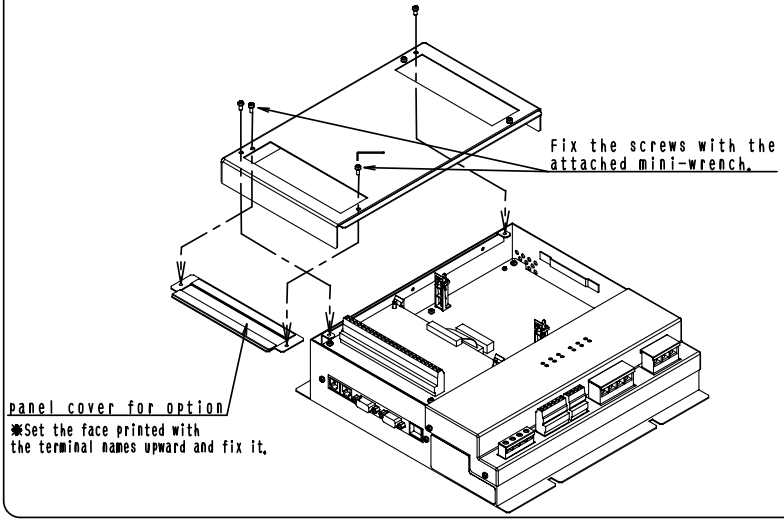
Caution: Keep the removed screws. These screws for fixing the front cover and the blind cover(2 for each) will be required for reassembling.



② As shown in the figure below, insert the connector Di board into the connector CN8 of Interface for use in BACnet until it clicks, then hook the latch of Di board to the hook hanger, and put the hole of Di board into the spacer and fix it.



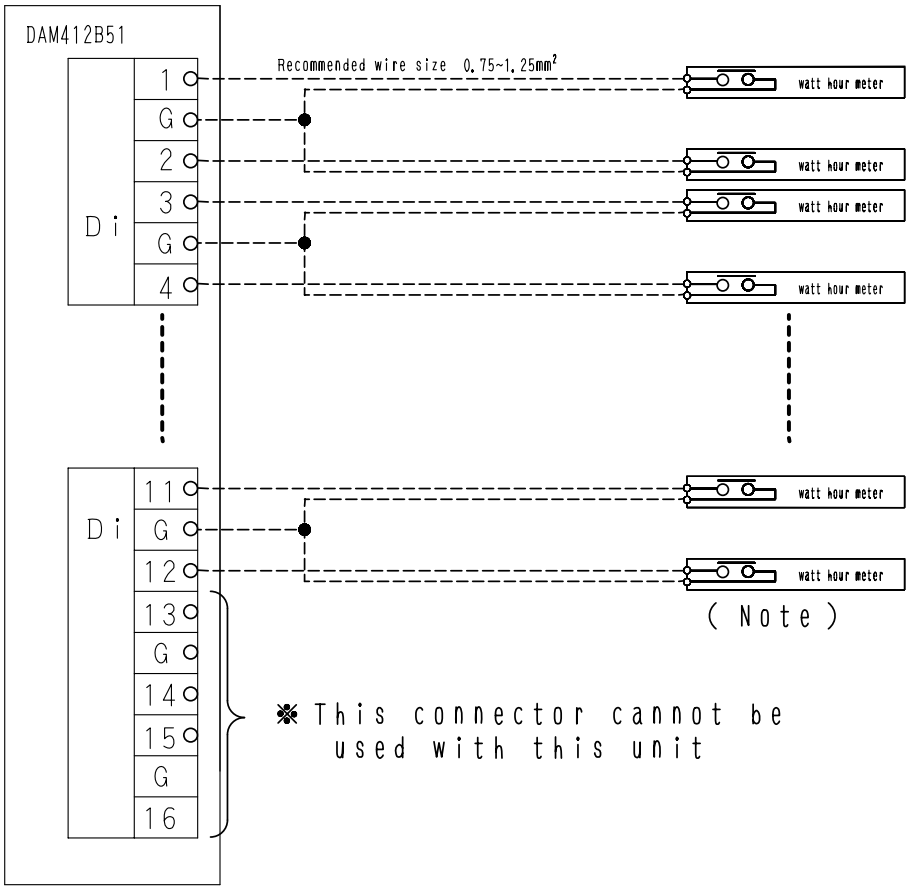
③ Fix the panel cover for option to the front cover with the attached mini-wrench.
After that, fix the front cover to Interface for use in BACnet.



1P191166D

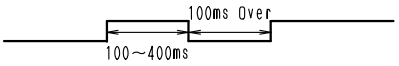
❹ For external wiring

■Everything relating with field wiring must be supplied in the field.



(Note) : Use a meter that outputs one pulse of a width from 100～400ms, per one kWh.

The pulse of watt hour meter



Cautions for wiring

1. The input are all the no voltage contact
2. Use a contact which can guarantee minimum application load DC16V and 10mA
3. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores
4. Use wires of sizes between 0.75mm² and 1.25mm²
5. Do not bind the wire for control
6. Wirings for control must be isolated from the power lines
7. Terminals G are inter-connected. Connecting to either one is allowed, but the number of cables connectable to one terminal is limited to 2 pieces
8. Wire length:Max 150m

1P191166D

31. Interface for use in LONWORKS®

31.1 DMS504B51

31.1.1 Installation

This manual must be read prior to installation.
Make sure the power supply is off
when carring out the installation.

WARNING
This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Please carefully read the "Safety Precautions" as follows and install the controller as instructed.

- The precautions given herein are classified as " ! WARNING" and " ! CAUTION". However, particular precautions which, unless they are observed in installing that could result in death and serious injury are identified by "! WARNING". Needless to say even other precautions which are not identified by "! CAUTION" could lead to a serious accident unless they are observed. Therefore, please do not fail to observe these precautions.
- After completion of the installation, please conduct a test run on the controller to check that it is free from any fault and in addition simultaneously instruct the user how to operate and maintain it correctly (in accordance with the Operation Manual).
  Furthermore, request the user to keep this manual together with the Operation Manual for future reference.

⚠WARNING

The installation work must be requested by the dealer.
Installation by user himself could cause electric shock, fire, etc.

Install correctly in accordance with this installation manual.
Incorrect installation, if any, may cause electric shock, fire, etc.

Installing; don not fail to use the accessories and specific parts which are supplied together with the indoor unit.
Failure to observe this instruction may cause electric shock, fire, etc.

Perform correctly the electric wiring connection using the specified cables and firmly clamp each terminal connector to prevent cable load from being transferred thereto.
Unstable and improper cable connecting and clamping could cause overheat, fire, etc.

⚠CAUTION

Grounding.
Do not connect the grounding wire to any of gas pipes, city water pipes, lightning rods, or telephone grounding wire. Imperfect grounding would cause electric shock.

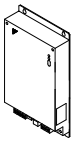
Avoid installing at the following locations.
1. Cuisine and other place where the controller is inevitably exposed to mineral oil, scattered oil or steam.
   Installing at such places could cause deterioration of the resin parts, corrosion or short circuit.
2. Where corrosive gases such as sulfur dioxide generate inevitably.
3. Where a machine as generates electromagnetic waves. Installing at such a place could cause trouble of the control line and failure of normal air-conditioning operation.
4. Where leak of combustible gas is forecast and place where volatile ignitable gases such as thinner, gasoline, etc. are handled.
   Should such gas leak and accumulate around the devices, could cause igniting.

SETTING THE BACPUP BATTERY SWITCH.

❶ Components

The following parts are attached to this unit.
Make sure to check them before installation.

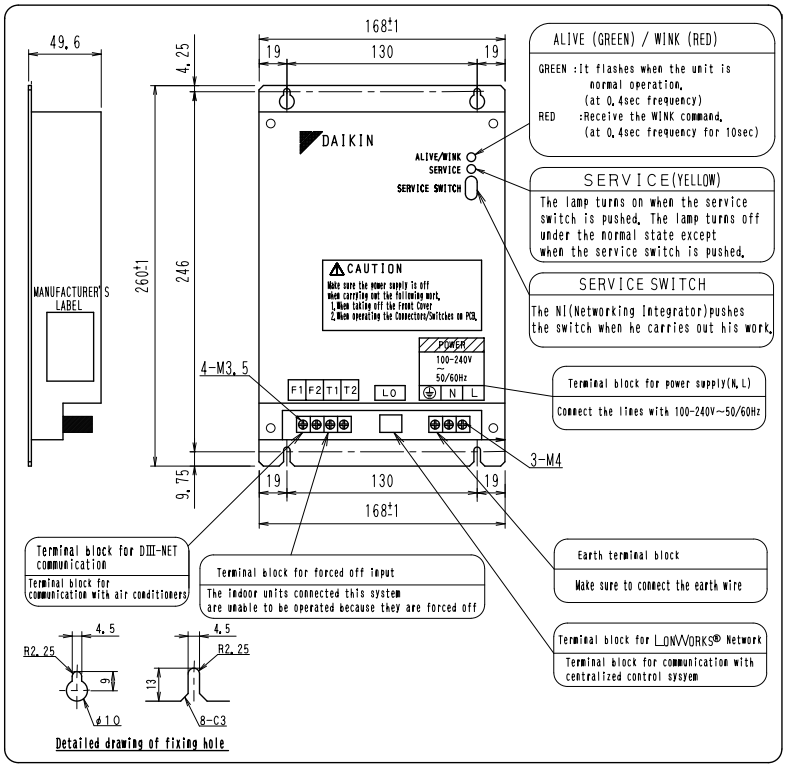
DMS-IF
DMS504B51



INSTALLATION MANUAL



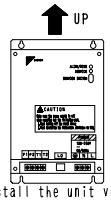
❷ Names and functions of each part



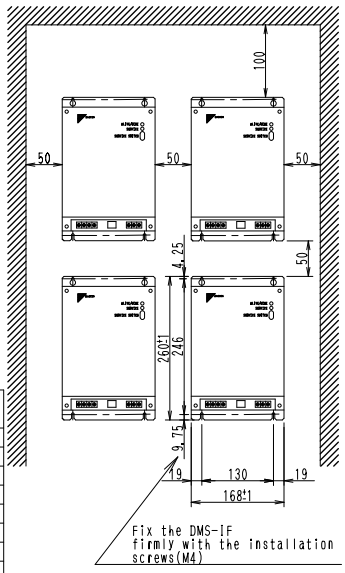
1P111315-1-1

❸ Installation

- Make sure to install the unit on the inside of the inaccessible and lockable (or needed to use exclusive tools to open) electrical component box installed indoors where the effect of electromagnetic wave or dust can be avoided. The minimum depth required for installation is 80mm
- Keep the minimum amount of space indicated in the below drawing from walls, and between units when installed in series.
- For installation direction follow the drawing shown below.



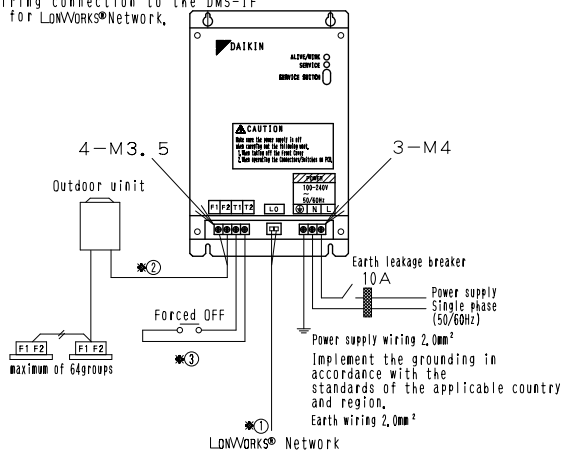
Make sure to install the unit vertically. Do not install the unit horizontally, because it may cause malfunction.



1)Electrical rating	(1)Rated voltage and frequency : Single phase AC100~240V 50/60Hz	
	(2)Rated power consumption : maximum 5W	
2)Conditions	(1)Power supply fluctuation : ±10%	
	(2)Ambient temperatyre : -10~+50℃	
	(3)Ambient humidity : 0~95% (Sweating is not acceptable)	
	(4)Preservation : -20~+60℃	
3) Performance : Insulation resistance : 50MΩ or more by DC500 megohmmeter		
4)Mass : 1.5Kg		
5)Colour of the unit : stainless steel sus304-NO.4		

❹ Electric Wiring Connection

- Use a round crimp terminal with reinforcing sleeve for safety wiring connection to the DMS-IF except the terminal for LONWORKS® Network.

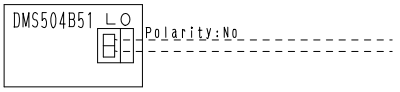


❺ Wiring specification

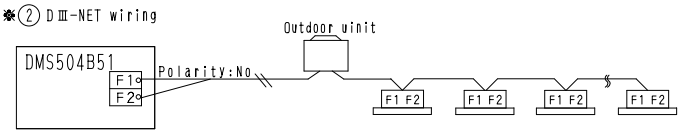
■Everything relating with field wiring must be supplied in the field.

※① LONWORKS® Network communication wiring

Use the dedicated line for the LONWORKS® Network.



※② DIII-NET wiring

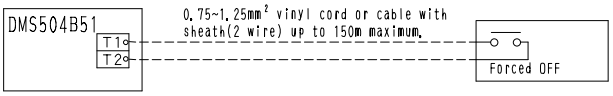


1. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores.
2. Use wires of sizes between 0.75mm² and 1.25mm²
3. Wire length:Max 1000m

1P111315-1-2

4. Do not bind the wire for DⅢ-NET
5. Wirings for DⅢ-NET must be isolated from the power lines.
6. Terminal contact size:M3.5

✻③ Forced OFF



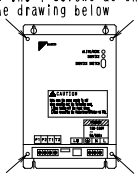
Cautions for wiring
When Forced OFF INPUT is kept on, the indoor units connected this system are unable to be operated because they are Forced OFF.

1. Use a no voltage contact.
2. Use a contact which can guarantee minimum application load DC16V and 10mA.
3. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores.
4. Wirings must be isolated from the power lines.
5. Terminal contact size:M3.5.

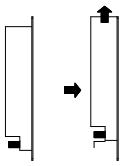
⑥ Names and functions of P.C.B ASSY

① How to open the cover

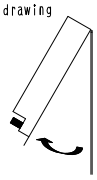
- Remove the 4 screws as shown in the drawing below



- Slide the cover upward



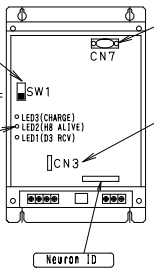
- Lift the cover to the front as shown in the drawing



② Names and functions of P.C.B ASSY

Backup battery switch
- **Turn ON** the switch to bring the backup battery effective. This mark ■shows the swtich position when DMS-IF is shipped out of the factory

LED display
LED3 turns on during the battery is charged. Even after the battery is completely charged, the lamp slightly turns on.
LED2 flashes (at 0.4sec frequency) when the CPU for DⅢ-Net communication is normal.
LED1 flashes when receiving data by DⅢ-Net communication.



Connector for service PC
- This connector is to be connected to the PC when commissioning is carried out by a service person

Connector for setting the master of centalized control
- The connector must be permanetly connected (The connector is connected when shipped out of the factory. Do not pull out the connector)

Since the control substrate is weak to static electricity, do not touch the parts on the substrate. Make sure to dischange static electricity from human body before starting the work. (Static electricity can be discharged by touching the sheet metal of the control panel which is earthed)

⑦ 「DⅢ-NET master」 setting

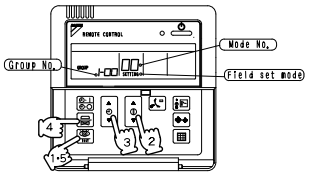
Make sure to connect the unit with 「DⅢ-NET master」

⑧ Setting the backup battery switch

When shipped out of the factory, the backup battery switch is turned off (the battery is ineffective).
Turn ON the switch for backup of set data such as the information regarding the network variables at power failure.
- Guaranteed hours of power failure. One month (31days)
- The lithium battery is used and is rechargeable. After the power is restored it is necessary to continuously electrify the battery for approximately one day until the it is completely charged. (The battery is completely charged when shipped out from the factory.)

⑨ Setting group No. for centralized control

Turn ON the power to the DMS-IF following the below procedure, set the group numbers for the indoor units connected to the DⅢ-NET. This group number is set for each indoor unit system. (When not using the remote controller, the remote controller is to be connected just for making settings but must be disconnected when finished.)



Pre-parations	● Check no troubles exist with installation and wiring before turning ON the power. ● Turn ON the power to the indoor unit and DMS-IF. Setting is not possible with the power OFF.

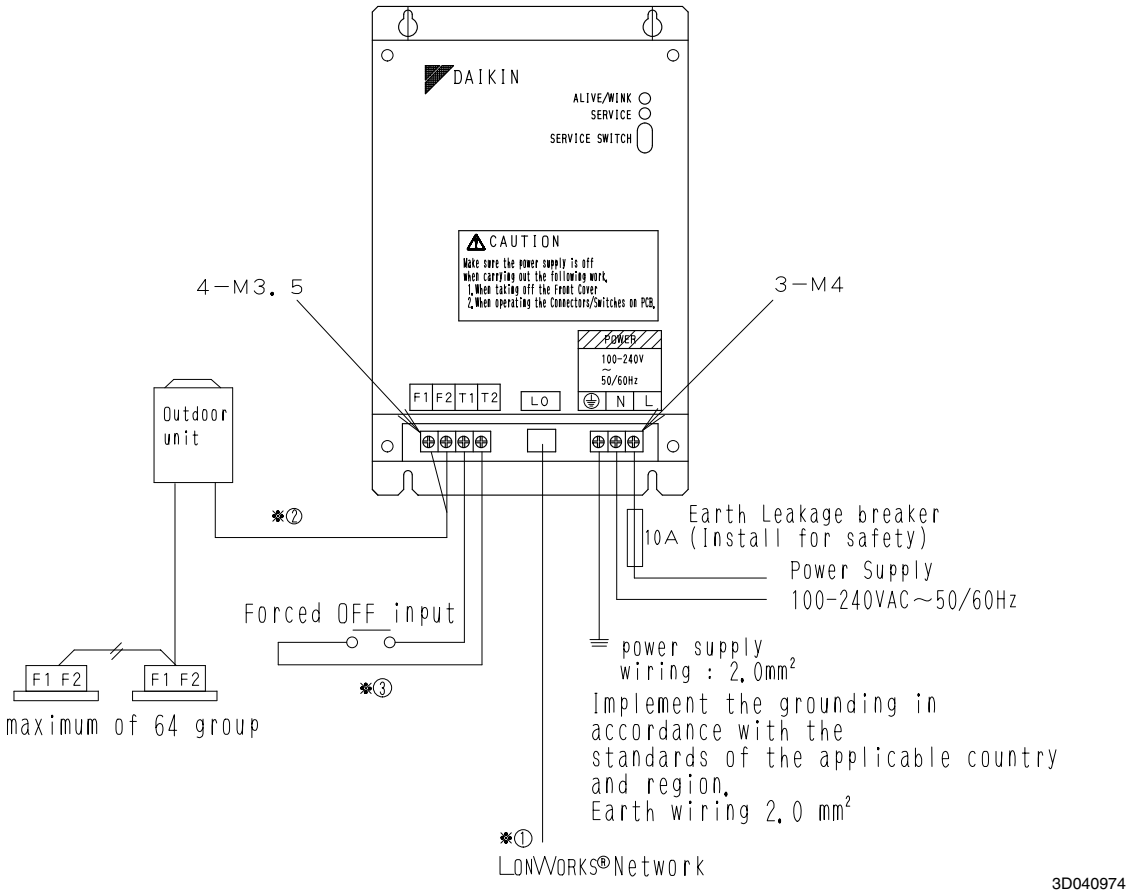
● Nothing is wrong with the equipment if "88" is displayed when power is turned ON. This may happen and the unit may not respond to operation, but the situation should last only a moment.

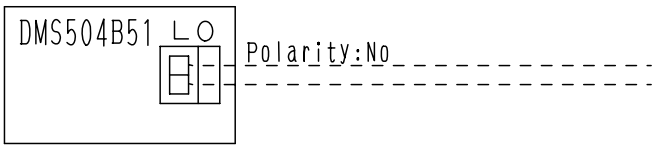
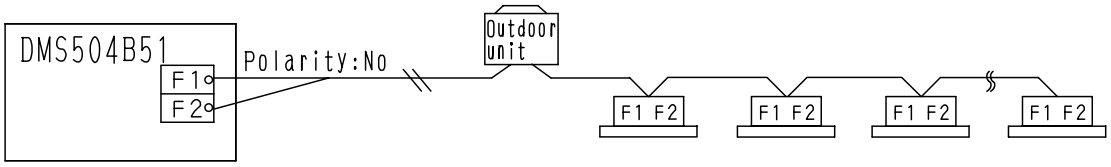
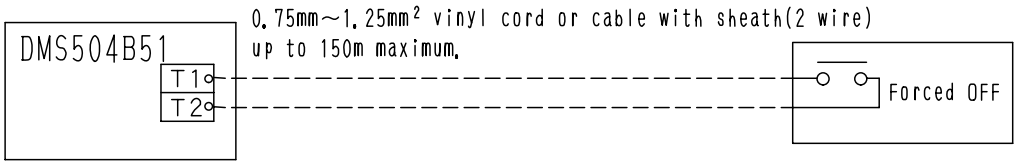
1	Hold down TEST for 4 seconds or more to enter the field set mode.
2	Press ▲▼ and set the mode NO. to "00"
3	Press ▲▼ and set the group No. Group No. increases in the order of 1-00, 1-01 ... 1-15, 2-00,... 4-15. Set the group No. when "GROUP" on the liquid crystal display is flashing. Press the ▶ button to initiate flashing of "GROUP" on the liquid crystal display.
4	Press ▶ to set the group No.
5	Press TEST. This will return the system to the normal mode.

- For details on making settings from the simplified remote controller, refer to the instruction manual of the unit.
- For details on making settings of the group No. of the Ventiaire or adapters (wiring adapter for other air conditioners, etc.), refer to the instruction manual of the said unit.

1P111315-1-3

31.1.2 System Wiring Diagram



NO ※	Wiring specification
①	● LONWORKS® Network Communication wiring Use the dedicated line for the LONWORKS® Network 
②	● D Ⅲ-NET wiring  Cautions for wiring 1. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores. 2. Use wires of sizes between 0.75mm² and 1.25mm² 3. Wire length:MAX 1000m 4. Do not bind the wire for D Ⅲ－NET 5. Wirings for D Ⅲ－NET must be isolated from the power lines. 6. Terminal contact size :M3.5
③	● Forced OFF input  When forced OFF input is kept on, the indoor units connected this system are unable to be operated because they are forced off. 1. Use a no voltage contact. 2. Use a contact which can guarantee minimum application load DC16V and 10mA 3. Do not use multicore cables with three or more cores. 4. Wirings must be isolated from the power lines. 5. Terminal contact Size:M3.5

Everything relating with field wiring must be supplied in the field.

3D040974

1. Object Request Input(Node Request)
It features objects for a group of 64 indoor units.
As shown below, the object name and the last "_nn" in the "nv Name" correspond with the DIII-NET location setting address.

Table 1 Object Request Input

Controlling items	nv Name	TYPE	(Value, State) :Operation
On/OFF Command	nviOnOff_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 1) or (★, 0) : OFF, (>0, 1) : ON
Operation Mode Setting	nviHeatCool_nn	SNVT_hvac_mode	0 :Auto 1 : Heating 3 : Cooling 9 : Ventilation
Temperature Setting	nviSetpoint_nn	SNVT_temp_p	Temperature ℃
Airflow Rate Setting	nviFanSpeed_nn	SNVT_switch	(0<value<=100, 1) : low, (>100, 1) : high
Filter Sign Reset	nviFSReset_nn	SNVT_switch	value= 0 or 1 : Reset
Forced Thermostat OFF Setting	nviThermoOff_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 1) or (★, 0) : Reset, (>0, 1) : OFF Setting
Remote ON/OFF Control Rejection	nviRejOnOff_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 1) or (★, 0) : permitted, (>0, 1) : Prohibited
Remote Operation Mode Control Rejection	nviRejMode_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 1) or (★, 0) : permitted, (>0, 1) : Prohibited
Remote Temperature Setting Control Rejection	nviRejSetpoint_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 1) or (★, 0) : permitted, (>0, 1) : Prohibited
System Forced OFF Setting	nviSystemOff	SNVT_switch	(0, 1) or (★, 0) : Reset, (>0, 1) : Forced OFF
Sub Group Address Control Rejection Setting	nviRejLC	SNVT_switch	(0, 1) or (★, 0) : permitted, (>0, 1) : Prohibited

★ Any (0~255)

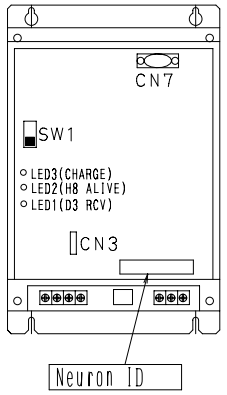
The system is designed to keep the memory of the set conditions even when the air conditioner stops due to a power failure. Each time when the setting of temperature, ON/OFF, heat/cool mode, or air volume is changed, it is written into the non-volatile memory. The frequency of writing the setting into the non-volatile memory is limted and if the setting is frequently written into the memory after exceeding the limit, it may cause malfunction.
Therefore, take caution so that the frequency of changing the setting of each indoor unit may not exceed 7000 times/year when changing the setting of temperature, ON/OFF, heat/cool mode, or air volume frequently by automatic control or the like from the central monitoring panel.

2. Object Status Output (Object Status)

Table 2 Object Status Output

Monitoring items	nv Name	TYPE	(Value, State) :Condition
ON/OFF Status Report	nvoOnOff_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 0) : OFF, (200, 1) : ON
Operation Mode Status Report	nvoHeatCool_nn	SNVT_hvac_mode	1 : Heating 3 : Cooling 9 : Ventilation
Temperature Setting Report	nvoSetpoint_nn	SNVT_temp_p	Temperature ℃
Room Temperature Report ★2	nvoSpaceTemp_nn	SNVT_temp_p	Temperature ℃
Airflow Rate Setting Report	nvoFanSpeed_nn	SNVT_switch	(100, 1) : low, (200, 1) : high
Filter Sign Report	nvoFiltersign_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 0): No Filter Sign, (200, 1) : Filter Sign
Error Status Report	nvoFailure_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 0) : Nomal, (200, 1) : Error
Error Code Report	nvoErrStatus_nn	SNVT_count	0 : Normal, >0 Error Code 2-character ASCII decimal code
Thermostat Status Report	nvoThermo_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 0) : OFF, (200,1) : ON
Forced Thermostat OFF Setting Status Report	nvoThermoOff_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 0) : Reset, (200, 1) : OFF Setting
Remote ON/OFF Operation Rejection Report	nvoRejOnOff_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 0) : Permitted, (200, 1) : Prohibited
Remote Control Operation Mode Setting Rejection Report	nvoRejMode_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 0) : Permitted, (200, 1) : Prohibited
Remote Control Temperature Setting Operation Rejection Report	nvoRejSetpoint_nn	SNVT_switch	(0, 0) : Permitted, (200, 1) : Prohibited
System Forced OFF Setting Report	nvoSystemOff	SNVT_switch	(0, 0) : Reset, (200, 1) : Forced OFF
Sub Group Address Control Operation Rejection Setting Report	nvoRejLC	SNVT_switch	(0, 0) : Permitted, (200, 1) : Prohibited
A/C Communication Statuss Report	nvoHvacExist_nn	SNVT_switch	value=0 : No connection 1 : Normal Connection 2 : Communication error state=1

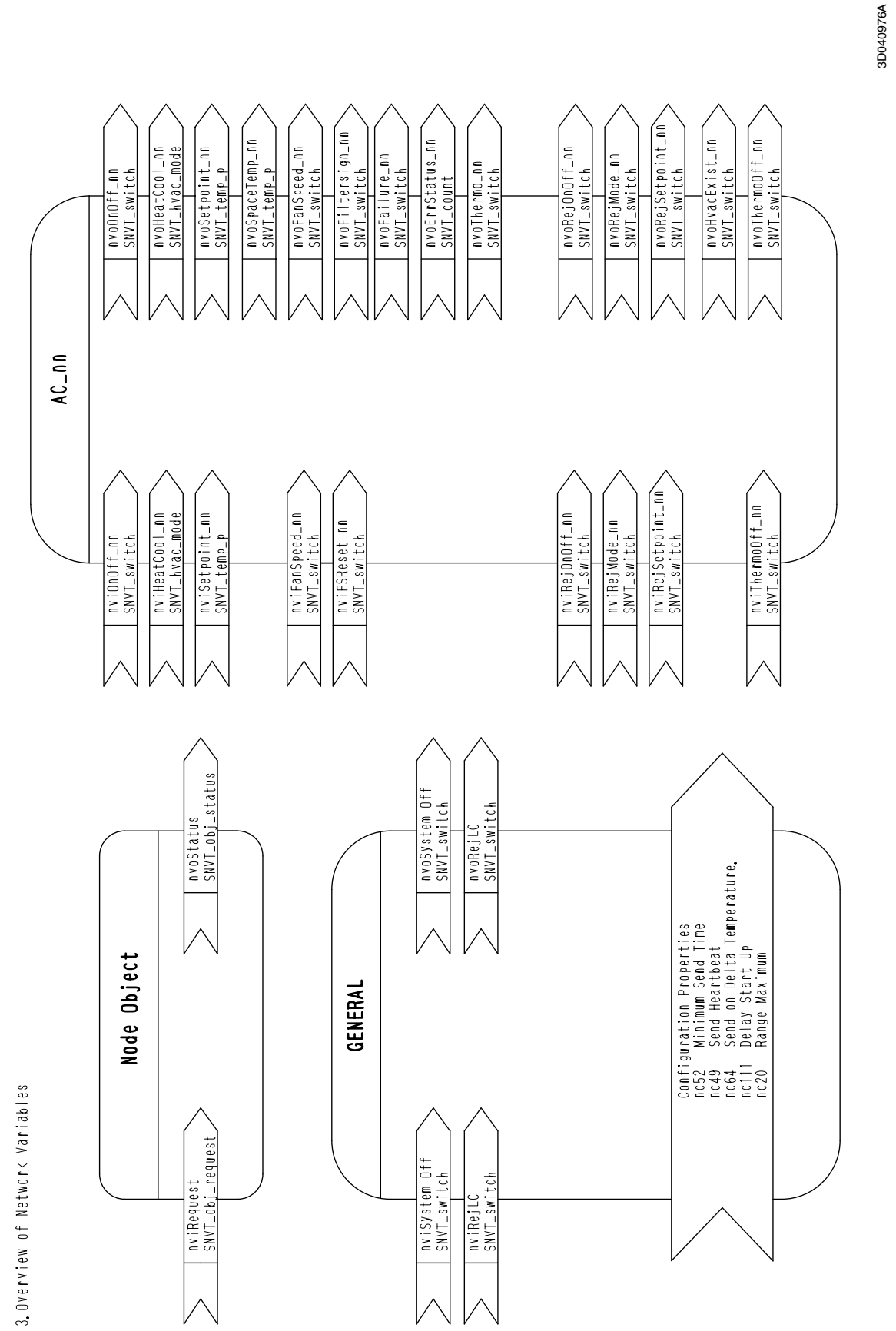
[NOTE]
When the Front Cover is removed, Neuron ID is shown on P.C.B.



★1 These error codes are shown in a 2-character ASCII decimal code specified by DAIKIN.

★2 As the indoor fan stops when the operation is in special operation mode such as thermostat off, at rest or defrosting, the 'Room Temperature Report' is affected by the heat exchanger and the sensor may happen to detect the temperature different from that to the indoor and transmit the signal. Due to the above mentioned reason, consider the temperature as a rule of thumb. If the system control is to be based on this temperature (such as changeover of operation mode and changing the set temperature), the manufacturer of the building management system is kindly requeated to carry out on its own responsibility.

Model Name	DMS504B51 DMS504C71
XIF File	DMS_IF02.XIF



3. Overview of Network Variables

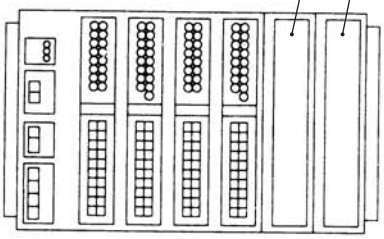
32. Parallel Interface

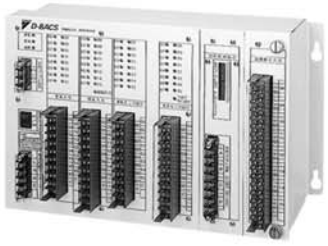
32.1 DPF201A51 — Basic Unit

1 COMPONENT

This kit contains the following components.
Confirm them before installation.

Body





Installation manual	1 pc.
Switch status label	1 pc.

Four M6 mounting screws are necessary for installing the body.

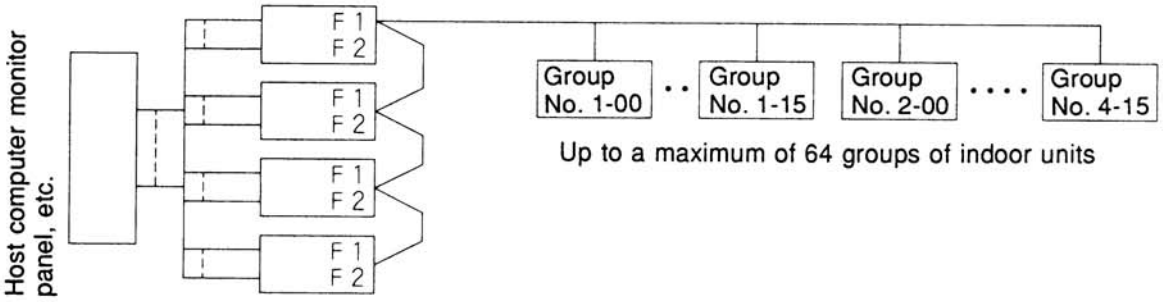
2 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

DESCRIPTION OF FUNCTIONS

1) A maximum of 16 groups of indoor units can be turned ON/OFF individually by entering the contact point.
2) Operating conditions, abnormal conditions, and display time to clean air filter can be monitored at no-voltage normally open contactors.
3) All indoor units connected to the centralized control line can be stopped simultaneously by forced OFF input.
4) By installing up to 4 additional units of this kit, a maximum of 64 groups of indoor units of the centralized control line can be controlled and monitored individually.

When combined with optional accessories, the following functions can be realized.
For details, refer to the installation manuals of respective units.

5) Room temperature unit (DPF201A52)
   This unit converts indoor temperatures between 0 and 50°C of any 4 groups of indoor units (air inlet temperature) to 0 to 5V DC and outputs the voltage.
6) Temperature set unit (DPF201A53)
   By applying 1.6 to 3.2VDC, the indoor temperature of 16 groups can be set individually.

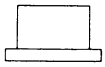


Parallel interface (Up to a maximum of 4 units can be connected.)

(Note that this kit cannot be used with the optional wiring adaptor for electrical appendices.)

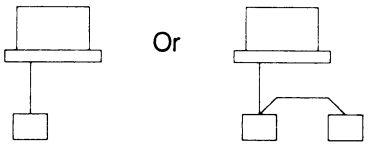
A group of indoor units is defined as follows.

① One indoor unit without remote controller

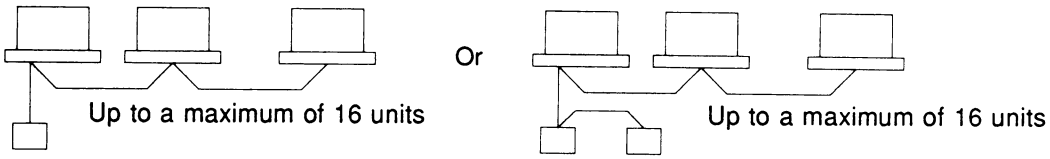


Note)
Without remote controller

② One indoor unit controlled by one or two remote controllers



③ Maximum of up to 16 indoor units controlled by 1 or 2 remote controllers

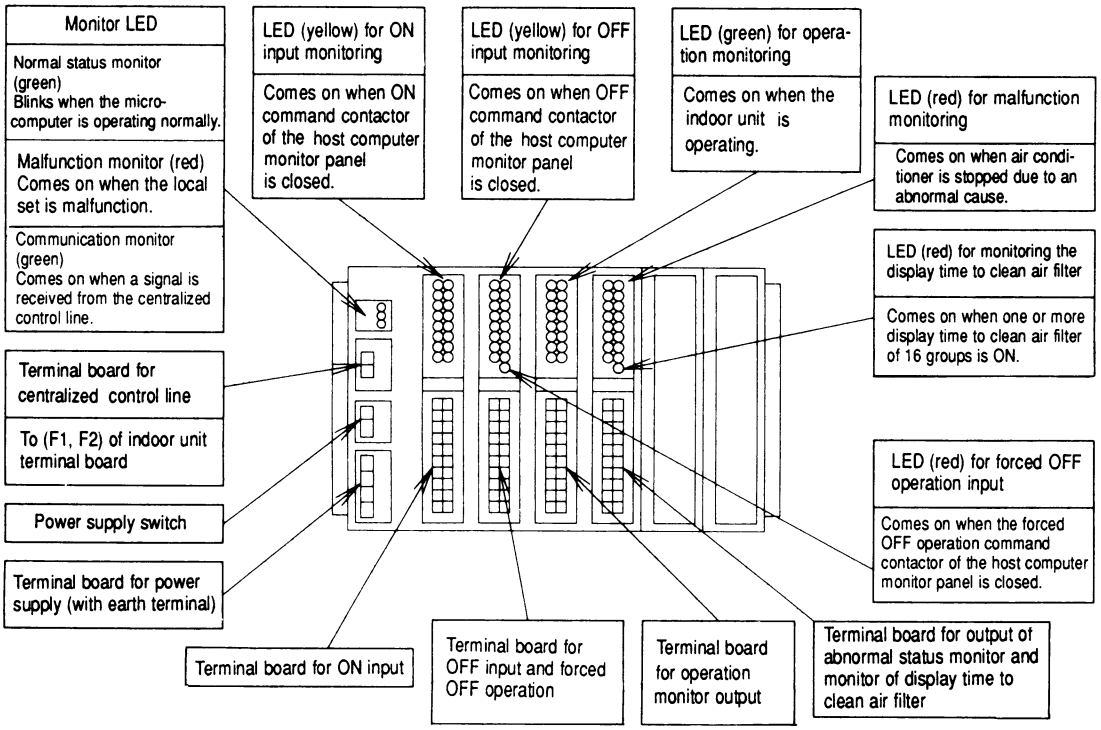


Remote controller

2 remote controllers

NOTE) Parallel interface cannot change the air flow direction or the fan speed and cannot reset the display time to clean air filter.
When connecting a group of indoor units without remote controller, use of the central remote controller is recommended.

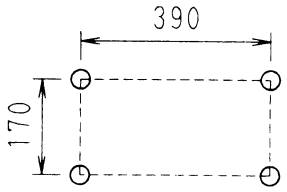
3 NAME AND OPERATION OF COMPONENT

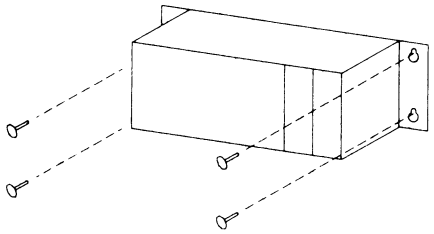


4 INSTALLATION

Securely fix the basic unit with the mounting screws (M6).

Mounting pitch

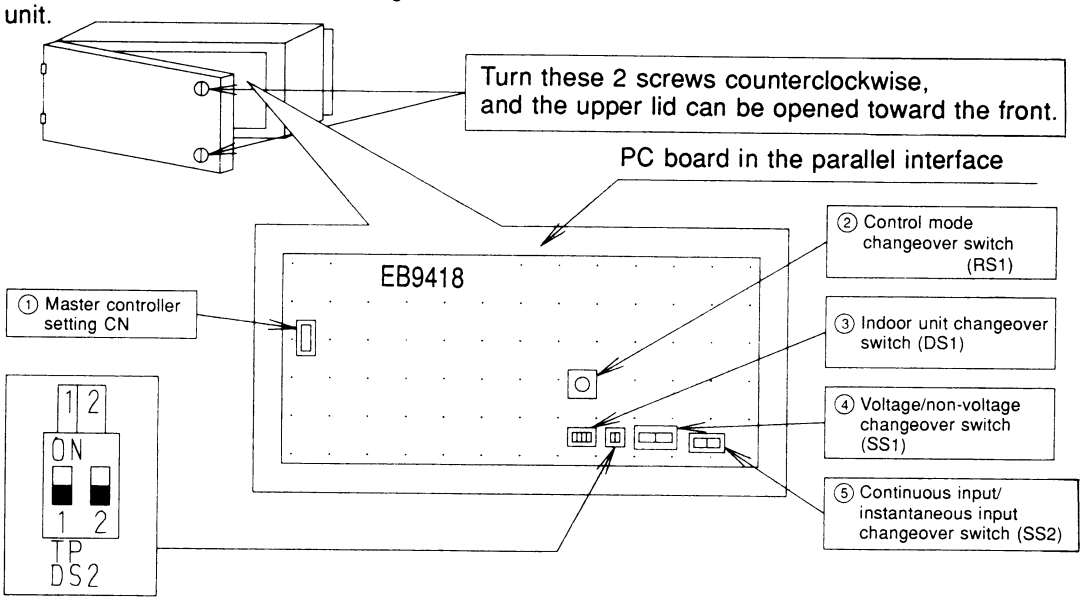




NOTE) To protect against the influence of electromagnetic interference or dust, install the basic unit in the switch box. (A mounting space of W x H x D = 450 x 290 x 150 mm or more is necessary.)

5 INITIAL SETTING

Before wiring, set the initial setting switches and connectors on the PC board in the basic unit.



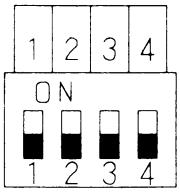
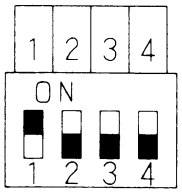
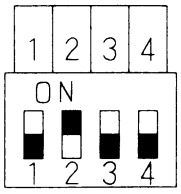
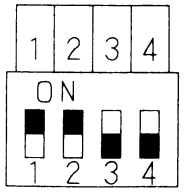
NOTE) Do not change DS2 from the factory set position shown above.
"■" indicates the switch position. The same notation applies to the following switches.

① Master controller setting CN (CN1: With the factory equipped connector)
When connecting 2 to 4 units of this kit from 1 centralized line, use only the connector equipped with parallel interface of one unit.
Remove connectors of other units.
When using this kit with data calculate unit, remove the connector of this kit.

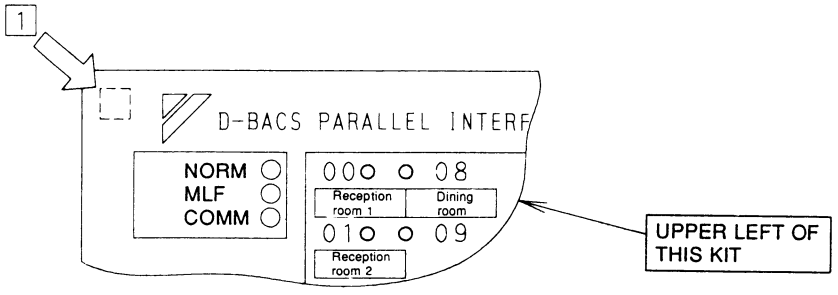
② Control mode changeover switch (RS1: Set to the factory set position 1.)
Set the control mode of the indoor unit according to the setting of the rotary switch.

Position	Function	Remote controller operation
RS1 	Individual	Always enabled.
RS1 	Centralized	Enabled when operated from this kit. Disabled when this kit does not operate.
RS1 	Remote controller operation mode disabled.	Only the control mode is always disabled.

③ Indoor unit changeover switch (DS1: Control is factory set to 1-00 to 1-15.)
The switch sets the range of the group numbers of the indoor unit to be controlled by this kit.

Setting range	1–00 ~ 1–15	2–00 ~ 2–15	3–00 ~ 3–15	4–00 ~ 4 –15
Setting of DS1	 DS1 ADDRESS/ INDOOR	 DS1 ADDRESS/ INDOOR	 DS1 ADDRESS/ INDOOR	 DS1 ADDRESS/ INDOOR

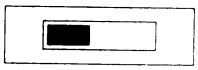
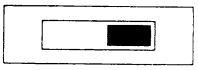
After setting the group numbers, paste the numbered seals of respective control ranges to the attached display sticker.



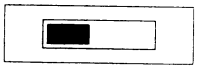
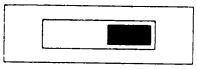
(Example) Paste 1 for 1-00 to 1-15.

Paste the room name label near the LED for ON/OFF input monitoring, as shown above.

④ Voltage/non-voltage changeover switch (SS1: Factory set to voltage side.)
Set the switch as shown below according to the specification of the ON/OFF operation input from the host computer monitor panel.

Position	Input from host computer monitor panel
VOLTAGE NON VOLTAGE  SS1	Voltage (16 to 24VDC is applied upon command.)
VOLTAGE NON VOLTAGE  SS1	Non-voltage normally open contactor (Contactor "closes" upon command.)

⑤ Continuous input/instantaneous input changeover switch (SS2: Factory set to instantaneous side.) Set the switch as shown below according to the specification of the ON/OFF operation input from the host computer monitor panel.

Position	Input from host computer monitor panel
CONT INST  SS2	Continuous "a" contactor input
CONT INST  SS2	Instantaneous (200 msec or more) "a" contactor input

NOTE) When the continuous input is used in the individual mode, the indoor unit may stop operation by the remote controller during operation command (starts with operation command contactor of host computer monitor panel "close").
To restart the unit, "open" the operation command contactor once and "close" the contactor again.

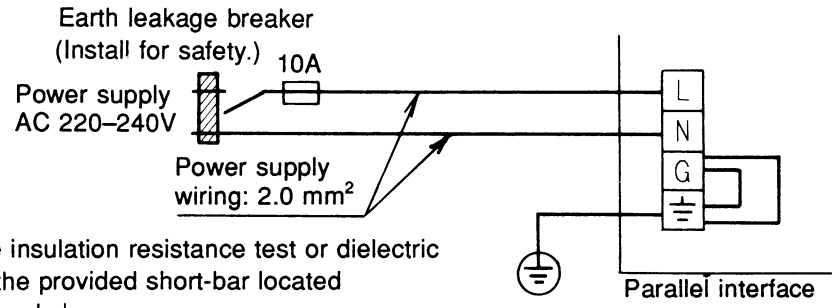
6 ELECTRICAL WIRING

GENERAL PRECAUTIONS

- All wiring and locally supplied parts and materials shall satisfy the standards of the applicable country and region.
- Only use copper wires for wiring.
- The electrical wiring work should be carried out by an authorized contractor.
- Install the switches and fuses shown below in the power supply lines.

POWER SUPPLY WIRING

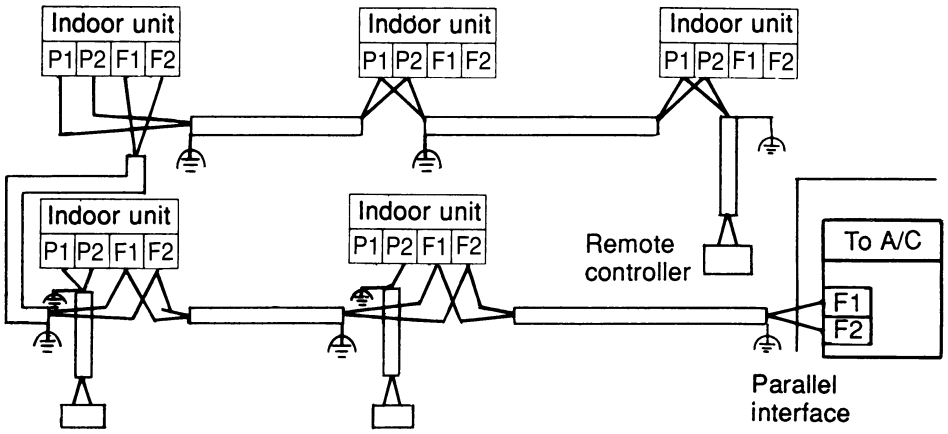
Implement the grounding in accordance with the standards of the applicable country and region.



NOTE) Before conducting the insulation resistance test or dielectric voltage test, remove the provided short-bar located between terminals G and ⏚

WIRING TO INDOOR UNIT

Install wiring as shown below, from terminals (F1, F2) for centralized control line of the parallel interface to terminals (F1, F2) of the indoor unit.(Since there is no polarity, F1 and F2 may be reversed.)

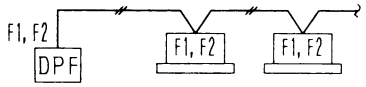


NOTE) 1. For wiring to the indoor unit of the centralized line (F1, F2), install the wiring to either one of the indoor units in the same group (may be wired to the indoor unit to which the remote controller is not connected directly).
If, however, the data calculate unit is used with the indoor unit, install wiring to all of the indoor units.
2. For transmission wiring between indoor units, use 0.75 to 1.25 mm^2 shield wire (2 wire), and ground the shield part as shown above. (overall length of 1000 meters)

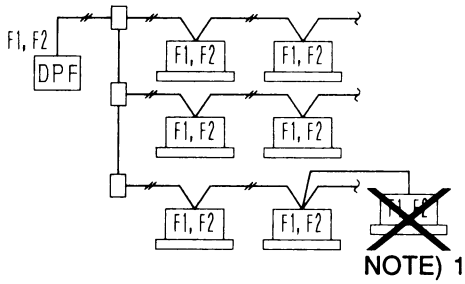
EXAMPLES OF CENTRALIZED LINE WIRING

DPF : Parallel interface
: Indoor unit
: Terminal board (Field supplied)

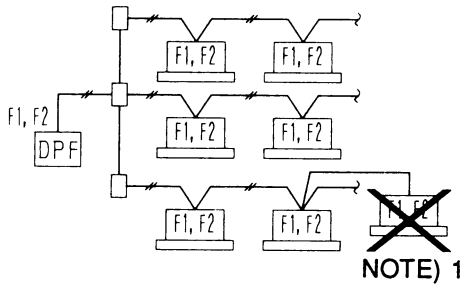
① Series wiring



② Bus type wiring
Example of 3 branching



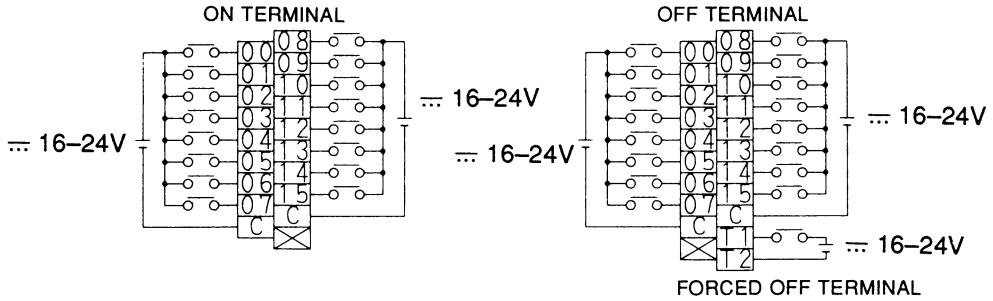
③ Star type wiring
Example of 3 branching



NOTE) 1. Branched wiring cannot be branched further.
2. For branching more than 3 control wirings from the same terminal board, use a relay terminal board (field supplied).

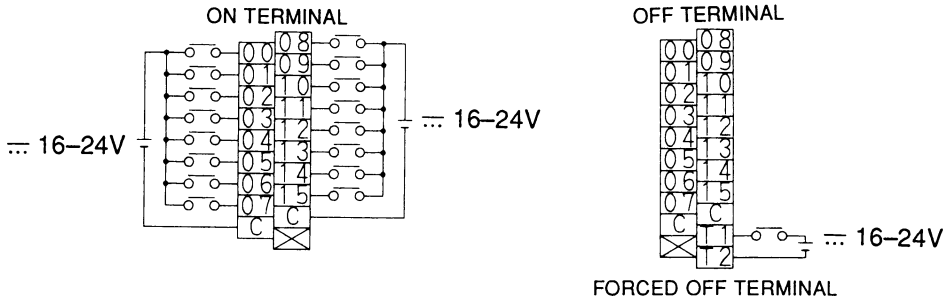
ON/OFF OPERATION INPUT WIRING

① For voltage input of instantaneous "a" contactor from host computer monitor panel:



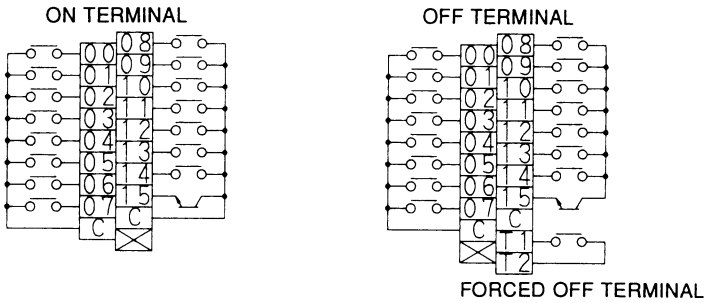
NOTE) 1. Necessary input current is about 10mA per contactor.
For relay contactor, use contactor for micro current.
2. The number of the terminal board corresponds to the group number.
(Example) Connect the contactor controlling the indoor unit group No. 1–08 to the input terminal No. 08.
3. For ON/OFF command mode, "close" the contactor for 200 msec or longer.
4. Recommended power supply for external wiring:
Sheathed vinyl cord or cable of 0.75–2mm^2.
Other: Wiring length should be 150 meters or less and separated from the power line to prevent malfunction.

② For voltage input of continuous "a" contactor from host computer monitor panel:



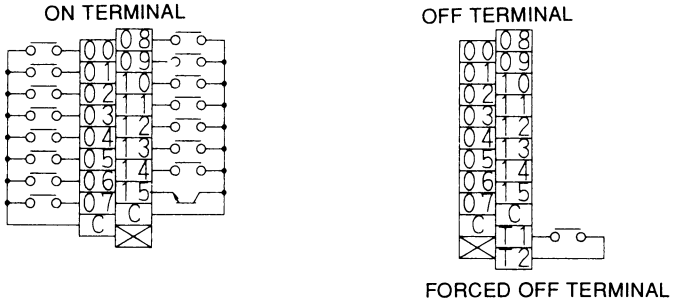
NOTE) 1. Necessary input current is about 10mA per contactor.
For relay contactor, use contactor for micro current.
2. The number of the terminal board corresponds to the group number.
(Example) Connect the contactor controlling the indoor unit group No. 1–08 to the input terminal No. 08.
3. Recommended power supply for external wiring:
Sheathed vinyl cord or cable of 0.75–2mm^2.
Other: Wiring length should be 150 meters or less and separated from the power line to prevent malfunction.

③ For non-voltage input of instantaneous "a" contactor from host computer monitor panel:



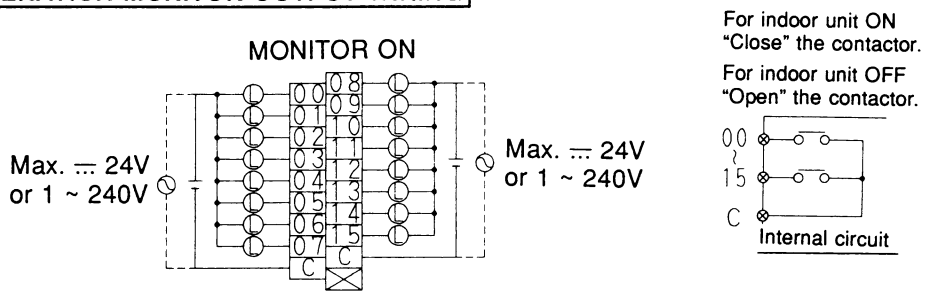
NOTE) 1. Necessary input current is about 10mA per contactor.
For relay contactor, use contactor for micro current.
2. The number of the terminal board corresponds to the group number.
(Example) Connect the contactor controlling the indoor unit group No. 1–08 to the input terminal No. 08.
3. For ON/OFF command mode, "close" the contactor for 200 msec or longer.
4. Recommended power supply for external wiring:
Sheathed vinyl cord or cable of 0.75–2mm^2.
Other: Wiring length should be 150 meters or less and separated from the power line to prevent malfunction.

④ For non-voltage input of continuous "a" contactor from host computer monitor panel:



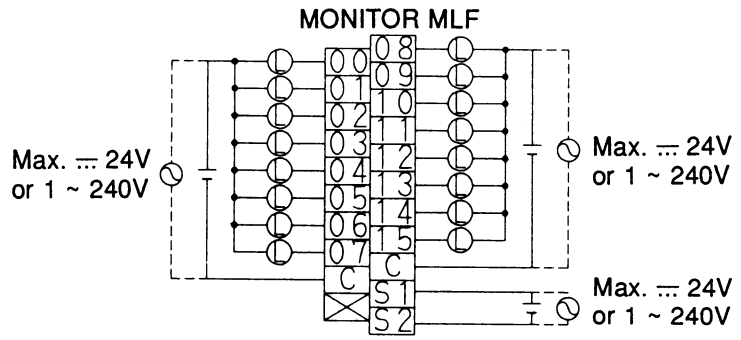
NOTE) 1. Necessary input current is about 10mA per contactor.
For relay contactor, use contactor for micro current.
2. The number of the terminal board corresponds to the group number.
(Example) Connect the contactor controlling the indoor unit group No. 1–08 to the input terminal No. 08.
3. Recommended power supply for external wiring:
Sheathed vinyl cord or cable of 0.75–2mm^2.
Other: Wiring length should be 150 meters or less and separated from the power line to prevent malfunction.

OPERATION MONITOR OUTPUT WIRING



NOTE) 1. When using an external power supply of 1~100–240V and separate from the input wiring.
2. Rating of output relay contactor in this kit is 3A maximum (resistance load). Minimum applicable load is ⎓ 12V/10 mA.
For Ⓛ section, connect a general load which satisfies the specification of the output relay contactor.

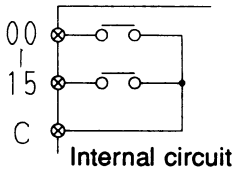
MALFUNCTION MONITOR OUTPUT WIRING



Output of display time to clean air filter

For indoor unit malfunction "close" the contactor.

For indoor unit normal operation or OFF "open" the contactor.



NOTE) 1. When using an external power supply of 1~100–240V and separate from the input wiring.
2. Rating of output relay contactor in this kit is 3A maximum (resistance load). Minimum applicable load is ⎓ 12V/10 mA.
For Ⓛ section, connect a general load which satisfies the specification of the output relay contactor.

NOTE)
Do not connect the power supply line (1~200–240V) to the terminal board for centralized control and the terminal board for input.
If connected by mistake, breakdown and burning of this kit and electronic parts of the indoor unit may result, which is extremely dangerous.
Check the wiring before turning on the power switch.

7 SETTING OF GROUP NO. FOR CENTRALIZED CONTROL

Set the group No. of each group of indoor units using the remote controller. (For the indoor unit without the remote controller, connect the remote controller to the indoor unit when setting the group No., and remove the remote controller after setting.)

① Turn the indoor unit power and the parallel interface ON.
(Setting cannot be made unless power is supplied.)
Before turning the power ON, confirm that installation and electrical wiring are all correct.
(When the power is supplied, all the liquid crystal displays come on simultaneously and may not accept operations while [8 8] is displayed, for about one minute.)

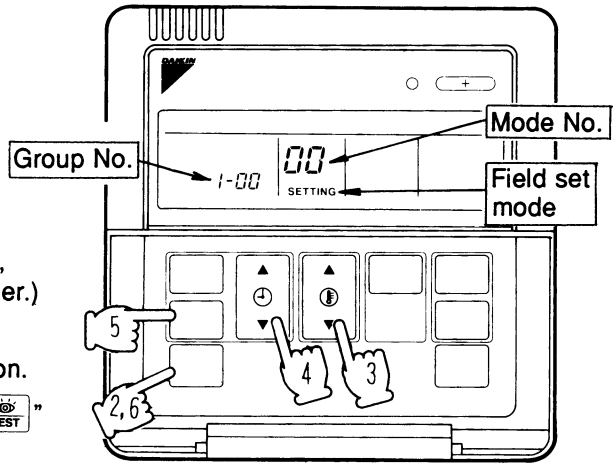
② Carry out the set mode.
Depress "TEST" button for 4 seconds or more to activate the field set mode.

③ Select the mode No.
Select the mode number 00 by "⏱".

④ Select the group No.
Select the group No. by "⏱" toggle switch. (Group No. increases from 1–00, 1–01, ~, 1–15, 2–00, ~, 4–15 in that order.)

⑤ Determine the group No.
Determine the group No. by "⏱" button.

⑥ Return to the normal mode. Depress "TEST" button.



NOTE) • Refer to the installation table when using a simple remote controller.
• For setting the group No. of Venti Air and various adaptors (such as wiring adaptor for other air conditioners), refer to respective manuals.

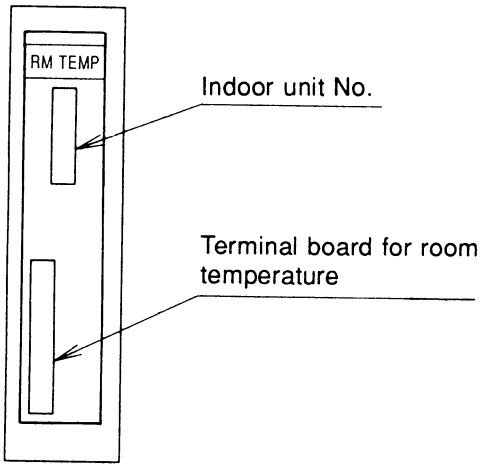
8 CONFIRMATION OF OPERATION

Before the test operation, turn on the power switches of the indoor and outdoor units and the parallel interface and depress the ON/OFF button.
Flashing of the operation lamp of the remote controller indicates malfunction of the indoor unit of that group.
Lighting of the malfunction LED of the parallel interface indicates a faulty setting of the centralized equipment.
Refer to this manual and the installation manuals of related equipment and correct any abnormalities.

NOTE
- When power is supplied, the MALFUNCTION LED of the parallel interface comes on for about 30 seconds for the initial setting, not an abnormal condition.
- For test operations of indoor and outdoor units, refer to the installation manual attached with the unit.
- If the input from the host computer monitor panel is not executed 2 minutes or more after the power is supplied to this kit, check the following.
  - Check for correct setting of the connector for setting master controller.
  - Check that the group No. for centralized control of the indoor unit has been set.
  - Except when the data calculate unit is used, check that the centralized line is not connected to two or more indoor units in the same group.

32.2 DPF201A52 — Temperature Measurement Units

1 APPEARANCE AND PART NAMES



Room temperature Unit
[DPF201A52]

NOTE When handling, be careful not to damage the electronic components on the PC board.

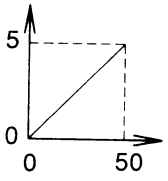
2 DESCRIPTION OF FUNCTIONS

Room temperature Unit [DPF201A52]

Converts the room temperature (air inlet temperature/0–50°C) of any four groups of indoor units controlled/monitored by the basic unit into analog output (⎓ 0–5V) and outputs.

Output characteristics

Analog output (⎓)

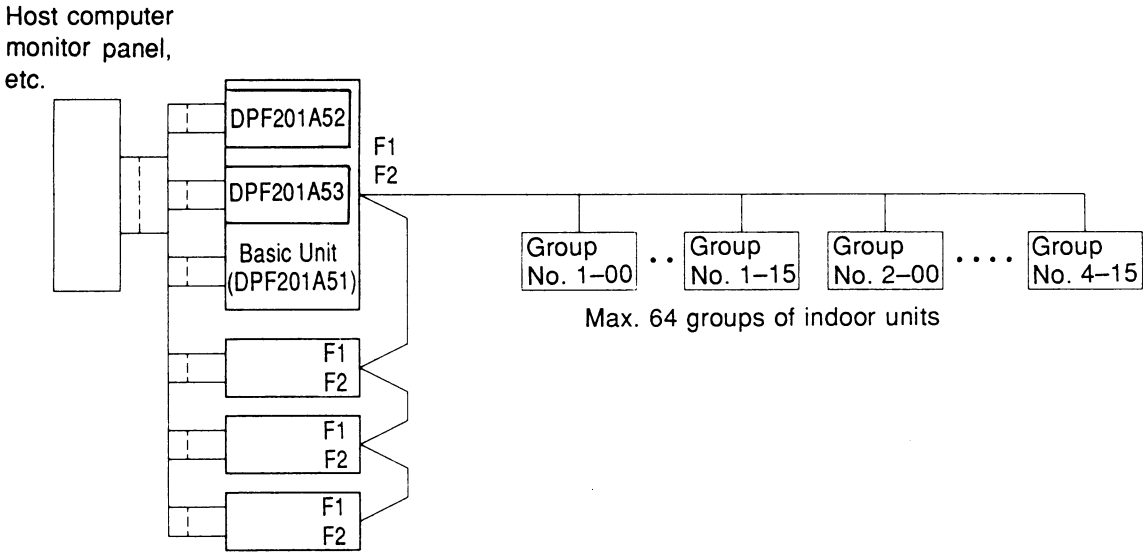


Output resolution:
0.2°C units

NOTE: The permissible load resistance for the room temperature unit is 5 kΩ or more.

C: 2PA53243

System Configuration Diagram

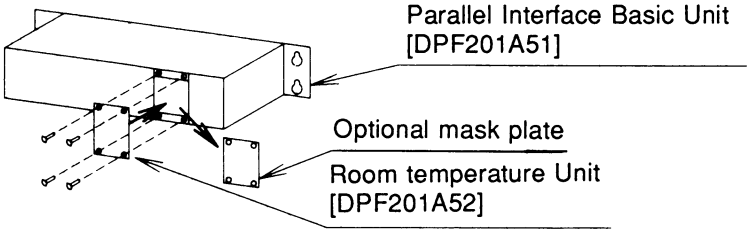


3 INSTALLATION

First, carry out installation and make initial settings for the basic unit. Then, with the basic unit's power turned off, install the kit on the basic unit according to the following procedure.

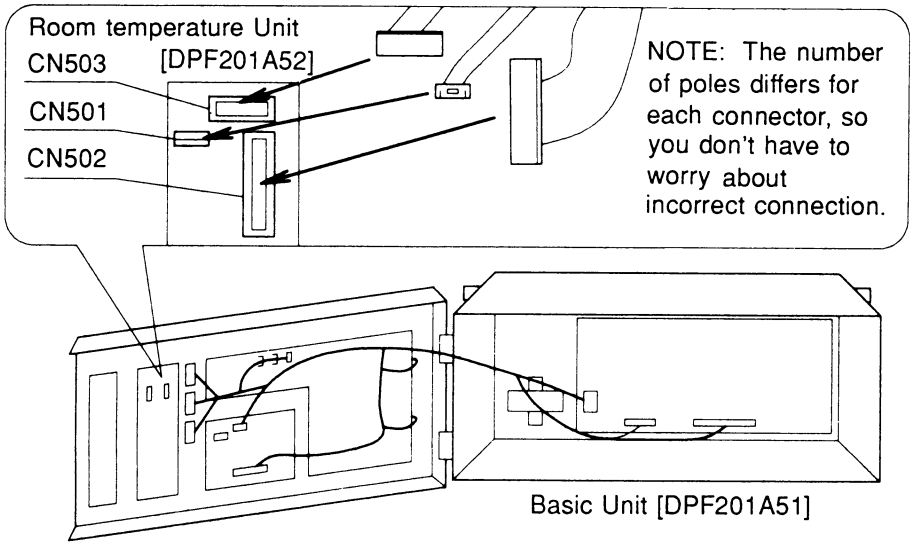
Room temperature Unit [DPF201A52]

① Remove the optional mask plate on the left side of the basic unit, and fasten the kit with screws.



C: 2PA53243

② Plug the basic unit's connector into the kit.
- Loosen the knurling screw on the front right side of the basic unit and open the upper cover towards yourself as shown in the figure below.
- Remove the clamp binding the three connector leads, and firmly plug the connectors into the three places shown in the figure below.
- Close the basic unit's upper cover.



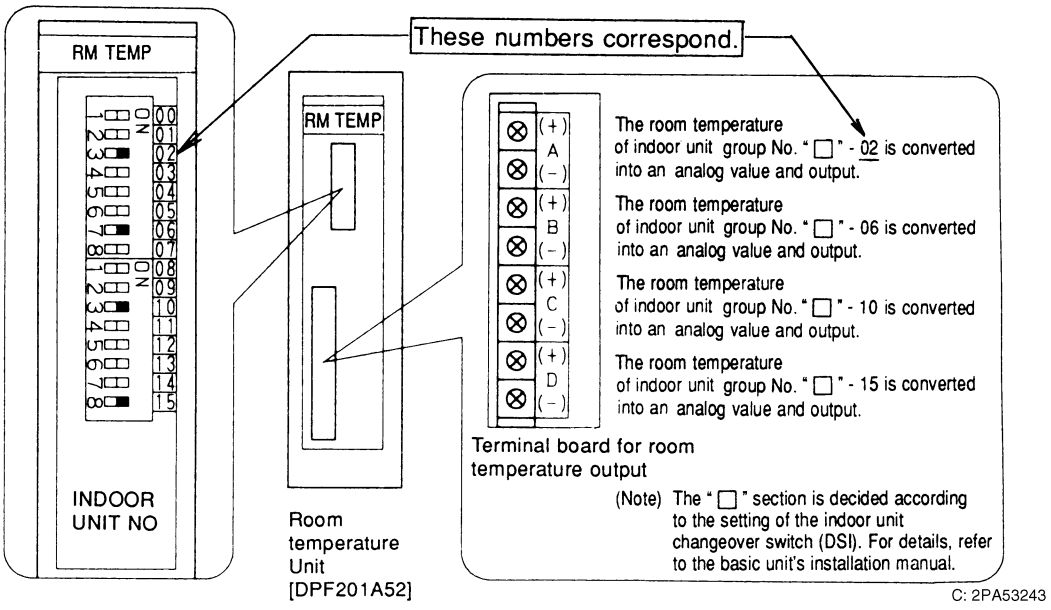
4 INITIAL SETTING

Room temperature Unit [DPF201A52]

Use the method described below to select the indoor unit group No. for which room temperature measuring is to be carried out. Set exactly four of sixteen indoor unit No. selector switches to ON. (All set to OFF for factory set)

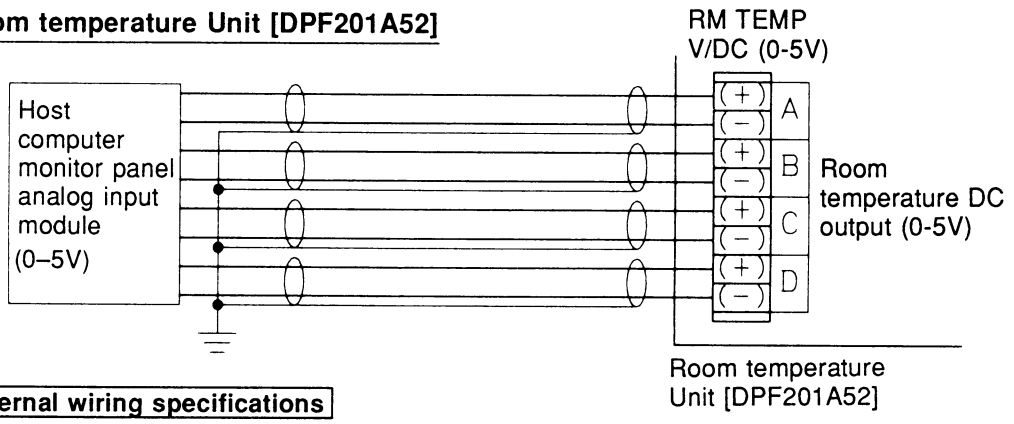
(NOTES)
- The numbers of the switches set to ON correspond to analog output of terminals A through D of the terminal board for room temperature measuring output, in order starting from the smallest number.
- If more than four switches are set to ON, the smallest number switch set to ON to the fourth are effective.

Example of switch settings and corresponding output terminals



5 ELECTRIC WIRING

Room temperature Unit [DPF201A52]



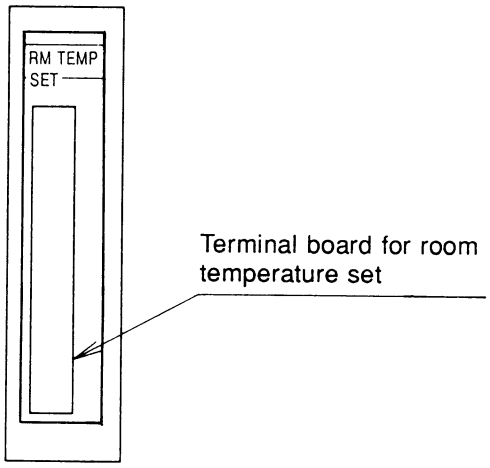
External wiring specifications

Recommended cable:	0.9 mm CPEV-S (2 wire) or 0.9 mm^2 CVV-S (2 wire)
Wiring length:	Max. 150 m per cable, however if the limit for the host computer monitor panel is 150 m or less, it is given priority.
Other:	Ground the shield part at one side as shown in the figure above. Keep separate from the power line in order to prevent malfunction.

C: 2PA53243

32.3 DPF201A53 — Temperature Setting Units

1 APPEARANCE AND PART NAMES



Room temperature set Unit
[DPF201A53]

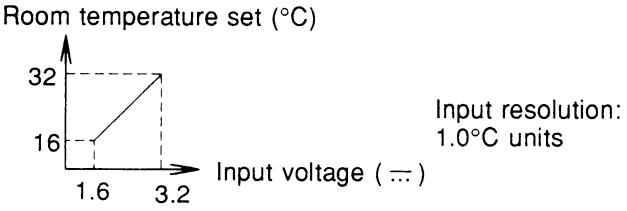
NOTE When handling, be careful not to damage the electronic components on the PC board.

2 DESCRIPTION OF FUNCTIONS

Room temperature set Unit [DPF201A53]

By applying ⎓ 1.6–3.2V, the room temperature can be individually set for sixteen groups of indoor units controlled / monitored by the basic unit.

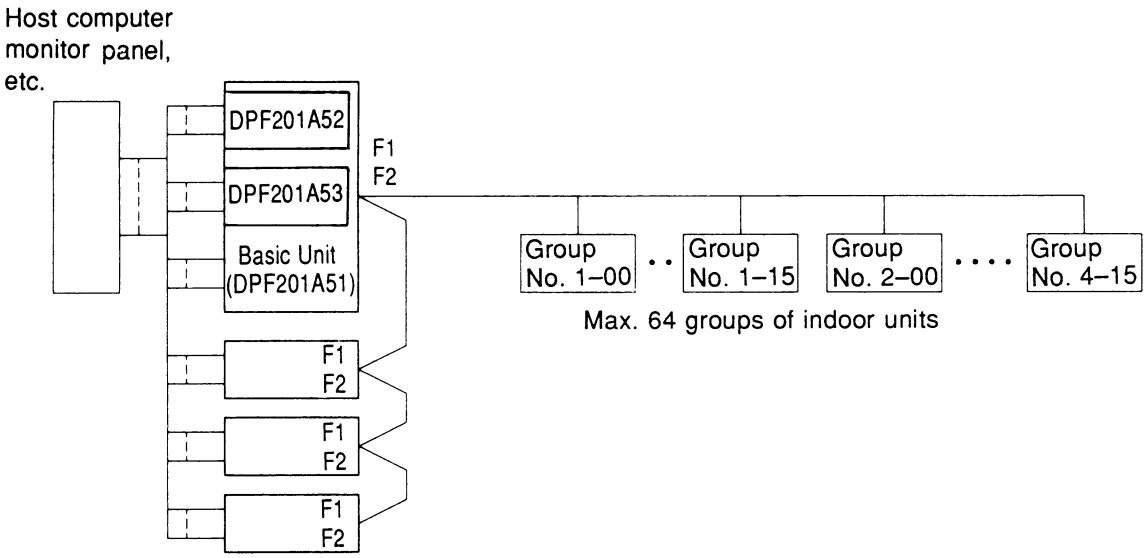
Output characteristics



NOTE: The impedance interface for the room temperature set unit is 10 kΩ or more.

C: 2PA53243

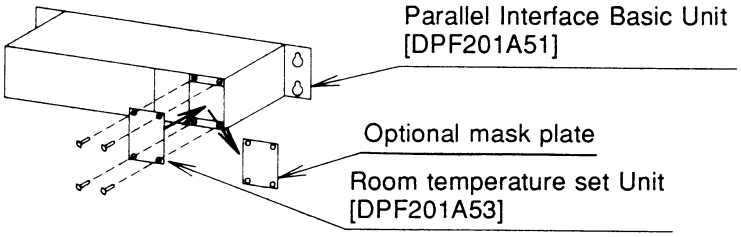
System Configuration Diagram



3 INSTALLATION

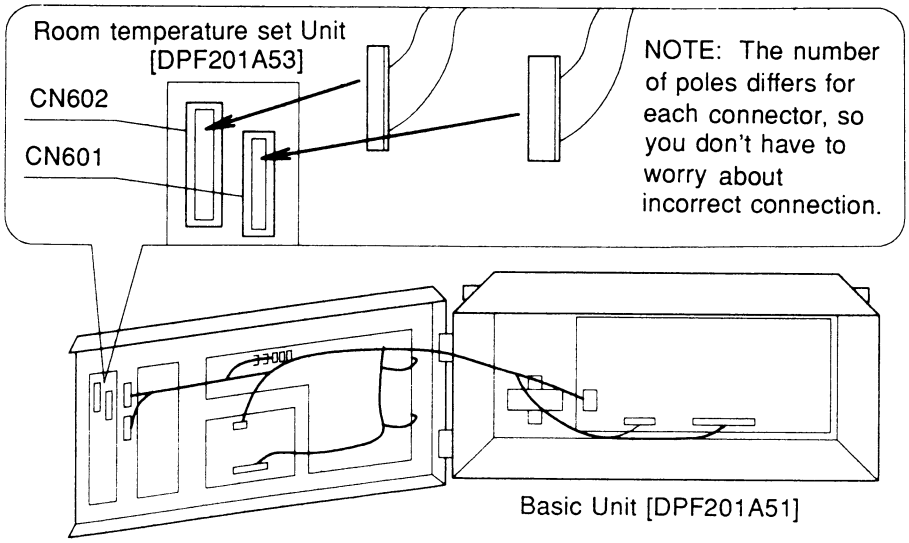
Room temperature set Unit [DPF201A53]

① Remove the optional mask plate on the right side of the basic unit, and fasten the kit with screws.



C: 2PA53243

② Plug the basic unit's connector into the kit.
- Loosen the knurling screw on the front right side of the basic unit and open the upper cover towards yourself as shown in the figure below.
- Remove the clamp binding the 2 connector leads, and firmly plug the connectors into the 2 places shown in the figure below.
- Close the basic unit's upper cover.



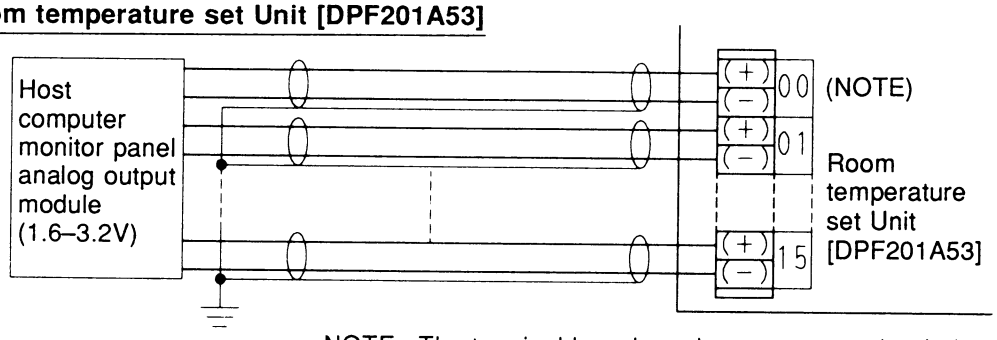
4 INITIAL SETTING

Room temperature set Unit [DPF201A53]

There are no initial setting parameters.

5 ELECTRIC WIRING

Room temperature set Unit [DPF201A53]



NOTE: The terminal board numbers correspond to indoor unit group numbers.
Example: Wire the contact that controls indoor unit group No. 1-08 to input terminal No. 08.

External wiring specifications

Recommended cable:	0.9 mm CPEV-S (2 wire) or 0.9 mm^2 CVV-S (2 wire)
Wiring length:	Max. 150 m per cable, however if the limit for the host computer monitor panel is 150 m or less, it is given priority.
Other:	Ground the shield part at one side as shown in the figure above. Keep separate from the power line in order to prevent malfunction.

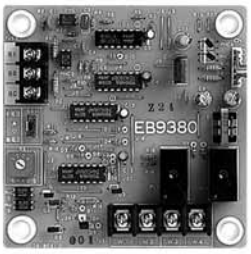
C: 2PA53243

33. Unification Adaptor for Computerized Control

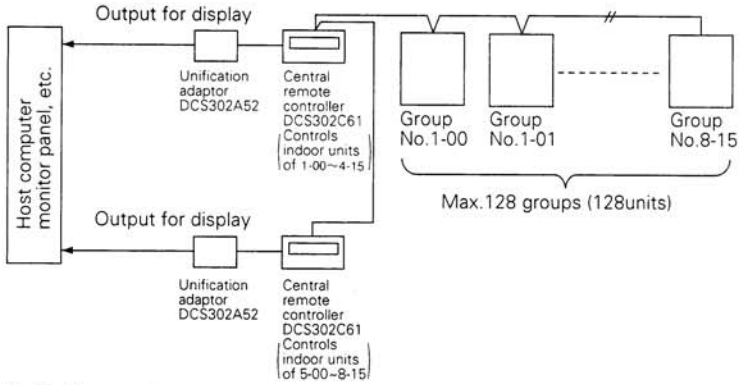
33.1 DCS302A52

■ Function

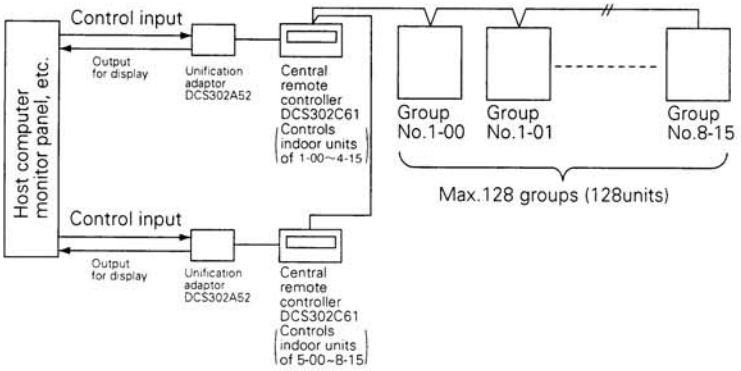
When connected to the central remote controller, this kit enables unified display (operation/malfunction) and unified control (operation/stop).



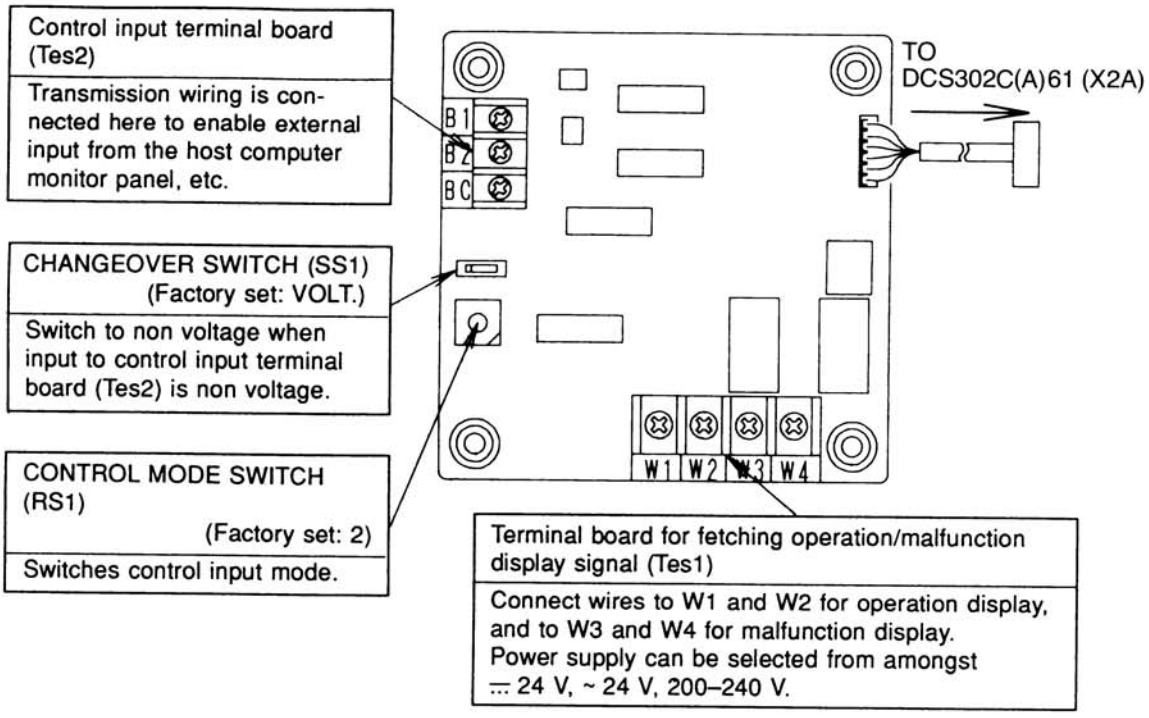
1. Unified display



2. Unified control



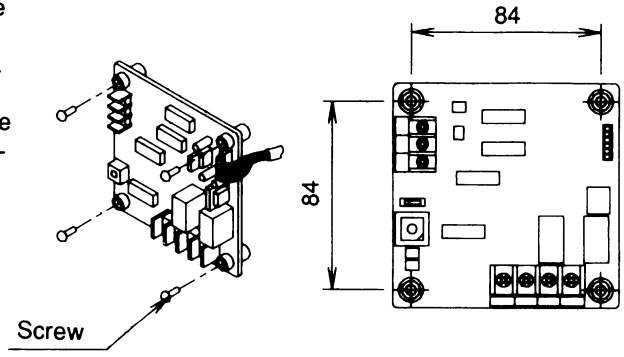
■ Names of parts and function



C: 2PA53489

■ Installation

- Securely install the adaptor inside the electric panel box (field supplied) with the 4 attached screws.
- Install the adaptor in a place within 5 m from the central remote controller to enable cable connection.



NOTE

1. Do not damage the PC board with your screwdriver, etc.
2. Install the adaptor inside an electric panel box to protect from electromagnetic waves and dust.

■ Electric wiring work and initial setting

First, wire between the indoor and outdoor units, and between each unit and the power supply source. Then, wire between the indoor unit and remote controller. Finally, check operation is normal.

- For details, refer to the installation manuals for the indoor and outdoor units.

Next, wire between the indoor unit and the central remote controller. Then, wire the central remote controller to the power supply source and make the necessary settings. Finally, check operation is normal.

- For details, refer to the installation manual for the central remote controller.

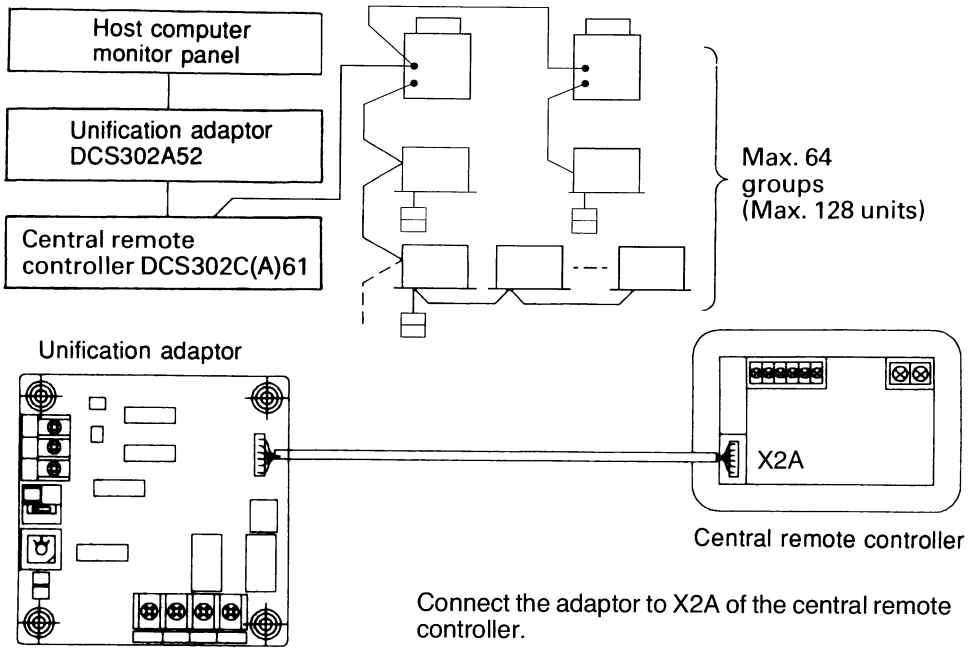
Wire between the unification adaptor for computerized control and the central remote controller.

- Refer to WIRING TO THE CENTRAL REMOTE CONTROLLER.

Set the CHANGE OVER SWITCH and CONTROL MODE SWITCH. And, wire to the host computer monitor panel or other external input device.

- Refer to WIRING TO EXTERNAL INPUT DEVICES.

WIRING TO THE CENTRAL REMOTE CONTROLLER



Connect the adaptor to X2A of the central remote controller.

C: 2PA53489

WIRING TO EXTERNAL INPUT DEVICES

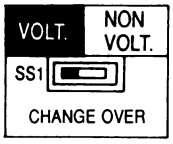
(Wire specifications)
0.75 – 1.25 mm^2 gauge sheathed vinyl cord or cable (2-wire)
Max. length: 150 m

1. Control input (Unified operation/stop)

Wire as explained here following, depending on whether input carries a voltage (VOLT.) or not (NON VOLT.).

① Input with voltage

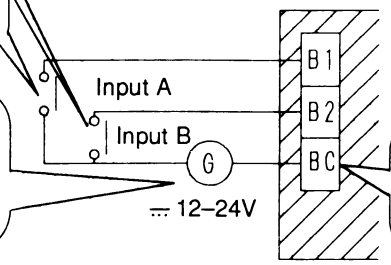
Set the CHANGE OVER SWITCH(SS1) to VOLT.. (Factory set: VOLT.)



The ■ mark indicates switch position.

Use a small voltage contact of a minimum current load of ⎓ 12 V, 1 mA or less.

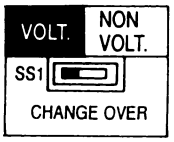
Utilize an external ⎓ 12–24 V power supply. Each contact requires approximately 10 mA, therefore carefully select power supply capacity.



Connect to the common side of control input (non-polarized).

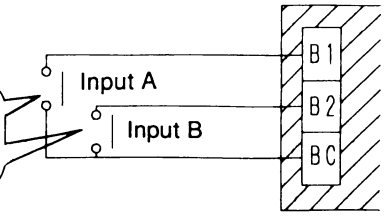
② Input with non voltage

Set the CHANGE OVER SWITCH to NON VOLT.. (Factory set: VOLT.)



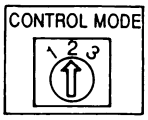
The ■ mark indicates switch position.

Use a small voltage contact of a minimum current load of ⎓ 12 V, 1 mA or less.



2. CONTROL MODE SWITCH (RS1) setting

Control mode can be selected from input A and B at this switch on the PC board adaptor.
(Factory set: 2)



① For normal operation by input A

Position	Input A
2	OFF → ON: Unified operation
	ON → OFF: Unified stop

* Input B can be disregarded.

② For instantaneous operation by input A and B
(Use an instantaneous input of 400 msec or more at ON time.)

Position	Input A	Input B
3	ON: Unified operation	ON: Unified stop

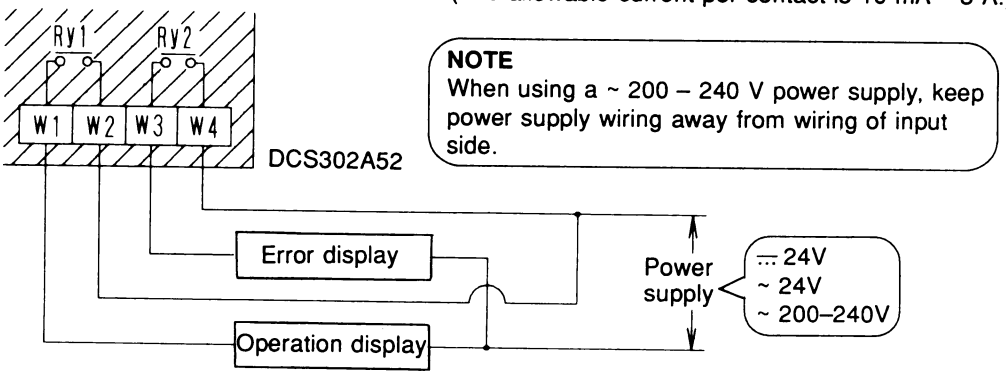
③ Do not set the switch to position 1. This switch can be set at any time.

C: 2PA53489

3. Fetching the display signal

Terminals W1 – W4 are non voltage contacts used in normal operation to output operation display (W1 and W2) and malfunction display (W3 and W4) signals.

(The allowable current per contact is 10 mA – 3 A.)



Output conditions are indicated as below.

When Ry1 and Ry2 are OFF	When only Ry1 is ON	When only Ry2 is ON
All indoor units are stopped.	No error has occurred with the indoor units, and at least 1 unit is operating.	At least 1 unit has stopped operating due to malfunction, or a communications error has occurred between tbe central remote controller and the indoor unit.

C: 2PA53489

Part 3
Indoor Units

1. FXF(Q) 436
   - 1.1 BYCP125K-W1 — Decoration Panel....436
   - 1.2 BYCP125D-W1 — Decoration Panel 441
   - 1.3 KDBH55K160F — Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet....445
   - 1.4 KDBH55D160W — Sealing Material of Air Discharge Outlet....449
   - 1.5 KDBP55H160FA·160WA — Panel Spacer....452
   - 1.6 KDDP55B160(K) — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type) 455
   - 1.7 KDD55DA160(K) — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type)....460
   - 1.8 KDDP55X160 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type) 464
   - 1.9 KDDJ55XA160 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type) 467
   - 1.10 KKSJ55KA160 — Chamber Connection Kit....470
   - 1.11 KDTP55K80·160 — Installation Kit for High Humidity 471
   - 1.12 KDT-55DA80·160 — Installation Kit for High Humidity....473
   - 1.13 KAFP556B80 / KAFP556B160, KAFP557B80 / KAFP557B160 — High Efficiency Filter (Including Chamber)....475
   - 1.14 KAF556DA80·160, KAF557DA80·160 — High Efficiency Filter (Including Chamber)....478
   - 1.15 KAFP552B80·160, KAFP553B80·160 — Replacement High Efficiency Filter 481
   - 1.16 KDDFP55B160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber....482
   - 1.17 KDDF55DA160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber....485
   - 1.18 KAFP551K160 — Replacement Long-life Filter 488
   - 1.19 KAF551CA160 — Replacement Long-life Filter 489
   - 1.20 KAFP55B160 — Ultra Long-life Filter Unit (Including Chamber)....490
   - 1.21 KAF55DA160 — Ultra Long-life Filter Unit (Including Chamber)....493
   - 1.22 KAFP55H160H — Replacement Ultra Long-life Filter....496
   - 1.23 KAF55KA160H — Replacement Ultra Long-life Filter 497
   - 1.24 KDJP55B80 / KDJP55B160 — Branch Duct Chamber 498
   - 1.25 KDP55DA80 / KDP55DA160— Branch Duct Chamber....501
2. FXZQ....504
   - 2.1 BYFQ60B8W1 — Decoration Panel....504
   - 2.2 KDBH44BA60 — Sealing Material of Air Discharge Outlet 507
   - 2.3 KDBQ44BA60A — Panel Spacer....510
   - 2.4 KDDQ44XA60 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type) 513
   - 2.5 KAFQ441BA60 — Replacement Long-life Filter 515
3. FXC (Q) - Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Double Flow) -....516
   - 3.1 BYBC32·50·63·125G- W1 — Decoration Panel 516
   - 3.2 KAFJ532G36·56·80·160 / KAFJ533G36·56·80·160 — High-Efficiency Filter....519
   - 3.3 KDDFJ53G36·56·80·160 — Filter Chamber for Bottom Suction 522
   - 3.4 KAFJ531G36·56·80·160 — Long Life Replacement Filter 523
4. FXK (Q) - Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type - 524
   - 4.1 BYK45·71FJW1 — Decoration Panel....524
   - 4.2 KPBJ52F56·80W — Panel Spacer....528
   - 4.3 KAFJ521F56·80 — Replacement Long-Life Filter....533

4.4 KDBJ52F56·80W — Air Discharge Blind Panel 534
4.5 K-HV7·9AW — Discharge Grille 541
4.6 KFDJ52FA56·80 — Flexible Duct with Shutter.....542
5. FXD(Q) - Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct Type - 550
5.1 KDT25N32·50·63 — Installation Kit for High Humidity 550
6. FXYD - Ceiling Mounted Low Silhouette Duct Type - 551
6.1 KDGF19A45·71 — Decoration Panel 551
7. FXS(YQ) / FXYB - Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type - 552
7.1 BYBS32·45·71·125DJW1 — Decoration panel 552
7.2 KTBJ25K36W, KTB25KA56·80·160W — Service Access Panel 556
7.3 KNM25K32·50·63·125V1
— Natural Evaporating Pan Type Humidifier.....559
7.4 KEA25K32·50·63·100·125VE — Auxiliary Electric Heater 570
7.5 KAFJ252L36, KAFJ253L36
KAF252LA56·80·160, KAF253LA56·80·160
— High-Efficiency Filter 575
7.6 KAJ25L36D, KAJ25LA56·80·160D
— Filter Chamber for Bottom Suction.....576
7.7 KAJ25L36B, KAJ25LA56·80·160B
— Filter Chamber for Rear Suction 577
7.8 KAFJ251K36·56·80·160 — Replacement Long-Life Filter.....581
7.9 KSA-25K36, KSA-25KA56·80·160
— Canvas Duct (Air Suction Canvas) 582
7.10 KBBJ25K36, KBBJ25KA56·80·160 — Screening Door.....583
7.11 KDJ2507K36·56·80·160 — Air Suction Flange 584
7.12 KDAJ25K36·56·80·140A — Air Discharge Adaptor.....585
8. FXM(Q) 587
8.1 KAF372AA36·56·80·160 / KAF373AA36·56·80·160
— High Efficiency Filter 587
8.2 KAFP372A80·160, KAFJ372L280 / KAFP373A80·160, KAFJ373L280
— High-Efficiency Filter 588
8.3 KDDF37AA36·56·80·160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber.....590
8.4 KDDFP37A80·160 — Filter Chamber.....593
8.5 KDJ3705L280 — Filter Chamber 596
8.6 KAF371AA36·56·80·160 — Long Life Filter 598
8.7 KAFP371A80·160, KAFJ371L280 — Long Life Replacement Filter ..599
8.8 KAF375AA36·56·80·160 — Long Life Filter Chamber Kit 600
8.9 KDU30L250VE — Drain Pump Kit 603
8.10 KDU-30L125VE — Drain Pump Kit 606
9. FXH(Q).....611
9.1 KAF501DA56·80·112 — Replacement Long-life Filter 611
9.2 KDU50N60VE / KDU50N125VE — Drain-up Kit 612
9.3 KDU50B50·71·125VE — Drain Pump Kit 617
9.4 KHFP5MA63·160 — L-type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction).....618
9.5 KHFJ5F50·80·160 — L-Type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction) 619
10.FXA (Q) 620
10.1 K-KDU572EVE (Supplying goods to order) — Drain Pump Kit 620
11.FXL (Q) / FXN (Q) 630
11.1 KAFJ361K28·45·71 — Long Life Replacement Filter.....630
12.FXUQ 631
12.1 KDBT49FA80·140 — Decoration Panel for Air Discharge 631

12.2 KDBH49FA80·140 — Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet.....632
12.3 KAF495FA140 — Replacement Long Life Filter 634
12.4 KHFP49MA140 — L Connection Piping Kit.....634
12.5 KDGJ49FA80·140 — Vertical Flap Kit.....635

1. FXF(Q)

1.1 BYCP125K-W1 — Decoration Panel

1. BEFORE INSTALLATION

1. PRECAUTIONS
- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

2. ACCESSORIES
- Installation manual.

3. NOTE TO INSTALLER
- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

2. PREPARATION OF DECORATION PANEL

〈〈For this unit, you are able to select air flow directions. To discharge air in 2 or 3 directions, it is necessary to purchase optional blocking pad kit.〉〉

HANDLING OF DECORATION PANELS
- Never place the panel facing down nor lean it against a wall nor leave it on a projecting object.
- Never touch or put pressure on the swing flap.
  (The swing flap may malfunction)

(1) Remove the suction grille from the decoration panel.

1 Press the lever on the suction grille and lift the lever side. **(Refer to Fig. 1)**

2 Detach the suction grille from the decoration panel by lifting the grille up approximately 45 degrees. **(Refer to Fig. 2)**

3 Remove the transporting cardboard (in 4 locations) from the main unit. **(Refer to Fig. 3)**

4 Remove the transporting tape (in 4 locations) on the back of the suction grille. **(Refer to Fig. 4)**

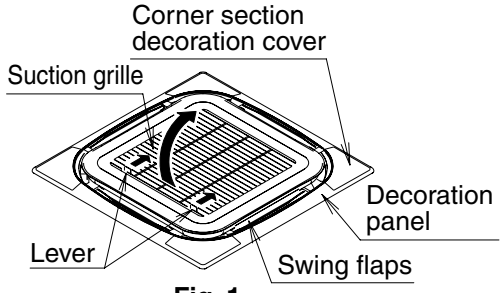


Fig. 1

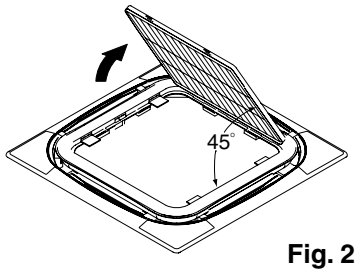


Fig. 2

3PA64319-13Q

(2) Remove the corner section decoration cover.
- Lift the four corner decoration covers in the direction of the arrow and remove. **(Refer to Fig. 5)**

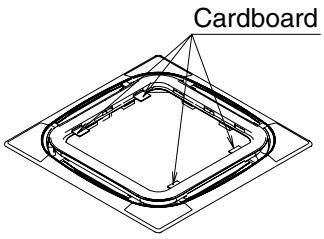


Fig. 3

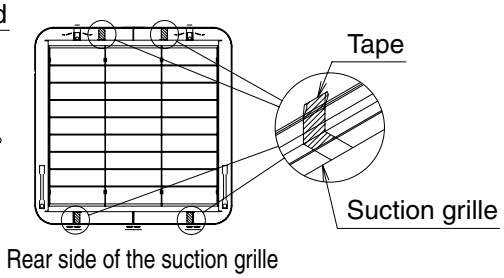


Fig. 4

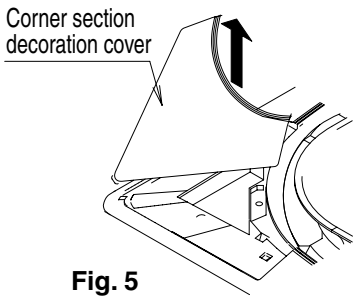


Fig. 5

3. INSTALLATION OF THE DECORATION PANEL TO THE INDOOR UNIT BODY

⟨⟨Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for the installation of the indoor unit. ⟩⟩

(1) Match the “PIPING SIDE” and “DRAIN SIDE” displays on the decoration panel with the position of the piping section and drain section on the indoor unit.

(2) Install the decoration panel

1 Temporarily install the decoration panel to the indoor unit by hanging the temporary latch of the decoration panel to the hook of the indoor unit body. (2 locations)

2 Hook the four mounting brackets on the corner sections of the decoration panels onto the hooks around the main indoor unit body.
(Make sure at this time that the swing motor lead wire does not get caught between the decoration panel and the main unit.)

3 Screw all 4 hexagon head screws located right beneath the latches in approximately 5 mm. (Panel will rise)

4 Adjust the decoration panel by turning it to the arrowed direction in Fig. 6 so that the ceiling opening is completely covered.

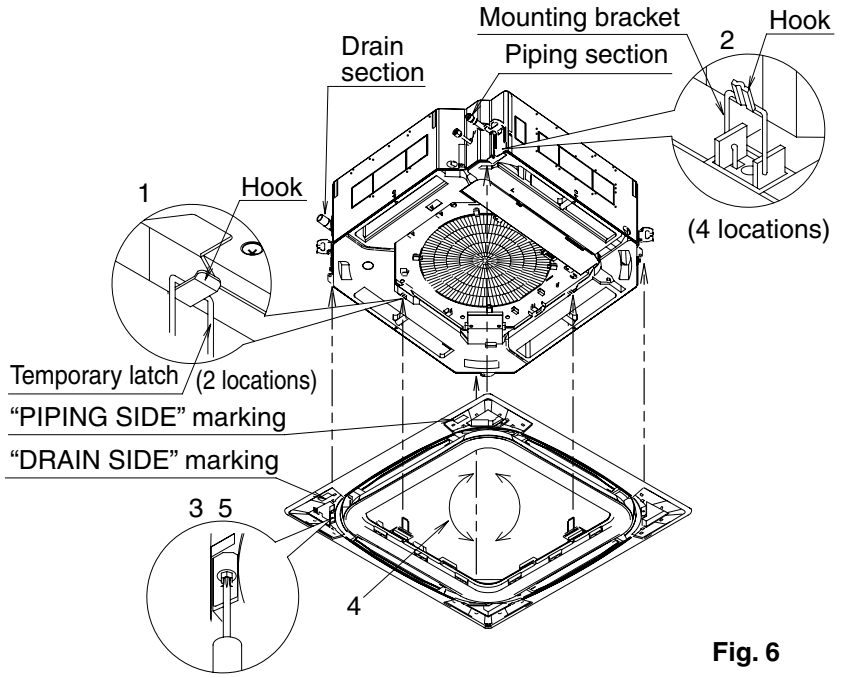
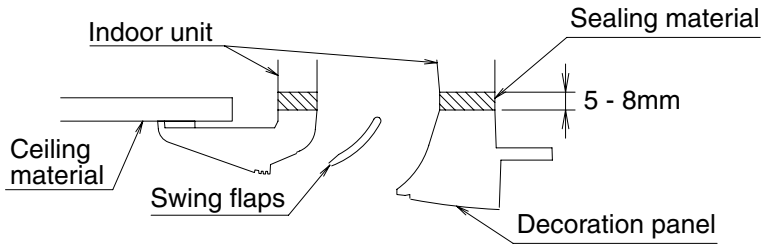


Fig. 6

3PA64319-13Q

5 Tighten the screws until the thickness of the sealing material between the decoration panel and the indoor unit body reduces to 5-8 mm.



[PRECAUTIONS]

- Improper screwing of the screws may cause the troubles shown in Fig. 7 Screw properly.

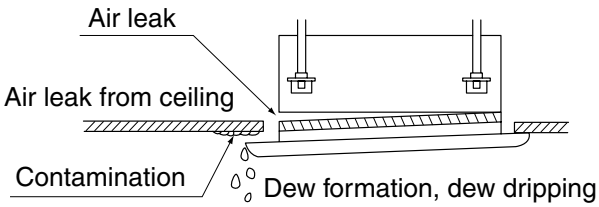


Fig. 7

- If gap is still left between the ceiling and the decoration panel after screwing the screws, readjust the indoor unit body height. **(Refer to Fig. 8)**

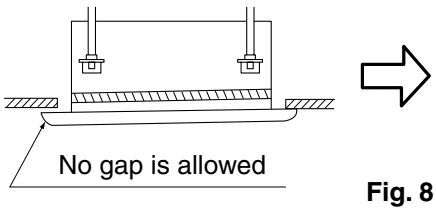
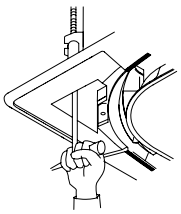


Fig. 8

Adjustment of the indoor unit body height from the holes in the corner of the decoration panel is possible if the indoor unit is kept leveled and the drain piping, etc. is unaffected.



(3) Wiring of the decoration panel **(Refer to Fig. 9)**

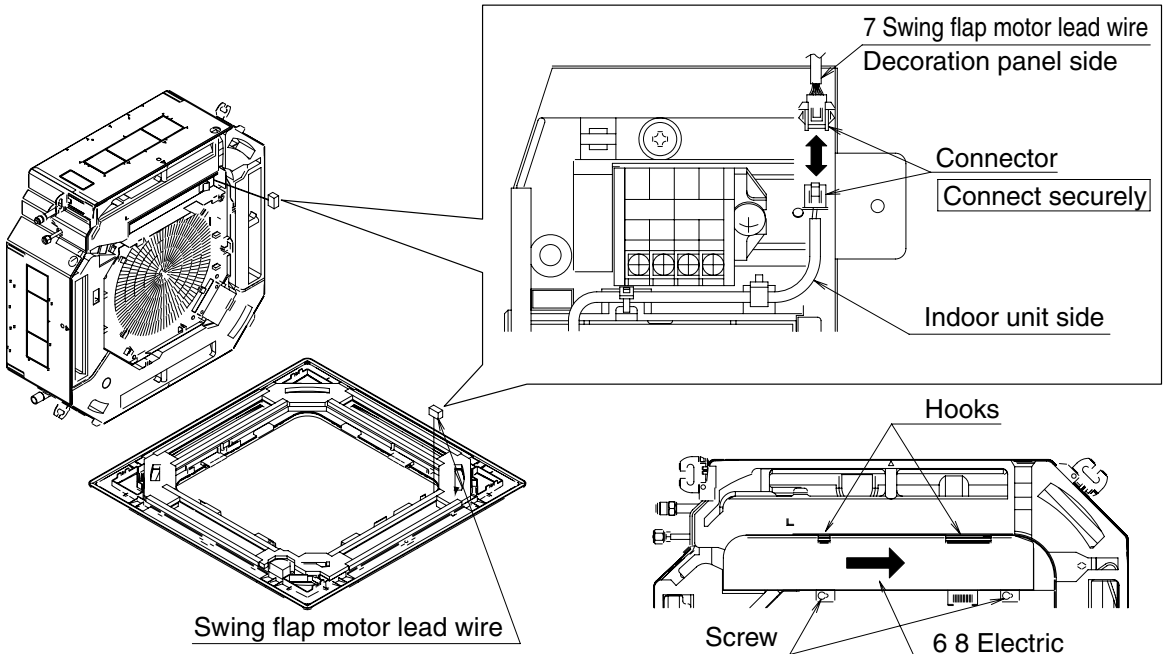
6 Remove the electric components box lid.

7 Connect the connectors for swing flap motor lead wire installed on the decoration panel.

8 Replace the electric components box lid reversing the procedure to remove it.

Make sure that the swing flap motor lead wire is not caught between the electric components box and its lid, and between the indoor unit body and the decoration panel.

C: 3PA64319-13Q



<Wiring Diagram>
(The orientation of the indoor unit is changed for purposes of description.)

Loosen the two screws, slide the cover in the direction of the arrows, and disengage from the hooks.

Fig. 9

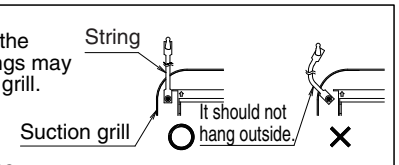
4. INSTALLATION OF SUCTION GRILLE AND SERVICE COVER

(1) Install the suction grille
Install by reversing the procedure shown in “PREPARATION OF DECORATION PANEL”.
It is possible to install the suction grille in 4 directions by turning the suction grille.
Change the direction when adjusting the direction of the suction grille of multiple units or in meeting customers’ demands.

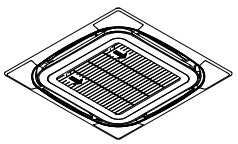
Install the suction grill.
①Tilt the suction grill at a 45˚ angle and fix 3 hooks to the decoration panel.

②Hook up the strings of the suction grill to the fixtures of the body corners (2 places) as shown below.

NOTE:
When mounting the suction grill, strings may be caught in the grill. Be sure that strings do not hang out of the suction grill edges.



③Slowly push the suction grill up and lastly, ensure the grill is fastened to the decoration panel body, keeping pressing 2 knobs.



NOTE :
Be careful not to get swing flap motor lead wire get caught when installing the suction grille.

C : 3PA64319-13Q

(2) Install the corner section decoration cover.

1 Attach the string of the corner section decoration cover to the pin of the decoration panel. **(Refer to Fig. 10)**

2 Install the corner section decoration cover over the decoration panel. **(Refer to Fig. 11)**

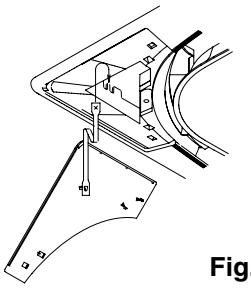
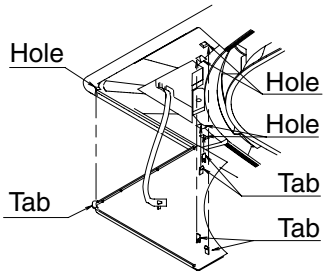


Fig. 10



Attach by inserting the five tabs on the corner section decoration cover into the holes on the decoration panel.

Fig. 11

C : 3PA64319-13Q

1.2 BYCP125D-W1 — Decoration Panel

1. BEFORE INSTALLATION

1. PRECAUTIONS
- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

2. ACCESSORIES
- Installation manual.

3. NOTE TO INSTALLER
- Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

2. PREPARATION OF DECORATION PANEL

〈〈 For this unit, you are able to select air flow directions. To discharge air in 2 or 3 directions, it is necessary to purchase optional blocking pad kit.〉〉

HANDLING OF DECORATION PANELS
- Never place the panel facing down nor lean it against a wall nor leave it on a projecting object.
- Never touch or put pressure on the swing flap.
  (The swing flap may malfunction)

(1) Remove the swing flap motor lead wire on the back of the decoration panel form the hook.
Push the wires outward to the frame surface and remove the wires from the hook in the middle.
(Refer to Fig. 1)

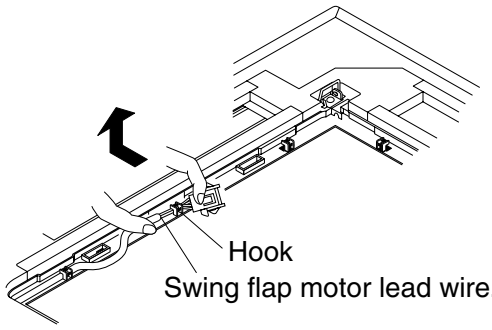


Fig. 1

(2) Remove the suction grille from the decoration panel.

1 Push the suction grille lever inward and lift up the lever side. **(Refer to Fig. 2)**

2 Detach the suction grille from the decoration panel by lifting the grille up approximately 45 degrees. **(Refer to Fig. 3)**

(3) Remove the service cover on the corner.
- Slide the service cover outward to remove. **(Refer to Fig. 4)**

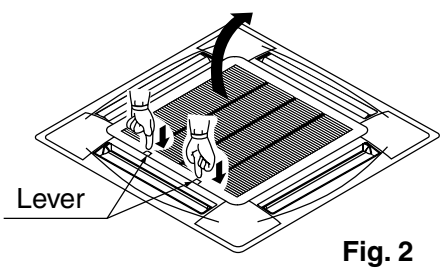


Fig. 2

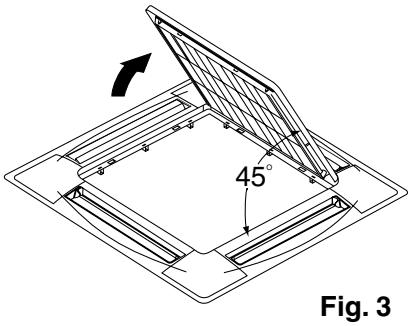


Fig. 3

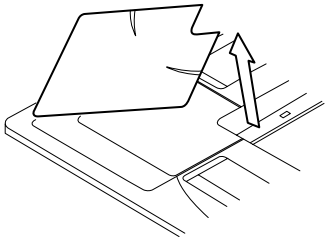


Fig. 4

C : 3PA64319-11M

3. INSTALLATION OF THE DECORATION PANEL TO THE INDOOR UNIT BODY

〈〈Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for the installation of the indoor unit. 〉〉

(1) Match the “PIPING SIDE” and “DRAIN SIDE” displays on the decoration panel with the position of the piping section and drain section on the indoor unit.

(2) Install the decoration panel

1 Temporarily install the decoration panel to the indoor unit by hanging the latch on the opposite side of the swing flap motor of the decoration panel to the hook of the indoor unit body. (2 positions)

2 Temporarily hang the remaining 2 latches to the hooks on the sides of the indoor unit. (Be careful not to let the swing motor lead wire get caught in the sealing material.)

3 Screw all 4 hexagon head screws located right beneath the latches in approximately 5 mm. (Panel will rise)

4 Adjust the decoration panel by turning it to the arrowed direction in Fig. 5 so that the ceiling opening is completely covered.

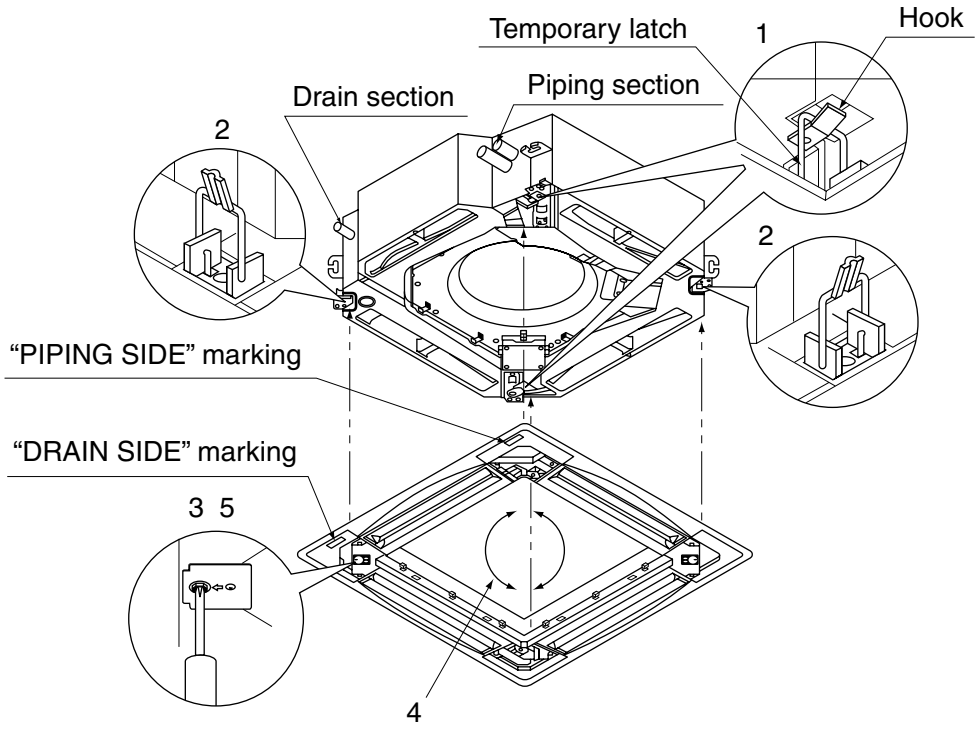
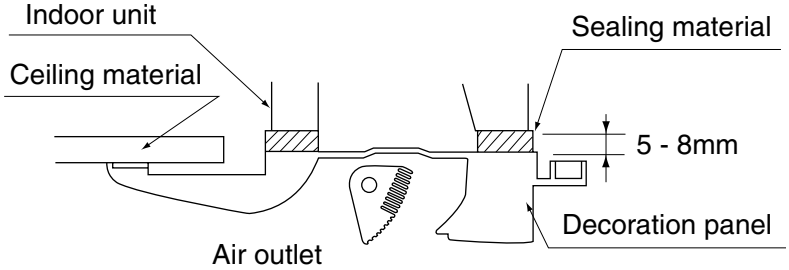


Fig. 5

5 Tighten the screws until the thickness of the sealing material between the decoration panel and the indoor unit body reduces to 5-8 mm.



C : 3PA64319-11M

[PRECAUTIONS]

- Inproper screwing of the screws may cause the troubles shown in Fig. 6 Screw properly.

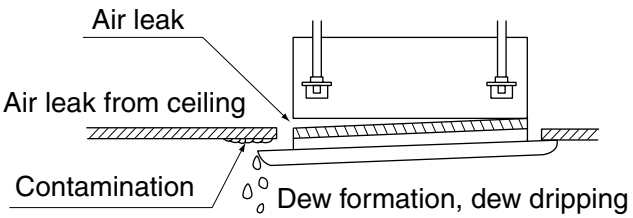


Fig. 6

- If gap is still left between the ceiling and the decoration panel after screwing the screws, readjust the indoor unit body height. **(Refer to Fig. 7)**

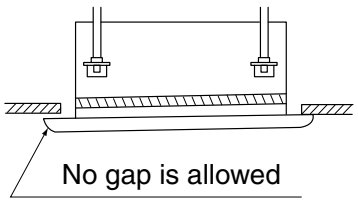
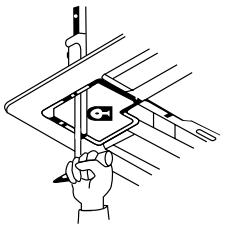


Fig. 7

Adjustment of the indoor unit body height from the holes in the corner of the decoration panel is possible if the indoor unit is kept leveled and the drain piping, etc. is unaffected.



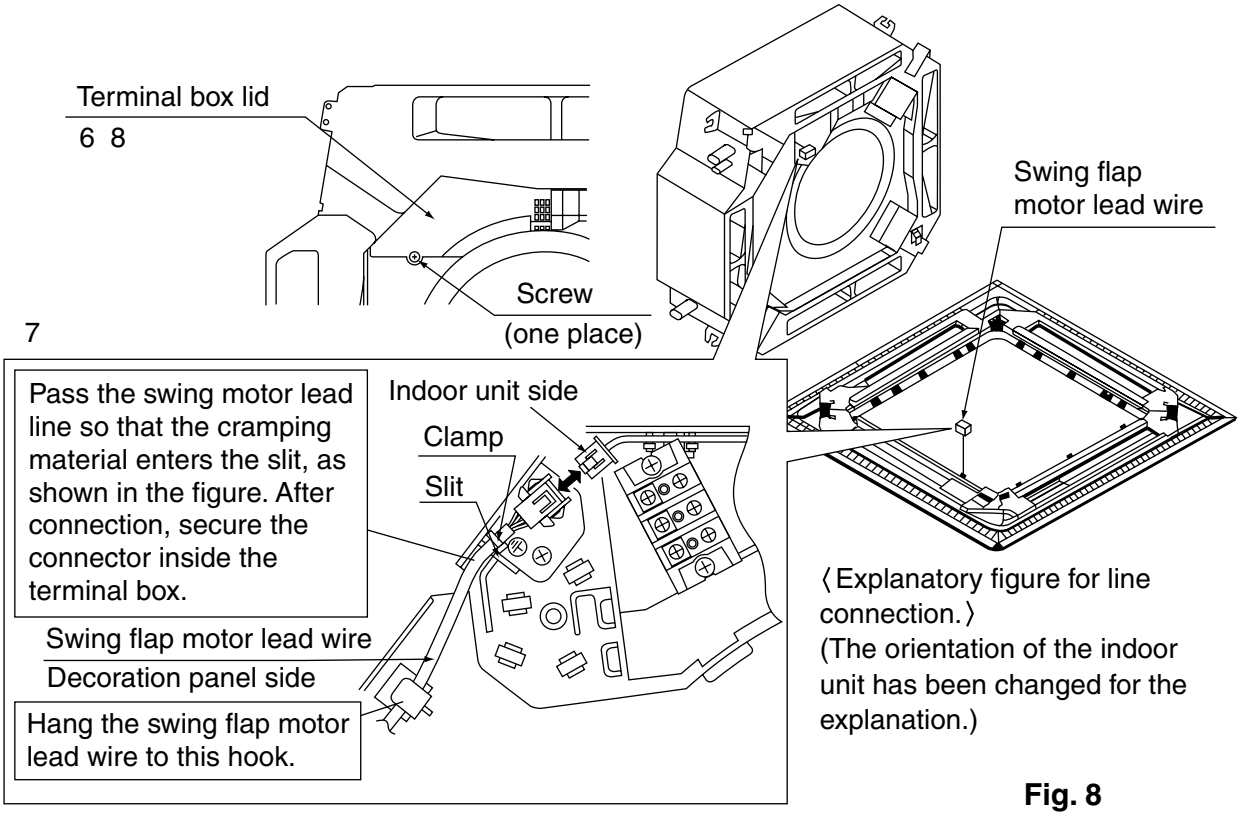
(3) Wiring of the decoration panel **(Refer to Fig. 8)**

6 Remove the terminal box lid.

7 Connect the connectors for swing flap motor lead wire installed on the decoration panel.

8 Replace the terminal box lid reversing the procedure to remove it.

Make sure that the swing flap motor lead wire is not caught between the indoor unit and the decoration panel.



〈Explanatory figure for line connection.〉
(The orientation of the indoor unit has been changed for the explanation.)

Fig. 8

C : 3PA64319-11M

4. INSTALLATION OF SUCTION GRILLE AND SERVICE COVER

(1) Install the suction grille
Install by reversing the procedure shown in “PREPARATION OF DECORATION PANEL”.
It is possible to install the suction grille in 4 directions by turning the suction grille.
Change the direction when adjusting the direction of the suction grille of multiple units or in meeting customers’ demands.

NOTE
Be careful not to get swing flap motor lead wire get caught when installing the suction grille.

(2) Install the service cover on the corner.

1 Attach the string of the service cover to the pin of the decoration panel. **(Refer to Fig. 9)**

2 Install the service cover over the decoration panel. **(Refer to Fig. 10)**

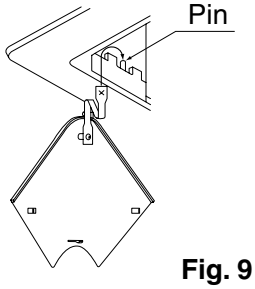


Fig. 9

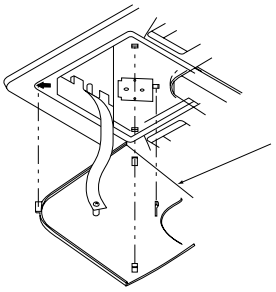


Fig. 10

C : 3PA64319-11M

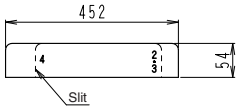
1.3 KDBH55K160F — Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet

KDBH55K160 / KDBH55K160F

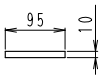


Dimensions **Unit:mm**

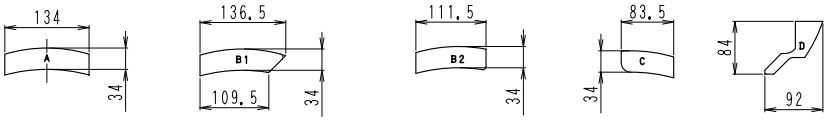
Sealing materials for long air outlets (Polyethylene foam t10): 2 pieces



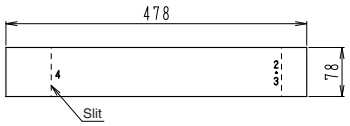
Sealing materials for horizontal blades (Polyethylene foam t10): 8 pieces



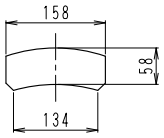
Sealing materials for air outlets at the corner (Polyethylene foam t10): 1 piece for each



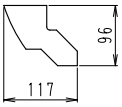
Tape for sealing materials
for long air outlets (Non-woven fabric t0.6): 2



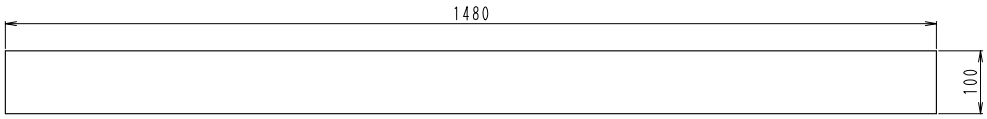
Tape for sealing materials
for air outlets at the corner (Non-woven fabric t0.6): 3



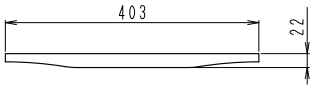
Tape for sealing materials
for air outlets at the corner (Non-woven fabric t0.6): 1



Side insulation plate (NB foam t10) : 2

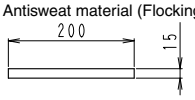


Antisweat material (Flocking tape): See right



Applicable part number	Q'ty and color
KDBH55K160F	4, grey
KDBH55K160	4 for each, Dark grey or black

Antisweat material (Flocking tape): See right



Applicable part number	Q'ty and color
KDBH55K160F	4, grey
KDBH55K160	4 for each, Dark grey or black

J : D3K05112

Installation

Precautions

- Use this manual with the installation manuals attached to the indoor unit's main body and decoration panel.
- When other separately-sold products are mounted, the 3-way blow and 2-way blow may not be selected. For details, refer to the Engineering Data or catalog.

Parts content Check the following parts.

Name	Longitudinal air outlet sealing material	Corner air outlet sealing material A	Corner air outlet sealing material B1	Corner air outlet sealing material B2	Corner air outlet sealing material C	Corner air outlet sealing material D	Longitudinal air outlet tape for fixing the sealing material	Corner air outlet tape for fixing the sealing material	Corner air outlet tape for fixing the sealing material
Number of pieces	2	1	1	1	1	1	2	3	1
Shape/Symbol	1	2 A	3 B1	4 B2	5 C	6 D	7	8	9

Name	Absorbent (Inside 1)		Absorbent (Inside 2)	Absorbent (Outside)	Absorbent (Bridge centre)	Absorbent (Bridge outside)
Number of pieces	2	1	1	2	2	2
Shape/Symbol	10 Use only classes 28 to 56 24mm×328mm	11 Use only classes 63 to 160 24mm×410mm	12 Use only classes 28 to 56 24mm×290mm	13 8mm×505mm	14	15 Use only classes 28 to 56 47mm×47mm

The sticking procedure for absorbent differs with classes 28 to 56 and with classes 63 to 160.
(Refer to ❷ Sticking of absorbent to air outlet.)

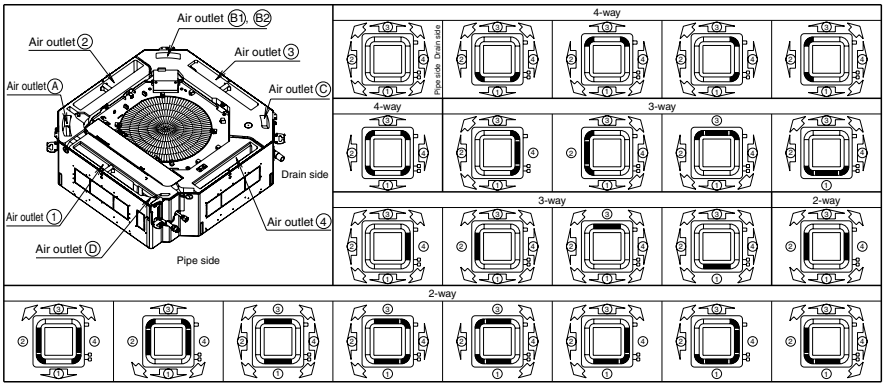
Name	Side insulator plate	Horizontal blade absorbent				Horizontal blade sealant
Number of pieces	2	With 4-blade KDBH55K160F	With 8-blade (2 colours) KDBH55K160	With 4-blade KDBH55K160F	With 8-blade (2 colours) KDBH55K160	8 pieces
Shape/Symbol	16 100mm×1480mm	17 (With KDBH55K160, two colours are available, gray and black, matching the blade colours.)		18 15mm×200mm (With KDBH55K160, two colours are available, gray and black, matching the blade colours.)		19 10mm×95mm

❶ Blow Direction Selection and Sealing Material Mounting

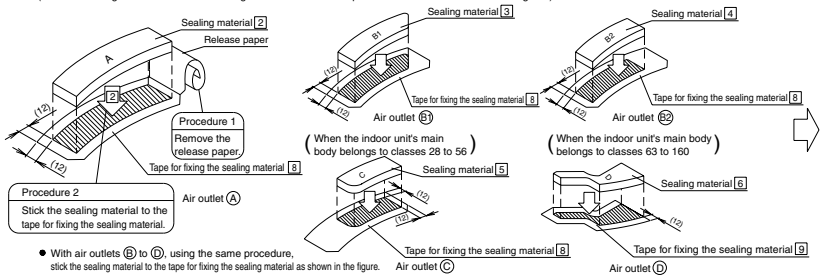
(1) Blow direction selection

- Depending on the installation location, select a blow direction from the table below. For the setting position number, refer to ❹ Field Setting.
  For the selection of installation location, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit's main body.

Precautions Blow direction patterns other than those shown in the figure below cannot be selected. (Condensation may occur.)

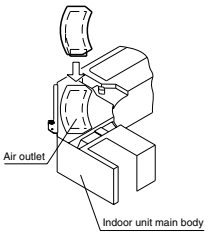


(2) Matching with the corner air outlets Ⓐ to Ⓓ that are to be blocked, stick the sealing material to the tape for fixing the sealing material.
(Stick the sealing material so that the sealing material comes to the positions shown in the schematic diagram.)



- With air outlets Ⓑ to Ⓓ, using the same procedure, stick the sealing material to the tape for fixing the sealing material as shown in the figure.

(3) Stick the sealing material that was prepared in (2) to the air outlet of indoor unit main body.



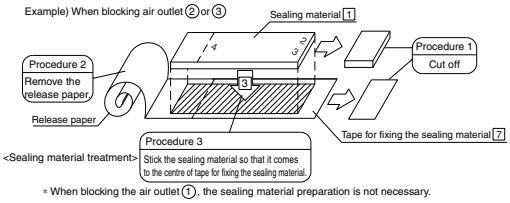
Precautions

- The sealing material has a directional property. Be sure to stick the sealing material to the tape for fixing the sealing material so that the printed number of outlet to be blocked becomes visible.
- When blocking both the air outlet ① and air outlet Ⓓ, start the sticking of sealing material with the air outlet Ⓓ.

(4) Matching the longitudinal air outlet numbered ① to ④ that are to be blocked, prepare the sealing material and tape for fixing the sealing material.

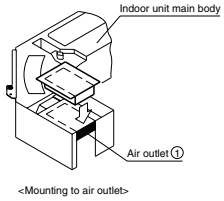
- Cut both the sealing material and tape for fixing the sealing material along the perforation (dotted line).
- Stick the sealing material to the tape for fixing the sealing material.
  (Stick so that the sealing material comes to the centre of tape for fixing the sealing material.)

Example) When blocking air outlet ② or ③



∗ When blocking the air outlet ①, the sealing material preparation is not necessary.

(5) Stick the sealing material that was prepared in (4) to the air outlet of indoor unit main body.



Precautions The sealing material has a directional property. Be sure to stick the sealing material to the tape for fixing the sealing material so that the printed number of outlet to be blocked becomes visible.

J : 1P177350A

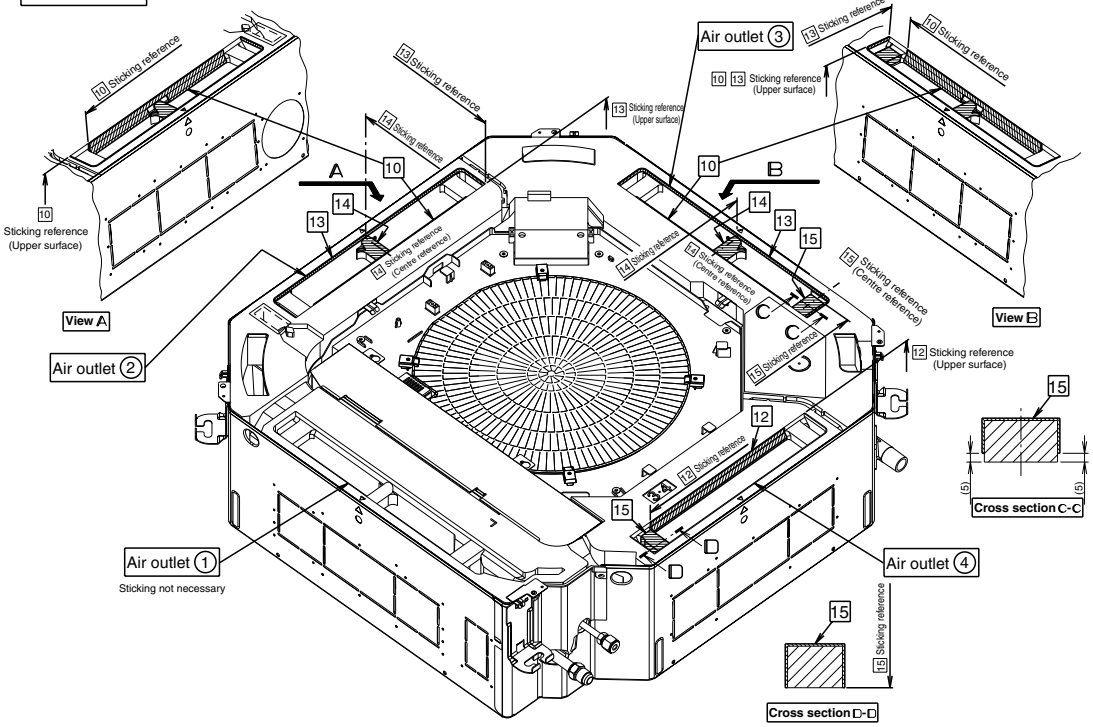
❷ Sticking of Absorbent to Air Outlet

● Stick the absorbent indicated in the table below to the air outlet that was not blocked in ❶ according to the procedure shown in the figure below.

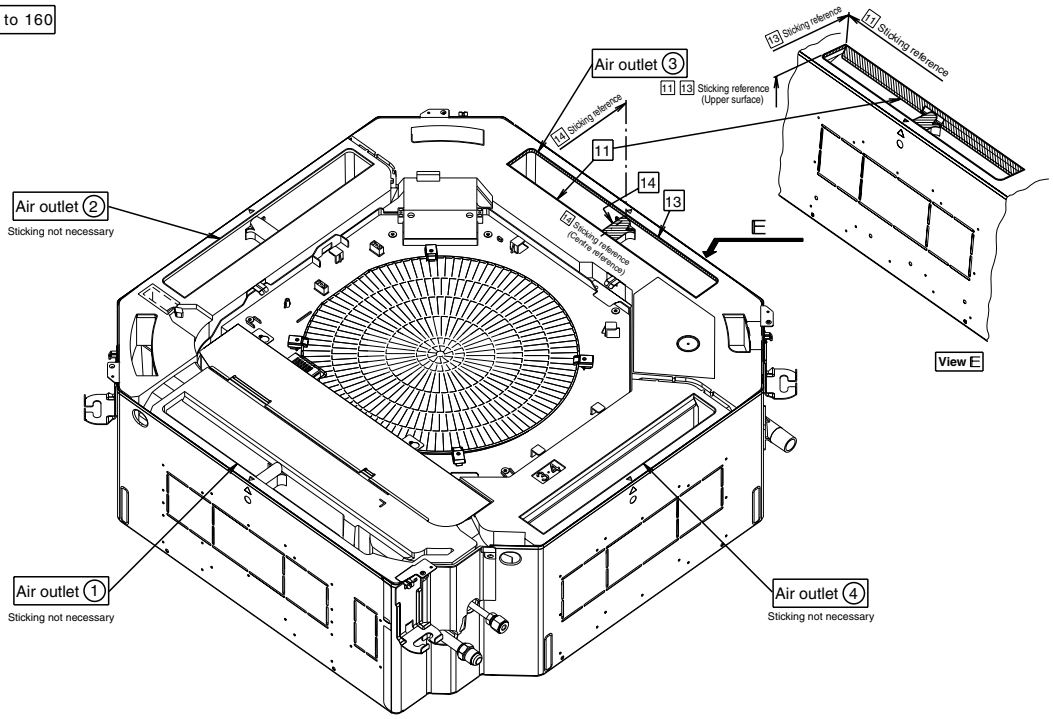
	Classes 28 to 56	Classes 63 to 160
Air outlet ①	——	——
Air outlet ②	Absorbent 10 13 14 Total 3 pieces	——
Air outlet ③	Absorbent 10 13 14 15 Total 4 pieces	Absorbent 11 13 14 Total 3 pieces
Air outlet ④	Absorbent 12 15 Total 2 pieces	——

Precautions
- If the sticking of absorbent is omitted, condensation may occur.
- To positions where the absorbent is already stuck, the sticking of absorbent is not necessary.

Classes 28 to 56



Classes 63 to 160



continued on back side

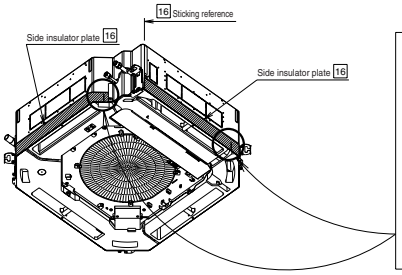
CJ : 1P177350A

3 Sticking of Insulator to Indoor Unit Main Body

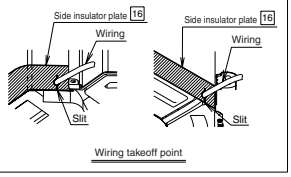
● For safety, be sure to shut off power supply before starting the insulator sticking operation, decoration panel mounting operation, and connecting of connectors for swinging.

Precautions If the sticking of insulator is omitted, condensation may occur.

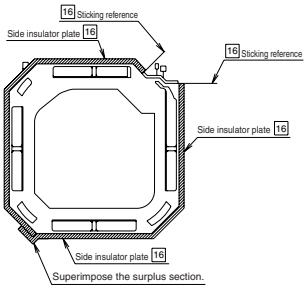
● Stick the side insulator plate 16 according to the figure below.



For a wiring takeoff point with two sections, make a slit on the side insulator plate 16 as shown in the figure below, then route the wiring.



Wiring takeoff point



Superimpose the surplus section.

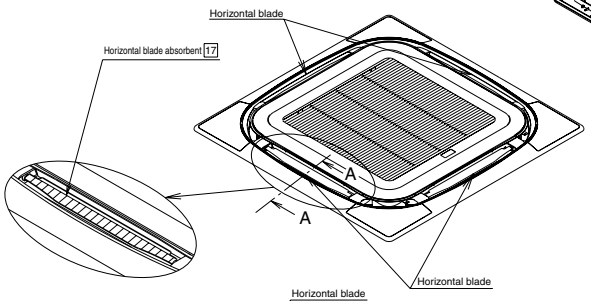
4 Sticking of Absorbent to Panel Horizontal Blade

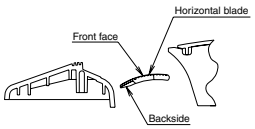
● Perform the operation on soft cloth to prevent damage to the panel.
● Perform sticking for the horizontal blades of all air outlets.
● Do not apply force to the horizontal blade. (Application of force may lead to horizontal blade swing failure.)

● According to the figure below, stick the horizontal blade absorbent 17 and 18 as well as the horizontal blade sealing pad 19 .
(With KDBH55K160, stick the horizontal blade absorbent with matching blade colour.)

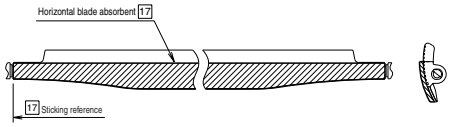
Precautions When the sticking of absorbent and sealant is omitted, condensation may occur.

① Stick the horizontal blade absorbent 17 in line with the blade shape to the front face of the horizontal blade.

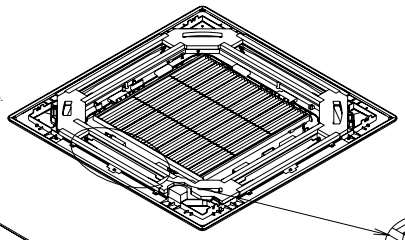


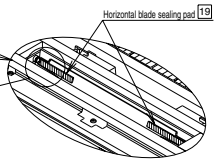


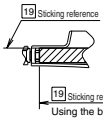
A-A cross section



② Stick the horizontal blade sealing pad 19 to the backside of the blade. (For both left and right)



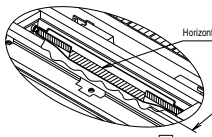


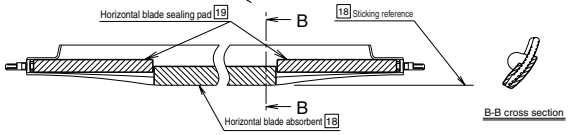


Using the base of the rib as a reference, stick without leaving any gap.



③ Stick the horizontal blade absorbent 18 in between the horizontal blade sealing pad 19.





B-B cross section

5 Field Setting

● Depending on the installation status of the indoor unit's main body, the field setting needs to be performed by remote control operation.

● Perform the setting by switching among the following three items: "Mode number", "Setting switch number", and "Setting position number".

● The setting procedure and operation method are described in "How to perform field setting" attached to the remote control.

(1) Setting by number of air outlets used
While referring to "How to perform field setting" attached to the remote control, perform the setting according to the table in the right.
Also, when the corner air outlet is blocked with 4-way blow, set the wind direction slightly downward.
(Note) When the installation height becomes higher than the standard, the setting by ceiling height in (2) becomes necessary.

(2) Setting by ceiling height
For the ceiling height, refer to the guidelines of ceiling height and number of air outlets used, then perform the setting for each air outlet used according to the table below.

(Guidelines of ceiling height and number of air outlets used)

		Number of air outlets used							
Indoor unit		Types 28 to 90				Types 112 to 160			
		All-around blow	4-way blow	3-way blow	2-way blow	All-around blow	4-way blow	3-way blow	2-way blow
Ceiling height	Standard	2.7m or less	3.1m or less	3.0m or less	3.5m or less	3.2m or less	3.4m or less	3.6m or less	4.2m or less
	High ceiling ①	3.0m or less	3.4m or less	3.3m or less	3.8m or less	3.6m or less	3.9m or less	4.0m or less	4.2m or less
	High ceiling ②	3.5m or less	4.0m or less	3.5m or less	——	4.2m or less	4.5m or less	4.2m or less	——

Values for ceiling height are provided as reference.

[Setting content] (Setting by number of air outlets used)

(Number of air outlets used)	Mode number	Setting switch number	Setting position number
3-way blow	13 (23)	1	02
2-way blow			03

[Setting content] (Setting for when corner air outlet is blocked with 4-way blow)

(Wind direction)	Mode number		Setting position number
Standard	13 (23)	4	02
Slightly downward			03

[Setting content] (Setting by ceiling height)

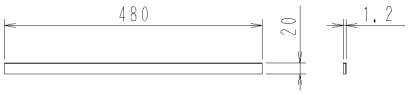
	Mode number		Setting position number
Standard	13 (23)	0	01
High ceiling ①			02
High ceiling ②			03

J : 1P191031A

1.4 KDBH55D160W — Sealing Material of Air Discharge Outlet

Dimensions **Unit: mm**

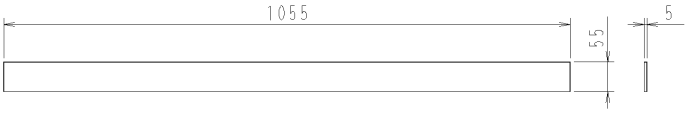
Absorbent material for horizontal blades: See right



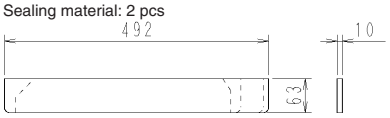
Applicable part No.	Q'ty and color
KDBH55D160W	3: white
KDBH55D160	4×3: 12 pcs Ivory, grey, beige, black

Accessory:
Installation Manual

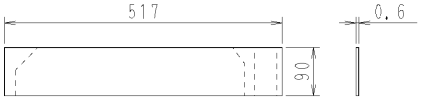
Absorbent material for bellmouse



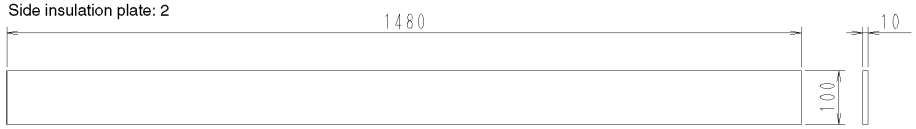
Sealing material: 2 pcs



Tape for sealing material: 2 pcs



Side insulation plate: 2



J: D3K03277

Installation

Caution

- Refer to the installation manual for both indoor unit and the decoration panel.
- When you install other optional kit, it may not be possible to select the 3-way or 2-way air discharge. (followed table)
  For details, refer to the manual for the optional kit or the catalogue.

Optional kit	4-way air discharge	3-way air discharge	2-way air discharge
Branch duct chamber	○	○	○
High efficiency filter chamber	○	× Not possible to install	× Not possible to install

Contents of Kit

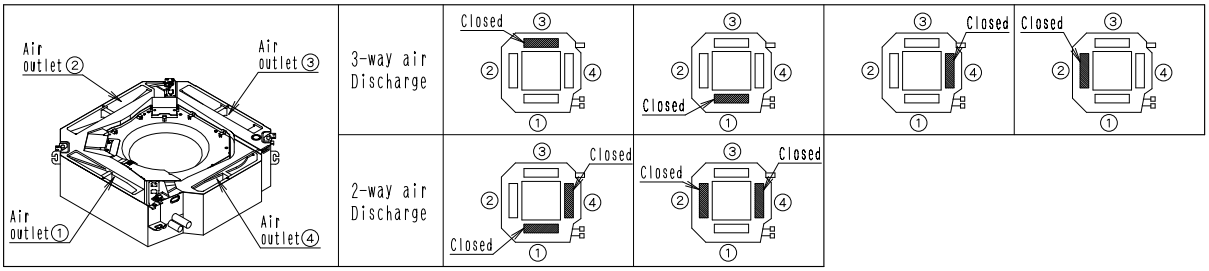
Prior to installation make sure you have the complete of parts.

Name	Sealing Material	Tape for fixing the Sealing Material	Insulation for Side Plate	Moisture Absorber for Bell-Mouth	Moisture Absorber for Swing flap	Spacer	Spacer installation screw
Quantity	2 pieces	2 pieces	2 pieces	1 pieces	3 pieces	1 pieces	1 pieces
Shape・marking	①	②	③ 100mm×1480mm	④ 55mm×1055mm	⑤	⑥	⑦ (M3x10)

❶ The direction of air discharge and the positioning of sealing material

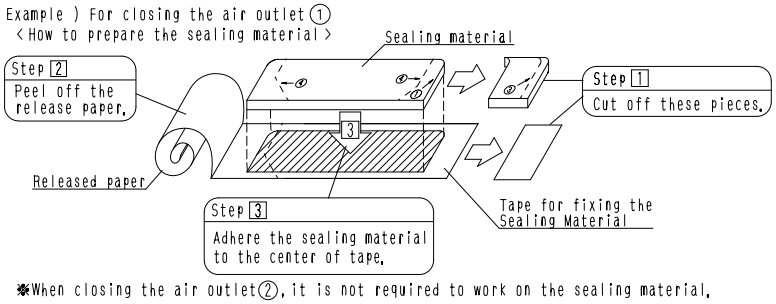
(1) Selection of the air outlet
- Select the direction of air discharge from the following table according to the location of the indoor unit.
  Refer to ❷ Setting of indoor unit) Setting of indoor unit for setting position number.
  Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for selection of installation location.

Caution Never select the direction of air discharge other than the following pattern. (You may have a condensation problem.)



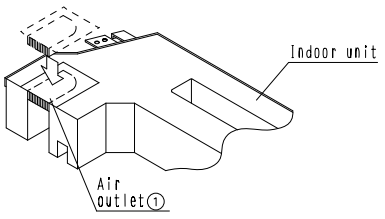
(2) Prepare the sealing material and the tape for fixing the sealing material according to the air outlet No. to be closed.
- Cut off the sealing material and the tape along the perforated lines (marked ———).
- Adhere the sealing material to tape. (Make sure that the sealing material is placed at the center of the tape.)

Example) For closing the air outlet ①
〈How to prepare the sealing material〉



※When closing the air outlet②, it is not required to work on the sealing material.

(3) Adhere the sealing material prepared according to the procedure (2) to the indoor unit air outlet.



〈Installation for air outlet〉

Caution

The sealing material has directional characteristics.
Make sure to adhere the sealing material fixing tape in the direction which the parts from ① to ④ can be seen as shown above.

1P088448A

❷ Setting for indoor unit

It is required to make a field setting from the remote controller according to how the indoor units are installed.
The direction of air discharge must also be set by the remote controller.

- The 3 different kinds of setting such as "Mode number" , "The setting switch number" and "The setting position number" must be made by the remote controller.
- Refer to the item of "Field setting" in the operation manual of the remote controller for the setting procedure.

(1) Setting according to number of use of the air discharge.
Check the setting position number corresponding to the direction of air discharge in a right table.

(Content of setting)

(Number of use of air outlets)	Mode number	The setting switch number	The setting position number
3-way air discharge	13(23)	1	02
2-way air discharge			03

Note) Refer to the table for height of the ceiling for each direction of air outlet. (The setting of the ceiling height is also required.)

(2) Setting according to height of ceiling.
As for the ceiling height, see the left table below which shows the standard of ceiling height and number of air outlets to be used.
Then, taking this standard into account, make a field setting of ceiling height from the remote controller according to the right table below.

(Standards of ceiling height and number of air outlets)

Indoor unit (FHYCP, FXF)		Number of use of air outlets					
		25～80 type			100～140 type		
		4-way air discharge	3-way air discharge	2-way air discharge	4-way air discharge	3-way air discharge	2-way air discharge
Ceiling height (m)	Standard	～2.7	～3.0	～3.5	～3.2	～3.6	～4.2
	Semi-high	2.7～3.0	3.0～3.3	3.5～3.8	3.2～3.6	3.6～4.0	～4.2
	High	3.0～3.5	3.3～3.5	——	3.6～4.2	4.0～4.2	——

(Content of setting)

Ceiling height(m)	Mode number	The setting switch number	The setting position number
Standard	13(23)	1	01
Semi-high			02
High			03

(Ceiling height is reference value)

❸ Installation of the insulation

Please turn off the power supply for safety absolutely , before you do installation of the decoration panel and affixation of insulation and connected work of swing conector.

(1) Adhere the insulations for side plate ③ in position, referring Fig. 1.
(2) Adhere the moisture absorber for bell-mouth ④ on the inner surface of the bell-mouth. See Fig. 1 Fig. 2.
(3) Adhere the moisture absorber for swing flap aligning with the upper edge of the swing flap on the air outlet. See Fig. 3.

Fig. 1

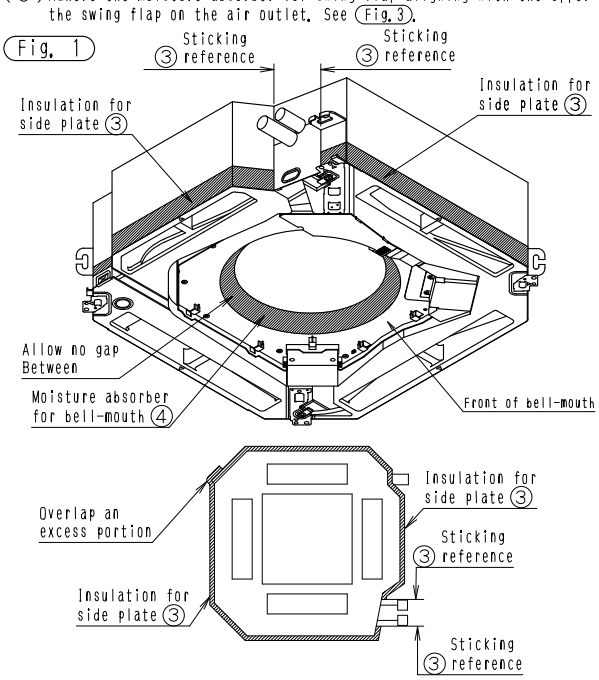


Fig. 2

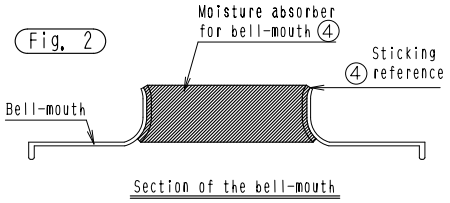
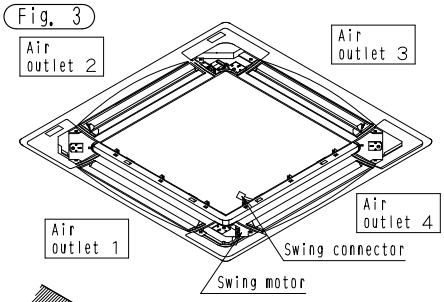
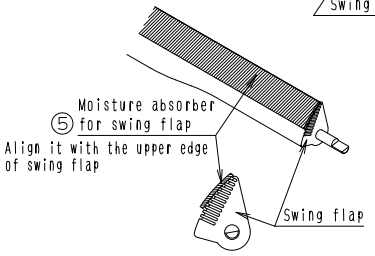


Fig. 3

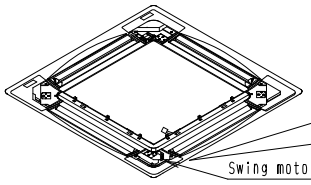


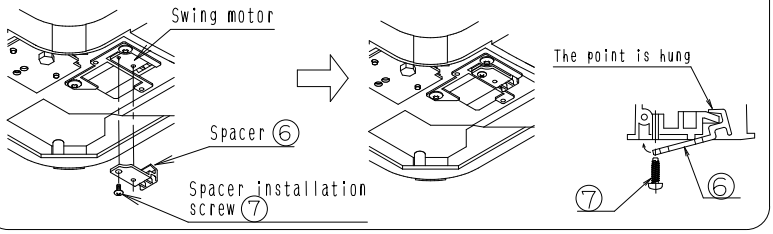


✽All air outlets which are not closed.

❹ Installation of the spacer

Please install spacer ⑥ on the swing motor with the spacer installation screw ⑦.





1P088448A

1.5 KDBP55H160FA·160WA — Panel Spacer

KDBP55H160FA

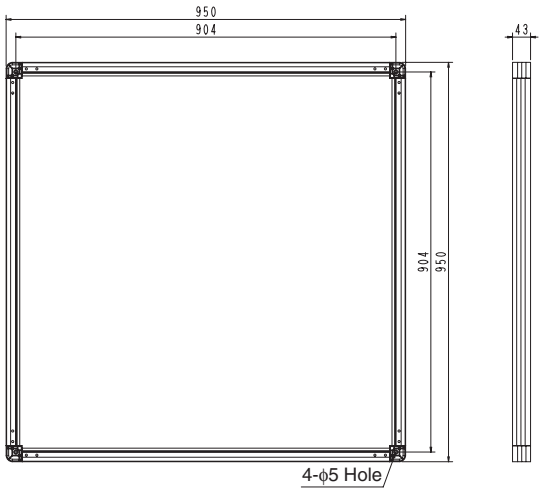


Item \ Model		KDBP55H160FA	KDBP55H160WA
Exterior		Fresh White (6.5Y9.5/0.5)	White (10Y9/0.5)
Material		Outside frame: Resin Insulation: Polyethylene foam	
Accessories		Fixture : 4 pieces Screws : 1 set Sealing material : 1 set Installation manual.	
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.2	

· Using the panel spacer in areas of the ceiling with limited space makes it possible to install the air conditioner.
· Hides the gap between the decoration panel and the ceiling.

Caution
· When the panel spacer is installed, it is not possible to have 2-way air outlet.
· Refer to the installation manual for both indoor unit and the panel spacer for its installation.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



J : D3K04626

Installation

Combination table

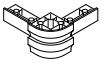
Panel spacer	KDBP55H160FA	KDBP55H160WA KDB55K160WA
Decoration panel	BYCP125K-W1	BYCP125D-W1 BYC125K-W1 BYC125KJW1 BYC125K-W1S

Caution

- When the Panel Spacer is installed, it is not possible to have 2-way air outlet.
- Refer to the installation manual for both indoor unit and the Panel spacer for its installation.

Contents of kit

Check if following parts are included with your kit.

Name	Panel spacer frame	Resin corner part	Fixing metal	Screw
Quantity	4 PCS.	4 PCS.	4 PCS.	28 PCS.
Shape・number	① 	② 	③ 	④  M4×10 Tapping screw (Class 2)

Name	Sealing material		Caution label	Others
Quantity	2 PCS.	2 PCS.	1 PC.	• This Installation Manual
Shape・number	⑤ 	⑥ 	⑦ 	

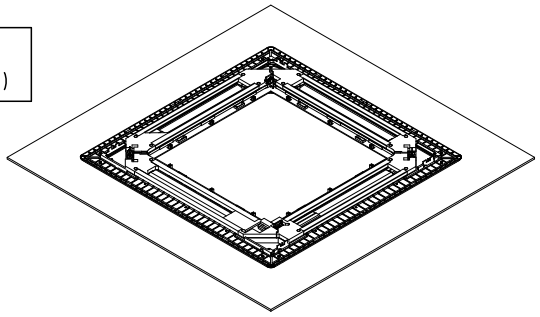
❶ Preparation of the Decoration panel

- Handle the decoration panel with care.

Never place the panel face down, or lean the panel against wall or place on the projective object.
(It causes the dent or damage of the surface of the panel or damage of swing motor.)

(1) Remove the suction grill from the decoration panel.
(Refer to the installtion manual of the decoration panel how to remove.)

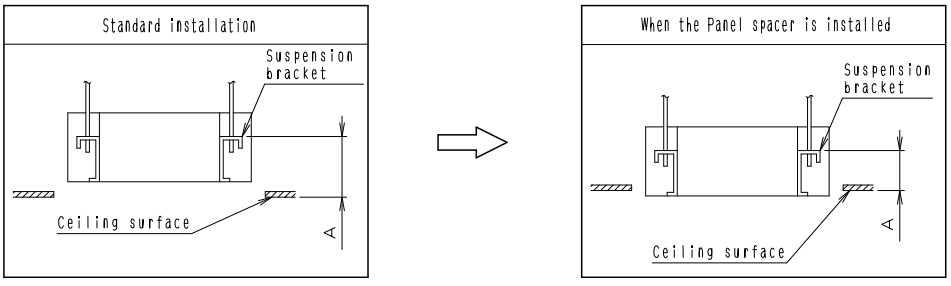
(2) Place the panel face down on the corrugated board or the vinyl sheet to protect the surface of the panel.



❷ Installation of the indoor unit

Adjust the height of the indoor unit.

Be sure the piping will not contact with the ceiling joist etc, after adjusting the height.



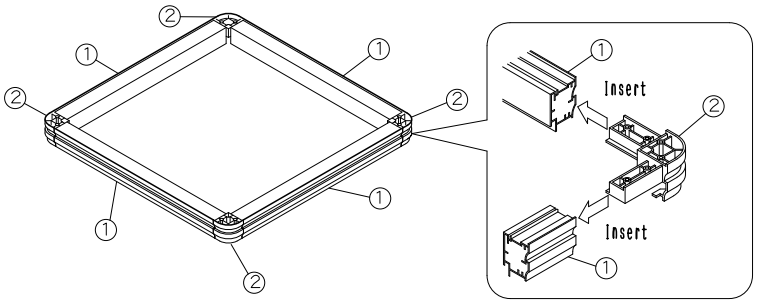
Decoration panel	A(mm)
BYCP125D-W1 BYC125K-W1 BYC125KJW1 BYC125K-W1S	145~150
BYCP125K-W1	125~130

Decoration panel	A(mm)
BYCP125D-W1 BYC125K-W1 BYC125KJW1 BYC125K-W1S	105~110
BYCP125K-W1	85~90

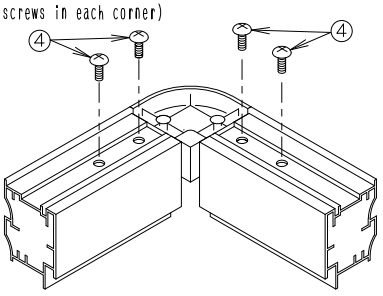
C : 1P136564E

❸Assembly of panel spacer

(1)Assemble the panel spacer frame ① and the plastic corner joint ② temporarily.



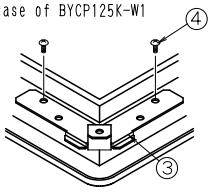
(2)Fix with the screws ④ from the top.
(4 screws in each corner)



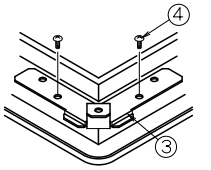
❹ Fixing to the Decoration panel

(1)Set the fixing metal ③ on each corner with screws ④.
(Screw positions change with decoration panels, as shown in the following figure.)

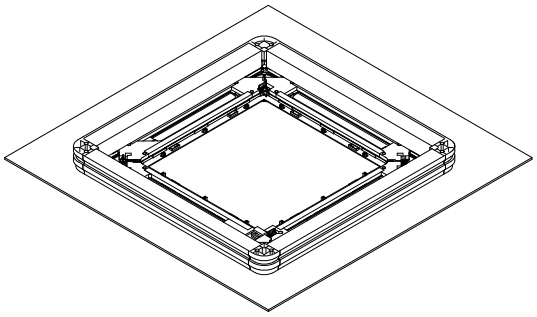
●In the case of BYCP125K-W1



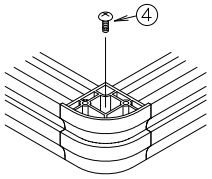
●In the cases of other than the above.



(2)Place the panel spacer assembled in item ③Assembly of panel spacer of the above on the outer frame of the Decoration panel.

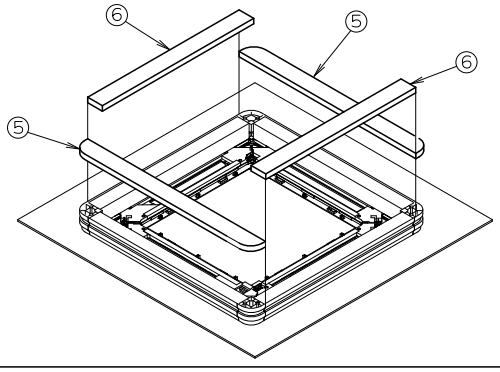


(3)Fix the panel spacer to the fixing metal ③ with screws ④(4 portions).



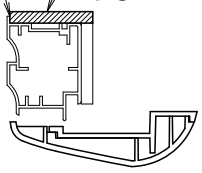
❺Adhesion of the sealing material

Adhere the sealing material ⑤ ⑥ on the upper face of the panel spacer in the order of ⑤ and ⑥.



Sticking reference
(Adhere it along the inner rib.)

Sealing material
⑤⑥

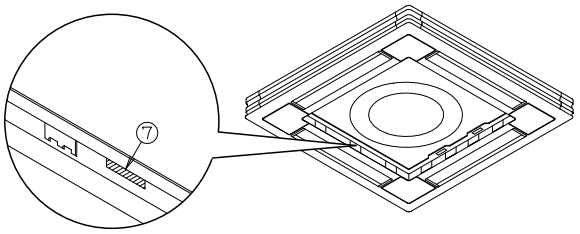


❻Installation of the Decoration panel

(1) install the decoration panel to the indoor unit according to the installation manual of decoration panel.

The panel spacer is not firmly fixed to the decoration panel, so that never hold the panel spacer directly or lean the decoration panel extremely.

(2)After installation of the Decoration panel, adhere the caution sticker ⑦ next to the name plate of the indoor unit as shown on the right.



1P136564E

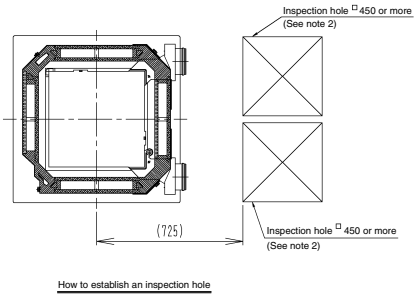
1.6 KDDP55B160(K) — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type)

KDDP55K160 (without T-shape, without Fan)

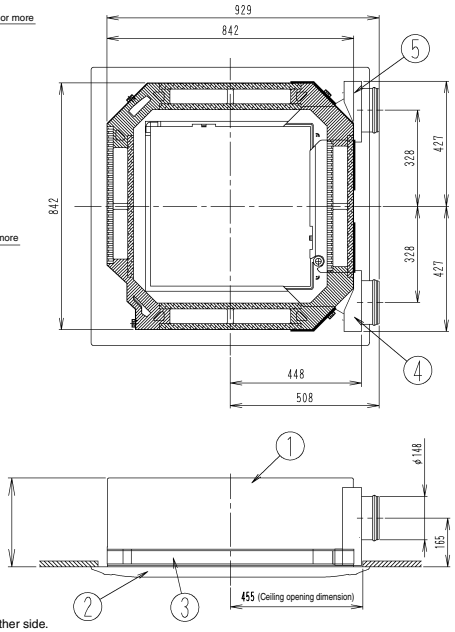


Item	Model	KDDP55B160
Fresh air intake method		Fresh air intake by air conditioning fan
Diameter of connection duct		ϕ150
Mass (Weight)	kg	4.5

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



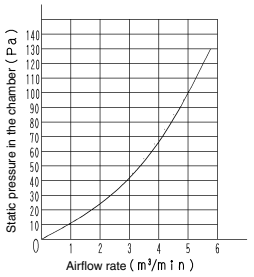
How to establish an inspection hole



Number	Name	Description
1	Indoor unit main body	
2	Decoration panel	
3	Suction chamber	
4	Connecting port chamber (right)	
5	Connecting port chamber (left)	

Accessories
- Screws (M5×12) : 4 pieces
- Sealing materials for air outlets at the corner
- Tape for fixing sealing materials for air outlets at the corner
- Installation manual

Resistance in the passage inside the chamber



Note)
1. Maximum length of the duct is 4 meters.
2. When installing this kit, an inspection hole is required (in order to maintain this kit). Establish an inspection holes on either side.
3. This kit is field assembly.
4. Install the hanging fixing for the T joint. Otherwise the load from T-shape pipe assembly, etc., could create a gap between the indoor unit and suction chamber.
5. When mounting the duct fan, be sure to use the wiring modification adaptor to interlock with the indoor unit fan.
6. With the intake air volume, 10% or less of the "H" wind volume of the indoor unit is recommended.
   Excessive intake air volume may increase the operation sound level or affect the performance of the suction air temperature detection in the indoor unit.

	Indoor unit	A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1	FCQ71KVEA FXFQ25-80PVE	306
	FCQ100-140KVE FXFQ100-125PVE	348

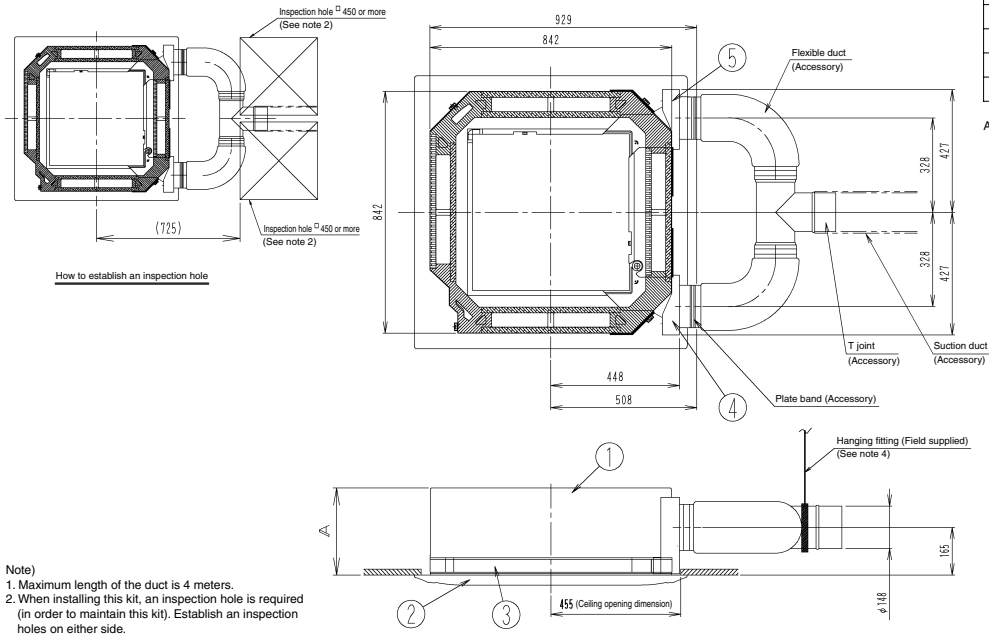
Mountable Indoor unit models	
SkyAir	FCQ71-140KVEA
VRV	FXFQ25-125PVE

JC : D3K07959

KDDP55B160K (with T-shape, without Fan)

Item	Model	KDDP55B160K
Fresh air intake method		Fresh air intake by air conditioning fan
Diameter of connection duct		ϕ150
Mass (Weight)	kg	6.5

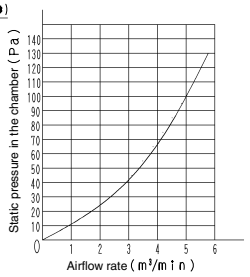
Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Number	Name	Description
1	Indoor unit main body	
2	Decoration panel	
3	Suction chamber	
4	Connecting port chamber (right)	
5	Connecting port chamber (left)	

Accessories
- Screws (M5×12) : 4 pieces
- Sealing materials for air outlets at the corner
- Tape for fixing sealing materials for air outlets at the corner
- Installation manual

Resistance in the passage inside the chamber (Note 7)



Note)
1. Maximum length of the duct is 4 meters.
2. When installing this kit, an inspection hole is required (in order to maintain this kit). Establish an inspection holes on either side.
3. This kit is field assembly.
4. Install the hanging fixing for the T joint. Otherwise the load from T-shape pipe assembly, etc., could create a gap between the indoor unit and suction chamber.
5. When mounting the duct fan, be sure to use the wiring modification adaptor to interlock with the indoor unit fan.
6. With the intake wind volume, 10% or less of the "H" wind volume of the indoor unit is recommended.
7. This graph shows values from the inlet of the T joint through that of the indoor unit when KDDP55B160K (with a T joint) is connected.

	Indoor unit	A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1	FCQ71KVEA FXFQ25-80PVE	306
	FCQ100-140KVE FXFQ100-125PVE	348

Mountable Indoor unit models	
SkyAir	FCQ71-140KVEA
VRV	FXFQ25-125PVE

JC : D3K07961

Installation

⚠Caution After thoroughly reading these "Safety precautions", properly perform the installation.

- For the installation parts, accessory parts and specified components must always be used. If the specified components are not used, the kit may fall or an air leak may occur.
- After the completion of installation, perform a test run to check that no abnormality is present.

Combination table

Model name	Installable indoor unit / Panel model name	
KDDP55B160 (K)	SkyAir	FCQ71-140KVEA
	VRV	FXFQ25-125PVE
	Panel	BYCP125K-W1

Recommendations

- This product can be mounted to a ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner <Round flow>.
- According to the table to the left, check the model name of the indoor unit, then mount the kit.
- At the time of mounting, also refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and to the one for the decoration panel.
- When mounting the duct fan, be sure to use the wiring modification adaptor [KRP1C63] to interlock with the indoor unit fan.
  For the intake wind volume, 10% or less of the indoor unit wind volume of "H" is recommended.
  When the intake wind volume becomes excessive, operation noise may become louder or the intake temperature detection of the indoor unit may be affected.
- Be sure to mount the supplied sensor assembly.
  <For the duct used for field connection, those in the table below are recommended.>

Part name	Part number
Flexible duct (Nominal diameter ϕ150)	K-FDS151D (1m) K-FDS152D (2m) K-FDS153D (3m) K-FDS154D (4m)

Name	⑭ Partition plate
Shape	
Number of pieces KDDP55K160	1
Number of pieces KDDP55K160K	1

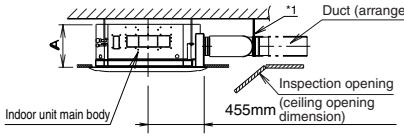
Parts content Check the following parts. (Shaded part ⋯⋯ is included in a different package.)

Name		① Suction chamber	② Connecting chamber (left)	③ Connecting chamber (right)	④ Corner air outlet sealing material	⑤ Corner air outlet tape for fixing the sealing material	⑥ Mounting screw	⑦ Sensor assembly	⑧ Clamp	⑨ Mounting screw (for sensor)	⑩ T joint	⑪ Flexible duct	⑫ Sealing pad	⑬ Installation manual
Shape							 M5 × 12							 (this document)
Number of pieces	KDDP55B160	1	1	1	2	2	4	1	2	1	—	—	—	1
	KDDP55B160K	1	1	1	2	2	4	1	2	1	1	2	4	1

④, ⑦ and ⑭ are only used in combination with round flow type.

❶ Selection of Installation Location and Establishment of Inspection Opening

(1) Refer to the figure below to select the installation location.

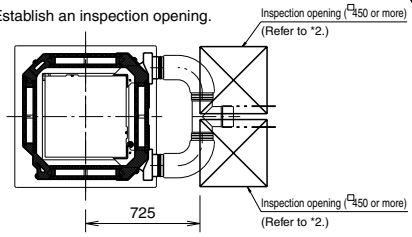


*1. Install the suspension bracket for the T joint section.
Because of the load from T joint, etc., a gap may be created in between the indoor unit and suction chamber.

	Indoor unit	A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1	FCQ71KVEA FXFQ25-80PVE	306
	FCQ100-140KVE FXFQ100-125PVE	348

*2. Establish an inspection opening (□450 or more).
Establish an inspection opening to either side.

(2) Establish an inspection opening.



❷ Mounting of Sensor Assemblies and Suction Chamber

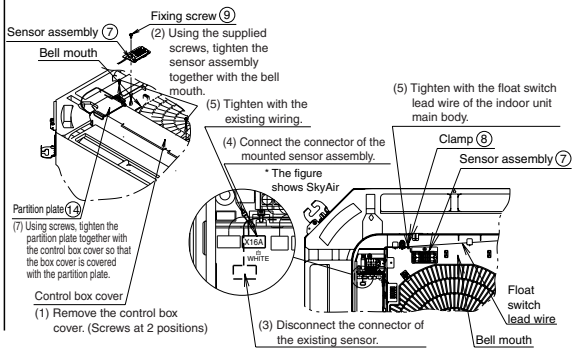
* When the indoor unit main body is already installed, perform the following operations, complying with precautions below.

- Shut off power supply before performing operation.
- Remove the decoration panel from the indoor unit main body.
  (For details, refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.)

Round flow

<Mounting of sensor assembly>

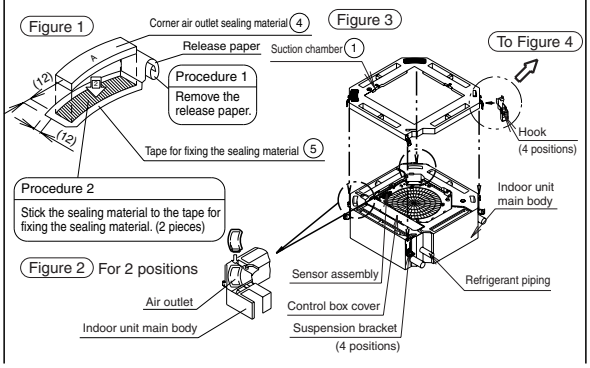
(1) According to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit main body, remove the cover of the control box.
(2) Using the supplied screws, tighten the sensor assembly together with the bell mouth to the indoor unit main body.
(Mount without pinching the float switch lead wire.)
(3) Remove the connector (X16A) of the existing sensor from the PC board of the indoor unit main body.
(4) Connect the lead wire of the mounted sensor assembly to the connector (X16A) on the PC board of the indoor unit main body as shown in the figure below.
(5) As shown in the figure below, fix the lead wire using the supplied clamp.
(6) After all the wiring is completed, fit the control box cover according to the installation manual attached to the main body.
(7) Making sure that the control box cover is covered with the partition plate ⑭, tighten these together using the screws on the cover. (Hook the partition plate tab onto the cover.)



<Mounting of suction chamber>

* Figure shows an example where the indoor unit main body is newly installed.
(1) Stick the corner air outlet tape for fixing the sealing material ⑤ to the corner air outlet sealing material ④, then stick it to the air outlet of the indoor unit main body. (2 positions) (Figure 1) (Figure 2)
(2) Mount the suction chamber ① to the indoor unit main body using the hook (4 positions). (Figure 3) to (Figure 5)
For the fixing method of the hook, refer to (Figure 4), then mount at 4 positions.

* Mount so that the contours of the indoor unit main body and suction chamber match. (Figure 4) (Figure 6)



JC : 3K022728

Figure 4 Mounting status

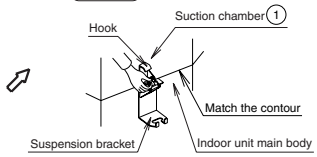


Figure 5 Status after mounting

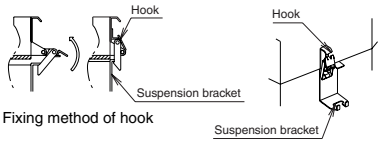
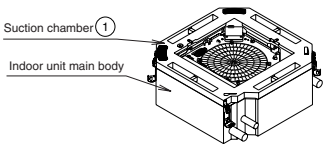


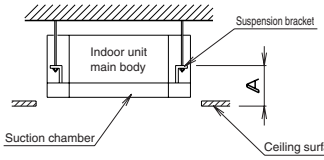
Figure 6 Drawing of mounting at completion



JC: 3K022728

3 Installation of Indoor Unit Main Body and Suction Chamber

- Install the indoor unit main body and suction chamber.
  At the time of installation, perform the engineering work according to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit main body. (For the installation height, refer to the figure to the right.)
- When mounting the suction chamber to the existing indoor unit main body, change the installation height of the indoor unit main body to height A in the figure to the right.



	A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1	185

4 Mounting of Connecting Chamber and Connection of Flexible Duct

Mount the connecting chamber. (1 piece each for left and right, a total of 2 pieces) Figure 7
(1) Press the square hole area of the connecting chamber 2 (3) into the hook section (tab) of the suction chamber 1. (2 positions)
(2) Using the supplied screws 6, fix the connecting chamber. (2 positions)

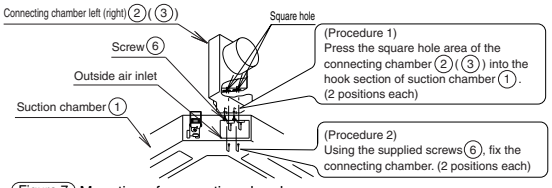
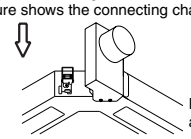
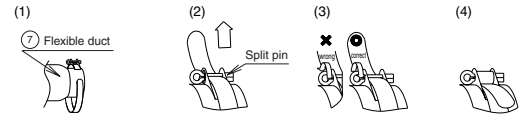


Figure 7 Mounting of connecting chamber
(This figure shows the connecting chamber (left) 2.)



<How to Tight Sealing Pad>



(1) Wrap the sealing pad to the position to be tightened.
(2) Insert the tip of the band through the gap of the split pin, then lightly tighten by hand.
(3) Using a standard tool (driver, pliers, etc.), turn the split pin to the direction shown in the figure to tighten the band.
(4) This completes the mounting.

Precautions
Because the split pin has a structure to prevent counter rotation, be careful with the turning direction. (When a counter rotation is forced, the ratchet will be damaged, and the tightening force will be weakened.)

In case of KDDP55B160K

(3) Connect the connecting chamber and T joint. Figure 8

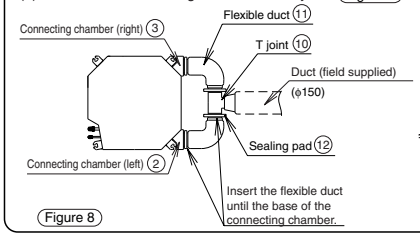
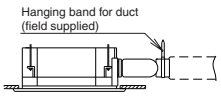
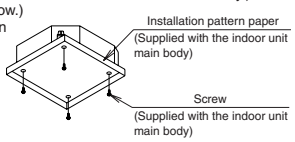


Figure 8



To prevent applying weight to the connecting chamber, hang the T joint using the hanging band for the duct.

(4) Mount the supplied installation pattern paper to the indoor unit by using screws to cure the indoor unit.
(Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit main body.)
(Refer to the figure below.)
(Mounting of installation pattern paper)

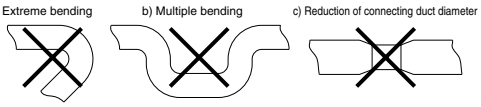


- Complete all the refrigerant and drain piping works for the indoor unit main body.

5 Duct Connection <<Duct: Nominal diameter ϕ150>>

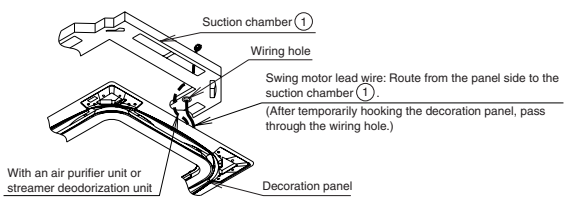
(1) Connect the duct to the duct connection area.
(2) Wrap the connection area with vinyl tape, etc., (arrangement at site) to prevent an air leak.

Precautions
- For the duct, be sure to apply the insulation treatment to prevent condensation.
- Do not perform duct manipulations described in the figure to the right.
- Beware that, in accordance with the local law, there may be cases where the use of a nonflammable duct is compulsory.
- When a duct goes through fire protection areas including a fire proof structure, beware that, in accordance with the local law, it may be required to establish a damper or to build a structure that is not detrimental to fire protection.
- When penetrating a wooden construction wall with a metal duct, apply electrical insulation to the duct and wall.
- Mount the outside duct so that it has a downslope toward the outside, and prevent rainwater from leaking in with a hood, etc. (Gradient of 1/100 to 1/50)
- To prevent the intrusion of small animals, such as birds, and bugs, be sure to attach a netting to sections open to outside air.
- To protect the heat exchanger of the indoor unit, be sure to attach an air filter to sections open to outside air.

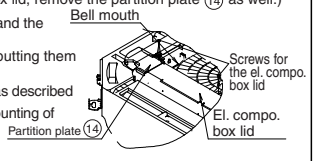


6 Mounting of Decoration Panel and Suction Chamber

- After temporarily hooking the decoration panel, pass the swing motor lead wire, which is coming out from the decoration panel, through the wiring hole of the suction chamber.
  <Round flow> 1 swing motor lead wire
  However, when used in combination with the air purifier unit or streamer deodorization unit, perform wiring without routing through the wiring hole.
- Mount the decoration panel according to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel. (When you remove the el. compo. box lid, remove the partition plate 14 as well.)



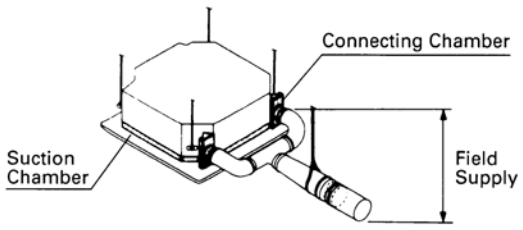
- After wiring leads, put the partition plate 14 and the el. compo. box lid in position.
  Be careful not to pull in the lead wire when putting them in position.
  Install the sensor assembly in the same way as described in 2 Mounting of Sensor…Chamber <Mounting of sensor assembly> (7).



With wireless unit
- For details on connection method, refer to the installation manual attached to the wireless remote control kit (sold separately).

JC : 3K022964

KDDP55B160 (without T joint, without fan)

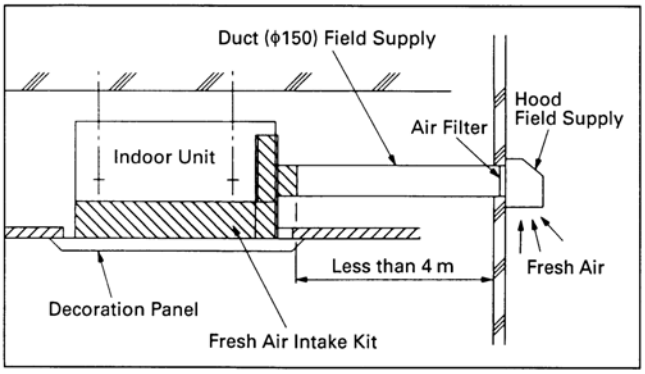


Note:
1. As the principle, the duct fan is unnecessary for 4 meters or less. When needing enough fresh air taking-in, use Kit with Duct Fan of optional, which is shown in the following.
2. The other part of Fresh air intake kit (Duct, T Joint, Air Filter, Hood, etc) is field supplied.
3. In wireless remote controller use, Flexible Duct in the right can not connect.

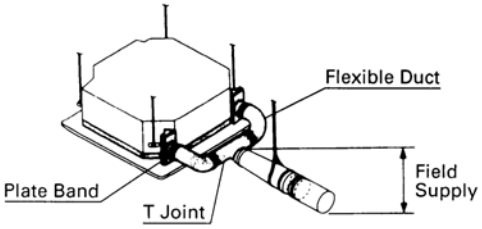
• **Specifications**

Item \ Kit Name	KDDP55B160
Method of Fresh Air Intake	Fresh Air Intake by The Indoor Unit Fan
Size of Connecting Duct	ϕ150
Applicable Models	FCQ71-140KVEA FXFQ25-125PVE

• **Example of Installation**

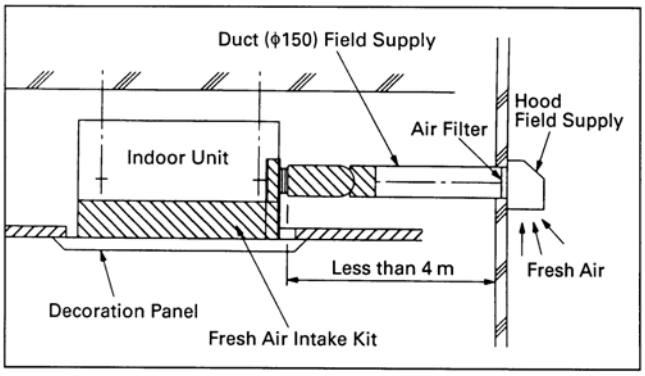


KDDP55B160K (with T joint, without fan)



Note:
1. As the principle, the duct fan is unnecessary for 4 meters or less. When needing enough fresh air taking-in, use Kit with Duct Fan of optional, which is shown in the following.
2. The other part of Fresh air intake kit (Duct, T Joint, Air Filter, Hood, etc) is field supplied.
3. It isn't possible to do simultaneous use with wireless remote controller.

• **Example of Installation**



• **Specifications**

Item \ Kit Name	KDDP55B160K
Method of Fresh Air Intake	Fresh Air Intake by The Indoor Unit Fan
Size of Connecting Duct	ϕ150
Applicable Models	FCQ71-140KVEA FXFQ25-125PVE

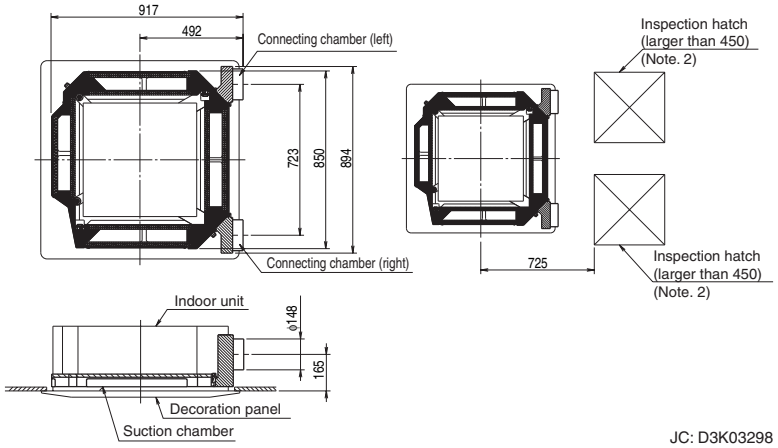
1.7 KDD55DA160(K) — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Chamber Type)

KDD55DA160 (without T-shape, without Fan)



Caution
1. An inspection batch is required when inserting this kit (Required for maintenance of the kit.)
2. Mount one or the other of the inspection hatch.
3. This should be assembled locally.
4. If there is any obstacle to make air intake from both sides hard, air intake from one side will be enabled.
5. If the light receiver unit for the remote controller is mounted to the main unit, air should be taken in from the right side.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



JC: D3K03298

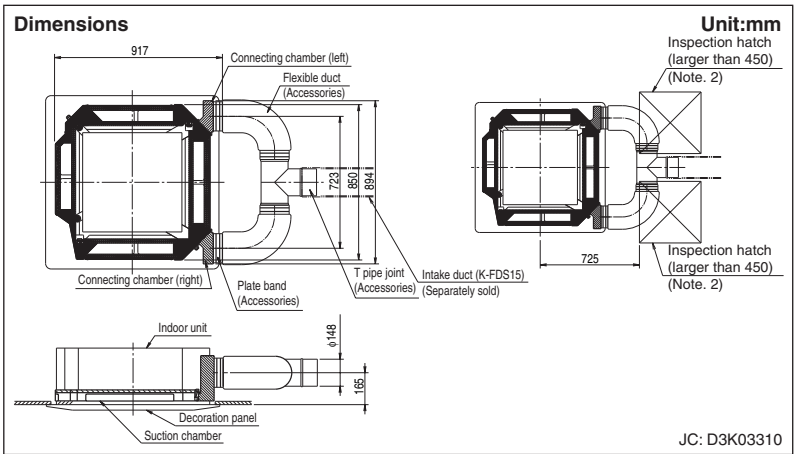
Item \ Model		KDDP55DA160
Fresh air intake method		Fresh air intake by air conditioning fan.
Diameter of connection duct		ϕ150
Accessories		T pipe joint: 1. Flexible duct: 2. Plate bands: 4. Mounting screws (M4×12) : 4. Installation manual.
Mass (Weight)	kg	4.5

KDD55DA160K (with T-shape, without Fan)



Caution
1. Maximum length of the duct is 4 m.
2. An inspection hatch is required when inserting this kit. (Required for maintenance of the kit.)
3. Mount one or the other of the inspection hatch.
4. This should be assembled locally.
5. This kit is designed for intake from both sides. If one side is blocked requiring intake from only one side, use KDD55DA160.
6. This kit cannot be used when the receiver for the wireless remote control is attached as it blocks intake from one side.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



JC: D3K03310

Item \ Model		KDDP55DA160K
Fresh air intake method		Fresh air intake by air conditioning fan.
Diameter of connection duct		ϕ150
Accessories		T pipe joint: 1. Flexible duct: 2. Plate bands: 4. Mounting screws (M4×12) : 4. Installation manual.
Mass (Weight)	kg	6.5

Installation

⚠Caution Before starting the installation work, carefully read the following safety precautions and observe them to ensure safety during work.

- Make sure to use the attached or specified components to install the products. Otherwise, it may cause air leak or the product may fall.
- After installation, check whether there is no abnormality during the trial operation.

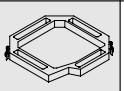
REMARKS

- This kit can be installed to the Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type Air Conditioner<Multi-flow type>.
- Before installation, make sure the indoor unit number.
- Refer to the installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

Combination table

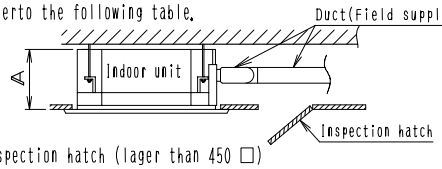
Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible	
KDDP55D160 KDD55DA160 KDDP55D160K KDD55DA160K	SPLIT	FHYCP50·60·71·100·125DVE FHYCP71·100·125·140DVL
	VRV	FXF25·32·40·50·63·80·100·125LVE FXF25·32·40·50·63·80·100·125LVEC FXFQ25·32·40·50·63·80·100·125MVE

Components Check if the following parts are included with your kit.
Shaded part ▭ is separately packed.

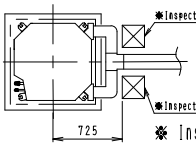
Name		①Suction Chamber	②Connecting Chamber (Right)	③Connecting Chamber (Left)	④Screw	⑤Closing Material	⑥T Joint	⑦Flexible Duct	⑧Clamp	⑨Installation Manual
Shape					 M4×12					
Q'ty	KDDP55D160 KDD55DA160	1 PC.	1 PC.	1 PC.	4 PCS.	1 PC.	——	——	——	1 PC.
	KDDP55D160K KDD55DA160K	1 PC.	1 PC.	1 PC.	4 PCS.	——	1 PC.	2 PCS.	4 PCS.	1 PC.

❶ Selection of Location and Access Door

1. Referto the following table.



2. Inspection hatch (lager than 450 □)



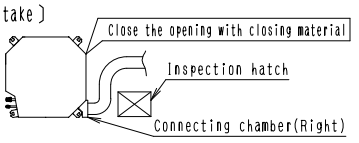
Indoor unit	A
25~80	306
100~140	348

※ Install either one of hatches

In case of KDDP55D160

- When the intake from both sides can not be obtained due to an obstacle, one side intake is acceptable. In this case, make sure to close the opening with the closing material ⑤.
- In case of one side intake, the noise will be larger than intake from both sides.

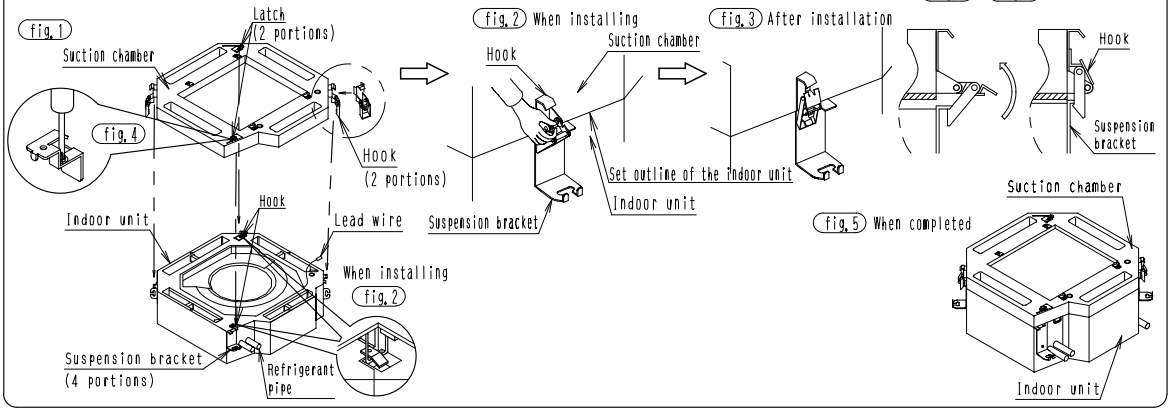
(Example of one side intake)



※When installing the wireless receiver kit on the indoor unit, the duct must be led from right side as shwn. In this case, use KDDP55D160 or KDD55DA160.

❷ Installation of the Suction chamber

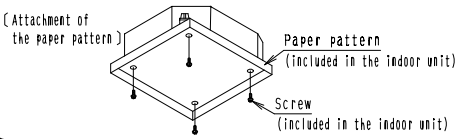
1. Remove the decoration panel. (This is not required for the new installtion)
   - Remove the decoration panel in the reverse step when the panel is installed. (Refer to the installation manual of the decoration panel for the detais.)
2. Temporarily install the suction chamber to the indoor unit by hanging the lutch on the opposite side of the suction chamber to the hook of the indoor unit body. (2 portions)
   Temporarily hang the remaining 2 hooks of the suction chamber to the hooks on the sides of the indoor unit. (fig. 1) ~ (fig. 3)
   (When the indoor unit is already installed, hang the hook to the suspennsion bracket temporarily and fix the hook.)
   ※Installation set outline of the indoor unit (fig. 2)
3. Tighten 2hexahead screws located beneath the lutches until the thickness of the sealing material of chamber reduces to 5~8mm. (fig. 4) (fig. 5)

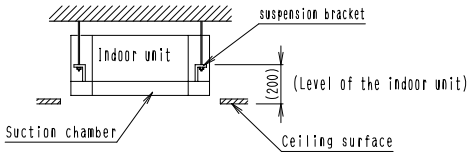


3K011144A

❸ Installation of the Indoor Unit and the Suction Chamber

- Install the indoor unit and the suction chamber.
  Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit.
  (For the height of the unit, refer to the drawing on the right.)
- Be complete installated refrigerant piping, and drain piping.
- Attach the paper pattern for installation to the indoor unit with screws to protect the indoor unit from dirt. [See below]
  (When the indoor unit is newly installed)
  (See below)
- In case of attaching the chamber after installed indoor unit.
  For the height of the unit, change the height shown on the right drawing.





❹ Installation of Connecting duct

1. Install the Connecting chamber(right & left)in accordance with the procedure shown in fig.5.

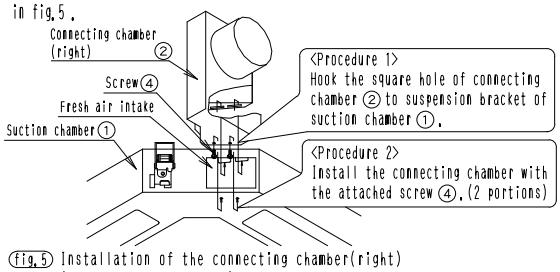
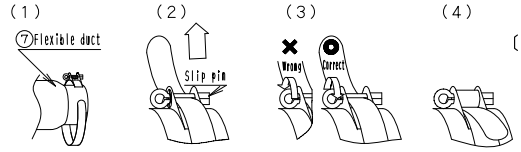


fig.5 Installation of the connecting chamber(right)
(Same as the left side)

<How to tighten the clamp>



(1)Wrap the clamp around the duct.
(2)Install the edge of clamp between the sit of pin. Tighten the clamp by hand.
(3)Make sure the tightening direction and tighten the clamp with standard tools (ex. Screwdriver or pliers) as shown.
(4)Completed.

Caution
Do not turn the slit pin reversely.
If turned reversely, ratchet part many break down.

In case of KDDP55D160K

2. Connect the T Joint and Connecting chamber. fig.6

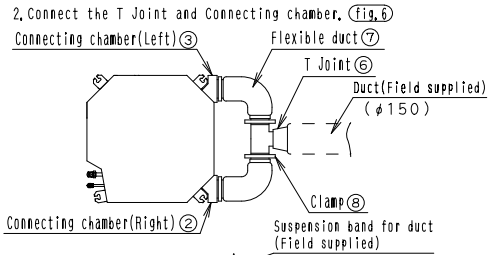


fig.6

Hang the T Joint with suspension band for duct to reduce the weight of the duct to the chamber.

(Installation of closing material in case of one side intake) (for KDDP55D160 or KDD55DA160)

- Install the closing material in accordance with the following procedures. fig.7
  Closing material can be used either right or left side opening.

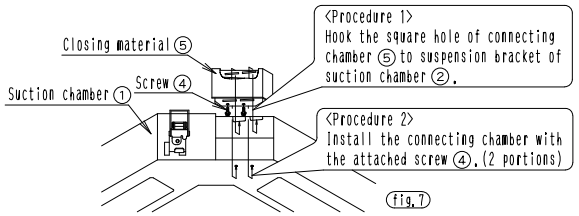
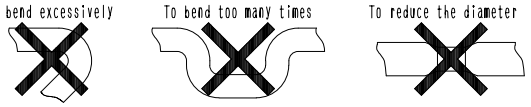


fig.7

❺ Duct connection 《Duct:diameter φ150》

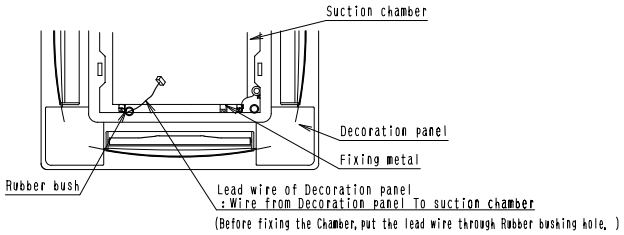
1) Attach the duct to the outside of the Branch duct chamber.
   - Wrap the duct tape(Field supplied)around the connection to prenent air leak.
   - Insulate the duct to prevent condensate.
2) Do not perform the following duct work.



Caution
- follow the local code or regulation to install the duct.
- In case that metal duct is penetrated through wooden wall, make sure the duct and the wall are electrically insulated.
- Install the outdoor unit duct inclined downwardly so that the rain will not get into the duct. (Inclination 1/100 to 1/50)
- Where it contact the outside air, make sure to install screen to avoid birds, small animals or insects getting inside the duct.
- Where it contact the outside air, make sure to install air filter to protect heat exchanger for indoor unit.

❻ Installation of Decoration panel

- Install the Decoration panel in accordance with the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.

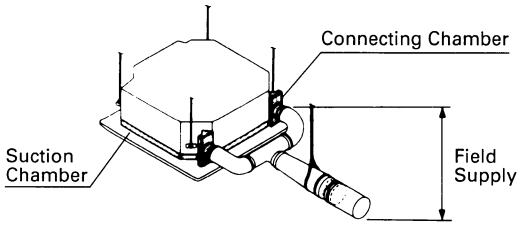


In case of the panel for Wireless remote controller

- Put the Connector for receiver lead wire through rubber bush and connect to the indoor PC board.
- Refer to the installation manual attached to the Wireless remote controller kit(optional)for the detail.

3K011144A

KDD55DA160 (Without T Joint, without Duct Fan)

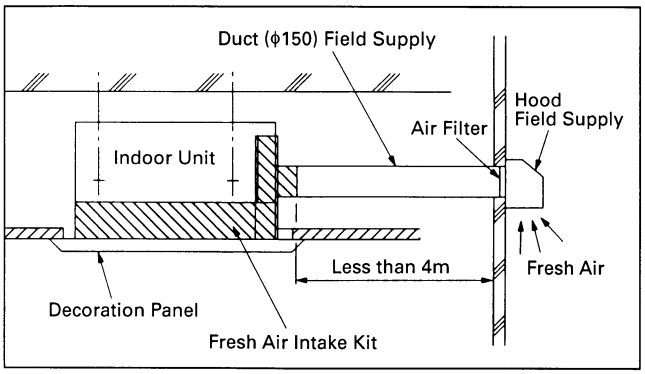


Note:
1. As the principle, the duct fan is unnecessary for 4 meters or less. When needing enough fresh air taking-in, use Kit with Duct Fan of optional, which is shown in the following.
2. The other part of Fresh air intake kit (Duct, T Joint, Air Filter, Hood, etc) is field supplied.
3. In wireless remote controller use, Flexible Duct in the right can not connect.

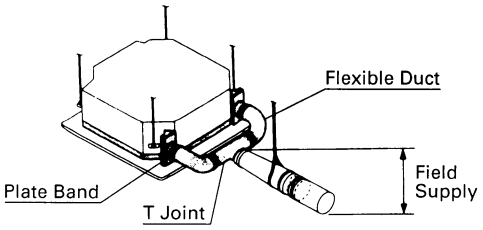
- **Specifications**

Item \ Kit Name	KDD55DA160
Method of Fresh Air Intake	Fresh Air Intake by The Indoor Unit Fan
Size of Connecting Duct	ϕ150
Applicable Models	For Indoor Unit

- **Example of Installation**



KDDP55DA160K (With T Joint, without Duct Fan)

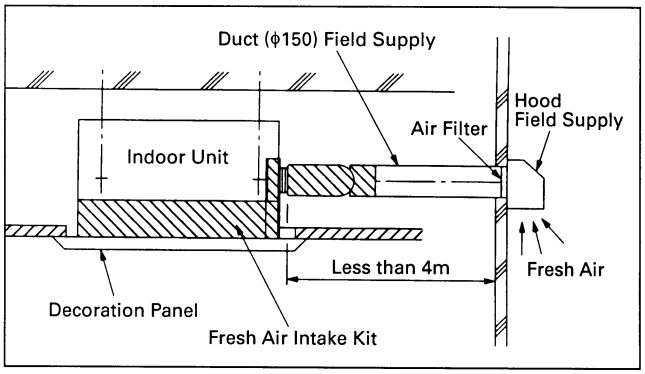


Note:
1. As the principle, the duct fan is unnecessary for 4 meters or less. When needing enough fresh air taking-in, use Kit with Duct Fan of optional, which is shown in the following.
2. The other part of Fresh air intake kit (Duct, T Joint, Air Filter, Hood, etc) is field supplied.
3. It isn't possible to do simultaneous use with wireless remote controller.

- **Specifications**

Item \ Kit Name	KDD55DA160K
Method of Fresh Air Intake	Fresh Air Intake by The Indoor Unit Fan
Size of Connecting Duct	ϕ150
Applicable Models	FXF25-125LVE

- **Example of Installation**



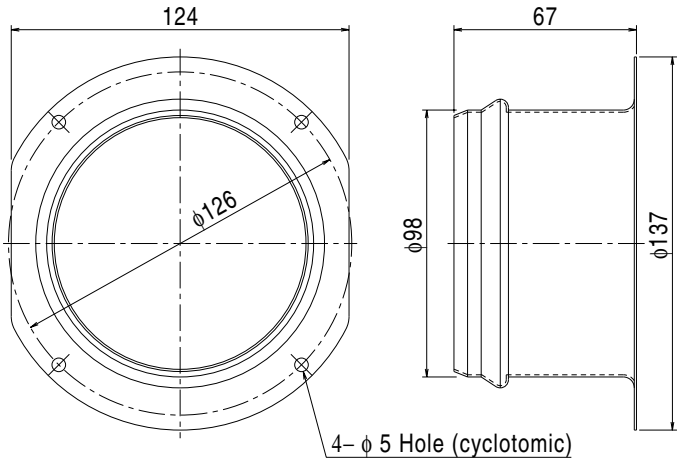
1.8 KDDP55X160 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type)

KDDP55X160



Item \ Model	KDDP55X160
Material	Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Diameter of connection duct	ϕ100
Accessories	Insulation material retainer plate : 1 Insulation material : 1 set Mounting screws : 4 Installation manual.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



J : D3K04240A

Installation

Precautions

- This kit can be mounted to a ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner.
- When using this kit, a duct (nominal diameter: ϕ100) is required separately.

- Beware that, in accordance with the local law, there may be cases where the use of a nonflammable duct is compulsory.
- When a duct goes through fire protection areas including a fire proof structure, beware that, in accordance with the local law, it may be required to establish a damper or to build a structure that is not detrimental to fire protection.
- When penetrating a wooden construction wall with a metal duct, apply electrical insulation to the duct and wall.
- Mount the outside duct so that it has a downslope toward the outside, and prevent rainwater from leaking in. (Gradient of 1/100 to 1/50)
- To prevent the intrusion of small animals, such as birds, and bugs, be sure to attach a netting to sections open to outside air.

Parts content Check the following parts.

Name	① Duct flange	② Mounting screws	③ Duct flange insulator	④ Main body opening insulator	⑤ Sealing pad retainer	⑥ Installation manual
Number of pieces	1	4	1	1	1	1
Shape		 M4×12				

Tools needed for mounting Phillips-type screwdriver, nippers, and cutter, etc.

1 Mounting of Duct Flange

1) Cut off the side plate of the indoor unit main body along the dowel hole without damaging the internal insulator. (Figure 1)

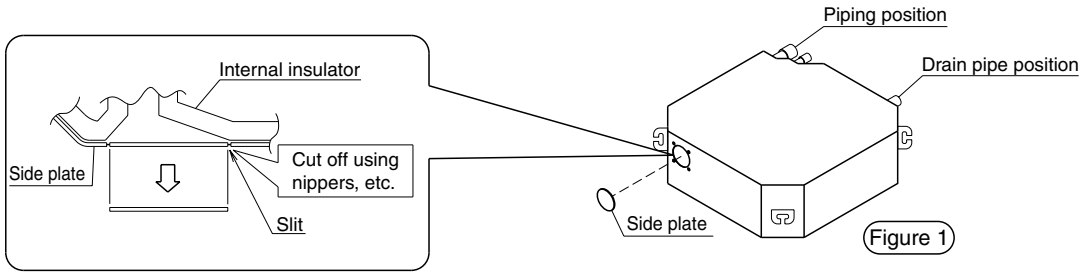


Figure 1

2) Stick the main body's opening insulator ④ to the opening. (Figure 2)

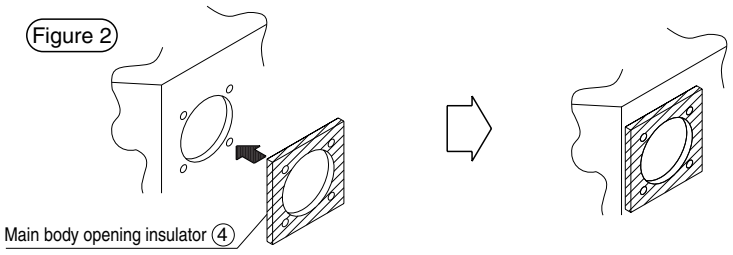


Figure 2

JC : 2P137676B

3) After mounting the duct flange ① to the opening using the mounting screws ② (M4×12, 4 pieces), stick the duct flange insulator ③. (Figure 3)

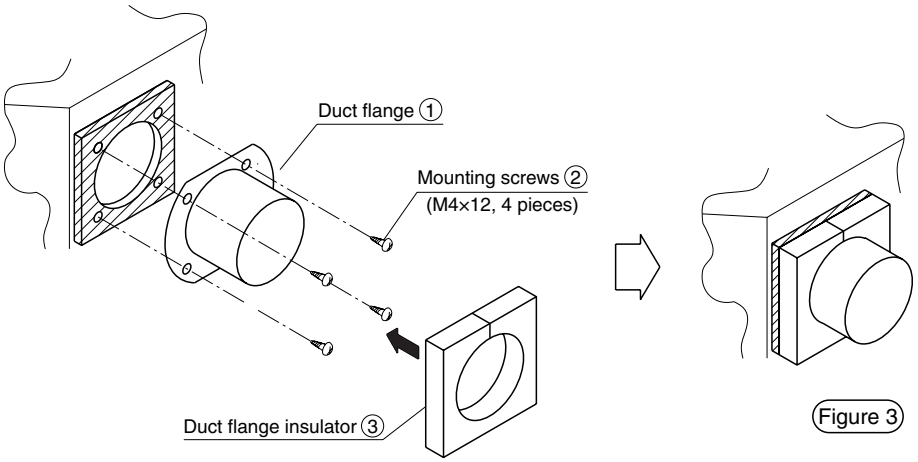


Figure 3

4) Before mounting the decoration panel, remove the insulator, and stick the sealing pad retainer ⑤ to the indoor unit drain pan. (Figure 4)

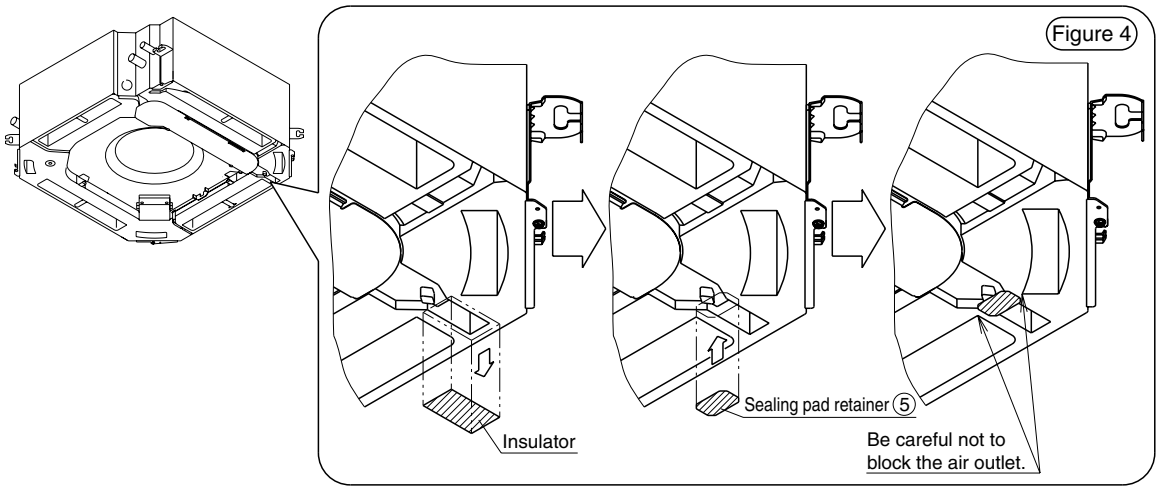


Figure 4

② Duct Connection ⟨⟨Duct: Nominal diameter ϕ100⟩⟩

1) Connect the duct to the outside of the duct flange. (Figure 5)
2) After the connection, wrap the connection area with tape (field supplied) to prevent an air leak.

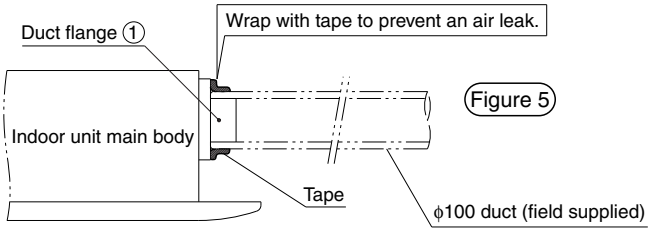
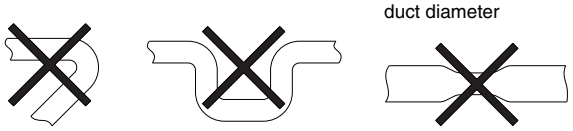


Figure 5

Precautions

- Perform insulation for all ducts.
- Do not perform duct manipulations shown to the right.

a) Extreme bending b) Multiple bending c) Reduction of connecting duct diameter



J : 2P137676B

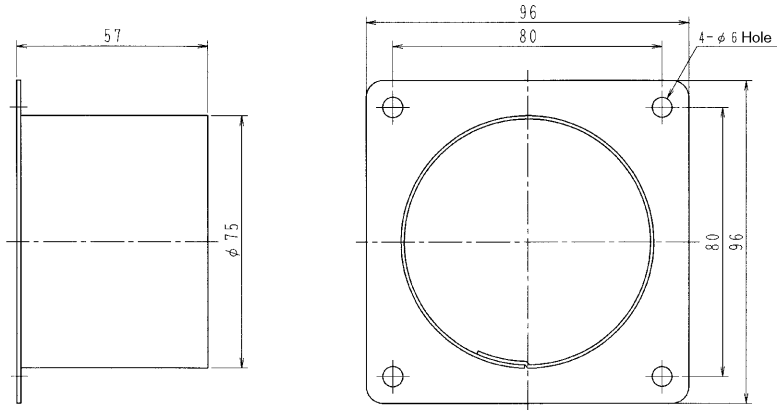
1.9 KDDJ55XA160 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type)

KDDJ55XA160



Item \ Model	KDDJ55XA160
Material	Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet
Diameter of connection duct	ϕ75
Accessories	Insulation material : 1 set Mounting screws : 4 Installation manual.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



JC : D3K2175

Installation

Remarks:

1. This kit can be installed to the Ceiling mounted cassette type (Multi-flow).
2. When installing this kit, duct(Nominal dia. : ϕ75)is required on site.

- In case that metal duct is penetrated through wooden walls, make sure the duct and the wall electrically insulated.
- Install the duct inclined downwardly to outdoor so that the rain may not get into the duct. (Inclination 1/100 to 1/50)
- To avoid birds, small animals or insects getting inside the duct, make sure to install net where it contacts the outside air.

Contents

Prior to installation, make sure you have the complete kit of parts.

Name	①Duct Flange	② Screws	③Insulation for Duct Flange	④Insulation for Opening of Unit	⑤ Installation Manual
Q'ty	1 piece	4 pieces	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece
Shape		 M4×12			

Necessary tools

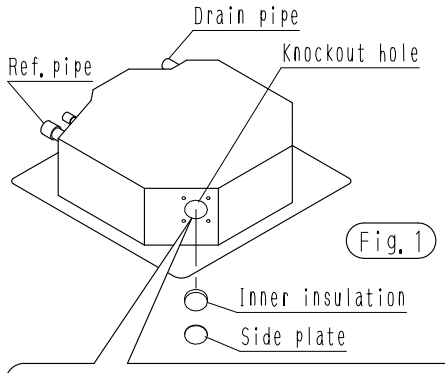
Philips head screw driver, nipper, cutter etc.

1 Installation procedures of Duct flange

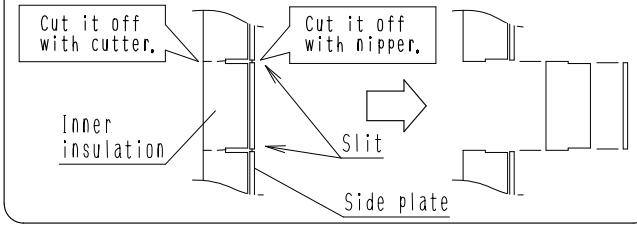
The method of installation varies with indoor unit type.
The unit type can be distinguished by the position of knockout hole.

1. Cut off the knockout hole on the side plate. (Fig. 1)

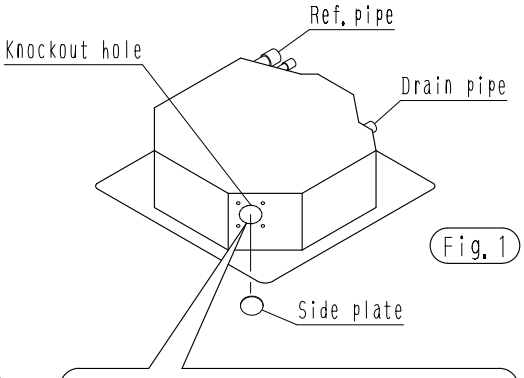
Unit type 1
The knockout hole is opposite to drain pipe.



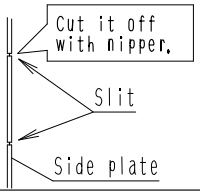
Cut off inner insulation too.



Unit type 2
The knockout hole is opposite to ref. pipe.

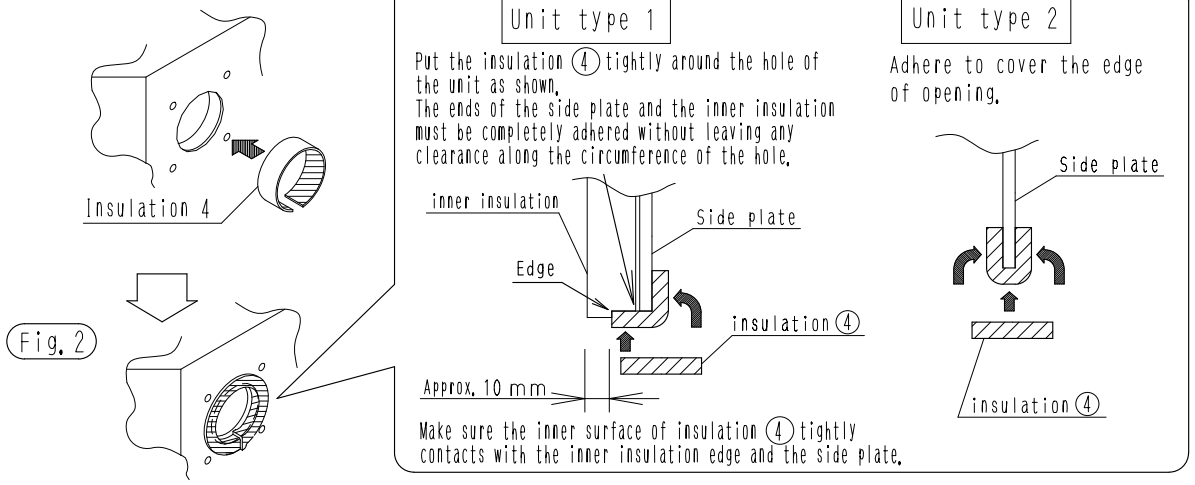


There is no inner insulation.
Cut off only side plate.

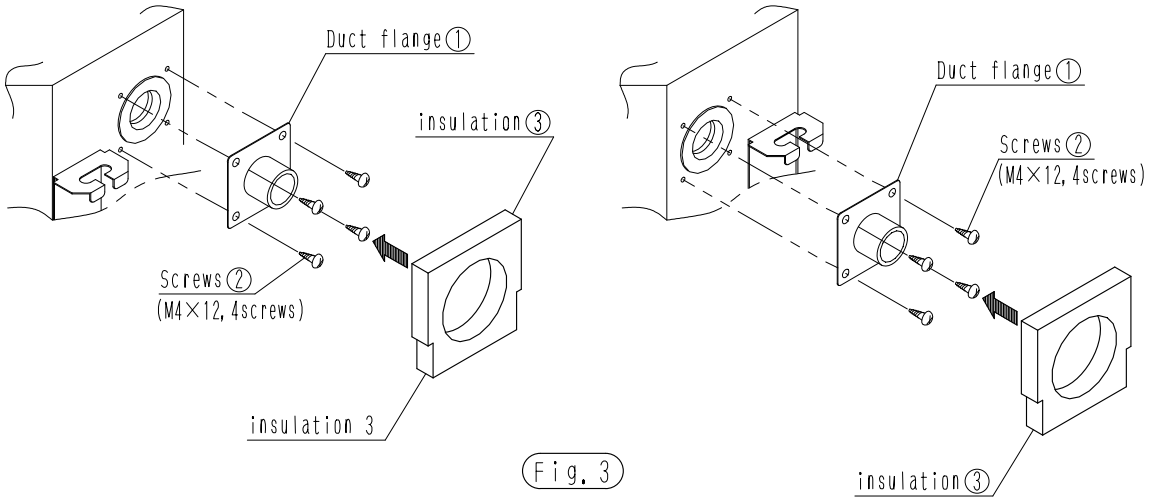


2P066796C

2. Adhere the insulation④ for opening of unit to the opening. (Fig. 2)

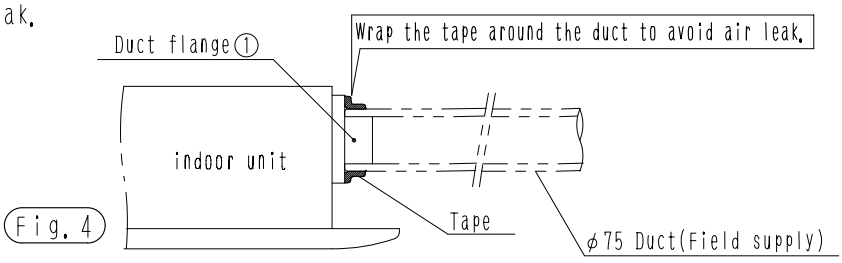


3. Install the duct flange① with screws② (M4×12, 4 screws) to the opening and adhere the insulation③ (Fig. 3)

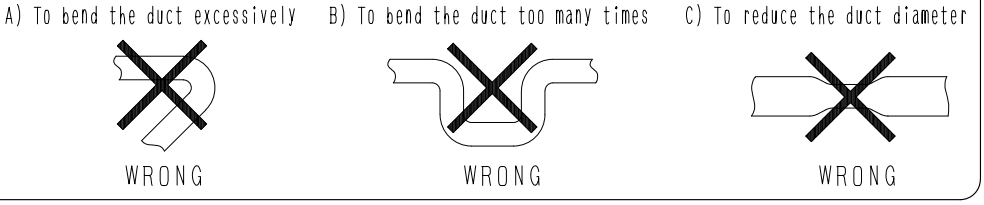


② Installation procedures of Duct <Nominal diameter of duct: φ75>

1. Connect the duct to the duct flange. (Flange fits inside the duct.) (Fig. 4)
2. After connection, wrap vinyl tape (field supply) around the duct connection to prevent air leak.



Precaution
- ALL ducts must be completely insulated.
- Do not do the followings when installing duct.



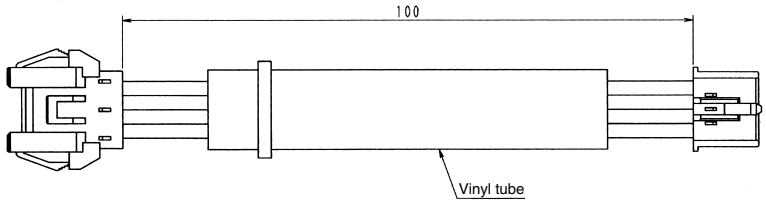
2P066796C

1.10 KKSJ55KA160 — Chamber Connection Kit

KKSJ55KA160



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



J : D3K2186

Installation

Daikin Air Conditioners Chamber Connection Kit Installation manual

KKSJ55K160 • KKSJ55KA160 Caution : Before installation, read this safety instruction.

Combining with option accessories (chamber-type)

- This chamber connection kit is for use with the multi-flow set. Refer to the catalog, etc. for details on the separately sold items (chamber-type) to be connected.
- Refer to the table at right for combinations of this kit and other option accessories(chamber-type). Also, be sure to install the fresh air intake (chamber-type) kit above.

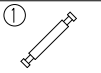


	Above: Option accessories (chamber-type)	Above: Fresh air intake kit
below	Air purification unit	○
below	High Effciency filter unit	○
below	Ultra-long life filter unit	○
below	Fresh air intake kit	

Combinations not listed in this table should not be attempted as they will cause malfunctions.

Contents of parts

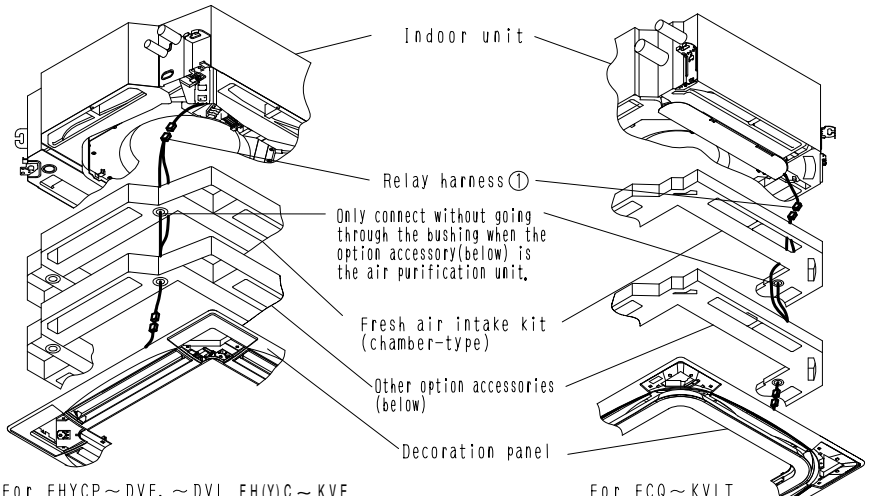
Check the following parts

Name	Relay harness	Clamping material	Others
Shape	① 	② 	This Installation Manual
Quantity	1 PC.	2 PCS.	

Installation of the Chamber connection kit.

Refer to the installation (attachment) manuals included with the indoor unit, the option accessories (chamber-type), and Decoration panel for details on installation (attachment).

Caution Extend the Decoration panel's swing motor lead wire using the included relay harness ① and connect it to the indoor unit. When doing this, use the included clamping material ② to tie the lead wire so it does not droop.



For FHYCP～DVE, ～DVL, FH(Y)C～KVE
FHC～NUV1, FHC～NUV2S, ～KV2S
FXF～LVE, FXFQ～MVE, ～LVEC

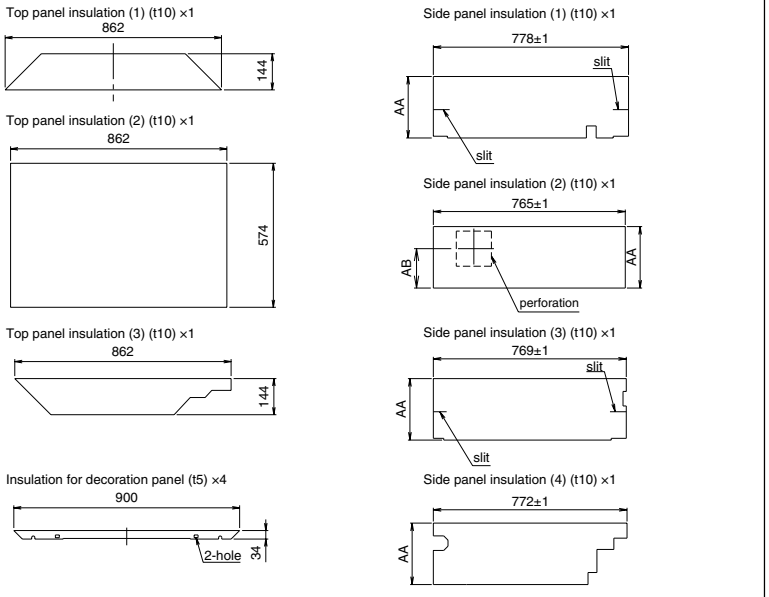
For FCQ～KVLT
FCQ(N)～KVEA
FXFQ～PVE(D)

C : 3P089651D

1.11 KDTP55K80·160 — Installation Kit for High Humidity

Dimensions **Unit:mm**

Model	AA	AB
KDTP55K80	245	157
KDTP55K160	287	186



J : D3K05113

Item \ Model	KDTP55K80	KDTP55K160
Material	Polyethylene foam (with adhesive on the reverse side)	
Applicable ambient temperature	40°CDB, RH85%	
Accessories	Insulation for hanger bracket : 4 Installation manual.	

Installation

Precautions

- This kit can be mounted to an ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner <round flow>.
- According to the chart below, check the model name of indoor unit, then mount the kit.
- This kit cannot be used for the mounting of humidifier and branch duct.

Combination table

Model name	Installable indoor unit model name	
KDTP55K80	SkyAir	FCQ71KVEA
	VRV	FXFQ25/32/40/50/63/80PVE
KDTP55K160	SkyAir	FCQ100K/125K/140KVEA
	VRV	FXFQ100/125PVE

Parts content

Check the following parts.

Name	Side insulator plate (1)	Side insulator plate (2)	Side insulator plate (3)	Side insulator plate (4)	Top insulator plate (1)
Shape	① 778mm; 80 A=245mm; 160 A=287mm; Slit	② 765mm; 80 A=245mm; 160 A=287mm	③ 769mm; 80 A=245mm; 160 A=287mm; Slit	④ 772mm; 80 A=245mm; 160 A=287mm	⑤
Number of pieces	1	1	1	1	1

Name	Top insulator plate (2)	Top insulator plate (3)	suspension bracket insulator	Panel insulator	Installation manual
Shape	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩
Number of pieces	1	1	4	4	1 (This manual)

1 Sticking Procedure

- Perform the work on soft cloth to prevent damage to the indoor unit and panel.

<Procedure>

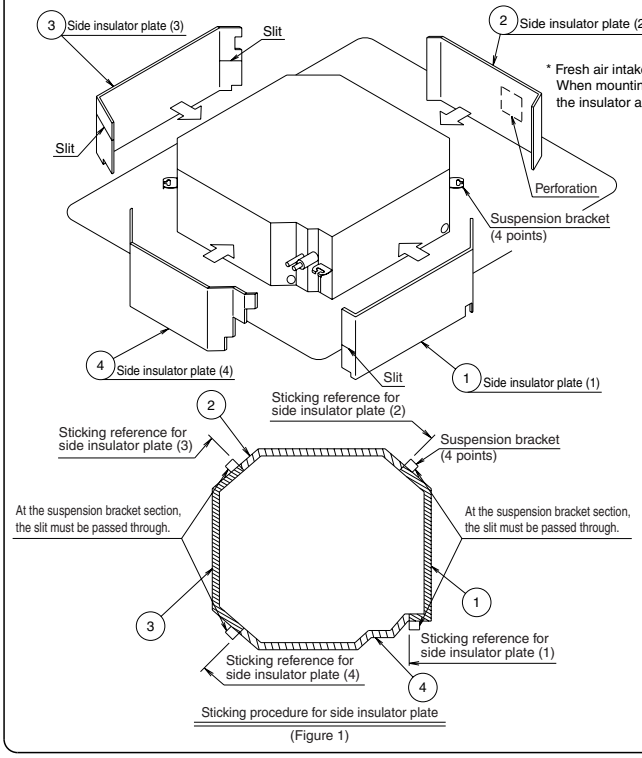
(1) According to the sticking procedure for the side insulator plate, stick the side insulator plates (1 to 4) in sequential order without leaving any gap in between. (Figure 1)
(When mounting the fresh air intake kit (KDDP55X160), cut off the side insulator plate (2) with a knife along the perforation. The cut-off insulator is no longer needed.)

(2) Stick the top insulator plates (1 to 3) without leaving any gap in between. Also, stick the top insulator plates without leaving any gap against the side insulator plates all the way around. (Figure 2)

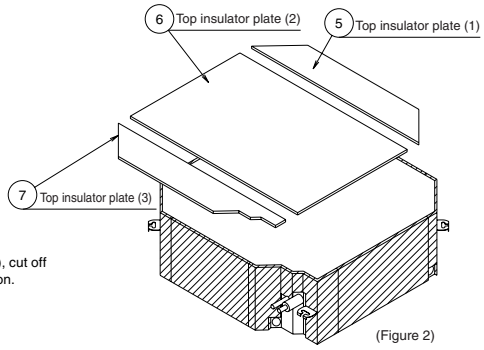
(3) Hang the product.

(4) Stick the suspension bracket insulator to the suspension bracket together with the washer and bolt. (Figure 3)

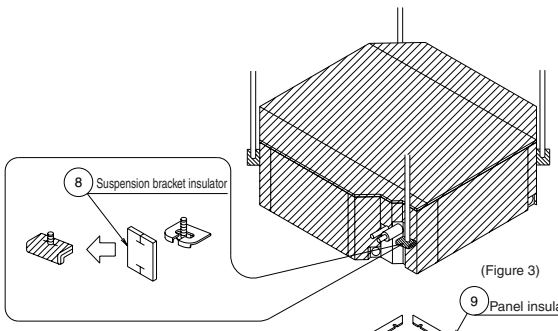
(5) Lastly, stick the panel insulator to the backside of the panel. (Figure 4)



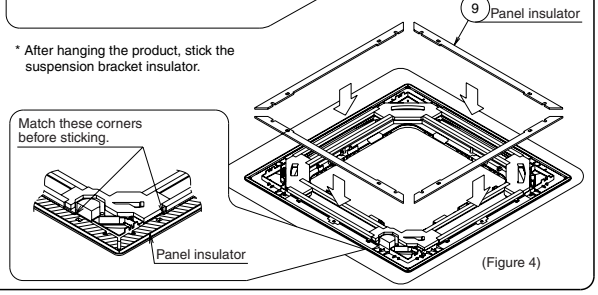
(Figure 1)



(Figure 2)



(Figure 3)

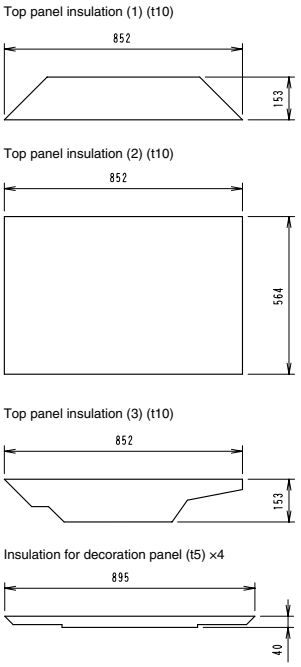


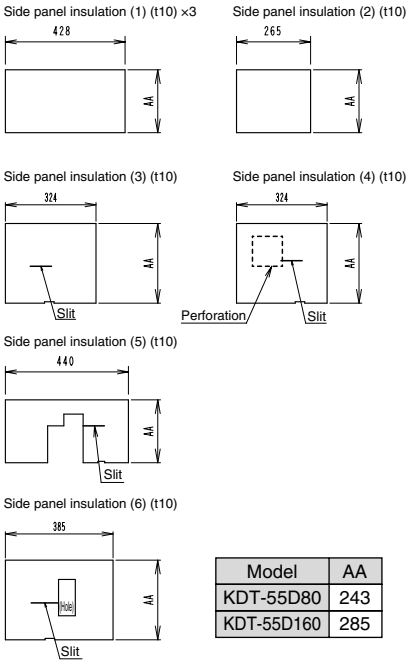
(Figure 4)

JC : 3P179341D

1.12 KDT-55DA80·160 — Installation Kit for High Humidity

Dimensions **Unit:mm**





Model	AA
KDT-55D80	243
KDT-55D160	285

JC: D3K03297

Item \ Model	KDT-55DA80	KDT-55DA160
Material	Polyethylene foam (with adhesive on the reverse side)	
Accessories	Insulation for hanger bracket : 4 Installation manual.	

Installation

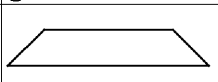
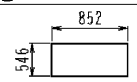
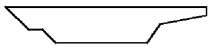
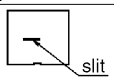
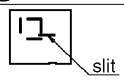
Caution

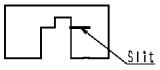
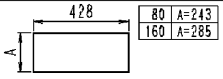
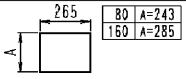
- This kit can be installed to the Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type Air Conditioner <Multi-flow type>.
- Before installation, make sure the indoor unit model name.
- This kit cannot be attached to a humidifier or branch duct chamber.

Combination table

Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowed is possible	
KDT-55D80	VRV	FXF25・32・40・50・63・80LVE
KDT-55D160	VRV	FXF100・125LVE

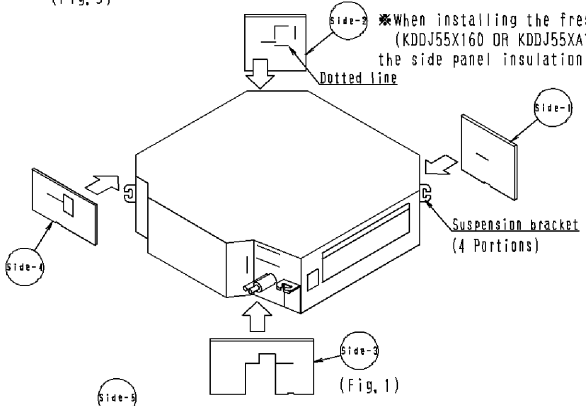
Contents of parts

Name	① Top plate insulation material (Top-1)	② Top plate insulation material (Top-2)	③ Top plate insulation material (Top-3)	④ Side plate insulation material (Side-1)	⑤ Side plate insulation material (Side-2)
Shape					
Quantity	1	1	1	1	1

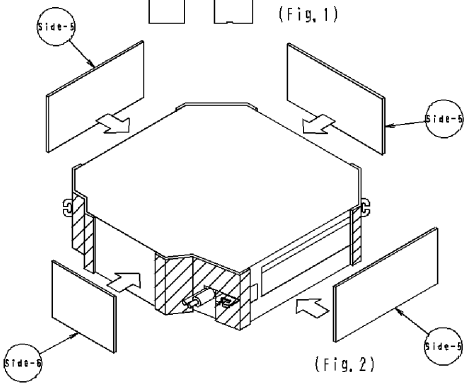
Name	⑥ Side plate insulation material (Side-3)	⑦ Side plate insulation material (Side-4)	⑧ Side plate insulation material (Side-5)	⑨ Side plate insulation material (Side-6)	⑩ Suspension bracket insulation material	⑪ Panel insulation material
Shape						
Quantity	1	1	3	1	4	4

❶ How to attach

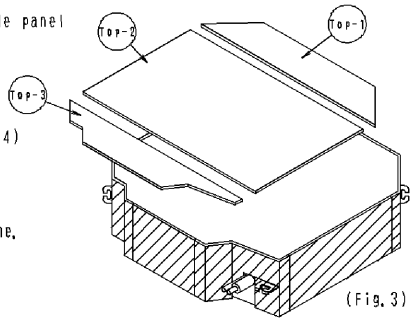
<Procedure>
(1) Match the slits on side plate insulation material (Side-1, -2, -3, -4) to the suspension bracket and attach to the side panel of the indoor unit. (Fig. 1)
(When installing the fresh air intake kit (KDDJ55X160 OR KDDJ55XA160), tear the side panel insulation material (Side-2) at the dotted line.)
(2) Attach the side panel insulation material (Side-5, -6) to the side panel of the indoor unit. Make sure there are no gaps between neighboring insulation materials. (Fig. 2)
(3) Attach the top panel insulation material (Top-1, -2, -3), making sure there are no gaps. (Fig. 3)
(4) Attach the Suspension bracket insulation material to the Suspension brackets. (Fig. 4)
(5) Finally, attach the panel insulation material to the rear side of the panel. (Fig. 5)



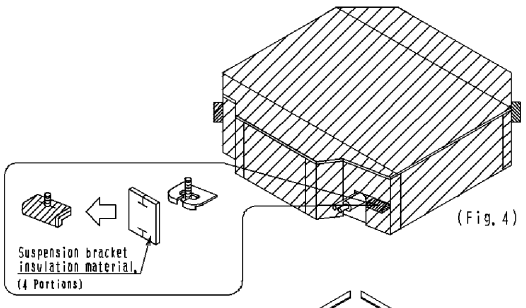
(Fig. 1)



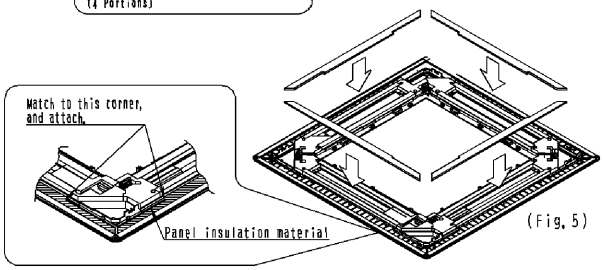
(Fig. 2)



(Fig. 3)



(Fig. 4)

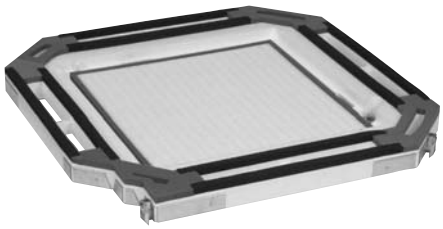


(Fig. 5)

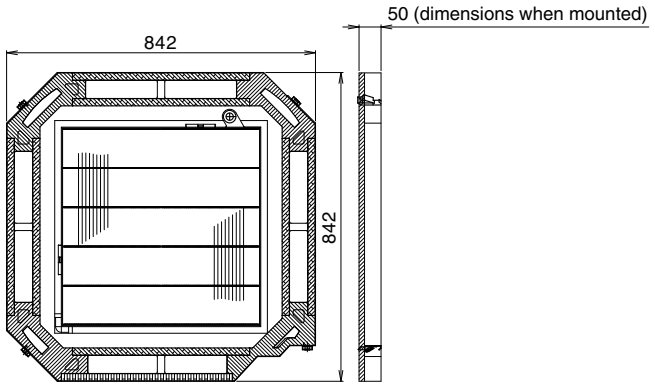
C: 3K010927F

1.13 KAFP556B80 / KAFP556B160, KAFP557B80 / KAFP557B160 — High Efficiency Filter (Including Chamber)

KAFP556B80 / KAFP556B160
KAFP557B80 / KAFP557B160



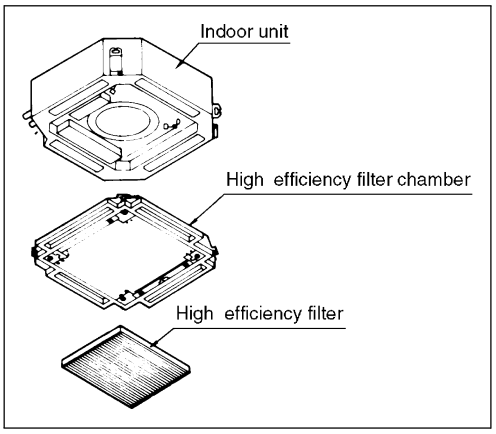
Dimensions **Unit:mm**



J : D3K07905

Caution

· Field setting by remote controller is necessary when the high efficiency filter is installed.



Item \ Model		KAFP556B80	KAFP556B160	KAFP557B80	KAFP557B160
Material		Galvanized sheet iron. Foam polystyrene.			
Initial pressure loss	Pa	34 or less			
Final pressure loss	Pa	98 or less			
Average efficiency	%	65 (colorimetric method)		90 (colorimetric method)	
Air flow rate	m^3/min	20	33	20	33
	l/sec	333	550	333	550
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)		1,800 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)	
Filter element		Non-woven fabric of synthetic fiber			
Number of sheets included		1	1	1	1
Accessories		Installation manual. Sealing material : 2			
Mass (Weight)	kg	3.6	4.2	3.6	4.2

Replacement filter (optional accessories)	KAFP552B80	KAFP552B160	KAFP553B80	KAFP553B160

Installation

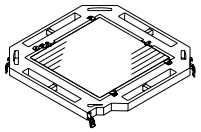
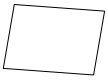
⚠Caution After thoroughly reading these "Safety precautions", properly perform the installation.

- For the installation parts, accessory parts and specified components must always be used.
  If the specified components are not used, the kit may fall or an air leak may occur.
- After the completion of installation, perform a test run to check that no abnormality is present.

Recommendations

- This product can be mounted to a ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner <round flow >.
- According to the table below, check the model name of the indoor unit main body, then mount the product.
- At the time of mounting, also refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit and to the installation manual of the decoration panel.

Parts content Check the following parts.

Name	High efficiency filter unit	Sealing pad	Installation manual
Shape			
Number of pieces	1	2	1 (This document)

Combination table

Model name	Installable indoor unit model name / Panel model name	
KAFP556B80 KAFP557B80	SkyAir	FCQ71KVEA
	VRV	FXFQ25/32/40/50/63/80PVE
KAFP556B160 KAFP557B160	SkyAir	FCQ100K/125K/140KVEA
	VRV	FXFQ100/125PVE
Panel	BYCP125K-W1	

1 Mounting of High Efficiency Filter Unit

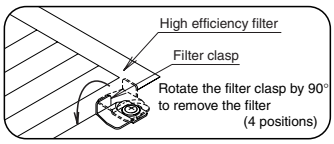
* When the indoor unit main body is already installed, perform the following operations, complying with precautions below.
  Shut off power supply before performing the operation.
  Remove the decoration panel from the indoor unit's main body.
  (For details, refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.)

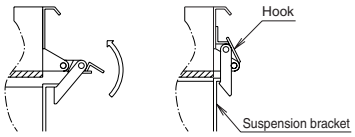
* When the indoor unit main body is newly installed

(1) Remove the high efficiency filter from the high efficiency filter unit. (Figure 1)
(2) Mount the high efficiency filter unit to the indoor unit main body using the hooks (4 positions). (Figure 2) to (Figure 4)
For the fixing method of the hooks, refer to the figure to the right. Mount at 4 positions.

* Mount so that the contours of the indoor unit main body and chamber match. (Figure 3) (Figure 5)

Figure 1





Fixing method of hooks

Figure 2

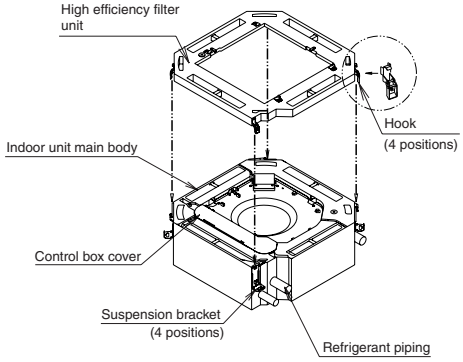


Figure 3 Mounting status

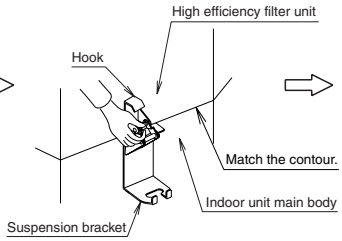


Figure 4 Status after mounting

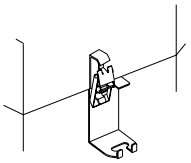
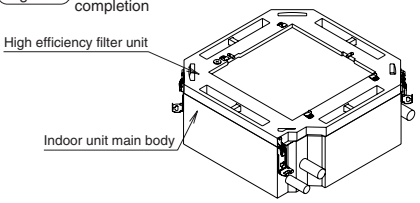


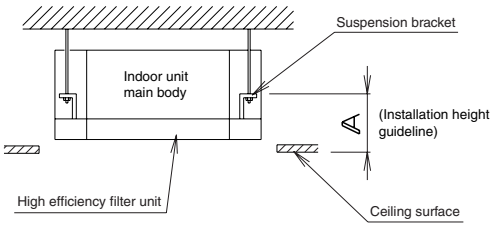
Figure 5 Drawing of mounting at completion



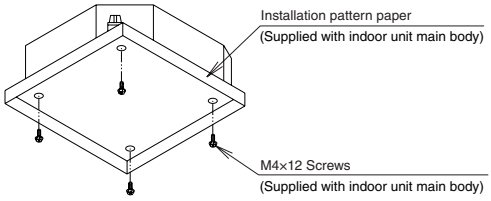
JC : 3K022806

❷ Installation of Indoor Unit Main Body and High Efficiency Filter Unit

- Install the indoor unit main body and high efficiency filter unit.
  At the time of installation, perform engineering work according to the installation manual attached to the air conditioner's main body. (For the installation height, refer to the figure to the right.)
- When mounting the high efficiency filter unit to the existing indoor unit main body, change the installation height of the indoor unit main body to height A in the figure to the right.
- Mount the supplied installation pattern paper to the indoor unit using screws to cure the indoor unit.
  (Refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit main body.)
  (Refer to the figure below.)



	A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1	185



[Mounting of installation pattern paper]

- Complete all the refrigerant and drain piping work for the indoor unit main body.

❸ Mounting of Decoration Panel and Mounting of High Efficiency Filter

- After temporarily hooking the decoration panel, pass the lead wire, which is coming out from the decoration panel, through the wire through hole of the high efficiency filter unit.
  <Round flow> 1 swing motor lead wire
- Mount the decoration panel according to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.

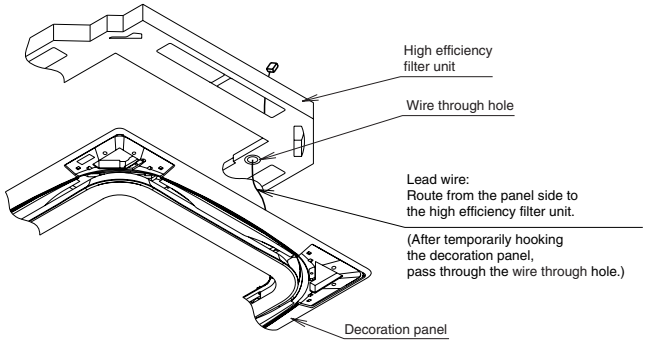
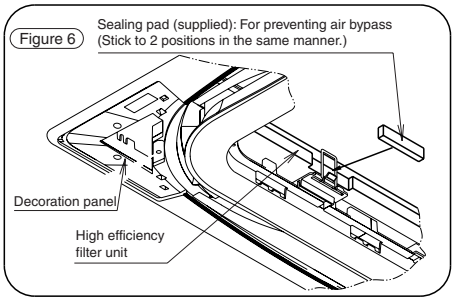


Figure 6



- Mounting of high efficiency filter
  After the completion of wiring and sticking of sealing pad (2 positions), mount the high efficiency filter. (Figure 6) (Figure 7)

  When you attach the high efficiency filter to the unit, do not apply too much force to the filter.

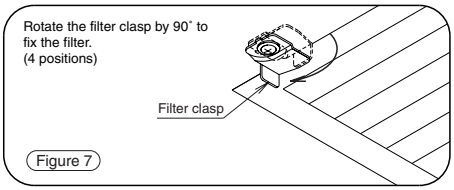


Figure 7

With wireless unit

- Route the connector of the receiver lead wire through the wire through hole, then connect the connector on the indoor PC board ass'y.
- For details on the connection method, refer to the installation manual attached to the wireless remote control kit (sold separately).

❹ Preparation of Indoor Unit

- With the mounting of a high efficiency filter unit, setting the indoor unit main body is required.
  Using the field setting mode on the remote control, change the second code number as shown in the table to the right.
  For the field setting mode, refer to "How to perform field setting" attached to the remote control.

Mode number	First code number	Second code number	Remarks
13 or 23	0	02	80 only
	1	02	Both 80 and 160

JC : 3K022806

1.14 KAF556DA80·160, KAF557DA80·160 — High Efficiency Filter (Including Chamber)

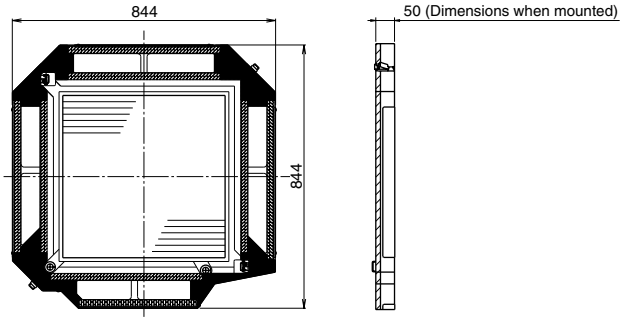
KAFP556DA80



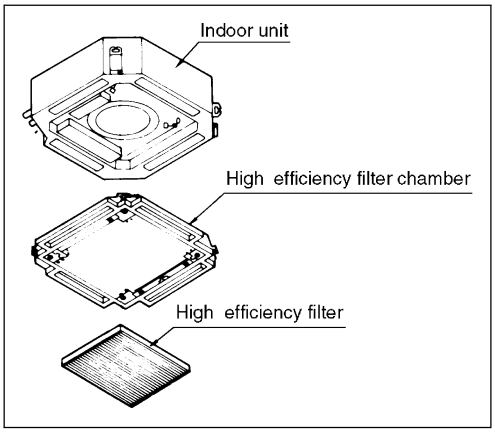
Caution

· Field setting by remote controller is necessary when the high efficiency filter is installed.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



JC: D3K03295



Item	Model	KAF556DA80	KAF556DA160	KAF557DA80	KAF557DA160
Material		Galvanized sheet iron. Foam polystyrene.			
Initial pressure loss	Pa	34 or less			
Final pressure loss	Pa	98 or less			
Average efficiency	%	65 (colorimetric method)		90 (colorimetric method)	
Air flow rate	m^3/min	19	35	19	35
	l/sec	317	583	317	583
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)		1,800 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)	
Filter element		Non-woven fabric of synthetic fiber			
Number of sheets included		1	1	1	1
Accessories		Installation manual.			
Mass (Weight)	kg	3.6	4.2	3.6	4.2

Replacement filter (optional accessories)	KAFP552B80	KAFP552B160	KAFP553B80	KAFP553B160

Installation

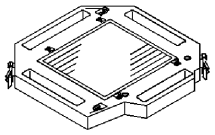
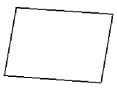
⚠Caution Before starting the installation work, carefully read the following safety precautions and observe them to ensure safety during work.

- Make sure to use the attached or specified components to install the products. Otherwise, it may cause air leak or the product may fall.
- After installation, check whether there is no abnormality during the trial operation.

REMARKS

- This kit can be installed to the Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type Air Conditioner<Multi-flow type>.
- Before installation, make sure the indoor unit model name.
- Refer to the installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

Components Check if following parts are included with your kit.

Name	High Effciency Filter Unit	Installation manual
Shape		
Quantity	1 PC.	1 PC.

Combination table

Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowed is possible	
KAFP556D80 KAF556DA80 or KAFP557D80 KAF557DA80	VRV	FXF25・32・40・50・63・80LVE
KAFP556D160 KAF556DA160 or KAFP557D160 KAF557DA160	VRV	FXF100・125LVE

① Preparation of indoor unit

- When you instell the High Effciency filter, the setting by the remote controller is required. Set the remote controller at the field setting mode and change the setting position number as shown on the table. Refer to the operation manual of remote controller for the field setting.

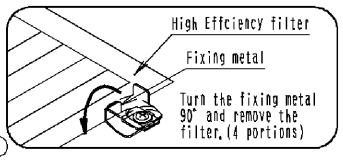
Mode No.	Setting switch No.	Setting position No.	Remarks
13 or 23	0	02	Only 80
	1	02	Both 80 and 160

3K011145B

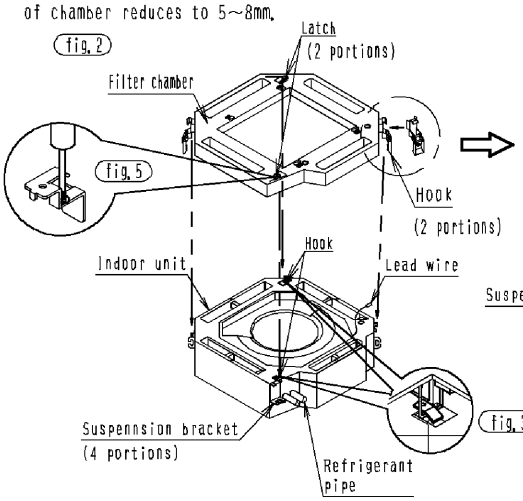
❷ Installation of the High Effciency filetr unit

1. Remove the decoration panel. (This is not required for the new installtion)
   • Remove the decoration panel in the reverse step when the panel is installed.
   (Refer to the installation manual of the decoration panel for the details.)
2. REmove the High Effciency filter. (fig. 1)
3. Temporarily install the filter chamber to the indoor unit by hanging the lutch on the opposite side of the filter chamber to the hook of the indoor unit body. (2 portions)
   Temporarily hang the remaining 2 hooks of the filter chamber to the hooks on the sides of the indoor unit. (fig. 2) ~ (fig. 4)
   (When the indoor unit is already installed, hang the hook to the suspennsion bracket temporarily and fix the hook.)
   ※Installation set outline of the indoor unit (fig. 3)
4. Tighten 2hexahead screws located beneath the lutches until the thickness of the sealing material (fig. 5) (fig. 6) of chamber reduces to 5~8mm.

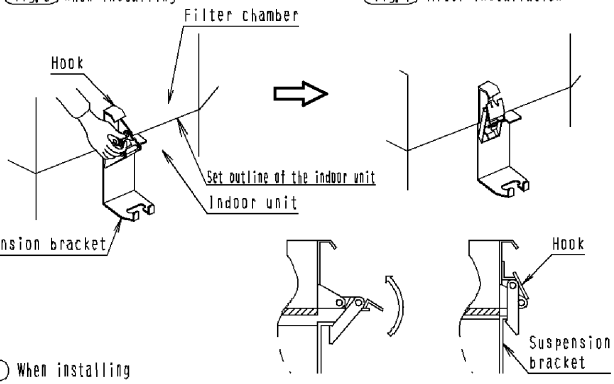
(fig. 1)



(fig. 2)

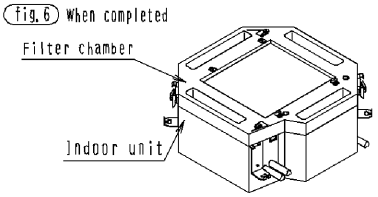


(fig. 3) When installing



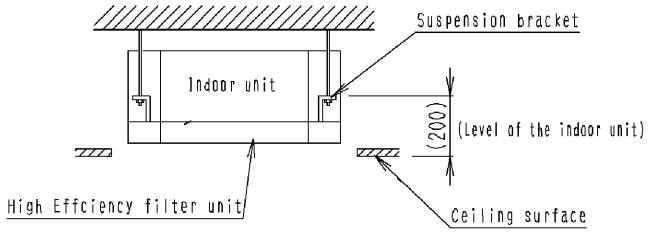
(fig. 4) After installation

(fig. 6) When completed

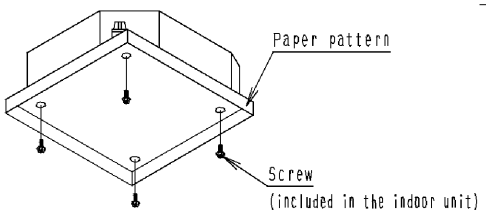


❸ Installation of the indoor unit and the High Effciency filter unit

- Install the indoor unit and the High Effciency filter unit.
  Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit.
  (For the height of the unit, refer to the drawing on the right.)
- Be complete installated refrigerant piping, and drain piping.
- Attach the paper pattern for installation to the indoor unit with screws to protect the indoor unit from dirt. [See below]
  (When the indoor unit is newly installed)
  (See below)
- In case of attaching the chamber after installed indoor unit.
  For the height of the unit, change the height shown on the right drawing.



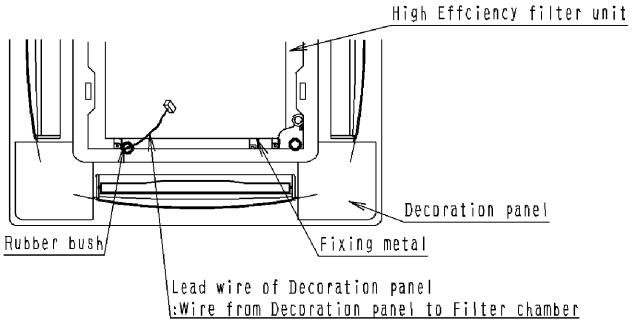
〔Attachment of the paper pattern〕



3K011145B

❹ Installation of the Decoration panel and the High Effciency filter

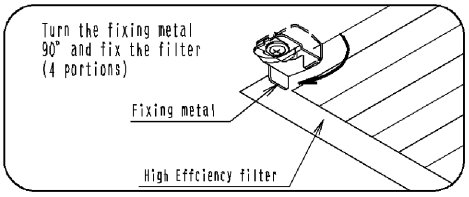
• Install the Decoration panel in accordance with the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.



(Before fixing the Chamber, put the lead wire through Rubber bushing hole.)

• Installation of the High Effciency filter
After connecting, install the Filter chamber. (fig.7)

(fig.7)



(In case of the panel for Wireless remote controller)

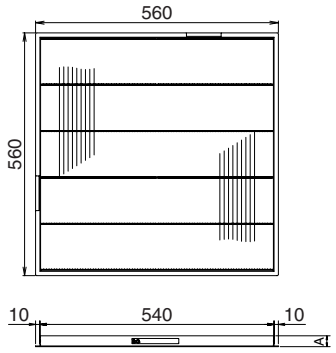
• Put the Connector for receiver lead wire through rubber bush and connect to the indoor PC board.
• Refer to the installation manual attached to the Wireless remote controller kit(optional)for the detail.

3K011145B

1.15 KAFP552B80·160, KAFP553B80·160 — Replacement High Efficiency Filter

Dimensions **Unit:mm**

Model	A
KAFP552B80 · KAFP553B80	25
KAFP552B160 · KAFP553B160	45



J: D3K07954

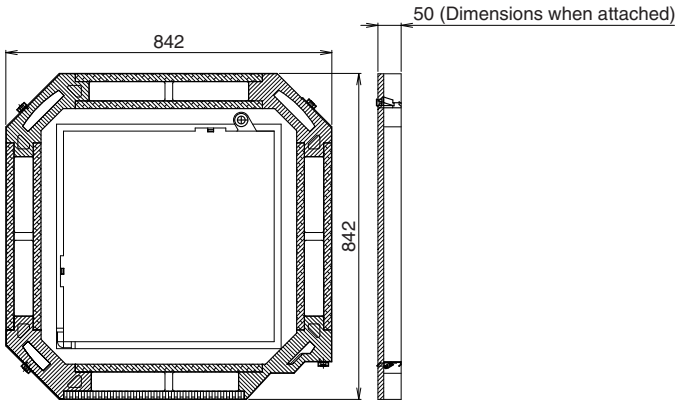
Caution

- Cannot be water-washed for reuse.
- The filter chamber (KDDFP55B160 or KDDF55DA160) is required when the high efficiency filter will be installed.

Item	Model	KAFP552B80	KAFP552B160	KAFP553B80	KAFP553B160
Initial pressure loss	Pa	34 or less			
Final pressure loss	Pa	98 or less			
Average efficiency	%	65 (colorimetric method)		90 (colorimetric method)	
Air flow rate	m^3/min	23.5	35.5	23.5	35.5
	l/sec	392	592	392	592
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)		1,800 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)	
Filter element		Non-woven fabric of synthetic fiber			
Number of sheets included		1	1	1	1
Mass (Weight)	kg	0.6	1.2	0.6	1.2

1.16 KDDFP55B160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



J : D3K07903

Item			Model KDDFP55B160
Inserted filter	High efficiency filter	65% (colorimetric method)	KAFP552B80 KAFP552B160
		90% (colorimetric method)	KAFP553B80 KAFP553B160
	Ultra long-life filter		KAFP55H160H
Material			Galvanized sheet iron. Foam polystyrene.
Accessories			Installation manual Sealing pad : 2
Mass (Weight)		kg	3.0

Installation

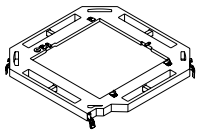
⚠Caution After thoroughly reading these "Safety Precautions", properly perform the installation.

- For the installation parts, accessory parts and specified components must always be used.
  If the specified components are not used, the kit may fall or an air leak may occur.
- After the completion of installation, perform a test run to check that no abnormality is present.

Recommendations (When using ultra-long life filter)

The ultra-long life filter can be reused after cleaning.
After engineering work is completed, provide instructions to the customer about the filter cleaning interval and how to remove the filter.

Parts content Check the following parts.

Name	Filter chamber	Sealing pad	Installation manual
Shape			
Number of pieces	1	2	1 (This document)

Recommendations

- This product can be mounted to ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner <round flow>.
- According to the table below, check the model name of the indoor unit main body, then mount the product.
- At the time of mounting, also refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and to the one for the decoration panel.

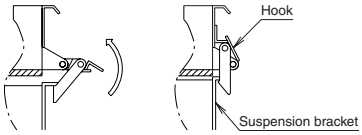
Combination table

Model name	High efficiency filter	Ultra-long life filter	Installable indoor unit model name / Panel model name	
KDDFP55B160	KAFP552B80 Or KAFP553B80	KAFP55H160H	SkyAir	FCQ(N)71KVEA FCQ71KVLT
			VRV	FXFQ25/32/40/50/63/80PVE
	KAFP552B160 Or KAFP553B160		SkyAir	FCQ(N)100K/125K/140KVEA FCQ100K/125K/140KVLT
			VRV	FXFQ100/125PVE
	Panel		BYCP125K-W1	

1 Mounting of Filter Chamber

* When the indoor unit main body is already installed, perform the following operations, complying with precautions below.
  Shut off power supply before performing the operation.
  Remove the decoration panel from the indoor unit main body.
  (For details, refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.)
* When the indoor unit main body is newly installed

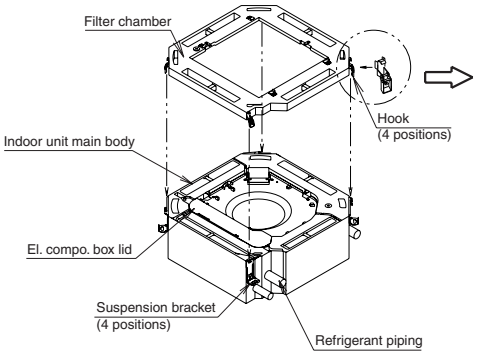
(1) Mount the filter chamber to the indoor unit main body using the hooks (4 positions).
(Figure 1) to (Figure 3)
For the fixing method of the hooks, refer to the figure to the right. Mount at 4 positions.



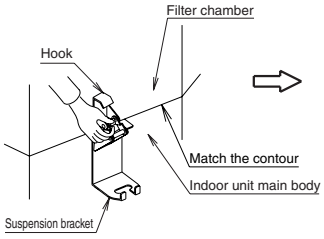
Fixing method of hooks

* Mount so that the contours of the indoor unit main body and chamber are match. (Figure 2) (Figure 4)

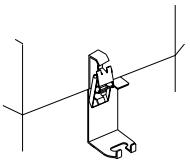
(Figure 1)



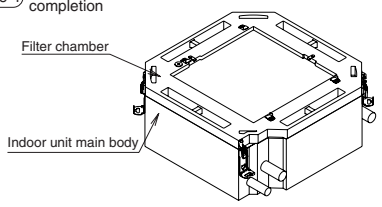
(Figure 2) Mounting status



(Figure 3) Status after mounting



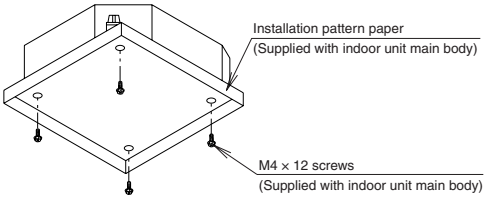
(Figure 4) Drawing of mounting at completion



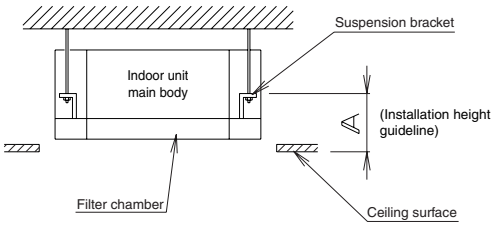
JC : 3K022717

❷ Installation of Indoor Unit Main Body and Filter Chamber

- Install the indoor unit main body and filter chamber.
  At the time of installation, perform engineering work according to the installation manual attached to the air conditioner's main body. (For the installation height, refer to the figure to the right.)
- When mounting the filter chamber to the existing indoor unit main body, change the installation height of the indoor unit main body to height A in the figure to the right.
- Mount the supplied installation pattern paper to the indoor unit using screws to cure the indoor unit.
  (Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit main body.)
  (Refer to the figure below.)



[Mounting of installation pattern paper]



	A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1	185

- Complete all the refrigerant and drain piping work for the indoor unit main body.

❸ Mounting of Decoration Panel and Mounting of Filter Chamber

- After temporarily hooking the decoration panel, pass the lead wire, which is coming out from the decoration panel, through the wire through hole of the filter chamber.
  <Round flow> 1 swing motor lead wire
- Mount the decoration panel according to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.

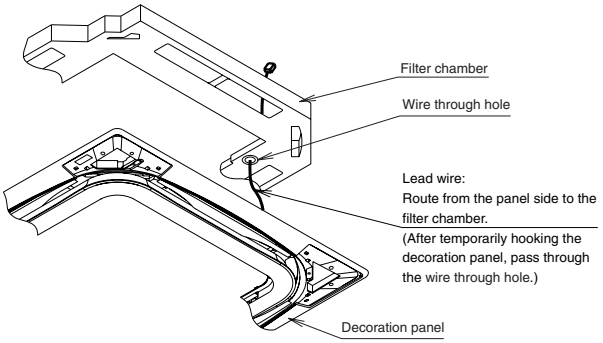
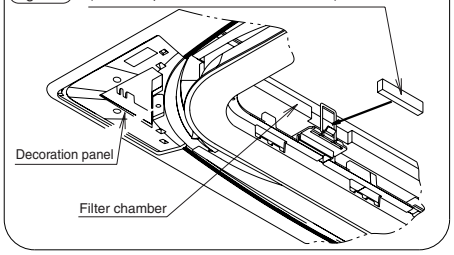


Figure 5



- Mounting of filter
  After the completion of wiring and sticking of sealing pad (2 positions), mount the filter.
  However, for a high-efficiency filter, use cutter to cut in the groove and remove the unnecessary areas (2 areas) before installing the filter.
  Figure 5 Figure 6
- ∗ When you attach the high efficiency filter to the unit, do not apply too much force to the filter.

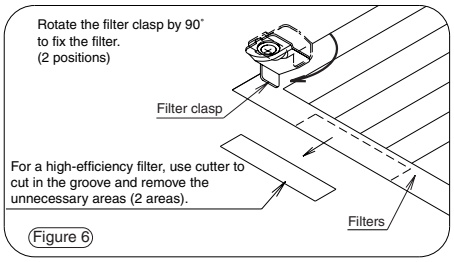


Figure 6

With wireless unit

- Route the connector of the receiver lead wire through the wire through hole, then connect the connector on the indoor PC board assembly.
- For details on the connection method, refer to the installation manual attached to the wireless remote control kit (sold separately).

❹ Preparation of Indoor Unit

- Depending on the types of mounting filters, setting the indoor unit main body is may be required.
  Using the field setting mode on the remote control, switch to the second code number shown in the table to the right.
  For the field setting mode, refer to "How to perform field setting" attached to the remote control.

Filter name		Mode number	First code number	Second code number		Filter sign display interval time
High performance filter	80 only	13 or 23	0	02		———
	Both 80 and 160		1	02		
Ultra-long life filter		10 or 20	0	Where there is minimal fouling (Example: Office, etc.)	01	Approximately every 10,000 hours
				Where there is considerable fouling (Example: Pachinko parlor, etc.)	02	Approximately every 5,000 hours
			1	02		Initial setting for ultra-long life filter

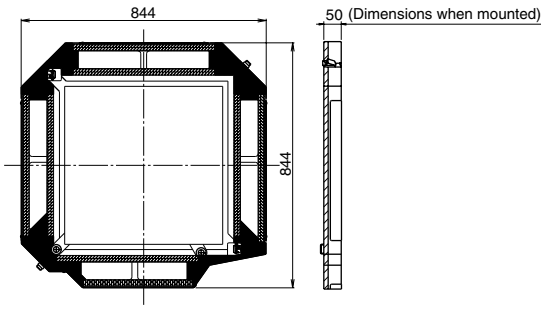
JC : 3K022717

1.17 KDDF55DA160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber

KDDF55DA160



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



JC: D3K03293

Item			Model KDDF55DA160
Inserted filter	High efficiency filter	65% (colorimetric method)	KAFP552B80 KAFP552B160
		90% (colorimetric method)	KAFP553B80 KAFP553B160
	Ultra long-life filter		KAF55KA160H
Material			Galvanized sheet iron. Foam polystyrene.
Accessories			Installation manual Sealing pad : 2
Mass (Weight)		kg	3.0

Installation

⚠Caution Before starting the installation work, carefully read the following, safety precautions and observe them to ensure safety during work.

- Make sure to use the attached or spcified components to install the prducts. Otherwise, it may cause air leak or the product may fall.
- After installation, check whether there is no abnomality during the trial operation.

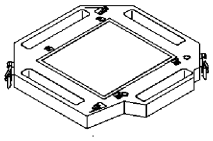
REMARKS

- This kit can be installed to the Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type Air Conditioner<Multi-flow type>.
- Before installation, make sure the indoor unit model name.
- Refer to the installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

Notes (In case of useing the Ultra-long life filter)

Ultra-long life filter can be reused by cleaning.
After installtion, instruct filter cleaning period and removeing to customers.

Components Check if following parts are included with your kit.

Name	Filter chamber	Installation manual
Shape		
Quantity	1 PC.	1 PC.

Combination table

Kit name	High Effciency filter	Ultra-long life filter	Indoor unit model that party crowed is possible	
KDDF 55DA160	KAFP552B80 KAFP553B80	KAF55KA160H	VRV	FXF25・32・40・50・63・80LVE
	KAFP552B160 KAFP553B160		VRV	FXF100・125LVE

❶ Preparation of indoor unit

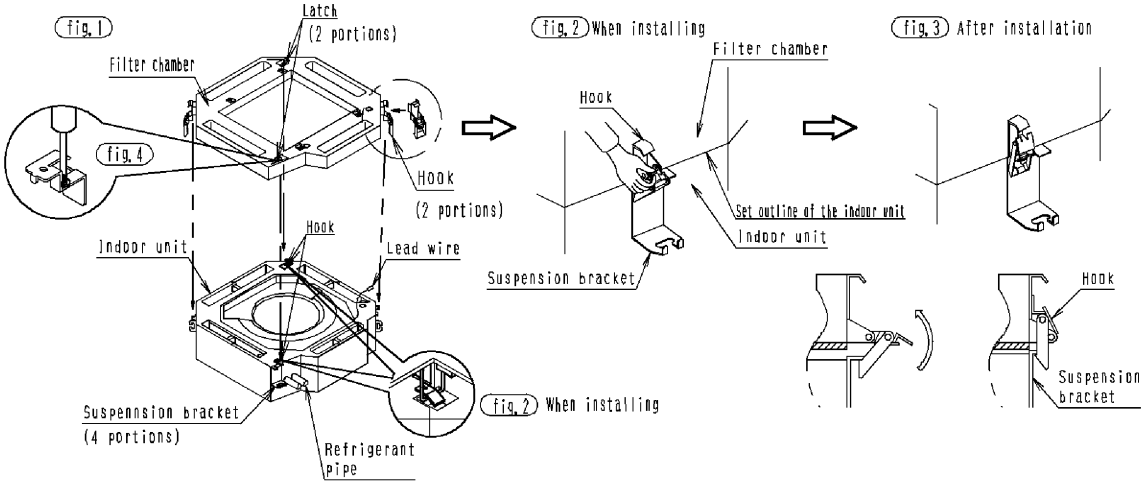
- When you instell the Ultra-long life filter, the setting by the remote controller is required. Set the remote controller at the field setting mode and change the setting position number as shown on the table. Refer to the operation manual of remote controller for the field setting.

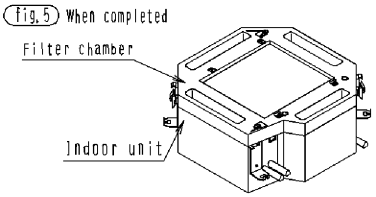
Filter name		Mode No.	Setting switch No.	Setting position No.		Contents of setting
High Effciency filter	Only 80	13 or 23	0	02		———
	Both 80 and 160		1	02		
Ultra-long life filter		10 or 20	0	Less dusty place	01	Filter cleaning period :Every 10, 000 hrs
				Dusty place	02	Filter cleaning period :Every 5, 000 hrs
			1	02		Filter sign display:Ultra-long life filter

C: 3K011148B

❷ Installation of Filter chamber

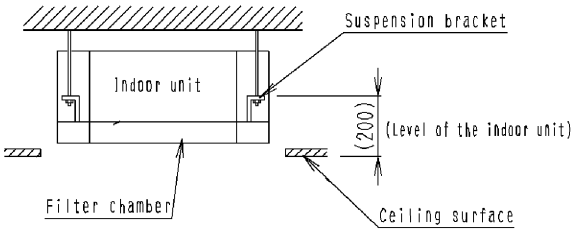
1. Remove the decoration panel. (This is not required for the new installtion)
   - Remove the decoration panel in the reverse step when the panel is installed.
     (Refer to the installation manual of the decoration panel for the details.)
2. Temporarily install the filter chamber to the indoor unit by hanging the lutch on the opposite side of the filter chamber to the hook of the indoor unit body. (2 portions)
   Temporarily hang the remaining 2 hooks of the filter chamber to the hooks on the sides of the indoor unit. (fig. 1) ~ (fig. 3)
   (When the indoor unit is already installed, hang the hook to the suspension bracket temporarily and fix the hook.)
   ※Installation set outline of the indoor unit (fig. 2)
3. Tighten 2hexahead screws located beneath the lutches until the thickness of the sealing material (fig. 4) (fig. 5)
   of chamber reduces to 5~8mm.



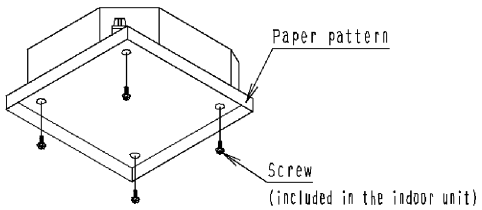


❸ Installation of the indoor unit and the Filter chamber

- Install the indoor unit and the filter chamber.
  Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit.
  (For the height of the unit, refer to the drawing on the right.)
- Be complete installated refrigerant piping, and drain piping.
- Attach the paper pattern for installation to the indoor unit with screws to protect the indoor unit from dirt. [See below]
  (When the indoor unit is newly installed)
  (See below)
- In case of attaching the chamber after installed indoor unit.
  For the height of the unit, change the height shown on the right drawing.



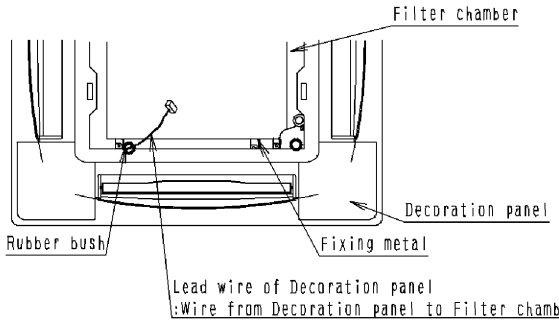
〔Attachment of the paper pattern〕



3K011148B

❹ Installation of Decoration panel and the Filter

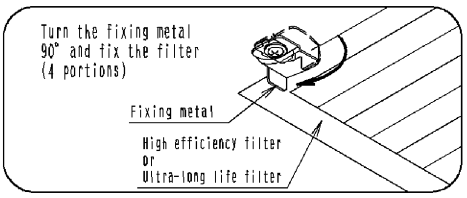
• Install the Decoration panel in accordance with the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.



(Before fixing the Chamber, put the lead wire through Rubber bushing hole.)

• Installation of Filter
After connecting, install the Filter chamber. (fig. 6)

(fig. 6)



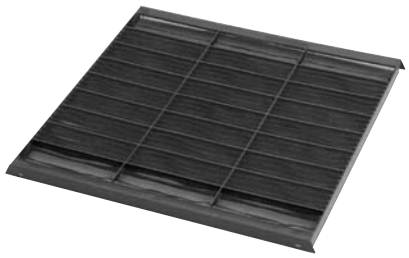
In case of the panel for Wireless remote controller

• Put the Connector for receiver lead wire through rubber bush and connect to the indoor PC board.
• Refer to the installation manual attached to the Wireless remote controller kit(optional)for the detail.

3K011148B

1.18 KAFP551K160 — Replacement Long-life Filter

KAFP551K160

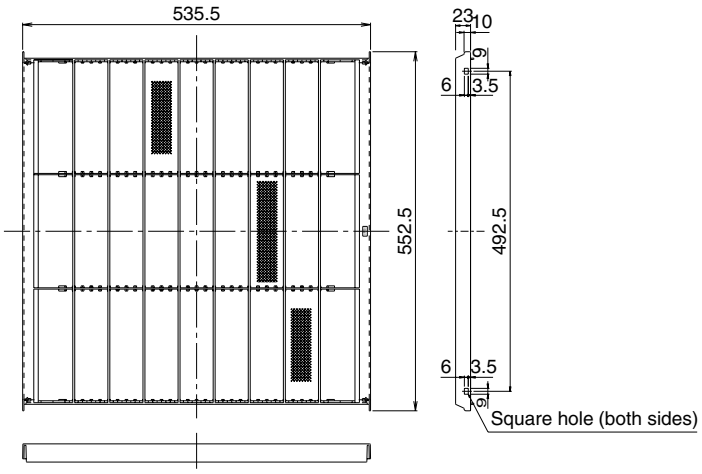


Item	Model	KAFP551K160
Initial pressure loss	Pa	4.9 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less
Average efficiency	%	60 (gravity method)
Air flow rate	m^3/min	18
	l/sec	300
Life	h	5,000 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)
Filter element		Mould-proof and antibacterial resin net
Number of sheets included		1
Mass (Weight)	kg	0.2

Caution

· Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



J : D3K05114

1.19 KAF551CA160 — Replacement Long-life Filter

KAF551CA160

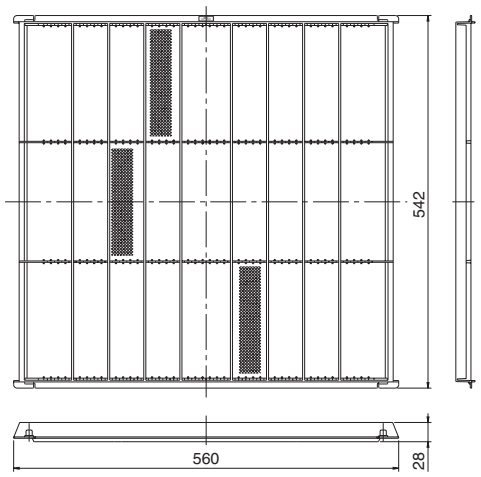


Item	Model	KAF551CA160
Initial pressure loss	Pa	4.9 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less
Average efficiency	%	65 (gravity method)
Air flow rate	m^3/min	18
	l/sec	300
Life	h	5,000 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)
Filter element		Mould-proof resin net
Number of sheets included		1
Mass (Weight)	kg	0.4

Caution

· Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

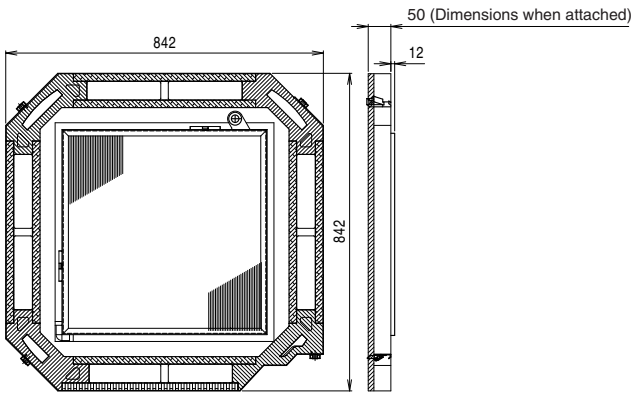
Dimensions **Unit:mm**



JC : D3K3092

1.20 KAFP55B160 — Ultra Long-life Filter Unit (Including Chamber)

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



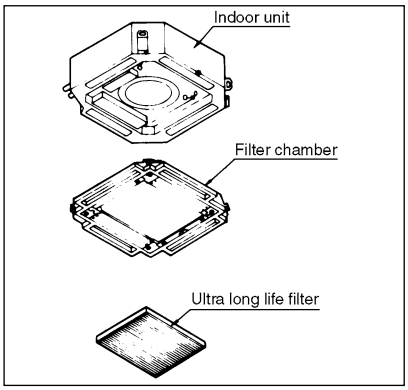
J : D3K07904

Caution

- In order to mount a ultra long life filter unit, setting of the main unit of indoor unit should be made.
- Individual filter (KAFP55H160H) is available as an optional accessory.

Mounting locations	Filter cleaning period
Locations with much dust	Approximately every 5,000 hours
Locations with little dust (e.g. offices)	Approximately every 10,000 hours

Item \ Model		KAFP55B160
Material		Galvanized steel iron. Foam polystyrene.
Initial pressure loss	Pa	8 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less
Average efficiency	%	50 (gravity method)
Air flow rate	m^3/min	29.5
	l/sec	492
Life	h	5,000 (dust concentration 0.3 mg/m^3)
Filter element		Polypropylene honeycomb (with mould-proof)
Number of sheets included		1
Accessories		Installation manual. Sealing pad : 2
Mass (Weight)	kg	6.4



Installation

Caution After thoroughly reading these "Safety precautions", properly perform the installation.

- For the installation parts, accessory parts and specified components must always be used.
  If the specified components are not used, the kit may fall or an air leak may occur.
- After the completion of installation, perform a test run to check that no abnormality is present.

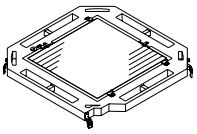
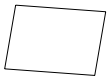
Recommendations

- This product can be mounted to a ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner <Round flow>.
- According to the table below, check the model name of the indoor unit main body, then mount the product.
- At the time of mounting, also refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and to the one for the decoration panel.

Recommendations

The ultra-long life filter can be reused after cleaning.
After the engineering works are completed, provide instructions to the customer about the filter cleaning interval and how to remove the filter.

Parts content Check the following parts.

Name	Ultra-long life filter unit	Sealing pad	Installation manual
Shape			
Number of pieces	1	2	1 (This document)

Combination table

Model name	Installable indoor unit model name / Panel model name	
KAFP55B160	SkyAir	FCQ71K/100K/125K/140KVEA
	VRV	FXFQ25/32/40/50/63/80/100/125PVE
Panel	BYCP125K-W1	

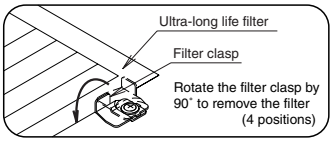
1 Mounting of Ultra-Long Life Filter Unit

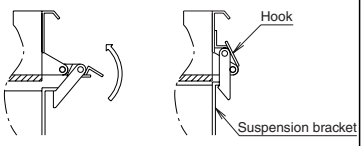
* When the indoor unit main body is already installed, perform the following operations, complying with precautions below.
Shut off power supply before performing the operation.
Remove the decoration panel from the indoor unit main body.
(For details, refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.)
* When the indoor unit main body is newly installed

(1) Remove the ultra-long life filter from the ultra-long life filter unit. (Figure 1)
(2) Mount the ultra-long life filter unit to the indoor unit main body using the hooks (4 positions). (Figure 2) to (Figure 4)
For the fixing method of the hooks, refer to the figure to the right. Mount at 4 positions.

* Mount so that the contours of the indoor unit main body and chamber match. (Figure 3) (Figure 5)

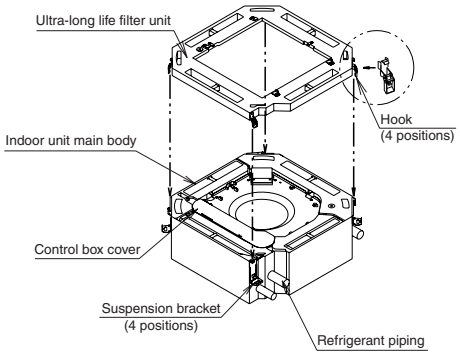
(Figure 1)



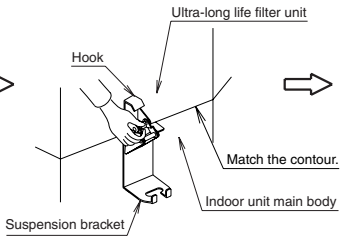


Fixing method of hooks

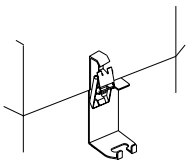
(Figure 2)



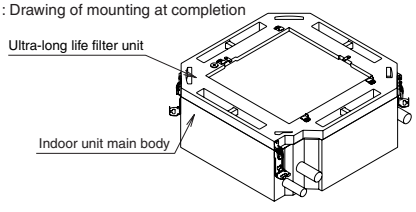
(Figure 3) Mounting status



(Figure 4) Status after mounting



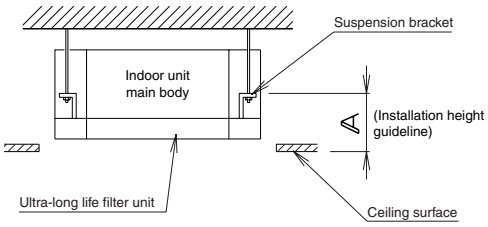
(Figure 5): Drawing of mounting at completion



JC : 3K022852

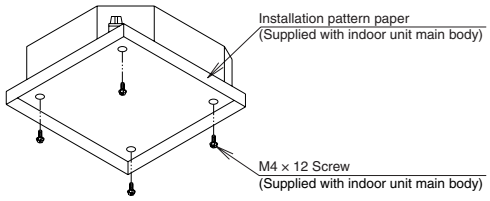
❷ Installation of Indoor Unit Main Body and Ultra-Long Life Filter Unit

- Install the indoor unit main body and ultra-long life filter unit.
  At the time of installation, perform engineering work according to the installation manual attached to the air conditioner's main body. (For the installation height, refer to the figure to the right.)
- When mounting the ultra-long life filter unit to the existing indoor unit main body, change the installation height of the indoor unit main body to height A in the figure to the right.



	A (mm)
BYCP125K-W1	185

- Mount the supplied installation pattern paper to the indoor unit by using screws to cure the indoor unit.
  (Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit main body.)
  (Refer to the figure below.)

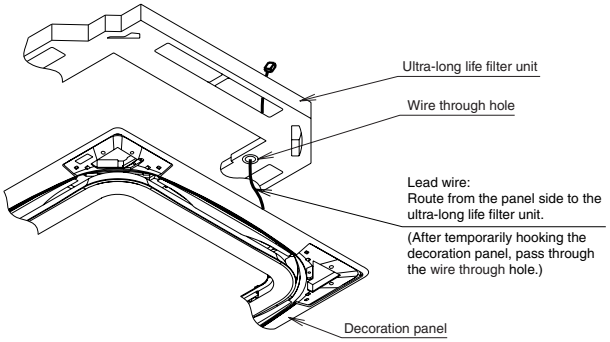


[Mounting of installation pattern paper]

- Complete all the refrigerant and drain piping work for the indoor unit main body.

❸ Mounting of Decoration Panel and Mounting of Ultra-Long Life Filter

- After temporarily hooking the decoration panel, pass the lead wire, which is coming out from the decoration panel, through the wire through hole of the ultra-long life filter unit.
  <Round flow> 1 swing motor lead wire
- Mount the decoration panel according to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.



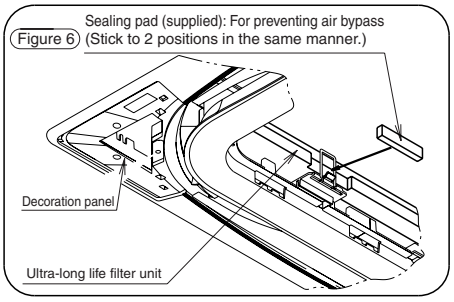


Figure 6

- Mounting of ultra-long life filter
  After the completion of wiring and sticking of sealing pad (2 positions), mount the ultra-long life filter. (Figure 6) (Figure 7)

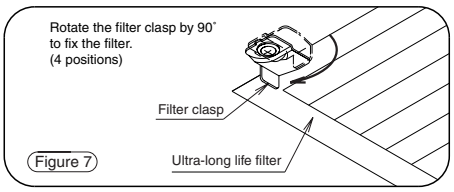


Figure 7

With wireless unit

- Route the connector of the receiver lead wire through the wire through hole, then connect the connector on the indoor printed circuit board assembly.
- For details on the connection method, refer to the installation manual attached to the wireless remote control kit (sold separately).

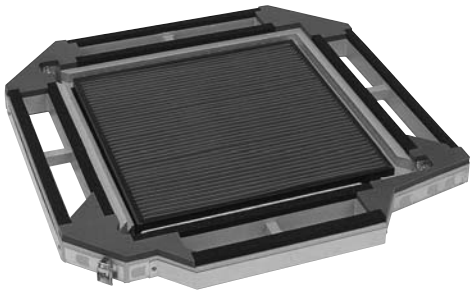
❹ Preparation of Indoor Unit

- With the mounting of a ultra-long life filter unit, setting the indoor unit main body is required.
  Using the field setting mode on the remote control, switch to the second code number shown in the table to the right.
  For the field setting mode, refer to "How to perform field setting" attached to the remote control.

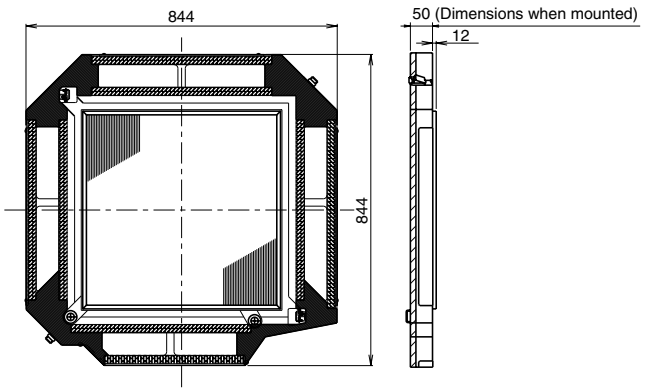
Mode number	First code number	Second code Number		Filter sign display interval time
10 or 20	0	Where there is minimal fouling (Example: Office, etc.)	01	Approximately every 10,000 hours
		Where there is considerable fouling (Example: Pachinko parlor, etc.)	02	Approximately every 5,000 hours
	1	02		Initial setting for ultra-long life filter

JC : 3K022852

1.21 KAF55DA160 — Ultra Long-life Filter Unit (Including Chamber)



Dimensions **Unit:mm**

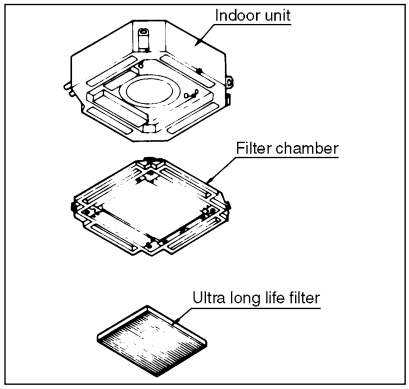


JC : D3K03294

Caution

- In order to mount a ultra long life filter unit, setting of the main unit of indoor unit should be made.
- Individual filter (KAF55KA160H) is available as an optional accessory.

Mounting locations	Filter cleaning period
Locations with much dust	Approximately every 5,000 hours
Locations with little dust (e.g. offices)	Approximately every 10,000 hours



Item \ Model		KAF55DA160
Material		Galvanized steel iron. Foam polystyrene.
Initial pressure loss	Pa	8 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less
Average efficiency	%	50 (gravity method)
Life	h	5,000 (dust concentration 0.3 mg/m^3)
Filter element		Polypropylene honeycomb (with mould-proof)
Number of sheets included		1
Accessories		Installation manual.
Mass (Weight)	kg	4.7

Installation

⚠Caution Before starting the installation work, carefully read the following, safety precautions and observe them to ensure safety during work.

- Make sure to use the attached or spcified components to install the prducts. Otherwise, it may cause air leak or the product may fall.
- After installation, check whether there is no abnomality during the trial operation.

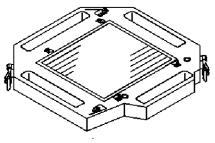
REMARKS

- This kit can be installed to the Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type Air Conditioner<Multi-flow type>.
- Before installation, make sure the indoor unit model name.
- Refer to the installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

Notes

Ultra-long life filter can be reused by cleaning.
After installtion, instruct filter cleaning periad and removeing to customers.

Components Check if following parts are included with your kit.

Name	Ultra-long Life Filter Unit	Installation manual
Shape		
Quantity	1 PC.	1 PC.

Combination table

Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowded is possible	
KAF55DA160	VRV	FXF25·32·40·50·63·80·100·125LVE

❶ Preparation of indoor unit

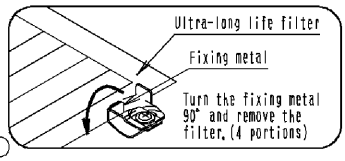
- When you instell the Ultra-long life filter, the setting by the remote controller is required. Set the remote controller at the field setting mode and change the setting position number as shown on the table. Refer to the operation manual of remote controller for the field setting.

Mode No.	Setting switch No.	Setting position No.		Contents of setting
10 or 20	0	Less dusty place	01	Filter cleaning period :Every 10,000 hrs
		Dusty place	02	Filter cleaning period :Every 5,000 hrs
	1	02		Filter sign display:Ultra-long life filter

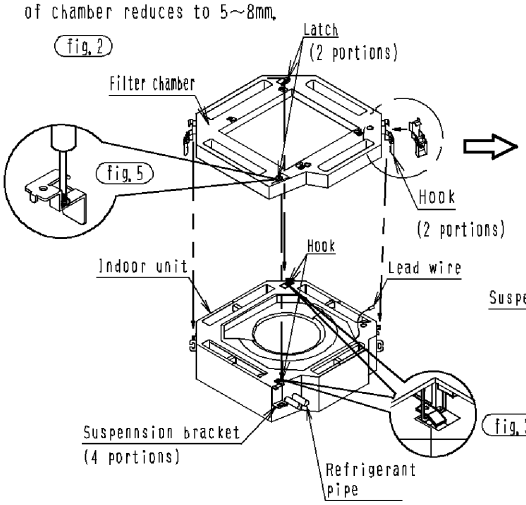
❷ Installation of Ultra-long life filter Unit

1. Remove the decoration panel. (This is not required for the new installtion)
   - Remove the decoration panel in the reverse step when the panel is installed. (Refer to the installation manual of the decoration panel for the details.)
2. REmove the Ultra-long life filter. (fig. 1)
3. Temporarily install the filter chamber to the indoor unit by hanging the lutch on the opposite side of the filter chamber to the hook of the indoor unit body. (2 portions)
   Temporarily hang the remaining 2 hooks of the filter chamber to the hooks on the sides of the indoor unit. (fig. 2) ~ (fig. 4)
   (When the indoor unit is already installed, hang the hook to the suspennsion bracket temporarily and fix the hook.)
   ※Installation set outline of the indoor unit (fig. 3)
4. Tighten 2hexahead screws located beneath the lutches until the thickness of the sealing material (fig. 5) (fig. 6) of chamber reduces to 5~8mm.

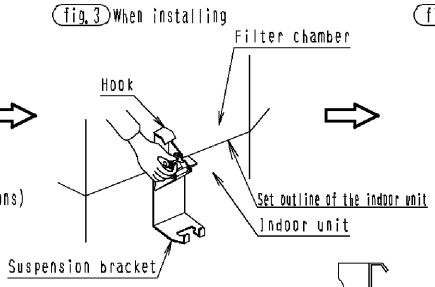
(fig. 1)



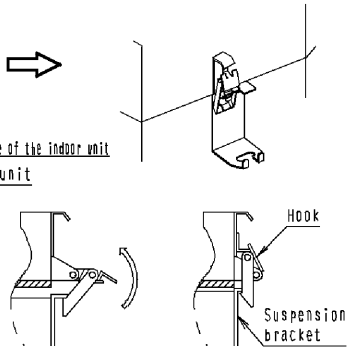
(fig. 2)



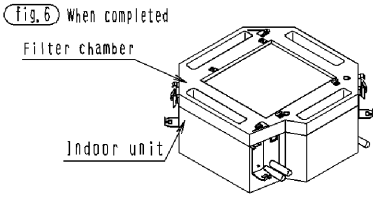
(fig. 3) When installing



(fig. 4) After installation



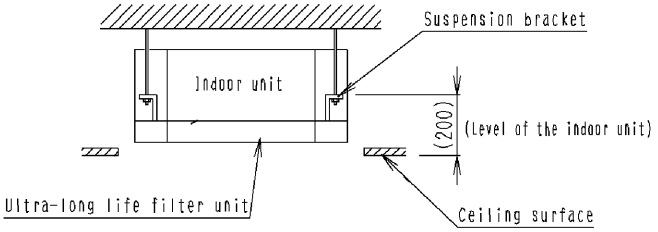
(fig. 6) When completed



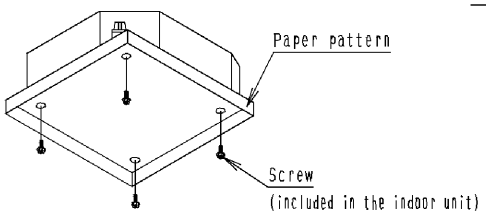
3K011147B

❸ Installation of the indoor unit and the Ultra-long life filter unit

- Install the indoor unit and the Ultra-long life filter unit.
  Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit.
  (For the height of the unit, refer to the drawing on the right.)
- Be complete installated refrigerant piping, and drain piping.
- Attach the paper pattern for installation to the indoor unit with screws to protect the indoor unit from dirt. [See below]
  (When the indoor unit is newly installed)
  (See below)
- In case of attaching the chamber after installed indoor unit.
  For the height of the unit, change the height shown on the right drawing.

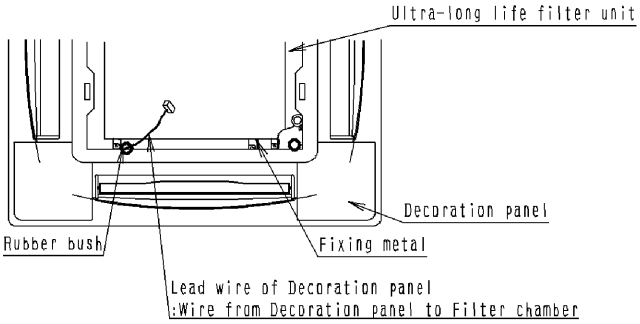


〔Attachment of the paper pattern〕



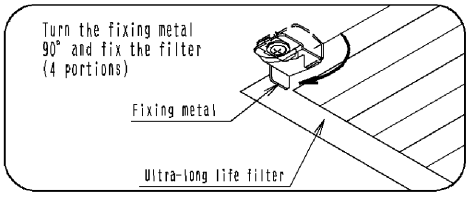
❹ Installation of the Decoration panel and the Ultra-long life filter

- Install the Decoration panel in accordance with the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.



- Installation of the Ultra-long life filter
  After connecting, install the Filter chamber. (fig.7)

(fig.7)



In case of the panel for Wireless remote controller

- Put the Connector for receiver lead wire through rubber bush and connect to the indoor PC board.
- Refer to the installation manual attached to the Wireless remote controller kit(optional)for the detail.

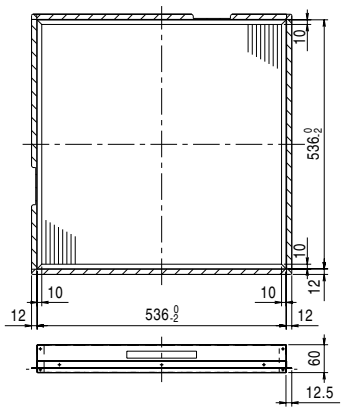
3K011147B

1.22 KAFP55H160H — Replacement Ultra Long-life Filter

KAFP55H160H



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



J : D3K04257

Caution

- Can be water-washed. Can be reused.
- The filter chamber (KDDFP55B160) is required when the ultra long life filter will be installed.

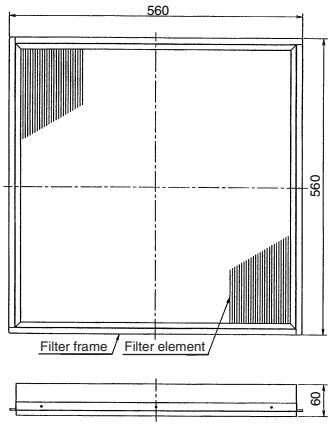
Item	Model	KAFP55H160H
Initial pressure loss	Pa	8 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less
Average efficiency	%	50 (gravity method)
Air flow rate	m^3/min	29.5
	l/sec	492
Life	h	5,000 (dust concentration 0.3 mg/m^3)
Filter element		Mould-proof resin net
Number of sheets included		1
Mass (Weight)	kg	3.4

1.23 KAF55KA160H — Replacement Ultra Long-life Filter

KAF55KA160H



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



JC : D3K2174A

Caution

· Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

Item	Model	KAF55KA160H
Initial pressure loss	Pa	8 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less
Average efficiency	%	50 (gravity method)
Air flow rate	m^3/min	29.5
	l/sec	492
Life	h	5,000 (dust concentration 0.3 mg/m^3)
Filter element		Mould-proof resin net
Number of sheets included		1
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.7

1.24 KDJP55B80 / KDJP55B160 — Branch Duct Chamber

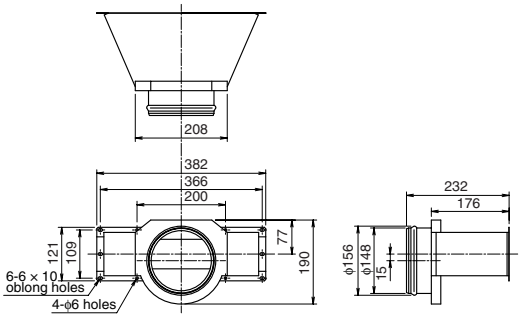
Item \ Model	KDJP55B80	KDJP55B160
Material	Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet (with insulation)	
Accessories	Mounting screws. Blocking pad. Tape for fixing the blocking pad. Opening sealing material. Insulation material. Installation manual.	

Caution

1. When mounting, refer to the installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

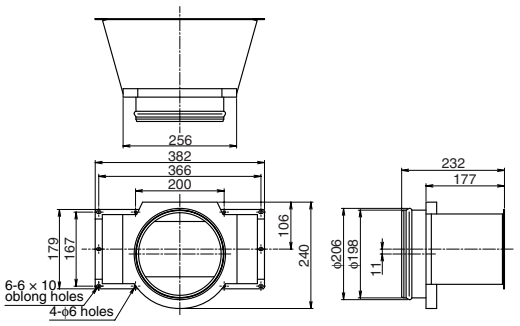
Dimensions **Unit:mm**

KDJP55B80



J : D3K07974A

KDJP55B160



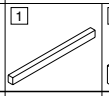
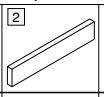
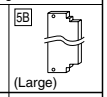
J : D3K07975A

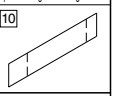
Installation

Precautions

- This product can be mounted to a ceiling mounted cassette-type air conditioner <round flow>.
- According to the table to the right, check the model name of the indoor unit, then mount the product. At the time of mounting, also refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit main body and to the one for the decoration panel.
- For the duct (field supplied) to be connected, those specified in the table to the right are recommended.

Parts content Check the following parts.

Name		Main body insulator			Main body opening sealant		
Shape/ Number		1 	2 	3 	4 	5A (Small) 	5B (Large) 
Number of pieces	80	1	1	2	2	2	—
	160					1	1

Name		Branch duct chamber	Mounting screw	Installation manual	Sealing material	Tape for fixing the sealing material
Shape/ Number		6 	7  M4×16	8 	9 	10 
Number of pieces	80	1	10	1	2	2
	160					

Combination table

Model name		Installable indoor unit model name
KDJP55B80	SkyAir	FCQ71KVEA
	VRV	FXFQ25/32/40/50/63/80PVE
KDJP55B160	SkyAir	FCQ100K/125K/140KVEA
	VRV	FXFQ100/125PVE

Recommended duct

Branch duct chamber	Connecting duct kit name
KDJP55B80	K-FDK151D (1 m) or K-FDK152D (2 m) (Flexible duct: Nominal diameter of ϕ150)
KDJP55B160	K-FDK201D (1 m) or K-FDK202D (2 m) (Flexible duct: Nominal diameter of ϕ200)

1 Preparation Before Installation

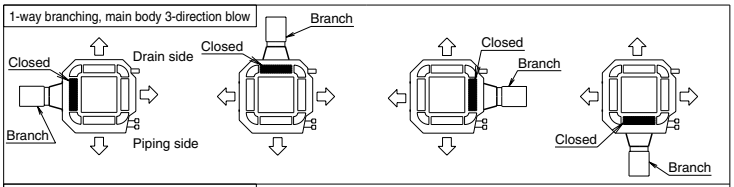
With this branch duct, an independent 4-way and simultaneous 2-branch drawing are also possible.

- With this branch duct chamber, the blow directions shown in the figure to the right can be selected. Select the blow direction that is most appropriate for the room shape and installation position. (Blow directions other than those in the figure to the right cannot be selected.)
- From the external static pressure/air volume characteristics (refer to the Engineering Data), select the duct length and air outlet.

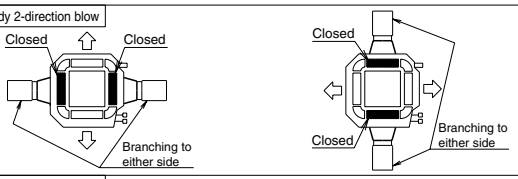
Precautions

- Be sure to securely block the air outlet of the indoor unit main body to which the branch duct chamber is mounted. If the blocking is incomplete, water spraying or condensation may occur. Do not block the corner sections. (Refer to 4 Mounting of Sealing Material to Indoor Unit .)
- When mounting the branch duct chamber, be sure to perform field setting of the indoor unit main body. (Refer to 5 Field Setting .)

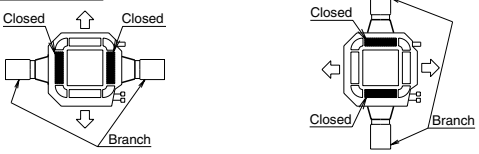
1-way branching, main body 3-direction blow



1-way branching, main body 2-direction blow



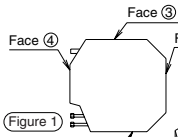
2-way branching, main body 2-direction blow — Another branch duct chamber set is necessary.

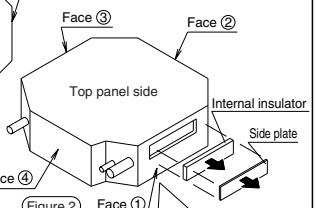


2 Mounting of Branch Duct Chamber

When an installation is performed after mounting the branch duct chamber to the indoor unit main body (at new installation), do not apply force to the branch duct chamber. (Deformation may occur.)

(1) Select the position where the branch duct chamber is mounted.
(2) Mount the branch duct chamber to the indoor unit according to the following procedure. (Figure 2 is an example of the face ① side.)
1) Along the slit, cut the side plate of the indoor unit to which the branch duct chamber is mounted. Then, cut the internal insulator along the groove.
(Use nippers, etc., to cut the slit section, and cutter, etc., to cut the groove section.) Figure 2





⚠ For the port opening operation, do not use a tool that produces chips, such as a saw. The drain system may become clogged, and a water leak may occur.

2) Use the sealant for sticking so that the gaps between the side plate and internal insulator are filled around the full circumference. Figure 3
- First, stick the main body's opening sealant 4 to left and right of the opening, and the main body's opening sealant 5A (5B) to the upper and lower sides of the opening.
At this time, fold the main body opening sealant towards the inside so that the gap between the side plate and internal insulator is no longer visible.

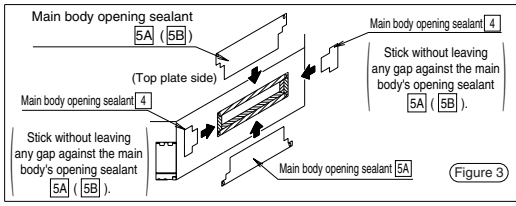
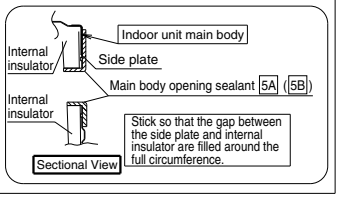
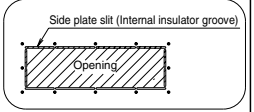


Figure 3





JC : 1P267944C

3) Mount the branch duct chamber 6. (Figure 4)

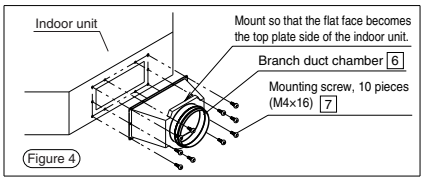


Figure 4

(3) Stick the main body insulator to the indoor unit. (The figure is an example of the face ① side) (Figure 5)

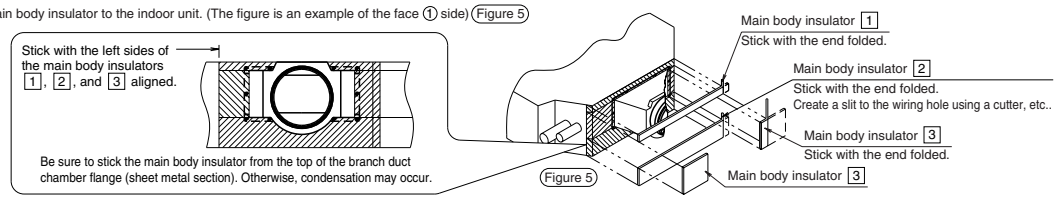


Figure 5

3 Duct Connection <<Duct: KDJP55B80 ··· Nominal diameter of ϕ150 KDJP55B160 ··· Nominal diameter of ϕ200>>

1) Connect the duct to the outside of the branch duct chamber. (Figure 6)
- After the connection, wrap the connection area with tape (field supplied) to prevent an air leak.
- Apply insulation for all the ducts.

Precautions Do not perform duct manipulation described below.

a) Extreme bending b) Multiple bending c) Reduction of connecting duct diameter



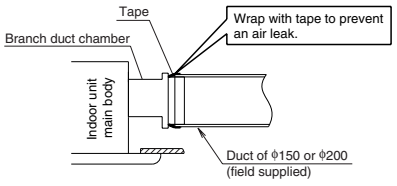
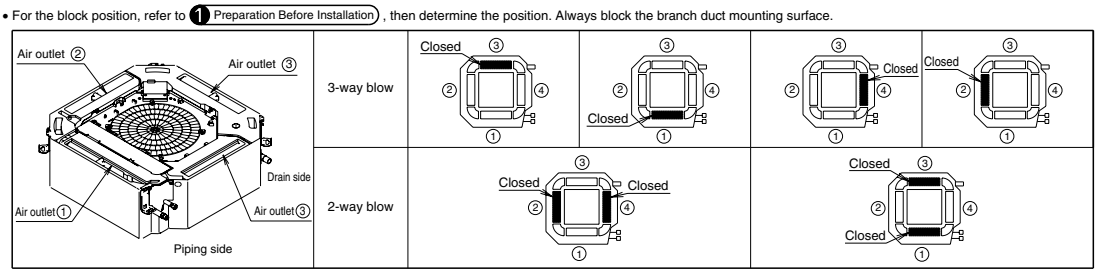


Figure 6

* 1. Beware that, in accordance with the local law, there may be cases where the use of a nonflammable duct is compulsory.
2. When a duct goes through fire protection areas, including a fire proof structure, beware that, in accordance with the local law, it may be required to establish a damper or to build a structure that is not detrimental to fire protection.
3. When penetrating a wooden construction wall with a metal duct, apply electrical insulation to the duct and wall.

4 Mounting of Sealing Material to Indoor Unit <<With the sealing material supplied in this kit, blocking of two openings can be performed.>>

- For the block position, refer to 1 Preparation Before Installation, then determine the position. Always block the branch duct mounting surface.

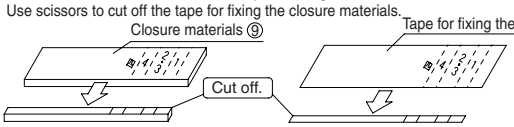


<Round flow>

(1) Prepare the closure materials and the tape for fixing the closure materials to suit the outlets to be closed (①to④) and apply them to the outlets.

Precautions When pasting the closure materials to the tape, be sure that the number printed on the closure materials are visible so that the closure materials can be identified easily.

1) Cut the closure materials ⑨ and the tape for fixing the closure materials ⑩ along the longitudinal perforation (--- Part). Use scissors to cut off the tape for fixing the closure materials.

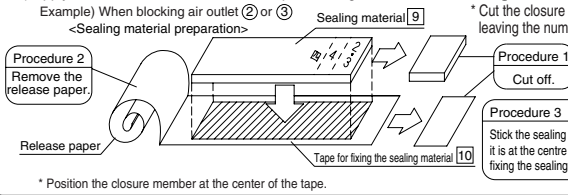


2) Cut the closure materials ⑨ and the tape for fixing the closure materials ⑩ along the latitudinal perforation (--- Part), leaving the number printed on the closure materials intact. (For the outlet ④, leave the number "4".) Use scissors to cut off the tape for fixing the closure materials.

3) Apply the closure materials ⑨ to the tape for fixing the closure materials ⑩.

Example) When blocking air outlet ② or ③

<Sealing material preparation>



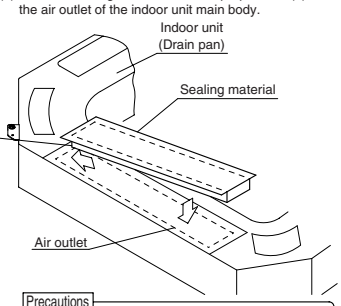
* Cut the closure materials and the tape along the perforation, leaving the number of the outlet to close intact.

Procedure 3
Stick the sealing material so that it is at the centre of the tape for fixing the sealing material.

Precautions
The sealing material has a directional property. Be sure to stick the sealing material to the tape for fixing the sealing material so that the printed number of the outlet to be blocked becomes visible.

* Position the closure member at the center of the tape.

(2) Stick the sealing material that was prepared in (1) to the air outlet of the indoor unit main body.



Precautions
When pasting the closure materials to the outlet, be careful not to leave any gap or a rising part between the closure materials and the outlet. It may cause leaking air and condensation.

5 Mounting of Decoration Panel

For safety, be sure to shut off power supply before starting the decoration panel mounting operation and connecting the connectors for swinging.

JC: 1P267944C

Refer to the installation manual attached to the decoration panel.
After mounting the decoration panel, check that no gap is present between the decoration panel and the unit's main body.

6 Field Setting

- When mounting the branch duct chamber, setting the indoor unit main body is required. After all the engineering work is completed, perform setting together with field setting of the indoor unit.
Using the field setting mode on the remote control, switch to the second code number shown in the table to the right. For the field setting mode, refer to "How to perform field setting" attached to the remote control.

Branch blow pattern	Mode number	First code number	Second code number
1-way branching, 3-direction blow	13 or 23	1	02
1-way branching and 2-way blow or 2-way branching and 2-way blow			03

JC : 1P269813A

1.25 KDP55DA80 / KDP55DA160— Branch Duct Chamber

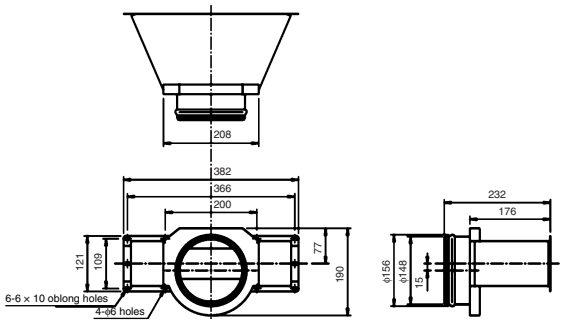
Item \ Model	KDP55DA80	KDP55DA160
Material	Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet (with insulation)	
Accessories	Mounting screws. Blocking pad. Tape for fixing the blocking pad. Opening sealing material. Insulation material. Moisture absorber for swing flap. Installation manual.	

Caution

1. When mounting, refer to the installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

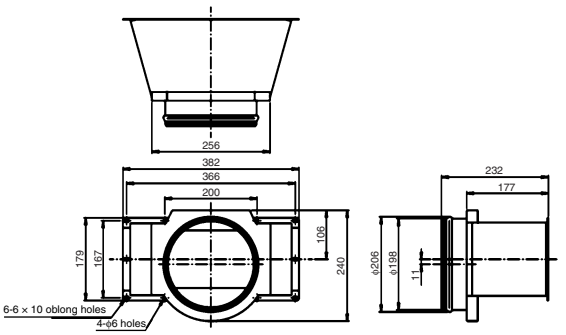
Dimensions **Unit:mm**

KDP55DA80



JC : D3K03266

KDP55DA160



JC : D3K03267

Installation

REMARKS

- This kit can be installed to the Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type Air Conditioner<Multi-flow type>.
- Before installation, make sure the indoor unit model name.
- Refer to the installation manuals for the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

Combination table

Kit name	Indoor unit model that party crowed is possible	
KDP55DA80	VRV	FXF25・32・40・50・63・80LVE
KDP55DA160	VRV	FXF100・125LVE

Contents of kit Check if the following parts are included with this kit.

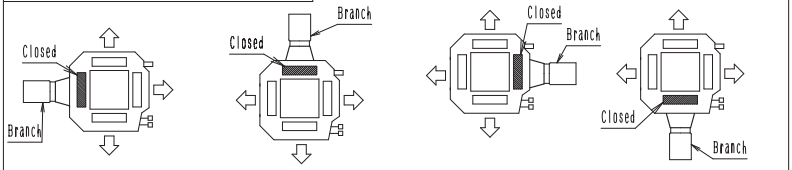
NAME		Branch Duct Chamber	Screw	Installation Manual	Sealing Material	Tape for fixing the Sealing Material
Shape・Number			M4x16			
Q'ty	80	1 PC.	10 PCS.	1 PC.	2 PCS.	2 PCS.
	160					

NAME		Indoor unit insulation material				Indoor unit opening seal material			Moisture Absorber for Swing flap	Spacer	Spacer installation screw
Shape・Number		①	②	③	④	⑤ (Small)	⑥A (Large)	⑥B (Large)	⑦ There are 5 types (colors) to match the panel color	⑧	⑨ (M3x10)
Q'ty	80	1 PC.	1 PC.	1 PC.	1 PC.	2 PCS.	2 PCS.	—	3 PCS. (5types)	1 PC.	1 PC.
	160						1 PC.	1 PC.			

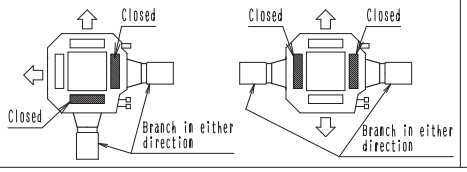
1 Pre-installation preparations This branch duct can be used for 4 directions independently or 2 directions at once.

- You may choose the following outlet directions for this branch duct chamber. Select the outlet direction that best fits the shape of the room or the installation location. (Outlet directions other than the below cannot be selected)
- Select the duct length and outlet vent according to the external static sound pressure and fan strength characteristics(refer to the technical guide).

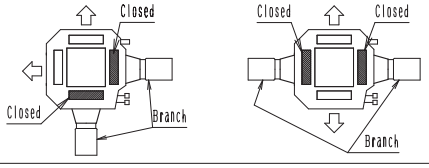
1-direction branch, indoor unit 3-way air discharge



1-direction branch, indoor unit 2-way air discharge



2-direction branch, indoor unit 2-way air discharge



Caution

- Be sure to completely seal off the air outlet on the indoor unit to which the branch duct chamber is attached. If the seal in imperfect, this may cause water splattering and condensation.
  (REfer to 4 Installation of the sealing material to the indoor unit)
- When attaching the Branch Duct Chamber, be sure to perform the setting for indoor unit.
  (Refer to 5 Setting for indoor unit)

C : 1P089650C

❷ Installation of the Branch Duct Chamber

When installing the indoor unit after attaching the Branch Duct Chamber (for a new installation), avoid applying undue pressure on the Branch Duct Chamber. (This may damage it.)

(1) Select the position to attach the Branch Duct Chamber. (fig. 1)

(2) Attach the Branch duct chamber to the indoor unit following the steps below. (the fig. shows the ① side.)

1) Cut off the indoor unit side panel to which the Branch duct chamber will be attached along the slit. Next, cut off the interior insulating material along the groove. (Cut off the slit part using nippers, and the groove part using cutters.) (fig. 2)

2) Attach the sealing material so that it hides the gap between the side panel and interior insulating material. (fig. 3)

- First attach the indoor unit opening seal material (small) ⑤ to right and left of the opening, then the indoor unit opening seal material (large) ⑥ above and below. At this time, fold the indoor unit opening seal material in so that the gap between the side panel and interior insulating material is hidden.

3) Attach the Branch duct chamber. (fig. 4)

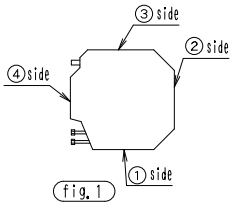


fig. 1

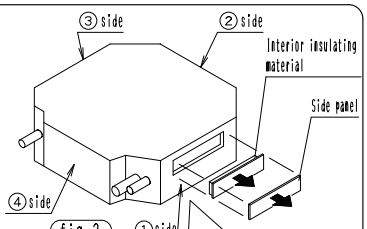
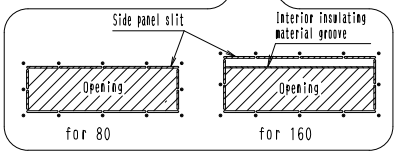


fig. 2



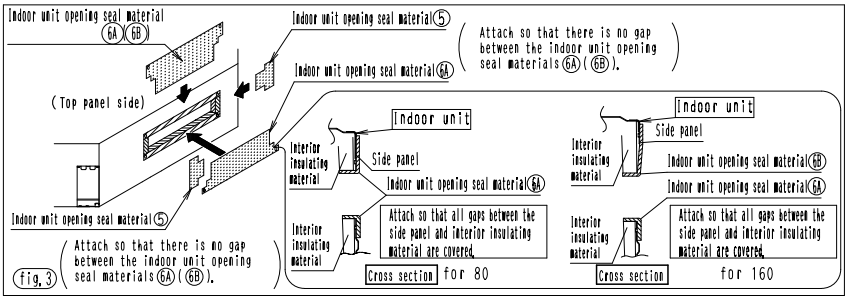


fig. 3

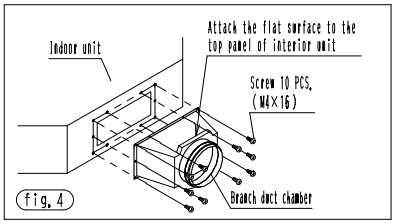


fig. 4

(3) Attach the Indoor unit insulating material to the indoor unit. (The fig. shows the ① side.) (fig. 5)

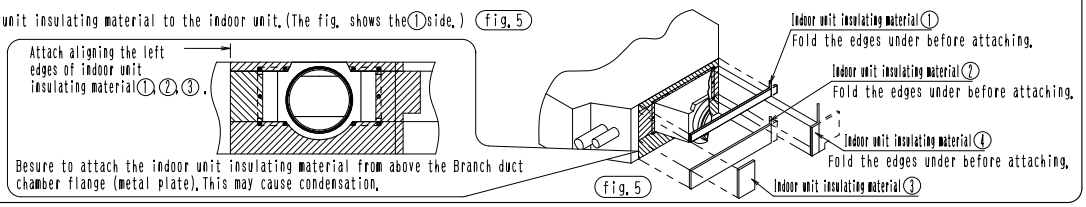


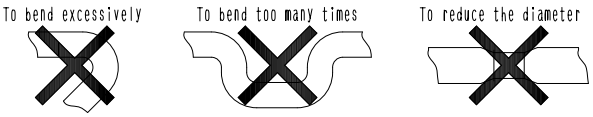
fig. 5

❸ Duct connection 《Duct: KDP55DA80 ···diameter φ150 KDP55DA160 ···diameter φ200》

1) Attach the duct to the outside of the Branch duct chamber. (fig. 6)

- Wrap the duct tape(Field supplied)around the connection to prevent air leak.
- Insulate the duct to prevent condensate.

2) Do not perform the following duct work.



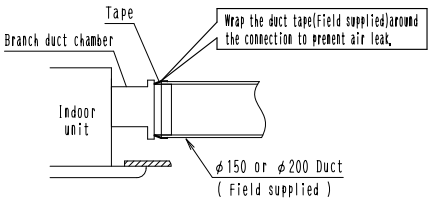


fig. 6

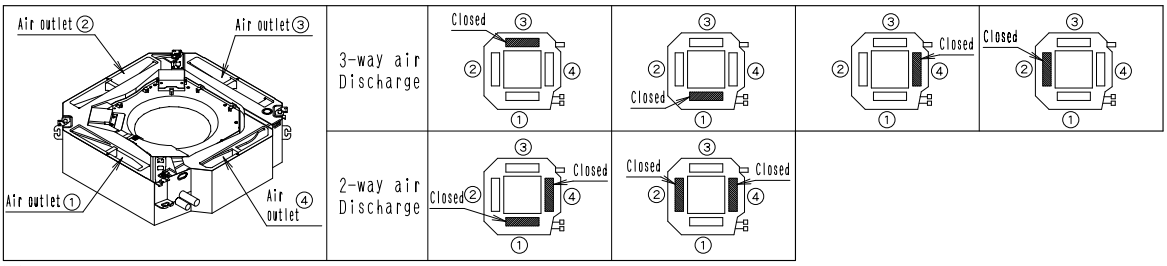
Caution

- follow the local code or regulation to install the duct.
- In case that metal duct is penetrated through wooden wall, make sure the duct and the wall are electrically insulated.

C : 1P089650C

❹ Installation of the sealing material to the indoor unit 《The sealing material included in this kit is enough for two air outlets.》

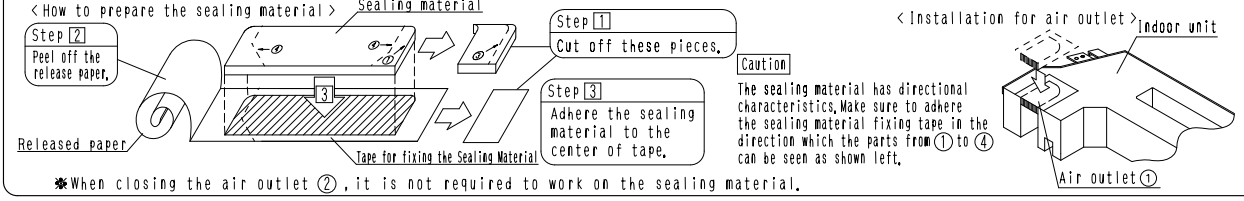
● Select which air outlet to be closed off referring to ❶ Pre-installation preparations. Be sure to close off the branch duct attachment side.



(1)Prepare the sealing material and the tape for fixing the sealing material according to the air outlet No. To be closed.
- Cut off the sealing material and the tape along the perforated lines (marked – – –).
- Adhere the sealing material to tape. (Make sure that the sealing material is placed at the center of the tape.)

(2)Adhere the sealing material prepared according to the procedure(1)to the indoor unit air outlet.

Example)For closing the air outlet ①



※When closing the air outlet ②, it is not required to work on the sealing material.

❺ Setting for indoor unit

● When you install the Branch duct chamber, the setting by the remote controller is required.
Set the remote controller at the field setting mode and change the setting position number as shown on the table.
Refer to the operation manual of remote controller for the field setting.

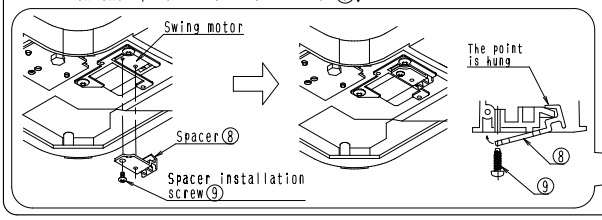
Branch and air discharge patterns	Mode No.	Setting switch No.	Setting position No.
1-direction branch, 3-way air Discharge	13 or 23	1	02
1-direction branch, 2-way air Discharge or 2-direction branch, 2-way air Discharge			03

❻ Installation of Decoration panel

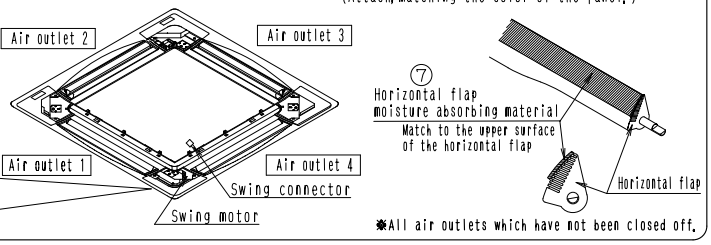
Please turn off the power supply for safety absolutely, before you do affixation of insulation and connected work of swing conector.

Refer to the installation manual for the decoration panel.
After installing the decoration panel, make sure there are no gaps between it and the indoor unit.

● Please install spacer⑧ on the swing motor with the spacer installation screw⑨.



● Attach the horizontal flap moisture absorbing material to the horizontal flaps on the Air outlet as per the figure at bottom.
(Attach, matching the color of the panel.)



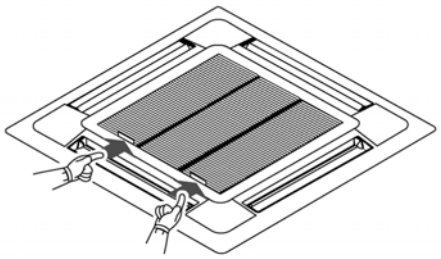
※All air outlets which have not been closed off.

1P089650C

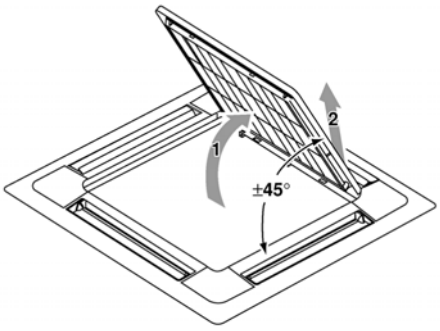
2. FXZQ

2.1 BYFQ60B8W1 — Decoration Panel

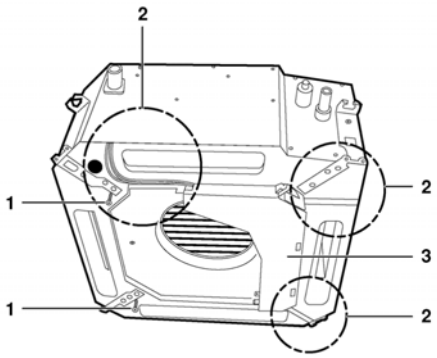
Installation



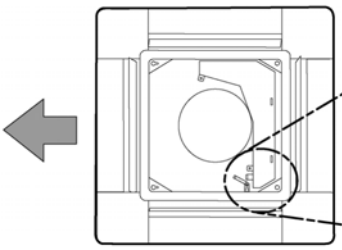
1



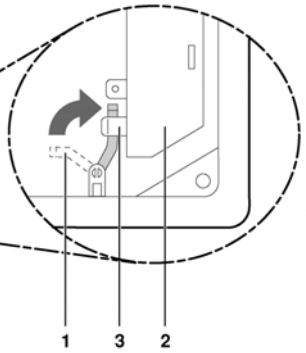
2



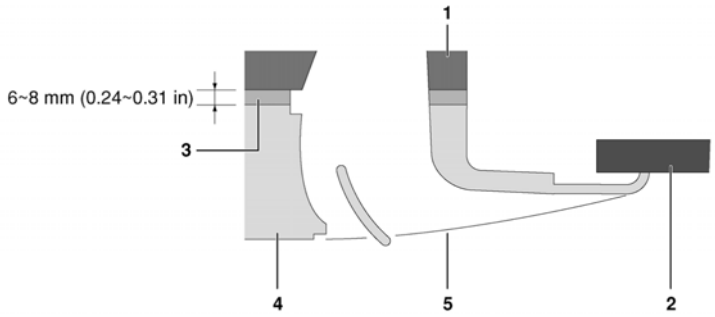
3



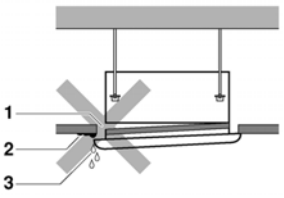
4



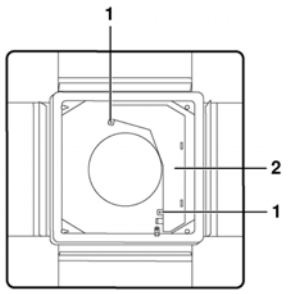
5

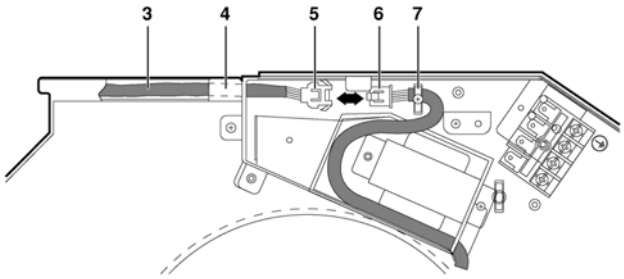


6



7





8

4PW42160-1

DAIKIN

BYFQ60B8W1
BYFQ60B8W1U

Decoration panel

Installation manual

Read this manual attentively before installation. Do not throw it away. Keep it in your files for future reference.

Improper installation or attachment of equipment or accessories could result in electric shock, short-circuit, leaks, fire or other damage to the equipment. Be sure only to use accessories made by Daikin that are specifically designed for the use with the equipment and have them installed by a professional.

If unsure of installation procedures or use, always contact your dealer for advice and information.

BEFORE INSTALLATION

- Leave the unit inside its packaging until you reach the installation site.
- Refer to the warning symbols on the unit.

Rotary fan



Cut off the main power before opening the grille.

- Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit for items not described in this manual.

NOTE **To the installer**

Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him or her the operation manual of the indoor unit.

Accessories

Installation manual	
Screws (4x)	

PREPARATION BEFORE INSTALLATION

For this unit, you are able to select air flow directions. To discharge air in 2 or 3 directions, it is necessary to purchase the optional blocking pad kit.

Handling of the decoration panel

To prevent any damage to the decoration panel, take care of the following:

- Never place the panel with the front facing down.
- Never let the panel lean against a wall.
- Never put it down on a projecting object.
- Never touch or put pressure on the swing flap in order to prevent malfunction of the swing flap.

Preparing the decoration panel for installation

1 Remove the suction grille from the decoration panel.

- Push the suction grille lever in the direction of the arrow and open the grille. (See figure 1)
- Detach the suction grille from the decoration panel by lifting the grille up approximately 45 degrees so the grille can be removed. (See figure 2)

INSTALLATION OF THE DECORATION PANEL TO THE INDOOR UNIT

Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit for details on installing the indoor unit.

1 Hold the decoration panel against the indoor unit by matching the piping side and drain side marks on the decoration panel with the position of the piping section and drain section of the indoor unit.

2 Install the decoration panel.

1 Make sure that the swing flap motor lead wire does not come out of the groove for routing the wire inside the indoor unit (3 locations). If it has, put it back in. (Connecting the decoration panel with the wire out of the groove may cause water leakage.)

2 Provisionally tighten the 2 supplied screws approximately 5 mm (0.2 in) into the indoor unit at the side opposite the switch box. (See figure 3)

1 Supplied screws
2 Groove for wire routing
3 Switch box

3 Slide the panel in the direction of the arrow, matching the 2 attachment holes ( ) over the provisionally tightened screws. (See figure 4)

4 Turn the decoration panel lever at the side of the indoor unit switch box over the hook located on that switch box. (See figure 5)

1 Lever
2 Switch box
3 Hook

5 Attach the remaining screws and tighten all 4 screws until the thickness of the sealing material between the decoration panel and the indoor unit is reduced to 6~8 mm (0.24~0.31 in). (See figure 6)

1 Indoor unit
2 Ceiling
3 Sealing material
4 Decoration panel
5 Air outlet

Precautions

- Improper tightening of the screws (see figure 7) may cause air to leak into the unit and air to escape between the ceiling and the decoration panel (1), resulting in contamination (2) and dew formation (3).
- If there is a gap remaining between the ceiling and the decoration panel after tightening the screws, re-adjust the indoor unit body height.

3 Wiring of the decoration panel (See figure 8)

1	Screws (2)
2	Switch box
3	Swing flap motor lead wire
4	Hang the swing flap motor lead wire on this tab
5	Connector of the decoration panel swing flap motor
6	Connector of the indoor unit
7	Clamp Pass the swing flap motor lead wire through the clamp as shown. After connection, store the connector inside the switch box.

1 Remove the switch box cover after making sure that the power to the unit is off.
2 Connect the connectors of the swing flap motor lead wire.
3 Put the switch box cover back in place and fix it with the 2 screws again.

- If the connectors are not connected properly, the swing flap will not work.
- Make sure that the swing flap motor lead wire is not caught between the indoor unit and the decoration panel.

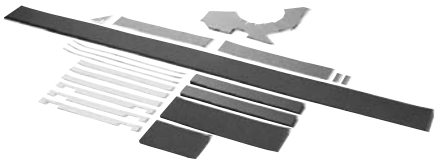
INSTALLATION OF THE SUCTION GRILLE

Install the suction grille by reversing the procedure shown in "Preparing the decoration panel for installation" on page 1.

- The suction grille may be installed in 4 directions by simply turning it 90 degrees.
- Change the direction when adjusting the direction of the suction grille of multiple units or to comply with the demands of the customer.

NOTE Be careful not to get the swing flap motor lead wire get caught when installing the suction grille.

2.2 KDBH44BA60 — Sealing Material of Air Discharge Outlet



Component

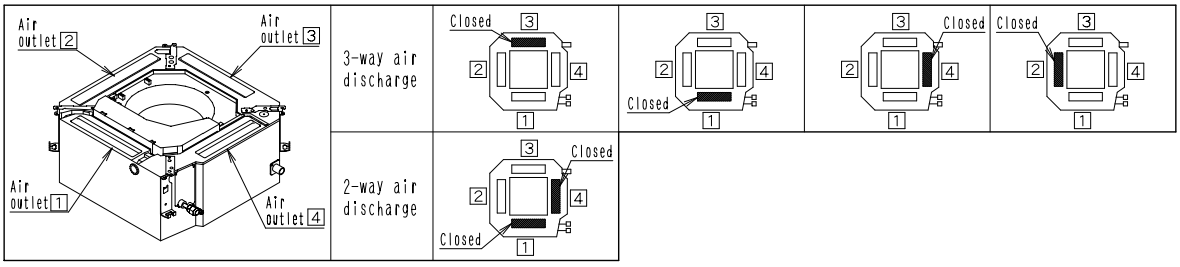
Name	Sealing material	Tape for fixing the sealing material	Insulation for side plate			Moisture absorber for bell-mouth
Quantity	2 pieces	2 pieces	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece
Shape	①	②	③-1 100mm×179mm	③-2 100mm×370mm	③-3 100mm×1538mm	④
Name	Moisture absorber for swing flap		Moisture absorber for panel edge	Moisture absorber for attached point	Moisture absorber for flesh air intake	
Quantity	3 pieces	3 pieces	3 pieces	1 piece	2 pieces	
Shape	⑤ 25mm×361mm	⑥	⑦ 8mm×450mm	⑧	⑨ 50mm×20mm	

❶ The direction of air discharge and the positioning of sealing material

(1) Selection of the air outlet

- Select the direction of air discharge from the following table according to the location of the indoor unit.
  Refer to ❷ **Setting for indoor unit** for setting position number.
  Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for selection of installation location.

Caution Never select the direction of air discharge other than the following pattern. (You may have a condensation problem.)

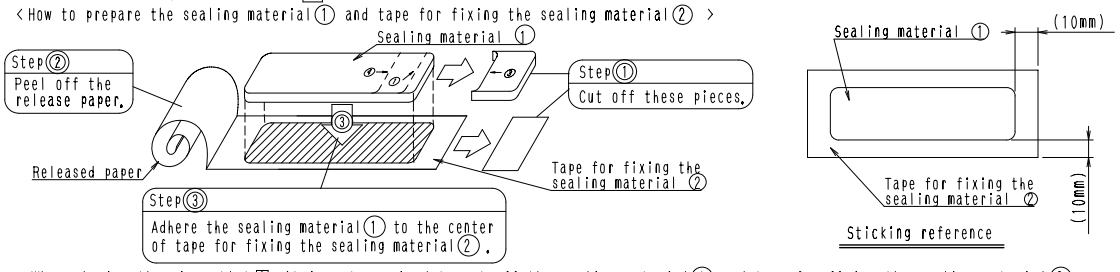


(2) Prepare the sealing material ① and the tape for fixing the sealing material ② according to the air outlet No. to be closed.

- Cut off the sealing material ① and the tape for fixing the sealing material ② along the perforated lines (marked ———).
- Adhere the sealing material ① to tape for fixing the sealing material ② .
  (Make sure that the sealing material ① is placed at the center of the tape for fixing the sealing material ② .)

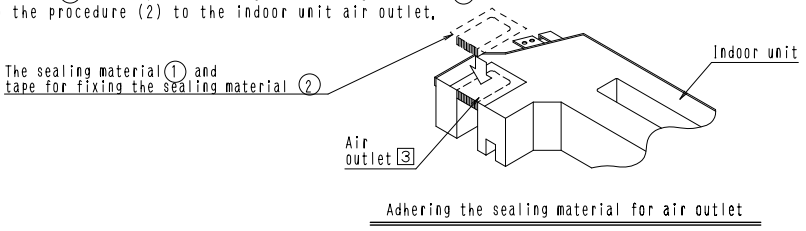
Example) For closing the air outlet 3

< How to prepare the sealing material ① and tape for fixing the sealing material ② >



※When closing the air outlet 2, it is not required to cut off the sealing material ① and tape for fixing the sealing material ② .

(3) Adhere the sealing material ① and tape for fixing the sealing material ② prepared according to the procedure (2) to the indoor unit air outlet.



Adhering the sealing material for air outlet

1P109292B

❷ Setting for indoor unit

It is required to make a field setting from the remote controller according to how the indoor units are installed.
The direction of air discharge must also be set by the remote controller.

- The 3 different kinds of setting such as "Mode number", "The setting switch number" and "The setting position number" must be made by the remote controller.
- Refer to the item of "Field setting" in the operation manual of the remote controller for the setting procedure.

Setting according to number of use of the air discharge.
Check the setting position number corresponding to the direction of air discharge in a table, below.

(Content of setting)

(Number of use of air outlets)	Mode number	The setting switch number	The setting position number
3-way air discharge	13(23)	1	02
2-way air discharge			03

❸ Installation of the insulation

Please turn off the power supply for safety absolutely, before you do installation of the decoration panel and affixation of insulation and connected work of swing conector.

(1) Adhere the insulations for side plate ③ in position, referring Fig. 1 Fig. 2.
(2) Adhere the moisture absorber for bell-mouth ④ on the inner surface of the bell-mouth.
See Fig. 1 Fig. 2 Fig. 3.

Fig. 1

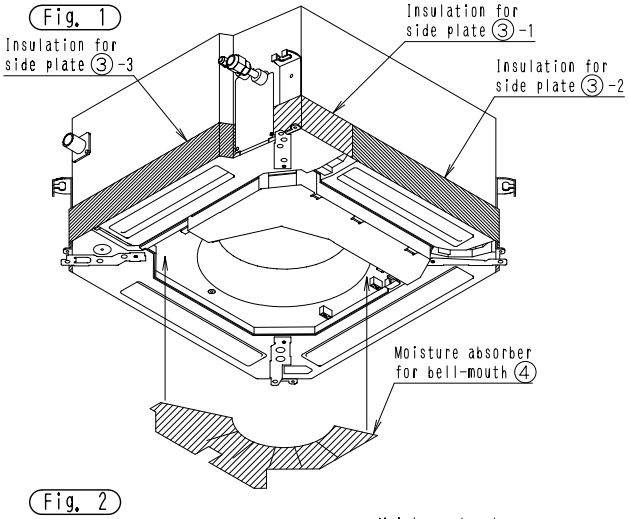


Fig. 2

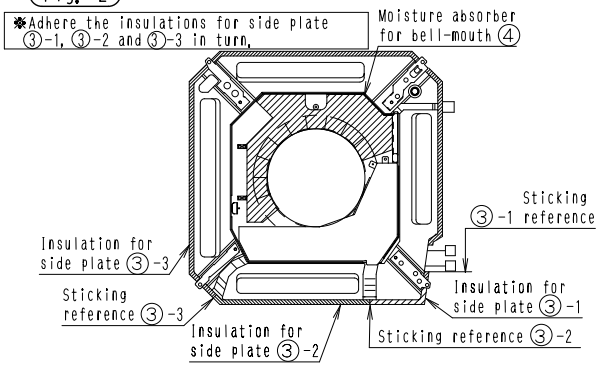
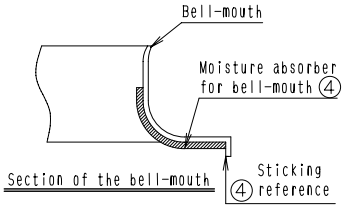


Fig. 3



1P109292B

(3) Confirm the air outlet and NO. not to be closed on the panel. See Fig. 4.
(4) Adhere the moisture absorbers for swing flap ⑤⑥ aligning with the upper edge of the swing flap on the air outlet. And, adhere the moisture absorbers for panel edge ⑦ with the panel edge on the air outlet. See Fig. 5.
(5) Adhere the moisture absorber for attached point ⑧ with the attached point to indoor unit between the air outlet 2 and 3. And, adhere the moisture absorbers for flesh air intake ⑨ with the flesh air intake hole. See Fig. 6.

Fig. 4

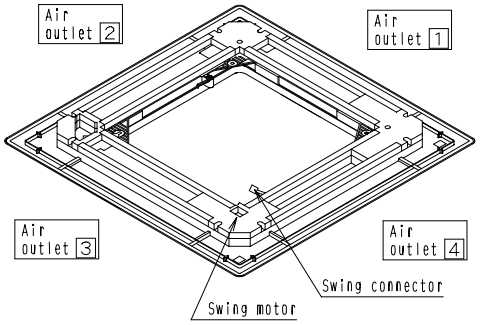


Fig. 5

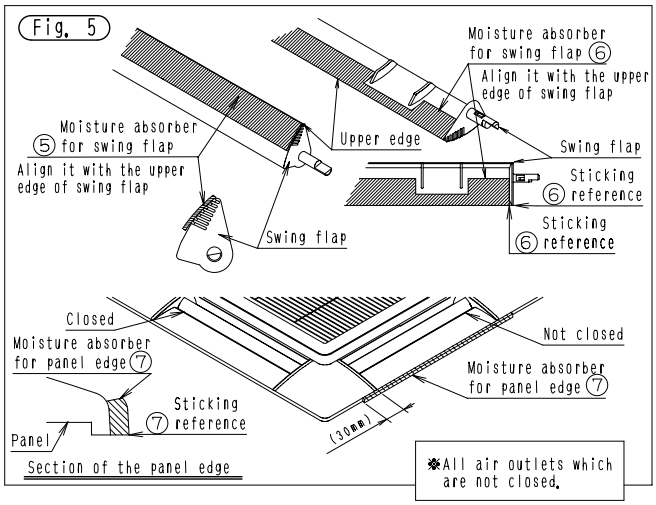
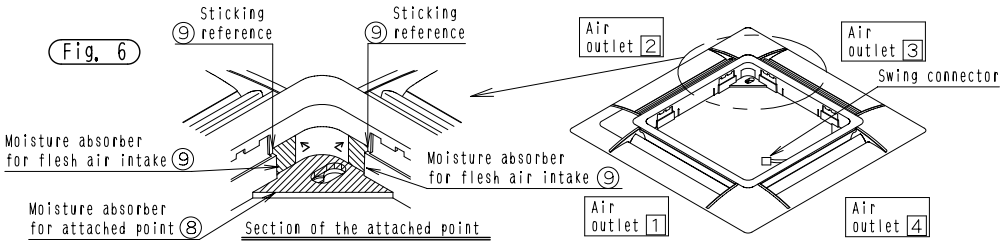


Fig. 6



1P109292B

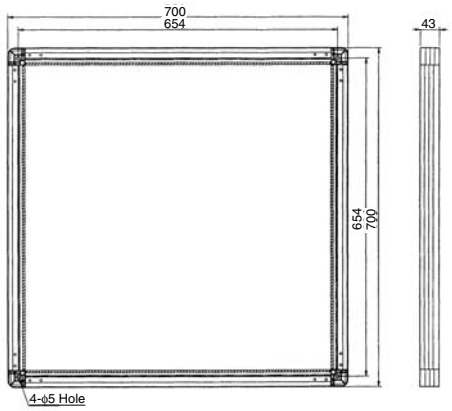
2.3 KDBQ44BA60A — Panel Spacer

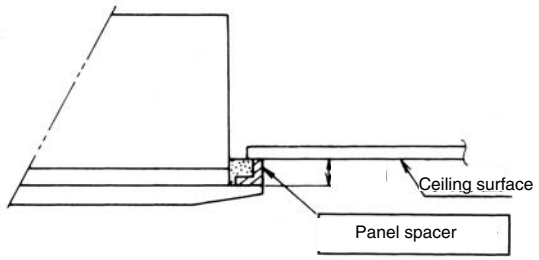


Item	Model	KDBQ44BA60A
Applicable decoration panel		BYFQ60B8W1
Exterior		White
Material		Outside frame: Resin Insulation: Foam polyethylene
Component Parts		Panel spacer. Insulation. Sealant. Mounting screws. Installation manual.
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.5

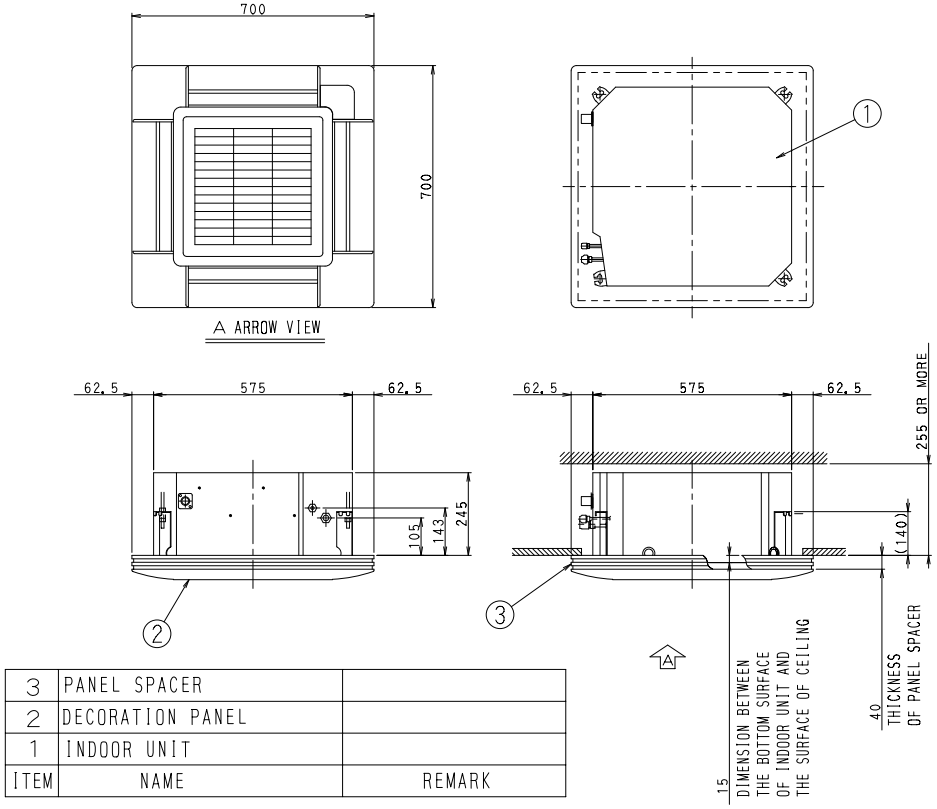
- Using the panel spacer in areas of the ceiling with limited space makes it possible to install the air conditioner.
- Hides the gap between the decoration panel and the ceiling.

Dimensions **Installation** **Unit:mm**





FXZQ + KDBQ44BA60A **Unit:mm**



ITEM	NAME	REMARK
3	PANEL SPACER	
2	DECORATION PANEL	
1	INDOOR UNIT	

3D041038

Installation

Daikin Air Conditioners Panel Spacer Installation manual

KDBQ44BA60A Caution : Before installation, read this safety instruction. 1P107764-1C

Combination table

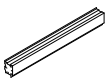
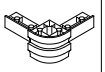
Panel spacer	KDBQ44BA60A
Decoration panel	BYFQ60B8W1

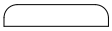
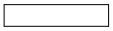
Caution

- When the Panel Spacer is installed, it is not possible to have 2-way air outlet.
- Refer to the installation manual for both indoor unit and the Panel spacer for its installation.

Contents of kit

Check if following parts are included with your kit.

Name	Panel spacer frame	Resin corner part	Fixing metal	Screw
Quantity	4 PCS.	4 PCS.	4 PCS.	28 PCS.
Shape・number	① 	② 	③ 	④  M4×12 Tapping screw (Class 2)

Name	Sealing material	
Quantity	2 PCS.	2 PCS.
Shape・number	⑤ 	⑥ 

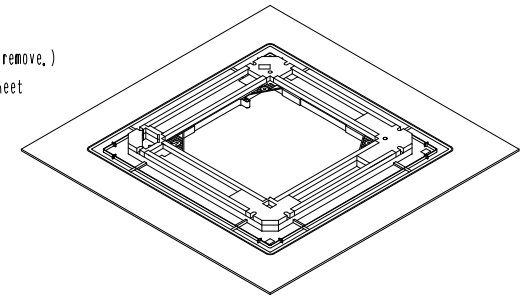
❶ Preparation of the decoration panel

- Handle the decoration panel with care.

Never place the panel face down, or lean the panel against wall or place on the projective object.
(It causes the dent or damage of the surface of the panel or damage of swing motor.)

(1)Remove the suction grill from the decoration panel.
(Refer to the installtion manual of the decoration panel how to remove.)

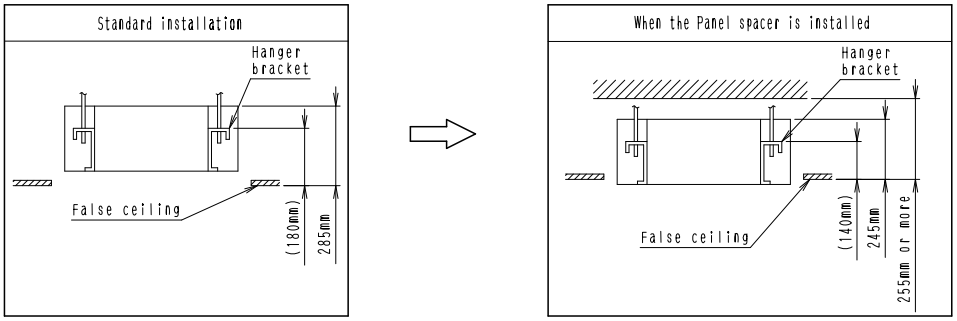
(2)Place the panel face down on the corrugated board or the vinyl sheet to protect the surface of the panel.



❷ Installation of the indoor unit

Adjust the height of the indoor unit.

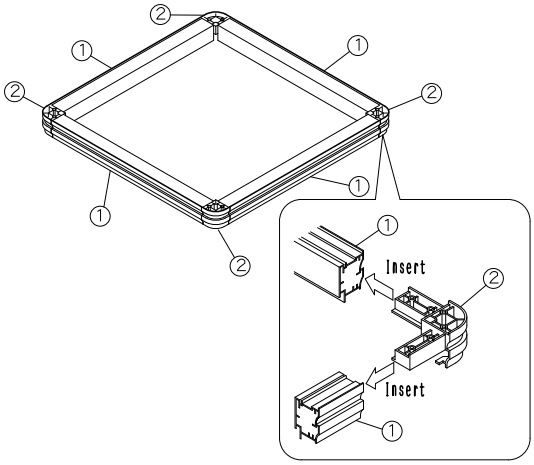
Be sure the piping will not contact with the ceiling joist etc. after adjusting the height.



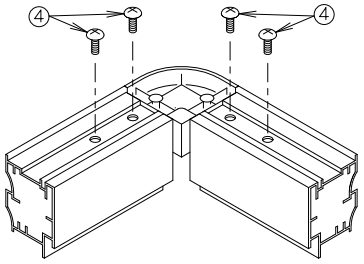
C : 1P107764C

❸Assembly of panel spacer

(1)Assemble the panel spacer frame ① and the plastic corner joint ② temporarily.

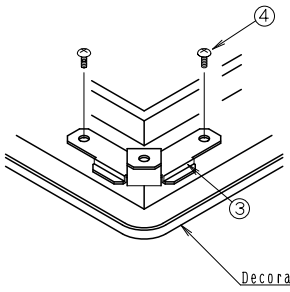


(2)Fix with the screws ④ from the top. (4 screws in each corner)

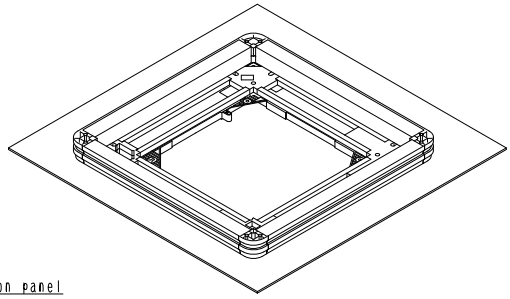


❹ Fixing to the decoration panel

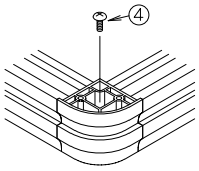
(1)Set the fixing metal ③ on each corner with screws ④.



(2)Place the panel spacer assembled in item ③Assembly of panel spacer of the above on the outer frame of the decoration panel.

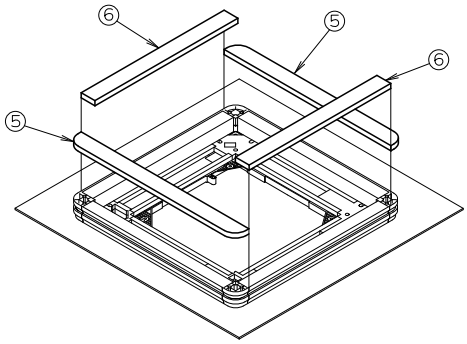


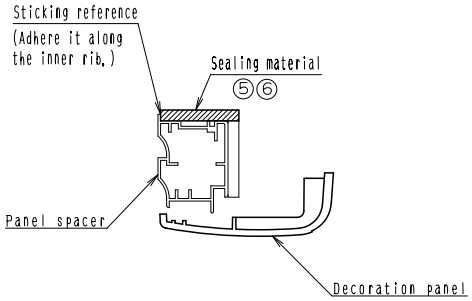
(3)Fix the panel spacer to the fixing metal ③ with screws ④ (4 portions).



❺Adhesion of the sealing material

Adhere the sealing material ⑤ ⑥ on the upper face of the panel spacer in the order of ⑤ and ⑥.





❻Installation of the decoration panel

Install the decoration panel to the indoor unit according to the installation manual of decoration panel.

The panel spacer is not firmly fixed to the decoration panel, so that never hold the panel spacer directly or lean the decoration panel extremely.

1P107764C

2.4 KDDQ44XA60 — Fresh Air Intake Kit (Direct Installation Type)

Installation

Daikin Air Conditioners Fresh Air Intake Kit (Duct Flange) Installation manual

KDDQ44XA60 Caution: Before installation, read this safety instruction.

Remarks:

1. This kit can be installed to the Ceiling mounted cassette type (Multi-flow).
2. When installing this kit, duct (Nominal dia. : ϕ100) is required on site.

- In case that metal duct is penetrated through wooden walls, make sure the duct and the wall electrically insulated.
- Install the duct inclined downwardly to outdoor so that the rain may not get into the duct. (Inclination 1/100 to 1/50)
- To avoid birds, small animals or insects getting inside the duct, make sure to install net where it contacts the outside air.

Contents

Prior to installation, make sure you have the complete kit of parts.

Name	① Duct flange	② Screws	③ Insulation for duct flange	④ Insulation for opening of unit	⑤ Installation manual
Q'ty	1 piece	4 pieces	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece
Shape		 M4×12			

Necessary tools

Philips head screw driver, nipper, cutter etc.

❶ Installation procedures of duct flange

1. Cut off the knockout hole on the side plate. (Fig. 1)

The knockout hole is opposite to ref. pipe.

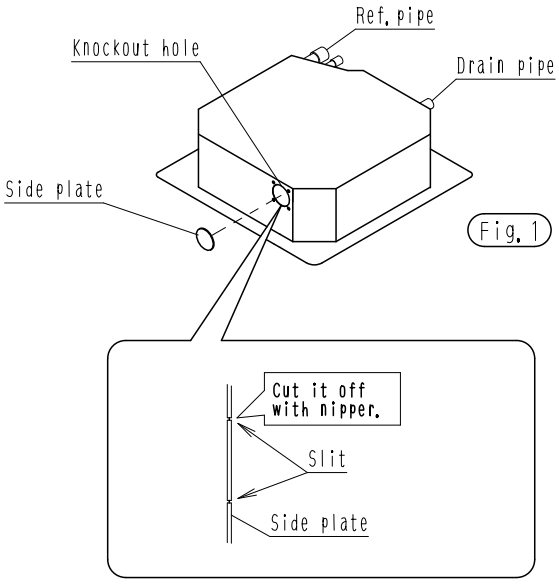


Fig. 1

2P108307A

2. Adhere the insulation④ for opening of unit to the opening. (Fig. 2)

Put the insulation ④ to be suitable for the hole of the insulation ④ and hole of the indoor unit.
However, put the insulation ④ so as not to conceal the screw hole of the indoor unit.

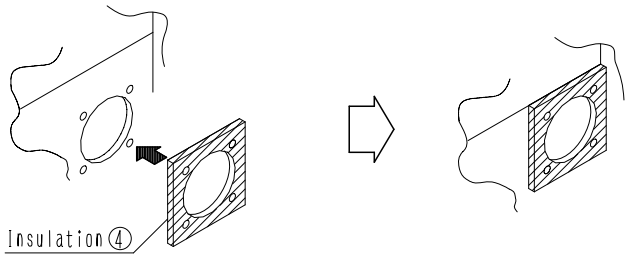


Fig. 2

3. Install the duct flange① with screws② (M4×12, 4 screws) to the opening and adhere the insulation③ (Fig. 3)

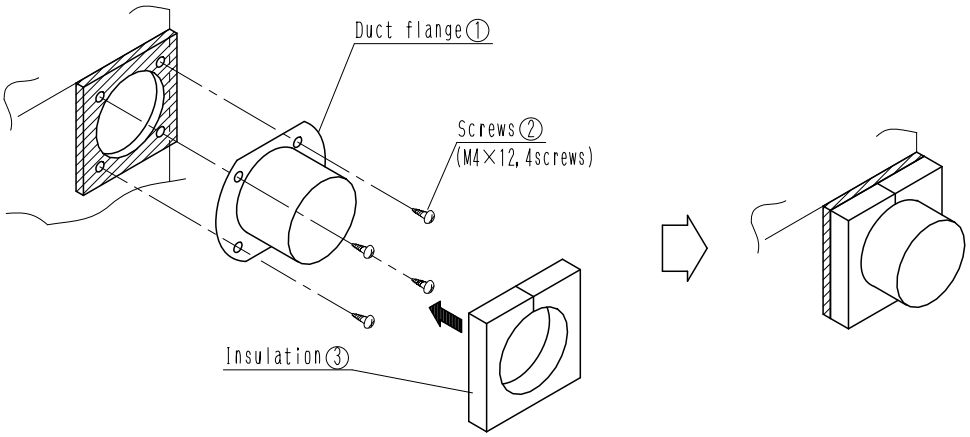


Fig. 3

❷ Installation procedures of duct <Nominal diameter of duct: φ100>

1. Connect the duct to the duct flange. (Flange fits inside the duct.) (Fig. 4)
2. After connection, wrap vinyl tape (field supply) around the duct connection to prevent air leak.

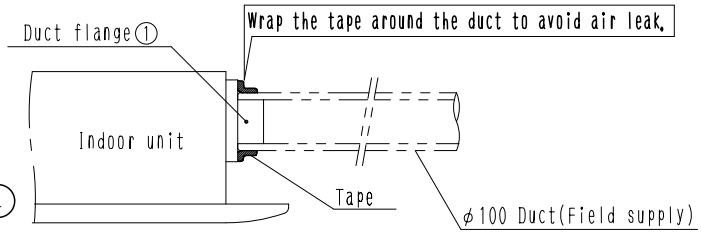
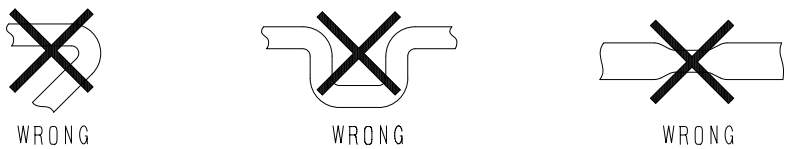


Fig. 4

Precaution

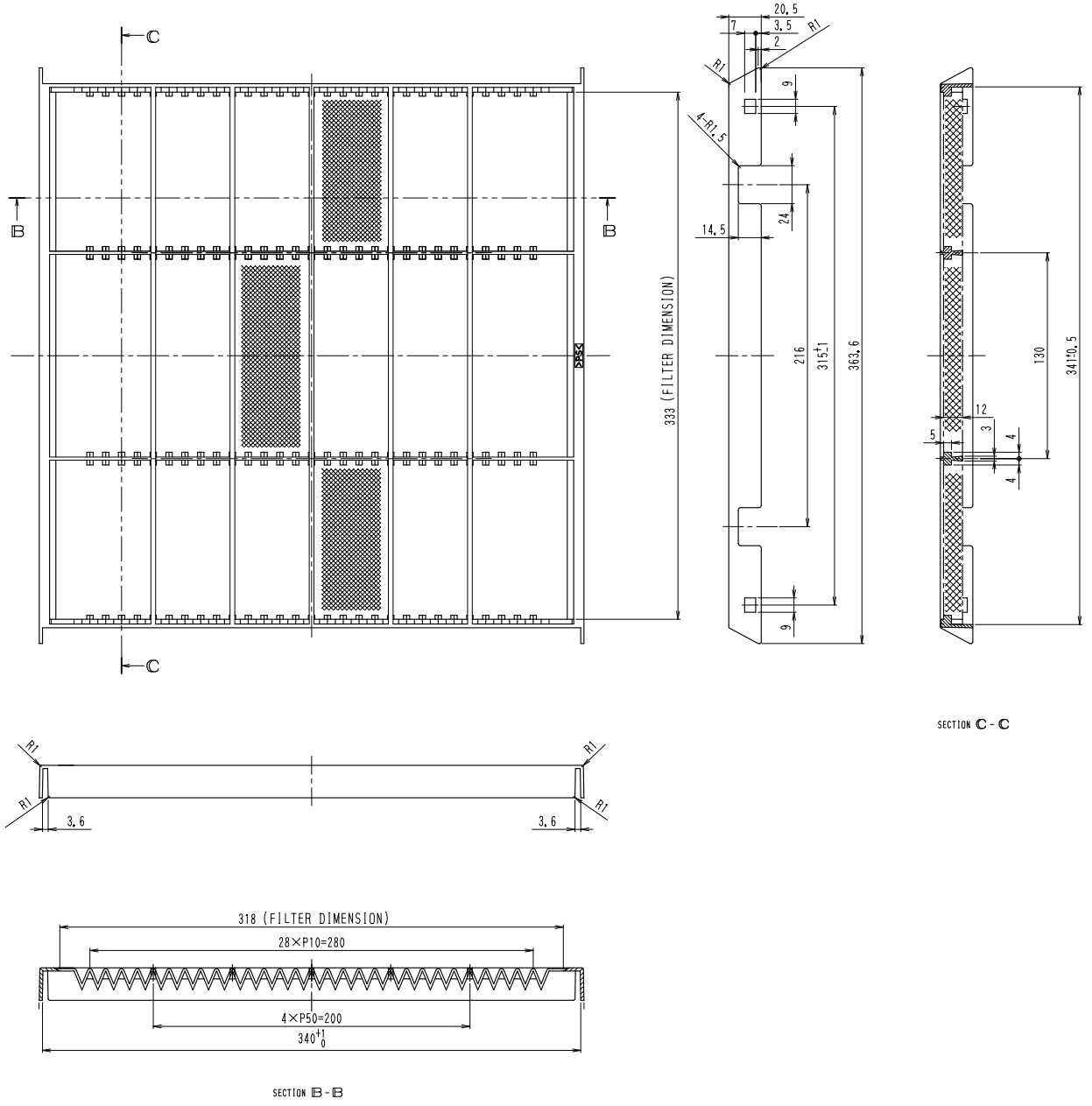
- All ducts must be completely insulated.
- Do not do the followings when installing duct.

A) To bend the duct excessively B) To bend the duct too many times C) To reduce the duct diameter



2P108307A

2.5 KAFQ441BA60 — Replacement Long-life Filter



2P100214B

3. FXC (Q)
- Ceiling Mounted Cassette Type (Double Flow) -

3.1 BYBC32·50·63·125G- W1 — Decoration Panel

BEFORE INSTALLATION

PRECAUTIONS

1.Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

2.Handling of decoration panels.

- Never place the panel facing down nor lean it against a wall nor leave it on a projecting object.
- (Otherwise the panel surface may be scratched.)

Never touch or put pressure on the swing flap.
(The swing flap may malfunction.)

ACCESSORIES

Panel fixing screw (M5x40)



BYBC32·50·63G-W1·····4pcs.
BYBC125G-W1·····6pcs..

NOTE TO INSTALLER

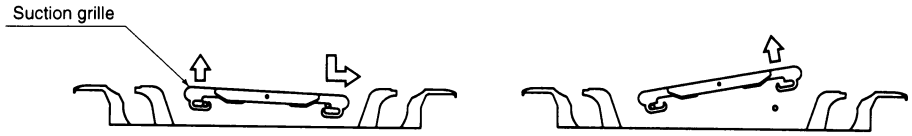
Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

PREPARATION OF DECORATION PANEL.

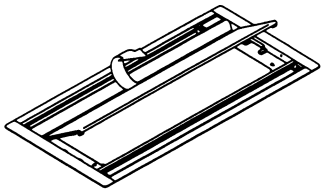
- Remove the suction grille and the cushion that is taped on the end of the swing flap.
- Remove the suction grille from the decoration panel.

(1) Hold up one side of the suction grille and hold down the other side. Slide the suction grille in the direction of arrow.

(2) Unhook the held-down side of the suction grille.



(3) Open the suction grille(by about 45°) and unhook its other side.



INSTALLATION OF THE DECORATION PANEL TO THE INDOOR UNIT BODY

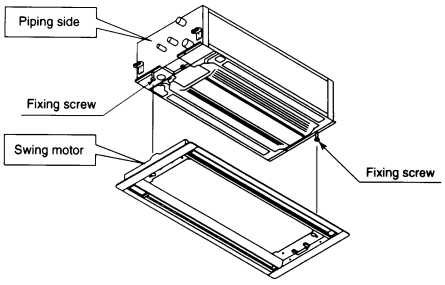
《Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for the installation of the indoor unit.》

- Set the decoration panel temporarity.

(1) Temporarily tighten the two decoration panel fixing screws in position in the indoor unit (Turn in the screws by 10 mm or so.) See the figure below.

(2) Place the decoration panel on the indoor unit with the swing moter at the piping side.

(3) Hook the openings of the decoration panel to the above half-tightened fixing screws. (Preferably hook first the opening that is opposite the piping side.)



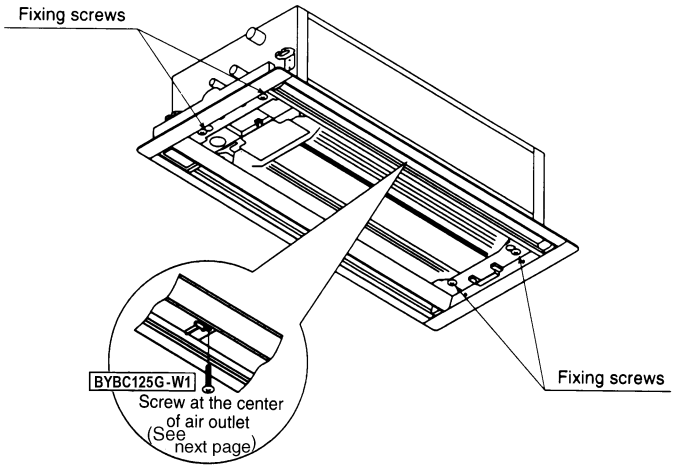
C: 3PA63729-3R

C : 3PA63729-3R

• Fixing the decoration panel.

(4) Tighten further the above two decoration panel fixing screw. And tighten two other decoration panel fixing screws diagonally.

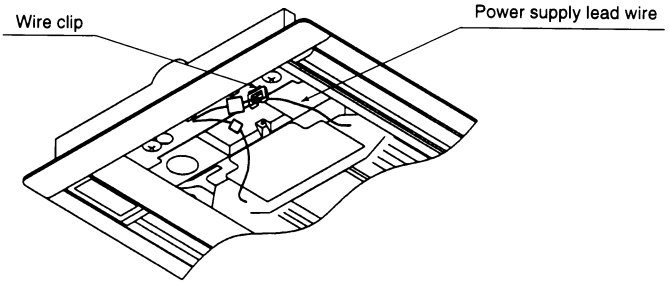
(5) Tighten up all the four screws until there is no gap between the decoration panel and the ceiling.



• Make wiring of the decoration panel.

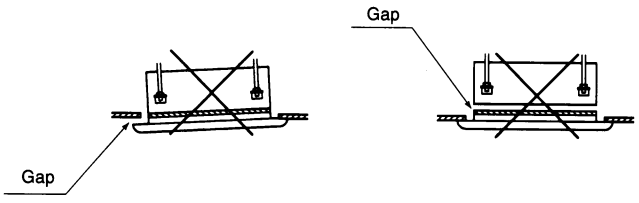
(6) Connect the two connectors of the swing moter lead wire that is laid along the decoration panel. Pass the power supply lead wire through the wire clip.

Be sure to couple these connectors securely. Otherwise the malfunction display (A7) appears on the remote controller.



〔**PRECAUTION**〕

A gap between the decoration panel and the ceiling, or between the decoration panel and the indoor unit, may cause dew condensation and stain the ceiling. If any gap is found, readjust the indoor unit height to close the gap.



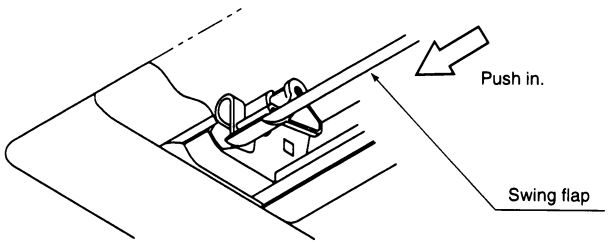
C : 3PA63729-3R

MODEL BYBC125G-W1

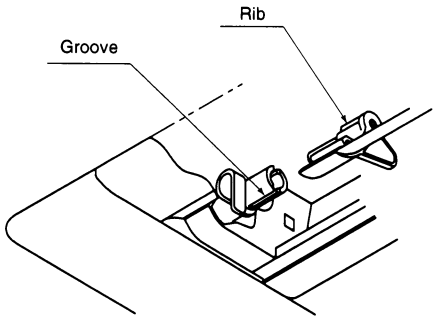
On Model BYBC125G-W1, more decoration panel fixing screws can also be applied at two points of the air outlet center.
(Use these screws if a gap is produced lengthwise near the center.)

To apply the screws, remove the swing flap. Take the following steps.

① Remove the swing flap.
Make sure the swing flap is in the horizontal flow position. Push the flap toward the piping side, and the opposite-side and center bearings will come off position. (The swing flap has been factory-set for the horizontal flow. If not in this position, get the indoor unit ready to run and readjust the swing flap angle with the remote controller.)



② Apply the decoration panel fixing screws at the center of the air outlet. (See the figure on the preceding page.)
③ Place the swing flap back into position.
Take the reverse steps. Finally make sure that the rib of the swing flap shaft at the piping side fits tight in the decoration panel's groove, and that the opposite-side and center bearings are tight in place.



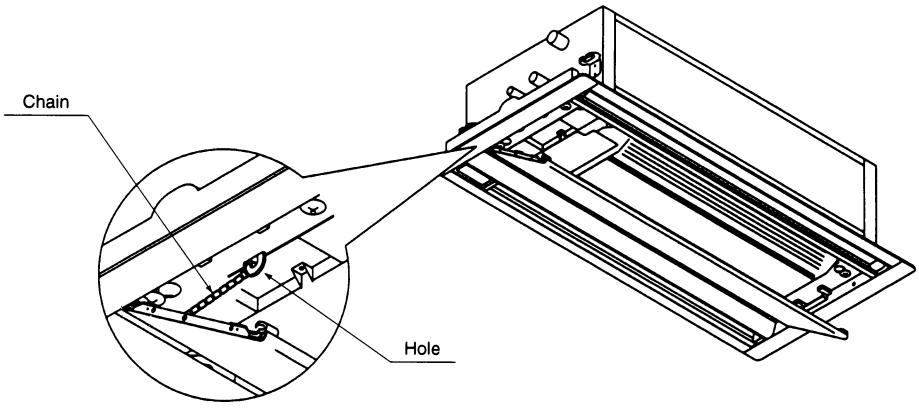
In removing and placing back the swing flap, be careful not to damage the insulation atop both ends of the flap.

INSTALLATION OF SUCTION GRILLE

(1) Hold the suction grille tilled by 45° or so and hook it to the decoration panel pin.
(No direction is specified.)

(2) Hook the anti-fall chains at both sides of the suction grille to the decoration panel holes.

(3) Close the suction grille in the reverse order. Now the decoration panel is ready to use.



C : 3PA63729-3R

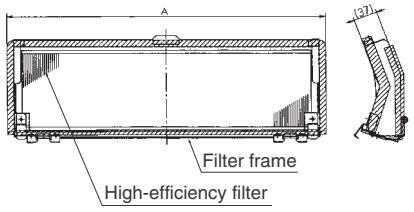
3.2 KAFJ532G36·56·80·160 / KAFJ533G36·56·80·160 — High-Efficiency Filter

KAFJ532G56



- Cannot be water-washed for reuse.
- The filter chamber (KDDFJ53G36 · 56 · 80 · 160) is required when the high efficiency filter will be installed.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



unit:(mm)

Model	A
KAFJ532G36	487
KAFJ532G56	702
KAFJ532G80	887
KAFJ532G160	687
KAFJ533G36	487
KAFJ533G56	702
KAFJ533G80	887
KAFJ533G160	687

J : D3K1637C
J : D3K1638B
J : D3K1639C

Installation

Caution

- For the installation of this kit, the filter chamber is also required. Select the matching filter chamber from the following table.

High efficiency filter		Filter chamber
65%	90%	
KAFJ532G36	KAFJ533G36	KDDFJ53G36
KAFJ532G56	KAFJ533G56	KDDFJ53G56
KAFJ532G80	KAFJ533G80	KDDFJ53G80
KAFJ532G160	KAFJ533G160	KDDFJ53G160

- Be sure to install this kit after installing the indoor unit and the filter chamber.
- For its installation, refer to the installation manual of indoor unit and the installation manual of decoration panel as well.

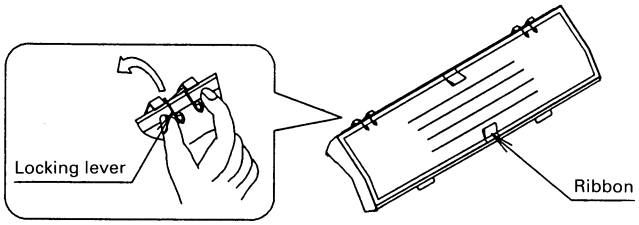
Contents of kit

Prior to installation check whether you have the complete kit of parts as shown below including the installation manual.

Name	Filter frame (with filter)	Capacitor
Shape		
KAFJ532G36 KAFJ533G36	2 sets	1 piece
KAFJ532G56 KAFJ533G56	2 sets	1 piece
KAFJ532G80 KAFJ533G80	2 sets	2 pieces
KAFJ532G160 KAFJ533G160	4 sets	3 pieces

1. Preparation of the filter frame

- Remove filters from the filter frame.
  Remove the holder by pinching the locking lever and pull out the ribbon.

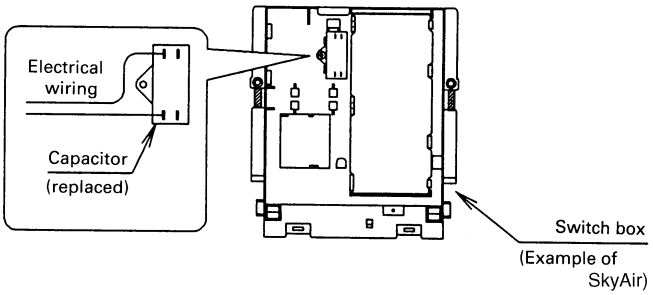


C : 1P009285A

2. Preparation of the indoor unit

- Remove the switch box of the indoor unit and replace the capacitor in the switch box with the replacement capacitor included in the kit. The size of the capacitor varies depending on the model of the indoor unit. Be sure to replace with the proper size of capacitor referring the following table.

You can find 2 capacitors in the optional kit of KAFJ532G80 and KAF533G80 and 3 capacitors in the optional kit of KAFJ532G160 and KAFJ533G160. Select the proper size of capacitor corresponding to the model of the indoor unit and replace it. The remaining capacitor(s) shall not be used.

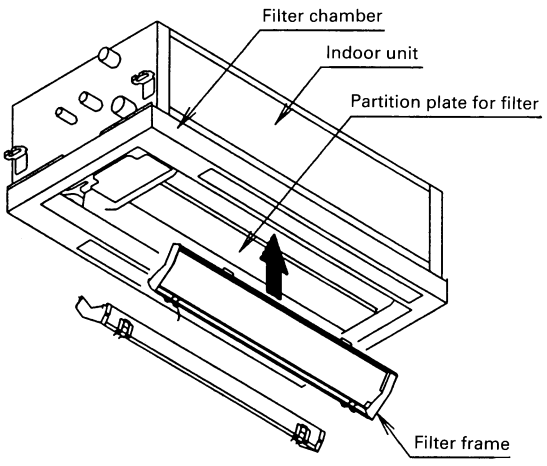


①Remove the two electrical wiring (white and yellow) from the capacitor.
②Replace the capacitor with the replacement capacitor in the kit.
③Connect the electrical wiring to the capacitor.
(There is no polarity, so that the white and the yellow electrical wire can be connected to either terminal of the capacitor.)

High efficiency filter	Capacity of the replacement capacitor	Model name of indoor unit
		VRV series
KAFJ532G36 KAFJ533G36	2.0 μF	20, 25, 32 Class
KAFJ532G56 KAFJ533G56	2.0 μF	40K, 50 Class
KAFJ532G80 KAFJ533G80	2.0 μF	63 Class
KAFJ532G160 KAFJ533G160	4.5 μF	80 Class
	6.0 μF	125 Class

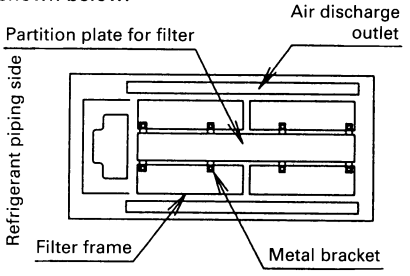
3. Installation of the filter frame

- Attach the filter frame to the indoor unit, where the original filter was located. (Refer to the operation manual of the indoor unit how to remove the standard filter. The standard filter removed shall not be used.)



In case of KAFJ532G160 and KAFJ533G160

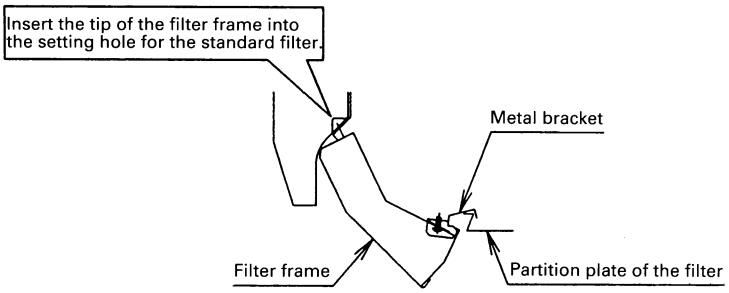
There are four filter frames of 2 kinds of each having different position of the metal bracket. Install the filter frames to the indoor unit as shown below.



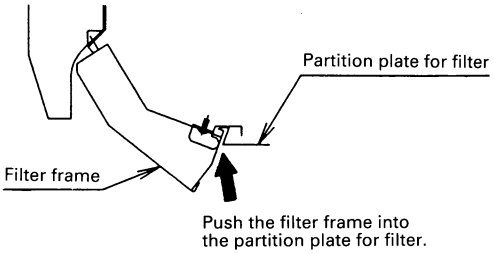
The figure seen from the bottom.

1P009285A

①Loose the screw of the metal bracket located on each end of the filter frame and hook the filter frame temporarily to the partition plate located at the center of the indoor unit.



②Fasten the screw of the metal bracket tightly.



4. Installation of the high efficiency filter

Install the filter in the reverse step of the item 1. of this manual.

1P009285A

3.3 KDDFJ53G36·56·80·160 — Filter Chamber for Bottom Suction

Caution

For the installation of this kit, the high efficiency filter kit is also required. Select the matching high efficiency filter from the following table.

○Refer to the installation manuals for both indoor unit and the decoration panel, when you install the filter chamber.

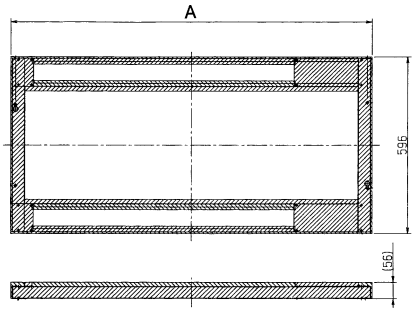
• Attach insulation. Does not take up time on location.

KDDFJ53G56



Item \ Model		KDDFJ53G36	KDDFJ53G56	KDDFJ53G80	KDDFJ53G160
Main applicable models		20 · 32 Class	40 · 50 Class	63 Class	80 · 125 Class
High-efficiency filter	65 (colorimetric method)	KAFJ532G36	KAFJ532G56	KAFJ532G80	KAFJ532G160
	90 (colorimetric method)	KAFJ533G36	KAFJ533G56	KAFJ533G80	KAFJ533G160
Weight (kg)		3.0	3.3	3.6	4.2

Dimensions



Unit: mm

Model	A
KDDFJ53G36	820
KDDFJ53G56	1,035
KDDFJ53G80	1,220
KDDFJ53G160	1,710

D3K1618A

Component parts

Filter chamber
Mounting screw.
Installation Manual

Installation

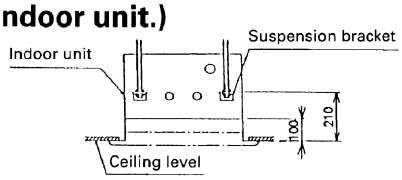
1. Contents of kit

Prior to installation check whether you have the complete kit of parts as shown below including the installation manual.

Name	Filter chamber	Screws for chamber	Installation manual
Shape		 M5 × 40	
Quantity	1 set	KDDFJ53G36·56·80..... 4 pieces KDDFJ53G160..... 6 pieces	1 piece

2. Installation of the indoor unit (Refer to the installation manual included in the indoor unit.)

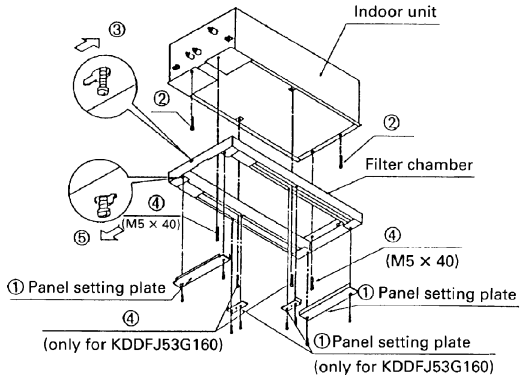
○Install the indoor unit
Refer to the drawing on the right for the layout of the indoor unit and ceiling.
(For other details, refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit.)



3. Installation of the filter chamber

Caution
○Be sure to install the filter chamber according to this manual.
○Be sure to fasten the screws tightly so as no gap between the indoor unit and the chamber, which may cause the air leakage and condensation.

①Remove the panel setting plate from the chamber.
②Set the two screws temporarily to the indoor unit. (fasten the screws about 10 mm)
③Hook the filter chamber to the screws by sliding into and fasten the screws tightly.
④Set the remaining screws and fasten tightly. (4 screws for KDDFJ53G36·56·80, 6 screws for KDDFJ53G160)
⑤Install the panel setting plate removed in ①. (Set the screws temporarily and hook the panel setting plate, and fasten tightly.)



JC: 3K03498A

3.4 KAFJ531G36·56·80·160 — Long Life Replacement Filter

KAFJ531G56

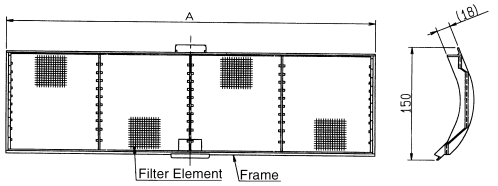


Model / Item	KAFJ531G36	KAFJ531G56	KAFJ531G80	KAFJ531G160
Applied models	20·25·32 Class	40·50 Class	63 Class	80·125 Class
Average efficiency (%)	50 (Gravity method)			
Initial pressure loss (Pa)	8 or less			
Final pressure loss (Pa)	49			
Life time (h)	2,500 hours (Dust particle concentration at 0.15mg/m³)			
Materials	Mildew proof resin net			
Number required per model	2	2	2	4
Weight (kg)	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.6

Caution

· Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

Dimensions Unit : mm



	KAFJ531G36	KAFJ531G56	KAFJ531G80	KAFJ531G160
A	485	700	881	684

J : D3K1607A
J : D3K1608B

4. FXK (Q)
- Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type -

4.1 BYK45·71FJW1 — Decoration Panel

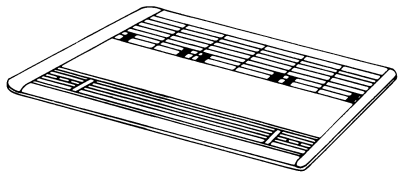
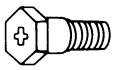
BEFORE INSTALLATION

PRECAUTIONS

- Refer also to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.

ACCESSORIES

- The box contains this manual and the parts listed below.

Item	Description	Quantity	
		BYK45FJ	BYK71FJ
Decoration panel		1 set	1 set
Panel fixing screw	 M5 X 35	5 pcs.	5 pcs.
Washer		5 pcs.	5 pcs.

NOTE TO INSTALLER

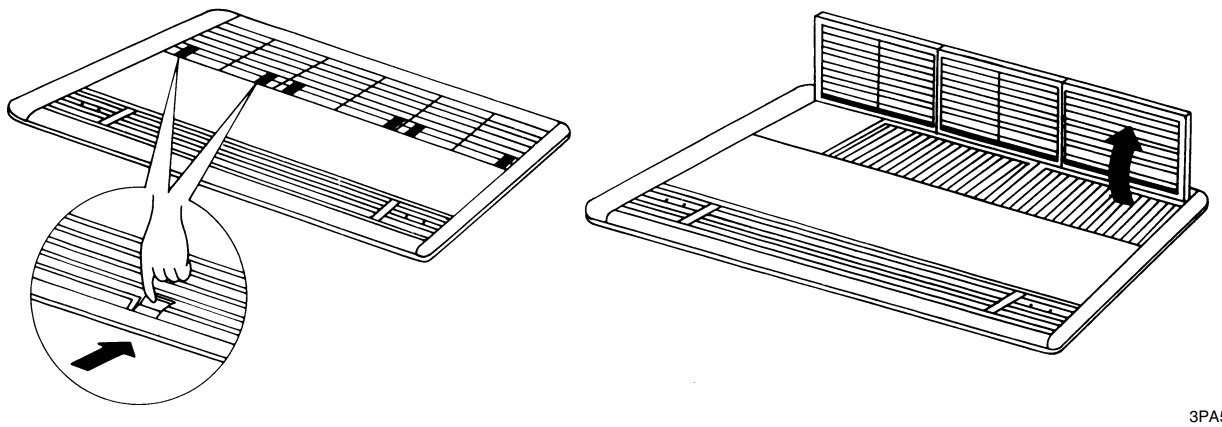
Be sure to instruct the customer how to properly operate the system showing him/her the attached operation manual.

PREPARATION OF DECORATION PANEL

- Handle the decoration panel with care.

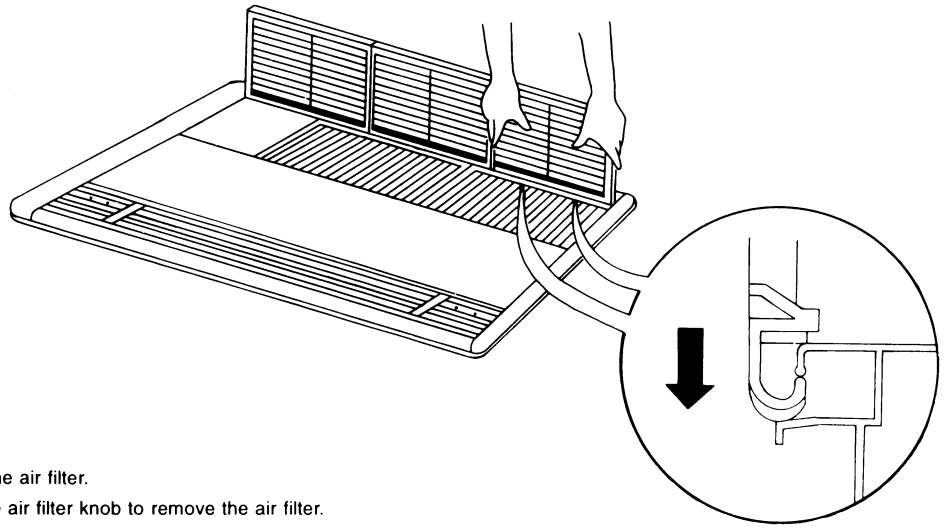
〈 **Never lean the panel against a wall, etc. nor leave it on a projecting object. (For prevention of dents and damages to the panel surface)**
Never grab the discharge grille during the installation work. (For prevention of damage to the discharge grille) 〉

(1) Remove the suction grille from the decoration panel. (See figure below.)
   ① Slide the suction grille lever and lift it up to one side.

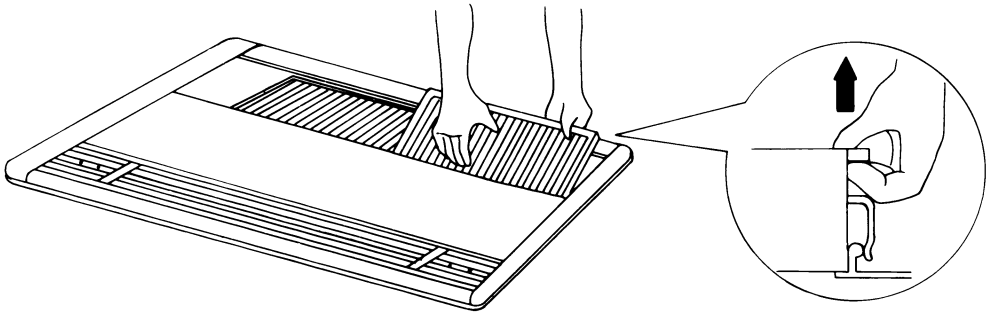


3PA59586-3B

② Unhook the suction grille off from the decoration panel.



(2) Remove the air filter.
Pull up the air filter knob to remove the air filter.

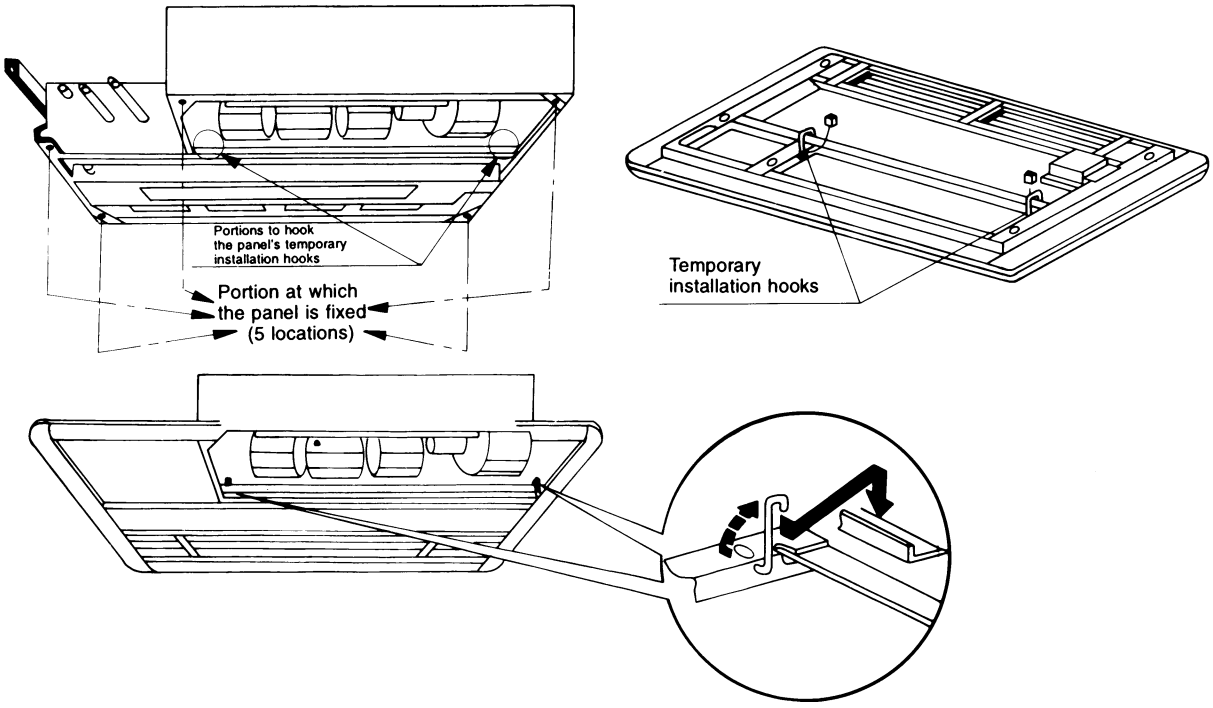


INSTALLATION OF THE DECORATION PANEL TO THE INDOOR UNIT BODY

⟨⟨ Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for the installation of the indoor unit. ⟩⟩

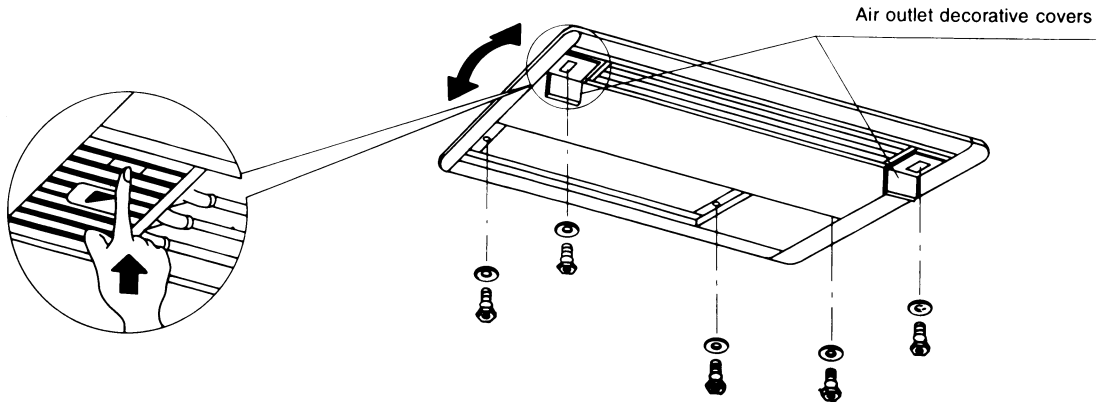
1. Installing the panel

(1) Install the decoration panel to the indoor unit body temporarily.



3PA59586-3B

(2) Tighten the panel fixing screws temporarily.
① Open the air outlet decorative covers.

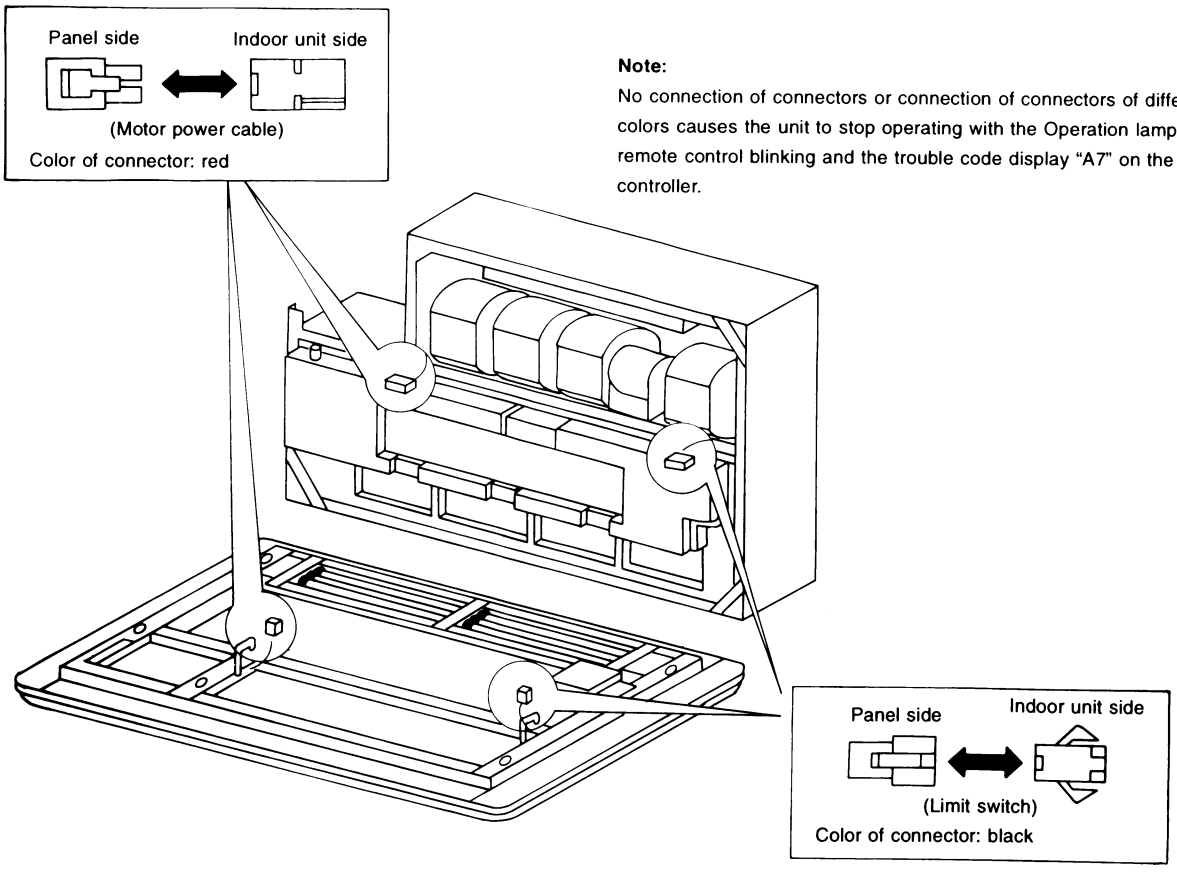


② Put the panel fixing screws (5 pcs.) through the washers and tighten the screws temporarily.
③ Move the panel as indicated by the arrow in the above figure for adjustment so as to make no gap between the panel and the ceiling.

2. Wiring between the indoor unit and the panel

- With the decoration panel temporarily installed to the indoor unit, wire between the indoor unit and the decoration panel. (See figure below.)

(1) Connect the connectors for swing motor and the limit switch on the decoration panel to those on the indoor unit body respectively.
(2) Check that the connectors are of the same color.

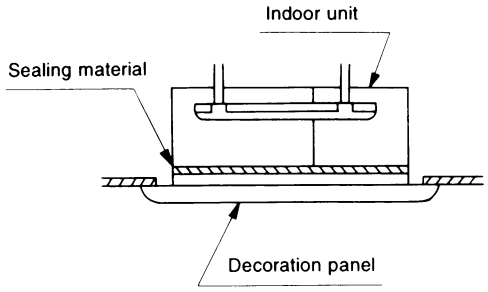


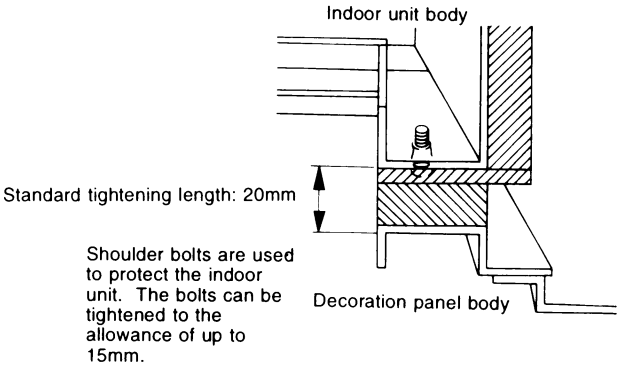
Note:
No connection of connectors or connection of connectors of different colors causes the unit to stop operating with the Operation lamp on the remote control blinking and the trouble code display "A7" on the remote controller.

3PA59586-3B

3. Fixing the decoration panel

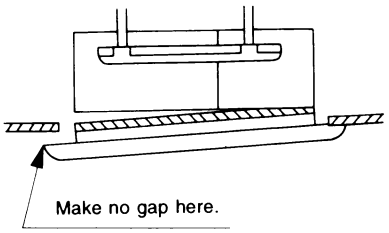
(1) In order to prevent air leakage, a sealing material is provided at the spot where the indoor unit body is joined with the decoration panel. Fix the decoration panel in the following method. (Shoulder bolts are used as the fixing screws. Tighten the bolts until their shoulders.)



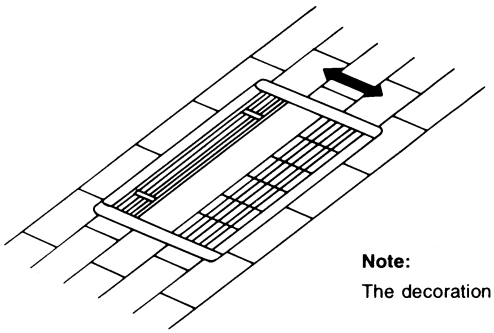


(2) When tightening the bolts, be sure to make no gap between the panel and the ceiling and set the panel in parallel to the ceiling and the ceiling joint.

〈 Improper installation of the panel to the cassette body causes air leakage. 〉



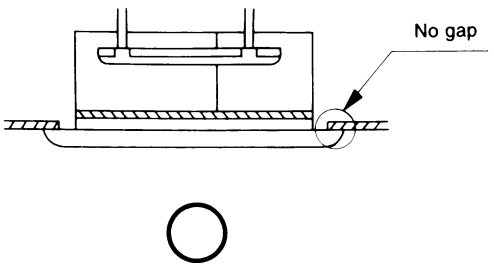
Note:
In case there remains a gap between the panel and the ceiling when the fixing bolts have been tightened fully to their shoulders, adjust the height of the indoor unit.

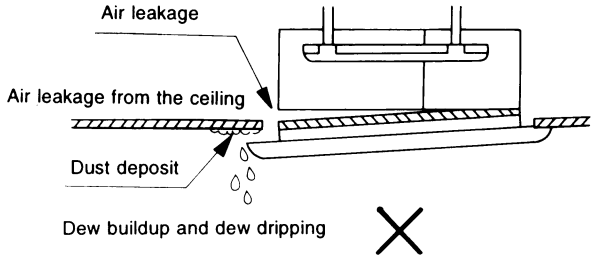


Note:
The decoration panel can be adjusted back and forth to 10 mm, respectively.

(3) Finally, make sure that the decoration panel is securely fixed to the indoor unit.

〈 Improper installation (tightening) causes the troubles as shown below; be sure to double-check the completion of the installation work. 〉





C : 3PA59586-3B

4.2 KPBJ52F56·80W — Panel Spacer

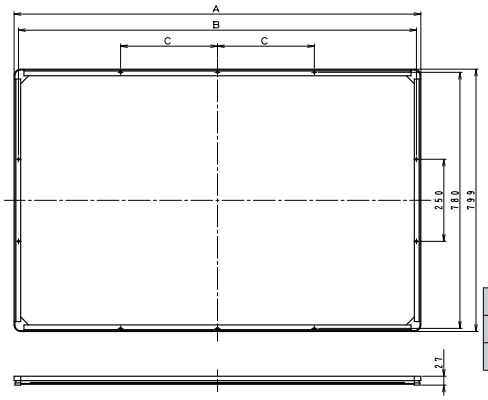
If the space above the ceiling is not available for more than 220mm, use the panel spacer, which enables to install the unit in 200mm space.

KPBJ52F56W



This photo is a part of the product.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**

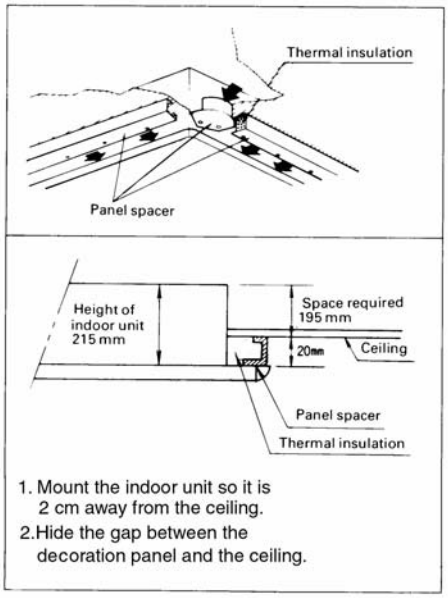


Model	A	B	C
KPBJ52F56W	1239	1212	295
KPBJ52F80W	1439	1412	345

C: D3K1412A

Item \ Model	KPBJ52F56W	KPBJ52F80W
Color	White	
Material	Alminum extrusion (resin used on corner part only)	
Component	Panel spacer. insulation. screws. installation manual.	
Weight (kg)	1.6	1.8
Applicable decoration panel	BYK45FJW1	BYK71FJW1
Applicable model	For indoor unit 25~40 Class	For indoor unit 63 Class

Example of usage



Installation

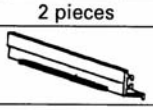
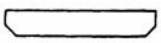
① Combination with the decoration panel

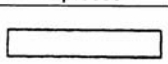
Be sure to check the model number in the table below before installation.

Space required in the ceiling	Kit name	Color	Applied decoration panel
20 cm	KPBJ52F56W	White	BYK45FJW1
	KPBJ52F80W	White	BYK71FJW1

② Contents of kit

Prior to installation check whether you have the complete kit of parts as shown below including the installation manual.

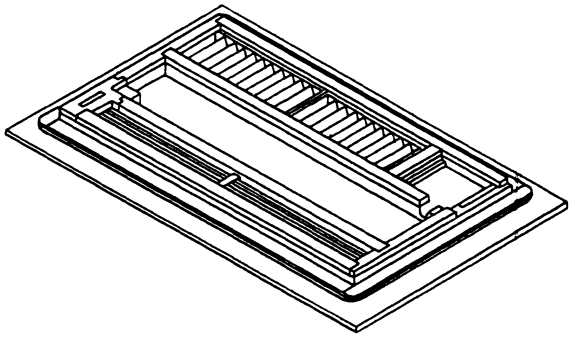
Name	Panel spacer (1)	Panel spacer (2)	Panel spacer (3)	Thermal insulation (1)
Quantity	2 pieces	2 pieces	4 pieces	2 pieces
Shape				

Name	Thermal insulation (2)	Screws	Installation manual
Quantity	2 pieces	18 pieces	1 piece
Shape		 M4×12	

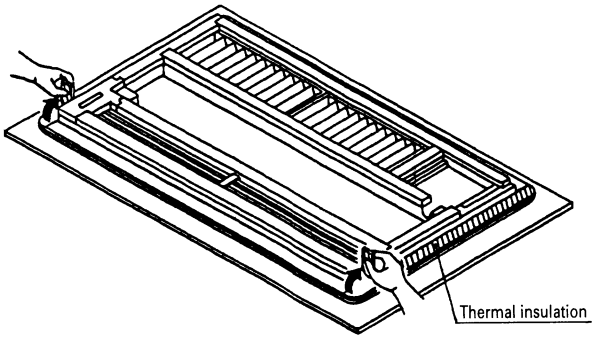
JC: 3K07220A

③ Preparation of the decoration panel

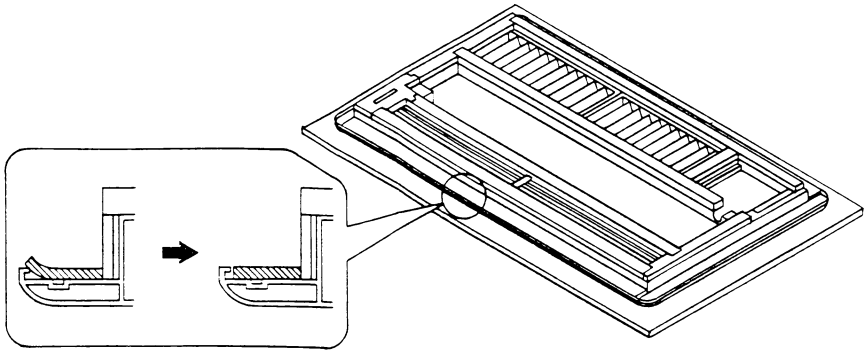
● Handle the decoration panel with care.
Never lean against the wall or leave it on a projecting object to prevent the damage on the surface of the panel. Never hold the air discharge outlet when installing to prevent the air discharge outlet from damage.
(1) Place the decoration panel face down on the corrugated cardboard or the vinyl sheet to prevent the damage on the surface.



(2) Remove the thermal insulation. (2 locations)



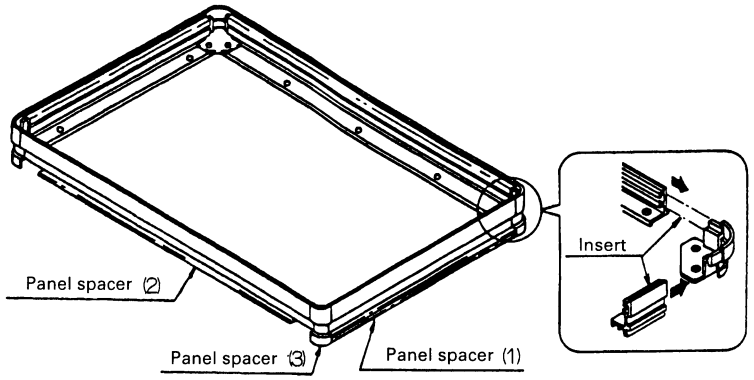
(3) Remove the glue on the thermal insulation where the panel spacer is installed. Remove also the stick-out glue on the panel frame by cutting knife etc.



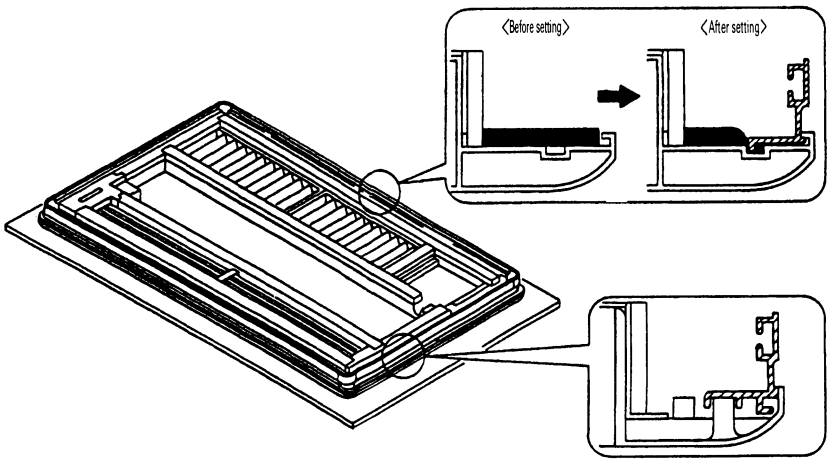
JC: 3K07220A

④ Installation of the panel spacer

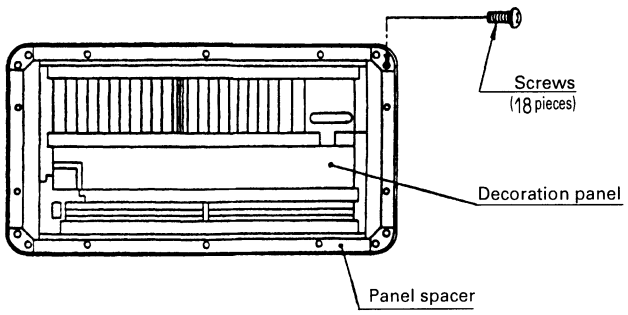
(1) Assemble the panel spacer (1) , (2) and (3) temporarily.



(2) Set the temporarily assembled panel spacer to the decoration panel.

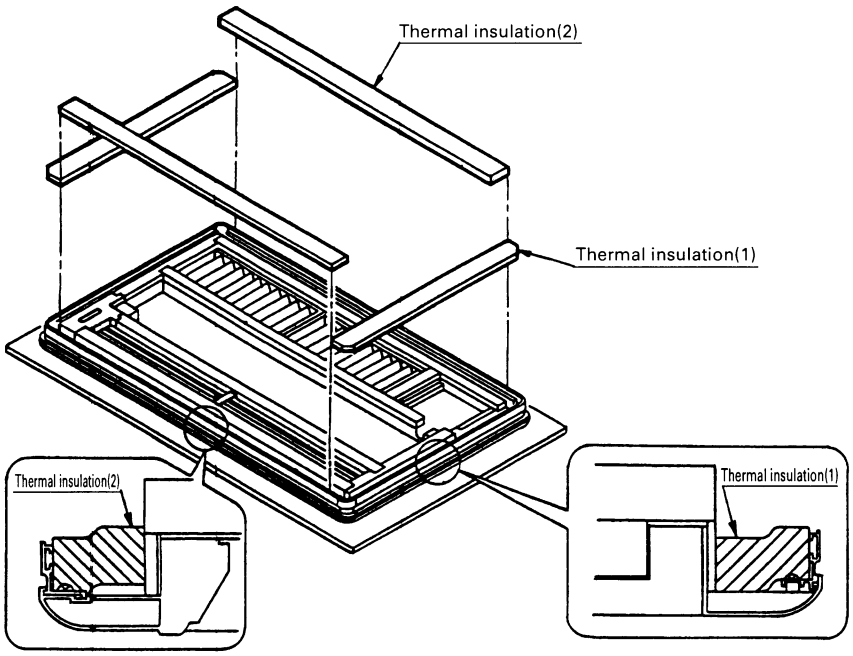


(3) Fix the panel spacer to the decoration panel with screws (18 pieces).



JC: 3K07220A

(4) Attach the thermal insulation (1) and (2).



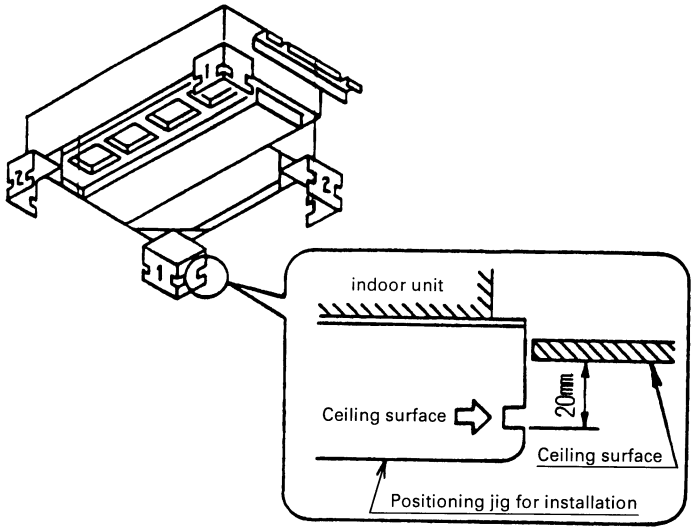
⑤ Selection of the location for installation

It is required the space of 20cm above the ceiling for the installation.
Refer to the item of "Selecting installation site" of the installation manual of the indoor unit for other details.

JC: 3K07220A

⑥ Installation of the indoor unit

When you install the panel spacer, lower the indoor unit by 20cm from the standard height.



Refer to the item of "Indoor unit installation" of the installation manual of the indoor unit for other details.

⑦ Attachment of the decoration panel

After the completion of installation of the panel spacer, attach the decoration panel to the indoor unit.

JC: 3K07220A

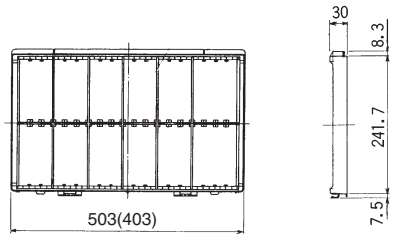
4.3 KAFJ521F56·80 — Replacement Long-Life Filter

KAFJ521F80



・Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Dimensions listed in parentheses show KAFJ521F56.

C: D3K1145A

Item \ Model	KAFJ521F56	KAFJ521F80
Average efficiency (%)	45 (Gravity method)	
Initial pressure loss (Pa)	9.8 or less	
Final pressure loss (Pa)	49	
Life (h)	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)	
Filter element	Mildew-proof resin net	
Number of sheets included	2	
Mass (kg)	0.4	0.6

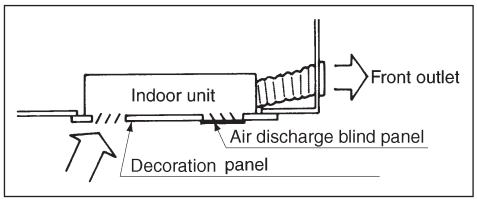
4.4 KDBJ52F56·80W — Air Discharge Blind Panel

This optional kit is to blind the bottom discharge outlet, when the unit is used with front air discharge.

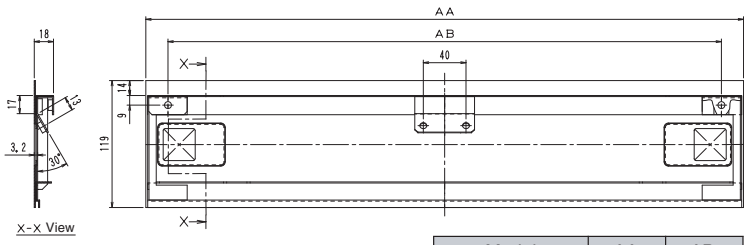
KDBJ52F56W



Example of usage



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Model	AA	AB
KDBJ52F56W	1125.5	1084
KDBJ52F80W	1325.5	1284

C: D3K1162A

Item \ Model	KDBJ52F56W	KDBJ52F80W
Color	White	
Material	Steel plate	
Mass (kg)	1.8	2.2
Component parts	Blind panel assembly. Name plate. Supporting bracket. Screws. Installation manual. Set of caution stickers.	

Additional required accessories

- Discharge grille
- Flexible duct with shutter
- This optional kit is to blind the bottom discharge outlet, when the unit is used with front air discharge.

Installation

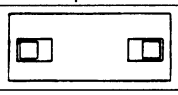
① Combination with decoration panel

This kit is used to cover the air discharge outlet of the decoration panel when the unit is installed with the front air discharge.

Name	Color	Applicable decoration
KDBJ52F56W	White	BYK45FJW1
KDBJ52F80W	White	BYK71FJW1

② Contents of kit

Prior to installation check whether you have the complete kit of parts as shown below including the installation manual.

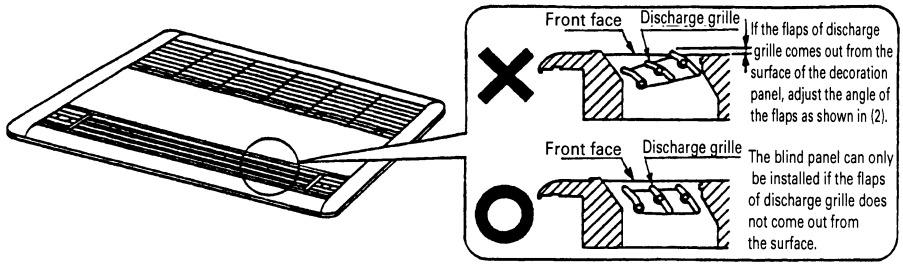
Name	Blind panel assembly	Supporting bracket	Name plate (1)	Name plate (2)
Quantity	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece
Shape				

Name	Screws(M5×8)	Screws(M5×40)	Installation manual	Set of caution stickers
Quantity	2 pieces	2 pieces	1 piece	1 piece
Shape	 M5×8	 M5×40		

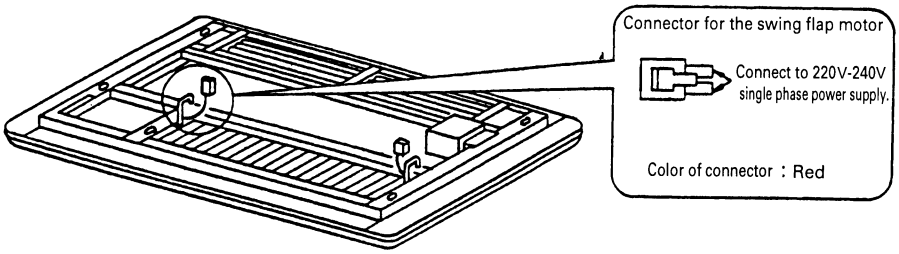
1P016132

③ Examination of the decoration panel before removing

(1) Check the angle of the flaps of discharge grille.

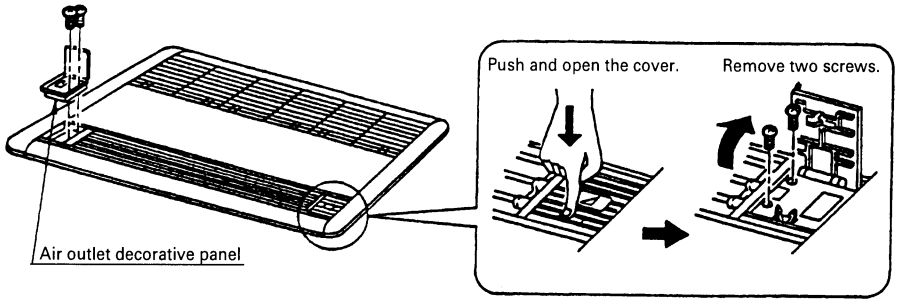


(2) If it is required to adjust the angle of the flaps, supply the electrical power(220V-240V single phase) to the air swing motor connector and adjust the position of the flaps.

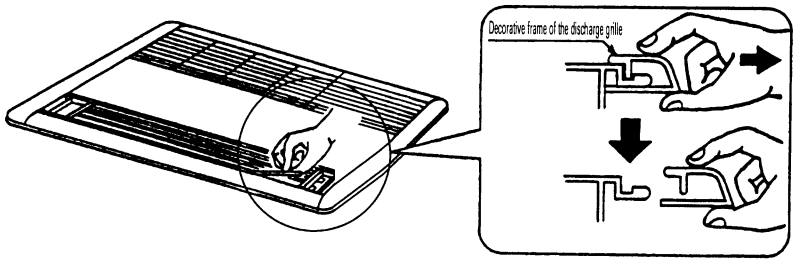


④ Removing the parts

(1) Remove the air outlet decorative covers.



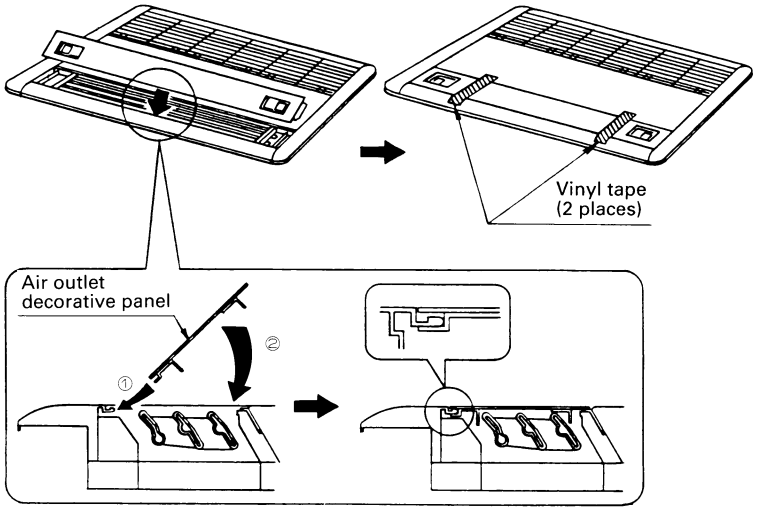
(2) Remove the decorative frame of the air discharge grille.



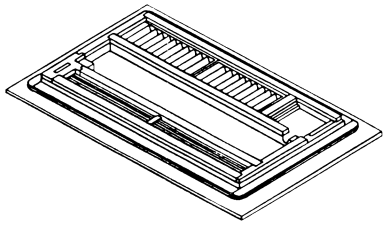
1P016132

⑤ Installation of the air discharge blind panel

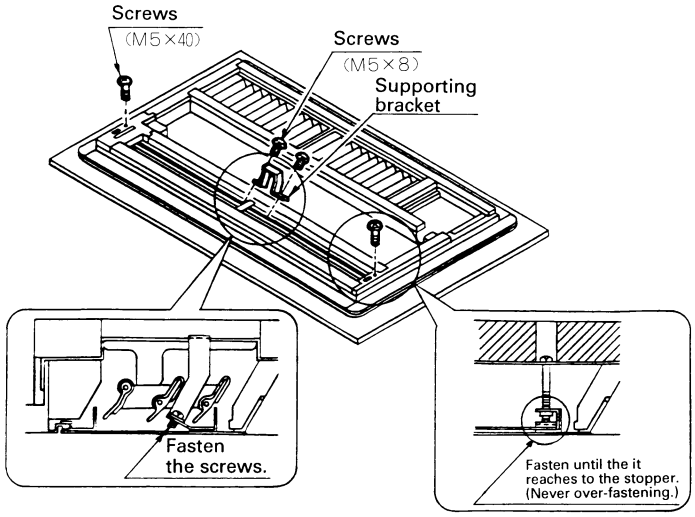
(1) Attach the air discharge blind panel and put the vinyl tape to hold panel temporarily.



(2) Place the decorative panel face down on the corrugated cardboard or vinyl sheet to protect the surface of the decoration panel.



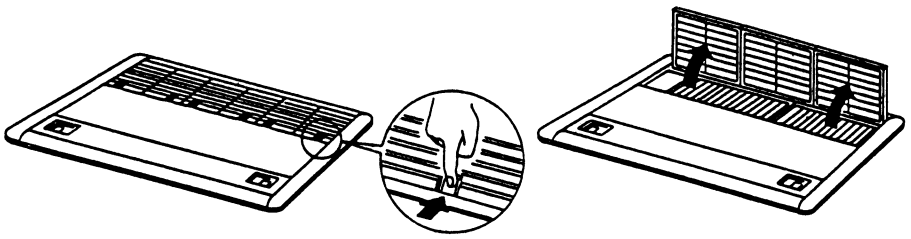
(3) Set the air discharge blind panel with the supporting bracket and fasten the screws.



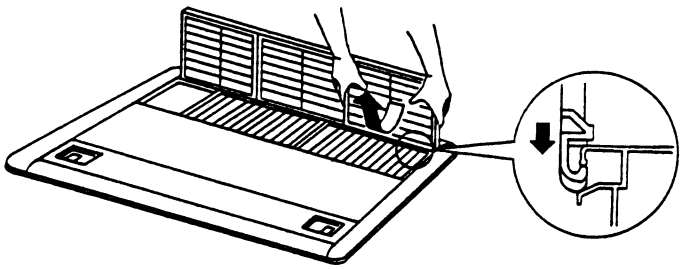
1P016132

⑥ Preparation of the decoration panel

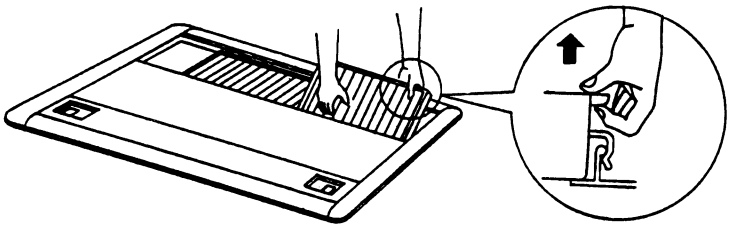
(1) Remove the suction grille from the decoration panel.
(1)-1 Slide the lever of the suction grille and lift it up to one side.



(1)-2 Unhook the suction grille off from the decoration panel.



(1)-3 Remove the air filter.
Pull up the air filter knob and remove the air filter.



C: 1P016132

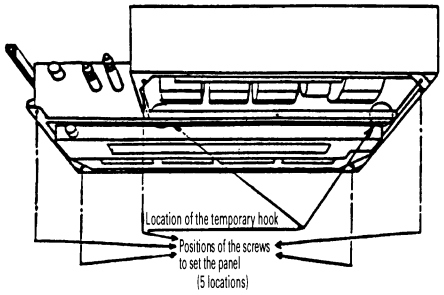
⑦ Installing the decoration panel to the indoor unit

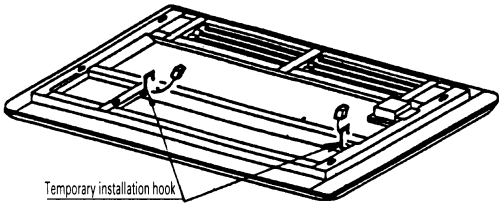
Install the decoration panel after the completion of the installation of the front discharge panel.

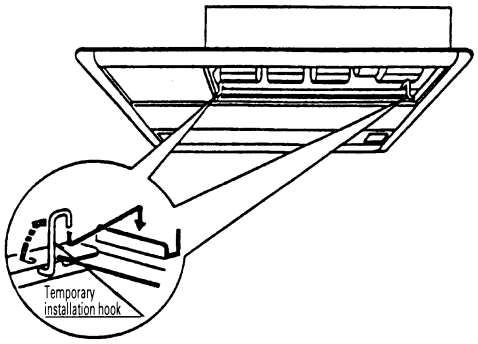
① Installation of the decoration panel

Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit for its installation.

(1) Hook the decoration panel to the indoor unit temporarily.



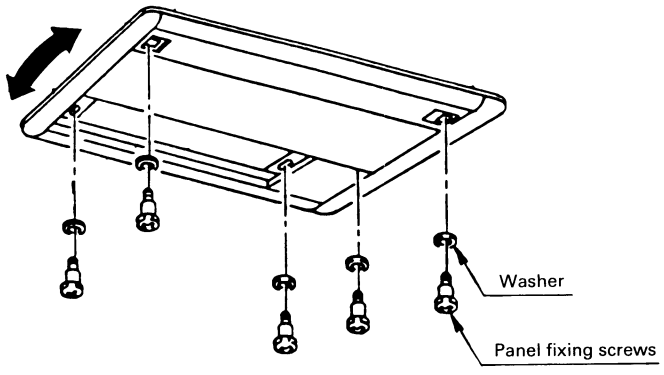




(2) Fasten the panel fixing screws temporarily.

(2)-1 Set the washer to the screws and fasten temporarily.

(2)-2 Adjust the panel as shown below to fit with the opening of the ceiling properly.



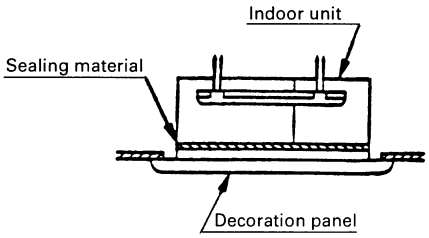
C: 1P016133

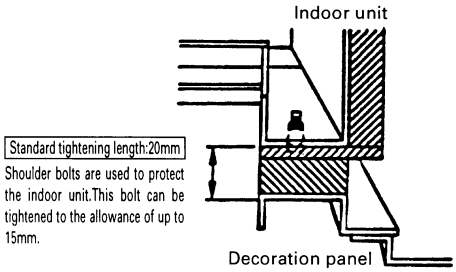
② Electrical wiring between indoor unit and the decoration panel

Never connect the connector of the swing motor and the limit switch.

③ Fixing of the decoration panel

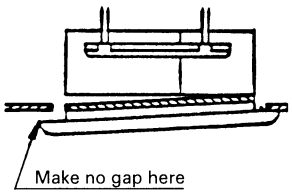
(1) The sealing material is attached between indoor unit and the panel to seal the air leakage from the connecting part. Fasten the screws tightly according to the following drawing. (The shoulder bolts are used as fixing screw. Tighten the bolts until their shoulders.)





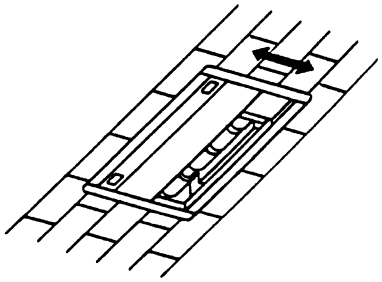
(2) When tightening the bolts, be sure to make no gap between the panel and the ceiling, and set the panel in parallel to the ceiling and the ceiling joint.

Improper installation of the panel to the indoor unit causes air leakage.



Caution

If there will be a gap between the panel and the indoor unit after tightening the bolts up to the shoulder, adjust the height of the indoor unit.

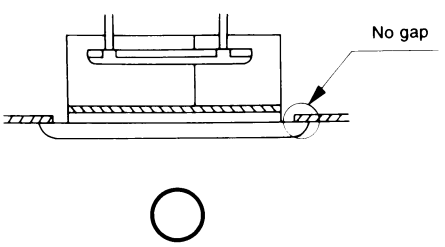


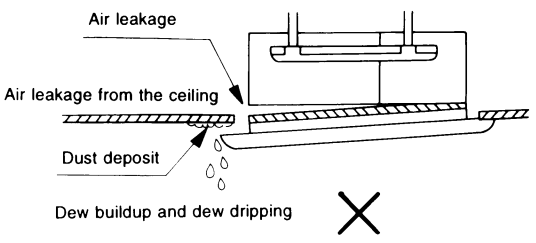
Caution

The decoration panel can be adjusted back and forth to 10mm respectively.

(3) Make sure whether the decoration panel is securely fixed to the indoor unit.

Improper installation (loose tightening) causes the trouble as shown below. Be sure whether the installation is completed properly again.

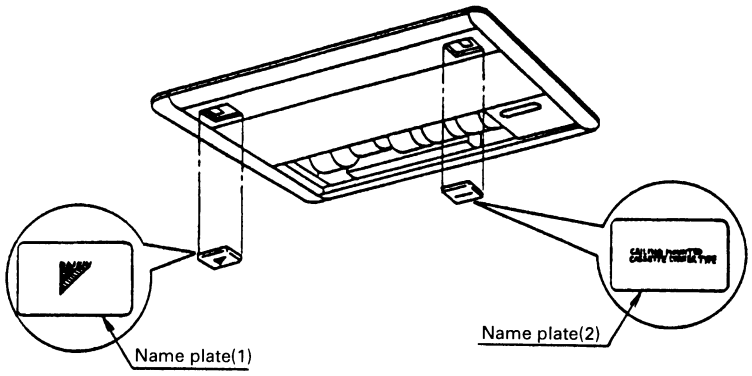




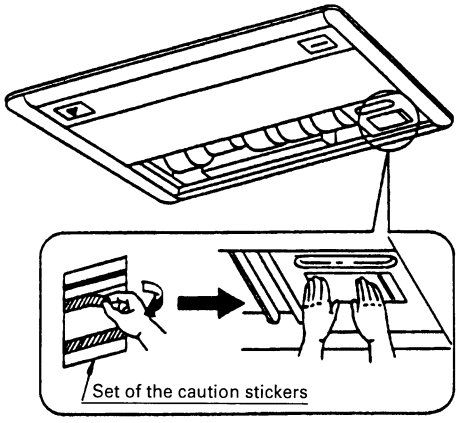
C: 1P016133

⑧ Attaching the set of name plate

(1) Attach the name plates as follows.



(2) Attach the set of caution stickers.



⑨ Installation of the suction grille and air filter

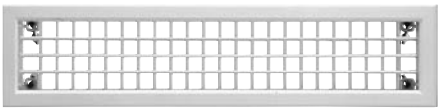
Refer to the item ⑥ "Preparation of decoration panel" of this manual, and install it in the reverse step.

C: 1P016133

4.5 K-HV7·9AW — Discharge Grille

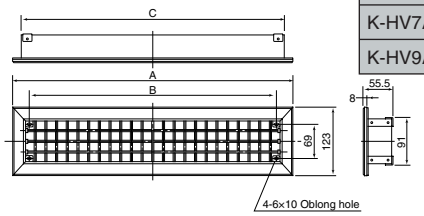
This optional kit is used when the unit is installed with front air discharge. The direction of air can be adjusted flexibly.
This discharge grille should be installed with the following flexible duct.

K-HV7AW



Dimensions **Unit:mm**

Model	Dimensions (mm)			Mass (kg)
	A	B	C	
K-HV7AW	523	466	488	1.3
K-HV9AW	723	666	688	1.7



■ Specification
● Movable vane
● Material : Steel plate construction, surrounding cedar flame (nylon flocking)

C: D3K1972C

Item \ Model	K-HV7AW	K-HV9AW
Material	Steel plate construction. Surrounding cedar flame (nylon flocking).	
Accessories	Wing adjustors. Attachment clamp.	
Available volume flow rate	5.0~12.0	7.0~17.0
Mass (kg)	1.3	1.7

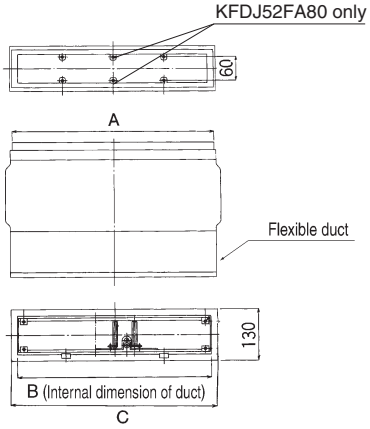
4.6 KFDJ52FA56·80 — Flexible Duct with Shutter

KFDJ52FA56



· Internal shutter
→ Using the shutter allows adjustment of fan strength for front and bottom directions.
· Location of attachment can be varied within 20 mm up or down. Connection to indoor unit also easy to do.

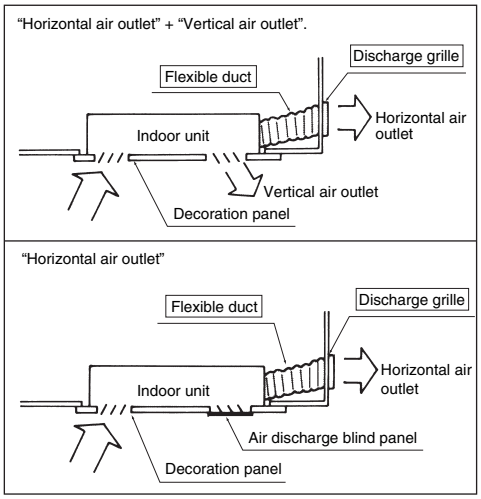
Dimensions Unit:mm



Model	A	B	C
KFDJ52FA56	520	498	530
KFDJ52FA80	720	698	730

C: D3K04935

Installation



Item \ Model	KFDJ52FA56	KFDJ52FA80
Thermal insulation	Material: glass wool (t=25 mm, specific gravity=24 kg/m³)	
Mass (kg)	4.5	5.0
Component parts	Flexible duct. Shutter. Setting plate for duct. Sealing pad. Shutter adjuster. Screws. Thermal insulation. Installation manual.	

1 Combination with discharge grille

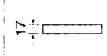
The "Discharge grille" is also required, when you install the flexible duct.
When you install the unit with "Horizontal air outlet", the air discharge blind panel of optional kit can be installed on the decoration panel, if necessary.

Flexible duct	Discharge grille	Color	Applied model
KFDJ52FA56	K-HV7AW	White	FXYK FH(Y)K 25~45 type
KFDJ52FA80	K-HV9AW	White	FXYK FH(Y)K 56~71 type

Note:Be sure to use the original optional discharge grille. If you use the discharge grille in the market, you may have a problem with the distribution of the room temperature or the condensation on the grille.

2 Contents of kit

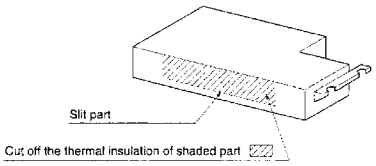
Prior to installation check whether you have the complete kit of parts as shown below including the installation manual.

Name		Flexible duct	Shutter	Thermal insulation (1)	Thermal insulation (2)	Setting plate for duct	Flap adjuster
Shape							
Quantity	KFDJ52FA56	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	4 pieces	1 piece
	KFDJ52FA80	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	6 pieces	1 piece

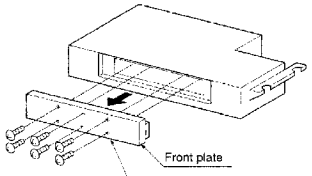
Name		Sealing pad				Installation manual	Screws		
Shape		Ⓐ 	Ⓑ 	Ⓒ 	Ⓓ 		Ⓐ M4×12	Ⓑ M5×15	Ⓒ M5×20
Quantity	KFDJ52FA56	2 pieces	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	1 piece	4 pieces	4 pieces	4 pieces
	KFDJ52FA80		4 pieces		2 pieces	1 piece	6 pieces	6 pieces	4 pieces

3 Preparation of indoor unit

(1) Cut off the thermal insulation on the front fase of the indoor unit along with the slit furnished.



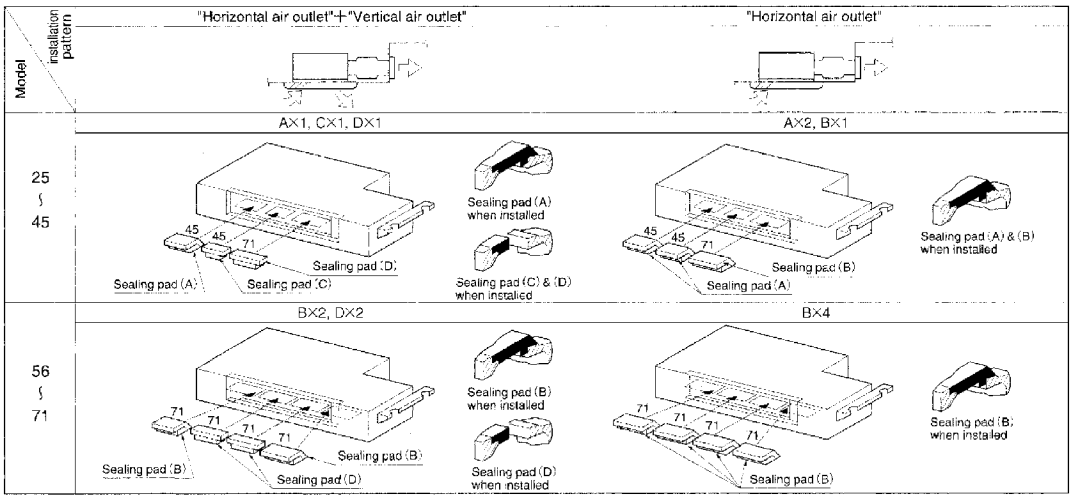
(2) Remove the front plate by unfastening all the screw.



1P167773

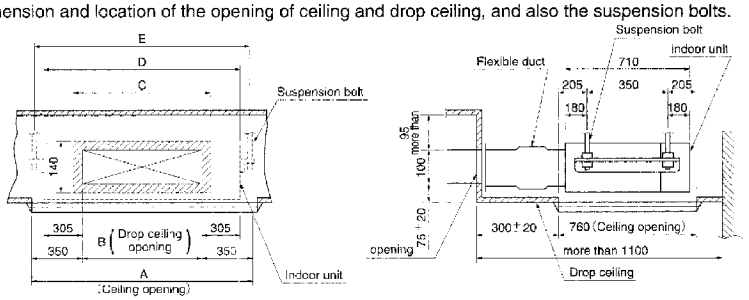
4 Attaching the sealing pad to the air dischange outlet

Cover the air discharge outlets with the sealing pads as needed by the installation site as shown in the table below.
Peel off the paper mating from the backside of one of the sealing pad and attach the pad to the drain pan opening.



5 Preparation prior to the installation

(1) Dimension and location of the opening of ceiling and drop ceiling, and also the suspension bolts. (Unit [mm])

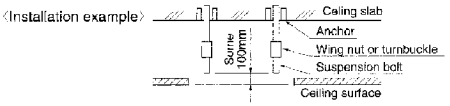


Flexible duct	A	B	C	D	E
KFDJ52FA56	1200	500	540	1110	1150
KFDJ52FA80	1400	700	740	1310	1350

(2) Make a opening in the ceilling for installation (If it is a existing ceiling.)
- Use the paper pattern (included the indoor unit) for installation, which has been made to the dimension of the opening in the ceiling.
- Make a opening in the ceiling, and run the refrigerant piping, drain piping, wire for remote controller and transmission wiring between indoor unit and outdoor unit up to the inlet port for the piping and wiring of the indoor unit. (Refer to the related items of the installation manual of the indoor unit for its installation of the piping and wiring.)
- After making a opening in the ceiling, reinforcement of the ceiling frame and etc.may be required to maintain the level of the ceiling or to prevent the vibration of the ceiling. For details, consult with building contractor or interior contractor.

(3) Make a opening in the drop ceiling for the installation of discharge grille. (If it is a existing ceiling.)
- Never install the ceiling joint in the shaped part ▨, which disturb the installation of the flexible duct. (Install only a ceiling material.)

(4) Install the suspension bolts. (Use M8 size of the suspension bolts.)
- Use the hole-in anchors for the existing building and use the embedded inserts, embedded anchors for newly built ceiling so that weight of the unit is supported. Also adjust the length of the bolts to the ceiling before installing the unit.



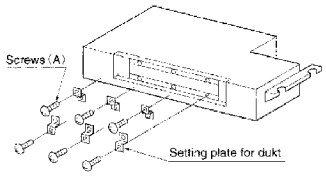
Note :All the parts shown above should be arranged locally.

1P167773

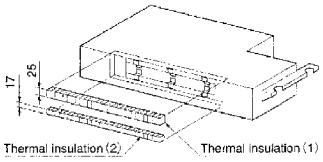
⑥ Installation of indoor unit

(1) Prepare for the installation of the flexible duct.

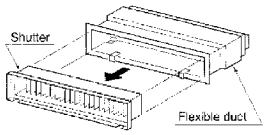
①Attach the setting plate for duct to the indoor unit with screws (A) (M4×12)



②Attach the thermal insulation (1) and (2) along the edge of opening.



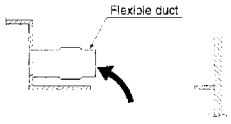
(2) Remove the shutter from the flexible duct.



(3) Install the indoor unit and the flexible duct.

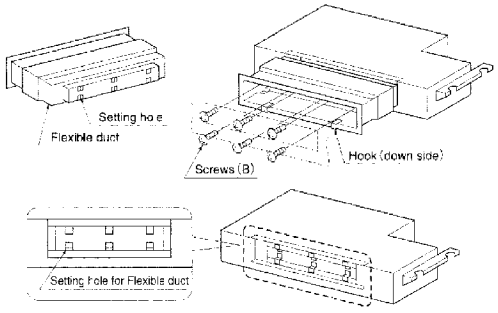
In case of the existing ceiling

①Install the flexible duct temporarily in the ceiling.



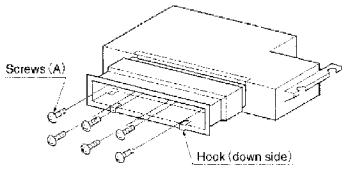
②Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit and install the indoor unit.

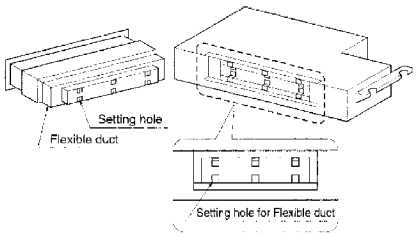
③Install the flexible duct to the setting plate for duct with screws (B) (M5×15), facing the hook of flexible duct to down side.



In case of the new ceiling

①Install the flexible duct to the indoor unit with screws (B) (M5×15), facing the hook of flexible duct to down side.





②Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit and install the indoor unit (complete with flexible duct).

1P167773

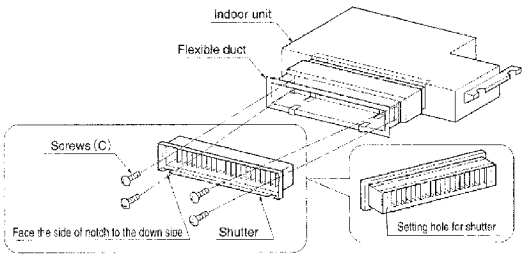
7 Initial setting of the indoor unit

Depending on the pattern of installation, connect the terminal board (A2P) of the indoor unit as follows.
However, in case of SKY AIR series, set by the remote controller at the field set mode. For details, refer to the "How to set in the field" of the operation manual of the remote controller.

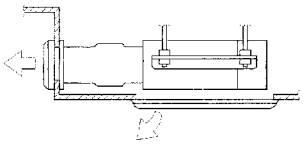
Model \ Installation pattern	"Horizontal air outlet"+"Vertical air outlet"	"Horizontal air outlet"
Less than 3m	SKY AIR series Setting number of field setting MODE No.: Group setting No. 13; Individual setting No. 23; FIRST CODE No. 6; SECOND CODE No. 01 (Less than 3m) / 02 (3m-3.8m) VRV unit Terminal board (A2P) Printed circuit board assembly X1A HIGH NORMAL LOW M1F C [factory set]	SKY AIR series No field setting required by the remote controller. VRV unit No setting required. X1A HIGH NORMAL LOW M1F C [factory set]
3m-3.8m		Not possible

8 Installation of the shutter and its adjustment

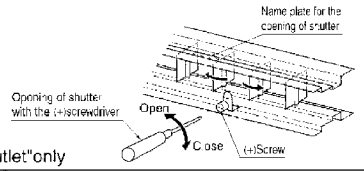
(1) Install the shutter in the inside of the flexible duct with screws (C) (M5×20).



(2) When the unit is installed with the pattern of the "Horizontal air outlet"+"Vertical air outlet", by referring to the following table, adjust the opening of shutter with the tool according to the height of the ceiling as directed in the name plate for the opening of shutter.



Opening of shutter	Proportion of the air volume "Horizontal air outlet"	Proportion of the air volume Vertical air outlet	Ceiling height
Full close	Never operate the unit with the shutter at "full close"		
25%	4	6	3m-3.8m
50%	5	5	Less than 3m
75%	5.5	4.5	
Full open	6	4	

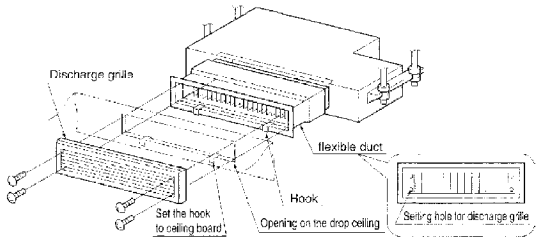


Caution: Be sure to set the shutter at "full open" when the unit is operated with "Horizontal air outlet" only

1P167774

⑨ Installation of the discharge grille

(1) Before installing the discharge grille, set the hook for duct to the lower side of the opening.
(2) Install the discharge grille to the flexible duct with screws (M5×50) (included in the discharge grille kit) over the drop ceiling board



⑩ Installation of the decoration panel to the indoor unit

●Install the decoration panel according to the pattern of the installation.

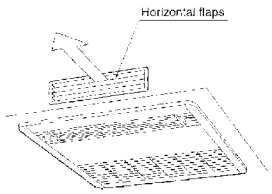
"Horizontal air outlet" and "Vertical air outlet"	"Horizontal air outlet"	
	When the air discharge blind panel is not installed.	When the air discharge blind panel is installed.
Refer to the installation manual of the decoration panel, install the decoration panel to the indoor unit.		Refer to the installation manual of the air discharge blind plate, install the decoration panel to the indoor unit.

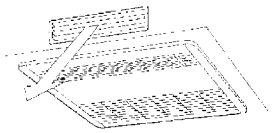
1P167774

11 Adjusting the direction of air discharge

How to adjust the blow direction depending on the unit set-up.

In case of"Horizontal air outlet"...When the air discharge unit is used.



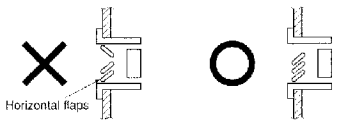


●Up/Down adjustment when cooling

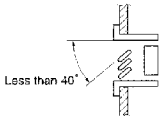
Keep the horizontal flaps of discharge grille at horizontal position.

Caution

1.When you set the flaps downward, keep all the horizontal flaps same direction as shown below. Never set the flaps with sharp bend to disturb the air flow, which may cause the condensation on the discharge grille.

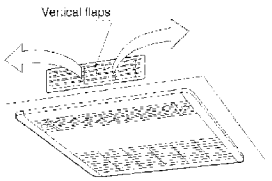


2.Keep the horizontal flap to a 40° angle or less. If the flaps are set to a 40° angle or more, it may cause the condensation on the gril e.



●Up/Down adjustment when heating

Set the horizontal flaps of the discharge grille downward.

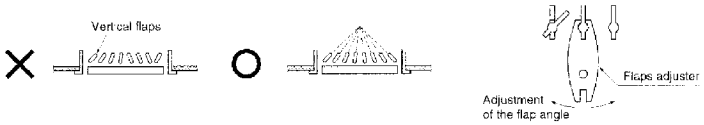


●Right/Left adjustment

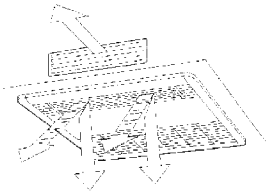
Adjust the vertical flaps of the discharge grille to the right and left by the flap adjuster (included in the kit) in order to have a appropriate distribution of the room temperature.

Caution

When you adjust the vertical flaps to the right and left side, adjust the flaps as shown below. If you set the flaps with a sharp bend and it disturbs the air flow, it may cause the condensation of the discharge grille.



In case of "Horizontal air outlet" ...When the air discharge unit is used.

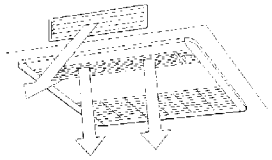


●Up/Down adjustment for cooling operation

For "Horizontal air outlet" refer to the above and adjust the flaps Up/Down of the front discharge grille.
For "Vertical air outlet" refer to the operation manual of the indoor unit for "Adjustment of air direction by remote control".

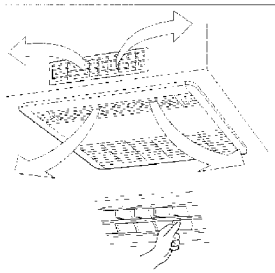
Caution

When the unit is operated for a long period of time in high humid place, it may cause the condensation on the panel. In this case , set the flaps of the discharge grille downward or swing the flaps.



●Up/Down adjustment for heating operation

For "Horizontal air outlet" refer to the above and adjust the flaps Up/Down of the front discharge grille.
For "Vertical air outlet" refer to the operation manual of the indoor unit for "Adjustment of the direction of the air flow by remote controller".

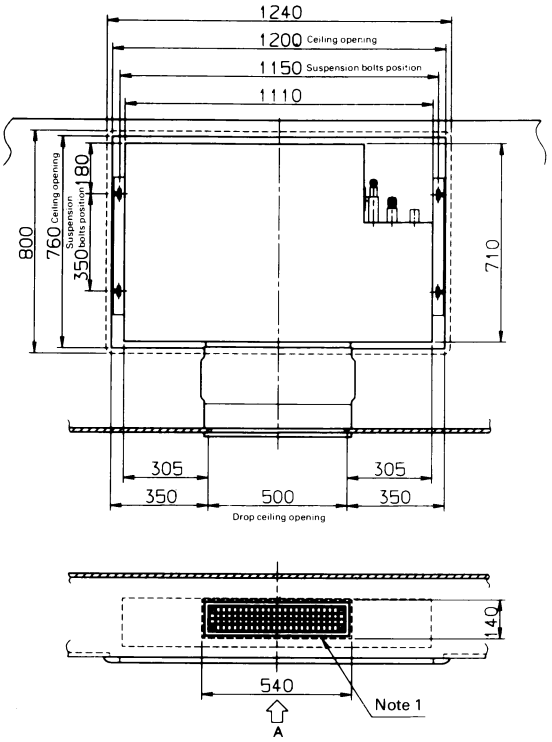


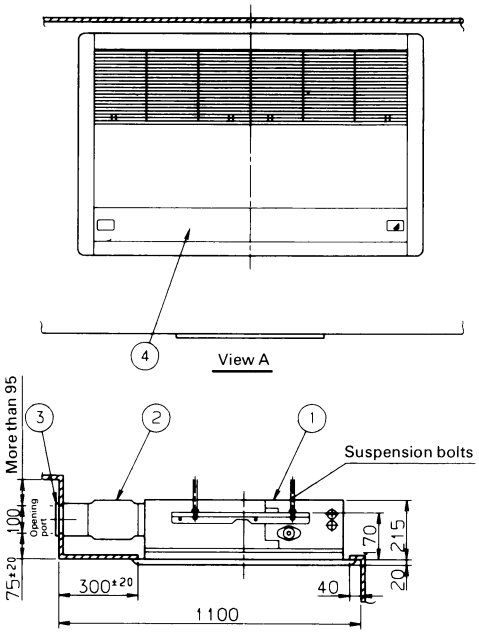
●Right/Left adjustment for heating operation

For "Horizontal air outlet" refer to the above and adjust the flaps Right/Left of the front discharge grille.
For "Vertical air outlet" adjust the vertical flaps of the discharge grille to Right/Left to obtain a appropriate distribution of the room temperature.

1P167774

Air Discharge Blind Panel (KDBJ52F56W) + Discharge Grille (KDGJ52F56W) + Flexible Duct (KFDJ52FA56) + Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type (for Indoor Unit 25 ~ 40 Class)

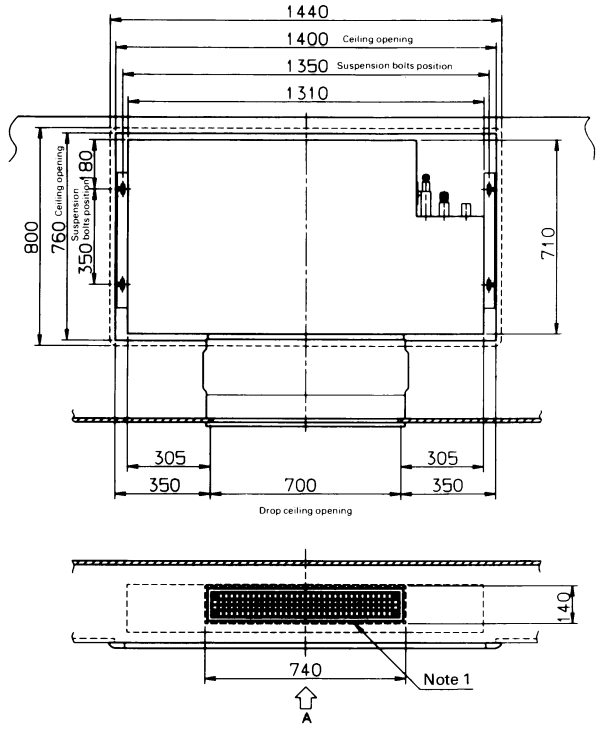


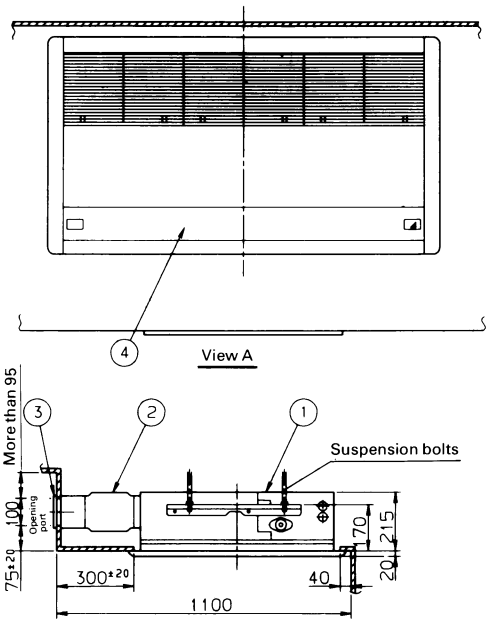


Note: 1. Do not obstruct around the drop ceiling opening.

Number	Name	Description
4	Air discharge blind panel	
3	Discharge grille	
2	Flexible duct	
1	Indoor unit	

Air Discharge Blind Panel (KDBJ52F80W) + Air Discharge Grille (KDGJ52F80W) + Flexible Duct (KFDJ52FA80) + Ceiling Mounted Cassette Corner Type (for Indoor Unit 63 Class)



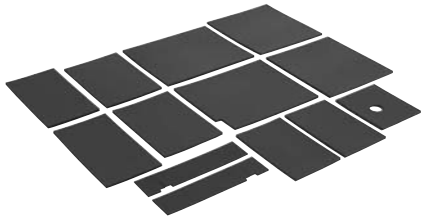


Note: 1. Do not obstruct around the drop ceiling opening.

Number	Name	Description
4	Air discharge blind panel	
3	Discharge grille	
2	Flexible duct	
1	Indoor unit	

5. FXD(Q)
- Slim Ceiling Mounted Duct Type -

5.1 KDT25N32·50·63 — Installation Kit for High Humidity



Caution

- This kit can be installed to the Ceiling mounted Built-in Type Air Conditioners.<Slim duct type>
- When the Installation box for adapter PCB(KPP1B101)is used together, mount this kit before Installation box.
- It is recommended to mount this kit before installing the indoor unit.

Combination table

The indoor unit model applied	Kit name KDT25N32	KDT25N50	KDT25N63
Room Air Conditioners	CDK(X)D(S)25・35EAVM(A)(T)	CDK(X)D(S)25・35・50C(D)VM(A)(T)	CDK(X)D(S)60C(D)VM(A)(T)
VRV	FXD(Q)20・25・32PVE(T)(5)	FXD(Q)20・25・32・40・50 M(N)VE(T)(5) FXDQ20・25・32・40・50NAVE	FXD(Q)63 M(N)VE(T)(5) FXDQ63NAVE

Details of parts

Designation	① Top plate insulation (T-1)	② Top plate insulation (T-2)	③ Side plate insulation (S-1)	④ Side plate insulation (S-2)
Shape	A, Slit, (mm), 380	A, Slit, (mm), 240	Score, 380, Slit, (mm), 15, 207	Score, 240, (mm), 207
Kit name / A	KDT25N32: 700; KDT25N50: 900; KDT25N63: 1100	KDT25N32: 700; KDT25N50: 900; KDT25N63: 1100		
Number of pieces	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pcs.	1 pc.

Designation	⑤ Bottom plate insulation (B-1)	⑥ Chamber cover insulation (C-1)
Shape	A, Slit, (mm), 420	A, Slit, (mm), 200
Kit name / A	KDT25N32: 704; KDT25N50: 904; KDT25N63: 1104	KDT25N32: 621; KDT25N50: 821; KDT25N63: 1021
Number of pieces	1 pc.	1 pc.

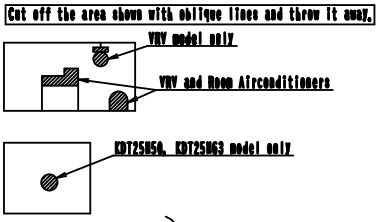
Designation	⑦ Hanger (right) insulation (H-1)	⑧ Hanger (left) insulation (H-2)	⑨ Installation manual
Shape	390 (mm), Slit, 90	390 (mm), 30, Slit	(This instruction)
Number of pieces	1 pc.	1 pc.	1 pc.

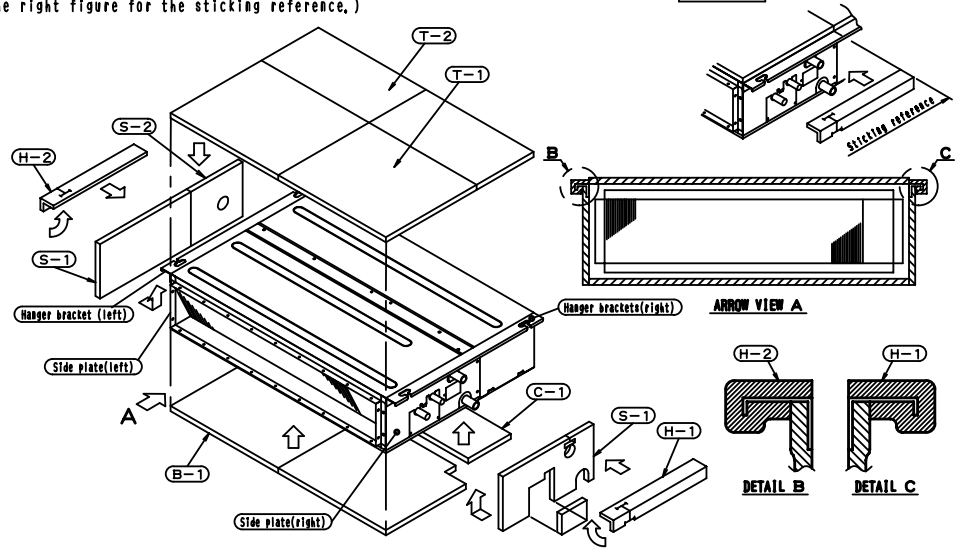
❶ How to attach

⚠ When moving the unit at or after opening, hold the unit by the hanger brackets. Do not apply force to the refrigerant piping, drain piping or flange parts.

<Procedure> Stick the insulations carefully according to the following procedures and do not make a gap betwween the adjacent thermal insulations.

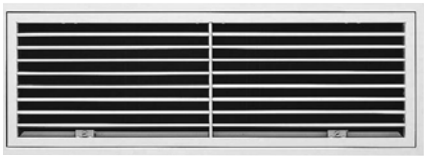
(1) Stick the top plate insulation (T-1), (T-2) to the indoor unit top plate.
(2) Cut off the side plate insulation (S-1) following the score. (See the right figure)
(3) Stick the side plate insulation (S-1) to the indoor unit right side plate.
(4) Stick the side plate insulation (S-1) to the indoor unit left side plate without cutting off the area surrounded by the score.
(5) Stick the side plate insulation (S-2) to the indoor unit left side plate.
(6) Stick the bottom plate insulation (B-1) to the indoor unit bottom plate.
(7) Stick the chamber cover insulation (C-1) to the indoor unit chamber cover.
(8) Stick the hanger (left) insulation (H-2) and the hanger (right) insulation (H-1) respectively to the left and right hangers respectively. (See the right figure for the sticking reference.)





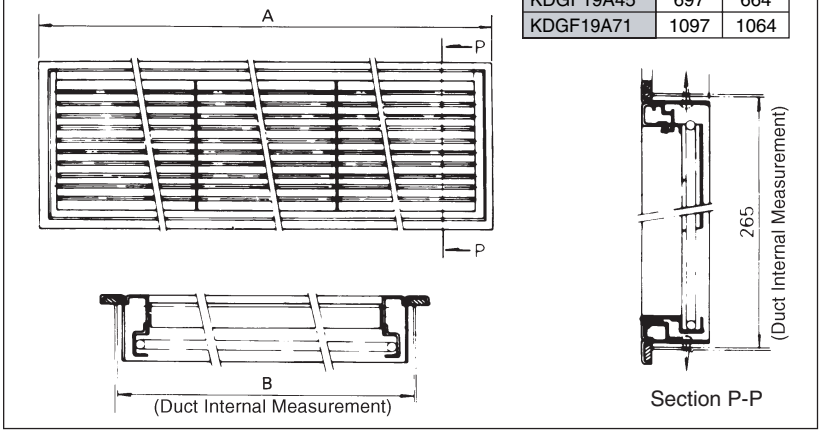
3P131323E

6. FXYD
- Ceiling Mounted Low Silhouette Duct Type -
6.1 KDGF19A45·71 — Decoration Panel



Dimensions Unit:mm

Model	A	B
KDGF19A45	697	664
KDGF19A71	1097	1064

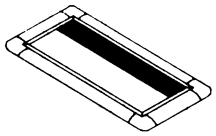


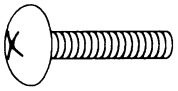
7. FXS(YQ) / FXYB - Ceiling Mounted Built-in Type -

7.1 BYBS32·45·71·125DJW1 — Decoration panel

① Check of the parts

● The box contains this manual and the parts listed below.

Item	Description	Quantity
Decoration panel		1 set

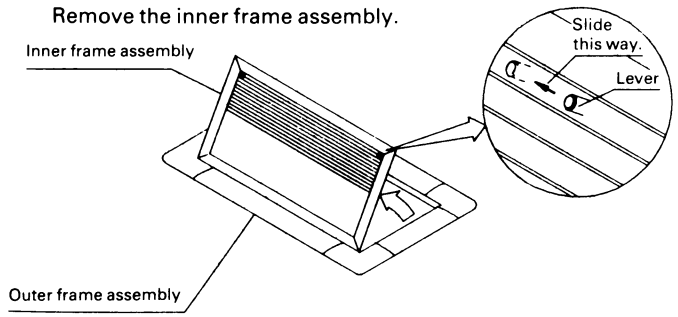
Item	Description	Quantity
Decoration panel fixing screw	 M5 × 40	4 pcs.

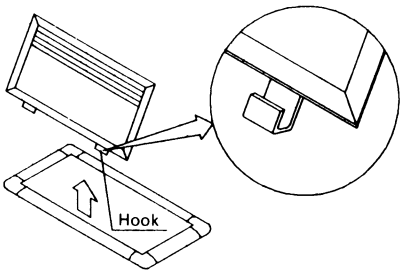
② Preparing the decoration panel

● Handle the suction panel with care.

<Never lean the panel against a wall, etc. nor leave it on a projecting object. (For preventions of dents or damages to the panel surface.)>

Remove the inner frame assembly.





● Slide the inner frame assembly's lever and pull up the inner frame assembly.
● Unhook the inner frame assembly off the hook holes.

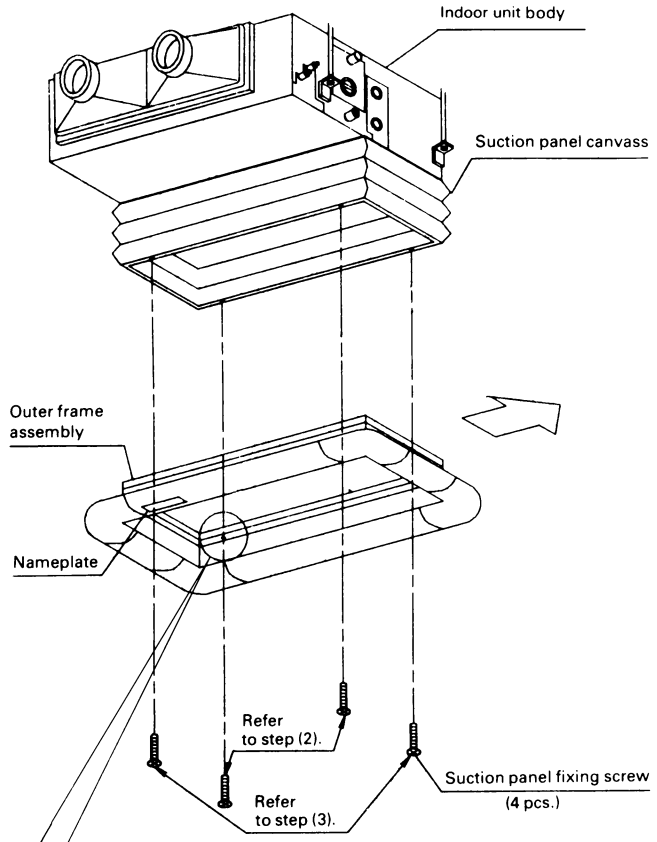
C: 1PA43807D

③ Installing the outer frame assembly

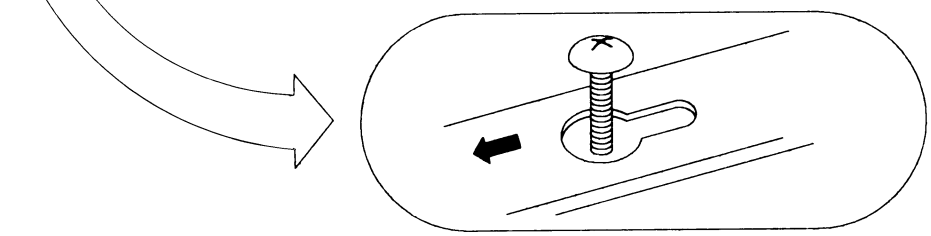
- This decoration panel can be installed to the air-conditioner body either directly or using a canvas for decoration panel (optional).

1. For installation using the decoration panel canvas

<Read also the instruction manual accompanying the decoration panel canvas.>

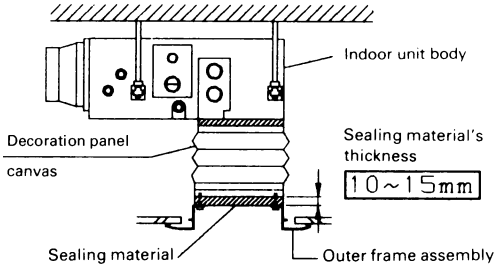


(1) Install the decoration panel canvas to the indoor unit body. (Make the tightening length of the screws about 10 mm.)
(2) Mount two suction decoration panel fixing screws to the decoration panel canvas and temporarily tighten them.
(3) Move the outer frame assembly in the direction of the arrow to rest it on the two screws temporarily.



C: 1PA43807D

(4) Mount the rest two screws to the suction panel canvass and tighten all the four screws securely until the sealing material becomes 10 to 15 mm thick.

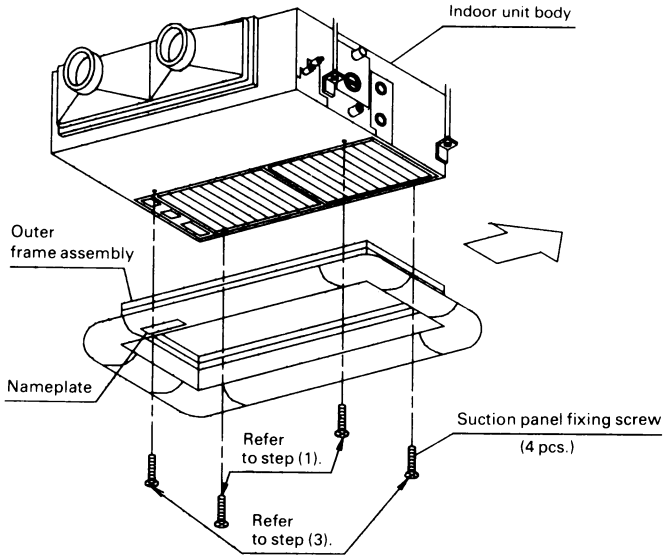


Tighten the fixing screws until the sealing material becomes 10 to 15 mm thick.

(5) Use the chain and turnbuckle supplied for the decoration panel canvas to make no gap between the canvas and the ceiling

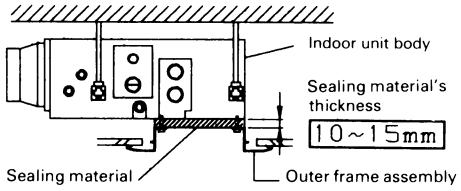
<Install the suction panel to the indoor unit body in the correct direction with the nameplate on the panel coming to the position shown in the left figure.>

2. For direct installation



(1) Mount two decoration panel fixing screws to the indoor unit body and tighten them temporarily. (Make the tightening length of the screws about 10 mm.)
(2) Move the outer frame assembly in the direction of the arrow to rest it on the two screws temporarily.
(3) Install the outer frame assembly by following the steps (3) and (4) in **"1. For installation using the decoration panel canvas"**.

Note: In case there is a gap between the decoration panel and the ceiling, adjust the height of the indoor unit. (Refer to the indoor unit installation manual.)



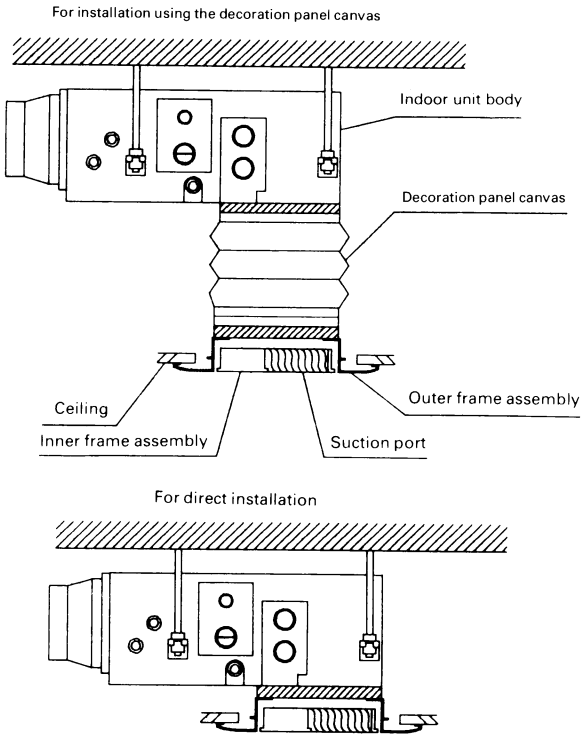
Tighten the fixing screws until the sealing material becomes 10 to 15 mm thick.

<Install the decoration panel to the indoor unit body in the correct direction with the nameplate on the panel coming to the position shown in the left figure.>

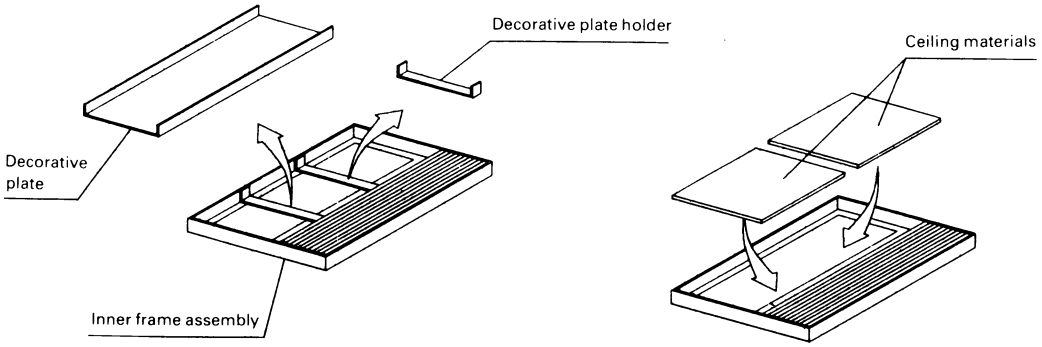
C: 1PA43807D

④ Installing the inner frame assembly

- Install the inner frame assembly to the outer frame assembly by following the reverse steps mentioned in **"2. Preparing the decoration panel"**.



<Ceiling materials can be attached to the inner frame assembly. For their installation, take the following steps.>



(1) Remove the decorative plate holder from the inner frame assembly.
(2) Remove the decorative plate and place the ceiling materials instead.
(3) Using the decorative panel holder removed in the step (1), fix the ceiling material.

Note:
Installation of the ceiling materials makes the decorative panel unnecessary. Make the ceiling materials less than 15 mm thick.

C: 1PA43807D

7.2 KTBJ25K36W, KTB25KA56·80·160W — Service Access Panel

KTB25KA80W

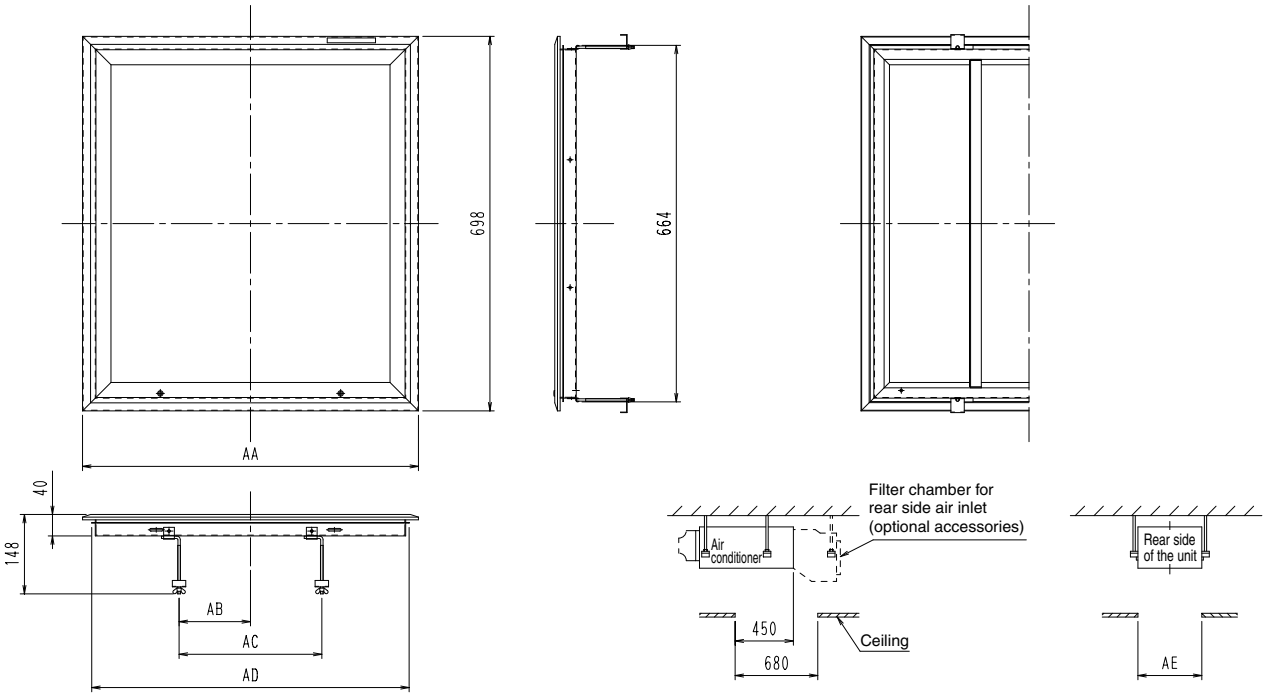


Item \ Model		KTBJ25K36W(T)(F)	KTB25KA56W KTBJ25K56T(F)	KTB25KA80W KTBJ25K80T(F)	KTB25KA160W KTBJ25K160T(F)
Colour		W : White, T : Brown, F : Fresh white			
Accessories		Installation manual.			
Mass (Weight)	kg	6.0	6.5	9.0	10.7

Caution

- Ceiling joist and ceiling joist support required. (Locally procured.)

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Model	Colour	AA	AB	AC	AD	AE
KTBJ25K36W	White	626	115	266	591	606
KTBJ25K36T	Brown	626	115	266	591	606
KTBJ25K36F	Fresh white	626	115	266	591	606
KTB25KA56W	White	776	190	416	741	756
KTBJ25K56T	Brown	776	190	416	741	756
KTBJ25K56F	Fresh white	776	190	416	741	756
KTB25KA80W	White	1076	340	716	1041	1056
KTBJ25K80T	Brown	1076	340	716	1041	1056
KTBJ25K80F	Fresh white	1076	340	716	1041	1056
KTB25KA160W	White	1476	540	2X558=1116	1441	1456
KTBJ25K160T	Brown	1476	540	2X558=1116	1441	1456
KTBJ25K160F	Fresh white	1476	540	2X558=1116	1441	1456

JC : D3K1126A

- The inspection hatch can be made to look nice with the service access panel.
- Thin 10 mm design for the exposed part.

Installation

DAIKIN

AIR CONDITIONER

Directions for Mounting Access Panels

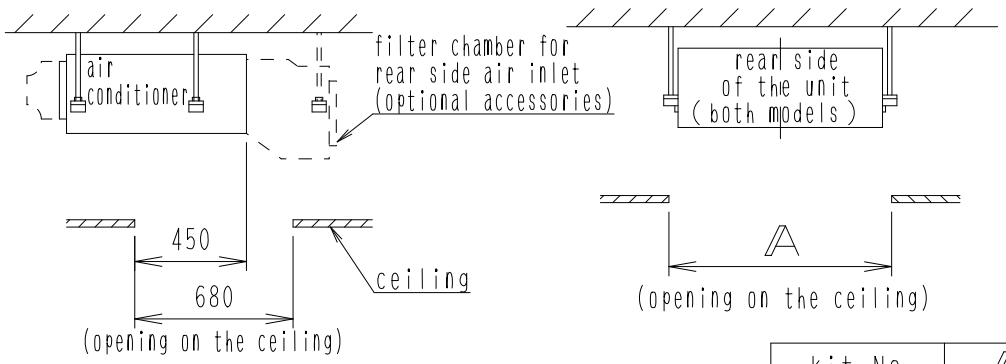
READ THESE INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLATION.

● KEEP THIS MANUAL IN A HANDY PLACE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

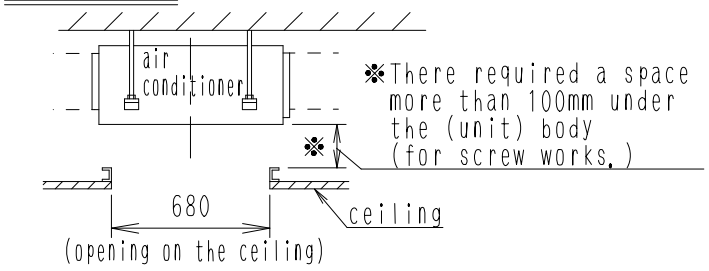
Before Mounting the Panel

1. Prepare an opening on the ceiling.

Built-In Type

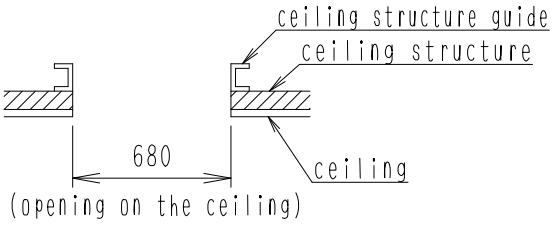


Duct Type



kit No.	A
KTBJ25K36	606
KTBJ25K56 KTB25KA56	756
KTBJ25K80 KTB25KA80	1056
KTBJ25K160 KTB25KA160	1456

2. Mount the ceiling structure guide on the edge of the ceiling structure.



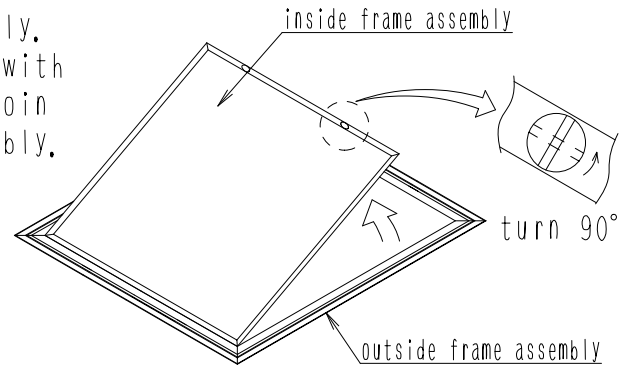
Service Works for Duct Type Models

Service works for maintenance shall be done (accessed) from the ※ space (the above).
Please prepare short-length screw drivers (100mm or less.)

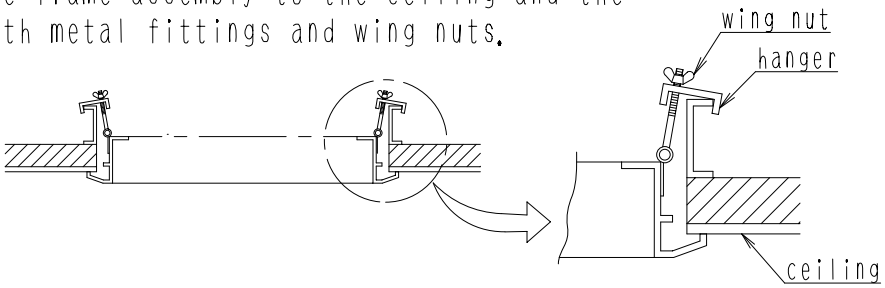
3P225173A

Mounting the Panel

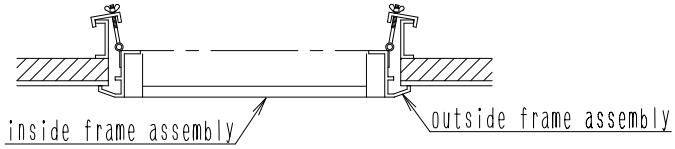
1. Remove the inside frame assembly.
   • Turn the lock 90° to the left with a flat-top screw driver or a coin to open the inside frame assembly.



2. Mount the outside frame assembly on the ceiling.
   • Fasten the frame assembly to the ceiling and the guide with metal fittings and wing nuts.



3. Mount the inside frame assembly to the fixed outside frame assembly.

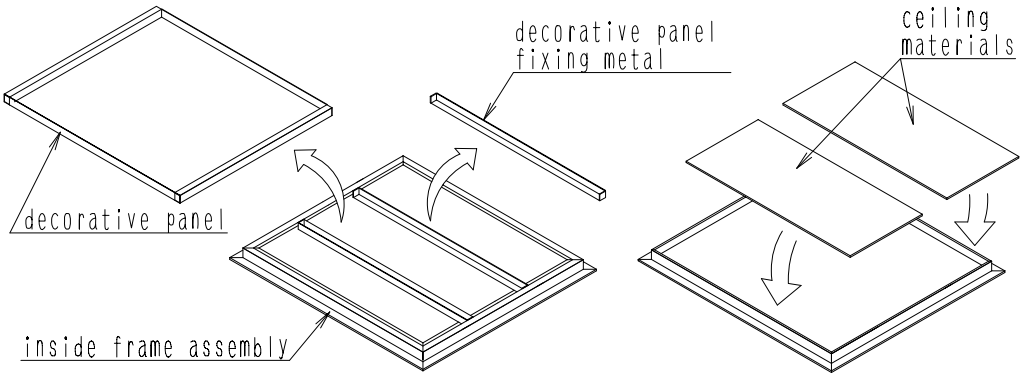


Mounting of Ceiling Materials

Ceiling materials can be optionaly mounted to the inside frame assembly.
Mounting methods are as follows:-

① Remove the decorative panel fixing metal of the inside frame assembly.
② Take out the decorative panel and mount the ceiling materials instead.
③ Put back the fixing metal (①) to hold the ceiling materials.

(Note) Decorative panel is not required when mounting ceiling materials.



3P225173A

7.3 KNM25K32·50·63·125V1 — Natural Evaporating Pan Type Humidifier



Model	KNM25K32V1	KNM25K50V1	KNM25K63V1	KNM25K125V1
Humidifying Capacity (L/h)	0.4	0.6	1.0	1.8
Power Supply	Single Phase, 220-240V 50Hz			
Power Consumption (W)	12			
Water Inlet Port	1/2B			
Water Outlet Port	VP25 (External dia. ϕ32) (drain pipe at indoor unit)			
Accessories	Humidifier assembly, Solenoid valve box assembly, Feed water line assembly, Service cover 1, Service cover 2, Installation manual, Clamp, Fixing screw, Guide rail fixing plate, Binding band, Installation caution label, Feed water pipe			

Installation

1. Preparation

Tools required for the installation work:

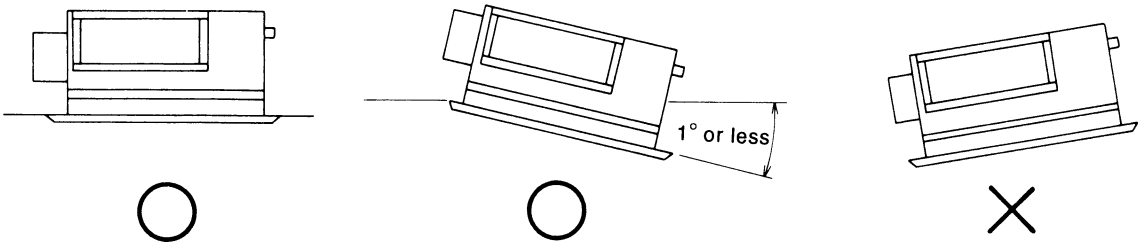
Wrench (nominal sizes 14 and 17), adjustable wrench, Phillips screwdriver, pliers, pipe cutter, flaring tool, drill, hammer, etc.

2. Installation precautions

Keep the following points in mind to run the kit smoothly at full capacity. Be sure to correct any problem before use.

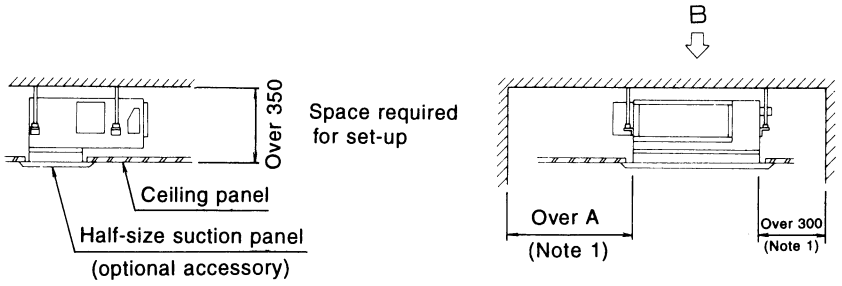
■ Installation place

1. Make sure that the beam or ceiling is stable and strong enough to withstand the product weight. Some structural members of a building may be too weak to set up the kit.
2. Place the kit at a level or with the drain pipe side slightly tilted down (1° or less). Otherwise water may leak out.



3PA36474-16M

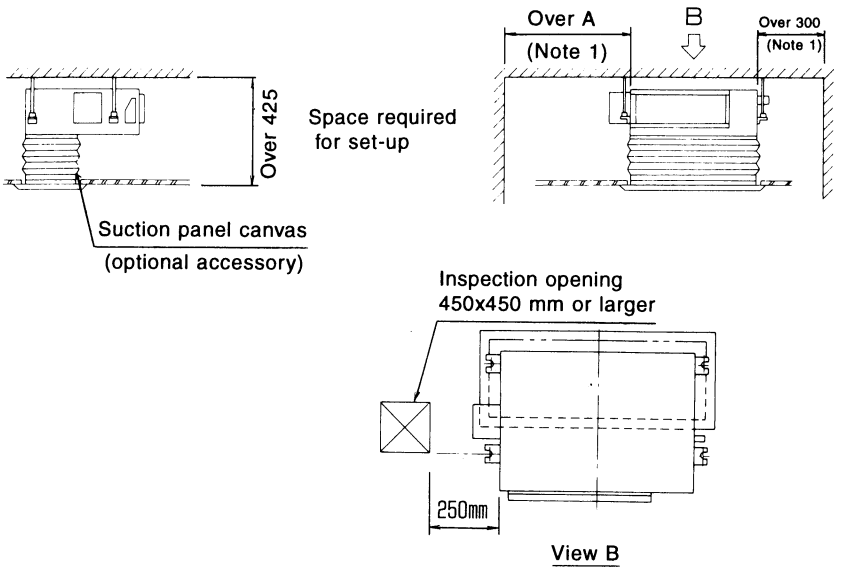
3. For easier servicing, ensure the following open access space.
   (1) When installing the half-size suction panel Keep the dimensions illustrated below. Provide an inspection opening 450x450 mm or larger.
   ① For direct set-up



Kit	A
KNM25K32V1	800
KNM25K50V1	800
KNM25K63VI	800
KNM25K125V1	1200

Note 1: Open access space

② For set-up together with the suction panel canvas



4. Avoid the following places: NO FIRE zones, places exposed to combustible gas, corrosive gas, salty dust, metallic dust, water vapor, oil mist and water drops.
   A fire or malfunction may result.
5. Make sure that the air is not blown out directly to people in the room. If exposed to the blown air in winter or spring or autumn, you may feel chilly.

3PA36474-16M

3. Installation procedure

When the ceiling work is not completed, the kit can be fixed before or after the installation of air conditioner. However, the kit is installed easier before the installation of air conditioner. Illustrations show the fixing before installation.

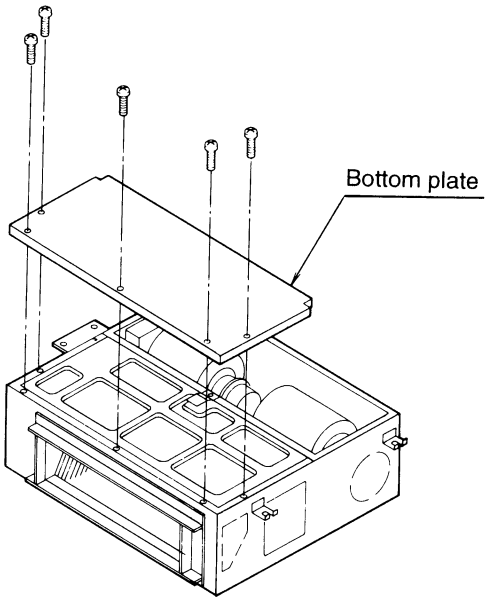
[Precaution]

When this kit and the auxiliary electric heater kit are both mounted on the air conditioner, be sure to set up the auxiliary electric heater first into position.

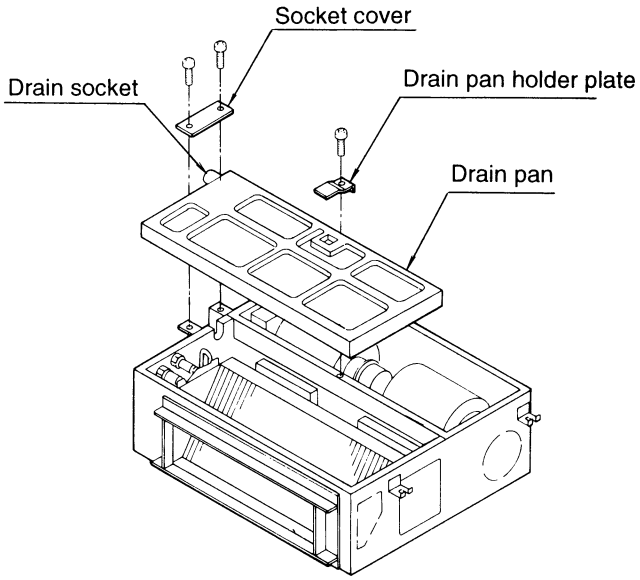
3-1 Removal of parts of air conditioner body

Illustrations and the number of screws may differ from those shown in the figure below depending on models.

(1) Remove the bottom plate.



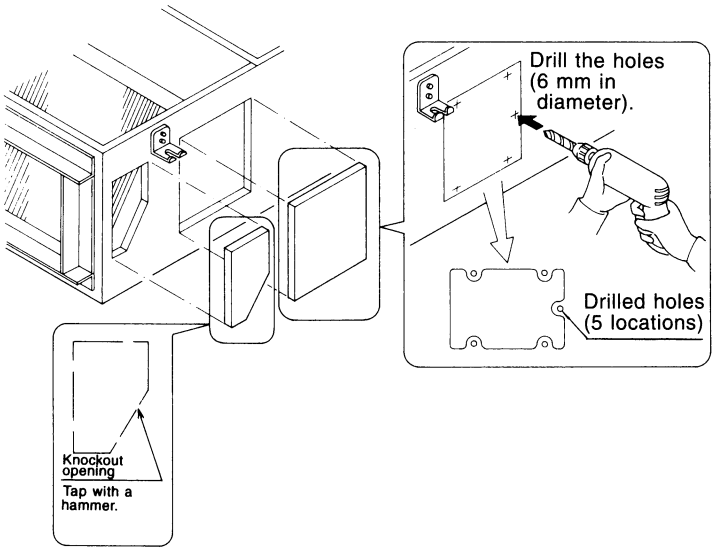
(2) Remove the drain pan holder plate and the drain socket cover. Then, remove the drain pan. While preventing a strong force from being applied to the drain socket, lift the drain pan directly above little by little and remove the drain pan.



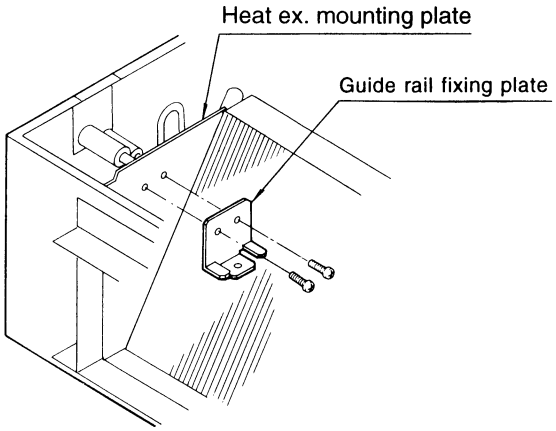
3PA36474-16M

3-2 Setting up the humidifier assembly (Be sure to wear work gloves or the like.)

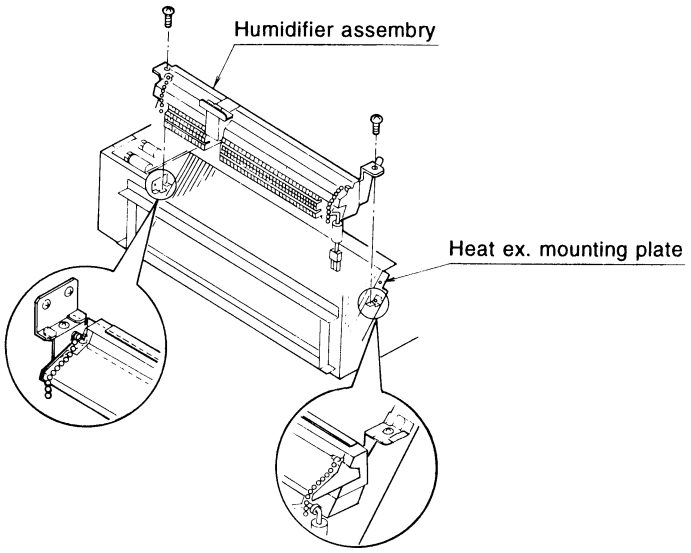
(1) Make two knockout openings in the side.



(2) Fix the guide rail fixing plate on the heat exchanger mounting plate.



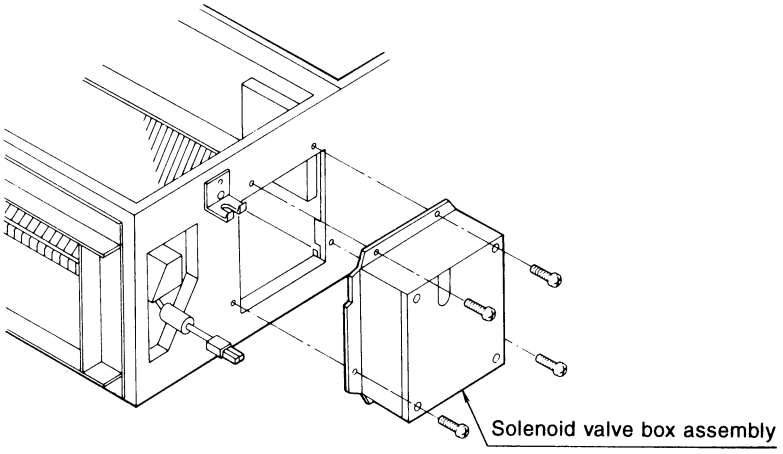
(3) Fit the humidifier assembly on the guide rail bracket and the heat exchanger mounting plate.



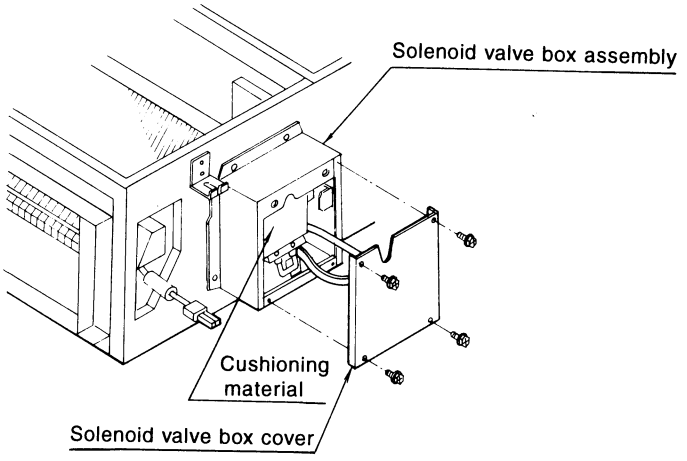
3PA36474-16M

3-3 Setting up the solenoid valve box assembly

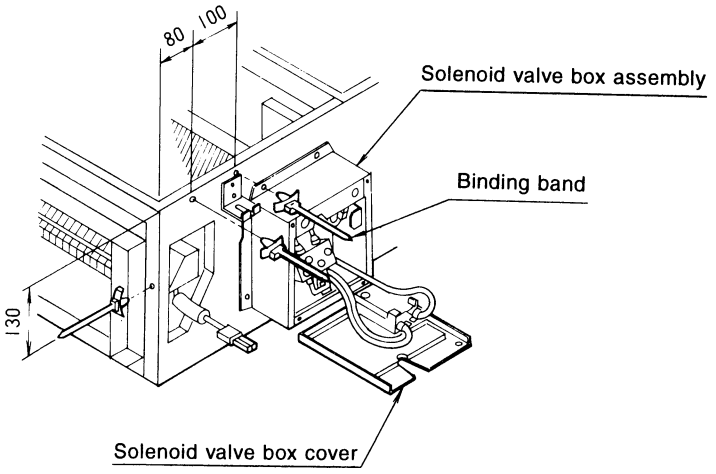
(1) Attach the solenoid valve box assembly on the side of the air conditioner.



(2) Remove the solenoid valve box cover and take out the cushioning material.

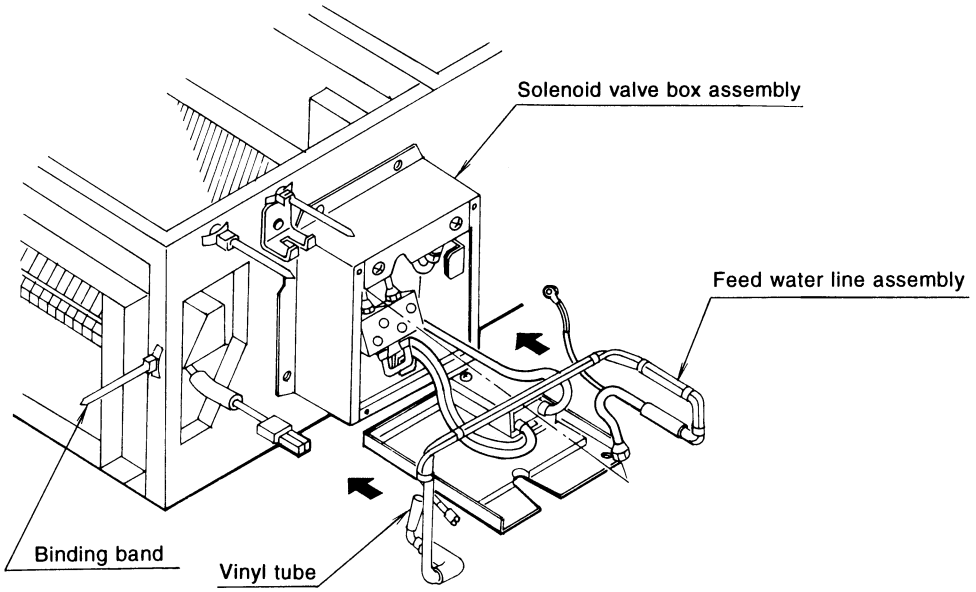


(3) Fix the binding band.

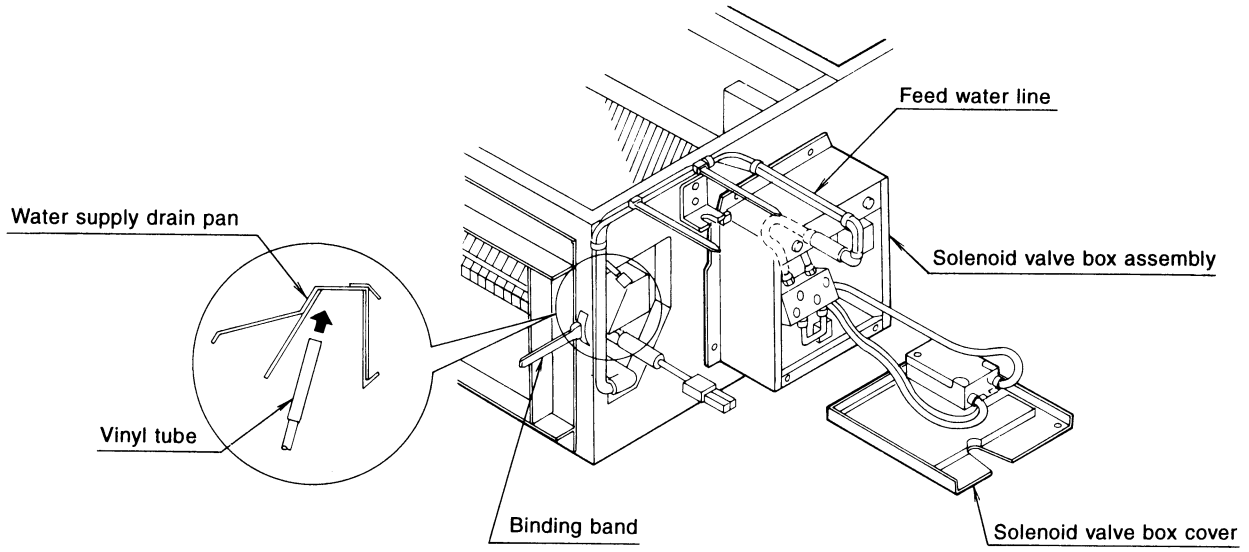


3PA36474-16M

(4) Connect the feed water line assembly. Using a wrench, tighten up the flare nuts at the solenoid valve connection.

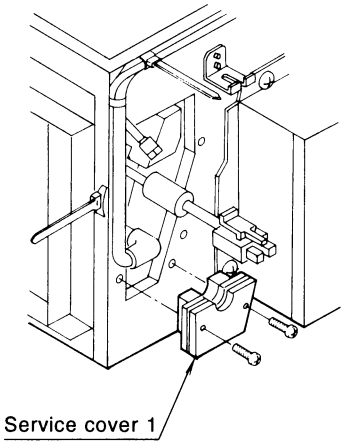


(5) Insert the vinyl tube of the feed water line end into the water supply drain pan.

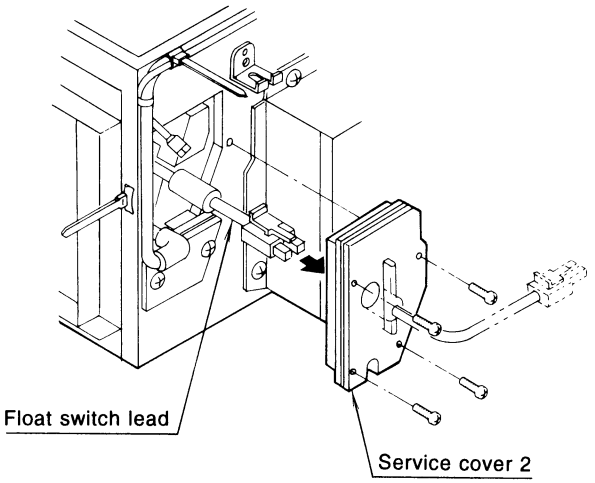


3PA36474-16M

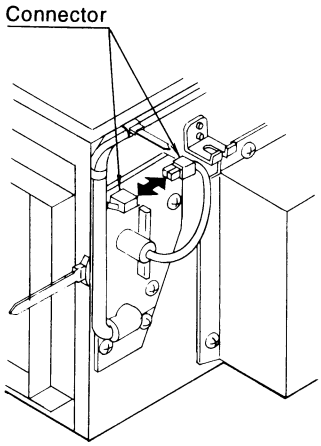
(6) Attach the service cover 1.



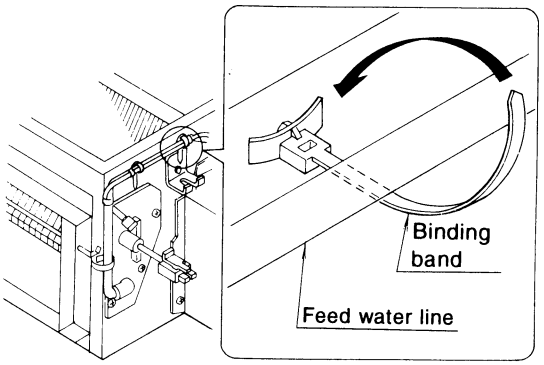
(7) Make sure the above vinyl tube is tight in the water supply drain pan. Pass the float switch lead wire through the service cover 2.



(8) Couple the connector of the float switch lead wire.



(9) Fix the feed water line with the binding band.

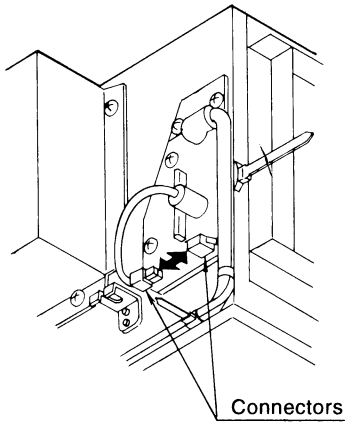


3PA36474-16M

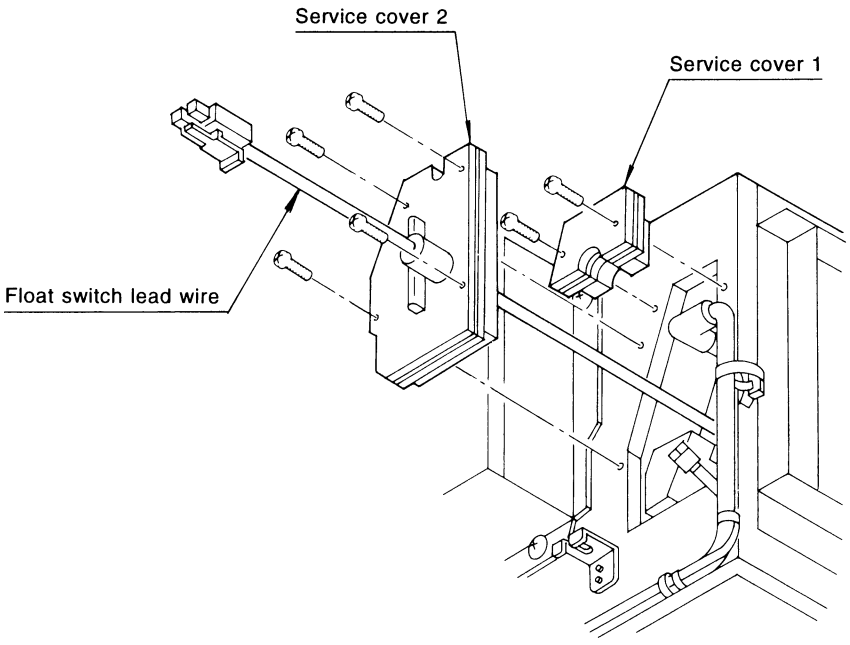
4. Replacement the wetted elements from the side (with half-size suction panel)

(1) Turn off the power and close the main valve of the feed water line.

(2) Disconnect the float switch connectors.



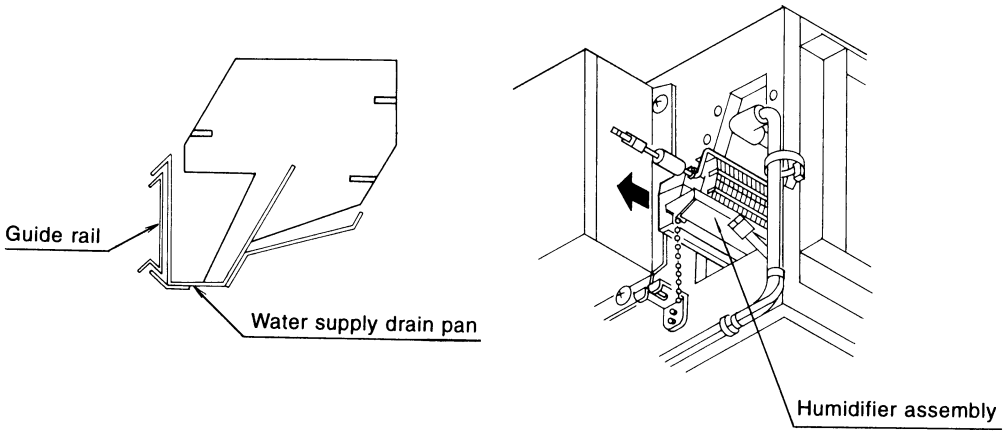
(3) Remove the service covers.



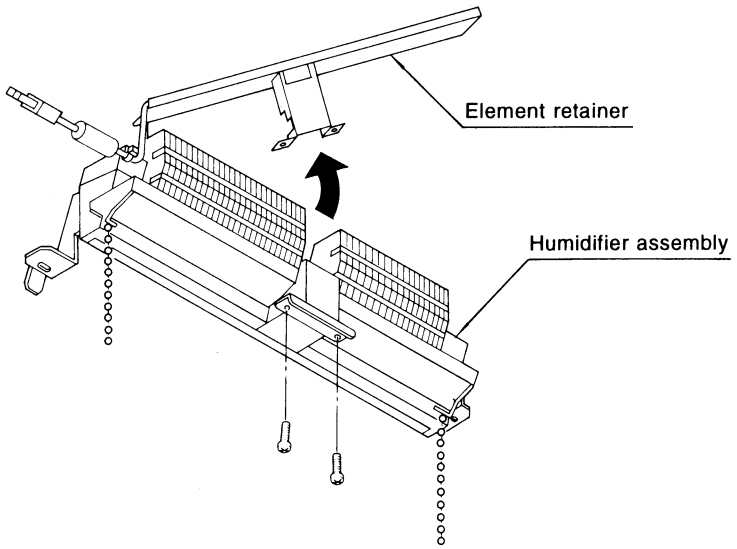
3PA36474-16M

(4) Replace the wetted elements.

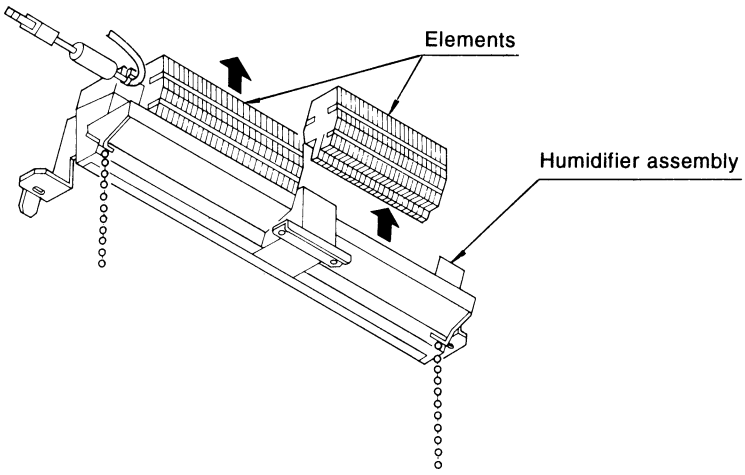
① Draw the entire humidifier assembly along the guide rail out of the side of the air conditioner.



② Remove the wetted element retainer.

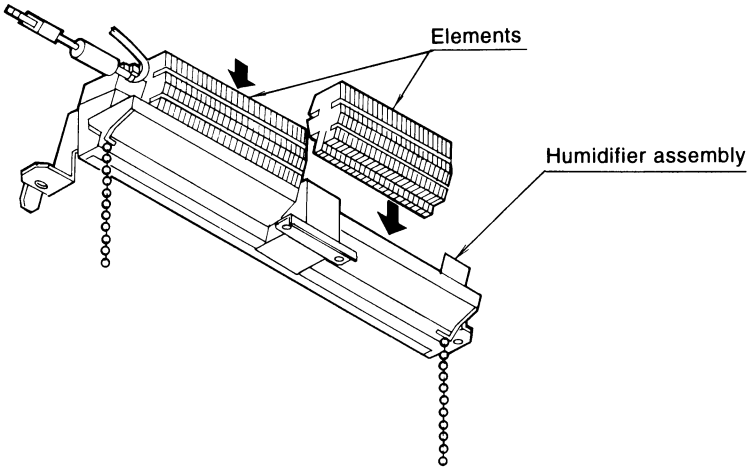


③ Remove the wetted elements.



3PA36474-16M

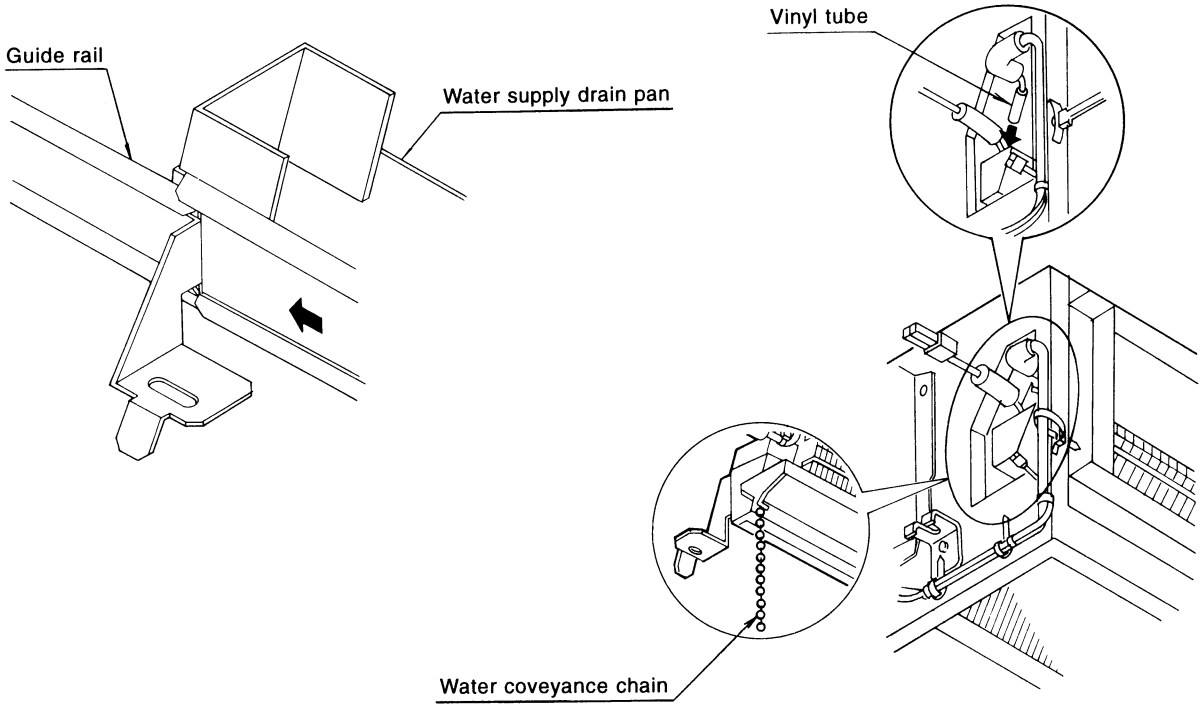
④ Take out the replacement elements.



(5) Fit all the parts back into position in the reverse order.

[Precaution]

Mount the humidifier assembly on the guide rail as shown below. Push it deep into position. At this time, check the following points; **that the vinyl tube at the feed water line end is tight in the water supply drain pan, and that the water conveyance chains (2 pcs.) are hanging straight down.** Finally place the access covers back.



5. Repair and other information

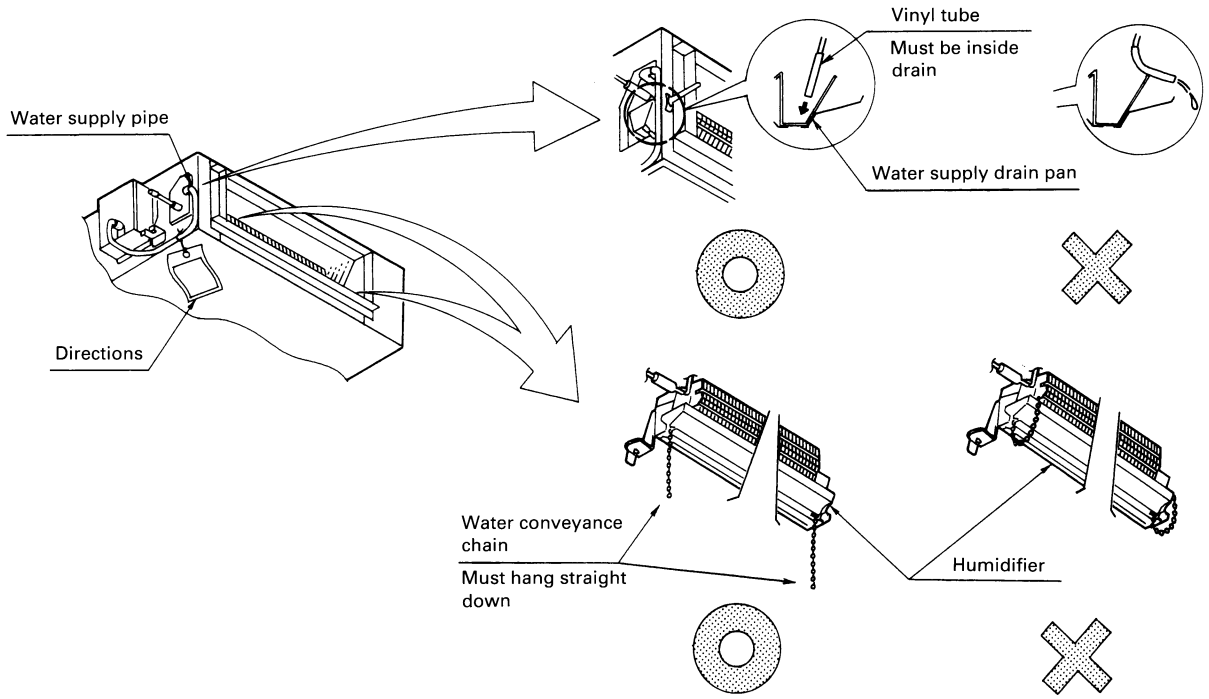
For details, refer to "TROUBLE SHOOTING" in the operation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

3PA36474-16M

■ Precautions

After suspending the indoor unit, be sure to check the following items for the humidifier before performing duct work in order to prevent water leaks.

① The vinyl tube at the end of the water supply pipe must be in the water supply drain pan.
② The water conveyance chain must hang straight down.



3PA36474-16M

7.4 KEA25K32·50·63·100·125VE — Auxiliary Electric Heater



Item \ Model		KEA25K32VE	KEA25K50VE	KEA25K63VE	KEA25K100VE	KEA25K125VE
Power supply		Single phase, 50Hz/60Hz 220-240V/220V				
Switching	Full capacity	0.75kW	1.2kW	1.4kW	2.1kW	2.8kW
	Partial	Not Applicable				
Heater operating current (A)		3.8	6.0	7.0	10.5	14
Wiring		Parallel Connection				
Room temperature control		Automatic by temperature controller (Computer-controlled thermo-couple inside AC unit)				
Safety device		Current fuse				
Accessories		Auxiliary electric heater assembly. Magnetic contact box assembly. Electric wiring ties. Safety label. Installation manual. Screws.				

Installation

1. Preparation

1. Electric work must be performed by a qualified electrician.
2. Changes to electrical equipment
   Fitting an auxiliary electric heater means that a large power supply is required. In many cases the electrical equipment (lead-in power wirings, switches, transformers, etc.) and electric power contact are insufficient and changes are required.
3. Tools required for the installation work
   Screwdrivers, pliers, cutters, nippers, pincers, etc.

2. Installation procedure

When the ceiling work is not completed, the kit can be fixed before or after the installation of air conditioner. However, the kit is installed easier before the installation of the air conditioner. Illustrations show the fixing before installation.

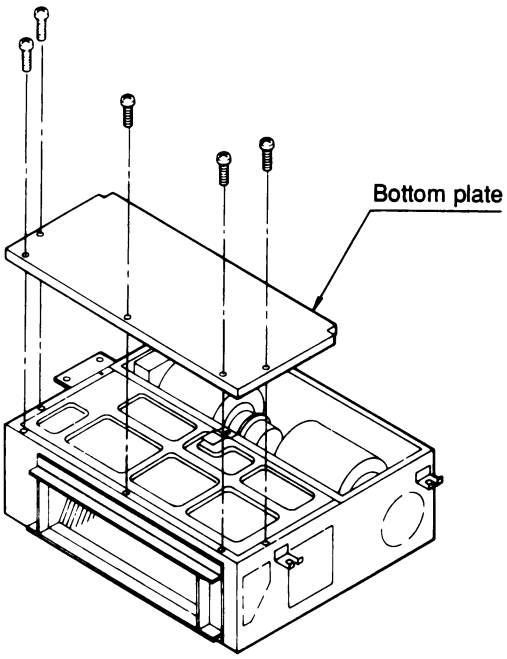
NOTE) When installing both the kit and a natural evaporating pan type humidifier, be sure to install the kit first.

3PA36474-14K

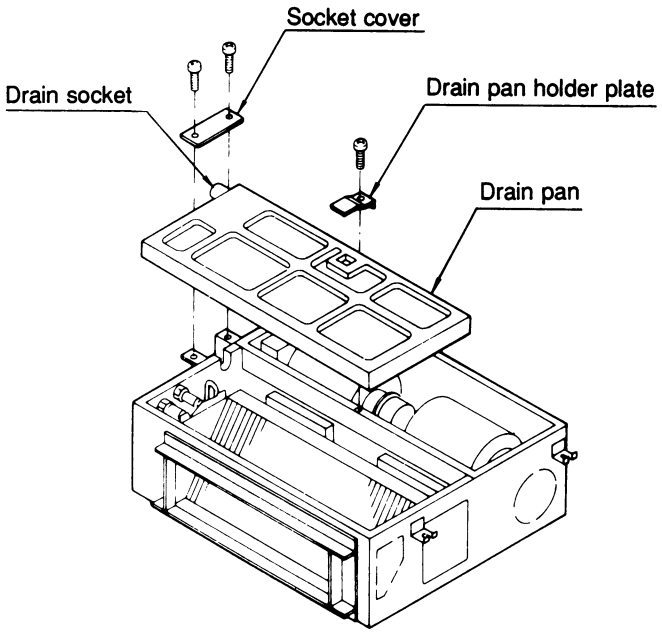
2-1 Removal of parts of air conditioner body

Illustrations and the number of screws may differ from those shown in the figure below depending on models.

(1) Remove the bottom plate.



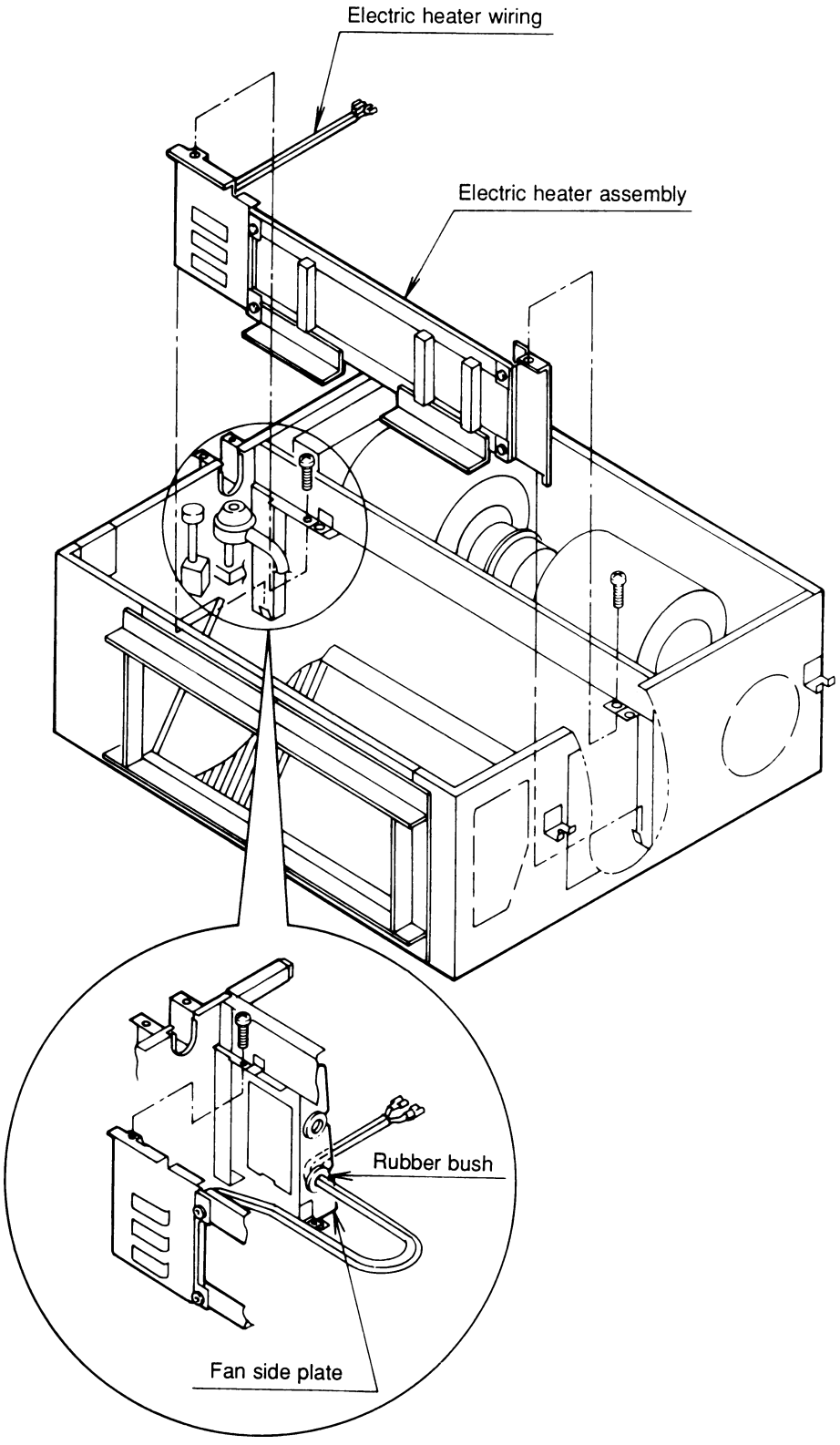
(2) Remove the drain pan holder plate and the drain socket cover. Then, remove the drain pan. While preventing a strong force from being applied to the drain socket, lift the drain pan directly above little by little and remove the drain pan.



3PA36474-14K

2-2 Installation of electric heater assembly

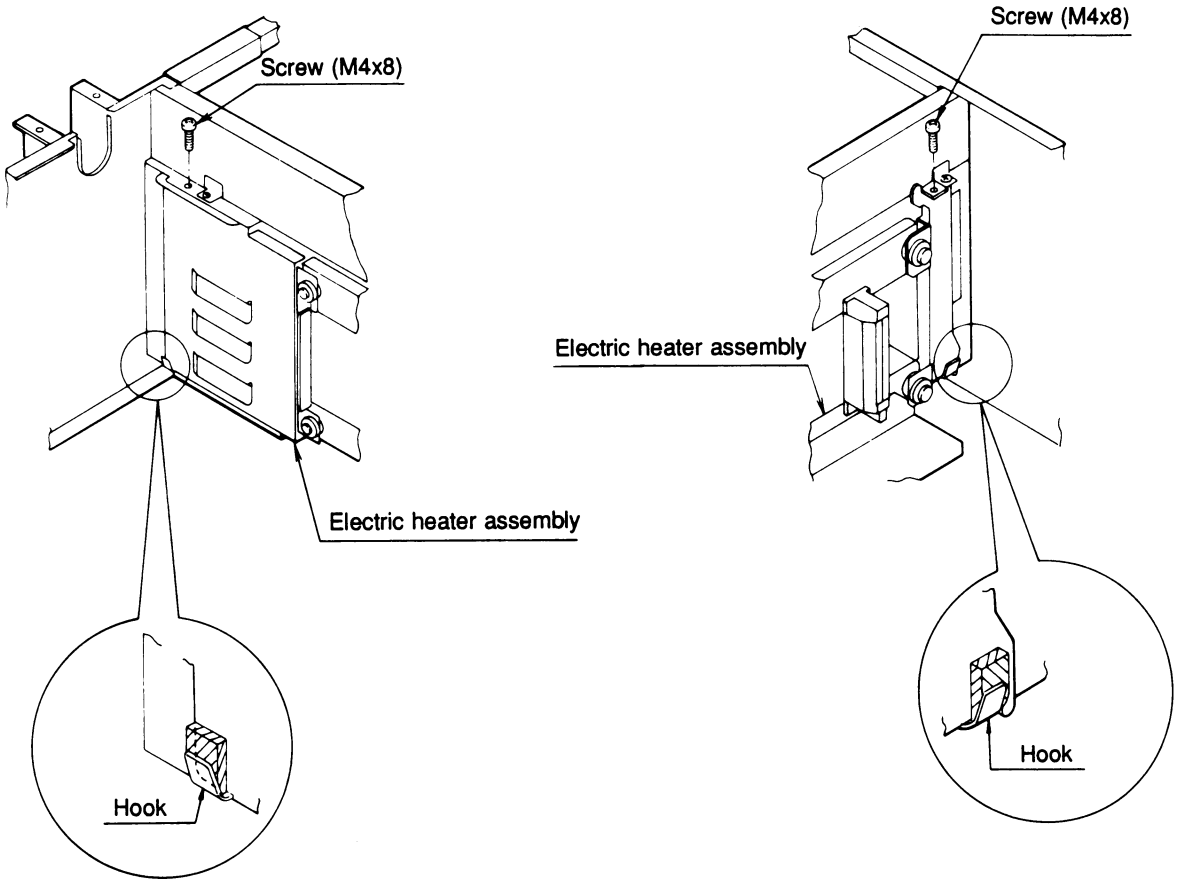
Pass the electric wiring of the electric heater through the rubber bush of the fan side plate and insert the electric heater assembly into the gap between the heat exchanger and the fan assembly.



3PA36474-14K

[Details of installation]

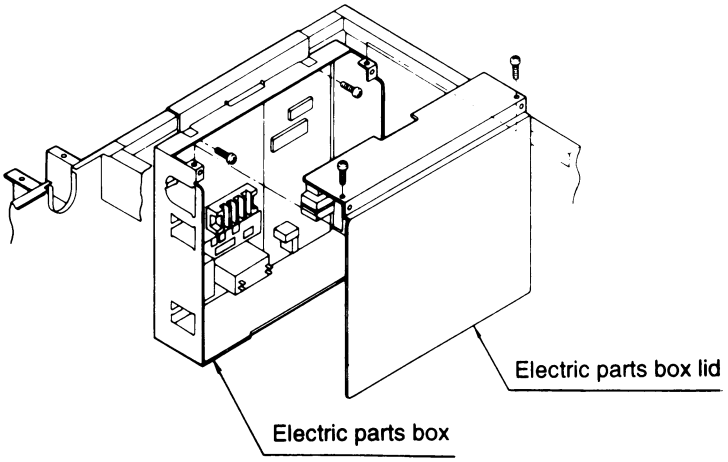
Before screwing up, confirm that the electric heater assembly is securely fitted on the hook and that tap holes are properly aligned.



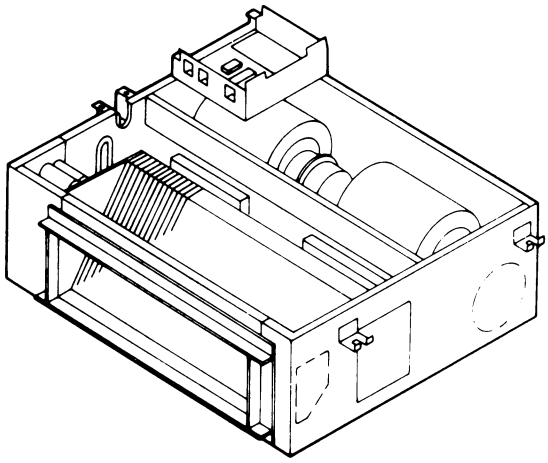
3PA36474-14K

2-3 Removal of control box

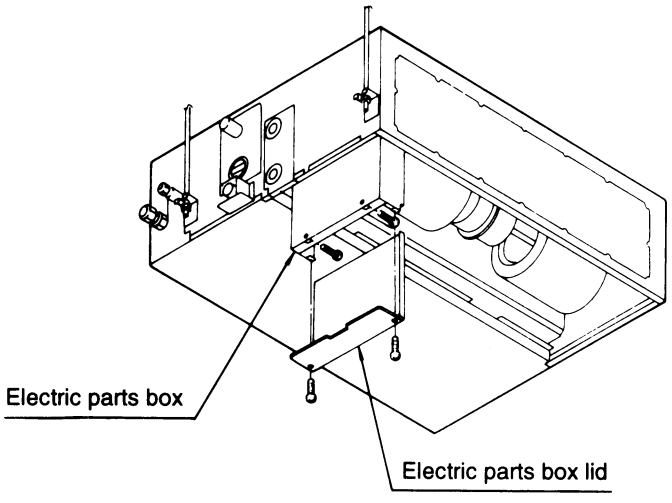
(1) Remove the electric parts box lid and the control box.



(2) Pull out the electric parts box.



If the air conditioner is installed already, remove the electric parts box lid, pull out the electric parts box, and suspend the electric parts box on the air conditioner using the hook on the back of the electric parts box.



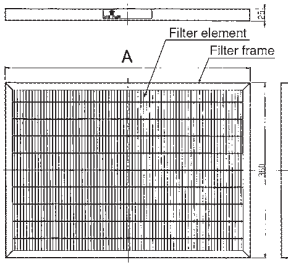
3PA36474-14K

7.5 KAFJ252L36, KAFJ253L36 KAF252LA56·80·160, KAF253LA56·80·160 — High-Efficiency Filter

KAF252LA56



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Model		A
KAFJ252L36	KAFJ253L36	500
KAF252LA56	KAF253LA56	650
KAF252LA80	KAF253LA80	448×1 502×1
KAF252LA160	KAF253LA160	698×1 652×1

C: D3K1408B
C: D3K04917
C: D3K04916

- Cannot be water-washed for reuse.
- Below inlet :
  The Filter Chamber (for High efficiency filter) (KAJ25L36D, KAJ25LA56 · 80 · 160D) is required when the high efficiency filter will be installed.
- Rear inlet :
  The Filter Chamber (for High efficiency filter) (KAJ25L36B, KAJ25LA56 · 80 · 160B or KDF-25A36B · 56B · 80B · 160B) is required when the high ef-ficiency Filter will be installed.

65 (colorimetric method)

Item \ Model	KAFJ252L36	KAF252LA56	KAF252LA80	KAF252LA160
Air flow rate (m^3/min)	9	14	19	38
Average efficiency (%)	65 (colorimetric method)			
Initial pressure loss (Pa)	16 or less	14 or less	14 or less	22 or less
Final pressure loss (Pa)	98			
Life (h)	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)			
Filter element	Flame-resistant type (with mildew-proof)			
Number of sheets included	1	1	2 (each 1)	2 (each 1)
Mass (kg)	0.5	0.6	0.9	1.2

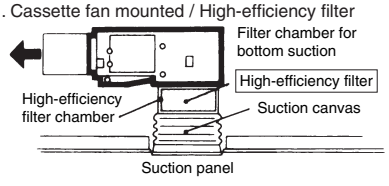
90 (colorimetric method)

Item \ Model	KAFJ253L36	KAF253LA56	KAF253LA80	KAF253LA160
Air flow rate (m^3/min)	9	14	19	38
Average efficiency (%)	90 (colorimetric method)			
Initial pressure loss (Pa)	21 or less	24 or less	24 or less	34 or less
Final pressure loss (Pa)	98			
Life (h)	1,800 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)			
Filter element	Flame-resistant type (with mildew-proof)			
Number of sheets included	1	1	2 (each 1)	2 (each 1)
Mass (kg)	0.5	0.6	0.9	1.2

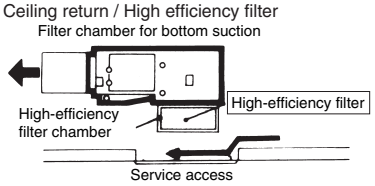
Note) •The filter chamber is required when the high efficiency filter will be installed.

Installation

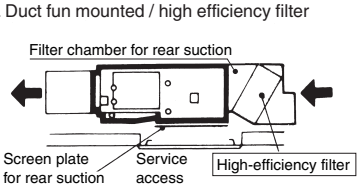
1. Cassette fan mounted / High-efficiency filter



2. Ceiling return / High efficiency filter



3. Duct fun mounted / high efficiency filter

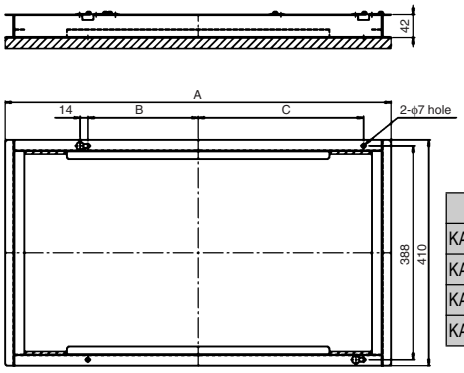


7.6 KAJ25L36D, KAJ25LA56·80·160D — Filter Chamber for Bottom Suction

KAJ25LA56D



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Model	A	B	C	Weight
KAJ25L36D	550	125	225	2.3kg
KAJ25LA56D	700	200	300	2.8kg
KAJ25LA80D	1000	350	450	3.5kg
KAJ25LA160D	1400	550	650	4.0kg

JC: D3K1420B

- If there is not enough pitch in the drain pipe due to the attached cassette, this may be used as a spacer.
- Filter replacement is easily performed.

Item	Model	KAJ25L36D	KAJ25LA56D	KAJ25LA80D	KAJ25LA160D
Inserted filter	65% (colorimetric method)	KAFJ252L36	KAF252LA56	KAF252LA80	KAF252LA160
	90% (colorimetric method)	KAFJ253L36	KAF253LA56	KAF253LA80	KAF253LA160
Mass (kg)		2.3	2.8	3.5	4.0
Component parts		Filter chamber. Panel attachment plate. Screws. Installation manual.			

Installation

1. This kit contains the following parts and accessories

Name	Quantity			
	KAJ25L36D	KAJ25L56D KAJ25LA56D	KAJ25L80D KAJ25LA80D	KAJ25L160D KAJ25LA160D
Filter chamber for bottom suction	1	1	1	1
Fixing plate for panel	4	4	4	4
Screws for fixing plate for panel	4	4	4	4
Screws	4	4	4	4
Installation manual	1	1	1	1

2. Required tools

Screwdriver ⊕

3. Operating procedures

(1) Remove the long-life filters of standard accessory from indoor unit. (Fig. 1)

(2) Installation of the bottom suction filter chamber

① Tighten two filter chamber installation screws to the indoor unit. Screw them in deep enough so that they do not fall out of place. (Leave about 30mm of thread exposed.)

② Fit the filter chamber over the screws and slide in the direction of the arrow in fig. 3, to hang the filter chamber on the indoor unit.

③ Fit the remaining two installation screws and tighten all four screws until the seal is 10~15mm thick.

(3) Attach the fixing plate for panel to the filter chamber. (Fig. 2)

(4) Fit the high efficiency filter (option) inside the filter chamber and lock in place with the filter lock. (Fig. 2)

Filter chamber for bottom suction	High efficiency filter	
	(65%)	(90%)
KAJ25L36D	KAFJ252L36	KAFJ253L36
KAJ25L56D KAJ25LA56D	KAFJ252L56 KAF252LA56	KAFJ253L56 KAF253LA56
KAJ25L80D KAJ25LA80D	KAFJ252L80 KAF252LA80	KAFJ253L80 KAF253LA80
KAJ25L160D KAJ25LA160D	KAFJ252L160 KAF252LA160	KAFJ253L160 KAF253LA160

4. Cautions for the installation

○ Install the filter chamber as explain in these instructions.

○ Install the filter chamber in the orientation shown in the right figure.

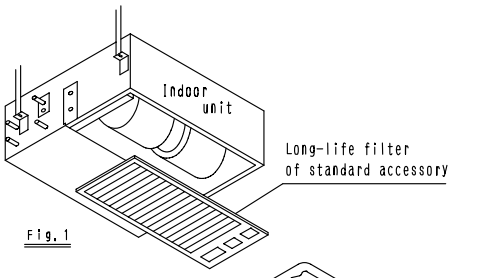


Fig. 1

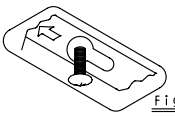


Fig. 3

Fig. 2

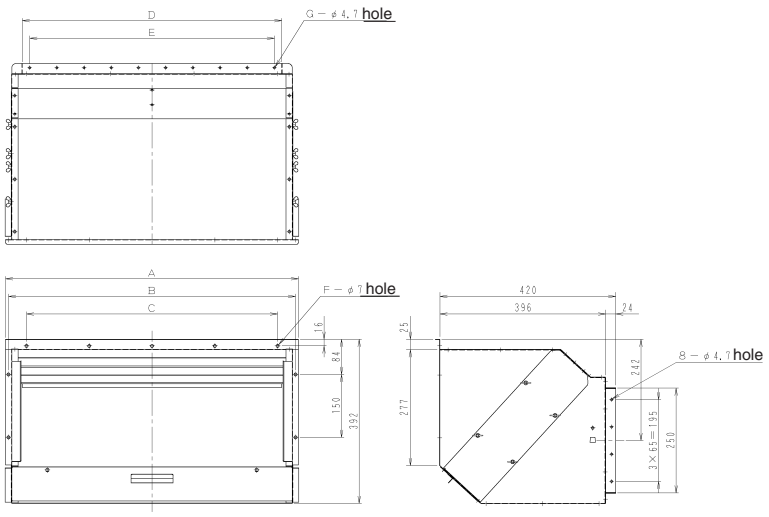
3K016915

7.7 KAJ25L36B, KAJ25LA56·80·160B — Filter Chamber for Rear Suction

KAJ25LA56B



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Model	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	Weight
KAJ25L36B	550	536	3×150=450	470	6×65=390	8	14	8.0kg
KAJ25LA56B	700	686	4×150=600	620	9×65=585	9	20	10.0kg
KAJ25LA80B	1000	986	6×150=900	920	13×65=845	11	28	14.0kg
KAJ25LA160B	1400	1386	8×150=1200	1320	19×65=1235	13	40	16.0kg

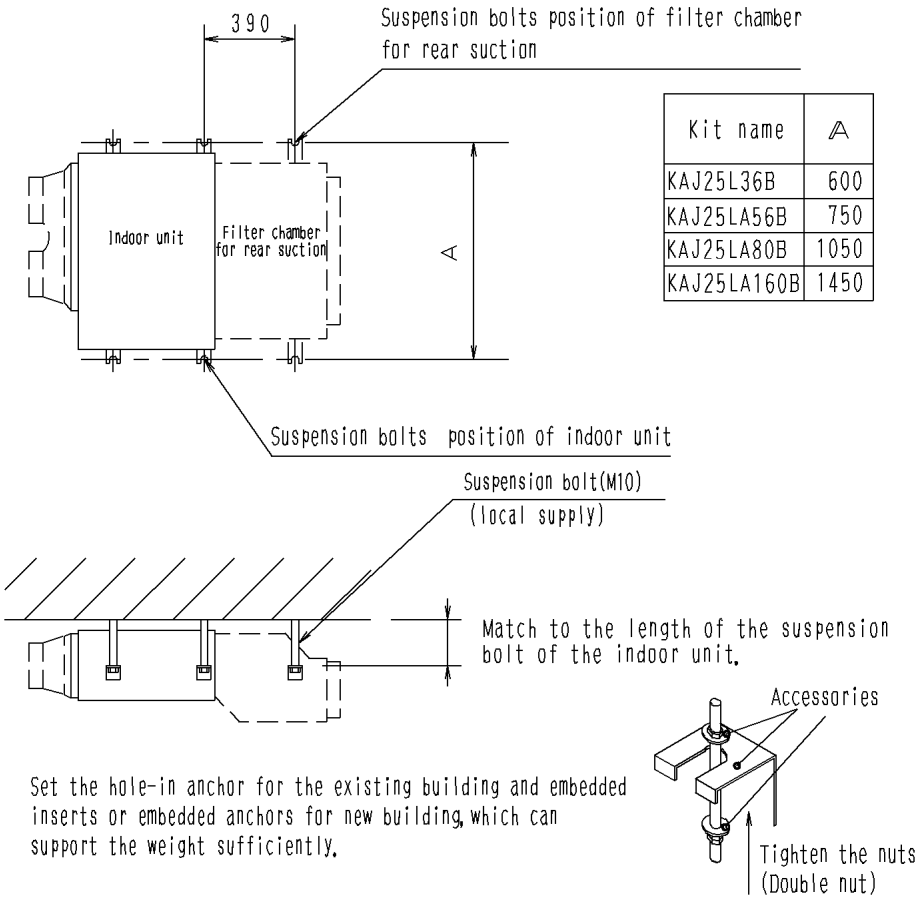
JC: D3K1419D

- May be used with either the long-life filter or high -efficiency filter.
- The suction duct can also be connected.

Item \ Model		KAJ25L36B	KAJ25LA56B	KAJ25LA80B	KAJ25LA160B
Inner dimensions of flange (mm)	Width	470	620	920	1,320
	Length	250			
Inserted filter	65% (colorimetric method)	KAFJ252L36	KAF252LA56	KAF252LA80	KAF252LA160
	90% (colorimetric method)	KAFJ253L36	KAF253LA56	KAF253LA80	KAF253LA160
Mass (kg)		8.0	10.0	14.0	16.0
Component parts		Filter chamber. Screen plate for rear suction. Washer for suspension bracket. Screws. Installation manual.			

Preparation before installation

①Set the suspension bolts in position.
(Location of the suspension bolts)



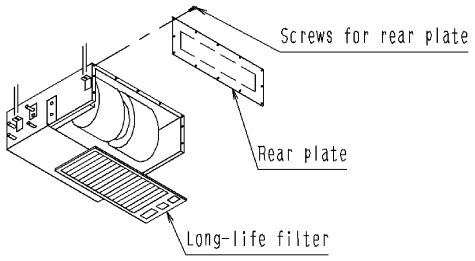
Kit name	A
KAJ25L36B	600
KAJ25LA56B	750
KAJ25LA80B	1050
KAJ25LA160B	1450

Set the hole-in anchor for the existing building and embedded inserts or embedded anchors for new building, which can support the weight sufficiently.

3K016914

Installation of filter chamber

① Remove the long-life filter and the rear plate of the indoor unit.

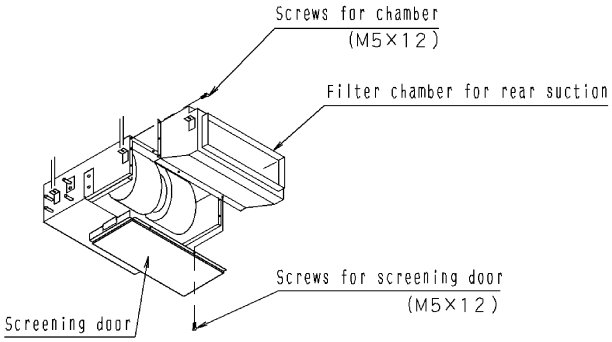


② Set the filter chamber for rear suction to the suspension bolts with nut ands the washer temporarily.

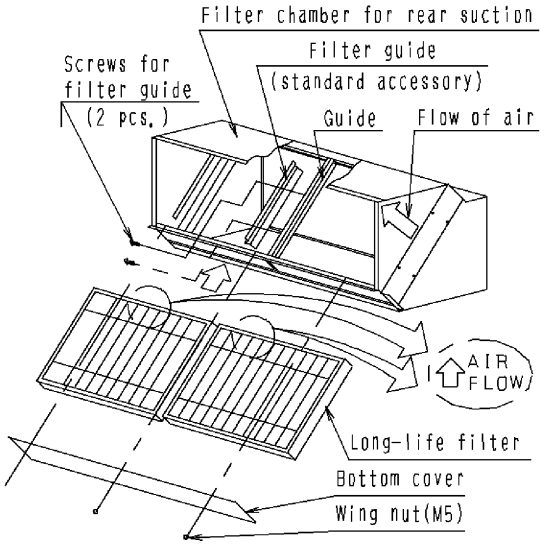
③ Fasten the filter chamber for rear suction to the indoor unit tightly.

④ Fix the filter chamber for rear suction to the suspension bolts tightly.

⑤ Install the screening door to the bottom of the indoor unit with screws.



When the long-life filter is used



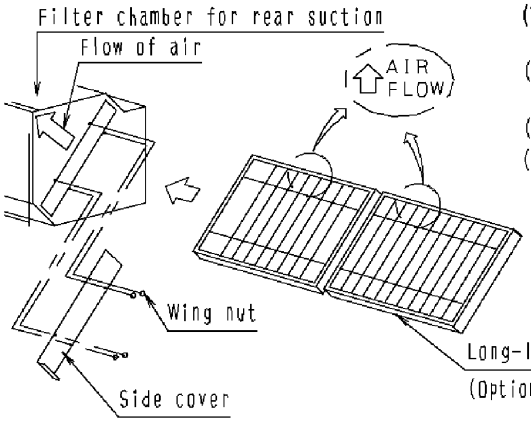
(Procedure) (When the maintenance of the filter is carried out from the bottom.)
(The long-life filter of standard accessory shall be used.)

(1) Remove the bottom cover.
(2) Install the filter guide with 2 screws to the center of the guide of the filter chamber.
(Only for 80 and 160 model)
(3) Install the long-life filter to the rail of the leeward.

(Caution)
Match the arrow mark of the long-life filter to the flow of the air.

(4) Install the bottom cover.

3K016914

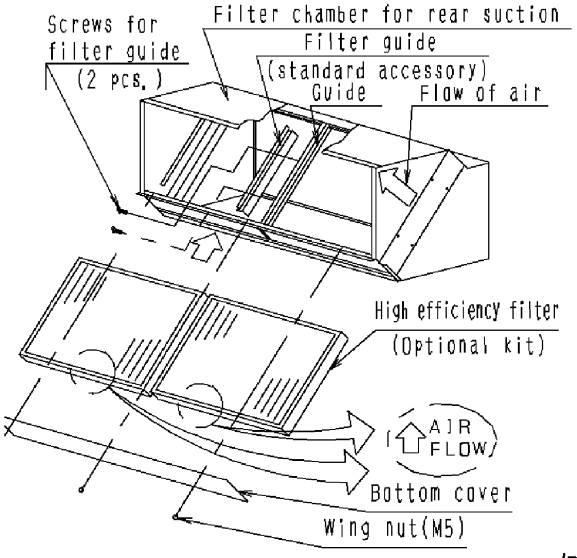


(Procedure) (When the maintenance of the filter is carried out from the side.)
(Refer to the following table for the type of the long-life filter.)
(1) Remove the side cover.
(2) Install the long-life filter to the rail of the guide of the leeward.
(Caution)
Match the arrow mark of the long-life filter to the flow of the air.
(3) Install the side cover.

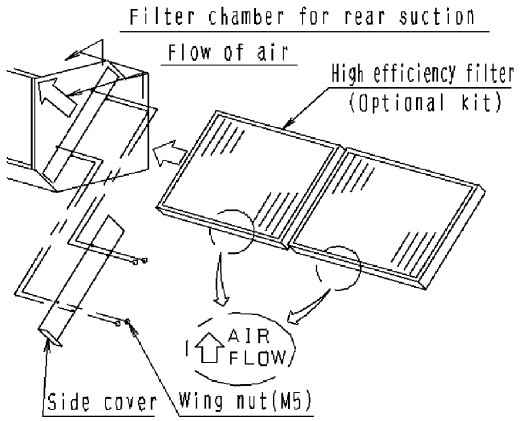
Kit name	KAJ25L36B	KAJ25LA56B	KAJ25LA80B	KAJ25LA160B
Long-life filter	Long-life filter of standard accessories shall be used.		KAFJ259L80	KAFJ259L160

When the high efficiency filter (optional kit)is used

Kit name		KAJ25L36B	KAJ25LA56B	KAJ25LA80B	KAJ25LA160B
High efficiency filter kit	65%	KAFJ252L36	KAF252LA56	KAF252LA80	KAF252LA160
	90%	KAFJ253L36	KAF253LA56	KAF253LA80	KAF253LA160



(Procedure)
(When the maintenance of the filter is carried out from the bottom.)
(1) Remove the bottom cover.
(2) Install the filter guide with 2 screws to the center of the guide of the filter chamber.
(Only for 80 snd 160 model)
(3) Install the high efficiency filter to the rail of the windward.
(Caution) Match the arrow mark of the high efficiency filter to the flow of the air.
(4) Install the bottom cover.



(Procedure)
(When the maintenance of the filter is carried out from the side.)
(Refer to the following table for the type of long-life filter.)
(1) Remove the side cover.
(2) Install the high efficiency filter to the rail of the guide of the windward.
(Caution) Match the arrow mark of the high efficiency filter to the flow of the air.
(3) Install the side cover.

3K016914

7.8 KAFJ251K36·56·80·160 — Replacement Long-Life Filter

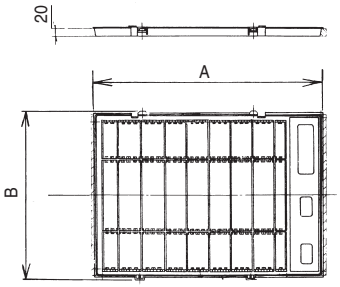
KAFJ251K80



Caution

• Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Model	A~B
KAFJ251K36	506×377
KAFJ251K56	656×377
KAFJ251K80	506×377 451×377
KAFJ251K160	701×377 656×377

JC: D3K1147B
JC: D3K1148B

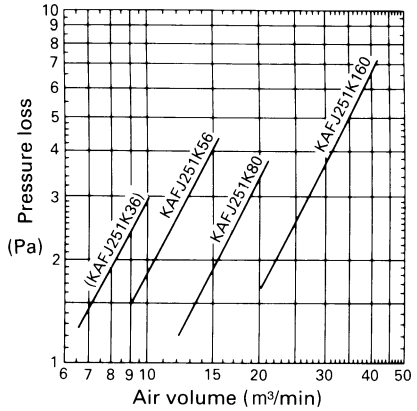
Specifications

Item \ Model	KAFJ251K36	KAFJ251K56	KAFJ251K80	KAFJ251K160
Average Efficiency (%)	50% (Gravity method)			
Pressure Loss (Pa) Initial	10 or less		4.9 or less	
Pressure Loss (Pa) Final	49			
Materials	Mildew Proof Resin Net			
Number Required per Model	1	1	2 (each 1)	2 (each 1)
Life Time (h)	2,500 hours (dust particle concentration at 0.15 mg/m³)			
Applicable Model	20 · 25 · 32 Class	40 · 50 Class	63 Class	80 · 100 · 125 Class

Note:

The filter models for 20 ~ 50 Class can be used also as Rear-suction types.

Characteristics of filter



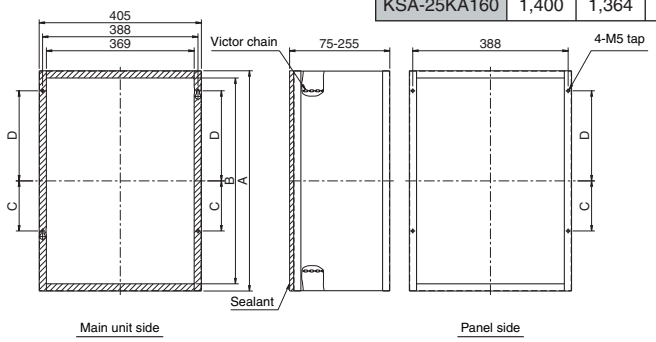
7.9 KSA-25K36, KSA-25KA56·80·160 — Canvas Duct (Air Suction Canvas)

KSA-25KA80



Dimensions **Unit:mm**

Model	A	B	C	D
KSA-25K36	550	514	125	225
KSA-25KA56	700	664	200	300
KSA-25KA80	1,000	964	350	450
KSA-25KA160	1,400	1,364	550	650



JC: D3K2753A

- Can be attached so that there is no gap in the ceiling using the included turn buckle.

Item \ Model	KSA-25K36	KSA-25KA56	KSA-25KA80	KSA-25KA160
Canvas duct	Flame retardant			
Mass (kg)	1.8	2.2	2.8	3.6
Component parts	Air suction canvas. Turn buckle. Mounting screw. Adjustment plate. Installation manual.			
Applicable model	BYBS32DJW1	BYBS45DJW1	BYBS71DJW1	BYBS125DJW1

Installation

1. This kit contains the following parts and accessories.

Name	Quantity			
	KSA-25K36	KSA-25K56 KSA-25KA56	KSA-25K80 KSA-25KA80	KSA-25K160 KSA-25KA160
Air suction canvas	1	1	1	1
Turnbuckle	4	4	4	4
Screws for air suction canvas	4	4	4	4
Adjuster plate	4	4	4	4
Screws for adjuster plate	4	4	4	4
Installation manual	1	1	1	1

2. Require tools

Screwdriver ⊕, Nippers

3. Operation procedures

(1) Install the air suction canvas

① Tighten two screws for air suction canvas to the indoor unit. (Leave about 30mm of thread exposed.)

② Fit the air suction canvas over the screws and slide the direction of the arrow in Fig2. to hang the air suction canvas on the indoor unit.

③ Fit the remaining two screws and tighten all four screws until the seal is about 5mm thick.

(2) Adjust the air suction canvas

① Attach the suction panel. For details, see the installation manual provided with the suction panel.

[To use the turnbuckle]

- The canvas duct can be adjusted in the 115~255mm range. [See Fig. 4]

a. Attach the turnbuckles to the canvas duct and hook the turnbuckles to the chain at a point that closes the gap between the ceiling surface and the suction panel. (Fig. 4)(Before attaching the turnbuckles, lengthen the screws. Attach them with the groove facing upwards.) [Fig. 3]

b. Turn the turnbuckles clockwise until the gap between the ceiling surface and the suction panel closes tightly. Cut any extra chain with the nippers.

[To use the adjuster plate](Only for the decoration panel)

- The canvas duct can be adjusted in the 75~115mm range. [See Fig. 7]
- The adjuster plate cannot be used with electric precipitator or high efficiency filters.

a. Remove the chain and put the four screws back in the same holes. Tighten also the four screws for adjuster plate to the indoor unit. [Fig. 5]

b. Hook one adjuster plate on each of the 4 sets of screws tightened in step a. [Fig. 6](Orient the adjuster plater as shown in Fig. 7.)

c. Slightly raise the decoration panel and turn the adjuster plate until the gap between ceiling surface and the decoration panel closes. Make sure the cut-out on each of the adjuster plates locks onto the bottom screw. [Fig. 7]

d. Tighten all screws definitively.

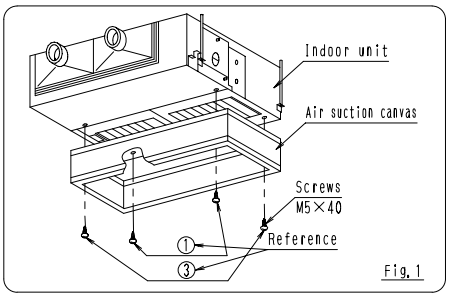


Fig. 1

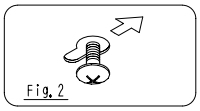


Fig. 2

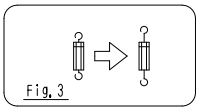


Fig. 3

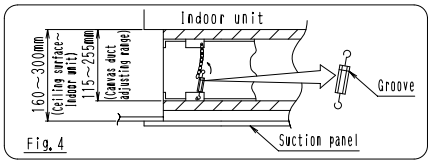


Fig. 4

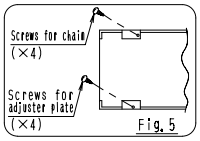


Fig. 5

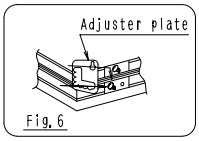


Fig. 6

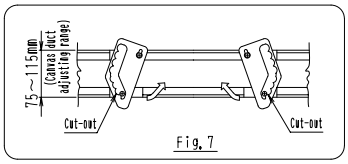


Fig. 7

3K07978A

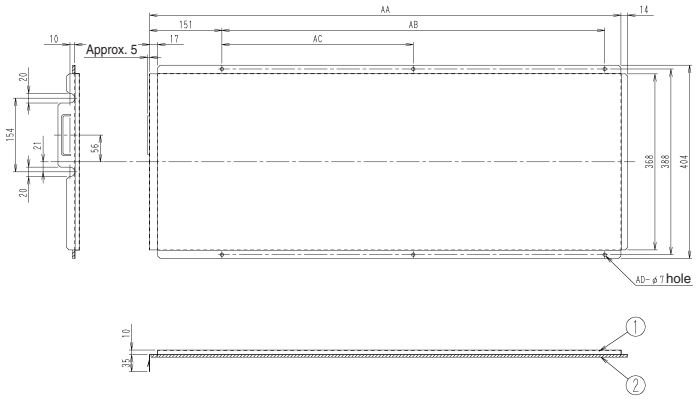
7.10 KBBJ25K36, KBBJ25KA56·80·160 — Screening Door

KBBJ25K36



• Screens the bottom intake vent.

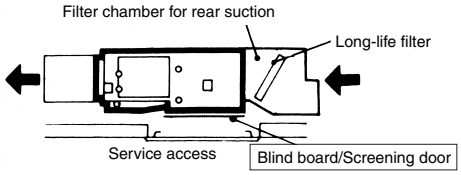
Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Model	AA	AB	AC	AD
KBBJ25K36	535	350	–	4
KBBJ25KA56	685	500	–	4
KBBJ25KA80	985	800	400	6
KBBJ25KA160	1385	1200	800	6

JC: D3K1156C

Example of installation



Item \ Model	KBBJ25K36	KBBJ25KA56	KBBJ25KA80	KBBJ25KA160
Appearance	Galvanized steel plate			
Mass (kg)	1.8	2.2	3.2	4.4
Component parts	Blind board/Screening door. Screws. Installation manual.			
Applicable model	FXS20·25·32	FXS40·50	FXS63	FXS80·100·125

Installation

1. This kit contains the following parts and accessories

Name	Quantity			
	KBBJ25K36	KBBJ25K56	KBBJ25K80	KBBJ25K160
	KBB25B32	KBBJ25KA56	KBBJ25KA80	KBBJ25KA160
		KBB25B45	KBB25B63	KBB25B125
Screenig door	1	1	1	1
Screws	4	4	6	6
Installation manual	1	1	1	1

2. Required tools

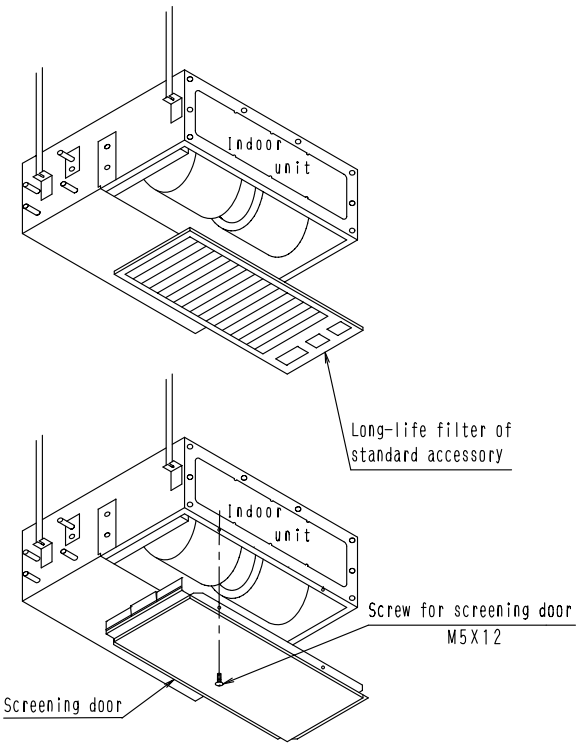
Screwdriver ⊕

3. Operating procedures

1. Remove the long-life filters of standard accessory from indoor unit.
2. Attach the screening door to the indoor unit.

4. Cautions for the installation

- Install the screening door as explain in these instructions.
- Fasten the screws tightly so as no gap between the indoor unit and the screening door.



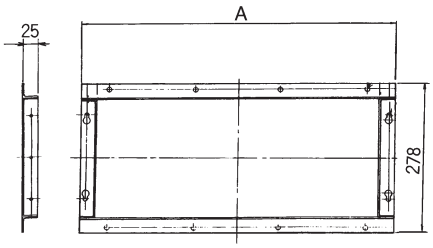
3P011904A

7.11 KDJ2507K36·56·80·160 — Air Suction Flange

KDJ2507K80



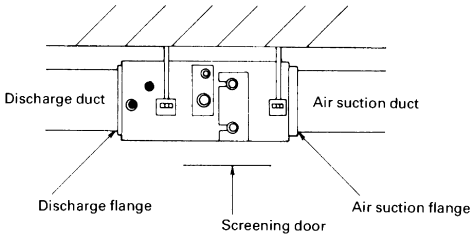
Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Model	A
KDJ2507K36	527
KDJ2507K56	677
KDJ2507K80	977
KDJ2507K160	1,377

C: D3K1157

Example of installation



Item	Model	KDJ2507K36	KDJ2507K56	KDJ2507K80	KDJ2507K160
Size of connecting duct (mm)	Width	477	627	927	1327
	Length	228			
Materials		Galvanized steel plate			
Component parts		Flange for suction. Packing. Screws. Installation Manual.			
Applicable model		FXS20·25·32	FXS40·50	FXS63	FXS80·100·125

Note : When connecting a square duct to the intake side, the “screening door (KBBJ25KA80)” of optional kit is needed.

Installation

1. This kit contains the following parts and accessories.

Name	Quantity			
	KDJ2507K36	KDJ2507K56	KDJ2507K80	KDJ2507K160
	KD2507B32	KD2507B45	KD2507B63	KD2507B125
Air suction flange	1	1	1	1
Screws	12	14	18	24
Installation manual	1	1	1	1

(Caution)This kit requires the screening door. (option)

2. Required tools

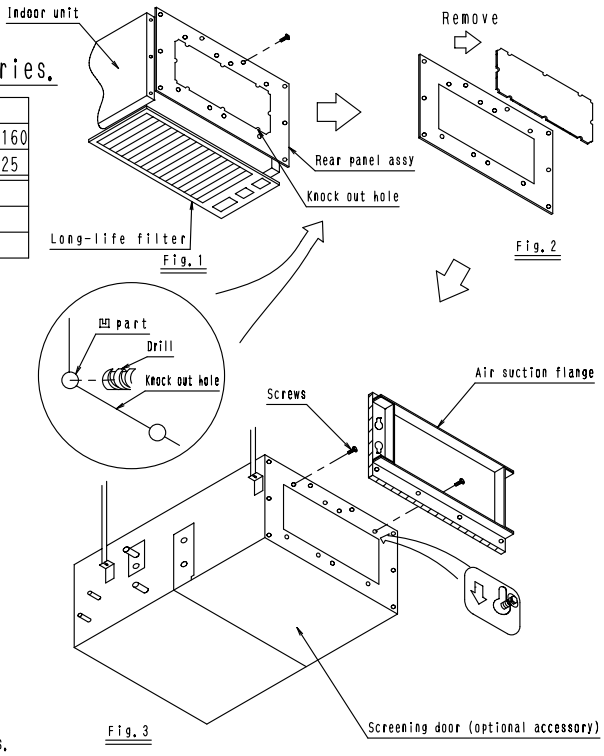
Screwdriver⊕, Nippers, Drill(φ6mm), Cutter knife

3. Operating procedures

a. Remove the long-life filter from the indoor unit. (Fig. 1)
b. Remove the rear panel assembly. (Fig. 1)
c. Drill φ6 holes in the rear panel around the knock-out hole recess and knock out hole.
d. Cut the sound-proofing to the rear panel size and shape with a cutter knife. (fig. 2)
e. Attach the rear panel to the air conditioner. (Fig. 3)
f. Attach the screening door to the indoor unit. (Fig. 3)
① Tighten two installation screws to the indoor unit. (Leave about 5mm of thread exposed.)
② Hang the air suction flange on the screws and then tighten all screws definitively.

4. Cautions for the installation

a. Install the flange for the suction as explain in these instructions.
b. Fasten the screws tightly so as no gap between the indoor unit and the air suction flange(have a packing).



3P011745

7.12 KDAJ25K36·56·80·140A — Air Discharge Adaptor

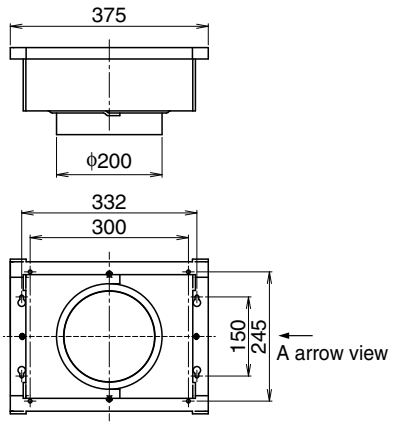
KDAJ25K56A



Item \ Model		KDAJ25K36A	KDAJ25K56A	KDAJ25K71A	KDAJ25K140A
Duct connection diameter		ϕ200×1 port	ϕ200×2 port		ϕ200×4 port
Material		Hot-dip zinc coated steel sheets. EPS. Insulation.			
Accessories		Screws. Installation manual.			
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.1	1.5	2.5	3.5

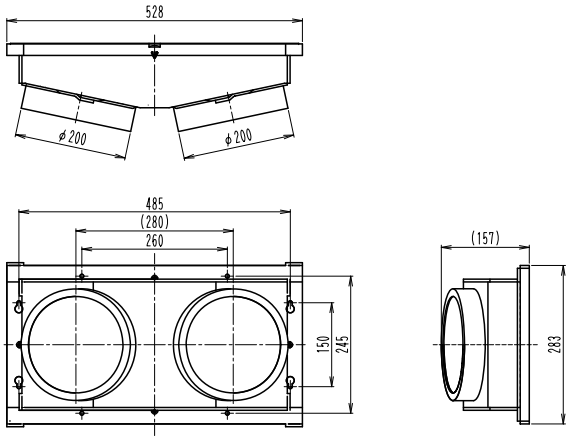
Dimensions **Unit:mm**

KDAJ25K36A



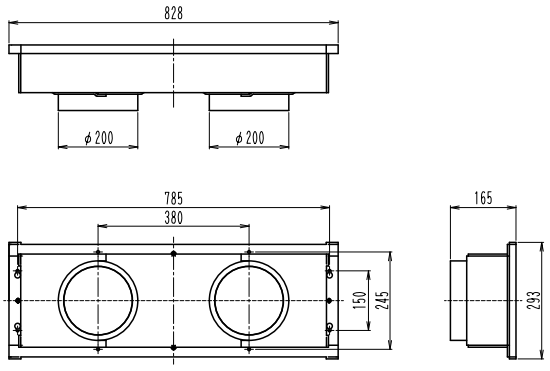
D3K06518

KDAJ25K56A



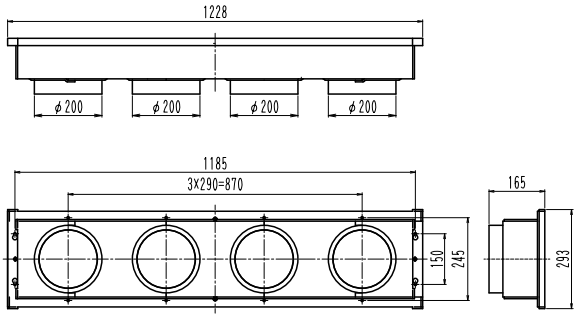
D3K06136

KDAJ25K71A



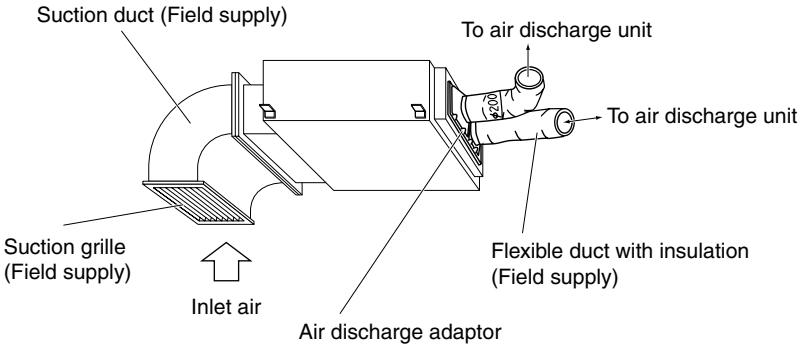
D3K06137

KDAJ25K140A

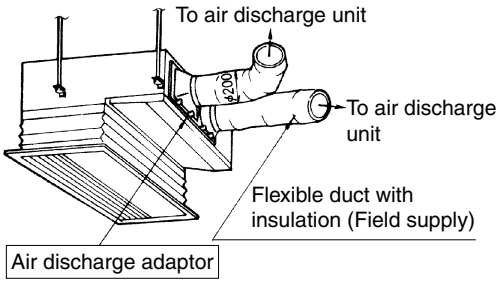


D3K06138A

Example of installation (FXMQ-P)



Example of installation (FXSYQ/FXYB)

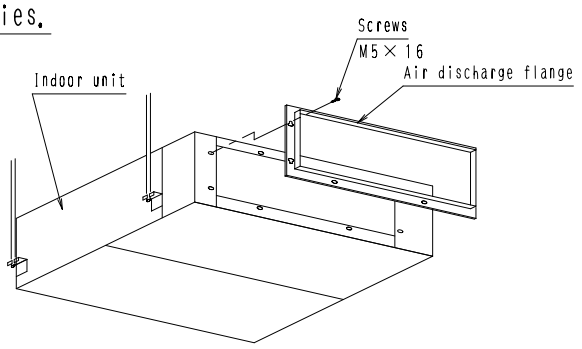


Installation

Air discharge adapter installation manual

1. This kit contains the following parts and accessories.

Name	Quantity			
	KDAJ25K36A	KDAJ25K56A	KDAJ25K71A	KDAJ25K140A
	KDA25D32	KDA25D45	KDA25D63	KDA25D125
Air discharge adapter	1	1	1	1
Installation manual	1	1	1	1
Screws	8	8	8	12

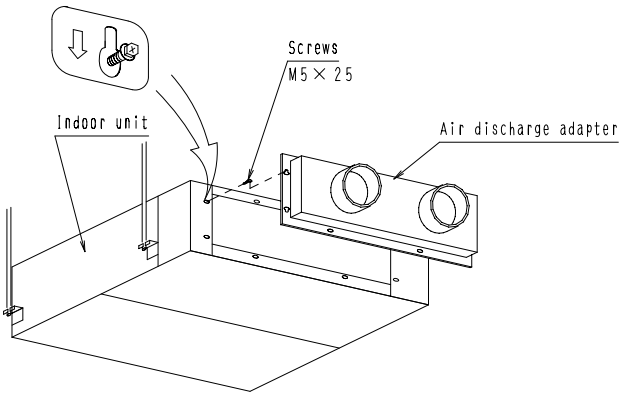


2. Required tools

Screwdriver ⊕

3. Operating procedures

1. Remove the air discharge flange from indoor unit.
2. Attach the air discharge adapter to the indoor unit.
   ① Tighten two installation screws to the indoor unit. (Leave about 20mm of the thread exposed.)
   ② Hang the air discharge adapter on the screws and then tighten all screws definitively.



4. Cautions for the installation

Fasten the screws tightly so as no gap between the indoor unit and the air discharge adapter.

3P012475C

8. FXM(Q)

8.1 KAF372AA36·56·80·160 / KAF373AA36·56·80·160 — High Efficiency Filter

KAF372AA56



Item	Model	KAF372 AA36	KAF373 AA36	KAF372 AA56	KAF373 AA56	KAF372 AA80	KAF373 AA80	KAF372 AA160	KAF373 AA160
Initial pressure loss	Pa	15 or less	21 or less	35 or less	54 or less	35 or less	54 or less	38 or less	56 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	98 or less							
Average efficiency (colorimetric method)	%	65	90	65	90	65	90	65	90
Air flow rate / 1 sheet	m^3/min	9.8							
Life *1	h	2,500	1,800	2,500	1,800	2,500	1,800	2,500	1,800
Filter element		Non-woven fabric of synthetic fiber							
Number of sheets included		1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4

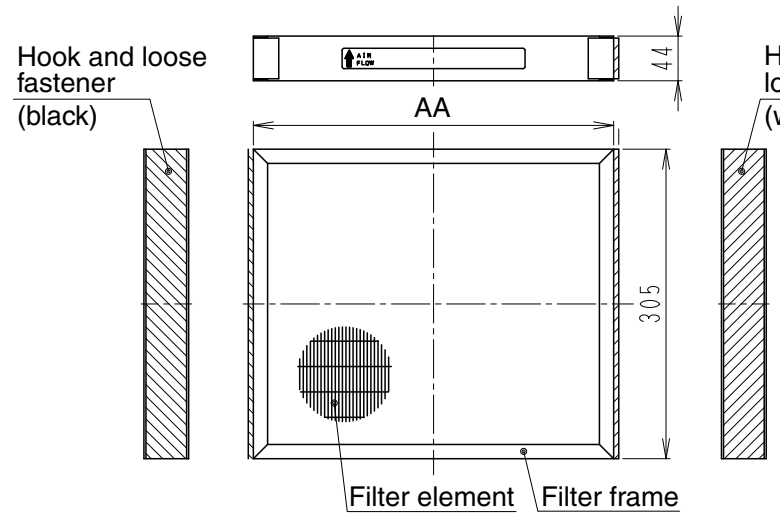
Caution

- Cannot be water-washed for reuse.
- The filter chamber (for high efficiency filter) (KDDF37AA36 / KDDF37AA56 / KDDF37AA80 / KDDF37AA160) is required when the high efficiency filter will be installed.

Note:

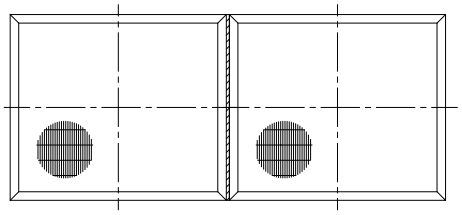
*1. Dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



AA	Applied models
550	KAF372AA36 KAF373AA36
355	KAF372AA56, 80, 160 KAF373AA56, 80, 160

Note:
KAF372AA36, KAF373AA36:
Without hook and loose fastener.



Filter connecting figure

J : D3K06645
J : D3K07003

8.2 KAFP372A80·160, KAFJ372L280 / KAFP373A80·160, KAFJ373L280 — High-Efficiency Filter

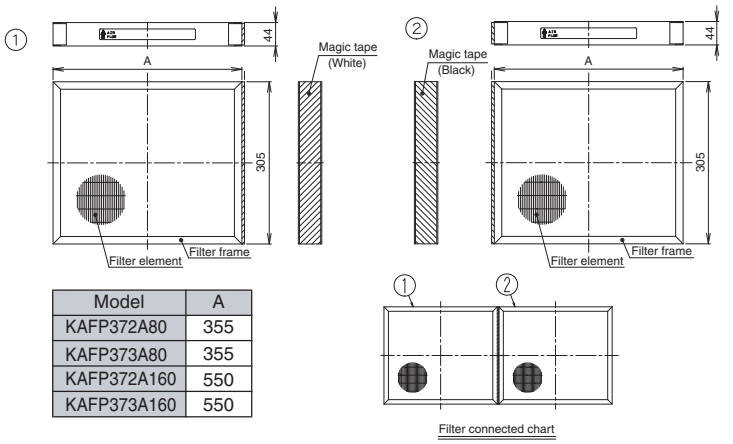
KAFP372A80



Caution

- Cannot be water-washed for reuse.
- The filter chamber (for high efficiency filter) (KDDFP37A80/KDDFP37A160) is required when the high efficiency filter will be installed.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**
KAFP



Model	A
KAFP372A80	355
KAFP373A80	355
KAFP372A160	550
KAFP373A160	550

JC: D3K04908A

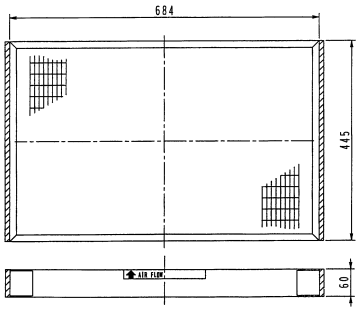
KAFJ372L280



Caution

- Cannot be water-washed for reuse.
- The filter chamber (for high efficiency filter) (KDJ3705L280) is required when the high efficiency filter will be installed.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**
KAFJ



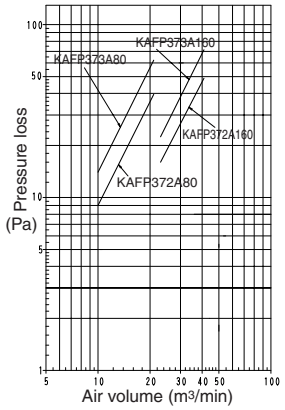
JC: D3K2290

Specification

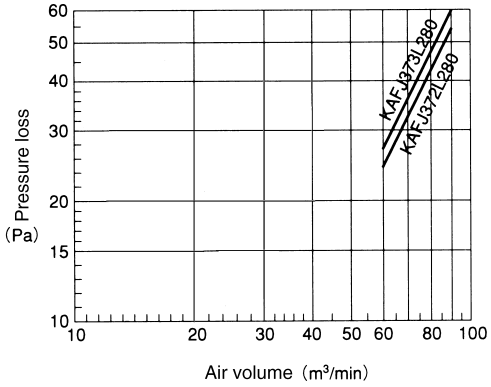
Model	65% type						90% type					
Items	KAFP372A80		KAFP372A160		KAFJ372L280		KAFP373A80		KAFP373A160		KAFJ373L280	
Filter Chamber	KDDFP37A80		KDDFP37A160		KDJ3705L280		KDDFP37A80		KDDFP37A160		KDJ3705L280	
Dimension (W×D×T) (mm)	355×305×44		550×305×44		684×445×60		355×305×44		550×305×44		684×445×60	
Average Dust Collection Efficiency (%)	Colorimetric method 65%						Colorimetric method 90%					
Initial Pressure Loss (Pa)	18	35 or less	26	38 or less	27	42	28	54 or less	36	56 or less	29	45
Final Pressure Loss (Pa)	98						98					
Filter	Non-woven fabric of synthetic fiber						Non-woven fabric of synthetic fiber					
Life Time (h)	2500 hours (dust density 0.15mg/m³)						1800 hours (dust density 0.15mg/m³)					
Seats Structured	2		2		2		2		2		2	
Applicable Models	40 Class	50·63·80 Class	100 Class	125 Class	200·250 Class		40 Class	50·63·80 Class	100 Class	125 Class	200·250 Class	

Characteristics of filter

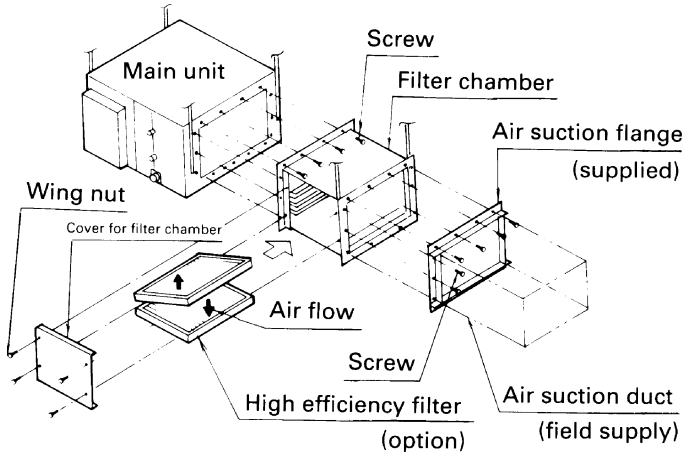
■KAFP372A80, KAFP372A160, KAFP373A80, KAFP373A160



■KAFJ372L280,KAFJ373L280



Installation

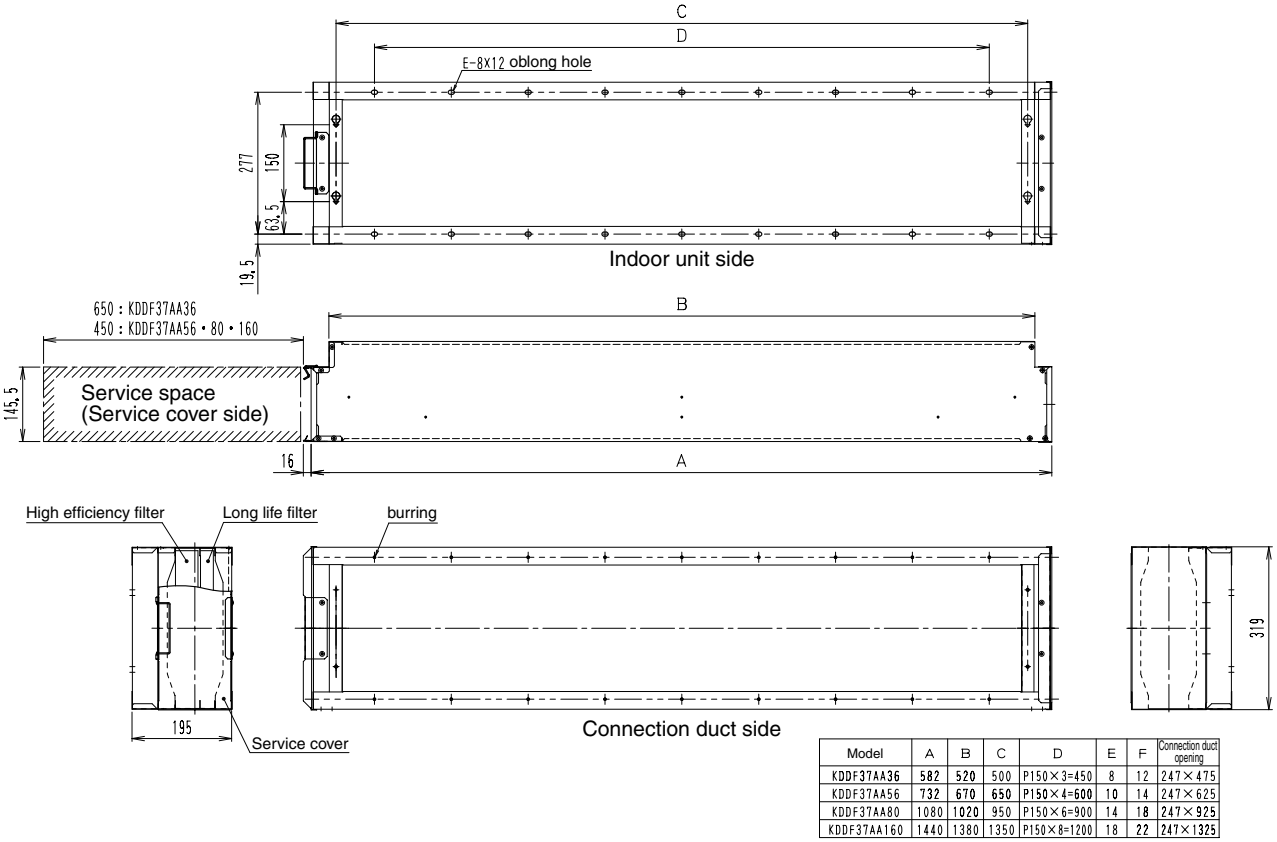


- Meet the airflow direction and arrow mark putting on the High efficiency filter.
- It is impossible to be built in with the air cleaning unit together.

8.3 KDDF37AA36·56·80·160 — High Efficiency Filter Chamber

Item			Model	KDDF37AA36	KDDF37AA56	KDDF37AA80	KDDF37AA160
Inserted filter	High efficiency filter	65% (colorimetric method)		KAF372AA36	KAF372AA56	KAF372AA80	KAF372AA160
		90% (colorimetric method)		KAF373AA36	KAF373AA56	KAF373AA80	KAF373AA160
	Long life filter			KAF371AA36	KAF371AA56	KAF371AA80	KAF371AA160
Accessories				Mounting screws. Installation manual.			
Mass (Weight)			kg	4.5	6	7	9

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Model	A	B	C	D	E	F	Connection duct opening
KDDF37AA36	582	520	500	P150×3=450	8	12	247×475
KDDF37AA56	732	670	650	P150×4=600	10	14	247×625
KDDF37AA80	1080	1020	950	P150×6=900	14	18	247×925
KDDF37AA160	1440	1380	1350	P150×8=1200	18	22	247×1325

JC : D3K06642C

Installation

DAIKIN AIR CONDITIONERS Filter Chamber《Ceiling Mounted Duct Connection Type》Installation Manual

KDDF37AA36 • 56 • 80 • 160

Read this manual in advance and follow all the instructions given in the manual to conduct the installation of the product

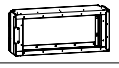
⚠Precautions Conduct the installation of the product correctly after carefully reading the safety precautions specified below.

- Request your dealer or contractor to conduct the installation of the product. Users' unauthorized installation work may result in the falling of the product or air leakage.
- Conduct the installation of the product correctly by following all the instructions given in the manual. A defect in the installation work may result in the falling of the product or air leakage.
- Be sure to use parts specified in this manual and the accessories provided with the product for the installation of the product. Failure to use these parts may result in the falling of the product or air leakage.
- Conduct the trial operation of the product after the installation of the product and check that there are no abnormalities.

Precautions

- This product can be mounted to air conditioners of ceiling mounted duct connection type.
- Mount the product after checking the model name of the indoor unit with the table on the right-hand side.
- Refer to the operation manual and installation manual for the indoor unit as well at the time of the installation of the product.
- In the case of using the product for a ceiling return application, (Except KAF375AA36) prepare a protection net (KPN37A56, KPN37A 80, or KPN37A 160) as an optional accessory.
- Use of long-life filters
  Long-life filters can be washed and used again. On completion of installation, advise the customer of the cleaning interval and removal method of the filters by using the operation manual for the indoor unit and this installation manual.
- Use of high-performance filters
  High-performance filters cannot be washed in water for reuse. On completion of installation, advise the customer of the cleaning interval of the filters by using the operation manual for the indoor unit.

Parts Make sure that the following parts are provided with the product.

Name		Filter chamber	Mounting screw	Installation Manual
Shape			 M5×16	
Number	KDDF37AA36	1	12	1 (This copy)
	KDDF37AA56		14	
	KDDF37AA80		18	
	KDDF37AA160		22	

Combination table The use of the chamber requires each filter as an optional accessory.

Name of model	High-performance filter (optional accessory)	Long-life filter (optional accessory)	Name of model incorporable into indoor unit	
KDDF37AA36	KAF372AA36 or KAF373AA36	KAF371AA36	VRV	FXMQ20 • 25 • 32PVE
KDDF37AA56	KAF372AA56 or KAF373AA56	KAF371AA56	VRV	FXMQ40PVE
KDDF37AA80	KAF372AA80 or KAF373AA80	KAF371AA80	SkyAir	FBQ71DV1
			VRV	FXMQ50 • 63 • 80 PVE
KDDF37AA160	KAF372AA160 or KAF373AA160	KAF371AA160	SkyAir	FBQ100 • 125 • 140DV1
			VRV	FXMQ100 • 125 • 140 PVE

KAF372AA36, KAF372AA56, KAF372AA80, and KAF372AA160: 65% (colorimeter method)
KAF373AA36, KAF373AA56, KAF373AA80, and KAF373AA160: 90% (colorimeter method)

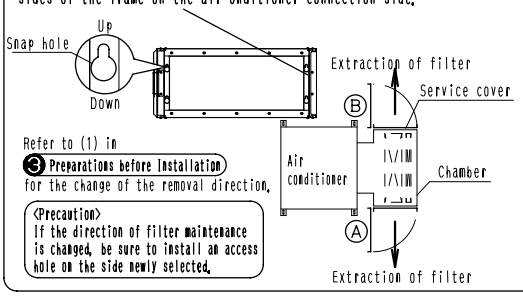
❶ Before installation 《Do not throw away the required accessories until the installation of the product is completed.》

(1)Decide the carry-in route.
(2)Carry the product into the place of installation without unpacking the product. If it is unavoidable to unpack and carry in the product, pay the utmost attention to handle the product.

❷ Selecting Place of Installation 《Refer to the installation manual provided to the indoor unit as well.》

(1) Select the place of installation with the consent of the customer, provided that the following conditions are satisfied.
- A place bearing the weight of the indoor unit and filter chamber.
- A place where the lower part of the ceiling does not lean remarkably.
- A place where an installation workspace can be secured.

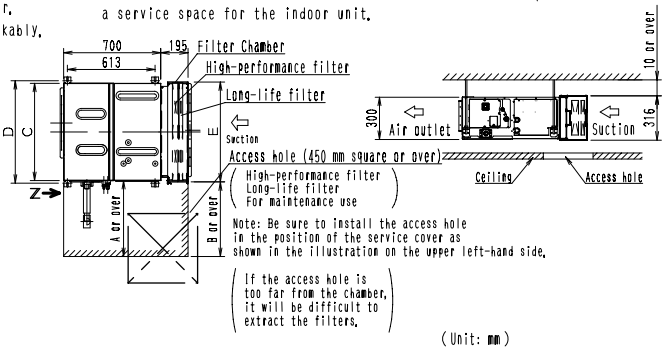
(2) Either the left- or right-hand side service cover can be used to remove the filters. Select the direction of removal according to the condition of installation. (The service cover in position Ⓐ is set for opening and closing before shipping.) At that time, confirm the up-and-down direction of the filter chamber through the snap holes located on the left- and right-hand sides of the frame on the air onditioner connection side.



Refer to (1) in ❸ Preparations before Installation for the change of the removal direction.

〈Precaution〉
If the direction of filter maintenance is changed, be sure to install an access hole on the side newly selected.

(3) Install the access hole for the filter service space as shown below.
- Refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and provide a service space for the indoor unit.



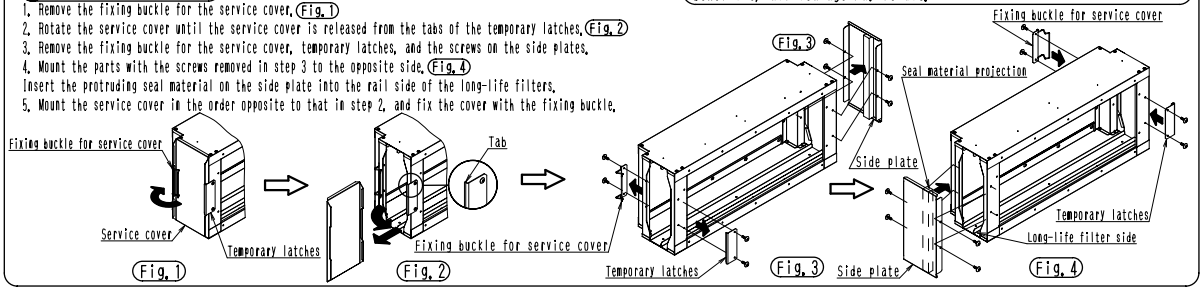
(Unit: mm)

Unit name	A	B	C	D	E
KDDF37AA36	650	650	550	588	582
KDDF37AA56	450	450	700	738	720
KDDF37AA80	450	450	1000	1038	1080
KDDF37AA160	450	450	1400	1438	1440

❸ Preparations before Installation Refer to the installation manual provided to the indoor unit as well.

(1) Take the following procedure in the case of changing the direction of filter extraction.
Example: When changing the opening and closing direction of the service cover from Ⓐ to Ⓑ as shown in ❷ Selecting Place of Installation -(2)
1. Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover. (Fig. 1)
2. Rotate the service cover until the service cover is released from the tabs of the temporary latches. (Fig. 2)
3. Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover, temporary latches, and the screws on the side plates.
4. Mount the parts with the screws removed in step 3 to the opposite side. (Fig. 4)
   Insert the protruding seal material on the side plate into the rail side of the long-life filters.
5. Mount the service cover in the order opposite to that in step 2, and fix the cover with the fixing buckle.

〈Precaution〉
Check that the fixing buckle securely locks the service cover. Otherwise, air leakage may result.



C : 3K021007

(2) Remove the air inlet flange of the indoor unit. (Fig. 5)
(3) In the case of connecting on-site ducts to the air outlet of the indoor unit and the air inlet of the filter chamber, mount a canvas duct (locally procured) to the air inlet flange so that the vibration of the filter chamber will not be propagated to the ducts or ceiling. (Fig. 6)
- Install the connected ducts with suspension bolts (locally procured) so that the weight of the connected ducts will not be imposed on the air inlet flange.
- Moreover, apply an adsorption material (thermal insulator) to the inner wall of the on-site duct and attach vibration isolation rubber to the suspension bolts for the indoor unit.
- In the case of connecting the local duct to the air inlet side of the filter chamber, mount the dismounted air inlet flange to the air inlet side of the filter chamber with the screws removed from the indoor unit and those provided to the indoor unit.

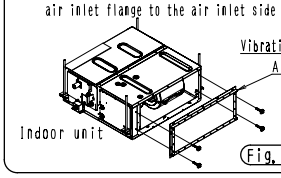


Fig. 5

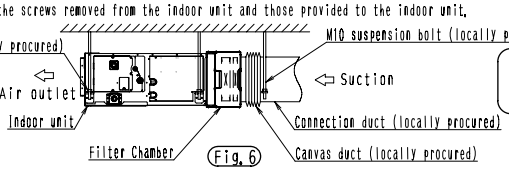


Fig. 6

<Precaution>
Check that the duct is installed securely, or otherwise air leakage may result.

4 Installation of Filter Chamber

The filter chamber mounted to the indoor unit can be hung on the suspension bolts.
(1) Temporarily tighten the mounting screws provided with the product to the 4 points of the indoor unit. (Fig. 5)
Tap threads on the screws on the indoor unit in advance to secure the filter chamber.
(2) Temporarily secure the chamber with the screws prepared in (1) through the snap holes from the inner side of the chamber.
(3) Tighten the 4 temporarily secured screws after tightening the provided mounting screws (8 screws for type 36, 10 screws for type 56, 14 screws for type 80 (fig. 8) , and 18 screws for type 160) in all the screw holes in the chamber.
(4) Use an appropriate tool, such as a spirit level, and install the indoor unit and filter chamber horizontally.

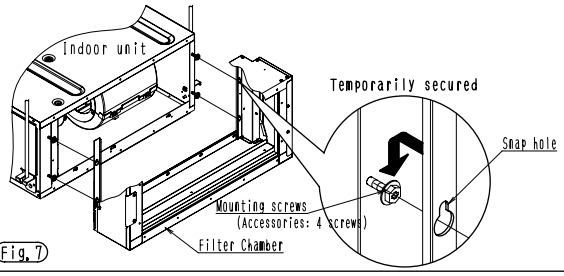


Fig. 7

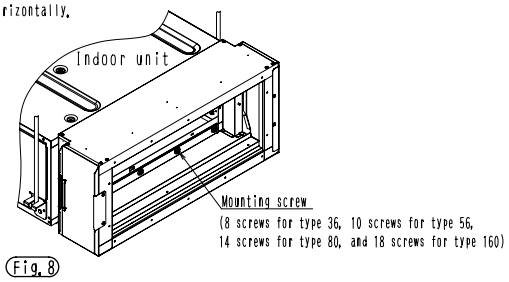


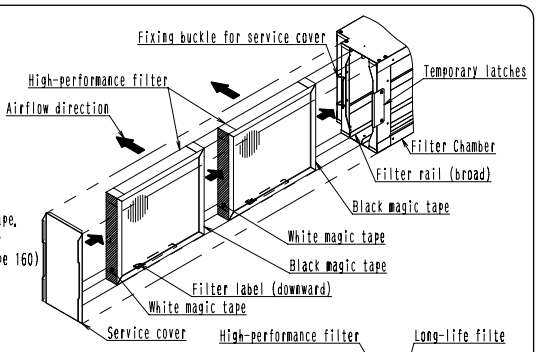
Fig. 8

5 Filter Mounting Procedure

High-performance filter

There is no difference in mounting method between the 65% type and 90% type.
(1) Refer to (1) in ❸ Preparations before Installation and remove the service cover. Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover and rotate the service cover until the service cover is released from the tabs of the temporary latches.
(2) Insert the first sheet (provided with black magic tape) according to the wide filter rail with the filter label faced downward while checking that the airflow direction is in conformity with the direction of the arrows.
(3) After the first filter is perfectly inserted, insert the next filter (on the white magic tape side as shown in the illustration on the right-hand side) and secure the filter with the magic tape.
(4) After inserting the filter all the way into the filter chamber, mount the service cover in the order opposite to that in (1). (Number of filters: 1 for type 36, 2 for type 56, 3 for type 80, and 4 for type 160)

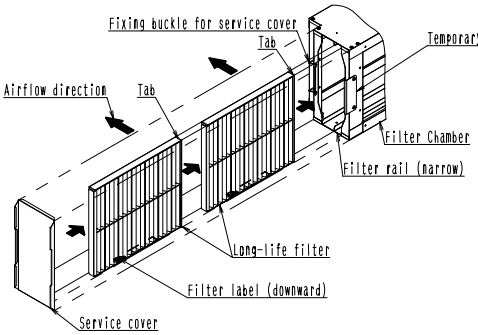
<Precaution>
Check that the fixing buckle securely locks the service cover. Otherwise, air leakage may result.



Long-life filter

(1) Refer to (1) in ❸ Preparations before Installation and remove the service cover. Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover and rotate the service cover until the service cover is released from the tabs of the temporary latches.
(2) Insert the filter according to the filter rail with the filter label faced downward while checking that the airflow direction is in conformity with the directions of the arrows.
(3) Be sure to hook the next filter to the tab on the first filter and insert the next filter when more than half the first filter is inserted.
The filter cannot be inserted unless the direction of the filter is correct. (Except KAF375AA36) (Fig. 9)
(4) After inserting the filter all the way into the filter chamber, mount the service cover in the order opposite to that in (1)
(Number of filters: 1 for type 36, 2 for type 56, 3 for type 80, and 4 for type 160)

<Precaution>
Check that the fixing buckle securely locks the service cover. Otherwise, air leakage may result.



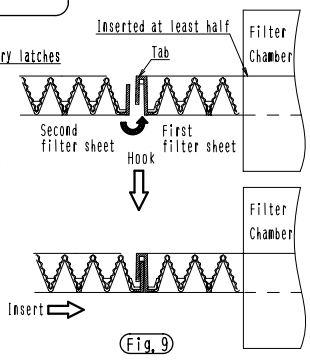
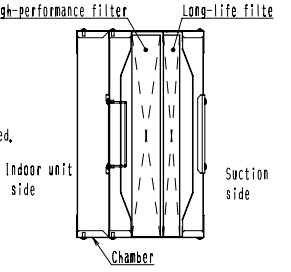
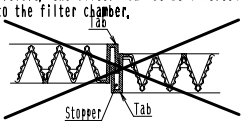


Fig. 9



Position of Each Filter in Chamber Side View
(Before mounting service cover)

<Precaution>
If the filters are different to each other in direction, the stoppers will obstruct the engagement of the filters with the tabs. Therefore, the filters cannot be inserted into the filter chamber.



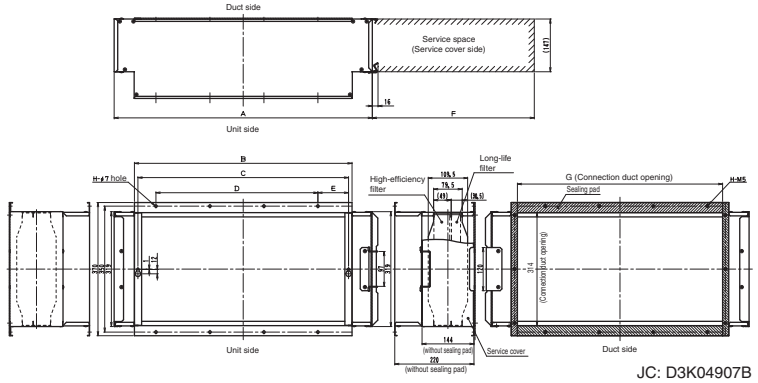
3K021007

8.4 KDDFP37A80·160 — Filter Chamber

KDDFP37A80



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



JC: D3K04907B

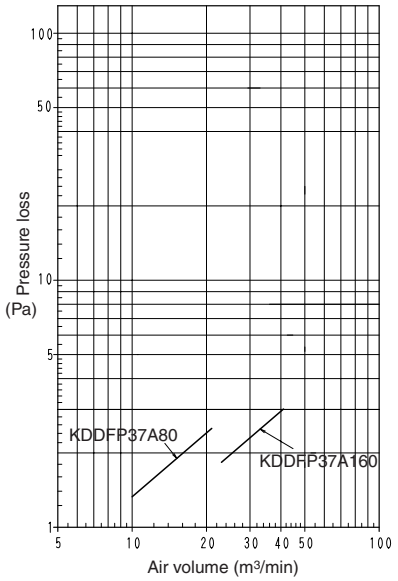
Model	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
KDDFP37A80	717	604.5	585	P150×3=450	82	450	570	14
KDDFP37A160	1107	994	974.5	P150×5=750	127	750	954	18

Item	Model	KDDFP37A80	KDDFP37A160
Inserted filter	65% (colorimetric method)	KAFP372A80	KAFP372A160
	90% (colorimetric method)	KAFP373A80	KAFP373A160
	Long-life filter	KAFP371A80	KAFP371A160
Mass (kg)		5.0	7.0
Accessories		Mounting screws. Installation manual.	

- **Set the anchor bolts**
  (the size of anchor boll should be M10.)

Characteristics of filter

■KDDFP37A80, KDDFP37A160



Installations

❶ Before Installation

<The accessories necessary for installation work should not be cast away until the work has been finished.>

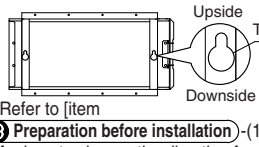
(1) Determine a carry-in route.
(2) When carrying in the filter chamber, it should be carried into the place to be installed, in the form of a bale package. If it is carried in at unpacked condition, handling should be made with sufficient care.

❷ Selection of the location to be installed

<Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.>

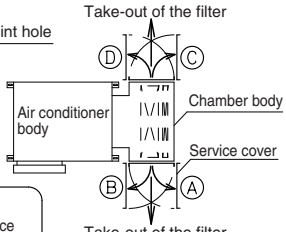
(1) For the location to be installed, select the place that conforms to the following conditions, together with customer's agreement.
- The place that has sufficient strength to bear the weight of the indoor unit and filter chamber.
- The place where lower surface of a ceiling is not significantly inclined.
- The place where a service space can be kept from the viewpoint of installation.

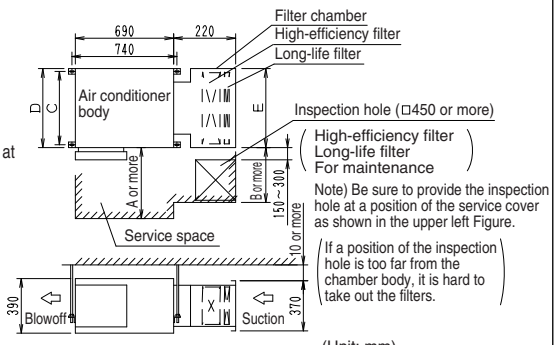
(2) There are four directions for removing the maintenance service cover of the filter. Direction of the removal should be changed in accordance with an installed condition. (At shipping, the cover is fitted at the opening and closing location Ⓐ.)
At this time, confirm the vertical direction of the filter chamber, by means of the top joint holes at the right and left sides of the connection side toward an air conditioner body.



Refer to [item ❸ Preparation before installation -(1)] for how to change the direction for removing the cover.

<Remark>
Be sure to provide the inspection hole on the new maintenance side when you change the maintenance direction of the filter.





(Unit: mm)

Unit name	A	B	C	D	E
KDDFP37A80	750	450	670	720	720
KDDFP37A160	1100	750	1060	1110	1110

❸ Preparation before installation

<Refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.>

(1) If direction of taking out the filter is changed, the work should be made in the following procedure.
Example) In the case of changing the opening and closing direction of the service cover from Ⓐ to Ⓒ as shown in [item ❷ Selection of the location to be installed -(2)],
1. Detach the buckle for fixing the service cover. (Fig.1)
2. Rotate the service cover until it is detached from the pawl of the temporary latch. (Fig.2)
3. Detach the buckle, latch, and the screws of the side plate. Then, remove the cover from the chamber body. (Fig.3)
4. Relocate the parts detached in accordance with above item 3, to the new position. (Fig.4)
5. Fit the service cover in accordance with the reverse procedure of above item 2, and fix it with the buckle.

<Remark>
Confirm that the service cover is securely fixed with the buckle.
If fixing is not made steadily, it may cause air leakage.

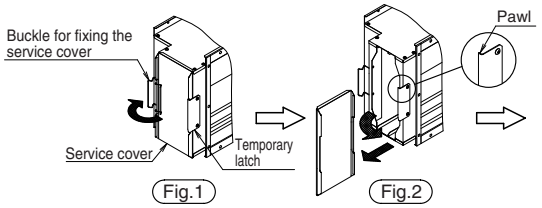


Fig.1 Fig.2

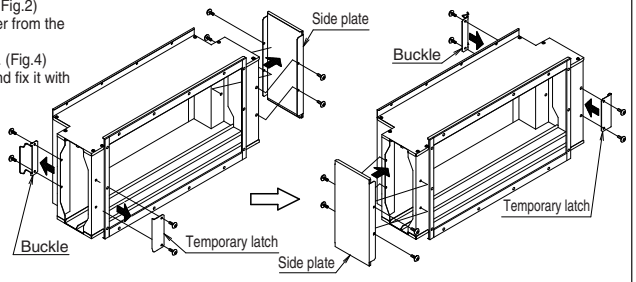


Fig.3 Fig.4

(2) Remove the suction inlet flange of the air conditioner body. (Fig.5)
In the case of connecting the site-duct to the suction side of the filter chamber, fit the removed suction inlet flange to the suction side of the filter chamber, with the screws which has been detached from the air conditioner body.

(3) In the case of connecting the site-duct to the blowoff outlet of the air conditioner body and to the inlet of the filter chamber, fit the canvas duct (ordered at site) to the inlet flange, so that vibration of the machine body may not transmitted to the duct and the ceiling (Fig.6).
Also, carry out lining work of the site-duct with an absorbent (heat insulation material), and fitting of rubber cushions on the hanger bolts for the air conditioner body.

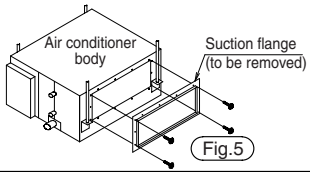


Fig.5

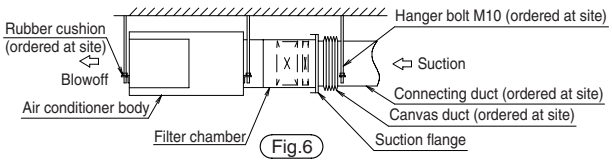


Fig.6

J: 3K016835

❹ Installation of the filter chamber

It is also possible to lift up the products with the hanger bolts, on the condition in which the filter chamber has been previously fitted on the air conditioner body.

(1) Fit the mounting screws which are attached to this kit, onto the air conditioner body at two positions. (Fig.7)
(2) Temporarily hang the air conditioner body with the screws fitted in accordance with above item (1), into the top joint holes of the filter chamber body, from inside.
(3) After tightened the chamber at all the outer screw holes by means of the attached mounting screws, tighten two inside screws which has been used for the temporary hanger. (Fig.8)
(4) The air conditioner body and filter chamber should be installed horizontally by using a level vial etc.

<Remarks>
- If screws are not tightened steadily, it may cause air leakage.
- If the product is not installed horizontally, it may cause air leakage, or take-out of the filter may become difficult.

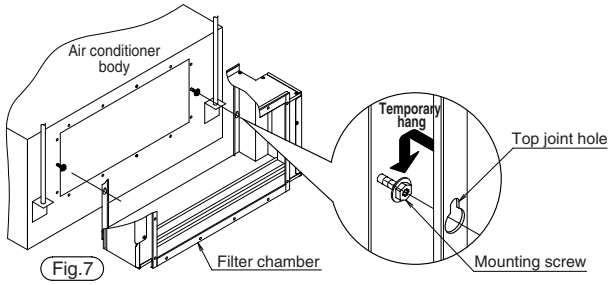


Fig.7

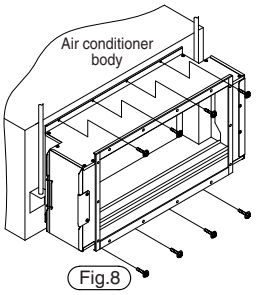


Fig.8

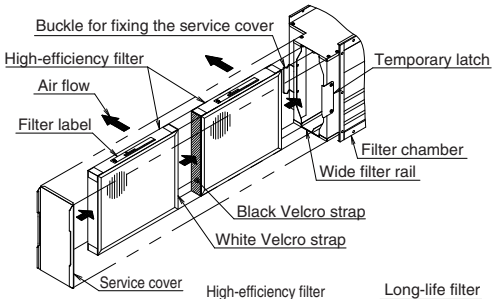
❺ Fitting procedure of the filter

In the case of High-efficiency filter

Fitting procedure is same for both the 65% type and the 90% type.

(1) Remove the service cover. For the method of removal, refer to [item ❸ **Preparation before installation**) -(1)]. Detach the buckle for fixing the service cover and then rotate the service cover until it is detached from the pawl of the temporary latch.
(2) Insert the first piece of filter (black Velcro strap attached;) while aligned into the wide filter rails, by setting the arrow mark to an airflow direction such that the filter label comes to upper face.
(3) After confirmed that the first filter has been inserted for more than its half size into the filter chamber, then insert the second piece of filter (white Velcro strap attached;) while fixing it to the first filter using a Velcro strap.
(4) After inserted two filters securely into the back of the filter chamber, fit the service cover in accordance with the reverse procedure of item (1).

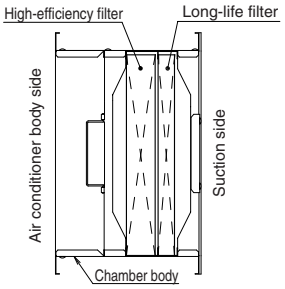
<Remark>
Confirm that the service cover is securely fixed with the buckle.
If fixing is not made steadily, it may cause air leakage.



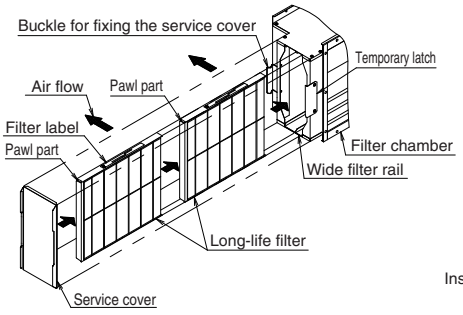
In the case of Long-life filter

(1) Remove the service cover. For the method of removal, refer to [item ❸ **Preparation before installation**) -(1)]. Detach the buckle for fixing the service cover and then rotate the service cover until it is detached from the pawl of the temporary latch.
(2) Insert the first piece of filter while aligned into the narrow filter rails, by setting the arrow mark to an airflow direction such that the filter label comes to upper face.
(3) After confirmed that the first filter has been inserted for more than its half size into the filter chamber, then insert the second piece of filter while latching it on the pawl part of the first one. (Fig.9)
The second filter cannot be fully inserted unless directions of the two filters fits.
(4) After inserted the two filters securely into the back of the filter chamber, fit the service cover in accordance with the reverse procedure of item (1).

<Remark>
Confirm that the service cover is securely fixed with the buckle.
If fixing is not made steadily, it may cause air leakage.



Position of each filter in the side view of the filter chamber
(before the service cover is fitted)



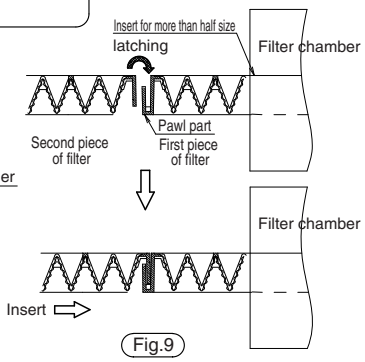
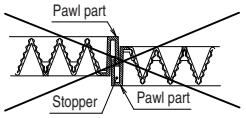


Fig.9

<Remark>
If each direction of the filters is different and when they are tried to be latched each other with their same pawls, the latching cannot be properly made due to the stopper. Consequently, the filters cannot be inserted into the filter chamber.

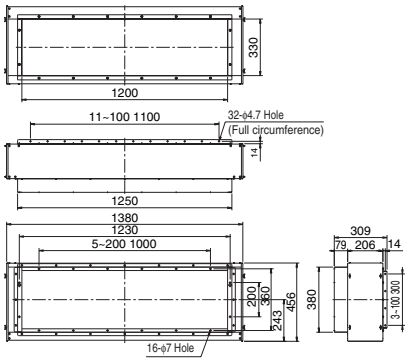


J: 3K016835

8.5 KDJ3705L280 — Filter Chamber

Dimensions **Unit:mm**

KDJ3705L280

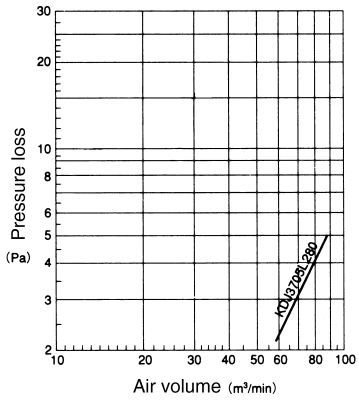


JC: D3K2283

Item	Model	KDJ3705L280
Inserted filter	65% (colorimetric method)	KAFJ372L280
	90% (colorimetric method)	KAFJ373L280
	Long-life filter	KAFJ371L280
Mass (kg)		14
Specifications		Hot galvanization
Accessories		Mounting screws. Installation manual.

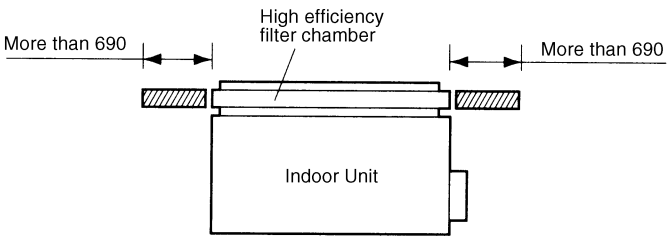
Characteristics of filter

■KDJ3705L280

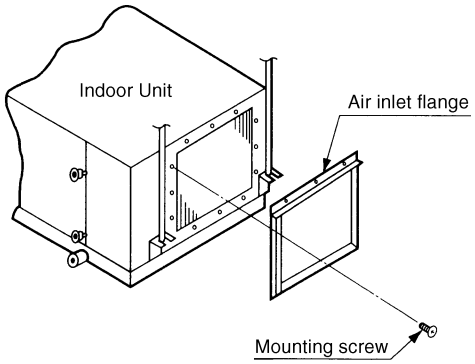


Preparation before installation

Keep a service space on one side of the unit to facilitate replacement of the high-efficiency filter or the long-life filter.

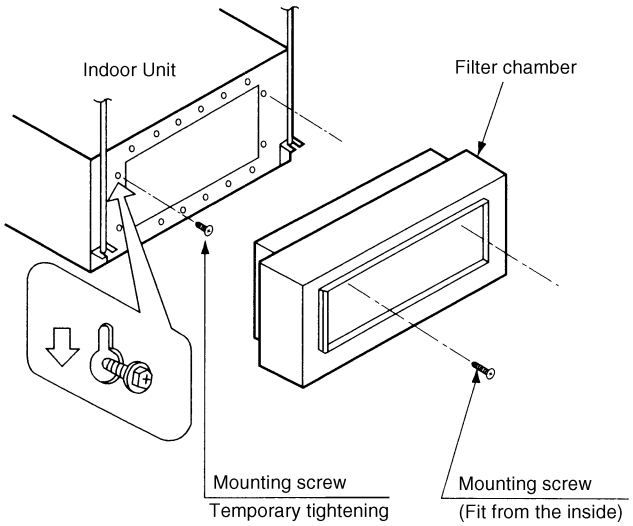


1. Remove the air inlet flange from the indoor unit. (Some models do not have the air inlet flange.)



2. Fit the filter chamber on the indoor unit using the supplied screws.

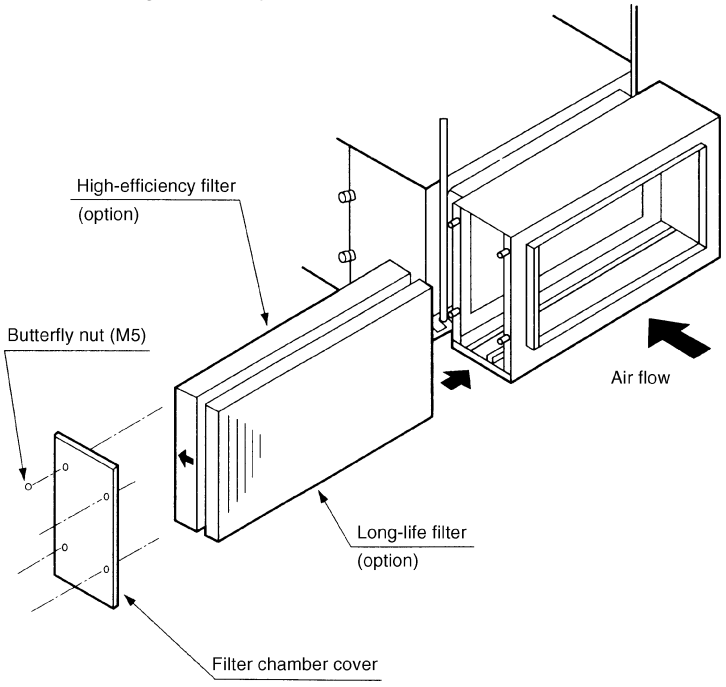
- Tighten the two mounting screws on the indoor unit temporary.
- After temporary fitting the filter chamber, tighten all the screws firmly from the inside of the filter chamber.



- Prepare the optional high-efficiency filter or long-life filter.

1. Remove the filter chamber cover.
2. Insert the filter.
3. Fit the filter chamber cover.

Caution Align the arrow mark on the high-efficiency filter with the direction of air flow.\

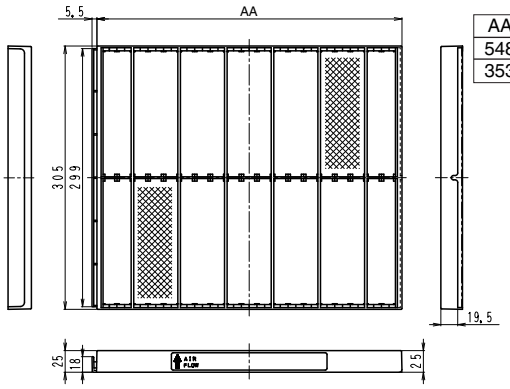


JC: 3K06608

8.6 KAF371AA36·56·80·160 — Long Life Filter



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



AA	Applied models
548	KAF371AA36
353	KAF371AA56, 80, 160

J : D3K06644
J : D3K07004

Caution

- Can be water-washed. Can be reused.
- The filter chamber (KDDF37AA36 / KDDF37AA56 / KDDF37AA80 / KDDF37AA160) is required when the long life filter will be installed.

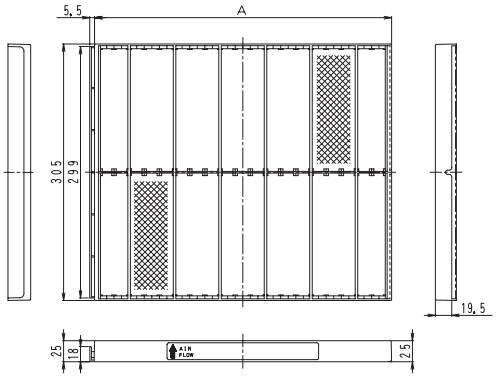
Item \ Model		KAF371AA36	KAF371AA56	KAF371AA80	KAF371AA160
Initial pressure loss	Pa	3 or less	7 or less		8 or less
Final pressure loss	Pa	49 or less			
Average efficiency	%	50 (gravity method)			
Air flow rate / 1 sheet	m^3/min	9.8			
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)			
Filter element		Mildew-proof resin net (Polypropylene)			
Filter frame		Polystyrene			
Number of sheets included		1	2	3	4

8.7 KAFP371A80·160, KAFJ371L280 — Long Life Replacement Filter

KAFP371A80



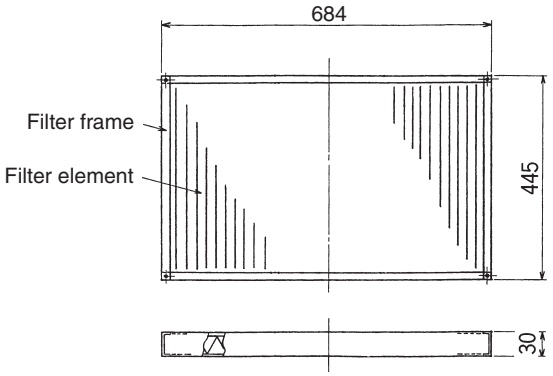
Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Model	A
KAFP371A80	353
KAFP371A160	548

C: D3K04909A

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Caution

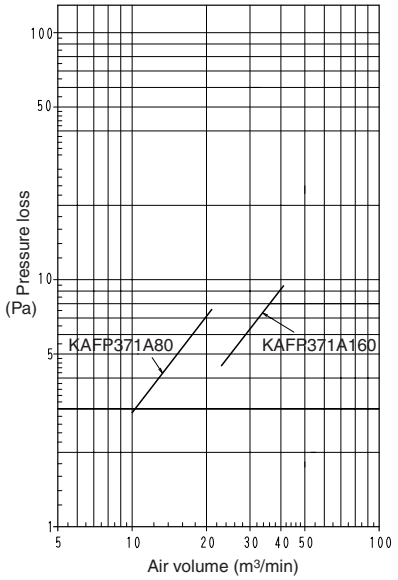
- Can be water-washed. Can be reused.
- The filter chamber (KDDFP37A80 · 160, KDJ3705L280) is required when the long life filter will be installed.

Specifications

Item \ Model		KAFP371A80	KAFP371A160	KAFJ371L280
Filter Chamber for Bottom Suction		KDDFP37A80	KDDFP37A160	KDJ3705L280
Dimensions (W×D×T) mm		358.5×305×25	553.5×305×25	684×445×30
Average Efficiency (%)		50% (Gravity method)		
Pressure Loss (Pa)	Initial	7	8	9.8 (1mmH_2O)
	Final	49 (5mmH_2O)		
Material		Mildew Proof Resin Net		
Number Required per Unit		2	2	2
Life Time (h)		2,500 h (dust particle concentration at 0.15mg/m³)		
Applicable Model		40·50·63·80 Class	100·125 Class	200·250 Class

Characteristics of filter

■KAFP371A80, KAFP371A160



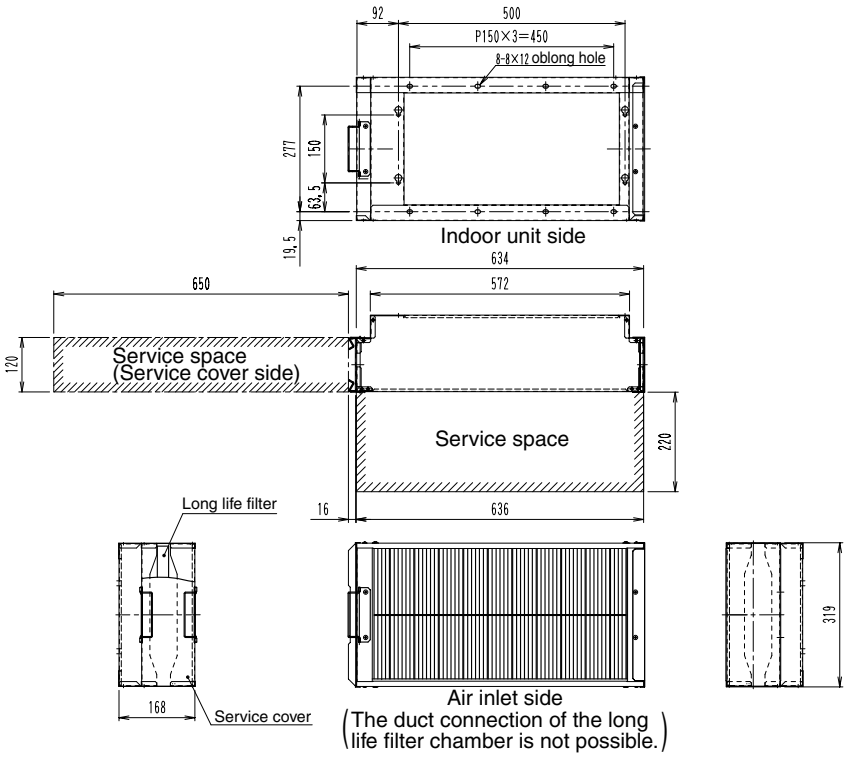
8.8 KAF375AA36·56·80·160 — Long Life Filter Chamber Kit

Item \ Model		KAF375AA36	KAF375AA56	KAF375AA80	KAF375AA160
Long life filter *1		KAF371AA36	KAF371AA56	KAF371AA80	KAF371AA160
Accessories		Mounting screws. Installation manual.	Protection net. Mounting screws. Installation manual.		
Mass (Weight)	kg	4	4.5	5.5	7.5

Note: *1. The long life filter is packed inside the chamber.

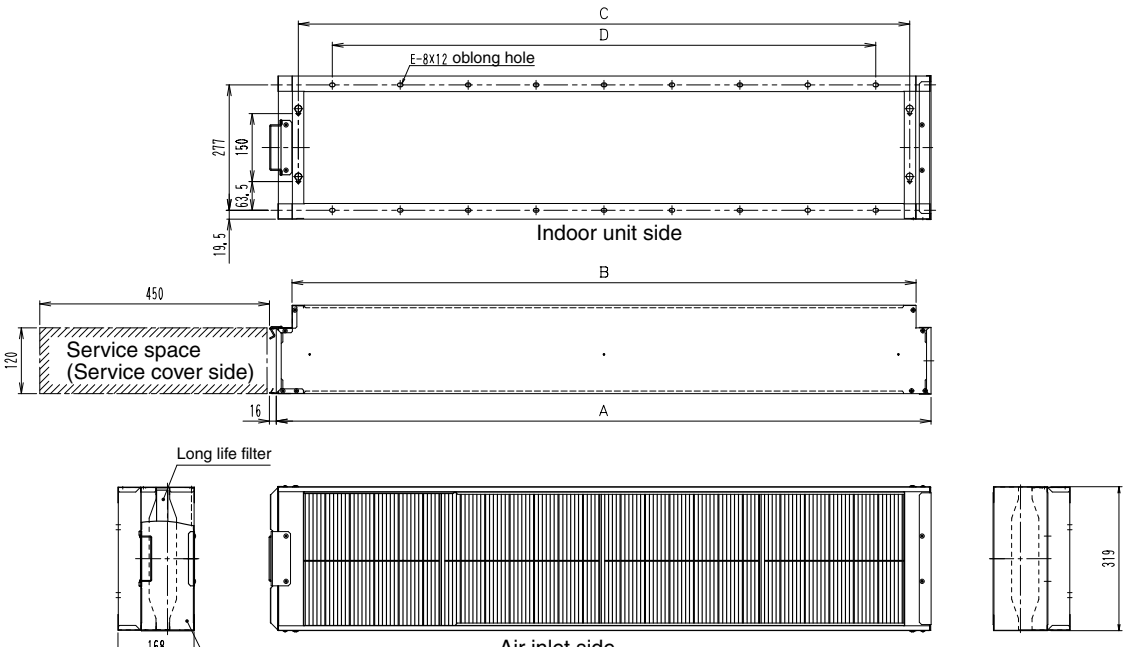
Dimensions **Unit:mm**

KAF375AA36



J: D3K07519A

KAF375AA56 / KAF375AA80 / KAF375AA160



Model	A	B	C	D	E
KAF375AA56	720	690	650	P150×4=600	10
KAF375AA80	1080	1020	950	P150×6=900	14
KAF375A160	1440	1380	1350	P150×8=1200	18

J: D3K06729A

Installation

DAIKIN AIR CONDITIONERS Long-life Filter Chamber Kit《Ceiling Mounted Duct Connection Type》 Installation Manual

KAF375AA36 • 56 • 80 • 160

Read this manual in advance and follow all the instructions given in the manual to conduct the installation of the product.

⚠Precautions Conduct the installation of the product correctly after carefully reading the safety precautions specified below.

- Request your dealer or contractor to conduct the installation of the product. Users' unauthorized installation work may result in the falling of the product or air leakage.
- Conduct the installation of the product correctly by following all the instructions given in the manual. A defect in the installation work may result in the falling of the product or air leakage.
- Be sure to use parts specified in this manual and the accessories provided with the product for the installation of the product. Failure to use these parts may result in the falling of the product or air leakage.
- Conduct the trial operation of the product after the installation of the product and check that there are no abnormalities.

Precautions

- This product can be mounted to air conditioners of ceiling mounted duct connection type.
- Mount the product after checking the model name of the indoor unit with the table on the right-hand side.
- Refer to the operation manual and installation manual for the indoor unit as well at the time of the installation of the product.
- The duct connection of the long-life filter chamber is not possible.
- Long-life filter
  The long-life filter can be washed and used again. On completion of installation, advise the customer of the cleaning interval and removal method of the filter by using the operation manual for the indoor unit and this installation manual.

Parts Make sure that the following parts are provided with the product.

Name		Filter Chamber	Long-life filter	Protection net	Mounting screw	Mounting screw	Installation Manual
Shape					 M5X16	 M4X16	
Number	KAF375AA36	1	1	—	12	—	1 (This copy)
	KAF375AA56		2	1	14	2	
	KAF375AA80		3		18	4	
	KAF375AA160		4		22	4	

Combination table The above long-life filters are packed inside the chamber.

Name of model	Long-life filter (optional accessory)	Inspection panel (optional accessory)	Name of model incorporable into indoor unit	
KAF375AA36	KAF371AA36	KTBJ25K36W KTBJ25K36F KTBJ25K36T	VRV	FXMQ20 • 25 • 35PVE
KAF375AA56	KAF371AA56	KTBJ25K56W KTBJ25K56F KTBJ25K56T	VRV	FXMQ40PVE
KAF375AA80	KAF371AA80	KTBJ25K80W KTBJ25K80F KTBJ25K80T	SkyAir	FBQ71DV1 FBQ71DVET
			VRV	FXMQ50 • 63 • 80 PVE
KAF375AA160	KAF371AA160	KTBJ25K160W KTBJ25K160F KTBJ25K160T	SkyAir	FBQ100 • 125 • 140 DV1 FBQ100 • 125 • 140 DVET
			VRV	FXMQ100 • 125 • 140 PVE

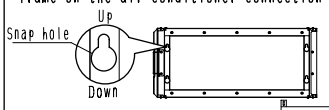
❶ Before installation Do not throw away the required accessories until the installation of the product is completed.

(1) Decide the carry-in route.
(2) Carry the product into the place of installation without unpacking the product. If it is unavoidable to unpack and carry in the product, pay the utmost attention to handle the product.

❷ Selecting Place of Installation 《Refer to the installation manual provided to the indoor unit as well.》

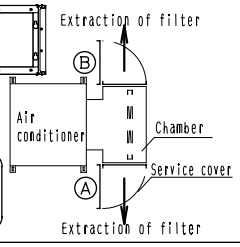
(1) Select the place of installation with the consent of the customer, provided that the following conditions are satisfied.
- A place bearing the weight of the indoor unit and filter chamber.
- A place where the lower part of the ceiling does not lean remarkably.
- A place where an installation workspace can be secured.

(2) Either the left- or right-hand side service cover can be used to remove the filters. Select the direction of removal according to the condition of installation.
(The service cover in position Ⓐ is set for opening and closing before shipping.) At that time, confirm the up-and-down direction of the filter chamber through the snap holes located on the left- and right-hand sides of the frame on the air conditioner connection side.

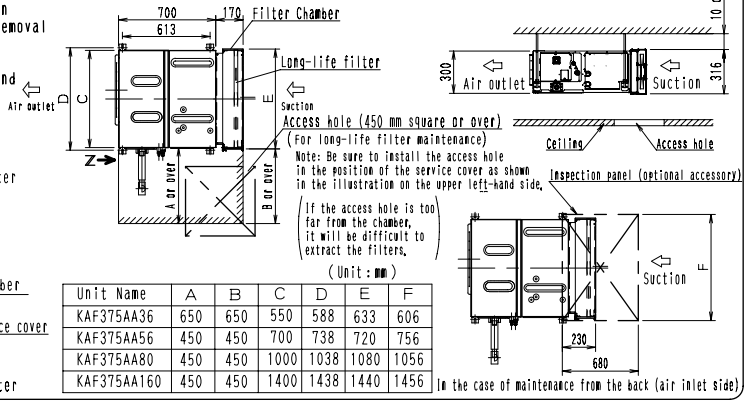


Refer to (1) in ❸ Preparations before Installation for the change of the removal direction.

<Precaution>
If the direction of filter maintenance is changed, be sure to install an access hole on the side newly selected.



(3) Install the access hole for the filter service space as shown below.
- Refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and provide a service space for the indoor unit.
- In the case of performing the maintenance of the long-life filters from the back (on the suction side), install an inspection panel (optional accessory) on the air inlet side.



(Unit : mm)

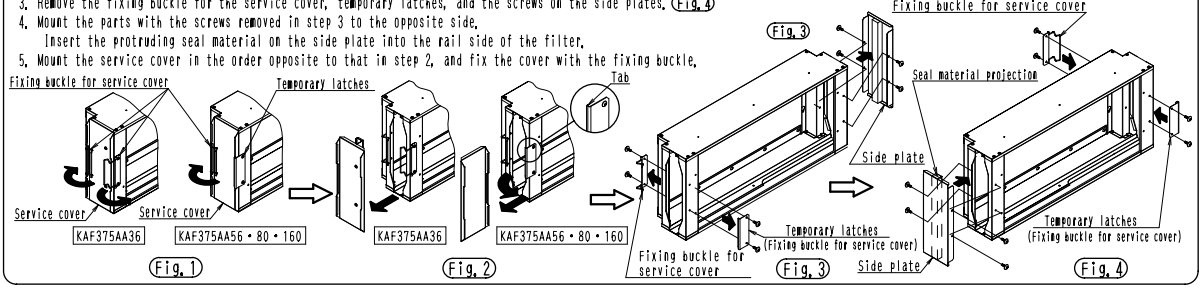
Unit Name	A	B	C	D	E	F
KAF375AA36	650	650	550	588	633	606
KAF375AA56	450	450	700	738	720	756
KAF375AA80	450	450	1000	1038	1080	1056
KAF375AA160	450	450	1400	1438	1440	1456

❸ Preparations before Installation 《Refer to the installation manual provided to the indoor unit as well.》

(1) Take the following procedure in the case of changing the direction of filter extraction.
Example: When changing the opening and closing direction of the service cover from Ⓐ to Ⓑ as shown in ❷ Selecting Place of Installation -(2).

<Precaution>
Check that the fixing buckle securely locks the service cover. Otherwise, air leakage may result.

1. Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover. (Fig. 1)
2. Rotate the service cover until the service cover is released from the tabs of the temporary latches. (KAF375AA56 • 80 • 160) Remove the the service cover. (KAF375AA36) (Fig. 2)
3. Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover, temporary latches, and the screws on the side plates. (Fig. 4)
4. Mount the parts with the screws removed in step 3 to the opposite side.
   Insert the protruding seal material on the side plate into the rail side of the filter.
5. Mount the service cover in the order opposite to that in step 2, and fix the cover with the fixing buckle.



C : 3K021008

(2) Remove the long life filters from the chambers in advance.
Refer to (1) in ❸ Preparations before Installation and remove the service cover.
Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover and rotate the service cover until the service cover is released from the tabs of the temporary latches.

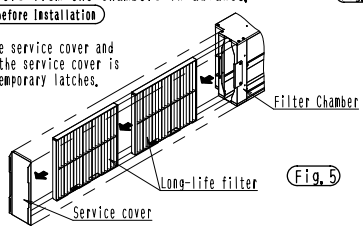


Fig. 5

(3) Remove the air inlet flange of the indoor unit. Fig. 6
No on-site duct can be connected to the air inlet side of the filter chamber.

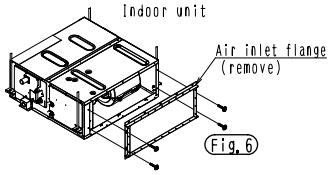


Fig. 6

❹ Attachment of Protection Net 《Except KAF375AA36》

(1) Attach the protection net to the indoor unit.
Insert the tabs of the protection net as shown in Fig. 7 into the long circular holes on the upper part of the indoor unit as shown in Fig. 8.
(2 places for type 56 and 4 places for type 80 and type 160)
(2) As shown in Fig. 9, secure the protection net attached to the indoor unit in (1) with mounting screws.
(2 places for type 56 and 4 places for type 80 and type 160)

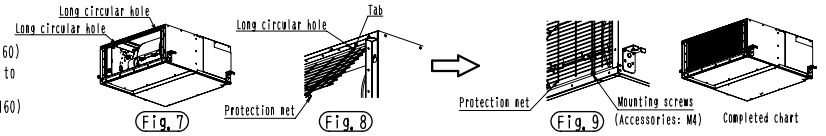


Fig. 7 Fig. 8 Fig. 9

❺ Installation of Filter Chamber

The filter chamber mounted to the indoor unit can be hung on the suspension bolts.
(1) Attach the mounting screws provided with the kit to the 4 points of the indoor unit. Fig. 10
(2) Temporarily secure the chamber with the screws prepared in (1) through the snap holes from the inner side of the chamber.
(3) Tighten the 4 temporarily secured screws after tightening the provided mounting screws Fig. 11
(8 screws for type 36, 10 screws for type 56, 14 screws for type 80, and 18 screws for type 160) in all the screw holes in the chamber
(4) Use an appropriate tool, such as a spirit level, and install the indoor unit and filter chamber horizontally.

<Precaution>
- Air leakage may result if the screws are not tightened securely.
- Air leakage may result or the filters may not be extracted with ease if the filter chamber is not installed horizontally

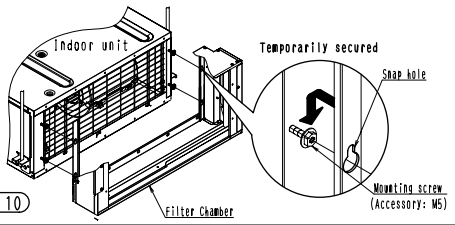


Fig. 10

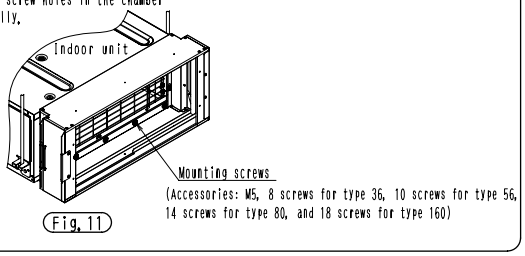


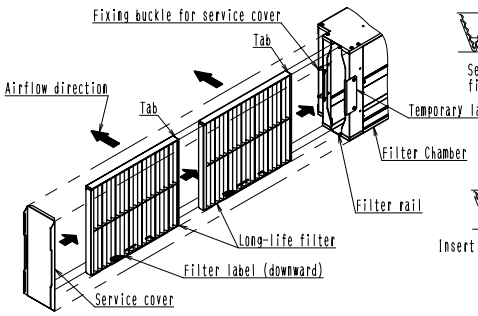
Fig. 11

❻ Mounting Procedure for Long-life Filter

Mounting of Long-life Filter

(1) Refer to (1) in ❸ Preparations before Installation and remove the service cover.
Remove the fixing buckle for the service cover and rotate the service cover until the service cover is released from the tabs of the temporary latches.
(2) Insert the filter according to the filter rail with the filter label faced downward while checking that the airflow direction is in conformity with the direction of the arrows.
(3) Be sure to hook the next filter to the tab on the first filter and insert the next filter when more than half the first filter is inserted.
The filter cannot be inserted unless the direction of the filter is correct. (Except KAF375AA36) Fig. 12
(4) After inserting the filter all the way into the filter chamber, mount the service cover in the order opposite to that in (1).
(Number of filters: 1 for type 36, 2 for type 56, 3 for type 80, and 4 for type 160)

<Precaution>
Check that the fixing buckle securely locks the service cover.
Otherwise, air leakage may result.



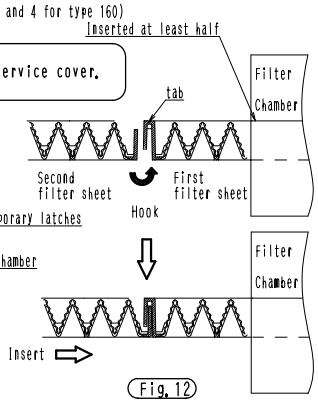
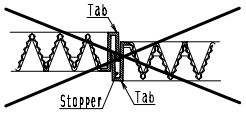
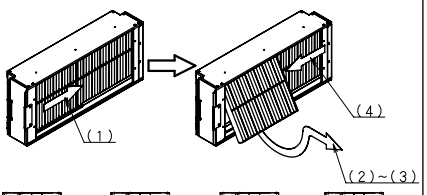


Fig. 12

<Precaution>
If the filters are different to each other in direction, the stoppers will obstruct the engagement of the filters with the tabs. Therefore, the filters cannot be inserted into the filter chamber.





Removal of long-life filter from the back

(1) Push the filter in the direction of arrows.
(2) Lift the filter on the left front side a little, and rotate and remove the lower side to the air inlet side from the rail.
(3) Extract the filter after pulling and removing the upper part of the filter in the front direction from the rail.
(4) Shift the remaining filters to the left front side in sequence, and remove the filter like the first one explained in step (3). (Except KAF375AA36)

Fig. 13

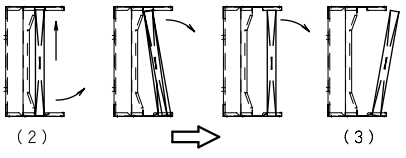


Fig. 13

3K021008

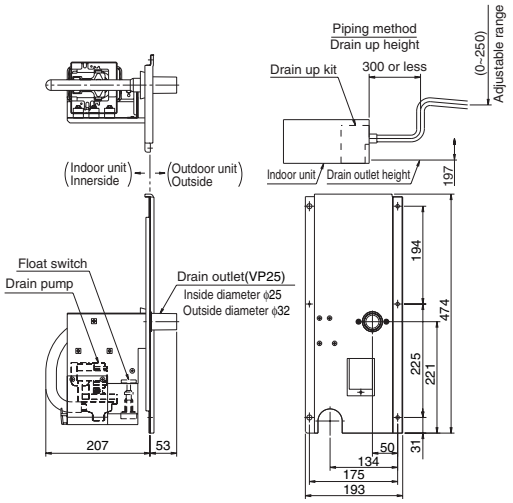
8.9 KDU30L250VE — Drain Pump Kit



Caution

The bottom surface of this kit should be located at a level 120 mm lower than the bottom surface of the indoor unit. Therefore, arm space/length at the ceiling should be higher/longer by at least 120 mm than the standard dimension.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



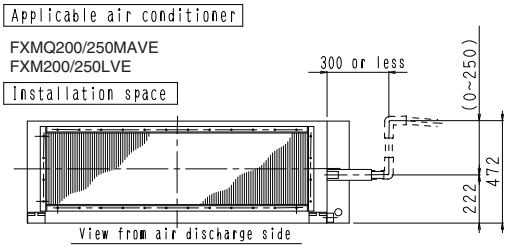
Item \ Model	KDU30L250VE
Power supply	Single phase 220-240/220V 50/60Hz
Power consumption (W)	19/17 (50/60Hz) (when Idling)
Drain-up Lift (mm)	Standard drain outlet of the unit +197~+447
Drain outlet	VP25 (External dia. ϕ32, Internal dia. ϕ25)
Safety device	Float switch
Mass (kg)	10
Accessories	Drain pump box. Drain connection pipe. Drain hose. Hose band. Sealing pad. Clamp. Mounting screw.

Installation

Applicable air conditioner

FXMQ200/250MAVE
FXM200/250LVE

Installation space



Accessories Check the following accessories are included in the kit.

Name	Drain hose	Hose band	Sealing pad	Plug cover	Relaying wire harness	Plug
Quantity	1pc.	1pc.	1pc.	1pc.	1pc.	1pc.
Shape						

Name	Screw(M5)	Side plate	Drain pump assy	Thermal insulation(1)	Thermal insulation(2)	(OTHER)
Quantity	3pcs.	1pc.	1pc.	1pc.	1pc.	• INSTALLATION MANUAL • Clamp
Shape						

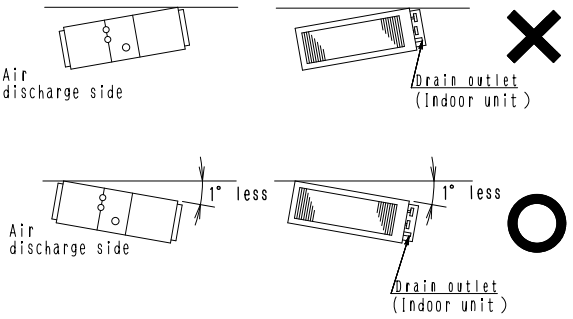
Tools required for the installation work

Screwdriver(⊕), Nipper

Notes on installation

If the drain pump kit has already been installed, note the following when installing the indoor unit.

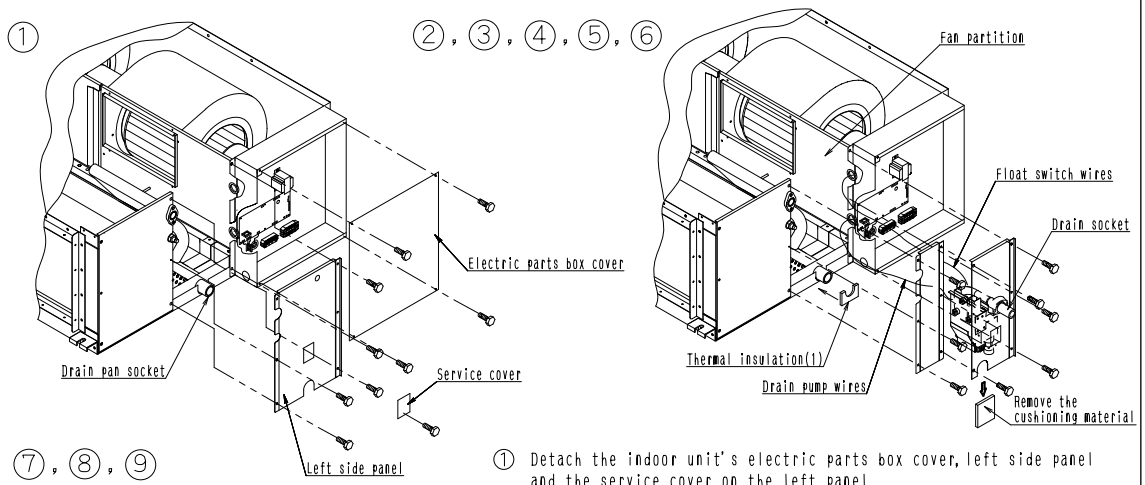
• Do not install the indoor unit on an incline against drainage flow (away from the drain outlet). This can lead to water leaks.

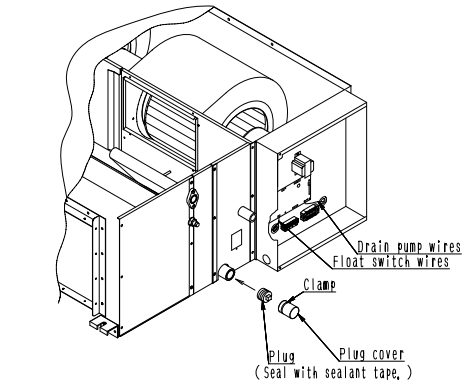


❶ Installation procedure

≪Wiring is easier if done before the unit is hung from the ceiling or the intake duct attached.≫
≪If wiring after installing the suction duct, remove the electric parts box.≫

Note When installing the drain pump ass'y on the indoor unit, do not hold the unit by the drain socket. The socket neck will break under pressure and consequently cause water to leak.





① Detach the indoor unit's electric parts box cover, left side panel and the service cover on the left panel.
(The left side panel is unnecessary.)

② Stick the attached thermal insulation(1) to the lower part of drain pan socket.

③ Feed the drain pump wires from the drain pump ass'y through the rubber bush on the lower half of the fan partition.

④ Feed the float switch wires from the drain pump ass'y through the rubber bush on top half of the fan partition.

⑤ Install the drain pump ass'y inside the indoor unit.

⑥ Attach the included side panel to the indoor unit.

⑦ Feed the float switch wires into the electric parts box from the rubber bush on the lower left side of the box.

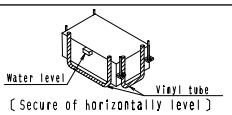
⑧ Connect the included relay harness to the drain pump wires and feed it into the electric parts box through the lower right rubber bush.

⑨ Attach the included plug to the drain pump socket of the indoor unit and insulate the plug cover, mounting the clamp.
Wrap the thermal insulation(2) over the clamp.
Seal the plug to ensure water does not leak.

C: 1P031043

❷Indoor unit installation

①Install the unit temporarily.
②Using the attached positioning jig for installation, adjust the height of the unit.
③Check the unit is horizontally level.
⚠The unit is equipped with a built-in drain pump and float switch. Level the four corners with a conventional level or a vinyl tube containing water.
(If the unit is tilted against condensate flow, the float switch may malfunction and cause water to drip.)

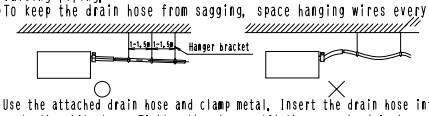


〔Secure of horizontally level〕

❸Drain piping work

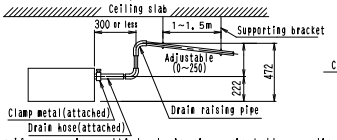
<<Rig the drain pipe as shown below and take measures against condensation.>>
<<Improperly rigged piping could lead to leaks and eventually wet furniture and belongings.>>

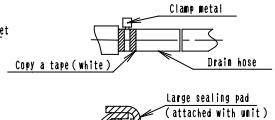
Install the drain pipes.
○The diameter of the drain pipe shoud be greater than or equal to the diameter of the connecting pipe. (Vinyl tube; pipe size: 25 mm; outer dimension 32 mm).
○Keep the drain pipe short and sloping downwards at a gradient of at least 1/100 to prevent air pockets from forming.
○If the drain hose cannot be sufficiently set on a slope, execute the drain raising piping.
○To keep the drain hose from sagging, space hanging wires every 1 to 1.5 m.



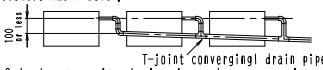
○Use the attached drain hose and clamp metal. Insert the drain hose into the drain socket, up to the white tape. Tighten the clamp until the screw head is less than 4 mm from the hose.
○Wrap the attached sealing pad over the clamp and drain hose to insulate.
○Insulate the drain hose inside the building.
○Be sure to insulate the following two items in order to prevent water leakage caused by condensation.
・Indoors drain pipng
・Drain socket
While referring to the figure on the right, insulate the clamp and drain hose with the attached large sealing pad.

<Precaution for drain raising piping>
○Install the drain raising pipes at a height of less than 250 mm.
○Install the drain raising pipes at a right angle to the indoor unit and no more than 300 mm from the unit.

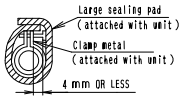




○If converging multiple drain pipes, install according to the procedure shown below.



T-joint converging drain pipes

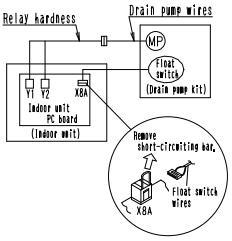


Select converging drain pipes whose gauge is suitable for the operating capacity of the unit.

❹Electric wiring work

Wire the drain pump kit as explained here below. Be careful not to wire incorrectly.
Install terminals, connectors and screws so that they do not come loose. Also, cover all spliced wires to prevent contact.
○Detach the indoor unit's electric parts box cover.
○Wire as follows.

1. Wire as indicated in the below right illustration and in included wiring diagrams.
2. Remove the short-circuiting bar from X8A on the indoor unit PC board (inside electric parts box) and connect the float switch wires.
3. Connect the included relay harness to the drain pump wire connector.
4. Connect the drain pump wires to the Y1 and Y2 terminals on the indoor unit PC board.
5. When finished wiring, draw up wire slack, bundle neatly and lock down.



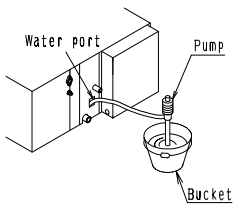
❺Test operation

Check drain pump kit installation and wiring connecions again.
Next, to check drain up kit drainage, slowly pour about 1,000 cc of water into the drain pan from the water port on the indoor unit.
Check water flows smoothly. (The outlet socket of the drain pump kit is transparent, so drainage can be easily checked.)
Make the test operation as follows.

When electric wiring work is finished
○Check drainage flow during COOL running.

When electric wiring work is not finished
○Detach the electric parts box cover and connect the remote controller and power supply to the indoor unit.
○Set the test operation mode from the remote controller and press the MODE button until displaying "FAN". Then, press the START/STOP button. The indoor unit's fan and drain pump will start up and drainage can be checked.
○Be careful with power ON because the fan will turn.

✱When finished the test operation, reattach the service cover removed in step [1] of [Installation procedure].



❻Post-installation checks

After installing the equipment, make the following checks.

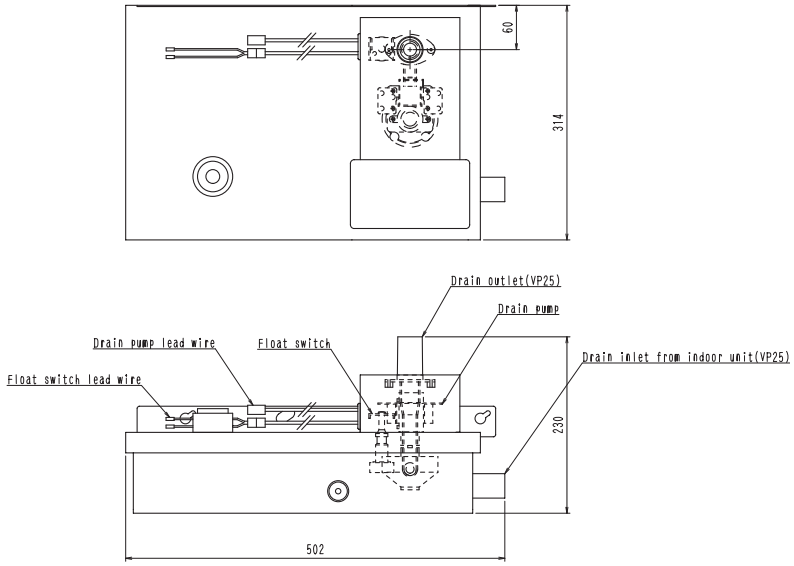
Items to be checked	Check
That the indoor unit and drain pump are level.	
That the drain hose is properly connected (No fear of water leaks).	
That the drain hose is sloping downward (1/50~1/100 gradient).	
That the drain hose is properly insulated.	
That wiring is correct.	

1P031043

8.10 KDU-30L125VE — Drain Pump Kit



Dimensions **Unit:mm**
KDU-30L125VE



D3K03240

Item \ Model	KDU-30L125VE
Power supply	Single phase 220-240V/220V (50/60 Hz)
Power consumption (W)	12/11
Pump height	300-750 mm from indoor unit outlet
Mass (kg)	5.8
Accessories	Drain connector. Drain horse. Horse band. Thermal insulation. Clamp. Screw. Hanger. Installation manual.

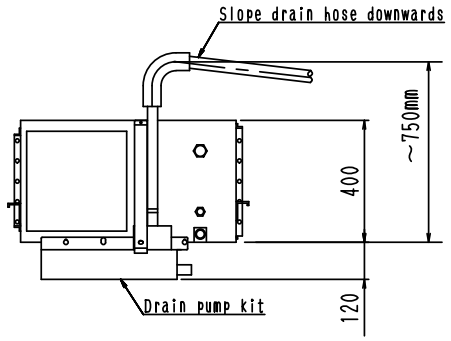
Caution
The bottom surface of this kit should be located at a level 120 mm lower than the bottom surface of the indoor unit. Therefore, arm space/length at the ceiling should be higher/longer by at least 120 mm than the standard dimension.

Installation

Applicable air conditioner

FXM40-125LVE

Installation space

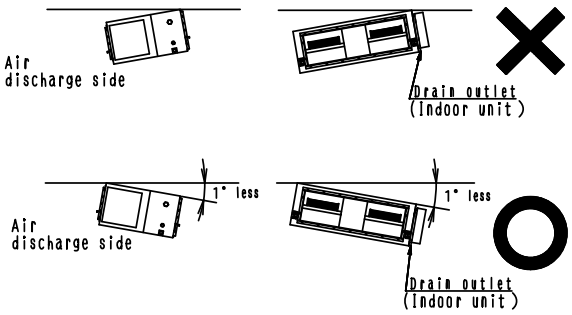


Provide a inspection hatch in a postion whitch makes it easy to service the indoor unit and drain pump kit.
(See the service space for the indoor unit)
Refer to the installation manual provided with the indoor unit.

Installation precautions

If the drain pump kit has already been installed, note the following points when installing the indoor unit.

- Do not install the indoor unit on an incline against drainage flow (away from the drain outlet). This can lead to water leaks.



Accessories Check the following accessories are included in the kit.

Name	Drain Pump	Hanger	Drain hose	Drain hose	Hose band	Thermal Insulation(1)
Quantity	1pc.	1pc.	1pc.	1pc.	3pcs.	2pcs.
Shape	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥

Name	Thermal Insulation(2)	Clamp	Screw	Installation manual	PCB Support	Terminal PCB
Quantity	4pcs.	2pcs.	3pcs.	1pc.	4pcs.	1pc.
Shape	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	⑪	⑫

Name	Terminal PCB mounting plate
Quantity	1pc.
Shape	⑬

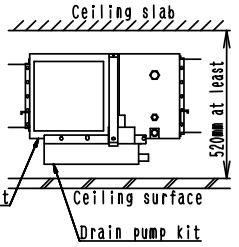
Tools required for the installation work

Screwdrivers(⊕,⊖)、Nippers, Spanner

Preparations of installation

① Installation space.

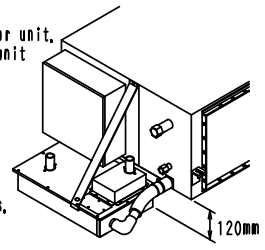
The height in the ceiling is necessary more than 520mm.
(See the right illustration.)
Set the service hole located at the indoor unit and the drain kit.
(See the service space of the indoor unit)

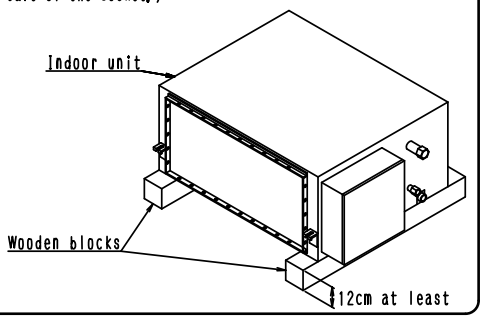


② Installation drain pump kit.

Install this kit after hanging the indoor unit.
Installation before hanging the indoor unit causes damege.
(This drain pump kit is installed below the indoor unit by 120mm.)

In case of installation this kit before installation the indoor unit, set the indoor unit on the wooden blocks.
Do not give an excessive load after installation this kit.
(Take special care of the socket.)





C: 3K010504A

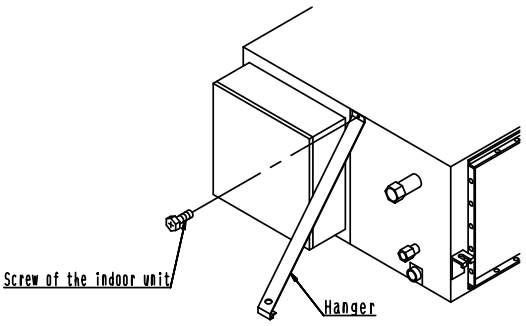
1 Installation procedure

Note)Install the indoor unit on the ceiling first.

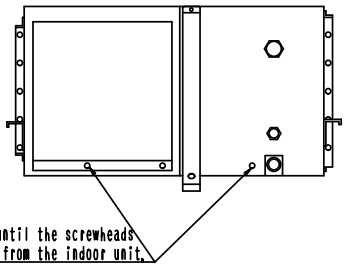
① Installation of the drain pump kit on the indoor unit.

1. Remove the screw from the right side of the indoor unit switchbox and tighten the screw temporarily to hold the hanger.

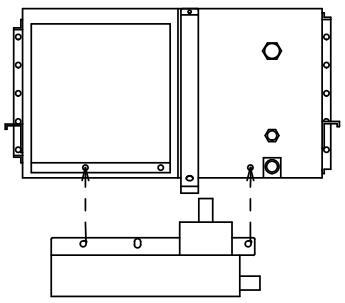
(Note)Screws of the indoor unit are covered with the thermal insulations. Remove the screw through the thermal insulation.



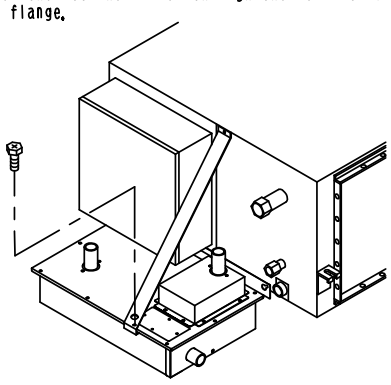
2. Loosen two screws of the indoor unit until the screwhead are no less than 5mm from the indoor unit.



3. Insert these screws of the indoor unit into the key holes of the drain pump kit.



4. Hang the lower hanger to the flange of the drain pump kit and tighten the attached screw through the sealant of the drain kit flange.



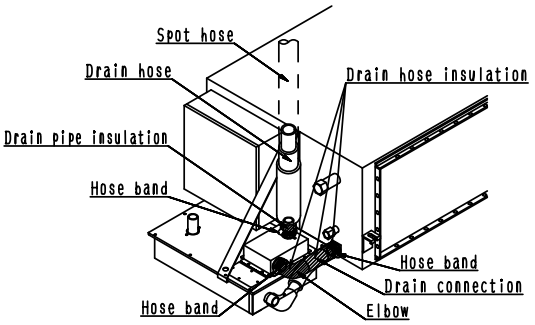
5. Tighten the two screws removed before (term 1, 2).

② Connect the drain connection hose from the drain pump kit to the indoor unit.

(Note)Connect the drain connection hose from the elbow of the connection hose to the drain pump box. Connect the attached drain hose to the outlet of the drain pump.

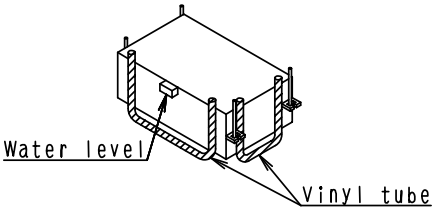
(Note)Keep the drain hose sloping downwards.

1. Tighten the attached hose band.
2. Insulate the hose band (3 items) except the outlet of drain pump after checking the drainge.
(Note)Insulate the elbow of the drain conector and foam insullation.



2 Indoor unit installation

①Install the unit temporarily.
②Using the attached positioning jig for installation, adjust the height of the unit.
③Check the unit is horizontally level.



(Secure of horizontally level)

⚠ **The unit is equipped with a built-in drain pump and float switch. Level the four corners with a conventional level or a vinyl tube containing water.**

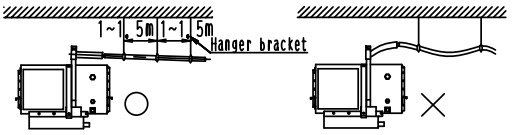
(If the unit is tilted against condensate flow, the float switch may malfunction and cause water to drip.)

C: 3K010504A

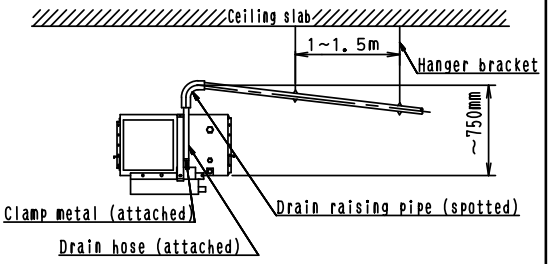
③ Drain piping work

《Rig the drain pipe as shown below and take measures against condensation.》
《Improperly rigged piping could lead to leaks and eventually wet furniture and belongings.》

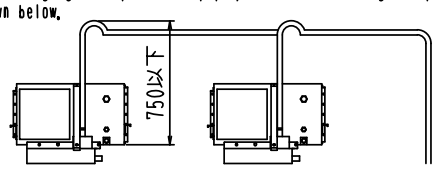
Install the drain pipes.
1. The diameter of the drain pipe shoud be greater than or equal to the diameter of the connecting pipe. (Vinyl tube; pipe size: 25 mm; outer dimension 32 mm).
2. Keep the drain pipe short and sloping downwards at a gradient of at least 1/100 to prevent air pockets from forming.
3. If the drain hose cannot be sufficiently set on a slope, execute the drain raising piping.
4. To keep the drain hose from sagging, space hanging wires every 1 to 1.5 m.



<Precaution for drain raising piping>
1. Install the drain raising pipes at a height of less than 750mm from the indoor unit outlet.
2. Install the drain paising pipes at a right angle to the indoor unit.

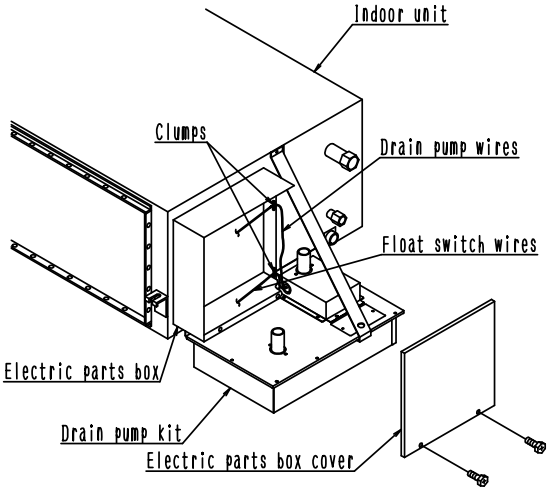


3. It convenging multiple drain pipes, install according the procedure shown below.



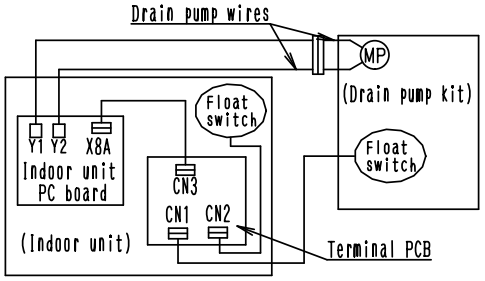
④ Electric wiring work

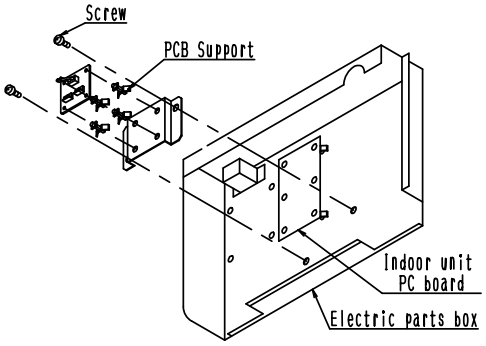
Wire the drain pump kit as explained here below. Be careful not to wire incorrectly.
Install terminals, connectors and screws so that they do not come loose. Also, cover all spliced wires to prevent contact.
1. Detach the indoor unit's electric parts box cover.
2. Wire as follows.



1. Wire as indicated in the below right illustration and in the included wiring diagrams.
2. Fix the attached terminal PCB mounting plate on the indoor unit switch box and mount the terminal PCB. (✱1)
3. Remove the X8A connector (green) on the indoor unit PCB and reconnect it to CN2 on the terminal PCB (attached). (✱1)
4. Connect the float switch lead wires that come out from the kit to CN1 on the terminal PCB (attached). (✱1)
5. Connect the lead wires that come out from CN3 on the terminal PCB (attached) to X8A on the indoor unit PCB. (✱1)
6. Connect the drain pump lead wires to Y1 and Y2 on the indoor unit PCB.
7. When finished wiring, draw up wire slack, bundle neatly and lock down.

(✱1)See the wiring diagrams.
if the float switch is not connect to X8A on the indoor unit PCB, connect the float switch lead wires of the kit directly to X8A.

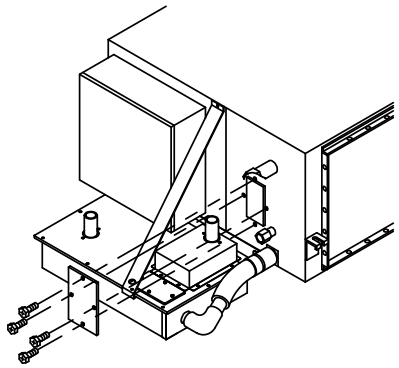




C: 3K010505A

5 Test operation

Check drain pump kit installation and wiring connections again. Then, to check the drain status of the drain up kit, remove the access hole cover of the indoor unit and slowiy pour 1000 cc of water through the access hole and check if water smoothly flows out or not.
(The outlet socket of the drain pump kit is transparent, so dranage can be easily checked.)
(Note)Be catetul not to spatter wires with water while pouring.
Make the test operation as belows.



When electric wiring work is finished

○Check drainage flow during COOL running.

When electric wiring work is not finished

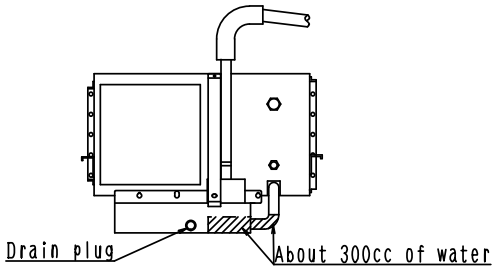
1. Detach the electric parts box cover and connect the remote controller and power supply to the indoor unit.
2. Set the test operation mode from the remote controller and press the MODE button until displaying "FAN". Then, press the START/STOP button. The indoor unit's fan and drain pump will start up and drainage can be checked.
3. Be careful with power ON because the fan will turn.

※When finished the test operation, reattach the service cover removed in step [1] of [Installation procedure].

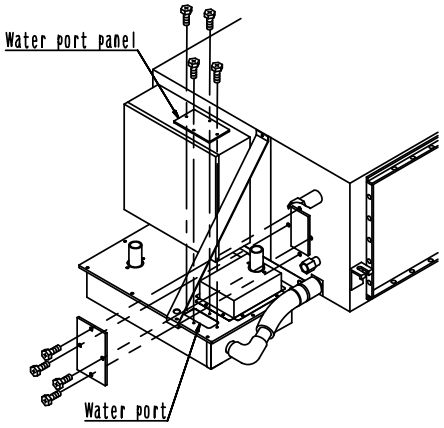
Note on draining water in maintenance

After every cooling season is over, clean the drain up pump kit.

1. Make sure to drain off the water from the kit.
After pulling out the drain plug and discharging drain water in the drain pan, about 300cc of water is stagnant in the dam of the drain pan.



2. After removing the access hole covers, remove the dirt around the access holes. See the figure below.
3. After the unit is cleaned, put the covers back to their places.



6 Post-installation checks

After installing the equipment, make the following checks.

Items to be checked	Check
That the indoor unit and drain pump are level.	
That the drain hose is properly connected (No fear of water leaks).	
That the drain hose is sloping downward (1/50~1/100 gradient).	
That the drain hose is properly insulated.	
That wiring is correct.	

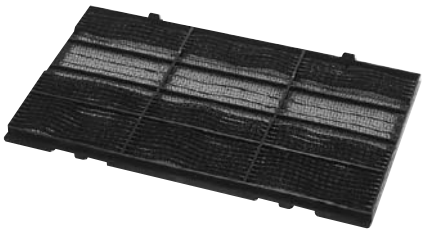
C: 3K010505A

- Caution for Use
  The bottom surface of this kit should be located at a level 120 mm lower than the bottom surface of the indoor unit. Therefore, arm space/length at the ceiling should be higher/longer by at least 120 mm than the standard dimension.

9. FXH(Q)

9.1 KAF501DA56·80·112 — Replacement Long-life Filter

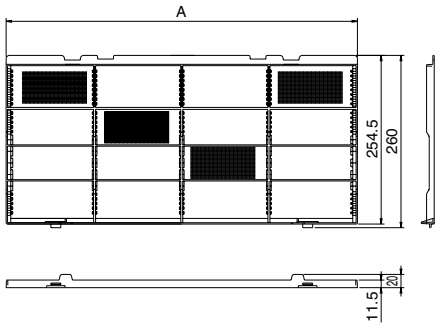
KAF501DA56



Caution

· Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Model	A
KAF501DA56	430
KAF501DA80	530
KAF501DA112	430
KAF501DA160	493

D3K3074A

Item	Model	KAF501DA56	KAF501DA80	KAF501DA112	KAF501DA160
Initial pressure loss	Pa	10 or less			
Final pressure loss	Pa	59 or less			
Average efficiency	%	45 (gravity method)			
Air flow rate	m^3/min	13	17	24	32
	l/sec	217	283	400	533
Life	h	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)			
Filter element		Mildew-proof resin net			
Number of sheets included		2	2	3	3
Mass (Weight)	kg	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6

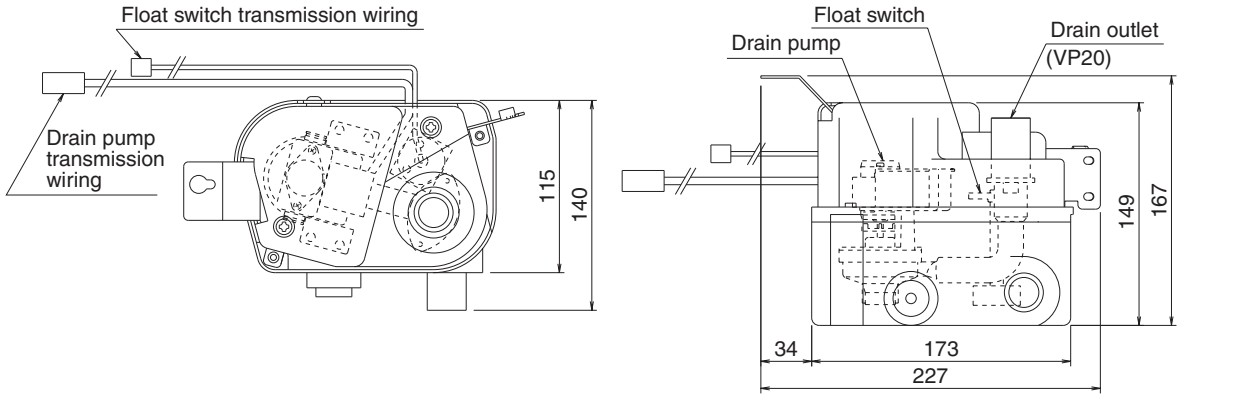
9.2 KDU50N60VE / KDU50N125VE — Drain-up Kit

KDU50N60VE
KDU50N125VE



Item		Model	KDU50N60VE	KDU50N125VE
Drain-up lift		mm	600	
Drain Con. diameter			VP20 (Ex. dia. ϕ26, Int. dia. ϕ20)	
Pump	Power supply		Single phase 220-240V/220V 50/60Hz (from Indoor Unit PCB)	
	Power consumption	W	13.5/12 (50/60Hz)	

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



J : D3K03613A

Installation

Perform all installation work accurately only after reading these precautions.

- The safety precautions provided in this manual are classified into two categories: "⚠WARNING",and "⚠CAUTION". Hazardous situations which may be caused by incorrect installations and could result in death or serious injury are described in the columns indicated with "⚠WARNING".
  However, even the items described in the columns indicated with "⚠CAUTION" could result in hazardous situations depending on the condition. Since these warnings and cautions are extremely important to secure safety, always observe them when performing the work.
- After completing installation, perform a test run to see if there is anything wrong.
  Also, explain to the customer how to use and maintain the unit, following the operation manual. Have the customer store this installation manual along with the operating manual.

⚠ WARNING

The installation should be performed only by the qualified installer.
Improper installation, if any, may cause water leakage, electrical shock, or fire.

Perform the installation work in accordance with the installation manual.
Improper installation may cause water leakage, electrical shock, or fire.

Use only the attached accessories and the specified parts for installation.
Otherwise it may cause water leakage, electrical shock, or fire.

Use the specified wires for all wiring, making sure that all terminal connections are fastened securely and free of external pressure. Defective connections or fastening may cause heat or fires.

⚠ CAUTION

Connect all pipes, observing the instructions in the installation manual, to ensure proper drainage. Make sure they are insulated to prevent condensation from forming. If the piping is done incorrectly drain may leak and damage furniture.

Do not install in the following locations.
1. Locations with mineral oil in the atmosphere, or food preparation areas where drops of oil or steam can reach the unit, as resin parts will deteriorate and may cause leaking or falling parts.
2. Locations where sulfurous gas or other corrosive gases are produced. Copper pipes or brazed areas may corrode, causing the refrigerant to leak.
3. Locations where there is machinery which gives off electromagnetic waves.This may cause the control system to malfunction, impeding proper functioning of the unit.
4. Locations where gas might leak into the atmosphere, or locations where thinner, gasoline, or other volatile or flammable substances are handled. An explosion could be caused by gas leaking and accumulating around the drain pump kit.

Caution
- This kit may be attached to a ceiling-hung air conditioner.
- Check the indoor unit main unit type on the list below before installing.
- When installing, also refer to installation manual for the indoor unit main unit.

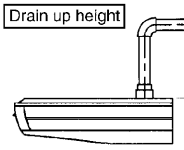
Combination List

Model	Combinable indoor unit models	
KDU50N60VE	VRV	FXHQ32MAVE
KDU50N125VE	VRV	FXHQ63·100MAVE

Particular caution should be exercised for the following items.
Re-check all items after installation is completed.

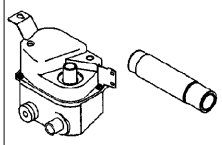
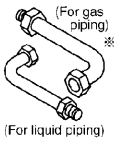
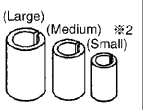
Item to be checked	In case of malfunction	Check column
Has the installation of the indoor unit main unit and the drain up kit each been done without fault?	Falling, condensation, shaking	
Are all wires connected without fault?	Inoperable, burning	
Is the drain flowing smoothly?	Leaking	

Drain up height



※ Be sure the drain up kit is at least 220 mm above the unit, as the sound of the water flowing may otherwise become louder.

Parts

Name		① Drain up kit main unit	② Drain hose	③ Hose band	④ Screw (M4)	⑤ Clamp material	⑥ attached pipes				⑦ Insulation pipe cover				⑧ Insulating material		
															⑧-1 For attached pipes	⑧-2 For indoor drain hose	⑧-3 For the drain hose connections
Shape							 (For gas piping) ※1 (For liquid piping)				 (Large) (Medium) ※2 (Small)				(For gas piping) 200×50×t5 (For liquid piping) 200×30×t5	185×230×t5	170×30×t10
							(For liquid piping)		(For gas piping)		(Large)	(Medium)		(Small)			
							For ϕ6.5	For ϕ9.5	For ϕ9.5	For ϕ12.7 For ϕ15.9	I.D ϕ42 XL160	I.D ϕ32 XL100	I.D ϕ35 XL100	I.D ϕ28 XL80 I.D ϕ32 XL80			
Q'ty	KDU50N60VE	1	2	3	3	12	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
	KDU50N125VE	1	2	3	3	12		1		1	1		1		1	1	1	1

※1. KDU50N60VE: Two types of gas pipes are attached.
2. KDU50N60VE: Two types of Insulation covers (medium) are attached.

Tools required for installation

⊕⊖ Flathead screwdriver, nipper, cutter

Precaution when installing

Install the indoor unit level or slightly tilted to the right or back (within 1°) (Figure 1)

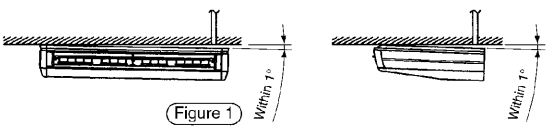


Figure 1

C : 3K012642A

1 Preparations before hanging the indoor unit

The drain up kit is installed after the air conditioner main unit is hung. Preparations are required before hanging the air conditioner.

Mounting space

Select the place for the indoor unit to be installed in consideration of the installation service space.
Note, however, that there must be at least 60 mm of service space to the right of the indoor unit main unit.
See the installation manual attached to the indoor unit for the service space for the indoor unit. (Figure 2)

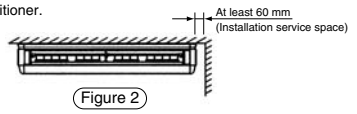
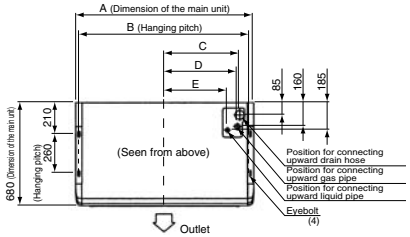


Figure 2

(1) Select the position of the pipe outtake, the drain pipe outtake, and the wiring outtake, and make holes in those positions.
The locations are displayed on the installation pattern paper attached to the indoor unit, so use the paper pattern. (Figure 3)
(2) Perform the refrigerant and drain piping work following the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
Field drain piping should be as short as possible and with a downward slope (1/25 – 1/100) to prevent air pockets. (Figure 4)
Be sure to insulate all drainpipes which run above the ceiling.
Be sure to fix the field drain pipe to the support brackets in the ceiling. (Figure 4)
(3) Connect the attached piping ⑥ and the field refrigerant piping.
For the attached pipes ⑥, select the liquid and gas pipes which match the pipe diameters of the corresponding indoor unit.
When connecting the flare nuts, refer to the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
(4) Wrap the insulation pipe cover attached to the indoor unit and fasten with the clamp material ⑤. (For both gas and liquid pipes.) (Figure 5)
(5) Be sure to use adhesive when connecting the attached drain hose ② and the field drain piping in the ceiling. (Figure 4)
(6) Insulate the drain hose using the attached insulation pipe cover(large) ⑦. (Figure 6)



Model (FHQ~)	A	B	C	D	E
32 type	960	920	390	375	310
63 type	1160	1120	490	475	410
100 type	1400	1360	610	595	530

Figure 3

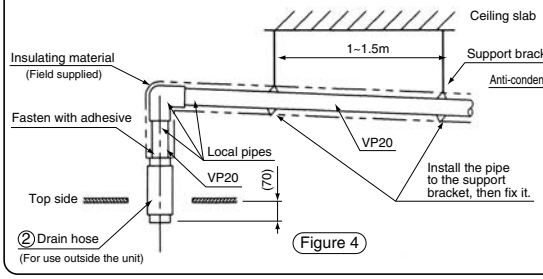


Figure 4

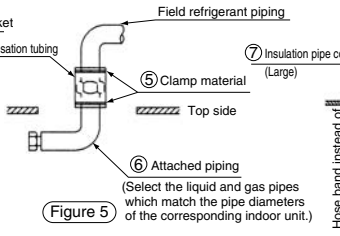


Figure 5

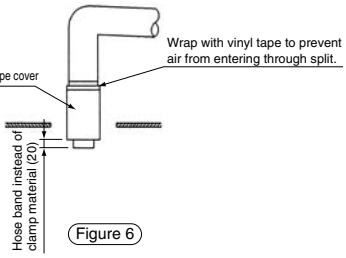


Figure 6

2 Installation Outline

Remove the lid from the top of the indoor unit, and hang the indoor unit main unit before installing the drain up kit in the following manner. (Figure 7)
1. Complete the electrical wiring following the installation manual attached to the indoor unit.
(Use the wiring through-hole in the top side of the indoor unit to pull the wiring into the indoor unit main unit.)
2. Connect the refrigerant piping to the indoor unit.
(1) Connect the liquid and gas piping to the indoor unit main unit. (Figure 8)

(2) Wrap the piping connections with the attached insulation pipe cover (medium and small) ⑦ and fasten either end with the attached clamp material ⑤.
Next, put the attached insulating material ⑧-1. Wrap gas-side piping with the insulating material attached the indoor unit on top of the insulation pipe cover wrapped on the piping connections. (For the KDU50M60VE, there are two types of Insulation pipe covers (medium) for the gas pipe connection. Select the one appropriate for the piping size.)

Also, pass the lead wires of swing motor and thermistor through the clamp section of the top lid and fix it so they are as they were before removing the topside through lid.
In order to prevent dust from entering the indoor unit, block any crevices between the lid and the pipes with putty.

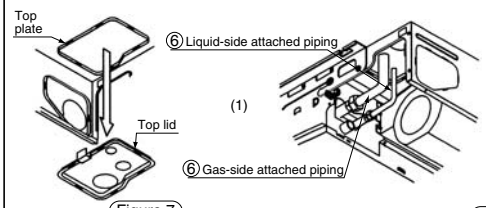


Figure 7

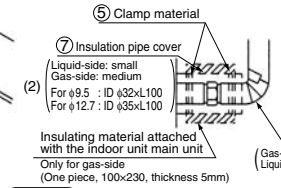


Figure 8

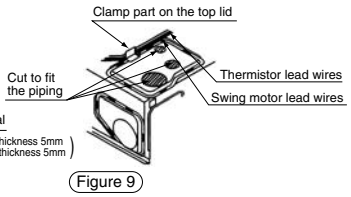


Figure 9

3. Mount the drain up kit to the indoor unit.
(1) Remove the screws from the top of the indoor unit, and insert the attached screws ④ temporarily. Next, temporarily put the screwed clamps on either end of the drain up kit, and tighten the screws. (Figure 10)
Take out the lead wires of drain pump and the float switch from the back of the drain up kit.
Wire the local wiring as shown in (Figure 11).

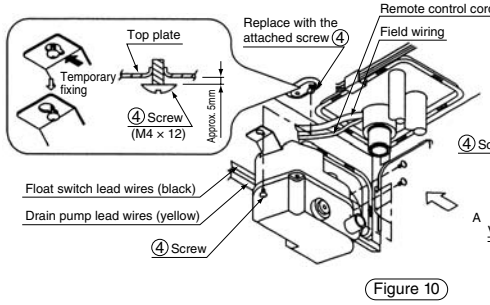


Figure 10

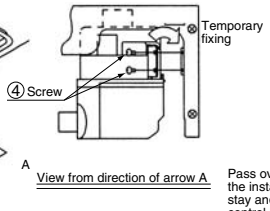


Figure 11

C : 3K012642A

(2) Insert the hose band ③ into the external drain hose, firmly insert the drain hose all the way into the drain socket in the drain up kit, and wrap it firmly with the hose band ③ within the area designated by the black tape on the hose end. (Figure 12)
(3) Put the attached insulating material ⑧-3 to the external drain hose connector, as shown in (Figure 13).
(4) Connect the indoor unit drain socket and the drain up kit drain socket with the attached drain hose ② inserting it all the way in, and wrap it firmly with the hose band ③ within the area designated by the black tape on the hose end. Make sure the hose band connector comes to the top, as in (Figure 15). (Figure 14)
(5) Insulate the drain hose ② fixed by the procedure (4) using the attached insulating material ⑧-2. Wrap the entire surface over the hose band on the drain hose. (Figure 16)

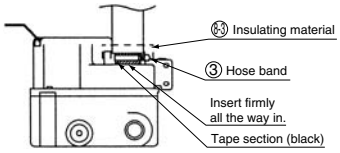


Figure 12

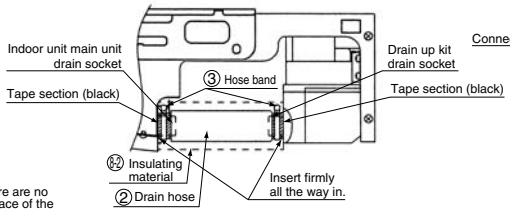


Figure 14

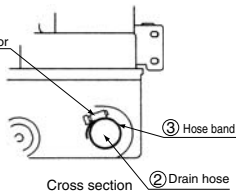


Figure 15

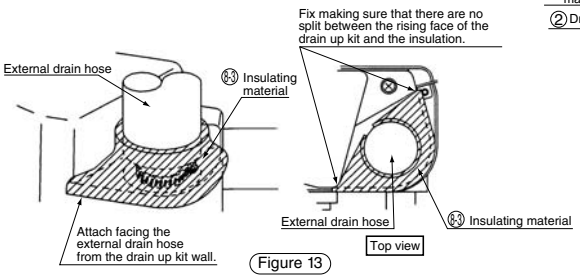


Figure 13

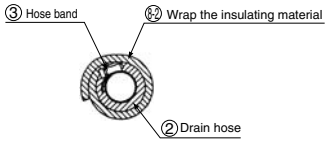


Figure 16

❸ Electrical wiring

· Wire the float switch lead wires (black), coming out of the drain up kit, and the drain pump lead wires (yellow) in the manner described below. (Removing the control box makes wiring work easier.) When doing wiring work, be sure to shut off the power. (Figure 17)

· Refer also to the "Electric Wiring Diagram Plate" when performing wiring work. (It can be found on the control box lid.)
(1) Remove the control box from the indoor unit.
(2) Connect the drain pump lead wires (yellow) to X25A (the white connector) on the indoor unit PC board assembly.
(3) The connector on the PC board assembly to which the float switch lead wires (black) must be connected differs depending on the indoor unit series (Sky Air or VRV Air Conditioner).
(Sky Air) : Remove the short circuit connector connected to X15A (a green connector), and connect the float switch lead wires.
(VRV Air Conditioner) : Remove the short circuit connector connected to X8A (a green connector), and connect the float switch lead wires.
(4) After all the wires are connected, arrange them, pass the float switch lead wire (black) through the clamping material, and secure it together with the drain pump lead wire (yellow) from above the wiring inside the indoor unit using the included clamping material ⑤.
(5) Store and secure any extra lead wire with the included clamping material ⑤, so that the lid is not pushed up.
Attach the control box securely.

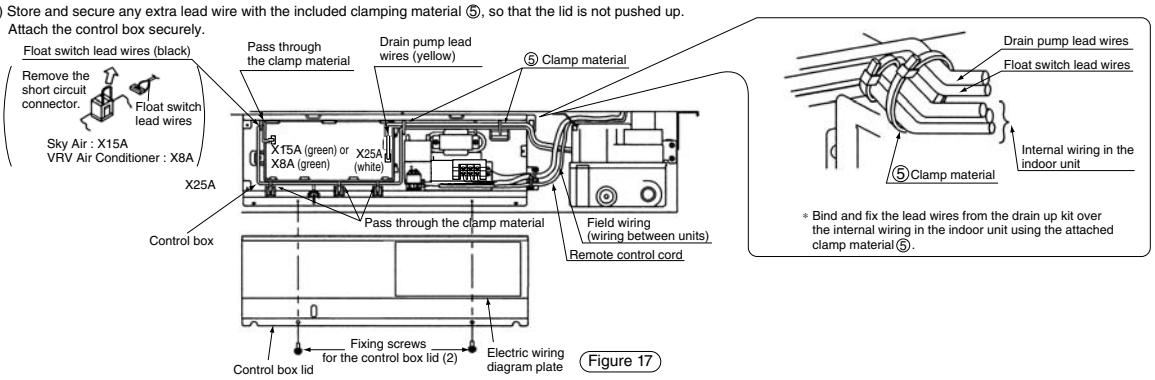


Figure 17

❹ Installing the decorative panels and suction grill

· Refer to the installation manual for the indoor unit and mount the decorative panels and suction grill firmly following the procedure in the opposite way of removing.

C: 3K012643

5 Test Run Procedure

In order to determine the condition of the drainage, slowly pour approximately 1500 ml of water into the unit from the air outlet. Follow the procedure below to check the drainage. (Figure 18)
The test run procedure differs depending on the indoor unit series (Sky Air or VRV Air Conditioner), so follow the appropriate procedure below.

(Sky Air)

If the wiring work is complete

- Check the drainage while operating in cooling mode.

If the wiring work is not complete

- Remove the control box lid, connect a single-phase power supply (50/60Hz 220-240V) to No. 1 and No. 2 (in the power supply terminal block), and then for safety's sake, close the lid before turning the power on. (Figure 19)
- Only the drain pump will run automatically for 10 minutes, so during this time make sure water is draining out.
- Once the drain check is complete, remove the power wires and replace the control box lid as it was.

⚠

- Do not connect anything to No. 3 in the power supply terminal block (the drain pump will not operate.)
- Do not touch the electrical part, emergency switch. The drain check described above can be performed without moving the emergency switch.

(VRV Air Conditioner)

If the wiring work is complete

- Check the drainage while operating in cooling mode.

If the wiring work is not complete

- Remove the control box lid and connect the remote control and the single-phase power source (50/60Hz 220-240V/220V) to the remote control terminal block (P_1, P_2) and the power supply terminal block (L, N).
- Next, switch the unit to test run mode from the remote control, press the mode switch button to select "fan", and then press the start/stop button to start the indoor fan and the drain pump. Check the drainage.
- Take precaution, because the fan will operate as well.

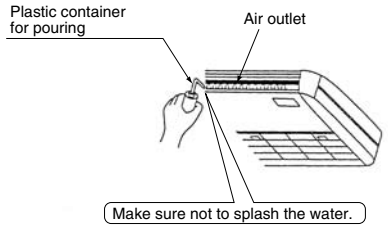


Figure 18

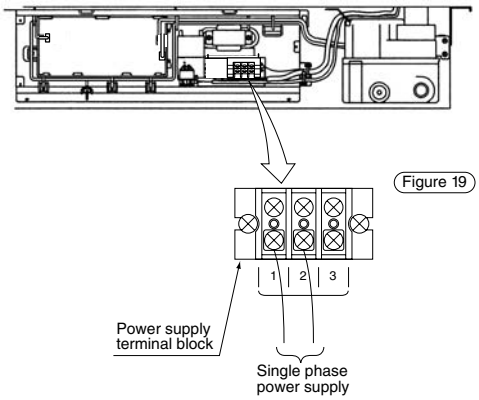


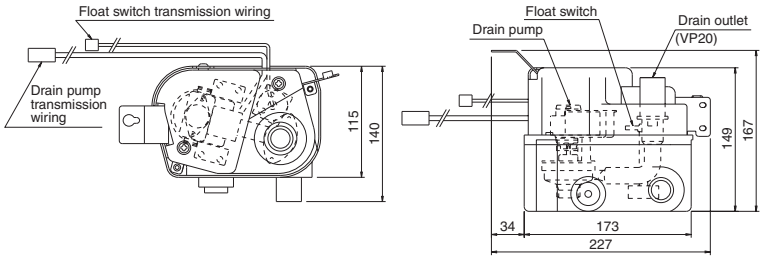
Figure 19

C: 3K012643

9.3 KDU50B50·71·125VE — Drain Pump Kit



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



C: D3K3138A

Specifications

Items \ Model		KDU50B50VE	KDU50B71VE	KDU50B125VE
Drain-up Lift (mm)		600		
Drain Con. Diameter		VP20 (Ex. dia. ϕ26, Int. dia. ϕ20)		
Pump	Power Supply	Single phase 220-240V/220V 50/60Hz (from Indoor Unit PC Board)		
	Power Consumption (W)	13.5/12 (50/60Hz)		
Applicable Models		32 Class	63 Class	100 Class

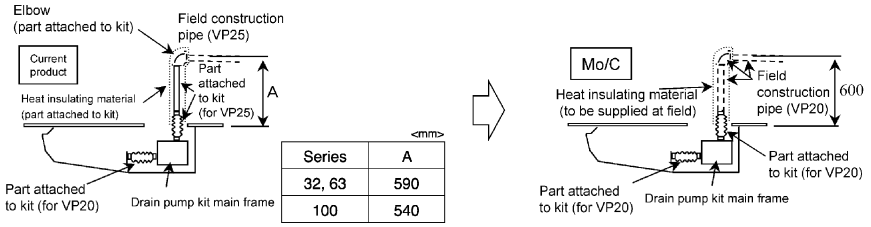
Precaution at use

1. Don't turn off the power within 5 minutes after cooling operation stops.
2. The liquid crystal display blinks to inform us that safety device actuated.
3. When cooling operation's season is over, extract drain water.

Installation guide of the drain pump kit

<Changes in drain pump kit>

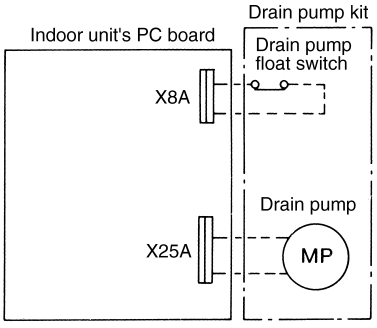
- Exit drain pipe has been changed from VP25 to VP20 (to meet the drain diameter of main frame).
- Attached drain pipe (450 mm chloride vinyl straight pipe bellow, elbow) -> only bellow hose for VP20
- All units of drain up height was unified to 600mm (From the bottom of the ceiling)



<mm>

Series	A
32, 63	590
100	540

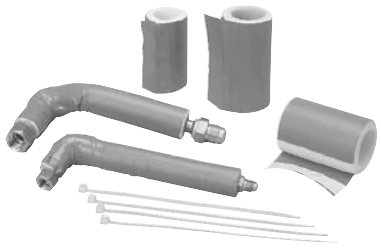
Wiring diagram



Remove the X8A short circuit connector when the float switch will be connected.

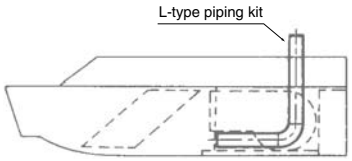
9.4 KHFP5MA63·160 — L-type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)

KHFP5MA35



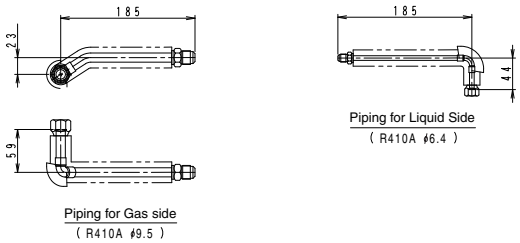
When you install the refrigerant piping in the ceiling, the piping is required to be bent L-type in the unit as shown on the right. This L-type piping kit is developed to facilitate such installation.

Installation

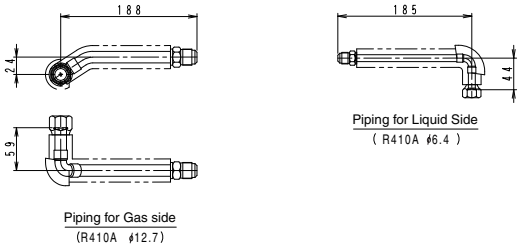


Dimensions **Unit:mm**

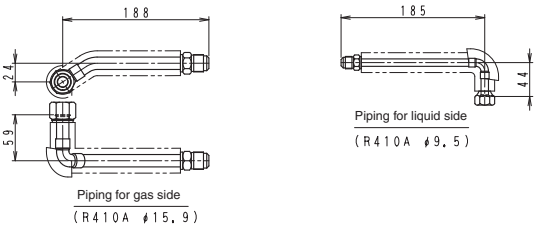
KHFP5MA35



KHFP5MA63



KHFP5MA160

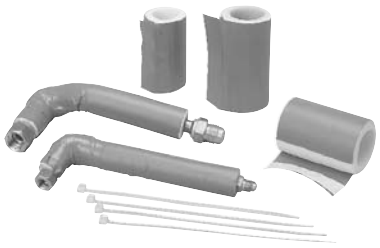


J : D3K03612B

Item \ Model	KHFP5MA35	KHFP5MA63	KHFP5MA160
Accessories	Installation for fitting : 1 set Clamp material : 4 pieces		

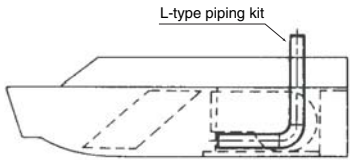
9.5 KHFJ5F50·80·160 — L-Type Piping Kit (for Upward Direction)

KHFJ5F50



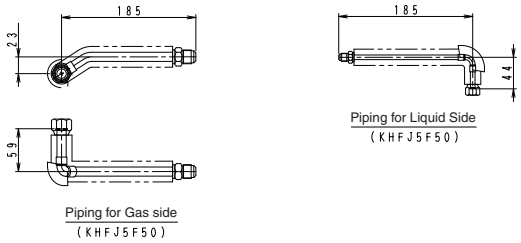
When you install the refrigerant piping in the ceiling, the piping is required to be bent L-type in the unit as shown on the right. This L-type piping kit is developed to facilitate such installation.

Installation

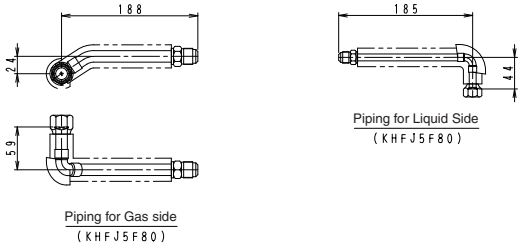


Dimensions **Unit:mm**

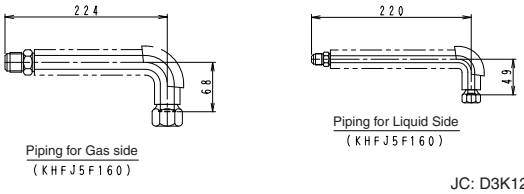
KHFJ5F50



KHFJ5F80



KHFJ5F160



JC: D3K1267

10. FXA (Q)

10.1 K-KDU572EVE (Supplying goods to order) — Drain Pump Kit

Operating sound as small as 25dB



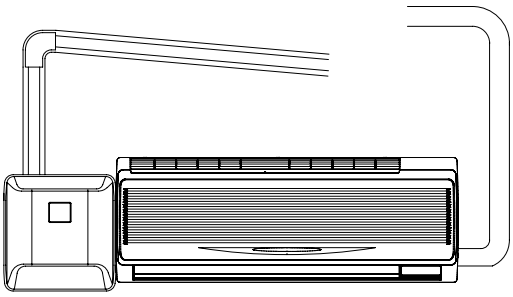
Features

1. Silent operation with no sign of pump operation
2. Design matching with wall mounted type air conditioner
3. Can be interlocked with air conditioner.

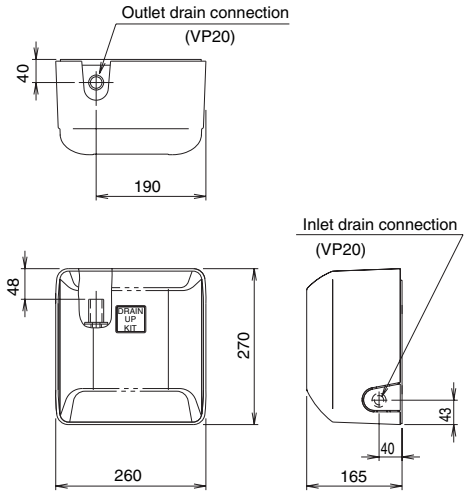
Usage

- **Home, office, and store**
- **Optimum for redesign**

Caution :
- Drain pump kit is only for the air conditioner. Please use it for the drain treatment of the air conditioner.
- Be sure to lay the piping inclined down after drain-up, which is different from drain pump.
- Please do not use it in the place where soot such as kitchens is shrouded and the place where an organic solvent drifts.



Dimensions Unit : mm

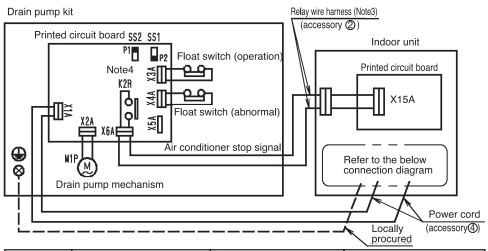


Specification

	K-KDU572EVE
Drain pump head (mm) (Note 1)	1,000
Power supply	Single phase 220-240/220V, 50/60Hz
Power consumption	14.1/12.9 (W)
Operating current	0.18/0.16 (A)
Insulation	Class E
Drain inlet connection pipe diameter	VP20 (Note 2)
Drain exit connection pipe diameter	VP20
Safety device	Float switch
Operating sound (dB)	25
Machine weight (Mass)(kg)	3.2
Drain exhaust flow rate (mℓ/min)	400

Note : 1. Height from bottom of drain pump kit up to the drain pipe.
2. Connect to the VP13 using the soft reducing socket.

Wiring Diagram



Application model	FAY71LVE FAYP71LV1	FXA20·25·32LVE(C) FXA40·50·63LVE FXAQ20·25·32M(A)VE FXAQ40·50·63M(A)VE	FAQ71BUV1B FAQ71BVV1B
Connection diagram	⏚ 1 2 3 X2M Tes2	⏚ L N X2M	⏚ 1 2 3 X2M

The earth wire (copper) should be at least 2.0mm² or ϕ1.6mm.
When the relay wire harness is connected, remove the X15A short-circuit connector.

Note : 1. Don't forget to turn on the power. If it is not turned on, the air conditioner will perform an error stop and operation will not be possible.
2. Make sure that slide switch SS1 on the drain pump kit printed circuit board assembly is set to P2 and slide switch SS2 is set to P1.
3. The relay wire harness cannot be extended.
4. Turning on the power will close the K2R connector, making is a non-volt B connector.

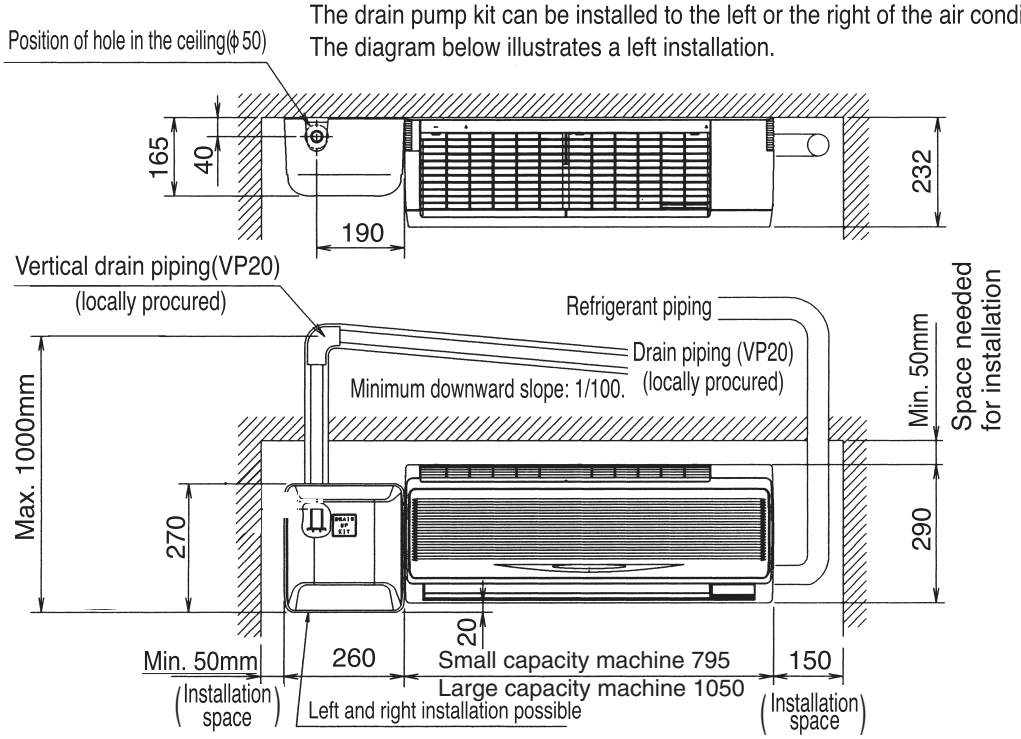
Component Parts

Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity	Name	Shape	Quantity
Drain Pump Kit	①	1	Insulation	⑦ 50X300Xt10	1	Rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (Note3)	⑬ VP13 365	1
Relay wire harness	② (Green) (Red)	1	Clamp	⑧	2	Soft drain pipe	⑭ VP20 200	1
Connecting harness	③ (White)	1	Clamp	⑨	1	Screw washer	⑮ (White)	1
Power cord	④ (Blue)	1	Soft reducing socket	⑩ VP13	1	Screw	⑯ M5X35	5
Insulation pipe cover	⑤	1	Drain hose	⑪ 150	1	Clamp material	⑰	4
Insulation	⑥ 90X300Xt2	1	Rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe joint	⑫ VP13 57	1	Paper pattern for Installation	⑱	1
						Installation manual	⑲	1

Note 3: This pipe must be procured locally for the large capacity machine.

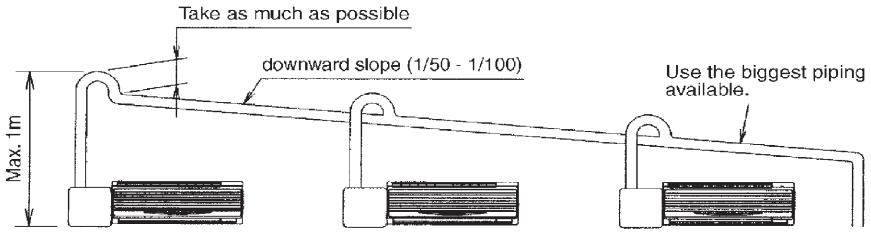
External drawing of drain pump kit and Service space

The drain pump kit can be installed to the left or the right of the air conditioner.
The diagram below illustrates a left installation.



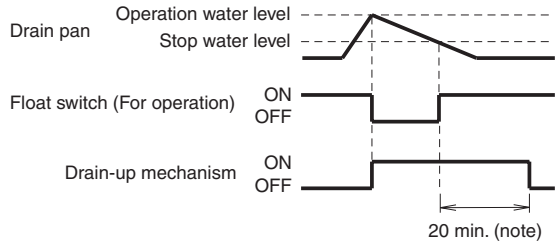
When using centralized piping

- Follow the figure below to make sure there is absolutely no back-up when using centralized piping.

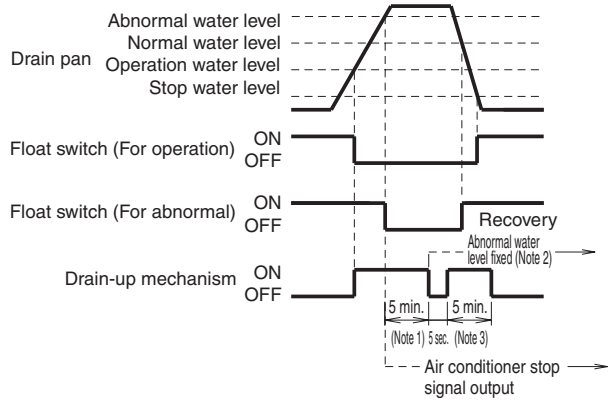


Description of operation

1: Operation at normal water level (Air conditioner operates when water level is at operation level, and when water level is at stop level, residual operation is performed.)



2: Operation at abnormal water level
(When water level is abnormal, the air conditioner stops. When abnormal water level is kept five minutes or longer, abnormal water level is established, and residual operation is performed.)



Note 1) When the float switch (for abnormal water level) is reset within five minutes, the air conditioner operates again with “normal water level”.
Note 2) When abnormal water level is fixed, power must be turned on again for operating again.
Note 3) When the cycle of operation 5 minutes - stop 5 seconds - operation 5 minutes is finished, if the float switch (for abnormal water level) is not reset, keep operation of drain pump until the switch is reset.

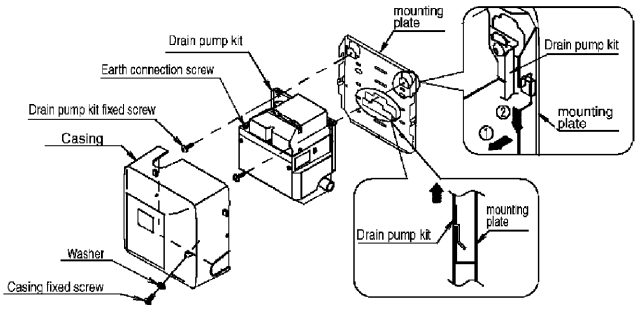
1 Pre-installation preparations

● See the indoor unit's installation manual for indoor unit work.

Drain pump kit preparations

● Remove the casing and the drain pump kit from the mounting plate.

1. Remove the casing fixed screw and pull the casing down and forward.
2. Remove 2 Screws of the drain pump kit and lift the drain pump kit out.



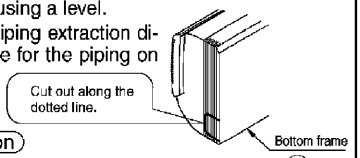
2 Indoor unit preparations

● Make sure the indoor unit is installed first.

1.Attaching of the indoor unit mounting plate
After installing the mounting plate following the directions in the indoor unit, make sure it is plainness using a level.

2.Decide the left and the right piping extraction direction and cut off the exit hole for the piping on the bottom frame by the cutter etc.

3.Connecting the drain hose

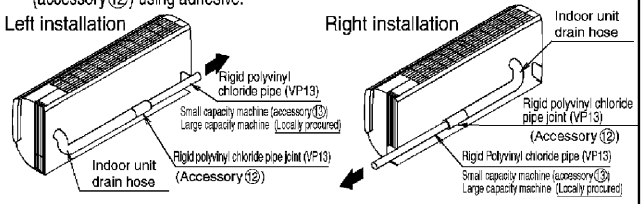


In the case of a left installation

1. Connect the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe joint (accessory ⑫) to the indoor unit drain hose using adhesive.
2. Connect the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (accessory ⑬ for small capacity machine. Local procurement for the large capacity) to the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe joint (accessory ⑫) using adhesive.

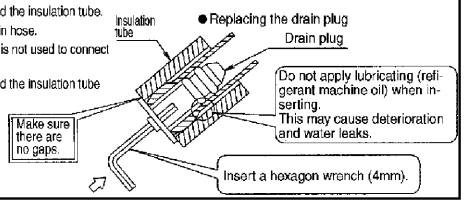
In the case of a right installation

1. Remove the drain hose connected to the indoor unit and replace with a drain plug and insulation tube.
2. The drain hose removed from the indoor unit is attached to left side.
3. Connect the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe joint (accessory ⑫) to the indoor unit drain hose using adhesive.
4. Connect the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (accessory ⑬ for small capacity machine. Local procurement for the large capacity) to the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe joint (accessory ⑫) using adhesive.



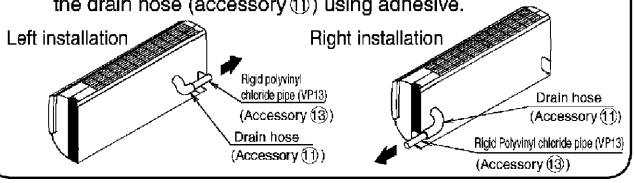
Replacing the drain plug

① Remove the drain plug and the insulation tube.
② Remove the standard drain hose.
(The standard drain hose is not used to connect the drain pump kit.)
③ Replace the drain plug and the insulation tube onto the right side.



When using the drain hose (accessory ⑪)

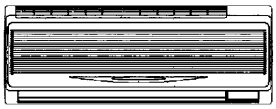
① Remove the indoor unit drain hose and attach the drain hose (accessory ⑪).
② Connect the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (accessory ⑬) to the drain hose (accessory ⑪) using adhesive.



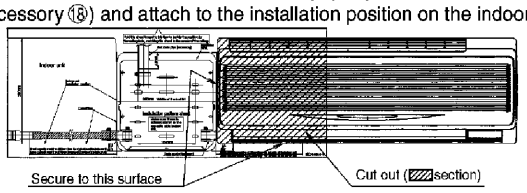
3K019617

③ Installing the mounting plate

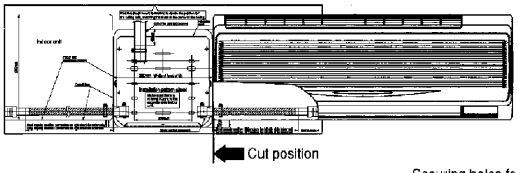
1. Install the indoor unit.



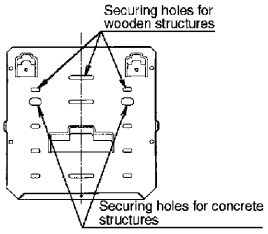
2. Cut out the indoor unit section from the paper pattern for installation (accessory ⑱) and attach to the installation position on the indoor unit.



3. Cut the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (accessory ⑬) attached to the indoor unit to the length indicated on the paper pattern for installation.

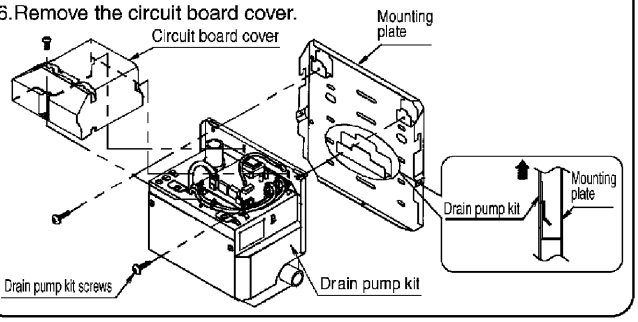


4. Determine the position to secure the mounting plate for the drain pump kit by matching to the paper pattern for installation. Remove the paper pattern for install once this is done.
   - If using screws (accessory ⑯), fix it at least 4 positions.
   - For concrete, attach it using commercially available anchors (M8) and bolts.



5. Attach the drain pump kit to the mounting plate and squeeze in the fixed screws.

6. Remove the circuit board cover.



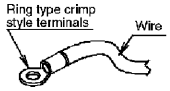
④ Attaching the relay wire harness, the connection harness, and the power cord.

Caution Only connect after shutting off the power.

< Precautions when laying power and earth wiring >

Use ring type crimp style terminals for connections to the inter-unit wiring terminal block and the earth wiring. When none are available, follow the instructions below.

- Do not connect wiring of different thicknesses to the inter-unit wiring terminal block. (Looseness in the terminal may cause abnormal heat.)
- For wiring, use the designated power wire and connect firmly, then secure to prevent outside pressure being exerted on the terminal board.
- Use an appropriate screwdriver for tightening the terminal screws. A screwdriver with a small head will strip the head and make proper tightening impossible.
- Over-tightening the terminal screws may break them.
- See the table at right for tightening torque for the terminal screws.

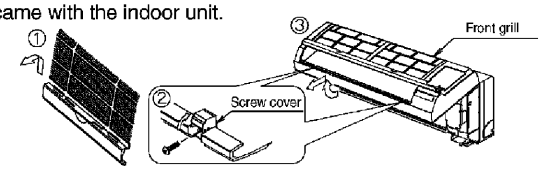


Tightening torque(N·m)	
Inter-unit wiring terminal block	1.18 ~ 1.44
earth terminal	1.44 ~ 1.94

For the FXYA71LV, FAYP71LV1, FXA20·25·32LVE(C)
FXYA40·50·63LVE, FXAQ20·25·32·40·50·63M(A)VE

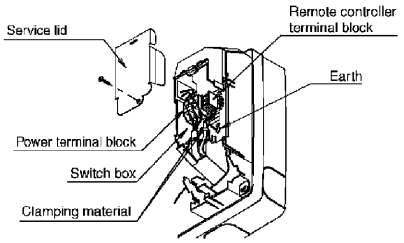
- Connect the relay wire harness (accessory ②) and the power cord (accessory ④) to the indoor unit.

1. Remove the front grill according to the instruction manual that came with the indoor unit.

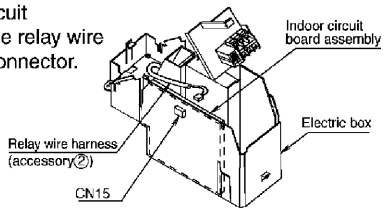


C: 3K019617

2. Remove the service lid.

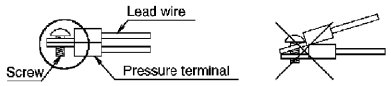


3. Remove the indoor circuit board assembly CN15 short-circuit connector and connect the relay wire harness (accessory②) connector.

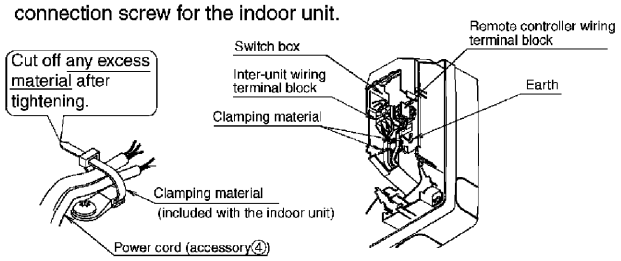


4. Connect the power cord (accessory④) to the indoor unit inter-unit wiring terminal block.

- When connecting the terminal to the inter-unit wiring terminal block, make sure it is attached properly, as shown below.
  If the pressure terminals are mistakenly attached in the same direction, the surface of the terminal that is touching will be reduced, causing heat and perhaps burn damage.



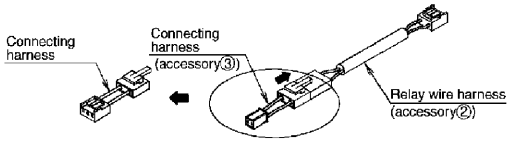
5. Connect the earth wire (locally procured-copper wire at least 2mm²) between the unit and the drain up kit with the earth connection screw for the indoor unit.



For the FAQ71BUV1B, FAQ71BVV1B

- Connect the relay wire harness (accessory②), the connecting harness (accessory③) , and the power cord (accessory④) to the indoor unit.

1. Remove the connecting harness on the relay wire harness (accessory②) and connect the included connecting harness (accessory③).



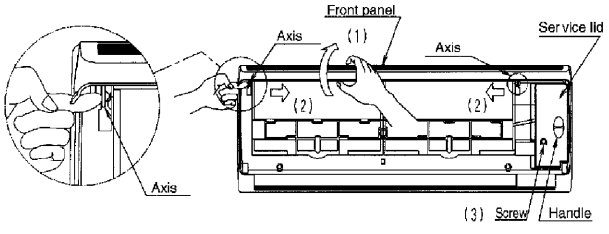
2.How to remove a front panel and the service lid according to the indoor unit installation manual.

[Removing the front panel and service lid]

(1)Open the front panel as far as it stops.

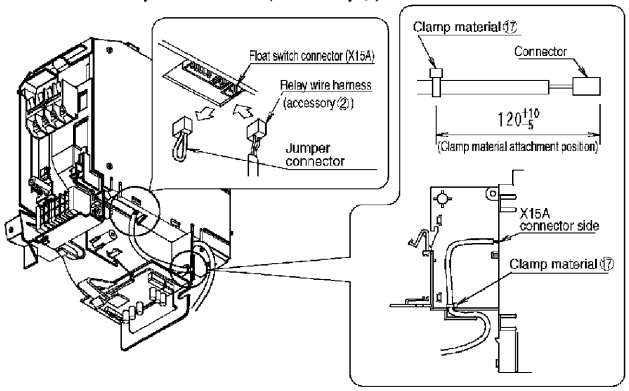
(2)Push the axes on either side of the front panel towards the center of the main unit and remove.
(You can also remove it by sliding the front panel either to the left or right and pulling it forward.)

(3)Remove the screws from the service lid and pull the handle forward.



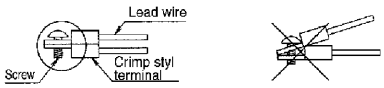
C: 3K019617

3.Remove the indoor unit printed circuit board X15A Jumper connector and connect the relay wire harness (accessory②) connector.

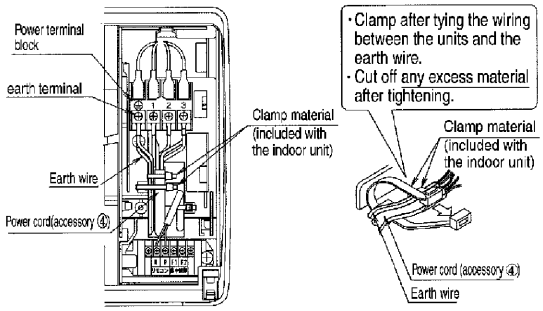


4.Connect the power cord (accessory ④) to the indoor unit inter-unit wiring terminal block.

● When connecting the terminal to the inter-unit wiring terminal block, make sure it is attached properly, as shown below. If the crimp styl terminals are mistakenly attached in the same direction, the surface of the terminal that is touching will be reduced, causing heat and perhaps burn damage.

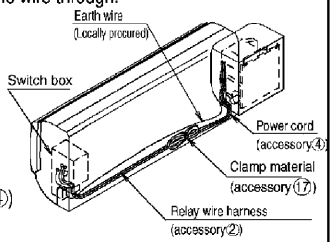


5.Connect the earth wire (locally procured - copper wire at least 2mm²) between the indoor unit and the drain pump kit with the ground connection screw for the indoor unit.
Be sure to perform earthing. Make sure the earthing resistance is below 100 ohms.

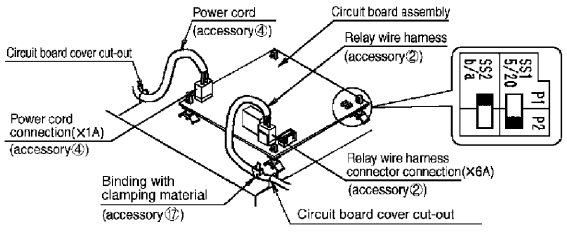


⑤ Passing the wire through

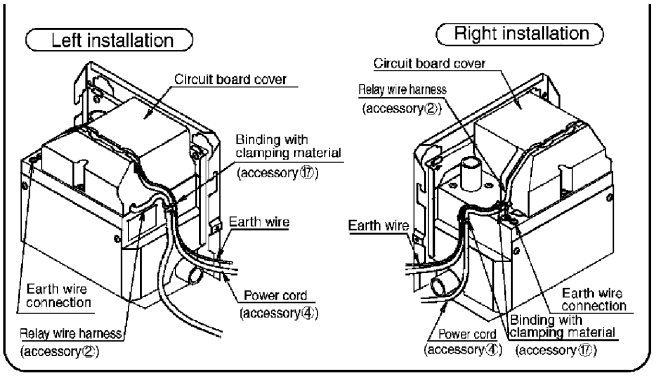
1.See the figure below for how to pass the wire through.
The relay wire harness, power cord and earth wire should be matched to the space inside the indoor unit.



2. Connect the relay wire harness (accessory ②) to the drain pump kit circuit board assembly connector (X6A).
3. Connect the power cord (accessory ④) to the drain pump kit circuit board assembly connector (X1A).
4. Secure the earth wire (locally procured-copper wire at least 2mm²) to the drain pump kit using the earth connection screw.
5. Tighten the relay wire harness (accessory ②) using the clamping material.
6. Make sure that slide switch SS1 on the drain pump kit printed circuit board is set to P2 and slide switch SS2 is set to P1.
7. Attach the circuit board cover.
8. Tighten the relay wire harness (accessory ②), power cord (accessory④), and earth wire (locally procured) using the clamping material.
9. Bundle excess relay wire harness (accessory ②) using the clamping material (accessory⑰) and store away.
10. Connect the earth wire.

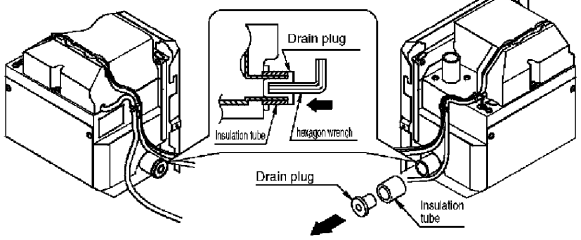


3K019618

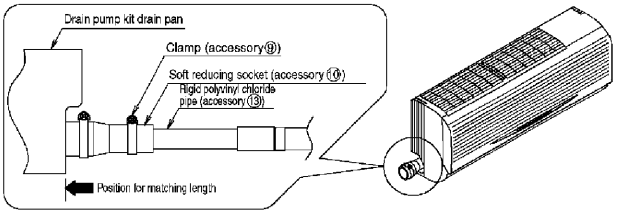


⑥ Installing the drain pump kit and drain piping.

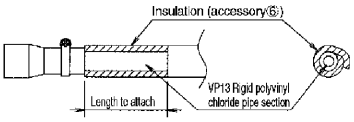
1. When installing the drain pump kit to the right, transfer the drain plug and the insulating tubing from the left to the right.
   - When performing a left installation, there is no need to transfer these items.



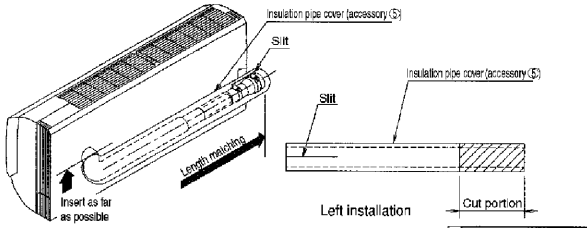
2. Insert the clamp (accessory ⑨) and the soft reducing socket (accessory ⑩) into the indoor unit the rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (accessory ⑬), then match the position and tighten up the clamp to match the length of the drain pump kit drain pan socket.



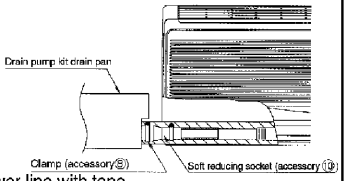
3. Matching the dimensions of the area required, cut the right length of insulation (accessory ⑥) for the drain hose rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe section and attach.



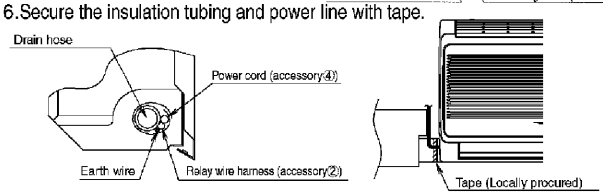
4. Insert the insulation pipe cover (accessory ⑤) as far into the drain hose as it can go.
   - There is a slit in one side of the insulation pipe cover. Position the slit side to the drain pump kit.
   - Cut the insulation pipe cover to match the length of the drain hose.



5. Insert the clamp (accessory ⑧) and the soft reducing socket (accessory ⑩) into the drain pump kit drain socket and tighten it.



6. Secure the insulation tubing and power line with tape.

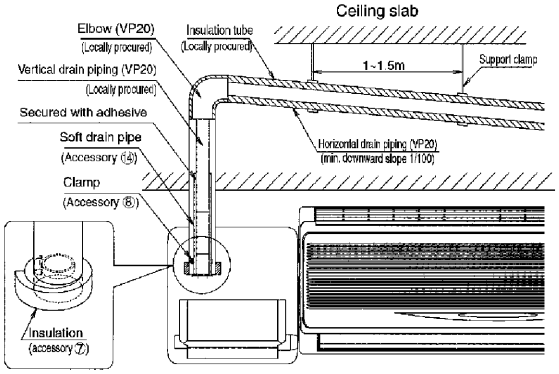


3K019618

7.Connect the exit pipe.

- Be sure to use adhesive to connect the soft drain pipe (accessory ⑭) and the ceiling-side locally-procured the drain pipe.
- Connections on the drain pump kit should be secured with a clamp (accessory ⑧) and wrapped with insulation (accessory ⑦).

⚠Caution
- Exit piping parts must be procured locally.
- Be sure to insulate the drain piping.
- Give the horizontal sections on the drain piping a downward slope of at least 1/100 and make sure no air bubbles accumulate.
- Secure long horizontal sections with support clamps to prevent them from shaking.



7 Test run

- Make sure the pump is running and water is draining.
- Make sure there are no leaks from the drain pipes when drainging.

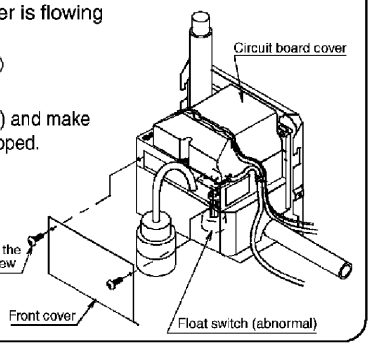
⚠Caution
- Before the work confirm the power off.
- After replacing the circuit board cover to its original location, turn on the power.

1. Remove the front cover on the drain pump kit and fill the drain pan halfway with water.
2. Turn on the power and make sure that the drain pump is working properly and the drain water is flowing smoothly.

Abnormal-stop confirmation

1. Turn on the air conditioner.
2. Lift the float switch (abnormal) and make sure the air conditioner is stopped.

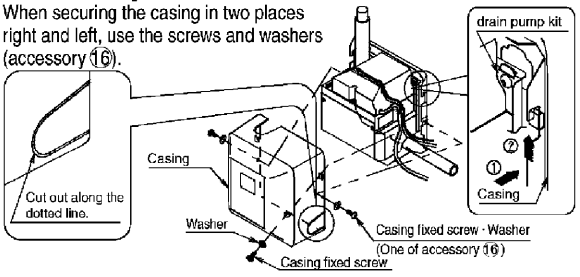
⚠Caution Do not get the drain pump mechanism



- After checking, replace the front cover.
- Rebuild the indoor unit as it was.

8 Attaching the casing

- Cut out the piping exit hole from the casing.
- Secure the casing with the installation screws and washers as described below.
- When securing the casing in two places right and left, use the screws and washers (accessory ⑯).



3K019618

9 Checks after completion

You should re-check the following after completion of work.

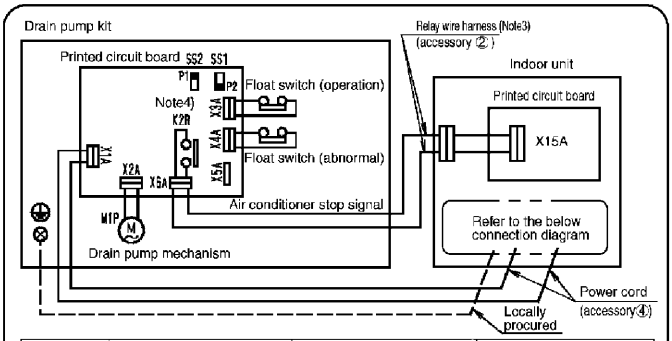
Items to be checked	Check column
Are the indoor unit and drain pomp kit level?	
Is the drain piping properly connected? Is there any possibility of developing water leaks?	
Is the drain piping run on a downhill grade?(1/50~1/100)	
Is the drain hose properly insulated?	
Is the equipment wired correctly?	

After test running the air conditioner, use the operating in cooling and check the operating sound of the drain pump kit.

10 Cautions during operation

- The pump repeats an operation stop with the float switch for operation during airconditioning operation.
- After cooling is stopped, the residual water will be drained out, so do not turn off the power immediately.
- Wait at least 5 minutes after the unit has stopped before turning off the power. When not turning off a power supply, a remains operation about 20 minutes back drain pump stops. When a safe circuit operates, operation of an air conditioner is stopped.
- During air conditioning operation, when water leaks from the inside of an are conditioner or a drain pump kit, please stop operation immediately.
- Since the drain exit is choked up or there is possibility that the safe circuit may not operate normally, please inform the store of purchase.

Electric wiring



Application model	FAY71LVE FAYP71LV1	FXA20·25·32LVE(C) FXA40·50·63LVE FXAQ20·25·32M(A)VE FXAQ40·50·63M(A)VE	FAQ71BUV1B FAQ71BVV1B
Connection diagram	X2M ⏚ 1 2 3 Tes2	X2M ⏚ L N	X2M ⏚ 1 2 3

The earth wire (copper) should be at least 2.0mm² or ϕ 1.6mm.
When the relay wire harness is connected, remove the X15A short-circuit connector.

Note1: Don't forget to turn on the power. If it is not turned on, the air conditioner will perform an error stop and operation will not be possible.
Note2: Make sure that slide switch SS1 on the drain pump kit printed circuit board assembly is set to P2 and slide switch SS2 is set to P1.
Note3: The relay wire harness cannot be extended.
Note4: Turning on the power will close the K2R connector, making is a non-volt B connector.

C: 3K019618

11. FXL (Q) / FXN (Q)

11.1 KAFJ361K28·45·71 — Long Life Replacement Filter

KAFJ361K28

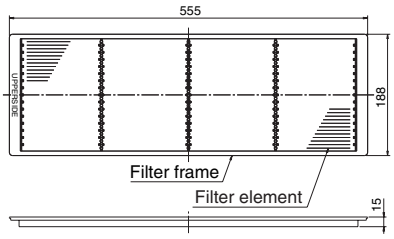


• Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

Item \ Model	KAFJ361K28	KAFJ361K45	KAFJ361K71
Applied Models	20 · 25 Class	32 · 40 Class	50 · 63 Class
Average efficiency (%)	50 (Gravity method)		
Initial pressure loss (Pa)	9.8 or less		
Final pressure loss (Pa)	29.4		
Life (h)	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)		
Filter element	Mildew-proof resin net		
Number of sheets included	1		
Mass (kg)	0.1	0.2	0.3

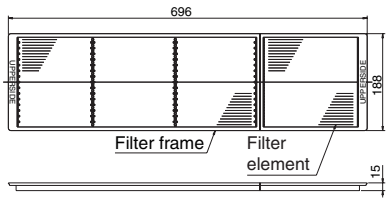
Dimensions **Unit:mm**

KAFJ361K28



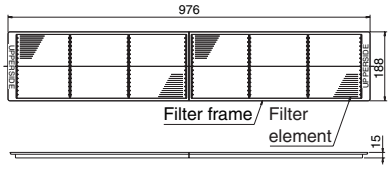
D3K2326

KAFJ361K45



D3K2327

KAFJ361K71



D3K2328

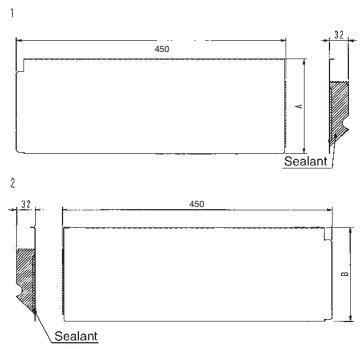
12. FXUQ

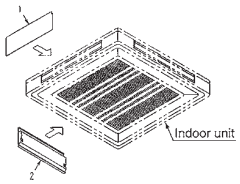
12.1 KDBT49FA80·140 — Decoration Panel for Air Discharge

KDBT49FA80



Dimensions **Unit:mm**





Model	A	B
KDBT49FA80	100	100
KDBT49FA140	155	155

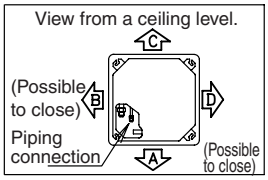
JC: D3K2099D

Item \ Model	KDBT49FA80	KDBT49FA140
Material	Galvanized sheet iron (with flocking)	
Accessories	Installation manual	

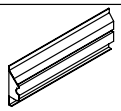
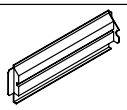
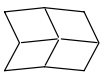
Installation

Note

- This kit can be attached to the new ceiling suspended cassette type.
- Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit body as well as this instruction for the installation.
- This kit can be attached to the air outlet A and B. (Refer to the figure on the right concerning the outlet's name)



Contents of Kit Make sure this kit contains the following parts.

Name	Air outlet sealing decoration plate		Installation manual
	For the air outlet A	For the air outlet B	
Shape			
Quantity	1 set	1 set	1 sheet

1 Attachment onto the indoor unit

Be sure to attach it in the state that the corner cover has been removed, before the installation of the main unit.

- Remove the horizontal blade and the upper decoration plate from the air outlet A and B on the main unit. Fig.1-1
- Attach the sealing decoration plate. Fig. 1-2

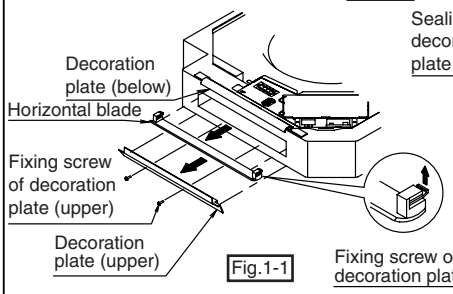
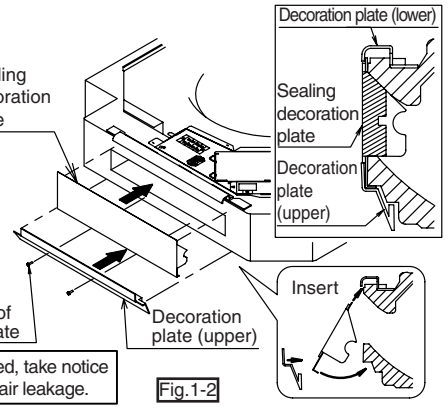


Fig.1-1



Unless the sealing materials are attached as indicated, take notice that it may cause the dew formation and the suction air leakage.

Fig.1-2

2 Field setting by the remote controller

- The field setting is required for the two-way or three way discharge, when this kit is attached. Refer to " Gist of Field Setting" attached in the remote controller for the setting procedure and the operation, and then switch over the setting position number as follows.

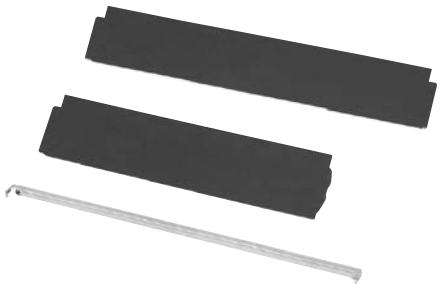
Settings	Mode No.	First code No.	Second code No.
3-way discharge	13(23)	1	02
2-way discharge			03

The second code No. was set to "01" for 4-way discharge at the delivery.

J : 3P003070A

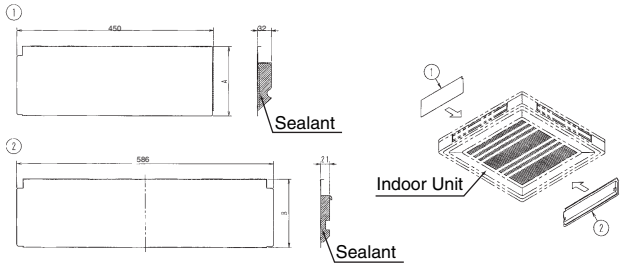
12.2 KDBH49FA80·140 — Sealing Member of Air Discharge Outlet

KDBH49FA80



Dimensions **Unit:mm**

Model	A	B
KDBH49FA80	100	100
KDBH49FA140	155	155

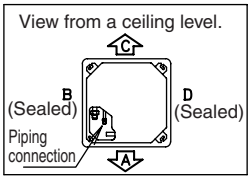


Item \ Model	KDBH49FA80	KDBH49FA140
Material	Garivanized steel iron (with flocking)	
Accessories	Connecting plate: 1 Mounting clasp: 1 Mounting screw: 1 Installailon Manual	

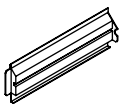
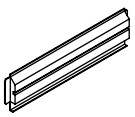
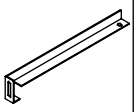
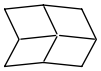
Installation

Note

- This kit can be attached to the new ceiling suspended cassette type.
- Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit body as well as this instruction for the installation.
- This kit is for sealing the air outlets of B and D. Do not attach it to the outlet of A and C. (The figure on the right shows the pattern of air outlet after the kits have been attached.)



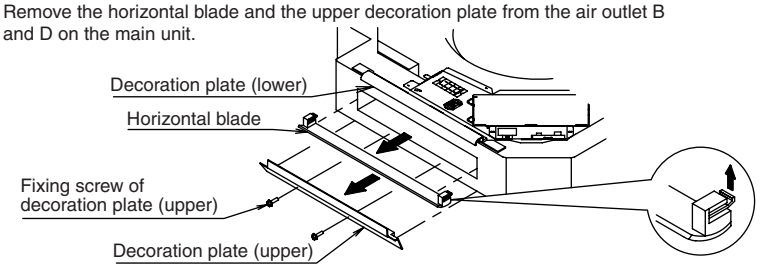
Contents of Kit Make sure this kit contains the following parts.

Name	Sealing decoration plate		Connecting plate	Fixing metal	Screw	Installation manual
Shape	 For the air outlet B (Short)	 For the air outlet D (Long)			 M4 × 8	
Quantity	1 set	1 set	1 piece	1 set	1 set	1 sheet

1 Preparation for installation

Before the installation of the main unit, be sure to attach it in the state that the corner cover has been removed.

- Remove the horizontal blade and the upper decoration plate from the air outlet B and D on the main unit.



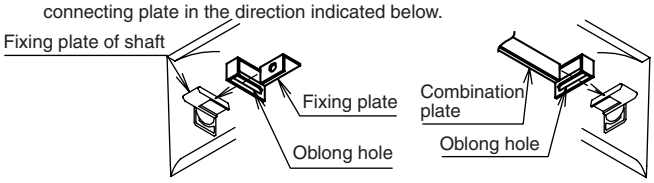
JC : 3P003049C

2 Attachment onto the indoor unit

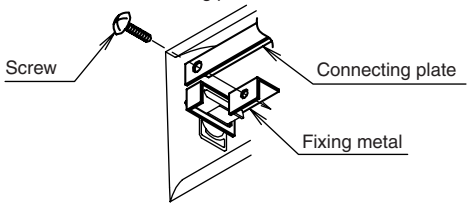
● Attach the connecting plate to the air outlet D.

Take notice for the fact that the auto-swing of the horizontal blade on the A will not work when this kit is attached to the air outlet B.

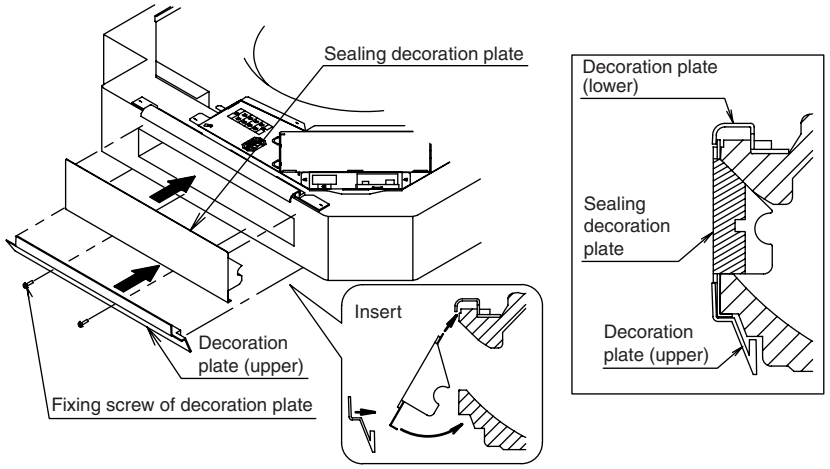
(1)Pass the fixed plate of the shaft through the oblong holes on the fixed metal and the connecting plate in the direction indicated below.



(2)Fix the fixing metal and the connecting plate with the screw in the accessories.



● Attach the sealing decoration plate to the air outlet B and D, and then attach the decoration plate (upper)



Unless the sealing materials are attached as indicated, take notice that it may cause the dew formation and the suction air leakage.

3 Field setting by the remote controller

● The field setting is required for the two-way discharge when this kit is attached.
Refer to " Gist of Field Setting" attached in the remote controller for the setting procedure and the operation, and then switch over the setting position number as follows.

Attaching KDBH49FA80

Mode No.	First Code No.	Second Code No.
13(23)	1	03
	5	03

Attaching KDBH49FA140

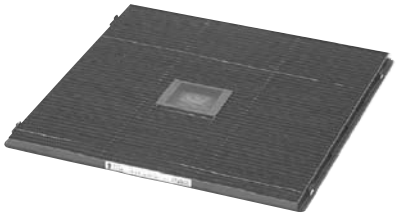
Mode No.	First Code No.	Second Code No.
13(23)	1	03

The second code No. was set to "01" for 4-way discharge at the delivery.

Make sure the auto-swing action if it moves smoothly after the field setting.

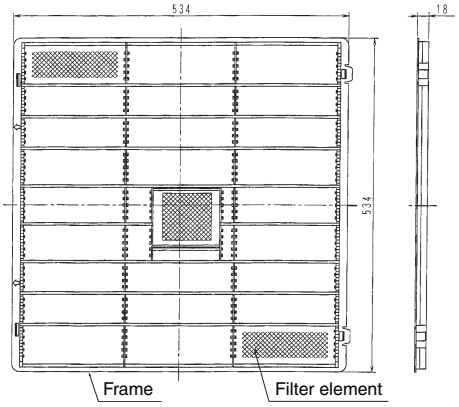
JC : 3P003049C

12.3 KAF495FA140 — Replacement Long Life Filter



• Can be water-washed. Can be reused.

Dimensions **Unit:mm**

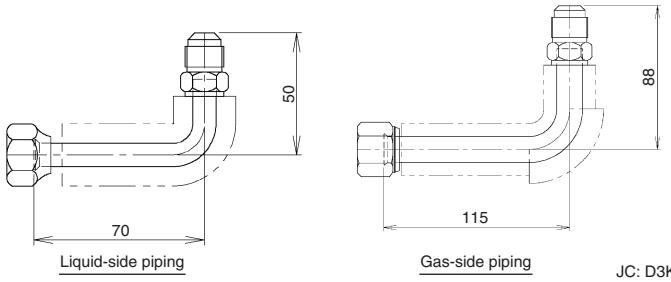


J: D3K2101C

Item \ Model	KAF495FA140
Conditions for use	Atmospheric temperature (0-60°C) Relative humidity (40-95%)
Initial pressure loss (Pa)	7 or less
Final pressure loss (Pa)	49 or less
Average efficiency (%)	50 (Gravity method)
Life (h)	2,500 (dust concentration 0.15 mg/m^3)
Fan strength passing through filter	18.5m^3 / min
Filter element	Mildew-proof resin net
Required number of sheets	1
Mass (kg)	0.4

12.4 KHFP49MA140 — L Connection Piping Kit

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



JC: D3K03614A

Item \ Model		KHFP49MA140
Connection piping diameter	Liquid side	ϕ9.5
	Gas side	ϕ15.9
Accessories		Insulation. Binding band.

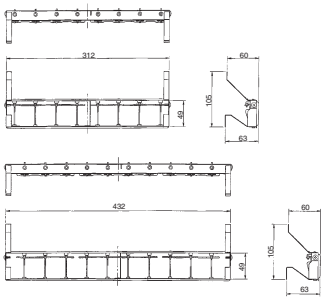
12.5 KDGJ49FA80·140 — Vertical Flap Kit

KDGJ49FA80

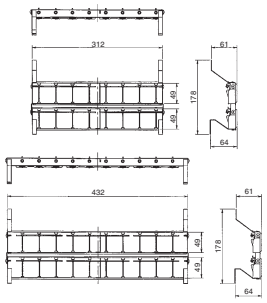


Dimensions **Unit:mm**

KDGJ49FA80



KDGJ49FA140



J: D3K2097B
J: D3K2098B

Item \ Model	KDGJ49FA80	KDGJ49FA140
Material	Blade fixing plate: Galvanized steel Iron Blade: polypropylene	
Number in box	4(2×2 each)	
Accessories	Installation manual	

Installation

Note

- This kit can be attached to the new ceiling suspended cassette type.
- Refer to the installation manual of the indoor unit body as well as this instruction for the installation.

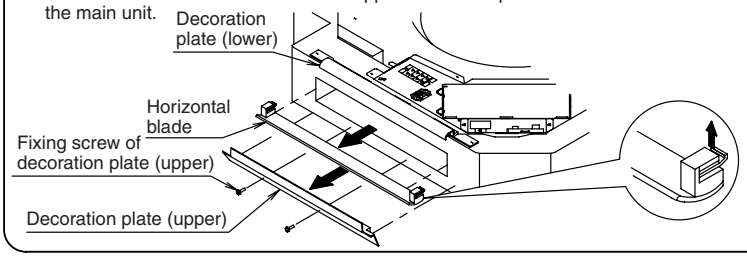
Contents of Kit Make sure this kit contains the following parts.

Name		Vertical blade assembly (Long)		Vertical blade assembly (Short)		Installation manual
Shape		One stage	Two stage	One stage	Two stage	
Quantity	KDGJ 49FA80	2 sets	———	2 sets	———	1 sheet
	KDGJ 49FA140	———	2 sets	———	2 sets	1 sheet

1 Preparation for installation

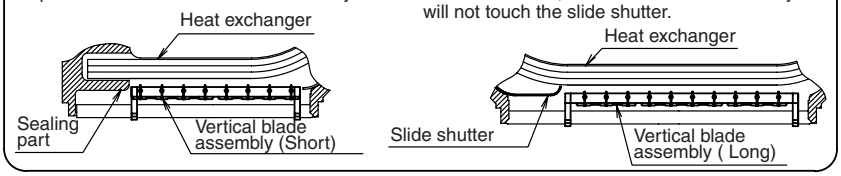
Before the installation of the main unit, be sure to attach it in the state that the corner cover has been removed, before the installation of the main unit.

- Remove the horizontal blade and the upper decoration plate from the air outlet A and B on the main unit.



2 Attachment onto the indoor unit

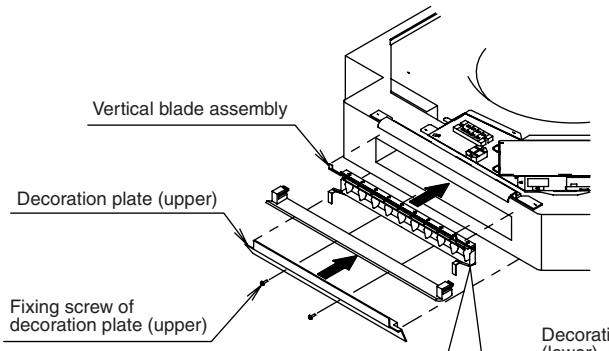
- Caution for the position to attach.
  - Short air outlet
    Attach the kit so as not to touch the sealing part of the air outlet with the kit's body.
  - Long air outlet
    In case of using it in a condition that the slide shutter is closed, attach it so that the kit body will not touch the slide shutter.

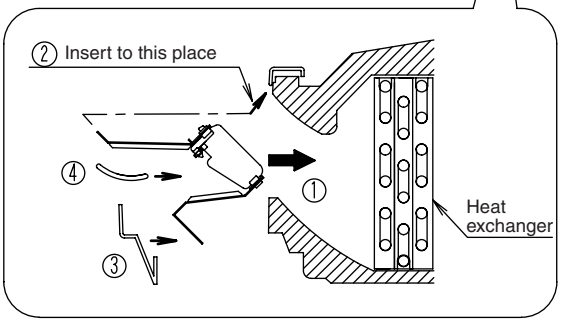


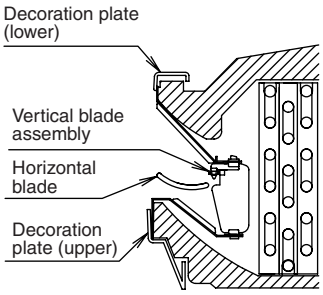
J : 3P003071A

● Attach the vertical blade

① Insert the vertical blade to the depth of the air outlet.
② Insert the hook on the lower part of the vertical blade to in between the decoration plate (lower).
③ Attach the decoration plate (upper).
④ Attach the horizontal blade.



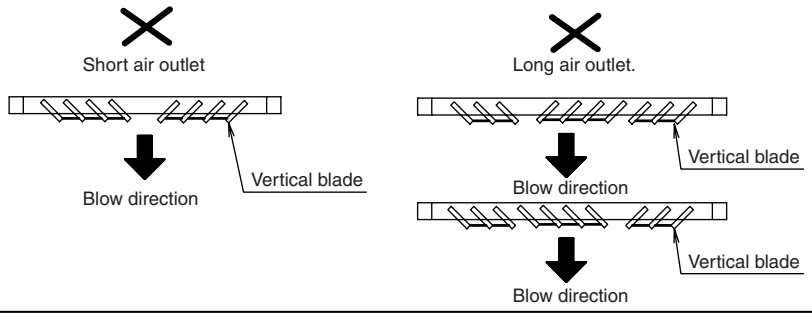




③ After the attachment work

《 Give your customer the following instruction. 》

Do not use the vertical blade in the direction mentioned below.
Otherwise it will be in danger of generating dew on the air outlet of the indoor unit's body.



J : 3P003071A

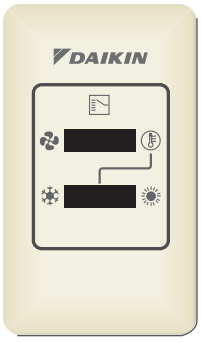
Part 4
Outdoor Units

1. Cool / Heat Selector 638
1.1 KRC19-26A 638
2. Fixing Box 639
2.1 KJB111A 639
3. REFNET Header 640
3.1 KHRJ26K11·17·18·37·40H 640
3.2 KHRP26M22·33·72·73H 644
3.3 KHRP25M33·72·73H 647
4. REFNET Joint 650
4.1 KHRJ26K11·17·18·37·40·75T 650
4.2 KHRP26A22·33·72·73T 658
4.3 KHRP25A22·33·72·73T 661
5. Outdoor Unit Multi Connection Piping Kit 664
5.1 BHF22M90·135 664
5.2 BHFP22P100·151 667
5.3 BHFP26P90 / 136 673
5.4 BHFP22MA56 / 84, BHFP26MA56 / 84 685
6. Pipe Size Reducer 692
6.1 KHRP26M73TP·73HP 692
6.2 KHRJ26K40TP·40HP·75TP·76TP 693
7. Central Drain Pan Kit 694
7.1 KWC26B160·280·450(E) 694
7.2 KWC26C160, 280, 450(E) / KWC25C450 696
8. Central Drain Plug 699
8.1 KKPJ5F180 699
9. Wire Fixture for Preventing Overturning 700
9.1 K-KYZP15C 700
10. Fixture for Preventing Overturning 702
10.1 KPT-60B160 702
11. Refrigerant Pipe Filter Kit 703
11.1 BHF26A450F 703
12. Digital Pressure Gauge 706
12.1 BHGP26A1 706
13. Strainer Kit 708
13.1 BWU26A15 / BWU26A20 708

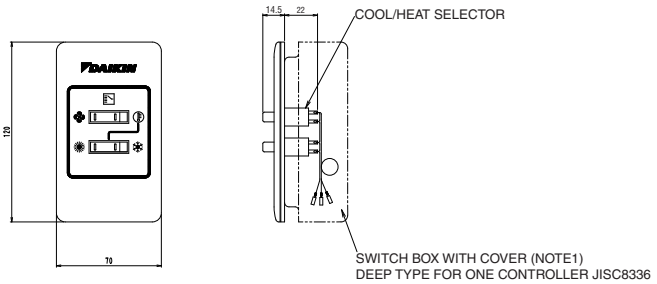
1. Cool / Heat Selector

1.1 KRC19-26A

This remote controller has a switch to enable selection of a heating or cooling operation for each outdoor unit or system. The controller can also be used to switch to the fan operation mode, for example, during moderate weather season.



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



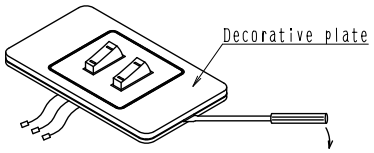
NOTE) 1. THE SWITCH BOX IS NOT ATTACHED.

C: 3D032519A

- Basically, this remote controller is not necessary for the Cooling/Heating VRV System and the Cooling Only VRV System.
- When the BS unit that automatically selects either cooling or heating operation mode is used in the manual mode, this remote controller can be connected to the BS unit.

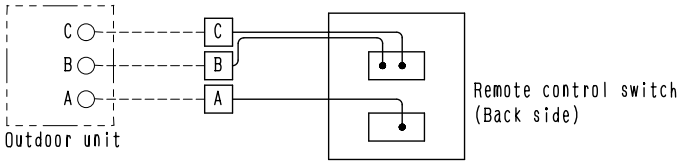
Installation Point

1. Remove the decorative plate.
   - Insert a (−) screwdriver in the gap between the concaved part of the decorative plate and the remote control switch to open it.

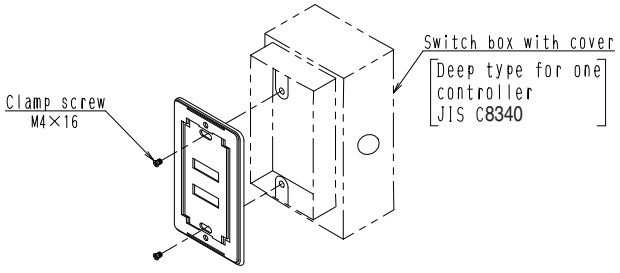


2. Provide the wiring between the remote control switch and the outdoor unit.
   - Connect terminals (A, B, C) on the back side of the remote control switch to terminals (A, B, C) on the outdoor unit.
   - ---shows field wiring.
   - Use the wires shown below ror the wiring.

Kind of wires	Polyvinyl chloride insulated and sheathed cords or cables.
Size of wires	0.75 ~ 1.25mm²



3. Attach the remote control switch to the switch box (To be obtained locally) as shown below.



4. Attach the decorative plate.

Note; The switch box and connecting wires are not attached.

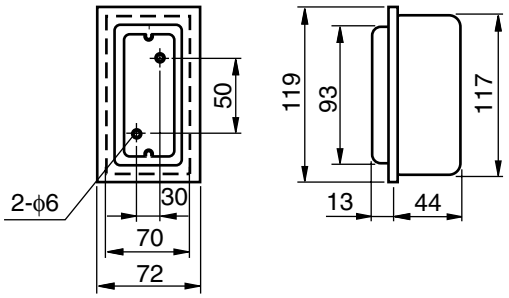
C: 3P077945A

2. Fixing Box

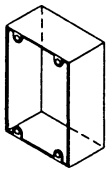
2.1 KJB111A



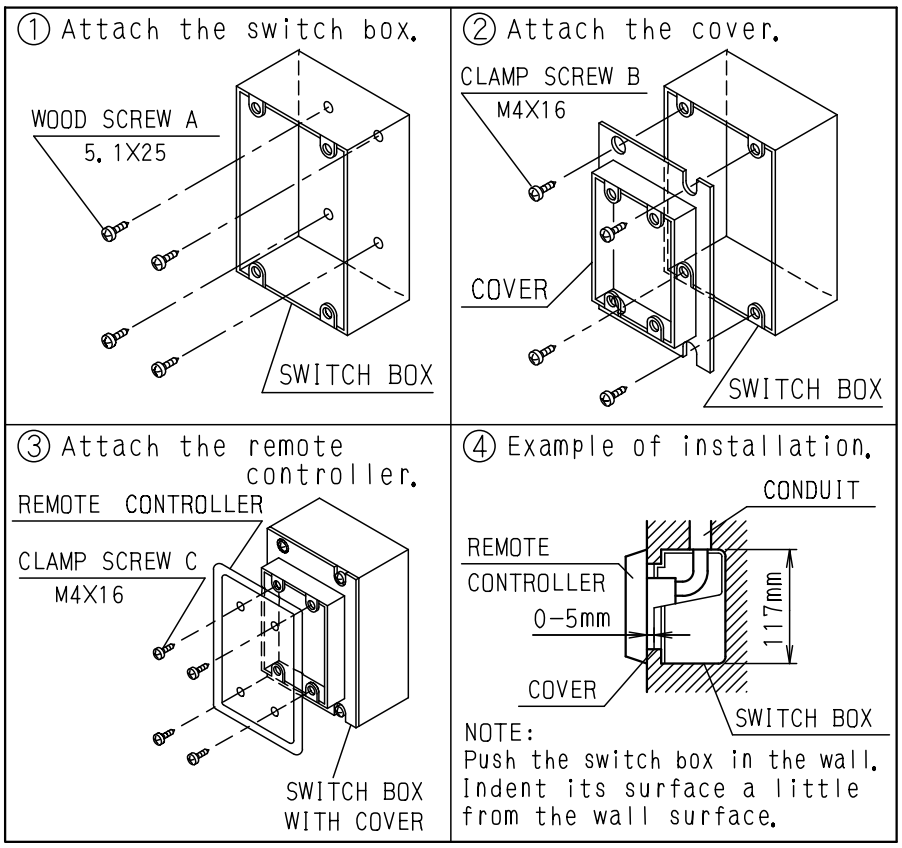
Dimensions **Unit:mm**



Component parts

Name		Switch box	Cover	Wood screw A (5.1×25)	Clamp screw B (M4×16)
Q'ty	KJB111A	1	1	2	2
Shape					

Installation



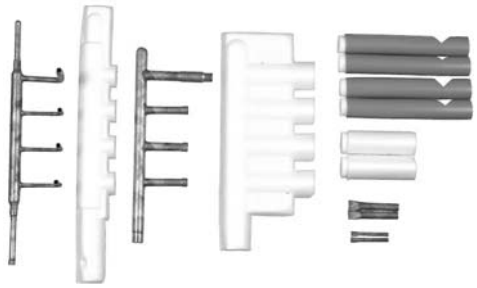
NOTES: 1. Refer to the installation of each remote controller.
2. Do not bind the lead wires for switch box with the power cord and the link wiring.
This may cause erratic operation.
3. The remote controller and the clamp screw C are one kit.
They are sold separately and attach to the switch box.

C: 3PA34878C

3. REFNET Header

3.1 KHRJ26K11·17·18·37·40H

KHRJ26K11H



REFNET HEADER INSTALLATION MANUAL (Except for JAPAN)

KHRJ26K11H・17H

■ This kit includes the following parts.

KIT NAME	PARTS NAME						
	GAS SIDE HEADER	LIQUID SIDE HEADER	PLUGGING TUBES	INSULATION	INSULATION FOR GAS SIDE ENCLOSED PIPING	INSULATION FOR LIQUID SIDE PIPING	TAPE
KHRJ 26K11H	One header	One header	2 each for gas/ liquid sides	1 each for gas/ liquid sides	2 pcs.	4 pcs.	16 Sheets
KHRJ 26K17H	One header	One header	6 each for gas/ liquid sides	1 each for gas/ liquid sides	6 pcs.	8 pcs.	30 Sheets

SELECTION PROCEDURE

❶ Total the capacity of indoor unit in the downstream from it's HEADER and select the kit from the table below.

INDOOR UNIT TOTAL CAPACITY	KIT NAME
Less than 100	KHRJ26K11H
Not less than 100	KHRJ26K17H

・For the model name of indoor unit which can be combined, refer to the installation manual attached to the product.

(Find the indoor unit capacity by calculation from the nominal capacity indicated on the model name according to the table below.)

INDOOR UNIT NOMINAL CAPACITY	CAPACITY
Type 20	20
Type 25	25
Type 32	31.25
Type 40	40
Type 50	50
Type 63	62.5
Type 80	80
Type 100	100
Type 125	125

❷ According to the following procedure, determine the piping size at each part.

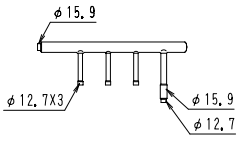
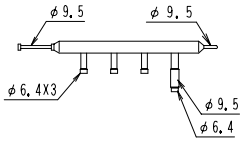
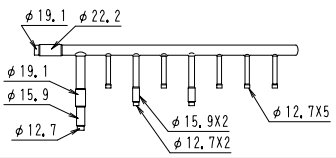
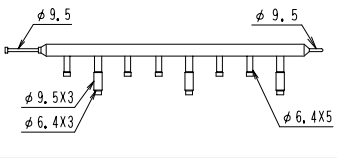
・Connect between the outdoor unit and the first HEADER according to the outdoor unit connection size.

OUTDOOR UNIT	GAS PIPE SIZE	LIQUID PIPE SIZE
Type 5 (HP)	φ19.1	φ9.5

・Connect between the HEADER and indoor unit according to the indoor unit connection size.

INDOOR UNIT NOMINAL CAPACITY	GAS PIPE SIZE	LIQUID PIPE SIZE
Types 20・25・32・40	φ12.7	φ6.4
Types 50・63・80	φ15.9	φ9.5
Types 100・125	φ19.1	φ9.5

The outlet/inlet piping sizes of refrigerant branching header of each kit are as shown in the table below.

KIT NAME	GAS SIDE HEADER	LIQUID SIDE HEADER
KHRJ26K11H		
KHRJ26K17H		

3P234615

INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

❶ For the outlet/inlet pipings which can be connected in several piping sizes, cut the connections of piping diameter to be used with a pipe cutter according to the left lower table.

❷ For non-connected outlet/inlet pipings at the indoor unit side for refrigerant branching, install the supplied plugging tube.

❸ When connecting the field piping to outlet/inlet piping part B at the outdoor unit of liquid side header:
- Cut part B as shown at right with a pipe cutter and install it to part A.
- Connect the flared field piping to part B.

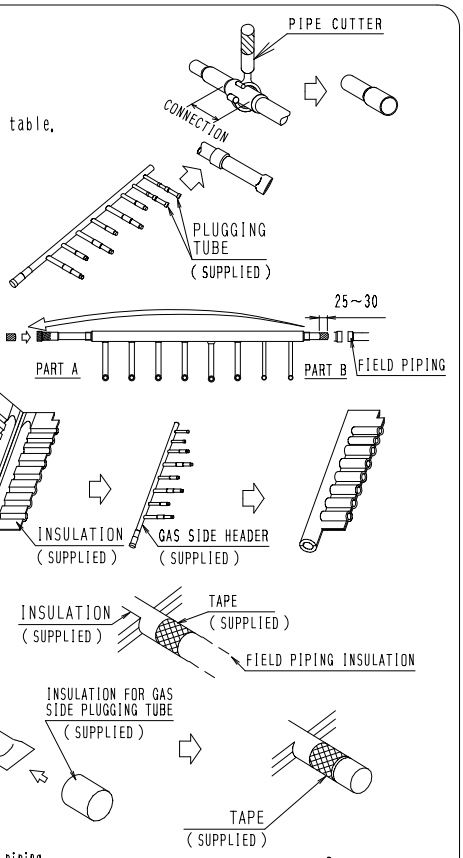
❹ HEADER HEAT INSULATION

GAS SIDE HEADER:

(1) Insulate the gas side header with the supplied insulation.

(2) Seal the supplied insulation and field piping insulation joint with the supplied tape.

(3) Seal the plugging tube mounting part with the field supplied tape after installing the supplied insulation for the supplied plugging tube.

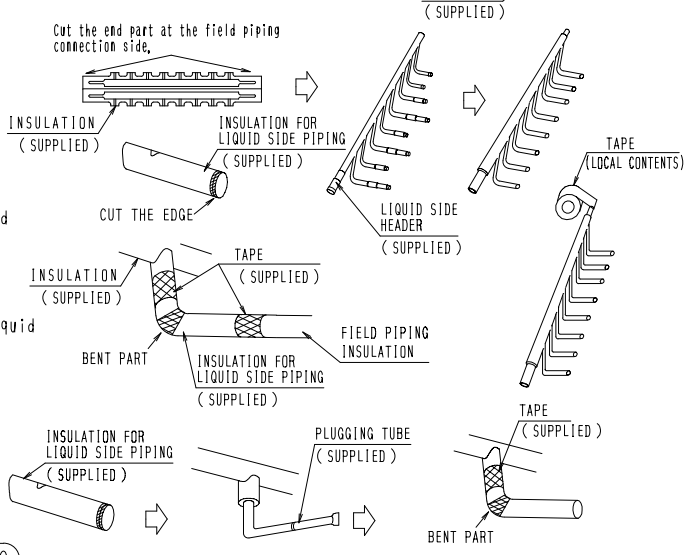


LIQUID SIDE HEADER:

(1) When cooling operation may be performed in outdoor temperature 15℃ or under also insulate the liquid side header.

(2) Seal the supplied insulation and liquid side piping insulation joint, the supplied liquid side piping insulation bending part, and the joint with the field piping insulation, using the supplied tape. Seal the supplied insulation with a vinyl tape, for example.

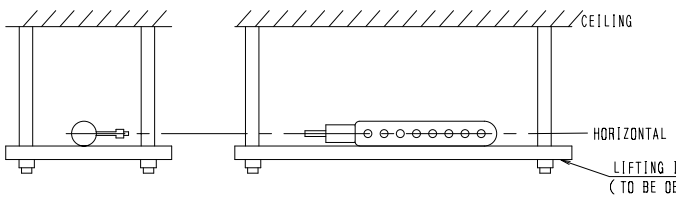
(3) Using the supplied tape, seal the plugging tube mounting part after installing the insulation for liquid side piping (supplied).



INSTALLATION OF HEADER FOR REFRIGERANT BRANCHING

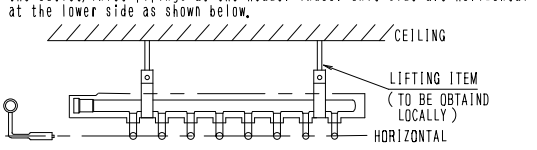
GAS SIDE HEADER:

- Place the header on the pedestal and install it so that it is horizontal.



LIQUID SIDE HEADER:

- Suspend the header from the ceiling, and be sure to install it so that the outlet/inlet pipings at the header indoor unit side are horizontal at the lower side as shown below.

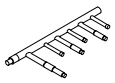
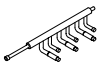
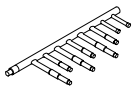
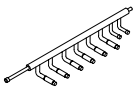
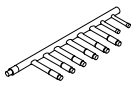
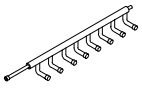


3P234615

REFNET HEADER INSTALLATION MANUAL (Except for JAPAN)

KHRJ26K18H • 37H • 40H

■ This kit includes the following parts.

KIT NAME	PARTS NAME						
	GAS SIDE HEADER	LIQUID SIDE HEADER	PLUGGING TUBES	INSULATION FOR HEADER	INSULATION FOR SUCTION GAS AND DISCHARGE GAS SIDE ENCLOSED PIPING	INSULATION FOR LIQUID SIDE PIPING	TAPE
KHRJ 26K18H 6 branches			 4 each for gas/ liquid sides	 1 each for gas/ liquid sides	 4 pcs.	 6 pcs.	 23 Sheets
KHRJ 26K37H 8 branches			 6 each for gas/ liquid sides	 1 each for gas/ liquid sides	 6 pcs.	 8 pcs.	 30 Sheets
KHRJ 26K40H 8 branches			 6 each for gas/ liquid sides	 1 each for gas/ liquid sides	 6 pcs.	 8 pcs.	 45 Sheets

SELECTION PROCEDURE

❶ Total the capacity of indoor unit in the downstream from it's HEADER and select the kit from the table below.

INDOOR UNIT TOTAL CAPACITY	KIT NAME
Less than 160	KHRJ26K18H (Maximum of 6 branching)
Not less than 160, less than 330	KHRJ26K37H (Maximum of 8 branching)
Not less than 330, less than 640	KHRJ26K40H (Maximum of 8 branching)+KHRJ26K40HP

- VRV PLUS series, use KHRJ26K40H+KHRJ26K40HP
- For the model name of indoor unit which can be combined, refer to the installation manual attached to the product.

(Find the indoor unit capacity by calculation from the nominal capacity indicated on the model name according to the below.)

INDOOR UNIT NOMINAL CAPACITY	CAPACITY
Type 20	20
Type 25	25
Type 32	31.25
Type 40	40
Type 50	50
Type 63	62.5
Type 80	80
Type 100	100
Type 125	125
✱ Type 200	200
✱ Type 250	250

✱ Indoor unit(Type 200, 250) can not be connected the HEADER.

✱ Connected indoor unit(Type 200, 250) after branching at upstream HEADER.

❷ According to the following procedure, determine the piping size at each part.

- Connect between the outdoor unit and the first HEADER according to the outdoor unit connection size.

OUTDOOR UNIT	LIQUID PIPE SIZE	GAS PIPE SIZE
Type 8(HP)	ø12.7	ø25.4
Type 10(HP)	ø12.7	ø28.6

- Connect between the outdoor unit and the first HEADER according to the outdoor unit connection size.

OUTDOOR SYSTEM NAME	LIQUID PIPE SIZE	GAS PIPE SIZE
RXY16K	ø15.9	ø34.9
RXY18~20K	ø19.1	ø34.9
RXY24K	ø19.1	ø41.3

- Connect between the HEADER and indoor unit according to the indoor unit connection size.

INDOOR UNIT NOMINAL CAPACITY	LIQUID PIPE SIZE	SUCTION GAS PIPE SIZE
Type 20 • 25 • 32 • 40	ø6.4	ø12.7
Type 50 • 63 • 80	ø9.5	ø15.9
Type 100 • 125	ø9.5	ø19.1

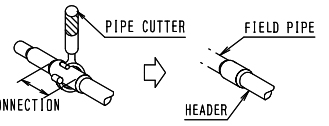
3P234616

INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

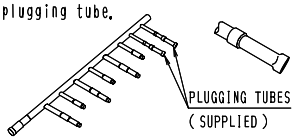
• The outlet/inlet piping sizes of refrigerant branching header of each kit are as shown in the table below.

KIT NAME	GAS SIDE HEADER	LIQUID SIDE HEADER
KHRJ26K18H	φ15.9 φ19.1 φ12.7X3 φ19.1 φ15.9 φ12.7 φ15.9X2 φ12.7X2	φ9.5 φ9.5 φ9.5X3 φ6.4X3 φ6.4X3
KHRJ26K37H	φ28.6 φ25.4 φ12.7×2 φ31.8 φ15.9×3 φ12.7×3 φ19.1X3 φ15.9×3 φ12.7×3	φ15.9 φ12.7 φ12.7 φ9.5X6 φ6.4X6 φ6.4X2
KHRJ26K40H	φ38.1 φ31.8 φ19.1×6 φ15.9×6 φ15.9×2	φ19.1 φ15.9 φ15.9 φ9.5X8

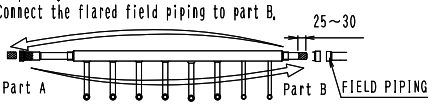
1) For the outlet/inlet pipings which can be connected in several piping sizes, cut the connections of piping diameter to be used with a pipe cutter.



2) For non-connected outlet pipings at the indoor unit side for refrigerant branching, install the supplied plugging tube.



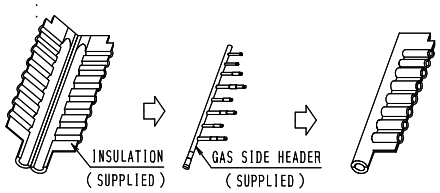
3) When connecting the field piping to inlet piping part B at the outdoor unit of liquid side header.
- Cut part B as shown with a pipe cutter and install it to part A.
- Connect the flared field piping to part B.



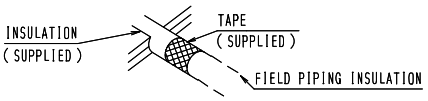
4)Heder heat insulation.

DISCHARGE/SUCTION GAS SIDE HEADER

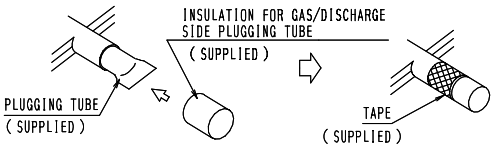
i) Insulate the discharge/suction gas side header with the supplied insulation.



ii)Seal the supplied insulation and field piping insulation junction with the field supplied tape.

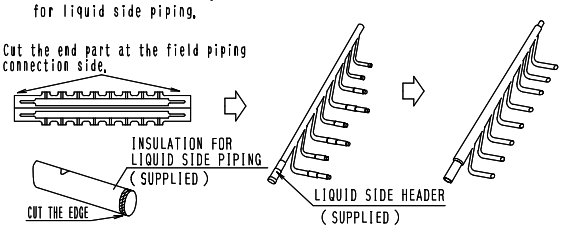


iii) Seal the plugging tube mounting part with the field supplied tape after installing the supplied insulation for the supplied plugging tube.

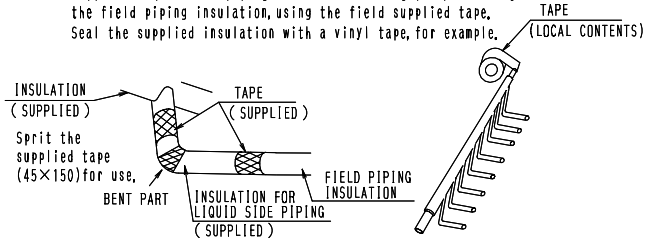


LIQUID SIDE HEADER

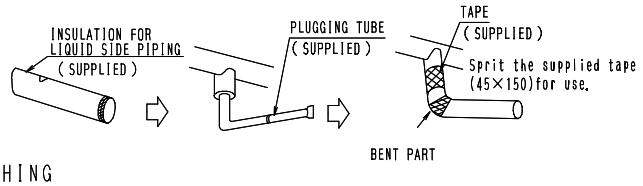
i) Insulate the header using the insulation for header and the insulation for liquid side piping.



ii) Seal the supplied insulation and liquid side piping insulation joint, the supplied liquid side piping insulation bending part, and the joint with the field piping insulation, using the field supplied tape. Seal the supplied insulation with a vinyl tape, for example.



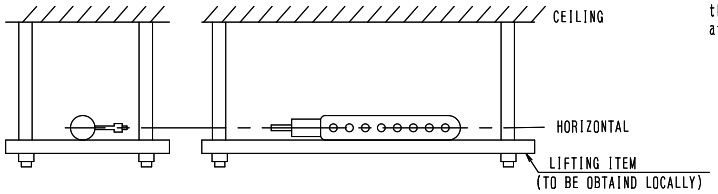
iii) Using the field supplied tape, seal the plugging tube mounting part after installing the insulation for liquid side piping (supplied).



5) INSTALLATION OF HEADER REFRIGERANT BRANCHING

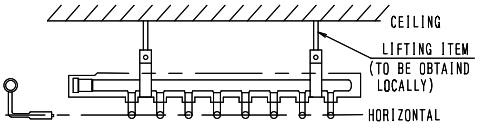
GAS SIDE HEADER

- Place the header on the pedestal and install it so that it is horizontal.



LIQUID SIDE HEADER

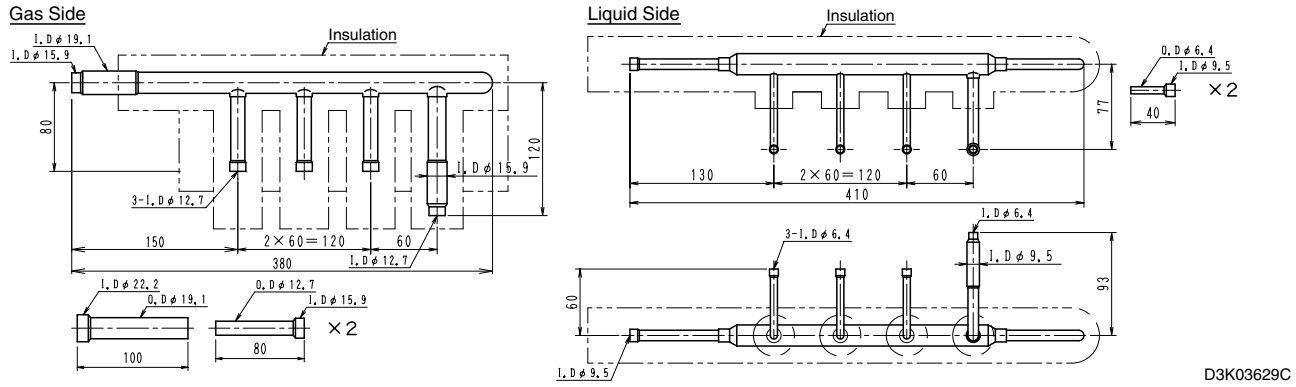
- Suspend the header from the ceiling, and be sure to install it so that the outlet/inlet pipings at the header indoor unit side are horizontal at the lower side as shown below.



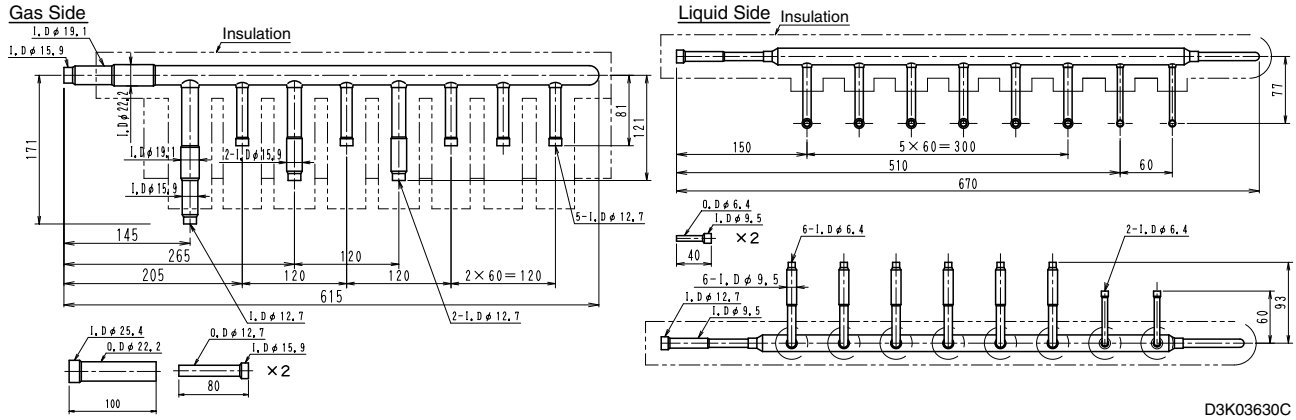
3P234616

3.2 KHRP26M22·33·72·73H

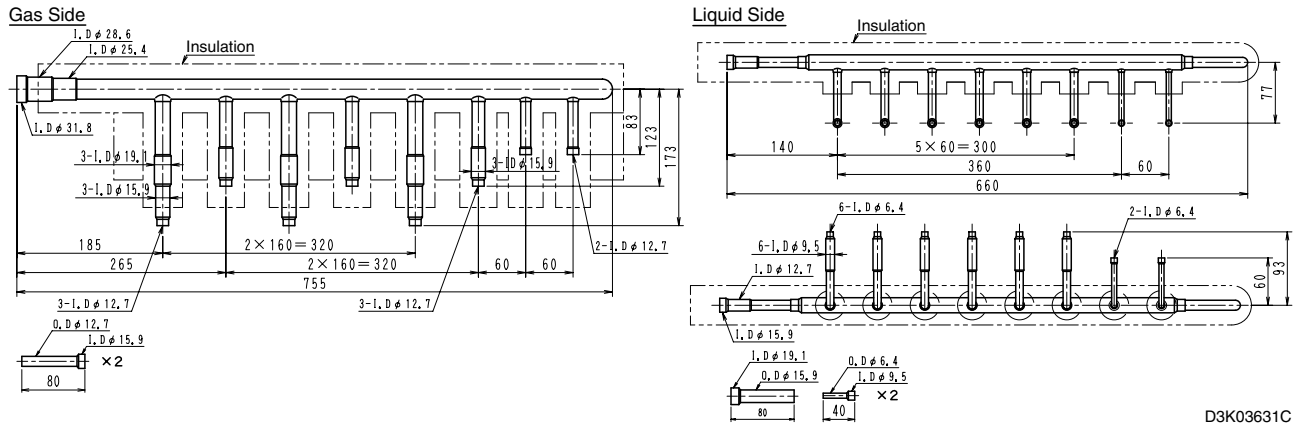
KHRP26M22H



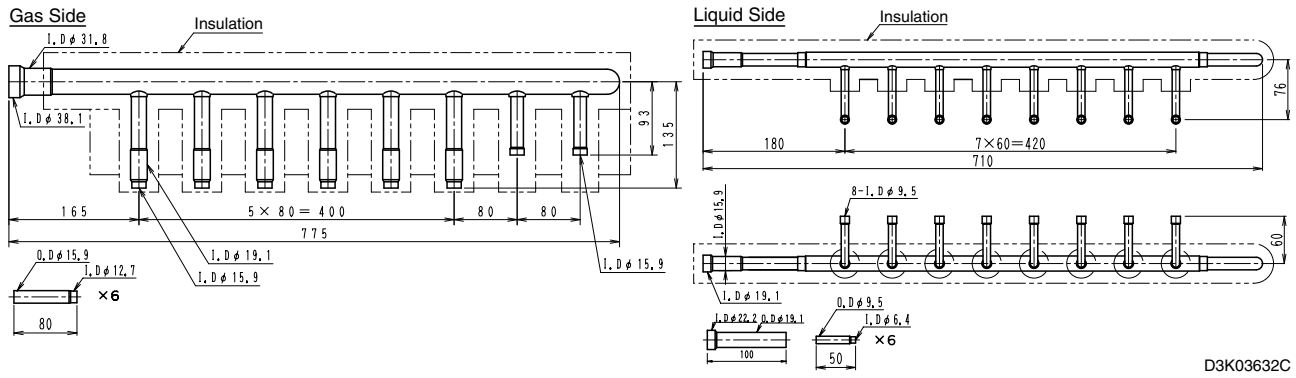
KHRP26M33H



KHRP26M72H



KHRP26M73H



Installation

■ THIS KIT INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING PARTS.

KIT NAME	SHAPE						
	GAS SIDE HEADER	LIQUID SIDE HEADER	PLUGGING TUBES	REDUCER	INSULATION FOR HEADER	INSULATION FOR GAS SIDE ENCLOSED PIPING	INSULATION FOR LIQUID SIDE PIPING
KHRP 26M22H 4branches	※ 1 pcs.	1 pcs.	2 each for gas/liquid sides	for gas sides (φ22.2)1pcs. (φ15.9)2pcs. for liquid sides (φ9.5) 2pcs.	1 each for gas/liquid sides	2 pcs.	4 pcs.
KHRP 26M33H 8branches	1 pcs.	1 pcs.	6 each for gas/liquid sides	for gas sides (φ25.4)1pcs. (φ15.9)2pcs. for liquid sides (φ9.5) 2pcs.	1 each for gas/liquid sides	6 pcs.	8 pcs.
KHRP 26M72H 8branches	1 pcs.	1 pcs.	6 each for gas/liquid sides	for gas sides (φ15.9) 2pcs. for liquid sides (φ19.1)1pcs. (φ9.5)2pcs.	1 each for gas/liquid sides	6 pcs.	8 pcs.
KHRP 26M73H 8branches	1 pcs.	1 pcs.	6 each for gas/liquid sides	6pcs. for gas sides(φ12.7) for liquid sides (φ6.4)6pcs. (φ22.2)1pcs.	1 each for gas/liquid sides	6 pcs.	8 pcs.

※…Make sure gas side header and liquid side header are for R410A. (Label for R410A is attached on each part.)

SELECTION PROCEDURE

According to the INSTALLATION MANUAL of outdoor unit.

INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

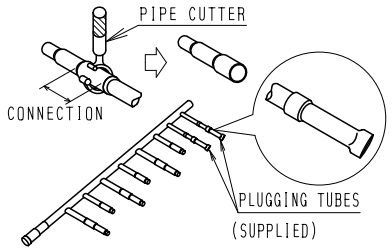
❶ The pipe size of each parts are shown below.

KIT NAME	GAS SIDE HEADER	LIQUID SIDE HEADER
KHRP26M22H 4branches	φ15.9 φ19.1 φ12.7X3 φ15.9 φ12.7	φ9.5 φ9.5 φ6.4X3 φ9.5 φ6.4
KHRP26M33H 8branches	φ15.9 φ19.1 φ22.2 φ19.1 φ15.9 φ12.7 φ15.9X2 φ12.7X2 φ12.7X5	φ12.7 φ9.5 φ9.5 φ9.5X6 φ6.4X6 φ6.4X2
KHRP26M72H 8branches	φ28.6 φ25.4 φ31.8 φ15.9×3 φ12.7×3 φ19.1X3 φ12.7×2 φ15.9×3 φ12.7×3	φ15.9 φ12.7 φ12.7 φ9.5X6 φ6.4X6 φ6.4X2
KHRP26M73H 8branches	φ38.1 φ31.8 φ19.1×6 φ15.9×6 φ15.9×2	φ19.1 φ15.9 φ15.9 φ9.5X8

3P113151C

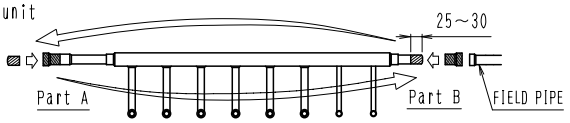
❷ For the outlet/inlet pipings which can be connected in several piping sizes, cut the connections of piping diameter to be used with a pipe cutter according to the left lower table.

NOTE) 1. Cut in the center of the connections.
2. PIPE SIDE REDUCER
ex)When connecting the field pipe(φ22.2) to inlet liquid side pipe of KHRP26M73H, use PIPE SIDE REDUCER.



❸ For non-connected outlet pipings at the indoor unit side for refrigerant branching, install the supplied plugging tube.

When connecting the field piping to inlet piping part B at the outdoor unit of liquid side header.
- Cut part B as shown with a pipe cutter and install it to part A.
- Connect the flared field piping to part B.



- Make sure to flow nitrogen gas through the pipe when brazing.

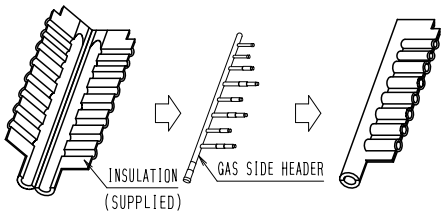
❹ Insulation of HEADER

- Be sure to insulate the gas and liquid side HEADER.

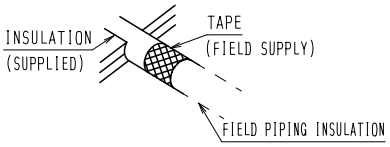
Note) The insulation of the refrigerant piping must be reinforced based on the environment of installation. Otherwise, dew may condensate on the surface of the insulation. For details, see Engineering Data.

GAS SIDE HEADER

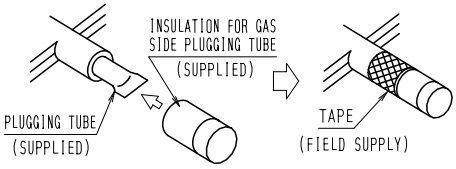
i)Insulate the gas side header with the supplied insulation.



ii)Seal the supplied insulation and field piping insulation junction with the field supplied tape.

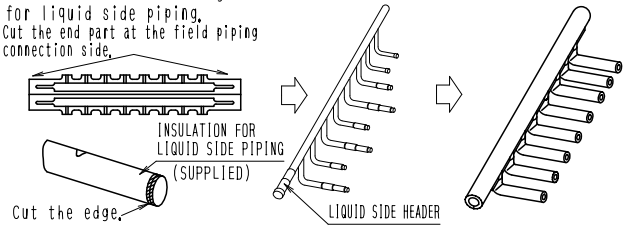


iii)Seal the plugging tube mounting part with the field supplied tape after installing the supplied insulation for the supplied plugging tube.

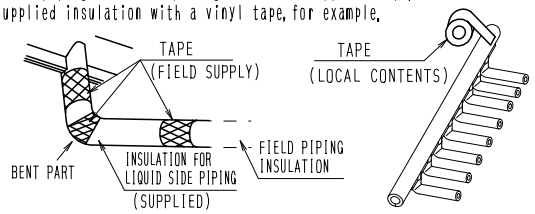


LIQUID SIDE HEADER

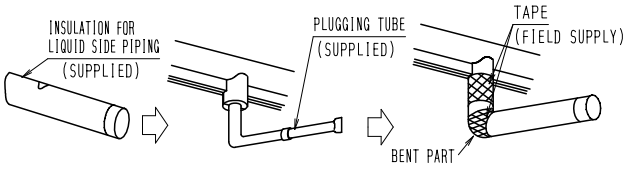
i) Insulate the header using the insulation for header and the insulation for liquid side piping.
Cut the end part at the field piping connection side.



ii) Seal the supplied insulation and liquid side piping insulation joint, the supplied liquid side piping insulation bending part, and the joint with the field piping insulation, using the field supplied tape. Seal the supplied insulation with a vinyl tape, for example.



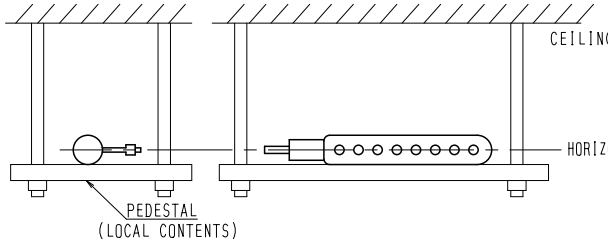
iii) Using the field supplied tape, seal the plugging tube mounting part after installing the insulation for liquid side piping (supplied).



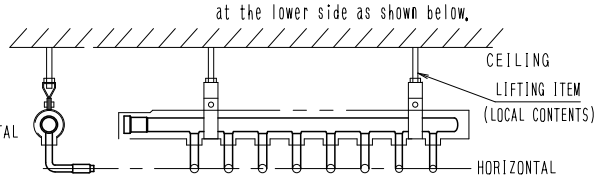
INSTALLATION PRECAUTIONS

- Do not apply extra force on the piping part. The brazed part may be damaged and it may result in gas leakage.

GAS SIDE HEADER
- Place the header on the pedestal and install it so that it is horizontal.



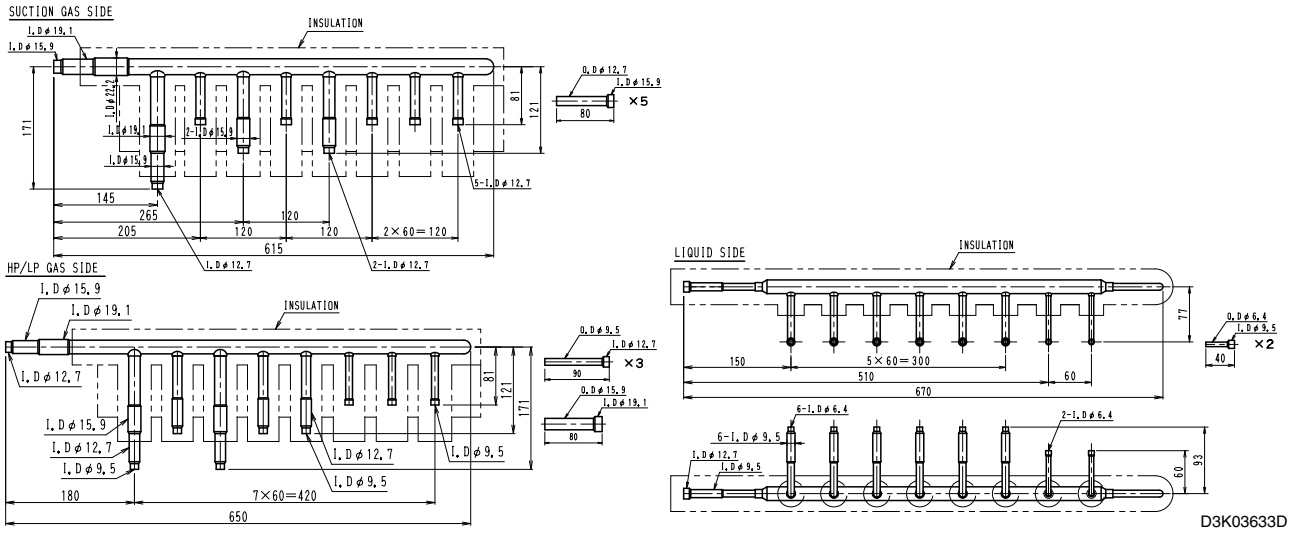
LIQUID SIDE HEADER
- Suspend the header from the ceiling, and be sure to install it so that the outlet/inlet pipings at the header indoor unit side are horizontal at the lower side as shown below.



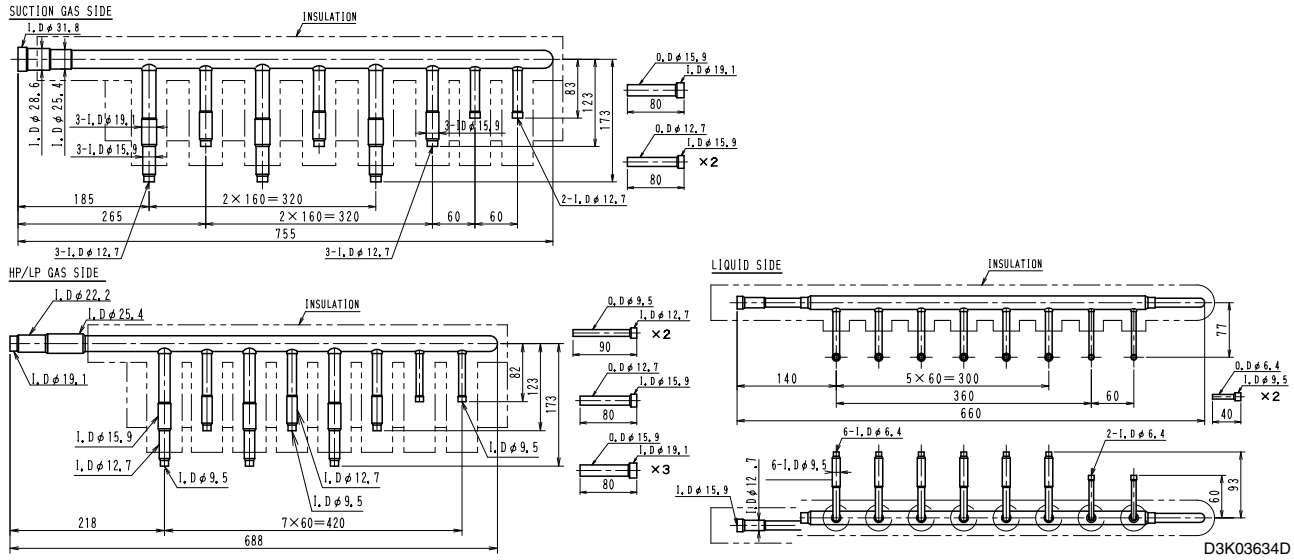
3P113151C

3.3 KHRP25M33·72·73H

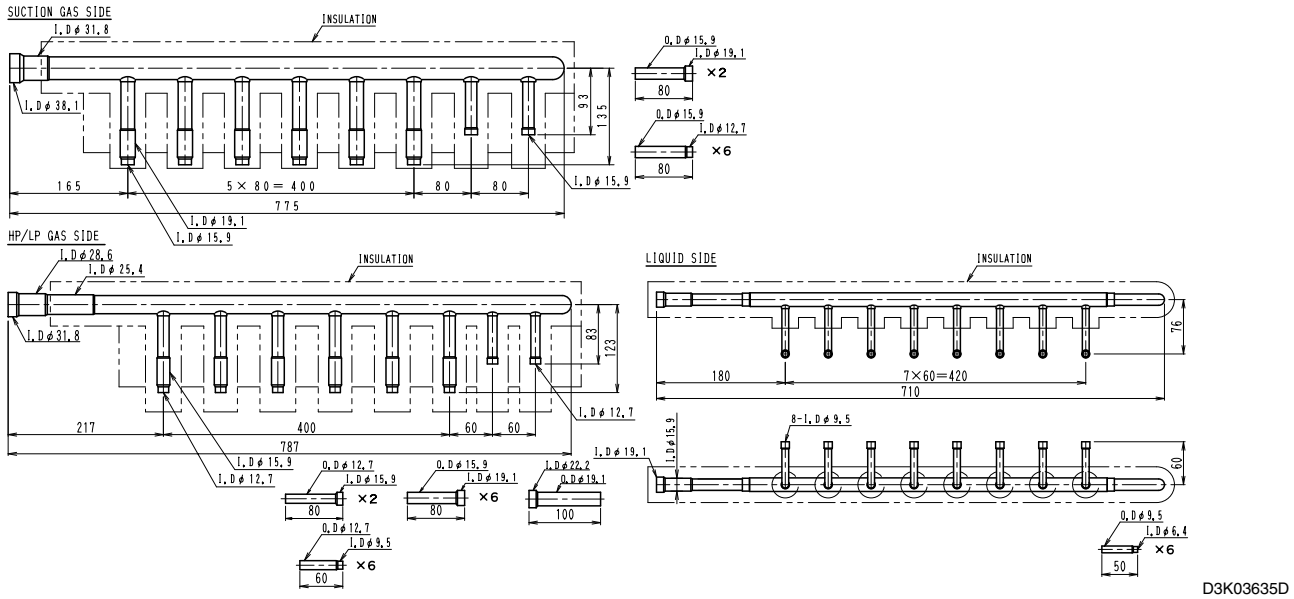
KHRP25M33H



KHRP25M72H



KHRP25M73H



Installation

■ THIS KIT INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING PARTS.

KIT NAME	S H A P E							
	SUCTION GAS SIDE HEADER	DISCHARGE GAS(HP/LP GAS) SIDE HEADER	LIQUID SIDE HEADER	INSULATION FOR HEADER	PLUGGING TUBES	REDUCER	INSULATION FOR GAS SIDE ENCLOSED PIPING	INSULATION FOR LIQUID SIDE PIPING
KHRP 25M33H 8branches	✱ 1 pcs.	1 pcs.	1 pcs.	2pcs. for gas side 1 pcs. for liquid side	6 each for suction gas/ discharge gas (HP/LP gas)/ liquid sides	suction gas side (φ15.9) 5pcs. discharge gas(HP/LP gas)side (φ19.1) 1pcs. (φ12.7) 3pcs. liquid side (φ9.5) 2pcs.	12 pcs.	8 pcs.
KHRP 25M72H 8branches	1 pcs.	1 pcs.	1 pcs.	2pcs. for gas side 1 pcs. for liquid side	6 each for suction gas/ discharge gas (HP/LP gas)/ liquid sides	suction gas (φ19.1) 1pcs. (φ15.9) 2pcs. discharge gas(HP/LP gas)side (φ19.1) 3pcs. (φ15.9) 1pcs. (φ12.7) 2pcs. liquid side (φ9.5) 2pcs.	12 pcs.	8 pcs.
KHRP 25M73H 8branches	1 pcs.	1 pcs.	1 pcs.	2pcs. for gas side 1 pcs. for liquid side	6 each for suction gas/ discharge gas (HP/LP gas)/ liquid sides	suction gas side (φ19.1) 2pcs. (φ12.7) 6pcs. discharge gas(HP/LP gas)side (φ19.1) 6pcs. (φ15.9) 2pcs. (φ9.5) 6pcs. liquid side (φ22.2) 1pcs. (φ6.4) 6pcs.	12 pcs.	8 pcs.

✱…Make sure suction gas side header, discharge gas(HP/LP gas) side and liquid side header are for R410A.
(Label for R410A is attached on each part.)

INTRODUCTION

This kit is designed as a refrigerant branching kit for HEAT RECOVERY unit for installation in buildings.

- Between outdoor unit and BS unit (upstream of BS unit), use 3 pipings. Use this kit for such branching application.
- Between BS unit and indoor unit (downstream of BS unit) and between REFNET HEADER and cooling-only indoor unit, use 2 pipings.

3 pipings	2 pipings	
Upstream of BS unit	Downstream of BS unit	To cooling-only indoor unit
Suction gas side piping Discharge gas(HP/LP gas) side piping Liquid side piping	Gas side piping Liquid side piping	Suction gas side piping Liquid side piping

SELECTION PROCEDURE

According to the INSTALLATION MANUAL of outdoor unit.

INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

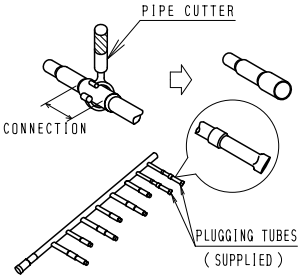
❶ The pipe size of each parts are shown below.

KIT NAME	SUCTION GAS SIDE HEADER	DISCHARGE GAS(HP/LP GAS) SIDE HEADER	LIQUID SIDE HEADER
KHRP 25M33H 8branches	φ15.9 φ19.1 φ22.2 φ19.1 φ15.9 φ12.7 φ15.9X2 φ12.7X2 φ12.7X5	φ12.7 φ15.9 φ19.1 φ15.9X2 φ12.7X2 φ9.5X2 φ12.7X3 φ9.5X3 φ9.5X3	φ12.7 φ9.5 φ9.5 φ9.5X6 φ6.4X6 φ6.4X2
KHRP 25M72H 8branches	φ28.6 φ25.4 φ31.8 φ15.9×3 φ12.7×3 φ19.1X3 φ15.9×3 φ12.7×3 φ12.7×2	φ22.2 φ25.4 φ19.1 φ15.9X3 φ12.7X3 φ9.5X3 φ12.7×3 φ9.5×3 φ9.5×2	φ15.9 φ12.7 φ12.7 φ9.5X6 φ6.4X6 φ6.4X2
KHRP 25M73H 8branches	φ38.1 φ31.8 φ19.1×6 φ15.9×6 φ15.9×2	φ28.6 φ25.4 φ31.8 φ15.9×6 φ12.7×6 φ12.7×2	φ19.1 φ15.9 φ15.9 φ9.5X8

3P113623D

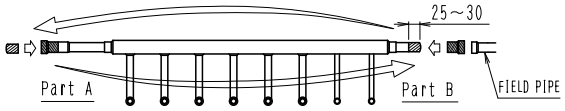
❷ For the outlet/inlet pipings which can be connected in several piping sizes, cut the connections of piping diameter to be used with a pipe cutter according to the left lower table.

NOTE) 1. Cut in the center of the connections.
2. PIPE SIDE REDUCER
ex)When connecting the field pipe(φ22.2) to inlet liquid side pipe of KHRP25M73H, use PIPE SIDE REDUCER.



❸ For non-connected outlet pipings at the indoor unit side for refrigerant branching, install the supplied plugging tube.

When connecting the field piping to inlet piping part B at the outdoor unit of liquid side header.
- Cut part B as shown with a pipe cutter and install it to part A.
- Connect the flared field piping to part B.



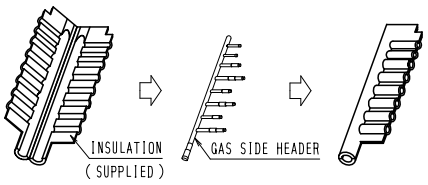
- Make sure to flow nitrogen gas through the pipe when brazing.

❹ Insulation of HEADER
- Be sure to insulate the gas and liquid side HEADER.

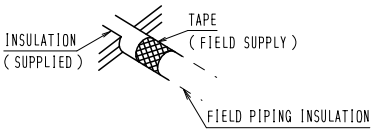
Note) The insulation of the refrigerant piping must be reinforced based on the environment of installation. Otherwise, dew may condensate on the surface of the insulation. For details, see Engineering Data.

SUCTION/DISCHARGE GAS SIDE HEADER

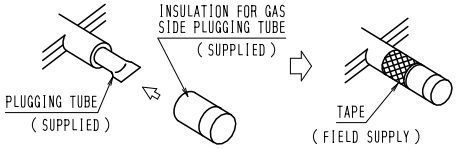
i)Insulate the gas side header with the supplied insulation.



ii)Seal the supplied insulation and field piping insulation junction with the field supplied tape.

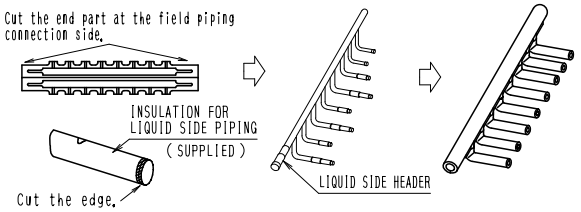


iii)Seal the plugging tube mounting part with the field supplied tape after installing the supplied insulation for the supplied plugging tube.

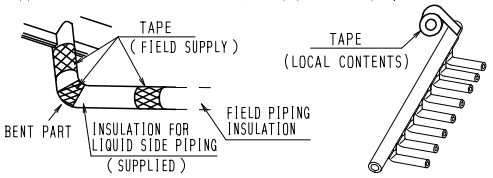


LIQUID SIDE HEADER

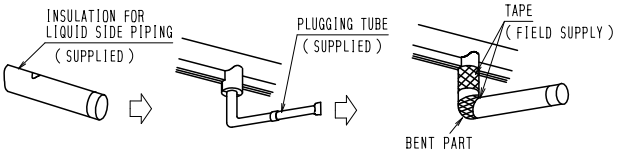
i) Insulate the header using the insulation for header and the insulation for liquid side piping.



ii) Seal the supplied insulation and liquid side piping insulation joint, the supplied liquid side piping insulation bending part, and the joint with the field piping insulation, using the field supplied tape. Seal the supplied insulation with a vinyl tape, for example.



iii) Using the field supplied tape, seal the plugging tube mounting part after installing the insulation for liquid side piping (supplied).

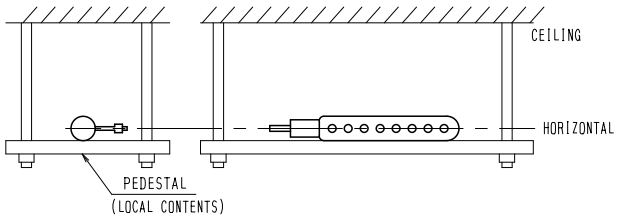


INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

- Do not apply extra force on the piping part. The brazed part may be damaged and it may result in gas leakage.

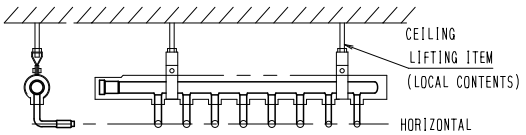
SUCTION/DISCHARGE GAS SIDE HEADER

- Place the header on the pedestal and install it so that it is horizontal.



LIQUID SIDE HEADER

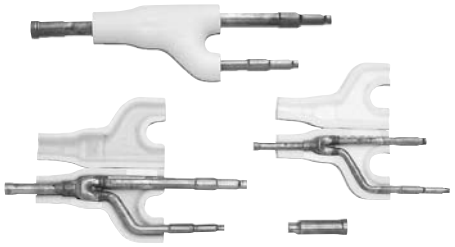
- Suspend the header from the ceiling, and be sure to install it so that the outlet/inlet pipings at the header indoor unit side are horizontal at the lower side as shown below.



3P113623D

4. REFNET Joint

4.1 KHRJ26K11·17·18·37·40·75T



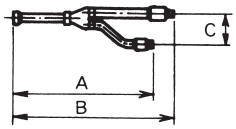
- Includes insulation. Makes it easy to insulate complicated branch points in no time flat.
- Connecting parts have already been expanded. Brazing is finished in a flash.

Dimensions

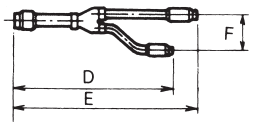
Model \ Dimensions	A	B	C	D	E	F
KHRJ26K11T	250	290	80	298	338	80
KHRJ26K17T	250	290	80	320	360	80
KHRJ26K18T	250	290	80	298	338	80
KHRJ26K37T	290	332	80	448	503	80
KHRJ26K40T	400	438	90	534	634	93
KHRJ26K75T	409	323	90	607	721	80

Unit:mm

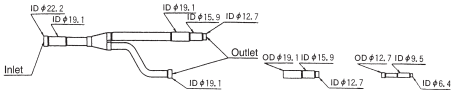
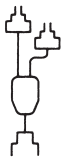
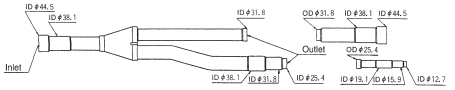
Liquid side joint



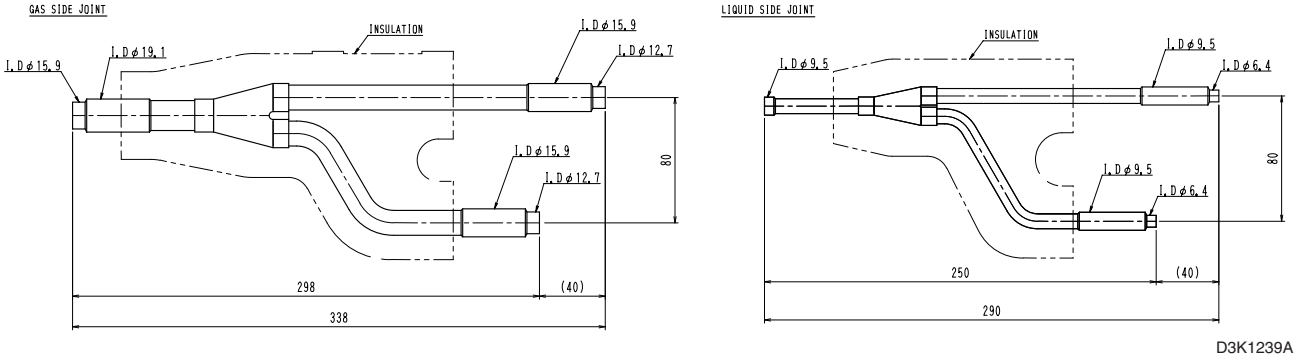
Gas - side joint



This graph above shows KHRJ26K11T.

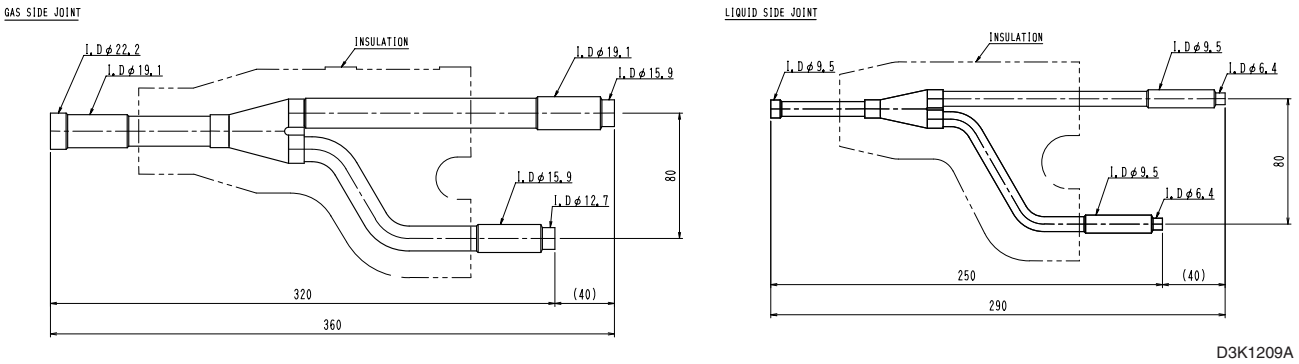
Item \ Model			KHRJ26K11T	KHRJ26K17T	KHRJ26K18T	KHRJ26K37T	KHRJ26K40T	KHRJ26K75T
Connection pipe diameter	Liquid side use	Joint (with insulation)	ϕ6.4 ϕ9.5  ϕ9.5	ϕ6.4 ϕ9.5 ϕ9.5	ϕ6.4 ϕ6.4 ϕ9.5 ϕ9.5  ϕ9.5	ϕ 9.5 ϕ 6.4 ϕ12.7 ϕ 9.5 ϕ12.7  ϕ12.7 ϕ15.9	ϕ12.7 ϕ 9.5 ϕ15.9 ϕ15.9 ϕ19.1 ϕ19.1  ϕ19.1 ϕ15.9	
	Gas - side use	Joint (with insulation)	ϕ12.7 ϕ12.7 ϕ15.9 ϕ15.9  ϕ19.1 ϕ15.9	ϕ15.9 ϕ12.7 ϕ19.1 ϕ15.9  ϕ19.1 ϕ22.2	ϕ12.7 ϕ12.7 ϕ15.9 ϕ15.9 ϕ19.1  ϕ19.1 ϕ15.9	ϕ15.9 ϕ12.7 ϕ19.1 ϕ15.9 ϕ25.4 ϕ19.1  ϕ25.4 ϕ28.6 ϕ31.8	ϕ25.4 ϕ15.9 ϕ28.6 ϕ19.1 ϕ31.8 ϕ25.4  ϕ31.8 ϕ38.1	
		Reducer	—	—	—	ϕ19.1→ϕ25.4 ϕ25.4→ϕ28.6	ϕ 9.5→ϕ 6.4 ϕ15.9→ϕ12.7 ϕ25.4→ϕ28.6 ϕ31.8→ϕ38.1	Liquid side : ϕ12.7→ϕ15.9→ϕ19.1, ϕ6.4→ϕ9.5→ϕ12.7 Gas side : ϕ31.8→ϕ38.1→ϕ31.8, ϕ12.7→ϕ15.9$→ϕ19.1→ϕ25.4
Material			Polypropylene					
Insulation temperature			120˚C					
Color			White					
Component parts			Liquid - side joint, Gas - side joint, Insulation, Installation manual			Liquid - side joint, Gas - side joint, Insulation, Reducer, Installation manual		

KHRJ26K11T



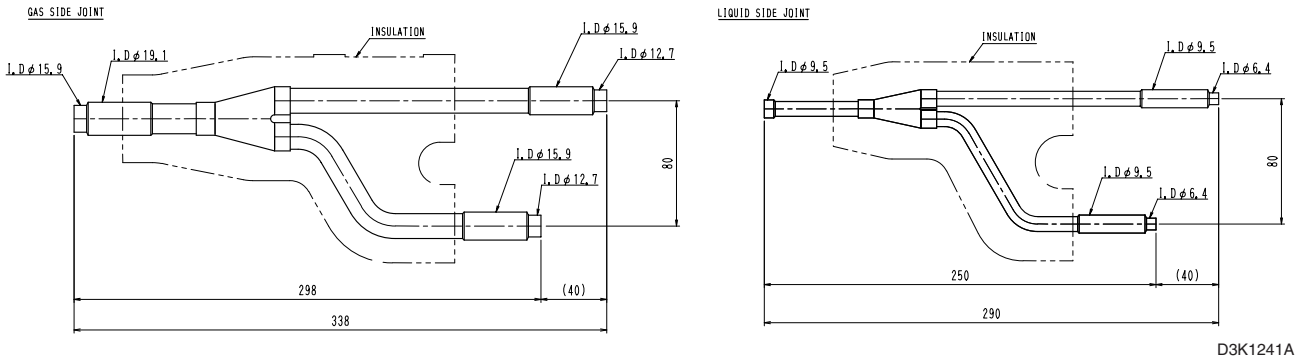
D3K1239A

KHRJ26K17T



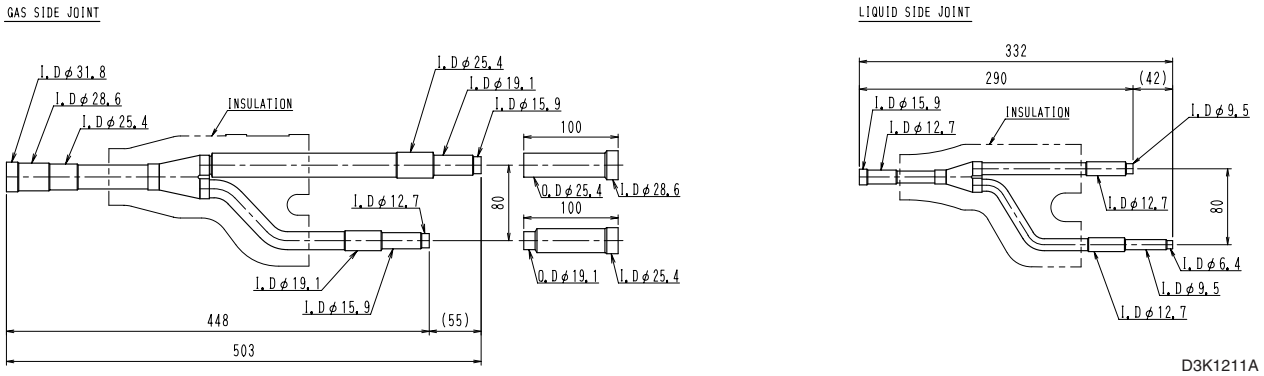
D3K1209A

KHRJ26K18T

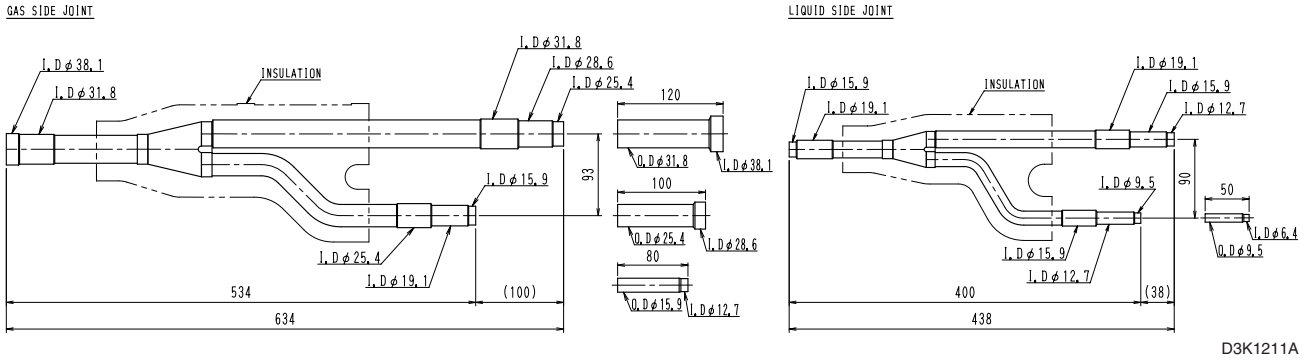


D3K1241A

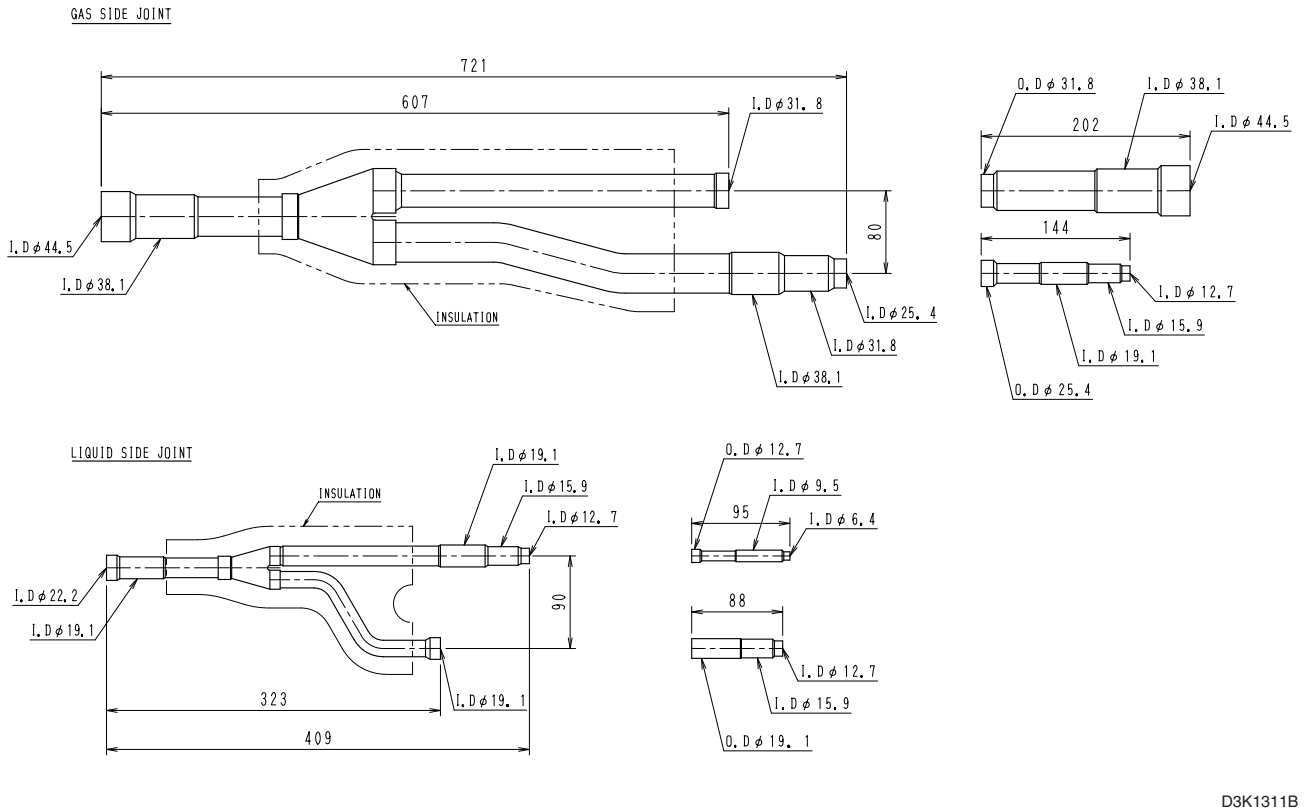
KHRJ26K37T



KHRJ26K40T



KHRJ26K75T

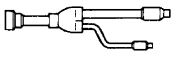
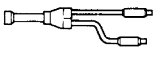
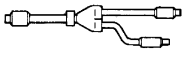
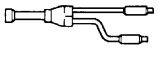


4.1.1 KHRJ26K11·17T

REFNET JOINT INSTALLATION MANUAL (EXCEPT FOR JAPAN)

KHRJ26K17T
KHRJ26K11T

■ THIS KIT INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING PARTS.

KHRJ26K17T				KHRJ26K11T			
GAS SIDE JOINT	LIQUID SIDE JOINT	INSULATION	TAPE	GAS SIDE JOINT	LIQUID SIDE JOINT	INSULATION	TAPE
		 (Gas side/liquid side) 2 pcs.	 8 sheets.			 (Gas side/liquid side) 2 pcs.	 8 sheets.

■ SELECTION PROCEDURE

① **According to the following procedure, use KHRJ26K17T and KHRJ26K11T properly.**

- Total the capacity of indoor unit in the downstream from its JOINT and sclect the kit from the table below.

INDOOR UNIT TOTAL CAPACITY	KIT NAME
Less than 100	KHRJ26K11T
Not less than 100	KHRJ26K17T

- For the model name of indoor unit which can be combined, refer to the installation manual attached to the product.

(Find the indoor unit capacity by calculation from the nominal capacity indicated on the model name according to the table below.)

INDOOR UNIT MODEL NO.	CAPACITY
Type 20	20
Type 25	25
Type 32	31.25
Type 40	40
Type 50	50
Type 63	62.5
Type 80	80
Type 100	100
Type 125	125

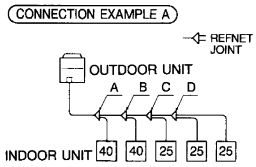
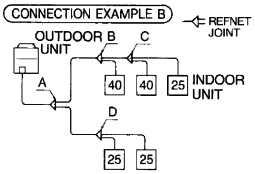
② **According to the following procedure, determine the piping size at each part.**

- Connect between the outdoor unit and the first JOINT according to the pipe size of the outdoor unit.
  ex) For RSXY5HY1 Gas pipe size:φ19.1
  Liquid pipe size:φ9.5
- Total the capacity of indoor unit in the downstream and select the size between JOINTS from the table below.

INDOOR UNIT TOTAL CAPACITY	GAS PIPE SIZE	LIQUID PIPE SIZE
LESS THAN 100	φ15.9	φ9.5
NOT LESS THAN 100	φ19.1	φ9.5

- Connect between the JOINT and indoor unit according to the indoor unit connection size.

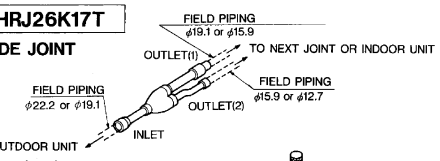
INDOOR UNIT NOMINAL CAPACITY	GAS PIPE SIZE	LIQUID PIPE SIZE
Type 20,25,32,40	φ12.7	φ6.4
Type 50,63,80	φ15.9	φ9.5
Type 100,125	φ19.1	φ9.5

REFRIGERANT PIPING CONNECTION EXAMPLE	JOINT SELECTION PROCEDURE	PIPING SIZE SELECTION PROCEDURE
CONNECTION EXAMPLE A  The figure in □ indicates the indoor unit capacity.	A: Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream ⇨ KHRJ26K17T 40+40+25+25+25=155>100 B: Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream ⇨ KHRJ26K17T 40+25+25+25=115>100 C: Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream ⇨ KHRJ26K11T 25+25+25=75<100 D: Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream ⇨ KHRJ26K11T 25+25=50<100	• Between JOINT (A) and (B): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 40+25+25+25=115>100 ⇨ Gas side piping φ19.1 Liquid side piping φ9.5 • Between JOINT (B) and (C): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 25+25+25=75<100 ⇨ Gas side piping φ15.9 Liquid side piping φ9.5 • Between JOINT (C) and (D): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 25+25=50<100 ⇨ Gas side piping φ15.9 Liquid side piping φ9.5 • Between JOINT (A ~ D) and indoor unit: As per indoor unit connection size ⇨ Gas side piping Liquid side piping As per the table above.
CONNECTION EXAMPLE B  The figure in □ indicates the indoor unit capacity.	A: Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream ⇨ KHRJ26K17T 40+40+25+25+25=155>100 B: Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream ⇨ KHRJ26K17T 40+40+25=105>100 C: Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream ⇨ KHRJ26K11T 40+25=65<100 D: Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream ⇨ KHRJ26K11T 25+25=50<100	• Between JOINT (A) and (B): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 40+40+25=105>100 ⇨ Gas side piping φ19.1 Liquid side piping φ9.5 • Between JOINT (B) and (C): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 40+25=65<100 ⇨ Gas side piping φ15.9 Liquid side piping φ9.5 • Between JOINT (A) and (D): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 25+25=50<100 ⇨ Gas side piping φ15.9 Liquid side piping φ9.5 • Between JOINT (B ~ D) and indoor unit: As per indoor unit connection size ⇨ Gas side piping Liquid side piping As per the table above.

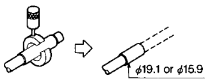
■ INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

For KHRJ26K17T

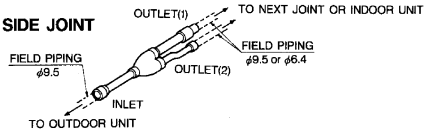
① **GAS SIDE JOINT**



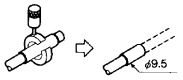
Note: When the piping size of inlet is φ19.1, piping size of outlet(1) is φ19.1 or piping size of outlet(2) is φ15.9, cut the pipe with a pipe cutter for use.



② **LIQUID SIDE JOINT**

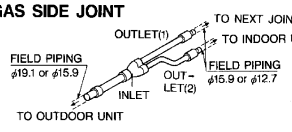


Note: When the piping size of outlet is φ9.5 cut the pipe with a pipe cutter for use.



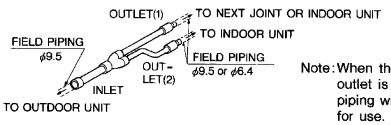
For KHRJ26K11T

① **GAS SIDE JOINT**



Note: When the piping size of inlet is φ19.1 or the piping size of outlet is φ15.9, cut the pipe with a pipe cutter for use.

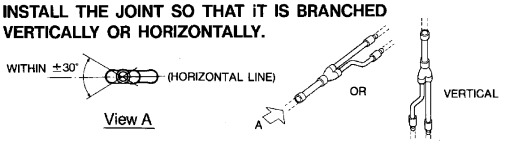
② **LIQUID SIDE JOINT**



Note: When the piping size of outlet is φ9.5, cut the piping with a pipe cutter for use.

■ INSTALLATION PRECAUTIONS

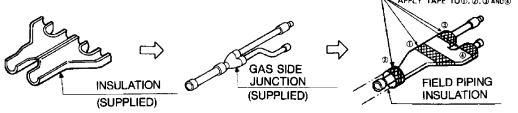
① **INSTALL THE JOINT SO THAT iT IS BRANCHED VERTICALLY OR HORIZONTALLY.**



③ **When the cooling operation may be performed with outdoor temperature 15°C or under, also insulate the liquid side.**

② **BE SURE TO INSULATE THE GAS SIDE JOINT.**

- Seal the insulation and field piping heat insulation joint with the supplied tape.

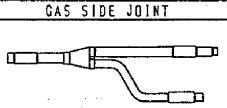
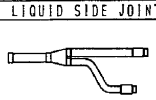
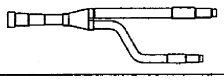
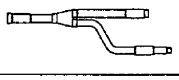
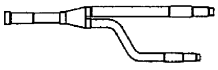
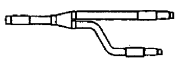


3P234462

4.1.2 KHRJ26K18·37·40T

REFNET JOINT INSTALLATION MANUAL (Except for JAPAN) KHRJ26K18T・37T・40T

■ THIS KIT INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING PARTS.

KIT NAME	SHAPE							
	GAS SIDE JOINT	LIQUID SIDE JOINT	INSULATION	TAPE	REDUCER			
KHRJ26K18T			 (Gas side/ Liquid side) 2 pcs.	 8 sheets				
KHRJ26K37T			 (Gas side/ Liquid side) 2 pcs.	 8 sheets	 φ25.4	 φ28.6		
KHRJ26K40T			 (Gas side/ Liquid side) 2 pcs.	 8 sheets	 φ28.6	 φ38.1	 φ12.7	 φ6.4

SELECTION PROCEDURE

①According to the following procedure.

- First branch counted from the outdoor unit(Type8, 10), use KHRJ26K37T.
- When using REFNET joint on the first branch counted from the function unit side. If system capacity is less than 640, use KHRJ26K40T + KHRJ26K40TP.

(Find the indoor unit capacity by calculation from the nomina capacity indicated on the mode name according to the table 2.

- Next JOINT, total the capacity of indoor unit in the downstream from it is JOINT and select the kit from the table 1.
- For the model name of indoor unit which can be combined, refer to the installation manual attached to the product.

(Table 1)

INDOOR UNIT TOTAL CAPACITY	KIT NAME
Less than 160	KHRJ26K18T
Not less than 160, less than 330	KHRJ26K37T
Not less than 330	KHRJ26K40T
	KHRJ26K40TP

(Table 2)

INDOOR UNIT NOMINAL CAPACITY	CAPACITY
Type 20	20
Type 25	25
Type 32	31.25
Type 40	40
Type 50	50
Type 63	62.5
Type 80	80
Type 100	100
Type 125	125
Type 200	200
Type 250	250

② According to the folloing procedure, determine the piping size at each part.

- Connect between the outdoor unit and the first JOINT according to the outdoor unit connection size.

(Table 3) (Unit:mm)

OUTDOOR UNIT	LIQUID PIPE SIZE	GAS PIPE SIZE
Type 8(HP)	φ12.7	φ25.4
Type 10(HP)	φ12.7	φ28.6

- Connect between the function unit and the first JOINT according to the function unit connection size.

(Table 3) (Unit:mm)

OUTDOOR SYSTEM NAME	LIQUID PIPE SIZE	GAS PIPE SIZE
RXY16K	φ15.9	φ34.9
RXY18~20K	φ19.1	φ34.9
RXY24K	φ19.1	φ41.3

- Total the capacity of indoor unit in the downstream and select the size between JOINTS from the table 4.

(Table 4) (Unit:mm)

INDOOR ~~UNIT~~ TOTAL CAPACITY	LIQUID PIPE SIZE	GAS PIPE SIZE
Less than 100	φ9.5	φ15.9
Not less than 100, less than 160	φ9.5	φ19.1
Not less than 160, less than 330	φ12.7	φ25.4
Not less than 330, less than 480	φ15.9	φ34.9
Not less than 480, less than 640	φ19.1	φ34.9
Not less than 640	φ19.1	φ41.3

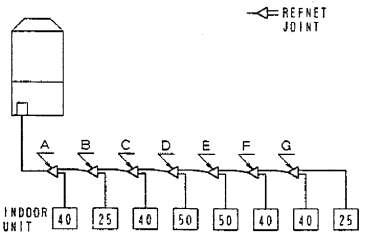
- Connect between the JOINT and indoor unit according to the indoor unit connection size.

(Table 5) (Unit:mm)

INDOOR UNIT NOMINALCAPACITY	LIQUID PIPE SIZE	GAS PIPE SIZE
Types 20・25・32・40	φ6.4	φ12.7
Types 50・63・80	φ9.5	φ15.9
Types 100・125	φ9.5	φ19.1
Types 200	φ12.7	φ25.4
Types 250	φ12.7	φ28.6

REFRIGERANT PIPING CONNECTION EXAMPLE

CONNECTION EXAMPLE



The figure in □ indicates the indoor unit capacity.

JUNCTION SELECTION PROCEDURE

A : First JOINT→KHRJ26K37T

B : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K37T
25+40+50+50+40+40+25=270<330

C : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K37T
40+50+50+40+40+25=245<330

D : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K37T
50+50+40+40+25=205<330

E : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K18T
50+40+40+25=155<160

F : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K18T
40+40+25=105<160

G : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K18T
40+25=65<160

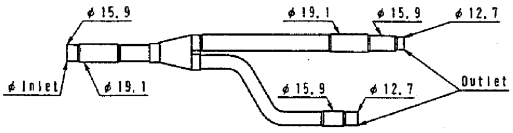
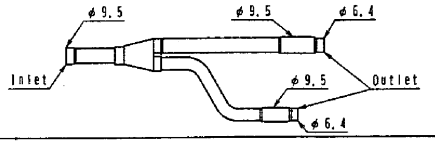
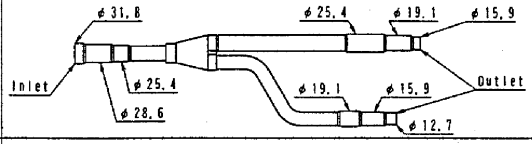
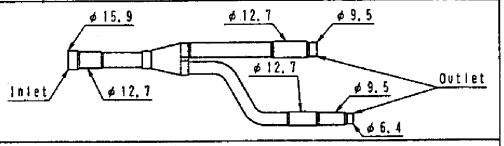
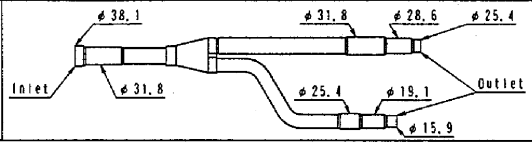
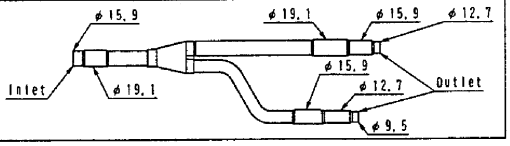
PIPING SIZE SELECTION PROCEDURE

• Between outdoor unit and first JOINT (A)	As per outdoor unit connection size →	Gas/liquid side piping:As per the table 3.
• Between JOINT (A) AND (B)	Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 25+40+50+50+40+40+25=270<330 →	Gas side piping: φ25.4 Liquid side piping: φ12.7
• Between JOINT (B) AND (C)	Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 40+50+50+40+40+25=245<330 →	Gas side piping: φ25.4 Liquid side piping: φ12.7
• Between JOINT (C) AND (D)	Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 50+50+40+40+25=205<330 →	Gas side piping: φ25.4 Liquid side piping: φ12.7
• Between JOINT (D) AND (E)	Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 50+40+40+25=155<160 →	Gas side piping: φ19.1 Liquid side piping: φ9.5
• Between JOINT (E) AND (F)	Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 40+40+25=105<160 →	Gas side piping: φ19.1 Liquid side piping: φ9.5
• Between JOINT (F) AND (G)	Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 40+25=65<160 →	Gas side piping: φ15.9 Liquid side piping: φ9.5
• Between JOINT (A-G) and indoor unit	TAs per indoor unit connection size →	Gas side piping Liquid side piping: As per the table 5.

3P234463

INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

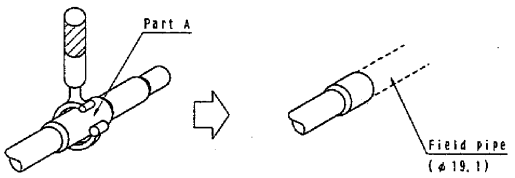
① The pipe size of each parts are shown below.

KIT NAME	GAS SIDE JOINT	LIQUID SIDE JOINT
KHRJ26K18T		
KHRJ26K37T		
KHRJ26K40T		

② According to SELECTION PROCEDURE cut the pipe with a pipe cutter for use.

・When the liquid side pipe size of outlet is φ19.1.

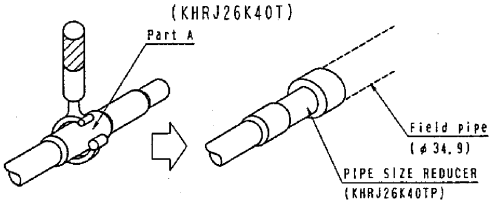
(KHRJ26K40T)



(Cut part A and connect a field pipe.)

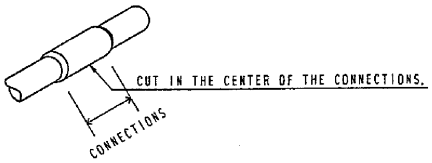
・When the gas side pipe size of outlet is φ34.9.

(KHRJ26K40T)



(Cut part A (φ31.8) and use PIPE SIZE REDUCER.)

・When cutting the inlet/outlet pipes with a pipe cutter, be sure to cut the center of the pipe connections to be cut.



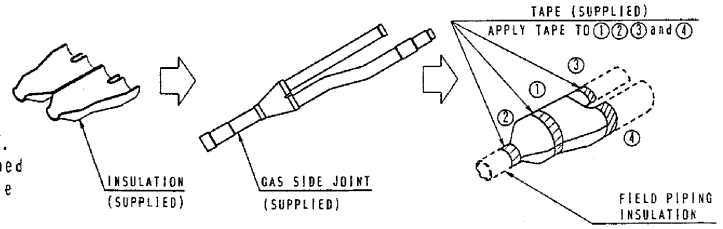
③ Insulation of JOINT

GAS SIDE

・Be sure to insulate the gas side JOINT and the liquid side JOINT.
・Seal the insulation and field piping insulation joint with the supplied tape.

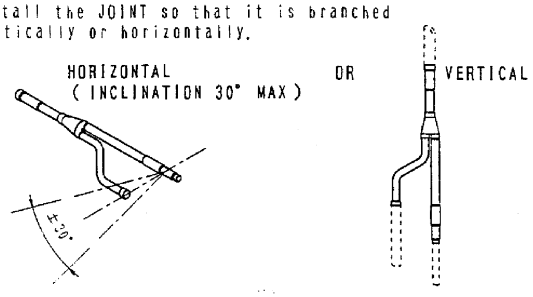
LIQUID SIDE

・For HEAT RECOVER SERIES
Be sure to insulate the liquid side JOINT.
・When the cooling operation may be performed in outdoor temperature 15° C, also insulate the liquid side.



INSTALLATION PRECAUTIONS

・Install the JOINT so that it is branched vertically or horizontally.



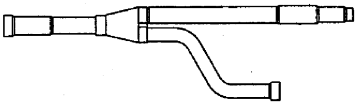
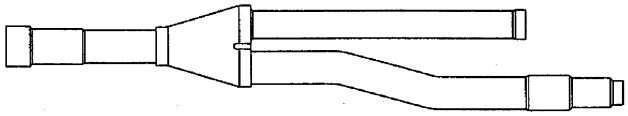
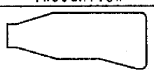
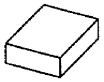
3P234463

4.1.3 KHRJ26K75T

REFNET JOINT INSTALLATION MANUAL (Except for JAPAN)

KHRJ26K75T

■ THIS KIT INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING PARTS.

KHRJ26K75T			
LIQUID SIDE JOINT	GAS SIDE JOINT		
			
REDUCER (Liquid side)	REDUCER (Gas side)	INSULATION	TAPE
		 (Gas side/Liquid side) 2 pcs.	 7 sheets

SELECTION PROCEDURE

①According to the following procedure.

- When using REFNET joint on the first branch counted from the function unit side.
  If system capacity is less than 640, use KHRJ26K40T + KHRJ26K40TP.
  If system capacity is 640 or greater, use KHRJ26K75T + KHRJ26K75TP.
- Next JOINT, total the capacity of indoor unit in the downstream from it is JOINT and select the kit from the table 1.

(Table 1)

INDOOR UNIT TOTAL CAPACITY	KIT NAME
Less than 100	KHRJ26K11T
Not less than 100, less than 160	KHRJ26K18T
Not less than 160, less than 330	KHRJ26K37T
Not less than 330, less than 640	KHRJ26K40T + KHRJ26K40TP
Not less than 640	KHRJ26K75T + KHRJ26K75TP

(Find the indoor unit capacity by calculation from the nominal capacity indicated on the model name according to the table 2.)

(Table 2)

INDOOR UNIT NOMINAL CAPACITY	CAPACITY
Type 20	20
Type 25	25
Type 32	31.25
Type 40	40
Type 50	50
Type 63	62.5
Type 80	80
Type 100	100
Type 125	125
Type 200	200
Type 250	250

② According to the following procedure, determine the piping size at each part.

- Select the pipe size between function unit and the first JOINT from the table 3.

(Table 3) (Unit:mm)

OUTDOOR SYSTEM NAME	LIQUID PIPE SIZE	GAS PIPE SIZE
RXY16K	φ15.9	φ34.9
RXY18~20K	φ19.1	φ34.9
RXY24K	φ19.1	φ41.3
RXY26~30K	φ22.2	φ41.3

- Total the capacity of indoor unit in the downstream and select the size between JOINTS from the table 4.

(Table 4) (Unit:mm)

INDOOR UNIT TOTAL CAPACITY	LIQUID PIPE SIZE	GAS PIPE SIZE
Less than 100	φ9.5	φ15.9
Not less than 100, less than 160	φ9.5	φ19.1
Not less than 160, less than 330	φ12.7	φ25.4
Not less than 330, less than 480	φ15.9	φ34.9
Not less than 480, less than 640	φ19.1	φ34.9
Not less than 640	φ19.1	φ41.3

- Connect between the JOINT and indoor unit according to the indoor unit connection size.

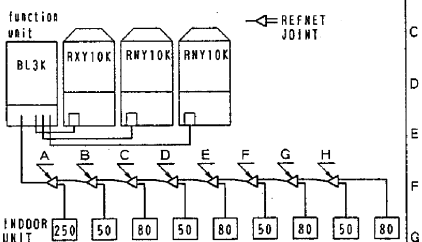
(Table 5) (Unit:mm)

INDOOR UNIT NOMINALCAPACITY	LIQUID PIPE SIZE	GAS PIPE SIZE
Types 20・25・32・40	φ6.4	φ12.7
Types 50・63・80	φ9.5	φ15.9
Types 100・125	φ9.5	φ19.1
Types 200	φ12.7	φ25.4
Types 250	φ12.7	φ28.6

REFRIGERANT PIPING CONNECTION EXAMPLE

OUTDOOR SYSTEM NAME:RXY30K

system capacity:770



The figure in □ indicates the indoor unit capacity.

JUNCTION SELECTION PROCEDURE

A : First JOINT→KHRJ26K75T

B : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K40T
50+80+50+80+50+80+50+80=520<640

C : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K40T
80+50+80+50+80+50+80=470<640

D : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K40T
50+80+50+80+50+80=390<640

E : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K40T
80+50+80+50+80=340<640

F : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K37T
50+80+50+80=260<330

G : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K37T
80+50+80=210<330

G : Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream→KHRJ26K18T
50+80=130<160

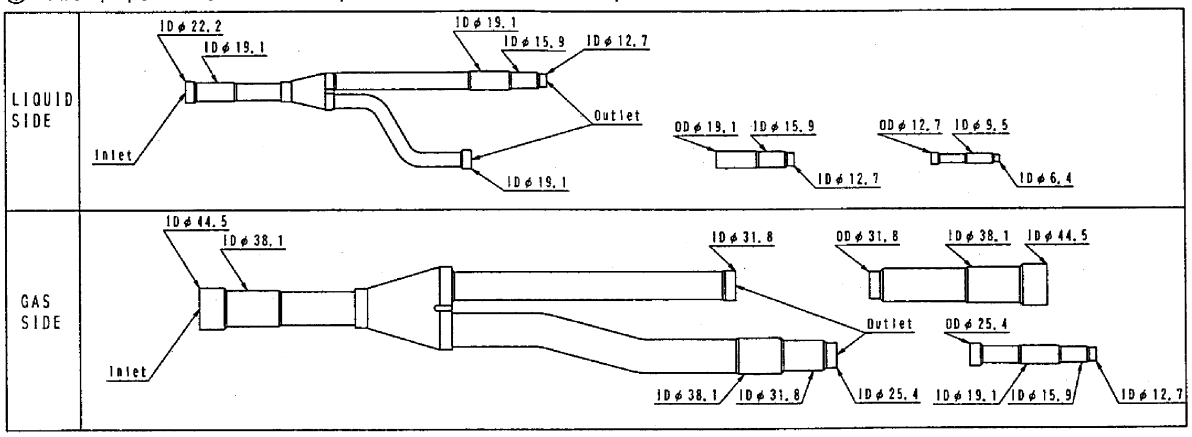
PIPING SIZE SELECTION PROCEDURE

- Between function unit and first JOINT (A): As per function unit connection size → Gas/liquid side piping: As per the table 3.
- Between JOINT (A) AND (B): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 50+80+50+80+50+80+50+80=520<640 → Gas side piping: φ34.9, Liquid side piping: φ19.1
- Between JOINT (B) AND (C): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 80+50+80+50+80+50+80=470<480 → Gas side piping: φ34.9, Liquid side piping: φ15.9
- Between JOINT (C) AND (D): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 50+80+50+80+50+80=390<480 → Gas side piping: φ34.9, Liquid side piping: φ15.9
- Between JOINT (D) AND (E): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 80+50+80+50+80=340<480 → Gas side piping: φ34.9, Liquid side piping: φ15.9
- Between JOINT (E) AND (F): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 50+80+50+80=260<330 → Gas side piping: φ25.4, Liquid side piping: φ12.7
- Between JOINT (F) AND (G): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 80+50+80=210<330 → Gas side piping: φ25.4, Liquid side piping: φ12.7
- Between JOINT (G) AND (H): Total capacity of indoor unit in the downstream 50+80=130<160 → Gas side piping: φ19.1, Liquid side piping: φ9.5
- Between JOINT (A~H) and indoor unit: As per indoor unit connection size → Gas/liquid side piping: As per the table 5.

3P234468

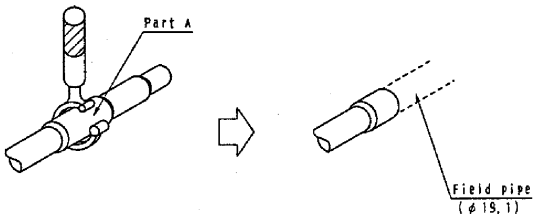
INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

① The pipe size of each parts are shown below.



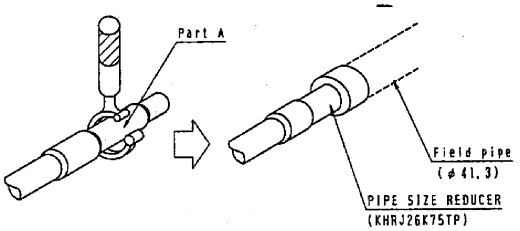
② According to SELECTION PROCEDURE cut the pipe with a pipe cutter for use.

- When the liquid side pipe size of outlet is φ19.1.



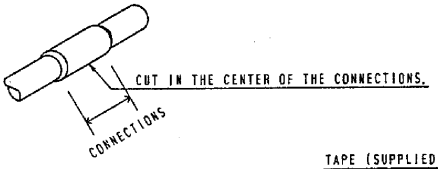
(Cut part A and connect a field pipe.)

- When the gas side pipe size of outlet is φ41.3.



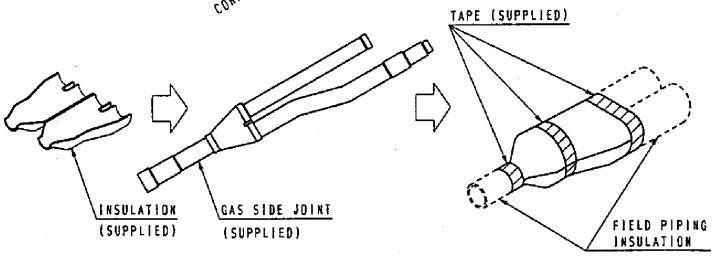
(Cut part A (φ31.8) and use PIPE SIZE REDUCER.)

- When cutting the inlet/outlet pipes with a pipe cutter, be sure to cut the center of the pipe connections to be cut.



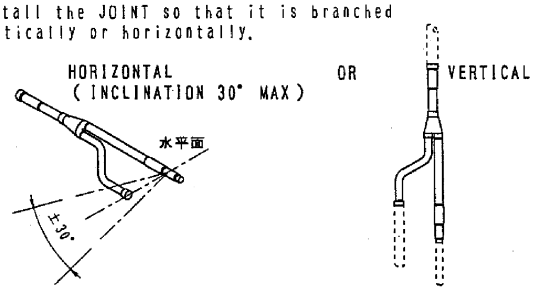
③ Insulation of JOINT

- Be sure to insulate the gas side JOINT and the liquid side JOINT.
- Seal the insulation and field piping insulation joint with the supplied tape.

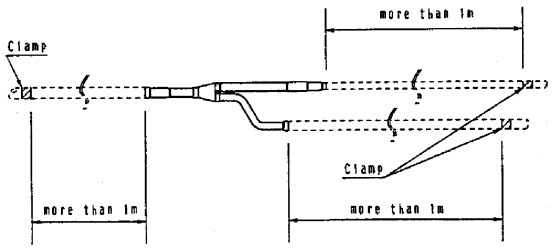


INSTALLATION PRECAUTIONS

- Install the JOINT so that it is branched vertically or horizontally.



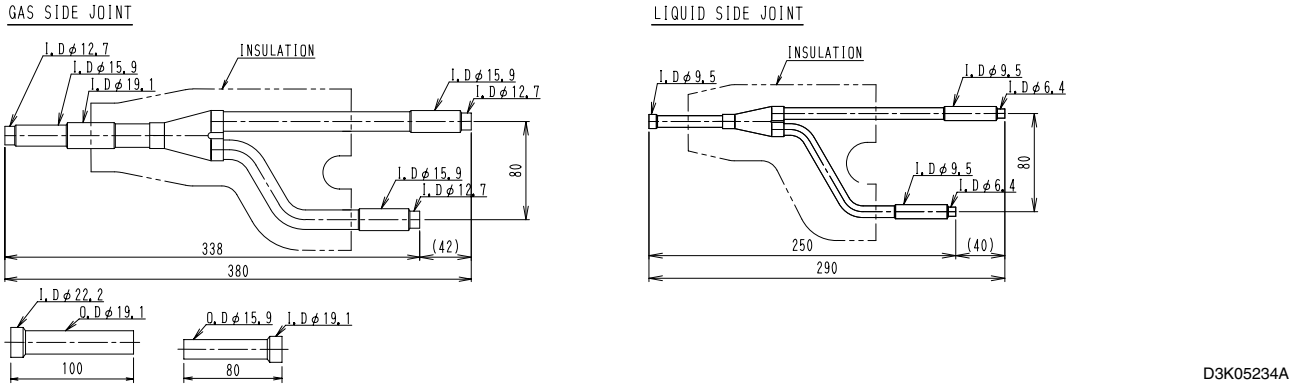
- Fix the field piping, and be sure to put clamp position apart from JOINT (more than 1m).



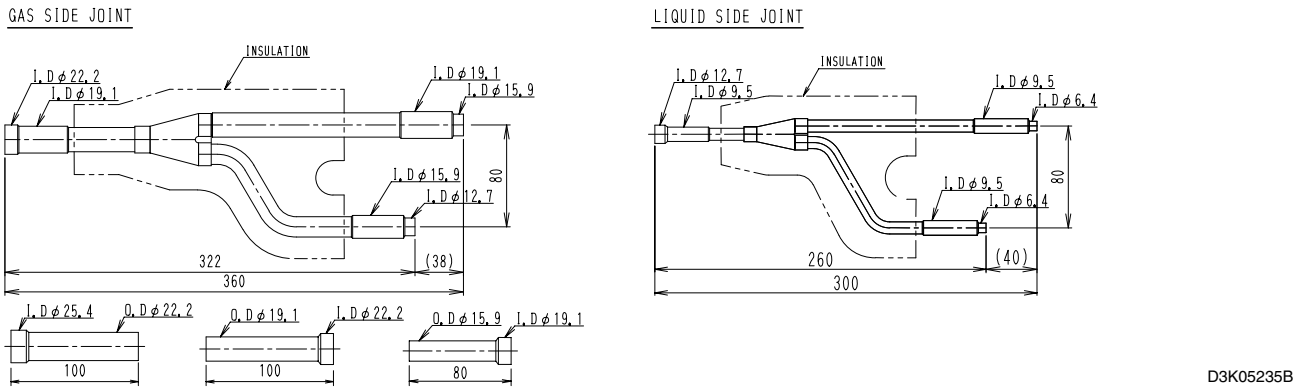
3P234468

4.2 KHRP26A22·33·72·73T

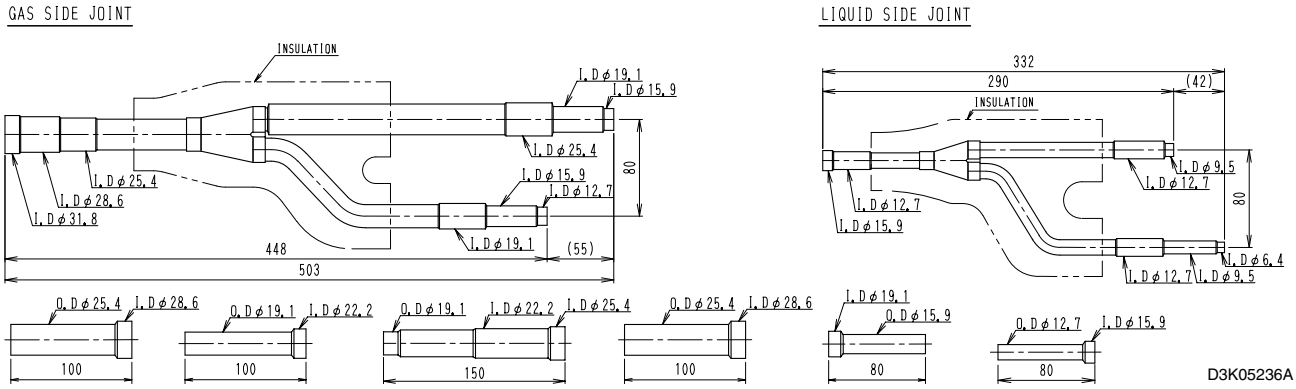
KHRP26A22T



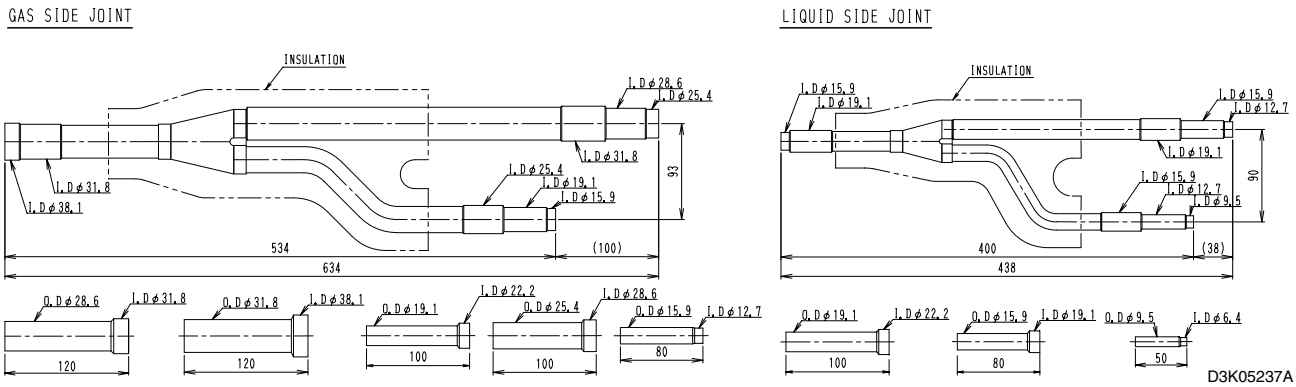
KHRP26A33T



KHRP26A72T



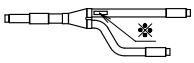
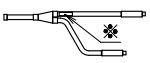
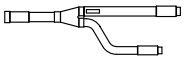
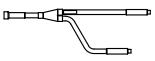
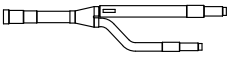
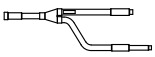
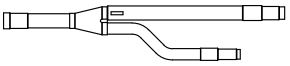
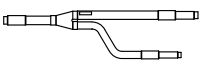
KHRP26A73T



Installation

REFNET JOINT INSTALLATION MANUAL(Except for JAPAN)
KHRP26A22T • 33T • 72T • 73T(FOR R410A)

THIS KIT INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING PARTS.

KIT NAME	SHAPE				
	GAS SIDE JOINT	LIQUID SIDE JOINT	INSULATION	REDUCER(FOR GAS PIPE)	REDUCER(FOR LIQUID PIPE)
KHRP26A 22T			2 pcs.	φ19.1 φ22.2	
KHRP26A 33T			2 pcs.	φ19.1 φ22.2 φ25.4	
KHRP26A 72T			2 pcs.	φ22.2 φ25.4/φ22.2 φ28.6 2 PCS.	φ15.9 φ19.1
KHRP26A 73T			2 pcs.	φ12.7 φ22.2 φ28.6 φ31.8 φ38.1	φ6.4 φ19.1 φ22.2

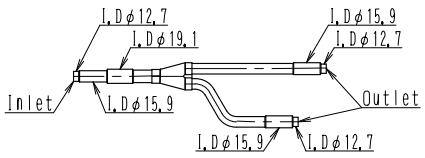
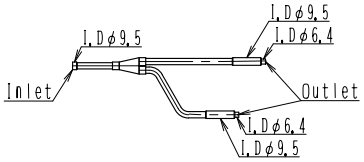
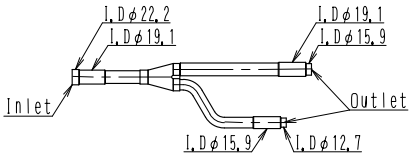
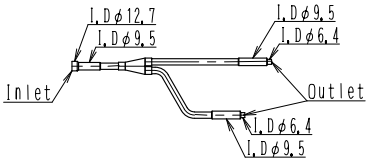
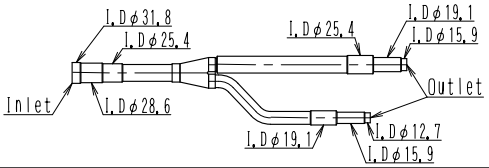
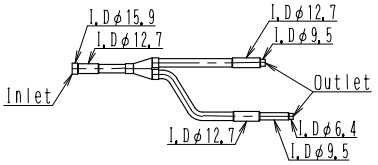
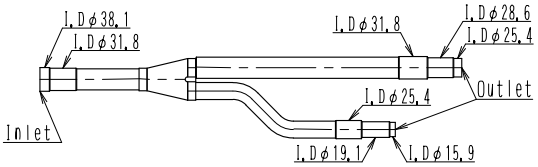
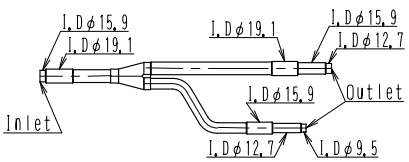
※…Make sure gas side joint and liquid side joint are for R410A. (Label for R410A is attached on each part.)

SELECTION PROCEDURE

According to the INSTALLATION MANUAL of outdoor unit.

INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

❶ The pipe size of each parts are shown below.

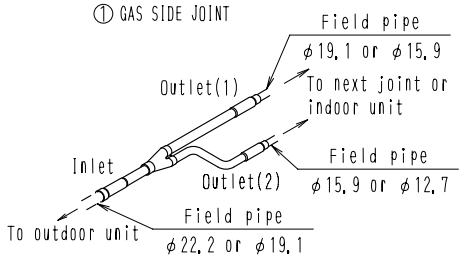
KIT NAME	GAS SIDE JOINT	LIQUID SIDE JOINT
KHRP26A 22T		
KHRP26A 33T		
KHRP26A 72T		
KHRP26A 73T		

2P182411

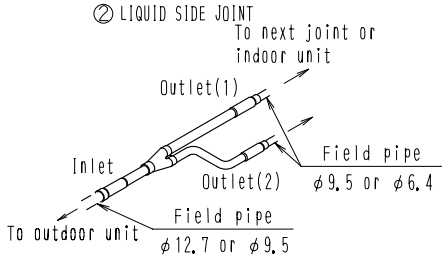
❷ According to SELECTION PROCEDURE, cut the pipe with a pipe cutter for use.

• (Ex.) FOR KHRP26A33T

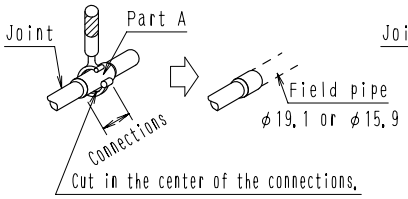
① GAS SIDE JOINT



② LIQUID SIDE JOINT

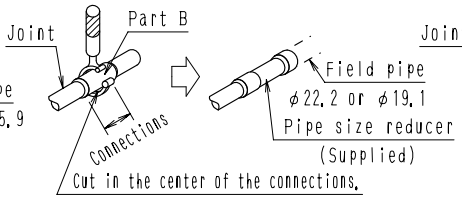


Note)For the size of inlet is φ19.1 or the size of outlet(1) is φ19.1, the size of outlet(2) is φ15.9,
• Cut the pipe with a pipe cutter.



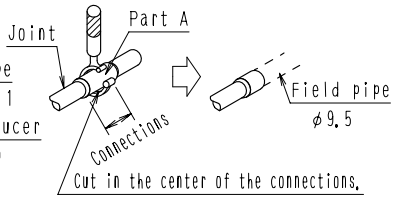
Cut in the center of the part A and connect a field pipe.

Note)For the size of outlet(1) is φ22.2 or the size of outlet(2) is φ19.1,



Cut in the center of the part B, use Pipe size reducer (supplied) and connect a field pipe.

Note)For the size of inlet is φ9.5 or the size of outlet(1) is φ9.5, the size of outlet(2) is φ9.5,
• Cut the pipe with a pipe cutter.



Cut in the center of the part A and connect a field pipe.

• Make sure to flow nitrogen gas through the pipe when brazing.

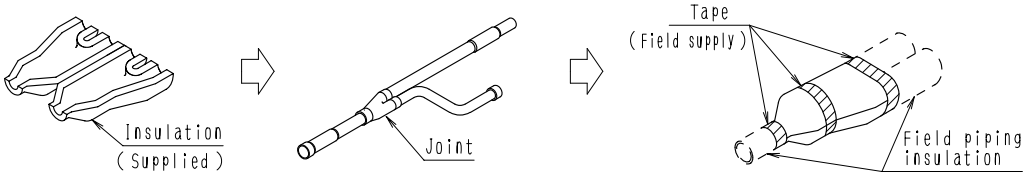
❸ Insulation of Joint

Be sure to insulate the gas and liquid side Joint.

Note) The insulation of the refrigerant piping must be reinforced based on the environment of installation. Otherwise, dew may condensate on the surface of the insulation. For details, see Engineering Data.

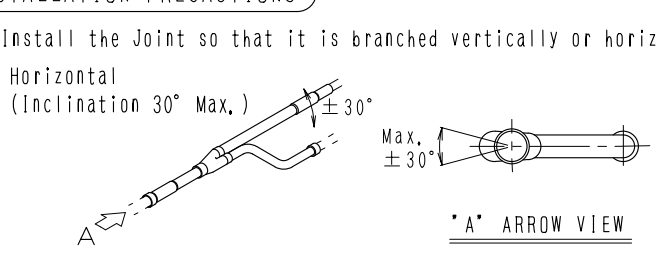
GAS SIDE
- Set the insulation matching the joint and wind the field supplied tape from the center without any clearances on the matching face of insulation.
- Seal the insulation and field piping insulation joint with the field supplied tape.

LIQUID SIDE
- Insulate by the same method as gas side joint.



INSTALLATION PRECAUTIONS

- Install the Joint so that it is branched vertically or horizontally.



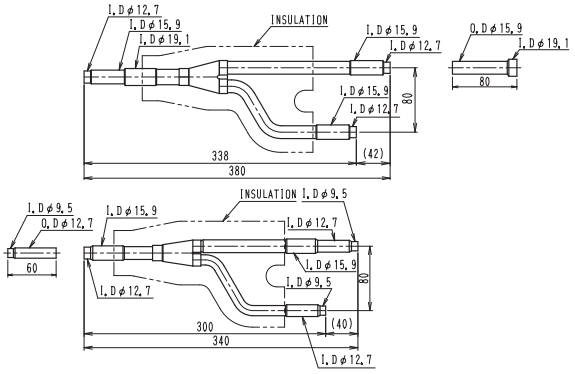
- Do not apply extra force on the piping part. The brazed part may be damaged and it may result in gas leakage.

2P182411

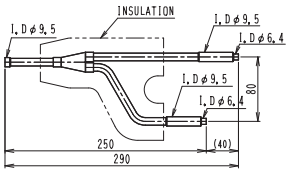
4.3 KHRP25A22·33·72·73T

KHRP25A22T

GAS SIDE JOINT



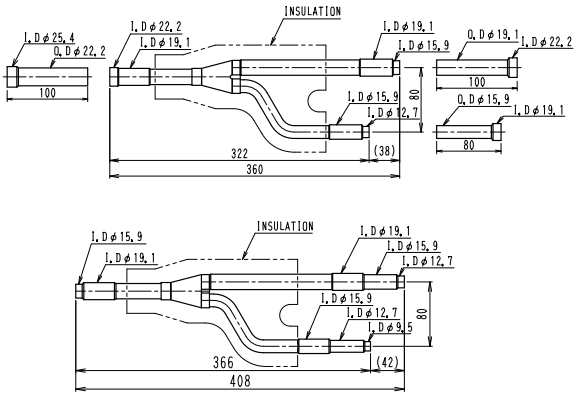
LIQUID SIDE JOINT



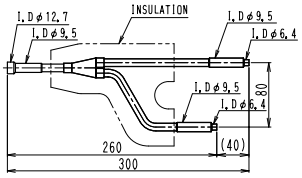
D3K05706

KHRP25A33T

GAS SIDE JOINT



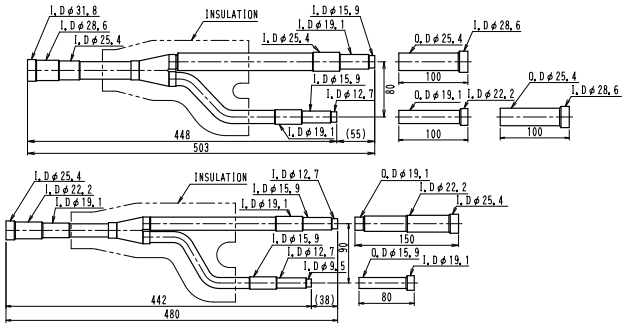
LIQUID SIDE JOINT



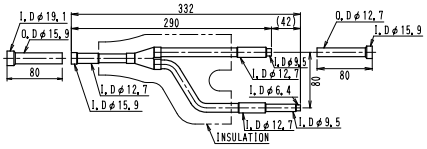
D3K05707

KHRP25A72T

GAS SIDE JOINT



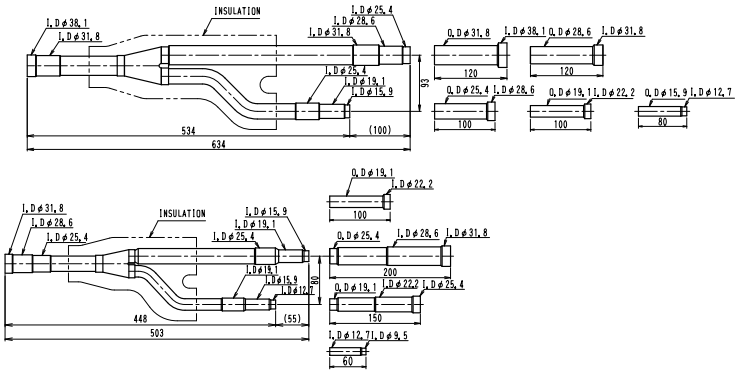
LIQUID SIDE JOINT



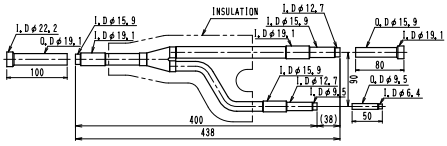
D3K05708

KHRP25A73T

GAS SIDE JOINT



LIQUID SIDE JOINT



D3K05709

Installation

THIS KIT INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING PARTS.

KIT NAME	SHAPE			
	SUCTION GAS SIDE JOINT	HP/LP GAS SIDE JOINT	LIQUID SIDE JOINT	INSULATION
KHRP25A 22T	REDUCER φ19.1	φ9.5		3 pcs.
KHRP25A 33T	REDUCER φ22.2 φ25.4 φ19.1			3 pcs.
KHRP25A 72T	REDUCER φ22.2 φ28.6 ×2pcs.	φ25.4/22.2 φ19.1	φ15.9 φ19.1	3 pcs.
KHRP25A 73T	REDUCER φ12.7 φ22.2 φ28.6 φ31.8 φ38.1	φ31.8/28.6 φ25.4/22.2 φ22.2 φ9.5	φ6.4 φ19.1 φ22.2	3 pcs.

※···Make sure suction gas side joint, HP/LP gas side and liquid side joint are for R410A. (Label for R410A is attached on each part.)

INTRODUCTION

This kit is designed as a refrigerant branching kit for HEAT RECOVERY unit for installation in buildings.

- Between outdoor unit and BS unit (upstream of BS unit), use 3 pipings. Use this kit for such branching application.
- Between BS unit and indoor unit (downstream of BS unit) and between REFNET JOINT and cooling-only indoor unit, use 2 pipings.

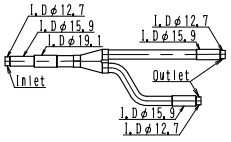
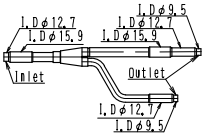
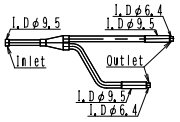
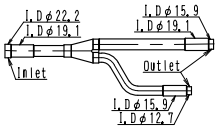
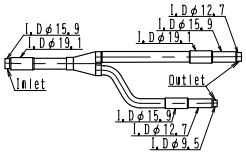
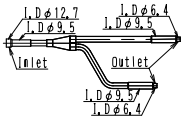
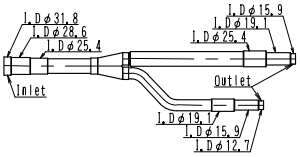
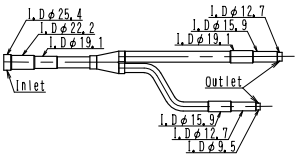
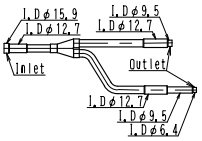
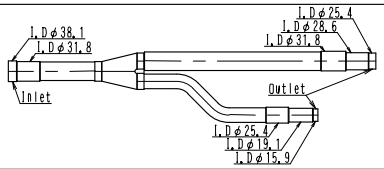
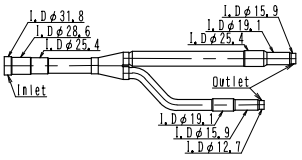
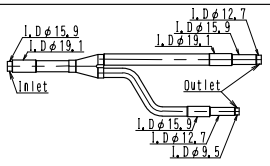
3 pipings	2 pipings	
Upstream of BS unit	Downstream of BS unit	To cooling-only indoor unit
Suction gas side piping HP/LP gas side piping Liquid side piping	Gas side piping Liquid side piping	Suction gas side piping Liquid side piping

SELECTION PROCEDURE

According to the INSTALLATION MANUAL of outdoor unit.

INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

❶ The pipe size of each parts are shown below.

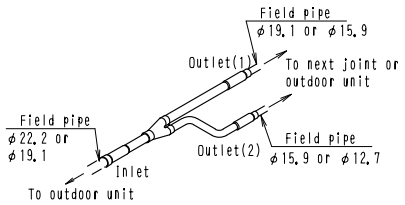
KIT NAME	SUCTION GAS SIDE JOINT	HP/LP GAS SIDE JOINT	LIQUID SIDE JOINT
KHRP25A 22T			
KHRP25A 33T			
KHRP25A 72T			
KHRP25A 73T			

3P203737

❷ According to SELECTION PROCEDURE cut the pipe with a pipe cutter for use.

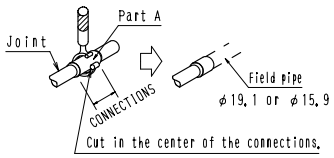
• (Ex)FOR KHRP25A33T

①SUCTION GAS SIDE JOINT

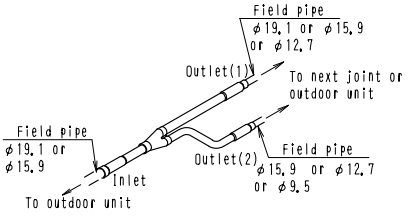


NOTE)For the size of inlet is φ19.1 or the size of outlet(1) is φ19.1, the size of outlet(2) is φ15.9

• Cut the pipe with a pipe cutter.

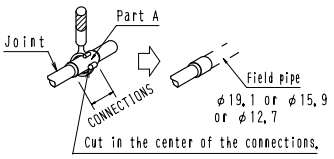


② HP/LP GAS SIDE JOINT

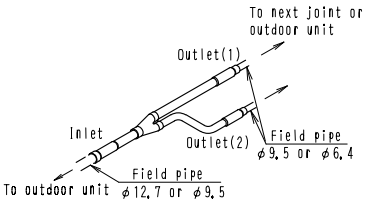


NOTE)For the size of inlet is φ19.1 or the size of outlet(1) is φ19.1 or φ15.9, the size of outlet(2) is φ15.9 or φ12.7

• Cut the pipe with a pipe cutter.

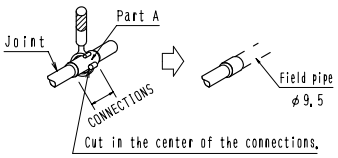


③LIQUID SIDE JOINT



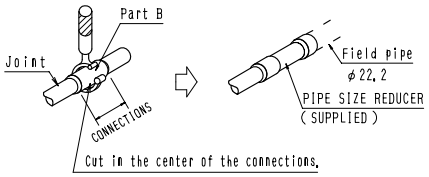
NOTE)For the size of inlet is φ9.5 or the size of outlet(1) or (2) is φ9.5

• Cut the pipe with a pipe cutter.



Cut in the center of the part A and connect a field pipe.

④ When the suction gas side pipe size of outlet(1) is φ22.2.



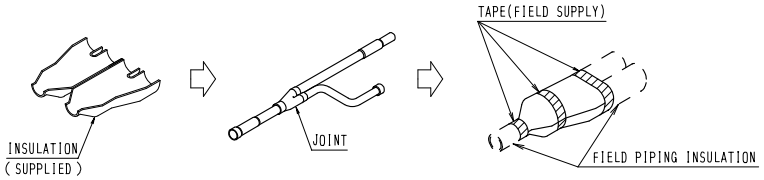
Cut the center of the part B and use PIPE SIZE REDUCER.

• Make sure to flow nitrogen gas through the pipe when brazing.

❸ Insulation of JOINT

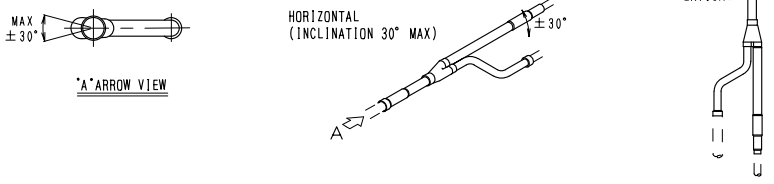
• Be sure to insulate the suction/discharge gas and liquid side JOINT.
Note) The insulation of the refrigerant piping must be reinforced based on the environment of installation. Otherwise, dew may condensate on the surface of the insulation. For details, see Engineering Data.

• Seal the insulation and field piping insulation joint with the field supplied tape.



INSTALLATION PRECAUTIONS

• Install the JOINT so that it is branched vertically or horizontally.



• Do not apply extra force on the piping part. The brazed part may be damaged and it may result in gas leakage.

3P203737

5. Outdoor Unit Multi Connection Piping Kit

5.1 BHF22M90·135

Installation

■THIS KIT INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING PARTS. Table 1

KIT NAME	SHAPE				
	GAS SIDE JOINT	LIQUID SIDE JOINT	REDUCER(FOR GAS PIPE)	REDUCER (FOR LIQUID PIPE)	JOINT FOR OIL PIPE
BHF22M 90	1 pcs.	1 pcs.	(1) 1 pcs. (2) 3 pcs. (3) 2 pcs.	1 pcs.	
BHF22M 135	(1) 1 pcs. (2) 1 pcs.	(1) 1 pcs. (2) 1 pcs.	(1) 1 pcs. (2) 2 pcs. (3) 4 pcs. (4) 2 pcs.	2 pcs.	1 pcs.

NOTE) • Installation of outdoor units refer to INSTALLATION MANUAL of outdoor unit.
• Installation of refrigerant pipes between outdoor and indoor units need to arrange for REFNET JOINT and REFNET HEADER.
• Combination of outdoor units follow Engineering Data.

■FIELD SUPPLY PARTS Table 2

PARTS	QUANTITY	SELECTION PROCEDURE
INSULATION FOR PIPE	1 SET	FOR BHF22M90 :Refer to Table4, 5 FOR BHF22M135 :Refer to Table7, 8, 9
REFRIGERANT PIPES		
JOINT (FOR GAS PIPE/ANGLE OF 90 DEGREES)	1 pcs.	Joint size must be the same as gas side pipe size of the upper side outdoor unit. FOR BHF22M90 :Refer to Table5 FOR BHF22M135 :Refer to Table9
TAPE	1 SET	(FOR INSULATION)

■SELECTION PROCEDURE Table 3

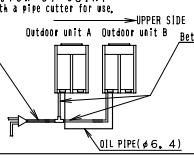
NO. of outdoor units	KIT NAME
2units	BHF22M90
3units	BHF22M135

FOR BHF22M90 ⚠CAUTION Outdoor units multi connection piping connect right according to the INSTALLATION MANUAL of outdoor unit.

Pipe size selection and cutting position of JOINT
According to the following table cut the joint or reduser with a pipe cutter for use.

Between the outdoor unit and the refrigerant branch kit
• Select the proper pipe size based on the total capacity index of outdoor units. Table 4

Total capacity index of outdoor units	Pipe size (Unit : mm) GAS	LIQUID
450 ≦ X ≦ 550	ϕ34. 9	ϕ19. 1
605	ϕ41. 3	
650 ≦ X ≦ 800		ϕ22. 2



Between the outdoor unit and the connection piping kit Table 5

Capacity index of outdoor units	Pipe size (Unit : mm) GAS	LIQUID
200・250	ϕ28. 6	ϕ12. 7
300・350 ・400	ϕ34. 9	ϕ15. 9

• Cut the pipe with a pipe catter.

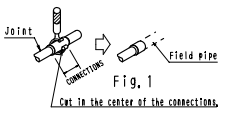


Fig. 1

❶ ILLUSTRATION IN CASE OF FRONT PIPING

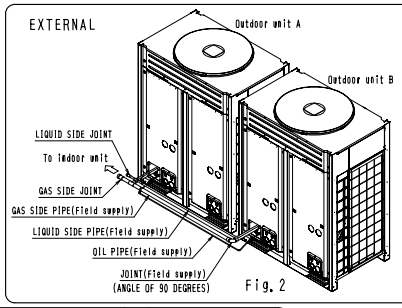


Fig. 2

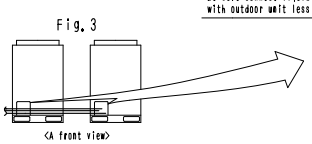
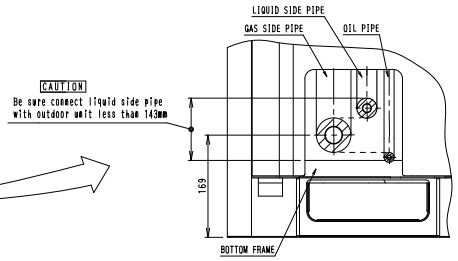


Fig. 3



❷ INSTALLATION OF GAS SIDE PIPES

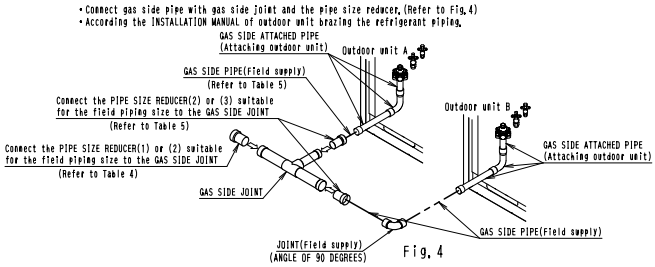


Fig. 4

❸ INSTALLATION OF LIQUID SIDE PIPES AND OIL PIPE

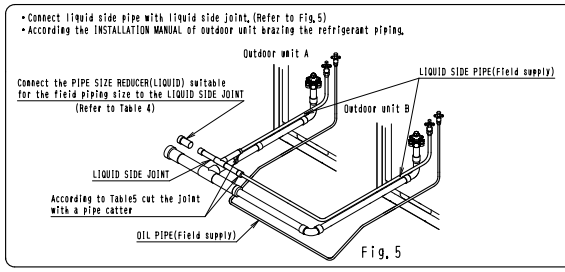


Fig. 5

❹ AFTER CONNECTION PIPING

4-1 CONNECTION PIPING BETWEEN THE OUTDOOR UNIT AND INDOOR UNIT
• According to the INSTALLATION MANUAL of outdoor unit.

4-2 INSULATION OF JOINT
• Seal the insulation and field piping insulation joint with the tape.

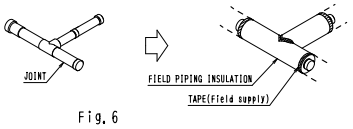


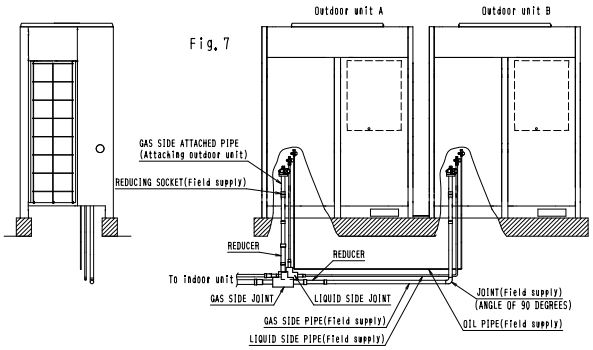
Fig. 6

1P115031

❶ ILLUSTRATION IN CASE OF UNDERSIDE PIPING

⚠CAUTION Be sure to secure space for brazing and piping work under the outdoor unit.

Fig. 7



• According to IN CASE OF FRONT PIPING connect the pipes with the JOINT and the PIPE SIZE REDUCER.

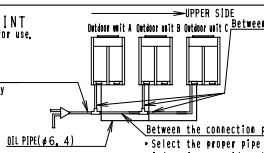
FOR BHF22M135 ⚠CAUTION Outdoor units multi connection piping connect right according to the INSTALLATION MANUAL of outdoor unit.

Pipe size selection and cutting position of JOINT
According to the following table cut the joint or reduser with a pipe cutter for use.

Between the outdoor unit and the refrigerant branch kit
• Select the proper pipe size based on the total capacity index of outdoor units.

Table 7

Total capacity index of outdoor units	Pipe size (Unit : mm) GAS	LIQUID
855	ϕ41. 3	ϕ22. 2
900 ≦ X	ϕ54. 1	



Between the outdoor unit and the connection piping kit

Table 9

Capacity index of outdoor units	Pipe size (Unit : mm) GAS	LIQUID
200・250	ϕ28. 6	ϕ12. 7
300・350 ・400	ϕ34. 9	ϕ15. 9

Between the connection piping kit and the connection piping kit
• Select the proper pipe size based on the total capacity index of upper side outdoor units.

Table 8

Total capacity index of outdoor units	Pipe size (Unit : mm) GAS	LIQUID
500 ≦ X ≦ 550	ϕ34. 9	ϕ19. 1
605	ϕ41. 3	ϕ22. 2
650 ≦ X ≦ 800		

• Cut the pipe with a pipe catter.

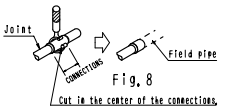


Fig. 8

Cut ie the center of the connections.

❶ ILLUSTRATION IN CASE OF FRONT PIPING

EXTERNAL

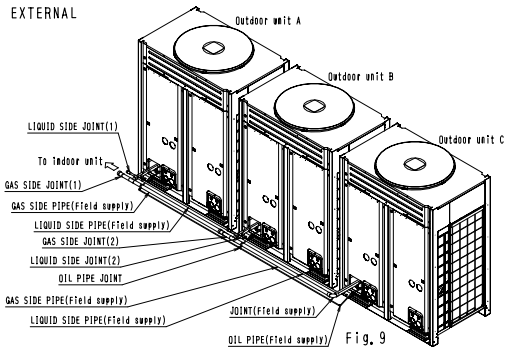
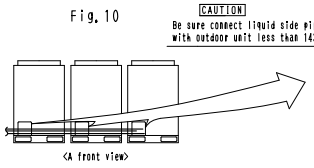


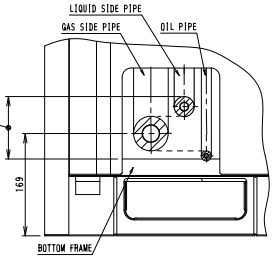
Fig. 9

Fig. 10

CAUTION
Be sure connect liquid side pipe with outdoor unit less than 143㎜



<A front view>



❷ INSTALLATION OF PIPES

2-1 CONNECTION GAS SIDE PIPING

• Connect gas side pipe with gas side joint and the pipe size reducer. (Refer to Fig. 11)
• According the INSTALLATION MANUAL of outdoor unit brazing the refrigerant piping.

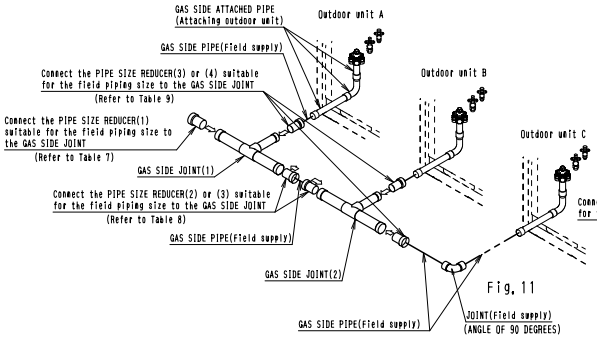


Fig. 11

2-2 CONNECTION LIQUID SIDE AND OIL PIPING

• Connect liquid side pipe with liquid side joint. (Refer to Fig. 12)
• According the INSTALLATION MANUAL of outdoor unit brazing the refrigerant piping.

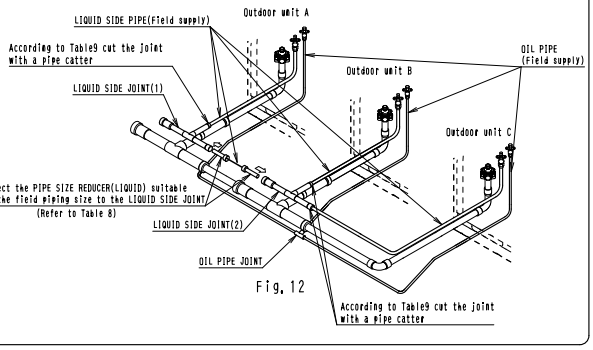


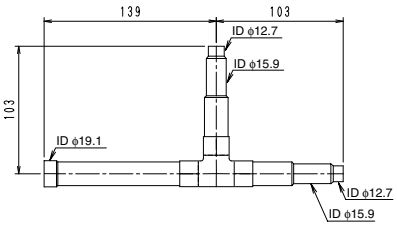
Fig. 12

❸ AFTER CONNECTION PIPNG

IN CASE OF UNDERSIDE PIPING	• Be sure to secure space for brazing and piping work under the outdoor unit. • According to Fig. 7 install the kit.

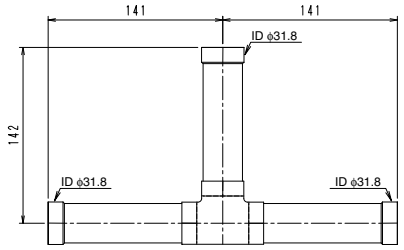
1P115031

BHF22M90 - Liquid Pipe



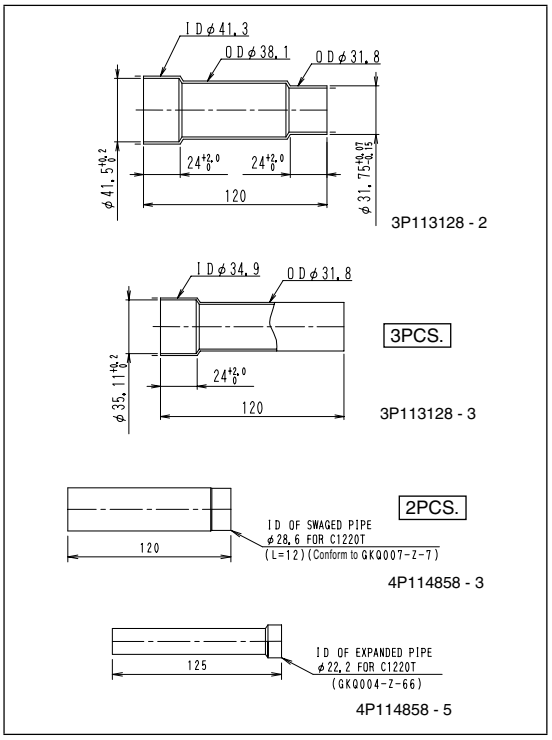
4P114979

BHF22M90 - Gas Pipe

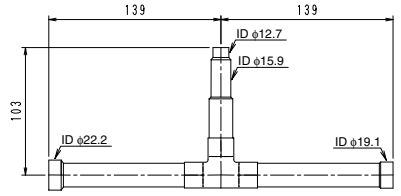


4P114977

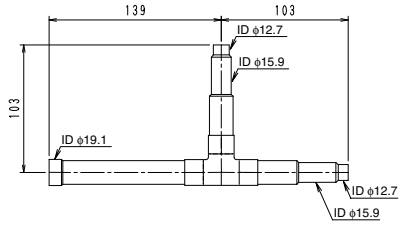
Reducer



BHF22M135 - Liquid Pipe

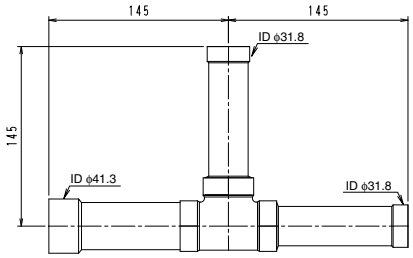


4P114980

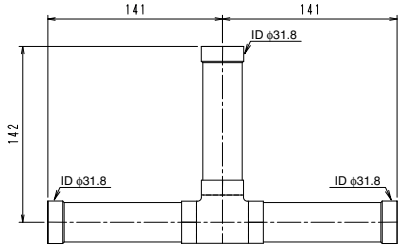


4P114979

BHF22M135 - Gas Pipe

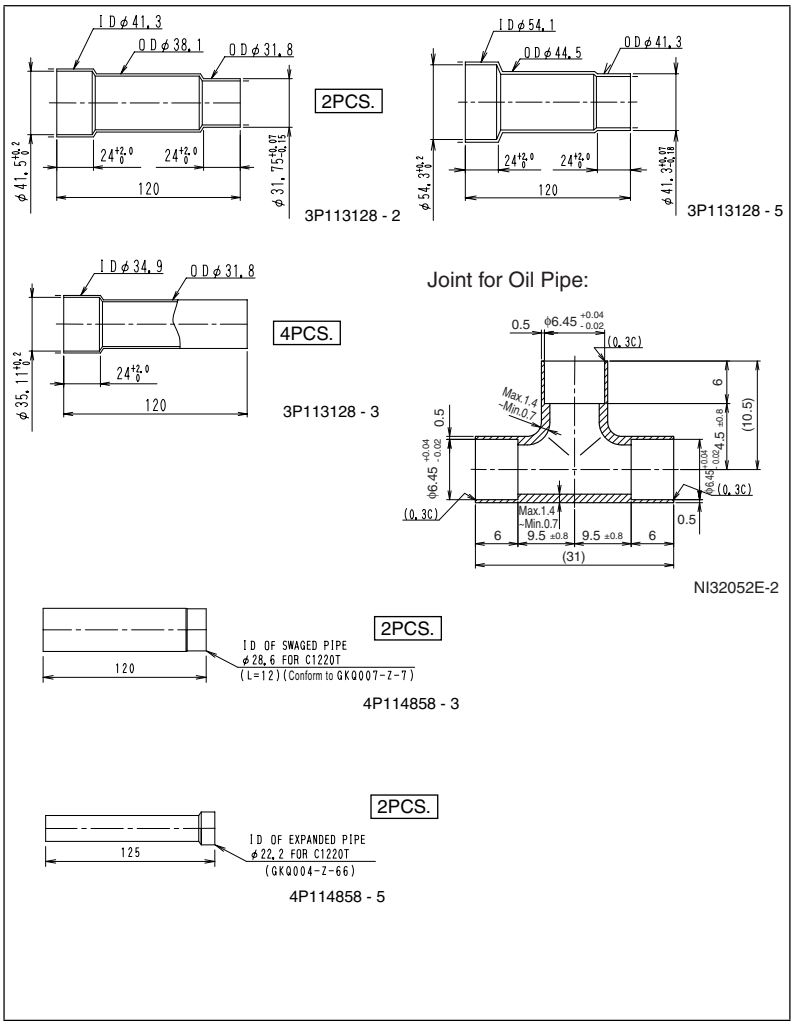


4P114978



4P114977

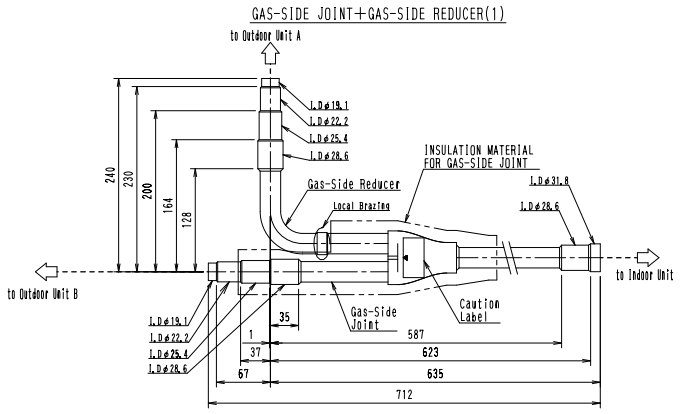
Reducer

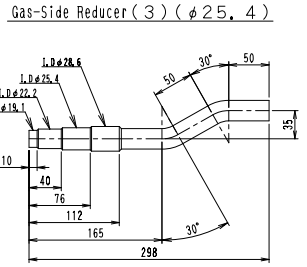


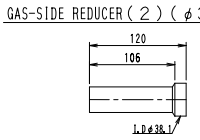
5.2 BHFP22P100·151

BHFP22P100

Gas side

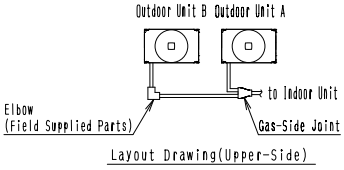




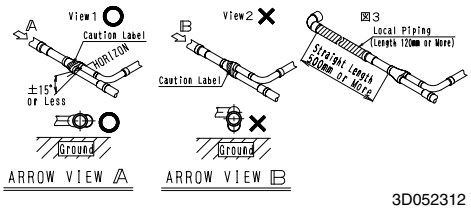


Accessory

GAS-SIDE JOINT : 1
LIQUID-SIDE JOINT : 1
GAS-SIDE REDUCER(1) : 1
GAS-SIDE REDUCER(2) : 1
GAS-SIDE REDUCER(3) : 1
GAS-SIDE REDUCER(7) : 1
GAS-SIDE REDUCER(9) : 1
LIQUID-SIDE REDUCER(1) : 1
LIQUID-SIDE REDUCER(3) : 1
LIQUID-SIDE REDUCER(5) : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR GAS-SIDE JOINT : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR LIQUID-SIDE JOINT : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR GAS-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR LIQUID-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSTALLATION MANUAL

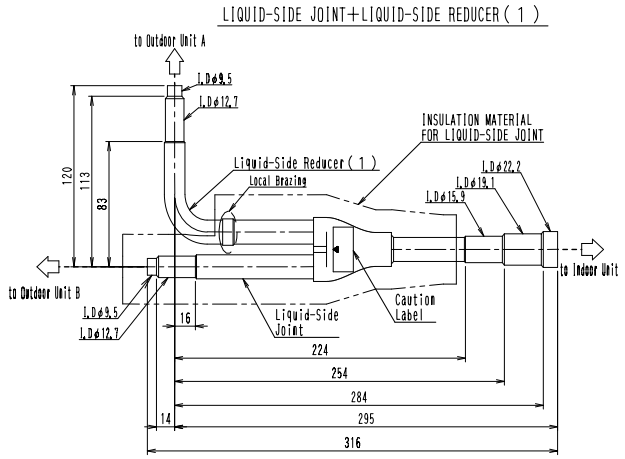


NOTE)1. "------" in the figure show field supply piping.
2. About size of connection pipe refer the "engineering data of VRV Ⅲ".
3. In case of install this kit observe follow conditiones.
- Do not tilt the joint more than ±15°.
Install the joint horizontally so that the caution label attached to joint comes to the top.
- Do not install the joint vertically why it may cause the malfunction of outdoor unit.
- Make sure the piping up to the joint is straight for more than 500mm. Do not bend the field piping within this range. If a straight field piping more than 120mm is connected, more than 500mm of straight section can be ensured.



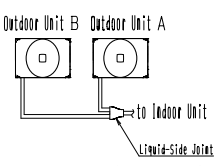
3D052312

Liquid side

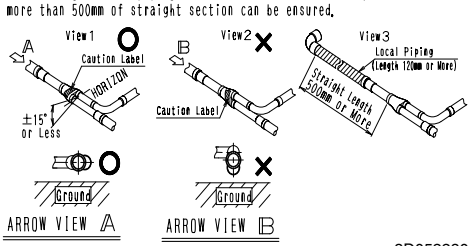


Accessory

GAS-SIDE JOINT : 1
LIQUID-SIDE JOINT : 1
GAS-SIDE REDUCER(1) : 1
GAS-SIDE REDUCER(2) : 1
GAS-SIDE REDUCER(3) : 1
GAS-SIDE REDUCER(7) : 1
GAS-SIDE REDUCER(9) : 1
LIQUID-SIDE REDUCER(1) : 1
LIQUID-SIDE REDUCER(3) : 1
LIQUID-SIDE REDUCER(5) : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR GAS-SIDE JOINT : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR LIQUID-SIDE JOINT : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR GAS-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR LIQUID-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSTALLATION MANUAL



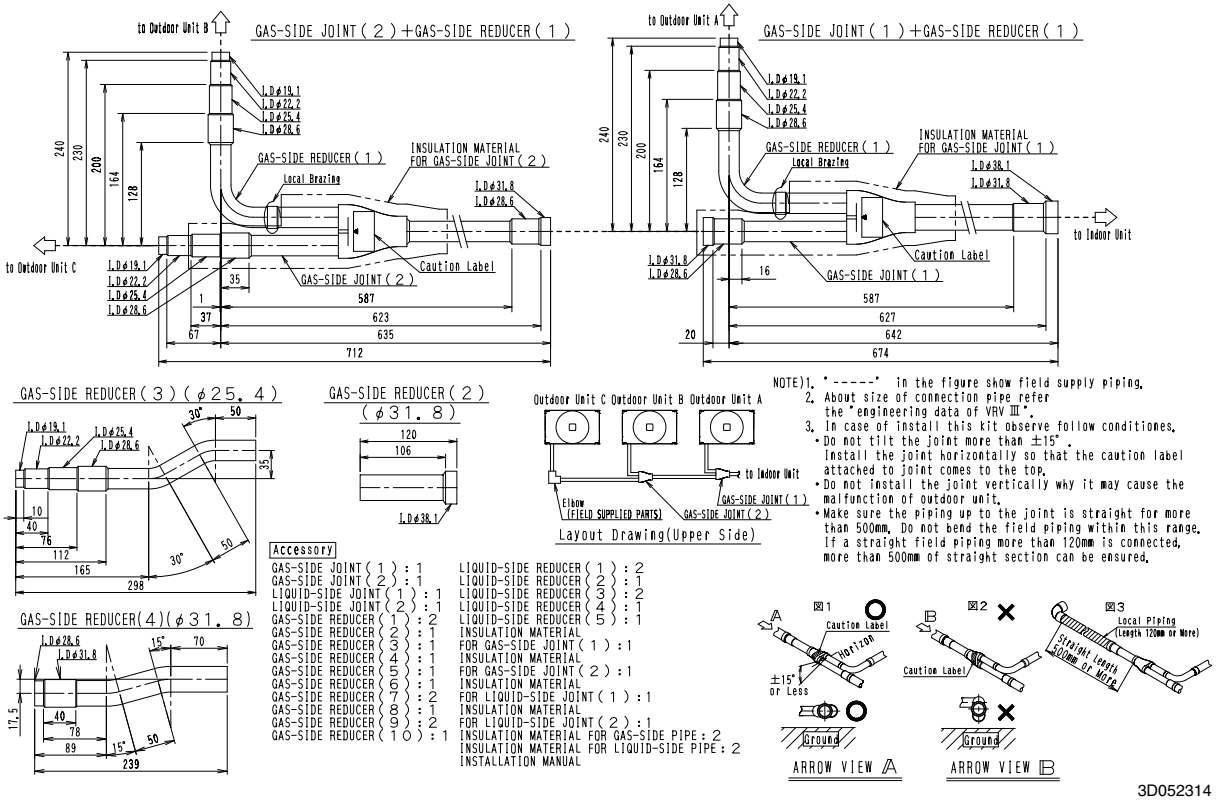
NOTE)1. "------" in the figure show field supply piping.
2. About size of connection pipe refer the "engineering data of VRV Ⅲ".
3. In case of install this kit observe follow conditiones.
- Do not tilt the joint more than ±15°.
Install the joint horizontally so that the caution label attached to joint comes to the top.
- Do not install the joint vertically why it may cause the malfunction of outdoor unit.
- Make sure the piping up to the joint is straight for more than 500mm. Do not bend the field piping within this range. If a straight field piping more than 120mm is connected, more than 500mm of straight section can be ensured.



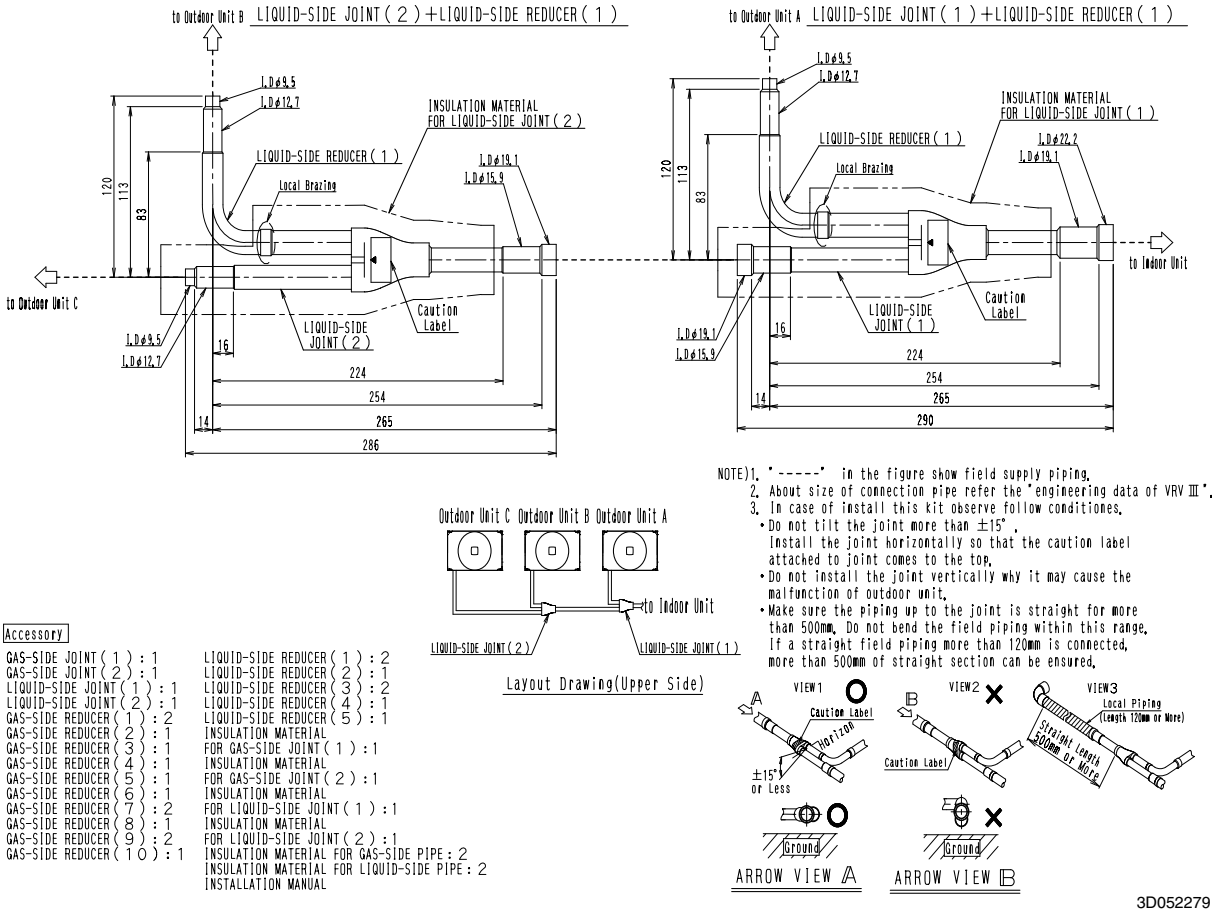
3D052280

BHFP22P151

Gas side



Liquid side



VRV III Series

Please be sure to read before installation and follow the instructions carefully when performing installation work.

1P173261−1A

Outdoor unit Multi Connection Piping Kit Installation Manual

BHFP22P100 • BHFP22P151

Component parts

■This kit contains the following parts. **<Do not throw away any of the accessories until installation is complete.>**

Kit name	SHAPE					
	Gas-side joint	Liquid-side joint	Gas-side reduser	Liquid-side reduser	Insulation tube for gas pipe	Insulation tube for liquid pipe
BHFP 22 P100	1pc	1pc	(1) 1pc (2) 1pc (3) 1pc (7) 1pc (9) 1pc	(1) 1pc (3) 1pc (5) 1pc	Big 1pc	Small 1pc
BHFP 22 P151	1pc	1pc	(1) 2pc (2) 1pc (3) 1pc (4) 2pc (5) 1pc (6) 1pc (7) 2pc (8) 1pc (9) 2pc (10) 1pc	(1) 2pc (2) 1pc (3) 2pc (4) 1pc (5) 1pc	Big 2pc	Small 2pc

Caution
- Please be sure to read this manual before installation and follow the instruction carefully when performing installation work.
- See the outdoor unit's installation manual for outdoor unit installation.
- Installation of interconnecting piping between the outdoor and indoor units, REFNET joint or REFNET header will be needed separately.

Selection Procedure

Number of outdoor units connected	2 units	3 units
Outdoor unit Multi Connection Piping Kit	BHFP22P100	BHFP22P151

- 2 or 3 outdoor units can be connected.
- There are restrictions on the combination and the installation order of outdoor units, so please refer to "the Engineering Data of VRV III" and "the Installation manual" (attached sheet of outdoor unit) for details.

Field supply parts

■The following parts are needed to connect this kit and are not included.

Field supply parts		
Name	Q'ty	Selection Procedure
Insulation for piping	1set	See the "Connecting Pipe Sizes and location of cutting the joint" for details on the necessary size.
Connection piping	1pc	Prepare a gas pipe diameter for the upper outdoor unit as listed in "Connecting Pipe Sizes and location of cutting the joint."
Elbow		
Tape	1set	For insulation materials

Caution
- Quantity and selection procedure of elbow only applies to a front or bottom connection.
- For a lower front connection, the quantity and selection procedure are different, so please refer to the instructions for a lower front connection.
- A joint for the same diameter pipes is needed only for a bottom connection. See the instructions for the bottom connection for details on quantity and specifications.
- The min. thickness of the pipes in this manual shows the requirements of Japanese High Pressure Gas Control law, (As of Jan, 2003) And the temper grade (O, 1/2H) shows the material type of JIS H 3300. The thickness and material shall be selected in accordance with local code for the design pressure 4.0MPa(40bar).

(Unit : mm)

Temper grade	O Type						1/2H Type					
Copper tube O.D.	ø6.4	ø9.5	ø12.7	ø15.9	ø19.1	ø22.2	ø25.4	ø28.6	ø31.8	ø34.9	ø38.1	ø41.3
Copper tube t (Minimum requirement)	0.80	0.80	0.80	0.99	0.80	0.80	0.88	0.99	1.10	1.21	1.32	1.43

To the pipeing installer

When installing this kit, please apply the following restrictions.

Restrictions on Installing Multi Connection Piping Kit

- Install the joint horizontally so that the caution label attached to joint comes to the top. Do not tilt the joint more than ±15°. (See Fig. 1), In addition, do not install the joint vertically. (See Fig. 2)
- Make sure the piping up to the joint is straight for more than 500mm. Do not bend the field piping within this range. If a straight field piping more than 120mm is connected, more than 500mm of straight section can be ensured. (See Fig. 3)
- Improper installation may lead to malfunction of the outdoor unit.

Fig1

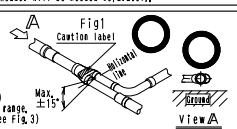


Fig2

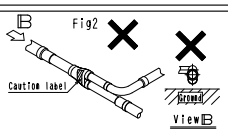
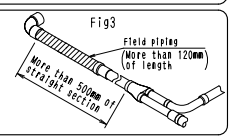
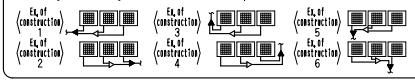


Fig3

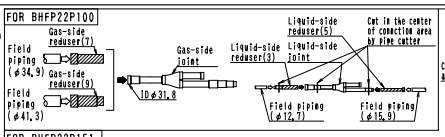


Installation examples

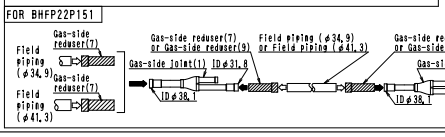
- The figure at the lower shows a typical front connection. Make sure to follow the installation restrictions and carry out installation taking the field requirements into consideration.
- This manual explains the front connection <Ex. of construction 1>.
- For 3-unit installation on Ex. of construction 5 and 6, in some cases the reducers (5), (6) or (10) for gas piping and the reducers (2) and (3) for liquid piping may be used on the 1st joint (section shown with ◀). See the figure at the right for details of connection.
- When the size of the Gas-side pipe between the Gas-side joint (1) and Gas-side joint (2) on the 3-units system or the size of the main pipe is ø41.3 or ø34.9, Gas-side reducer (7), (8) and (9) will be used. See the figure at the right for details of connection.
- When the size of the Liquid-side pipe between the Liquid-side joint (1) and Liquid-side joint (2) on the 3-units system is ø12.7, Liquid-side reducer (3) will be used. And when the side of main pipeis ø15.9, Liquid-side reducer (4) will be used. See the figure at the right for details of connection.

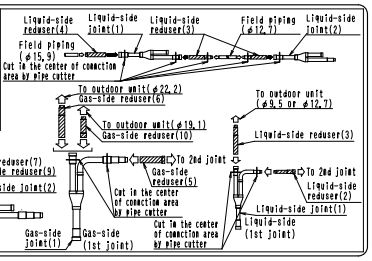


FOR BHFP22P100



FOR BHFP22P151





BHFP22P100 Installation Instructions

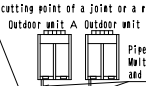
Caution There are some restrictions on the interconnecting piping between the outdoor units. See the installation manual attached to the outdoor units and make sure to carry out proper piping. If the piping restrictions are not observed, it may result in malfunction of the unit.

Connecting pipe sizes and location of cutting the joint

Select cutting point of a joint or a reducer which is suitable for the size of the interconnecting pipes determined according to the table below and cut it with a pipe cutter.

Main pipe
● Select the pipe size according to the total capacity of outdoor unit. (units : mm)

Outdoor unit total capacity type	Pipe size (O.D. x min. thickness [temper grade])	
	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
16HP	ø28.6X0.99[1/2H]	ø12.7X0.80[O]
18~22HP		ø15.9X0.99[O]
24HP	ø34.9X1.21[1/2H]	
26~34HP		ø19.1X0.80[1/2H]
36HP	ø41.3X1.43[1/2H]	



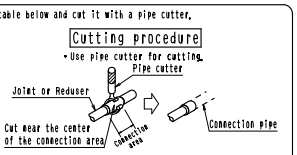
(units:mm)

Outdoor unit capacity type	Pipe size (O.D. x min. thickness [temper grade])	
	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
8HP	ø19.1X0.80[1/2H]	ø 9.5X0.80[O]
10HP	ø22.2X0.80[1/2H]	
12~16HP	ø28.6X0.99[1/2H]	ø12.7X0.80[O]
18HP		ø15.9X0.99[O]

- When unsizing the main pipe, use the gas side reducer (2).
- If the pipe size of ø19.1 or larger is used, the O material may be insufficient to withstand the specified pressure. Therefore, make sure to use the 1/2H material with thickness of 1.0mm or more. When using the O material for the pipe size of ø19.1, a thickness of 1.2 or more is required. In this case, the connection must be brazed.

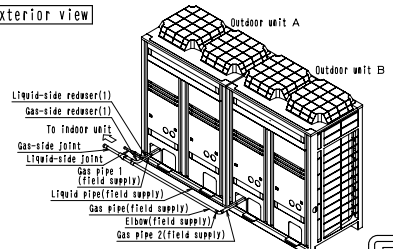
Cutting procedure

- Use pipe cutter for cutting.

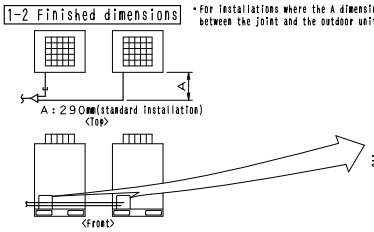


❶ Installation examples — Procedure for Front Connection

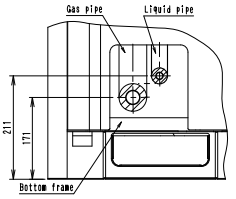
1-1 Exterior view



1-2 Finished dimensions



- For installations where the A dimensions exceed 290mm, extend the field supply interconnecting pipe between the joint and the outdoor unit.



❷ Connection of gas and liquid pipes

2-1 Cutting the field supply gas pipes

- Cut the pipes according to Table 1.

Caution
- This table shows the case when the A dimensions shown in 1-2 Finished dimensions is 290mm. If the A dimensions exceed 290mm, see Table 1 and adjust the dimensions of the gas pipe 1 and 2.
- The L dimensions of the gas pipe 2 in Table 1 show those when the field supply elbows have B dimension in Table 2. If the B dimension is not same with Table 2, see Table 1 and 2, and adjust them accordingly.

■ Table 1

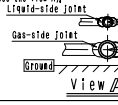
Model type	Gas pipe 1 (field supply) L (mm)	Gas pipe 2 (field supply) L (mm)
8HP	75	287
10HP	81	257
12~18HP	125	223

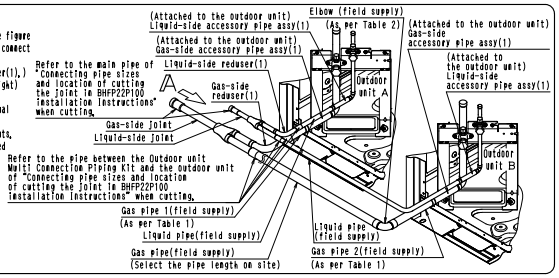
■ Table 2

Model type	Elbow(field supply) B (mm)
8HP	17
10HP	23
12~18HP	29

2-2 Connection of pipes

- Connect the gas and liquid pipes as shown in the figure at the right. (When connecting the pipes, first connect the gas-side joint and the gas-side reducer(1), the liquid-side joint and the liquid side reducer(1).)
- See 1-2 Finished dimensions for the location(height) of the joint.
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes and connecting pipes with flare nuts.
- Install the joint in such a way that the attached face of the caution label becomes holizontal (See the View A).





1P173261A

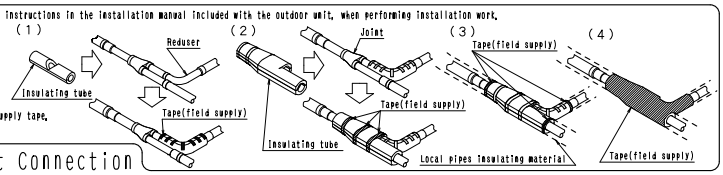
❸ The work after the kit is connected

Connection of piping between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit } Follow the instructions in the installation manual included with the outdoor unit, when performing installation work.

Air tight test

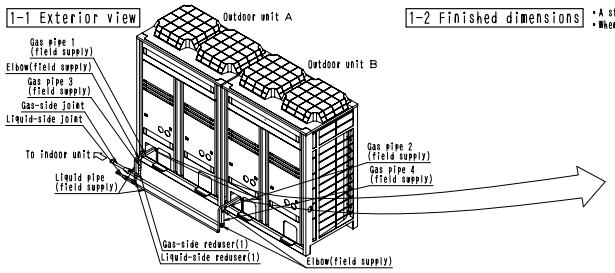
Insulation of joints

(1) Fit the insulation to the reducer and temporarily keep it in place with tape.
(2) Fit the insulation to the joint and temporarily keep it in place with tape without leaving a gap between the insulation mating faces. (See the figure at the right.)
(3) Seal the seam between the insulation and the field supply piping insulation with the field supply tape.
(4) Wrap the tape around the insulation attached to the joint without leaving a gap. (▨ section shown in the figure at the right.)



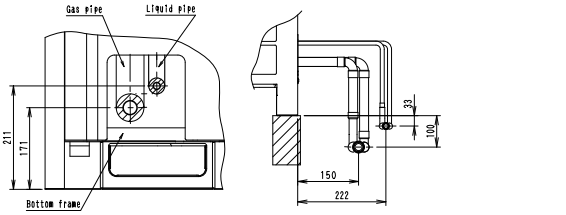
❶ Installation examples — Procedure for Lower Front Connection

1-1 Exterior view



1-2 Finished dimensions

• A standard installation has the following dimensions.
• When the dimensions exceed the standard installation, extend the pipes between the outdoor unit and the joint(field supply).



❷ Connection of gas and liquid pipes

2-1 Cutting the field supply gas pipe 1 to 4

• Cut the pipes according to Table 3

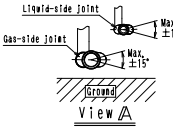
Caution • The L dimensions of the gas pipe 1 to 4 in Table 3 show those when the field supply elbows have B dimension in Table 2 shown in Procedure for Front Connection, 2 Connection of gas and liquid pipes. If the B dimensions are not same with Table 2, see Table 2 and 3, and adjust them accordingly.

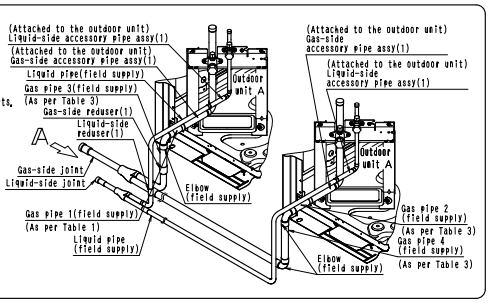
■ Table 3

Model type	Gas pipe 1(field supply) L(mm)	Gas pipe 2(field supply) L(mm)	Gas pipe 3(field supply) L(mm)	Gas pipe 4(field supply) L(mm)
8HP	130	165	59	237
10HP	100	135	83	225
12~18HP	66	101	149	213

2-2 Connection of pipes

• Connect the gas and liquid pipes as shown in the figure at the right. (When connecting the pipes, first connect the gas-side joint and the gas-side reducer (1), the liquid-side joint and the liquid-side reducer (1).)
• See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes and connecting pipes with flare nuts.
• Install the joint in such a way that the attached face of the caution label becomes horizontal (See the View A).





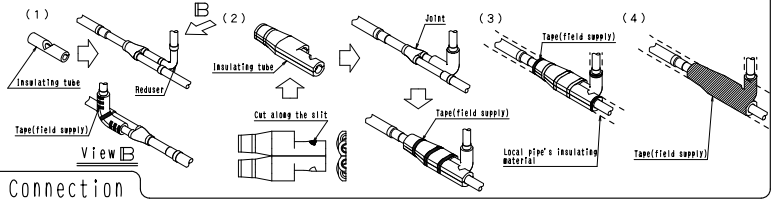
❸ The work after the kit is connected

Connection of piping between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit } Follow the instructions in the installation manual included with the outdoor unit, when performing installation work.

Air tight test

Insulation of joints

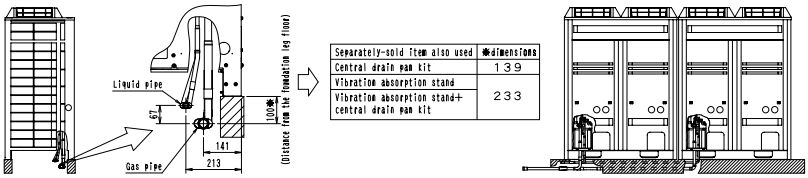
(1) Fit the insulation to the reducer and temporarily keep it in place with tape.
(2) Cut insulating tube along the slit. (See the figure at the right.) Fit the insulation to the joint and temporarily keep it in place with tape without leaving a gap between the insulation mating faces.
(3) Seal the seam between the insulation and the field supply piping insulation with the field supply tape.
(4) Wrap the tape around the insulation attached to the joint without leaving a gap. (▨ section shown in the figure at the right.)



❶ Installation examples — Procedure for Bottom Connection

⚠Caution This installation is only possible if there is enough space to perform brazing and racking underneath the outdoor unit. If a centralized drain pan kit and/or vibration proof base are used, the dimensions marked with "✽" in the figure below will vary, so see the table below and determine the length of the field pipes.

1-1 Exterior view



Separately-sold item also used	✽dimensions
Central drain pan kit	139
Vibration absorption stand	233
Vibration absorption stand+ central drain pan kit	

❷ Connection of gas and liquid pipes

2-1 Cutting the field supply gas pipe 1 and 2, and the Gas-side accessory pipe(3) attached to the outdoor unit

• Cut the pipes according to Table 4 or 5.

Caution • The "L" dimensions of the gas pipe 1 in Table 4 and the gas pipe 2 in Table 5 are identical to the "B" dimensions in table 2, those of "field supply elbows" shown in the procedure of front connection, which are equivalent to "straight size joint" without stopper. If the "B" dimentions are not identical to table 2 or "straight size joint" is with sttoper, adjust them as table 2, 4 and 5 show.

■ Table 4 (For Outdoor unit A Side)

Model type	Gas-side accessory pipe(3) B(mm) ✽dimensions For 100	For 139	For 233	Cutting position	Gas pipe 1(field supply) L(mm) ✽dimensions For 100	For 139	For 233
8HP	102	63	48	B	unnecesary		79
10HP	72	33	25				86
12HP ~ 18HP	0 (no cutting)	53	0 (no cutting)			92	133

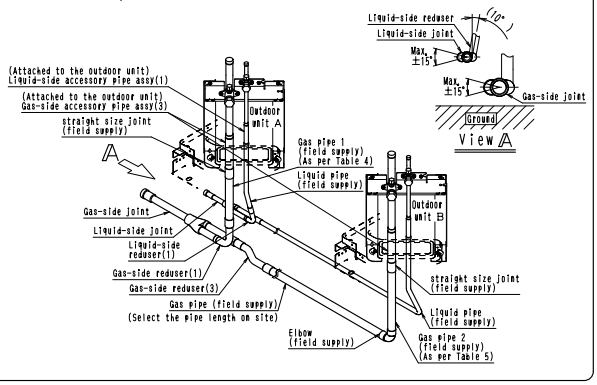
■ Table 5 (For Outdoor unit B Side)

Model type	Gas-side accessory pipe(3) B(mm) ✽dimensions For 100	For 139	For 233	Cutting position	Gas pipe 2(field supply) L(mm) ✽dimensions For 100	For 139	For 233
8HP	0 (no cutting)	0 (no cutting)	0 (no cutting)	B	76	115	209
10HP	18	0 (no cutting)	0 (no cutting)		88	109	203
12HP ~ 18HP	32	0 (no cutting)	0 (no cutting)		96	103	197

2-2 Connection of pipes

• Remove the knockout plate on the bottom frame. (See the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit)
• Connect the gas and liquid pipe as shown in the figure below. (When connecting the pipes, first connect the gas-side joint and the gas-side reducer(1), the liquid-side joint and the liquid-side reducer (1))
• See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes and connecting pipes with flare nuts.
• Install the joint in such a way that the attached face of the caution label becomes horizontal. (See the view A)
• Connect the liquid side reducer(1) tilting approx. 10° and bend the field supplied liquid pipe up to the stop valve as shown in the figure below. (See the view A)

Caution • If the liquid side reducer is connected vertically without bending the liquid pipes, the insulation will not fit.



continue to reverse side

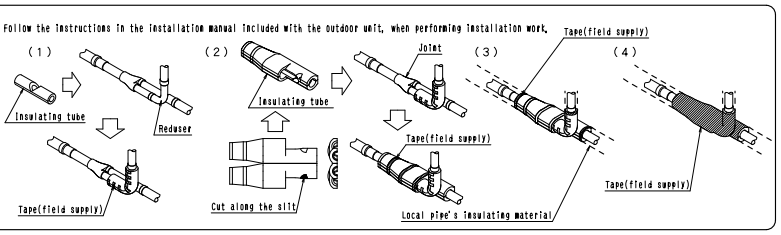
1P173261A

❸ The work after the kit is connected

Connection of piping between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit
Air tight test
Follow the instructions in the installation manual included with the outdoor unit, when performing installation work.

Insulation of joints

(1) Fit the insulation to the reducer and temporarily keep it in place with tape.
(2) Cut insulating tube along the slit. (See the figure at the right.)
Fit the insulation to the joint and temporarily keep it in place with tape without leaving a gap between the insulation mating faces.
(3) Seal the seam between the insulation and the field supply piping insulation with the field supply tape.
(4) Wrap the tape around the insulation attached to the joint without leaving a gap. (▨ section shown in the figure at the right.)



BHFP22P151 Installation Instructions

Caution There are some restrictions on the interconnecting piping between the outdoor units. See the installation manual attached to the outdoor units and make sure to carry out proper piping. If the piping restrictions are not observed, it may result in malfunction of the unit.

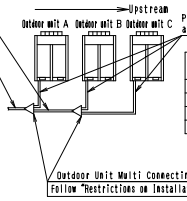
Connecting Pipe Sizes and location of cutting the joint

Select cutting point of a joint or a reducer which is suitable for the size of the interconnecting pipes determined according to the table below and cut it with a pipe cutter.

Pipe between outdoor unit Multi Connection Piping Kit
●Select the pipe size according to the total capacity of the outdoor unit (unit B, C).
Main pipe
●Select the pipe size according to the total capacity of the outdoor unit to be connected upstream (unit A, B, C).

(units : mm)

Outdoor unit total capacity (unit A, B, C) or the total capacity of the outdoor unit to be connected upstream (unit B, C)	Pipe size (O.D. x mlt, thickness [temper grade])	
	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
16HP	ø28.6×0.99[1/2H]	ø12.7×0.80[0]
18~22HP		ø15.9×0.99[0]
24HP	ø34.9×1.21[1/2H]	
26~34HP		ø19.1×0.80[1/2H]
36HP~	ø41.3×1.43[1/2H]	

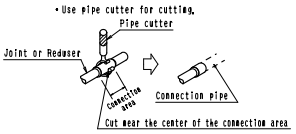


Pipe between the outdoor unit Multi Connection Piping Kit and the outdoor unit

(units:mm)

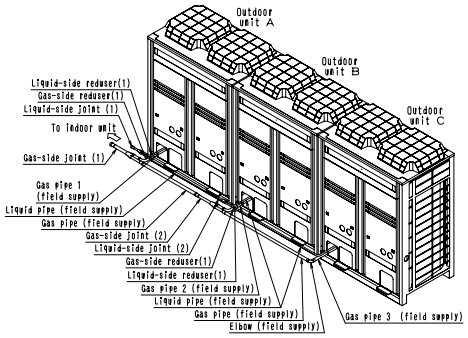
Outdoor unit capacity type	Pipe size (O.D. x mlt, thickness [temper grade])	
	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
8HP	ø19.1×0.80[1/2H]	ø 9.5×0.80[0]
10HP	ø22.2×0.80[1/2H]	
12~16HP	ø28.6×0.99[1/2H]	ø12.7×0.80[0]
18HP		ø15.9×0.99[0]

Cutting procedure
• Use pipe cutter for cutting.



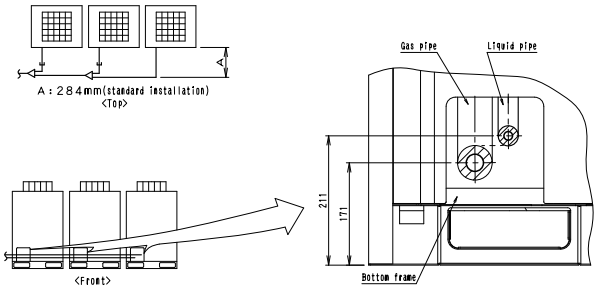
❶ Installation examples — Procedure for Front Connection

1-1 Exterior view



1-2 Finished dimensions

• For installations where the A dimensions exceed 284 mm, extend the field supply interconnecting pipe between the joint and the outdoor unit.



❷ Connection of gas and liquid pipes

2-1 Cutting the field supply gas pipes

• Cut the pipes according to Table 6.

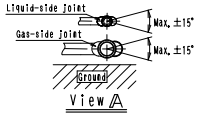
Caution • This Table shows the case when the A dimensions shown in "1-2 Finished dimensions" is 284mm. If the A dimensions exceed 284mm, see Table 6 and adjust the dimensions of the gas pipe 1 and 2 and 3.
• The L dimensions of the gas pipe 3 in Table 6 show those when the field supply elbows have B dimension in Table 2 shown in BHFP22P151 Installation Instruction, 2 connection of gas and liquid pipes.
If the B dimensions are not same with Table 2, see Table 2 and 6, and adjust them accordingly.

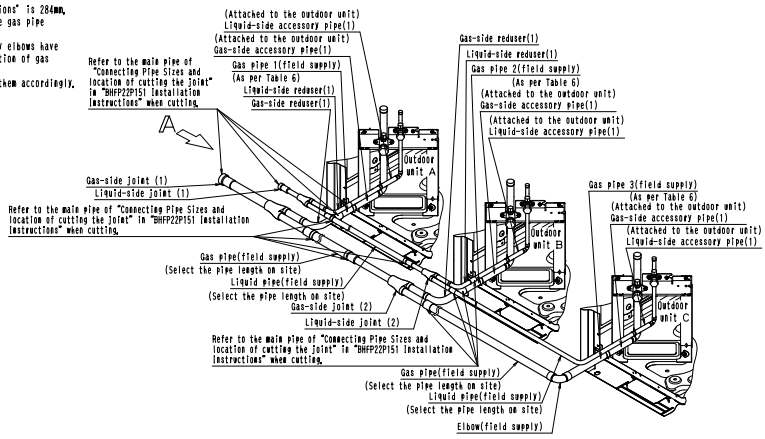
■ Table 6

Model type	Gas pipe 1 (field supply) L (mm)	Gas pipe 2 (field supply) L (mm)	Gas pipe 3 (field supply) L (mm)
8HP	51	69	282
10HP	57	75	252
12~18HP	101	119	218

2-2 Connection of pipes

• Connect the gas and liquid pipes as shown in the figure at the right. When connecting the pipes, first connect the gas-side joint and the gas-side reducer(1), the liquid-side joint and the liquid side reducer(1).
• See "1-2 Finished dimensions" for the location(height) of the joint.
• See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes and connecting pipes with flare nuts.
• Install the joint in such a way that the attached face of the caution label becomes holizontal (See the View A).





❸ The work after the kit is connected

Connection of piping between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit
Air tight test
Follow the instructions in the installation manual included with the outdoor unit, when performing installation work.

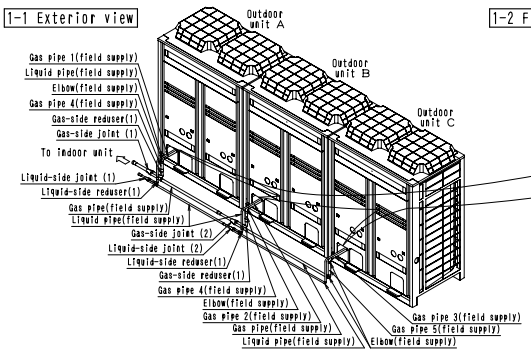
Insulation of joints

• See "The work after the kit is connected" for a front connection in "BHFP22P151 Installation Instructions."

1P173262A

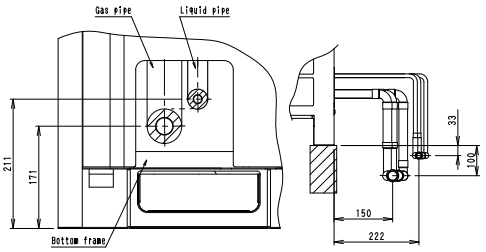
❶ Installation examples Procedure for Lower Front Connection

1-1 Exterior view



1-2 Finished dimensions

- A standard installation has the following dimensions.
- When the dimensions exceed the standard installation, extend the pipes between the outdoor unit and the joint. (field supply)



❷ Connection of gas and liquid pipes

2-1 Cutting the field supply gas pipes

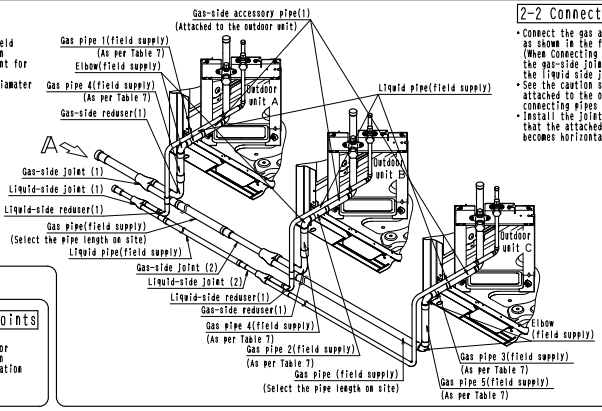
- Cut the pipes according to Table 7.

Caution
- The L dimensions of the gas pipe 1 to 5 in Table 7 show those when the field supply elbows have B dimension in Table 2 shown in BHFP22P100 Installation Instruction, 2 Connection of gas and liquid pipes and the field supply joint for the same diameter pipes are without stopper.
- If the B dimensions are not same with Table 2 or the joint for the same diameter pipes have stopper, see Table 2 and 7, and adjust them accordingly.

■ Table7

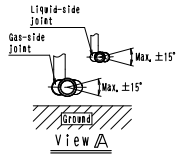
Model type	Gas pipe 1(field supply) L (mm)	Gas pipe 2(field supply) L (mm)	Gas pipe 3(field supply) L (mm)
8HP	130	147	182
10HP	100	117	152
12~18HP	66	83	118

Model type	Gas pipe 4(field supply) L (mm)	Gas pipe 5(field supply) L (mm)
8HP	59	237
10HP	83	225
12~18HP	149	213



2-2 Connection of pipes

- Connect the gas and liquid pipes as shown in the figure at the left. (When Connecting the pipes, first connect the gas-side joint and the gas-side reducer (1), the liquid side joint and the liquid-side reducer (1),)
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes and connecting pipes with flare nuts.
- Install the joint in such a way that the attached face of the caution label becomes horizontal. (See the View A).



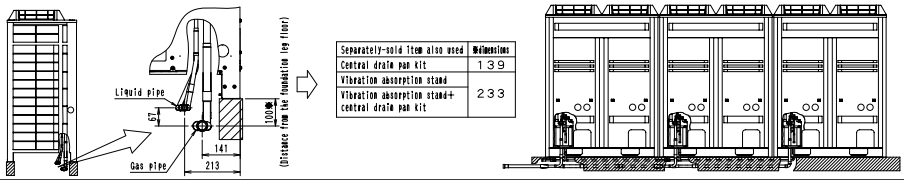
❸ The work after the kit is connected

Connection of piping between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit Air tight test	Follow the instructions in the installation manual included with the outdoor unit, when performing installation work.
Insulation of joints	• See "The work after the kit is connected" for a lower front connection of "BHFP22P100 Installation Instructions."

❶ Installation examples Procedure for Bottom Connection

Caution This installation is only possible if there is enough space to perform brazing and racking underneath the outdoor unit. If a centralized drain pan kit and/or vibration proof base are used, the dimensions marked with "✽" in the figure below will vary, so see the table below and determine the length of the field pipes.

1-1 Exterior view



Separately-sold item also used	✽dimensions
Central drain pan Kit	139
Vibration absorption stand	233
Vibration absorption stand+ central drain pan Kit	

❷ Connection of gas and liquid pipes

2-1 Cutting the field supply gas pipe 1 and 2, and the Gas-side accessory pipe(3) attached to the outdoor unit

- Cut the pipes according to Table 8 or 9.

Caution
- The "L" dimensions of the gas pipe 1 in Table 8 and the gas pipe 2 in Table 9 are identical to the "B" dimensions in table 2, those of "field supply elbows" shown in the procedure of front connection, which are equivalent to "straight size joint" without stopper. If the "B" dimentions are not identical to table 2 or "straight size joint" is with sttopper, adjust them as table 2, 8 and 9 show.

■ Table 8 (For Outdoor unit A, B Side)

Model type	Gas-side accessory pipe(3) B (mm) ✽dimensions For 100	For 139	For 233	Cutting position	Gas pipe 1(field supply) L (mm) ✽dimensions For 100	For 139	For 233
8HP	102	63	48	B	unnecesary		79
10HP	72	33	25				86
12HP ~ 18HP	0 (no cutting)	53	0 (no cutting)			92	133

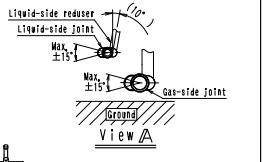
■ Table 9 (For Outdoor unit C Side)

Model type	Gas-side accessory pipe(3) B (mm) ✽dimensions For 100	For 139	For 233	Cutting position	Gas pipe 2(field supply) L (mm) ✽dimensions For 100	For 139	For 233
8HP	0 (no cutting)	0 (no cutting)	0 (no cutting)	B	76	115	209
10HP	18	0 (no cutting)	0 (no cutting)		88	109	203
12HP ~ 18HP	32	0 (no cutting)	0 (no cutting)		96	103	197

2-2 Connection of pipes

- Remove the knockout plate on the bottom frame. (See the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit)
- Connect the gas and liquid pipe as shown in the figure below. (When connecting the pipes, first connect the gas-side joint and the gas-side reducer(1), the liquid-side joint and the liquid-side reducer (1))
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes and connecting pipes with flare nuts.
- Install the joint in such a way that the attached face of the caution label becomes horizontal. (See the view A)
- Connect the liquid side reducer(1) tilting approx. 10° and bend the field supplied liquid pipe up to the stop valve as shown in the figure below. (See the view A)

Caution
- If the liquid side reducer is connected vertically without bending the liquid pipes, the insulation will not fit.



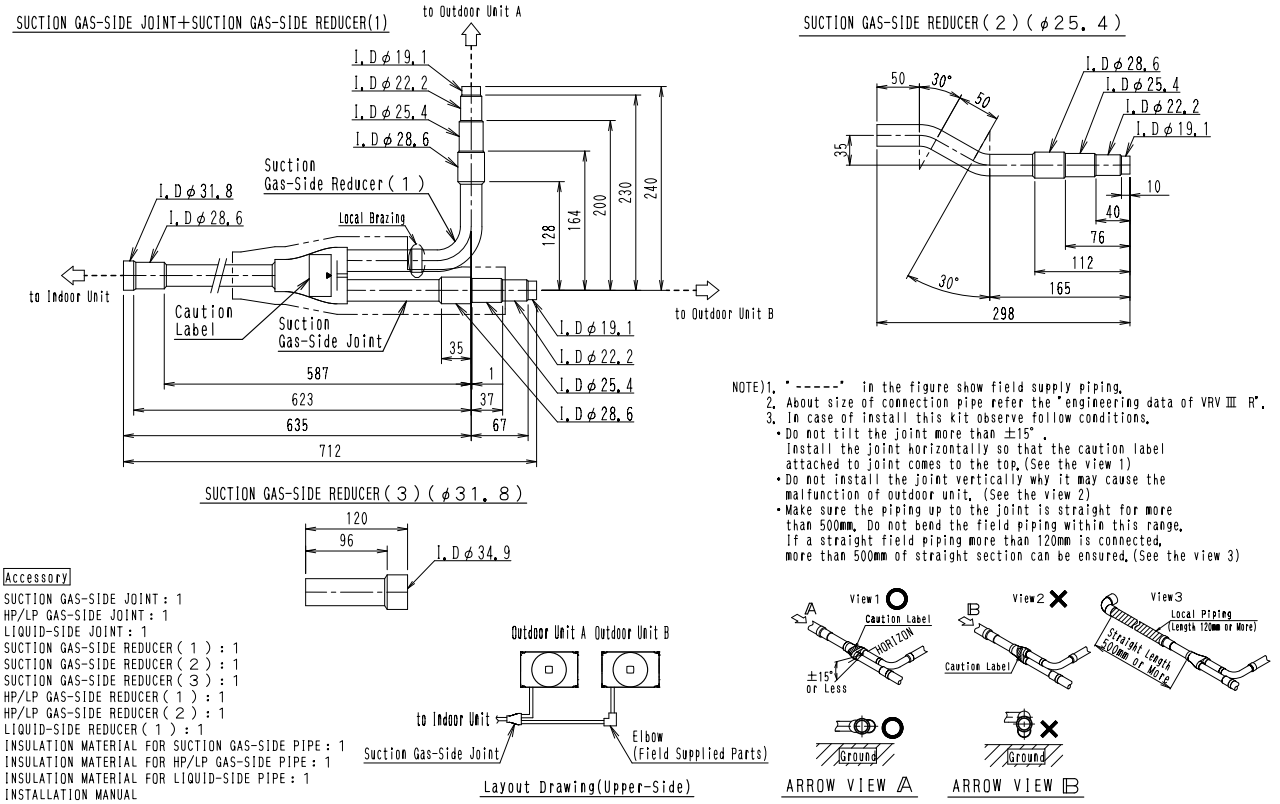
❸ The work after the kit is connected

Connection of piping between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit Air tight test	Follow the instructions in the installation manual included with the outdoor unit, when performing installation work.
Insulation of joints	• See "The work after the kit is connected" for a front connection in "BHFP22P100 Installation Instructions."

1P173262A

5.3 BHFP26P90 / 136

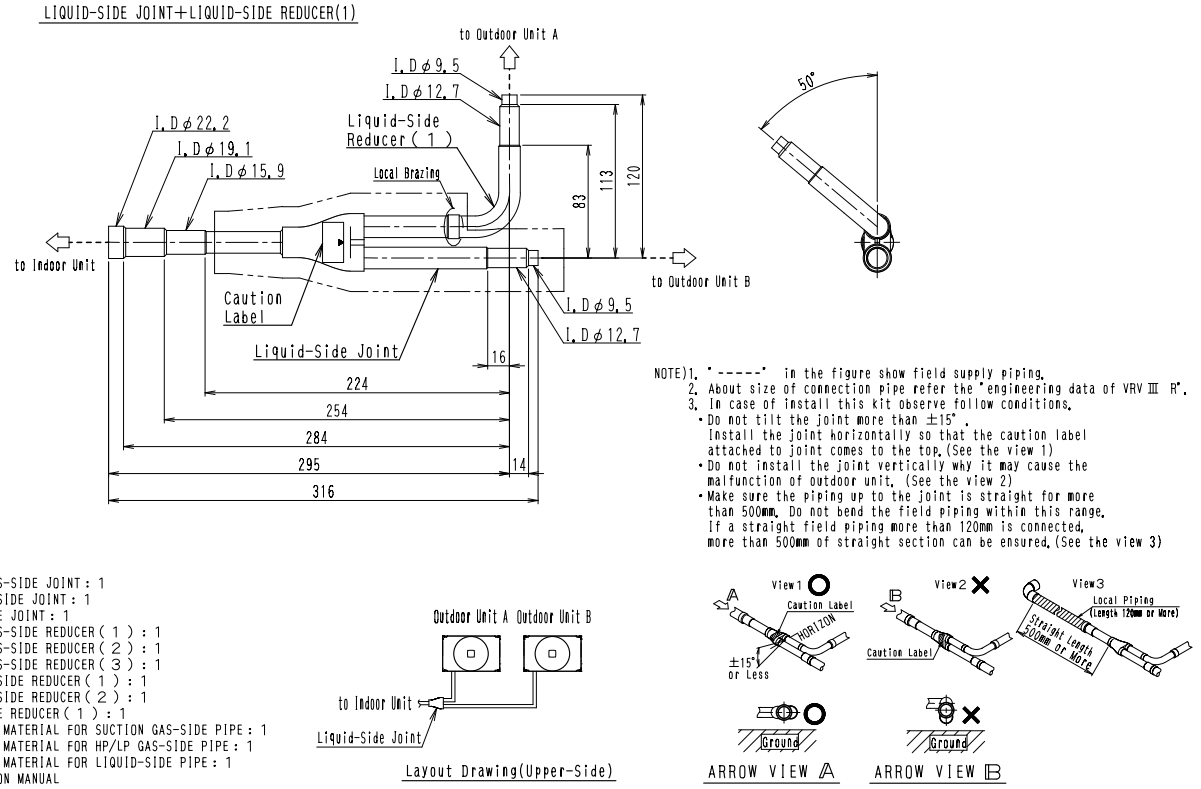
5.3.1 BHFP26P90



Accessory

SUCTION GAS-SIDE JOINT : 1
HP/LP GAS-SIDE JOINT : 1
LIQUID-SIDE JOINT : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (1) : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (2) : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (3) : 1
HP/LP GAS-SIDE REDUCER (1) : 1
HP/LP GAS-SIDE REDUCER (2) : 1
LIQUID-SIDE REDUCER (1) : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR SUCTION GAS-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR HP/LP GAS-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR LIQUID-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSTALLATION MANUAL

3D058276

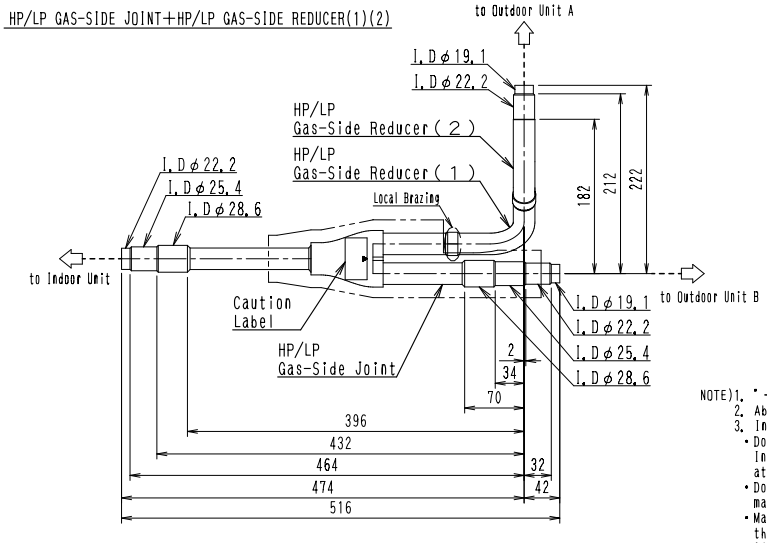


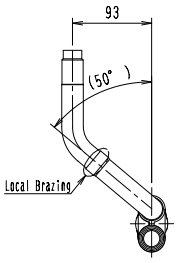
Accessory

SUCTION GAS-SIDE JOINT : 1
HP/LP GAS-SIDE JOINT : 1
LIQUID-SIDE JOINT : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (1) : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (2) : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (3) : 1
HP/LP GAS-SIDE REDUCER (1) : 1
HP/LP GAS-SIDE REDUCER (2) : 1
LIQUID-SIDE REDUCER (1) : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR SUCTION GAS-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR HP/LP GAS-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR LIQUID-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSTALLATION MANUAL

3D058277

HP/LP GAS-SIDE JOINT+HP/LP GAS-SIDE REDUCER(1)(2)

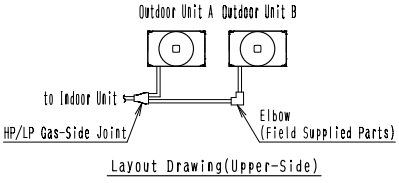




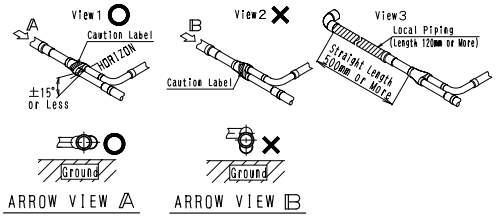
NOTE)1. "------" in the figure show field supply piping.
2. About size of connection pipe refer the "engineering data of VRV Ⅲ R".
3. In case of install this kit observe follow conditions.
- Do not tilt the joint more than ±15°.
Install the joint horizontally so that the caution label attached to joint comes to the top.(See the view 1)
- Do not install the joint vertically why it may cause the malfunction of outdoor unit. (See the view 2)
- Make sure the piping up to the joint is straight for more than 500mm. Do not bend the field piping within this range. If a straight field piping more than 120mm is connected, more than 500mm of straight section can be ensured.(See the view 3)

Accessory

SUCTION GAS-SIDE JOINT : 1
HP/LP GAS-SIDE JOINT : 1
LIQUID-SIDE JOINT : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (1) : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (2) : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (3) : 1
HP/LP GAS-SIDE REDUCER (1) : 1
HP/LP GAS-SIDE REDUCER (2) : 1
LIQUID-SIDE REDUCER (1) : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR SUCTION GAS-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR HP/LP GAS-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR LIQUID-SIDE PIPE : 1
INSTALLATION MANUAL



Layout Drawing(Upper-Side)



ARROW VIEW Ⓐ ARROW VIEW Ⓑ

3D058278

Component parts

■This kit contains the follwing parts. **<Do not throw away any of the accessories until installation is complete.>**

Kit name	SHAPE					
	Suction gas-side joint	HP/LP gas-side joint	Liquid-side joint	Suction gas-side reducer		Liquid-side reducer
BHFP26P90	1pc	1pc	1pc	(1) 1pc	(2) 1pc / (3) 1pc	(1) 1pc
	HP/LP gas-side reducer		Insulating tube for suction gas pipe or HP/LP gas pipe	Insulating tube for liquid pipe		
	(1) 1pc / (2) 1pc		2pc	1pc		

Caution
- Please be sure to read this manual before installation and follow the instruction carefully when performing installation work.
- See the outdoor unit's installation manual for outdoor unit installation.
- Installation of interconnecting piping between the outdoor and indoor units, REFNET joint or REFNET header will be needed separately.

Selection Procedure

Number of outdoor units connected	2 units
Outdoor unit Multi Connection Piping Kit	BHFP26P90

- 2 outdoor units can be connected.
- There are restrictions on the combination and the installation order of outdoor units, so please refer to "the Engineering Data of VRV Ⅲ-H" and "the Installation manual" (attached sheet of outdoor unit) for details.

Field supply parts

■The following parts are needed to connect this kit and are not included.

Field supply parts			
Name		Q'ty	Selection Procedure
Insulation for piping		1set	See the "Connecting pipe sizes and location of cutting the joint " for details on the necessary size.
Connection piping			
Elbow	Suction gas-pipe	1pc	Prepare a gas pipe diameter for the upper outdoor unit as listed in "Connecting Pipe Sizes and location of cutting the joint."
	HP/LP gas-pipe	2pc	
	Equalizer pipe	4pc	
Tape		1set	For insulation materials

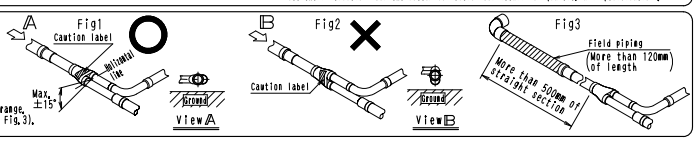
Caution
- Quantity and selection procedure of elbow only applies to a front connection.
- For a lower front connection, the quantity and selection procedure are different, so please refer to the instructions for a lower front connection.
- Straight size joints is needed only for a bottom connection. See the instructions for the bottom connection for details on quantity and specifications.

⚠To the pipeing installer

When installing this kit, please apply the following restrictions.

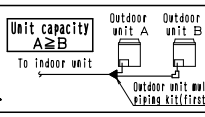
Restrictions on Installing Multi Connection Piping Kit

- Install the joint horizontally so that the caution label attached to joint comes to the top. Do not tilt the joint more than ±15° (See Fig. 1). In addition,do not install the joint vertically(See Fig. 2).
- Make sure the piping up to the joint is straight for more than 500mm. Do not bend the field piping within this range. If a straight field piping more than 120mm is connected, more than 500mm of straight section can be ensured(See Fig. 3).
- Improper installation may lead to malfunction of the outdoor unit.



〈Caution〉

- When installing the multi system, connect the units as shown in the figure at the right order. If install the system with different order, the Outdoor unit multi connection piping kit may not suit and some pipe size reducer(field supply) may be required.
- If the total capacity of the connected Indoor units exceeds the capacity of the outdoor unit, cooling and heating performance may drop when running the Indoor units. See the capacity table in the Engineering Data Book for details.



Connecting pipe sizes and location of cutting the joint

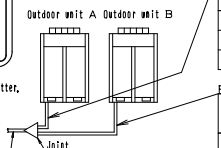
Select cutting point of a joint or a reducer which is suitable for the size of the interconnecting pipes determined according to the table below and cut it with a pipe cutter.

- If the pipe size of φ19.1 or larger is used, the O material may be insufficient to withstand the specified pressure. Therefore, make sure to use the 1/2H material with thickness of 1.0mm or more. When using the O material for the pipe size of φ19.1, a thickness of 1.2 or more is required. In this case, the connection must be brazed.

● Select the pipe size according to the total capacity of outdoor unit. (units : mm)

Outdoor unit total capacity type	Pipe size (O.D. × min. thickness [temper grade])		
	Suction gas pipe	HP/LP gas pipe	Liquid pipe
18HP	φ28.6×1.0[1/2H]	φ22.2×1.0[1/2H]	φ15.9×1.0[O]
20・22HP		φ28.6×1.0[1/2H]	
24HP	φ34.9×1.21[1/2H]		φ19.1×1.0[1/2H]
26~32HP			

Main pipe



Pipe between the joint and the outdoor unit A (units : mm)

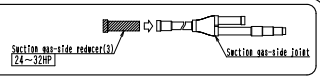
Outdoor unit total capacity type	Pipe size (O.D. × min. thickness [temper grade])		
	Suction gas pipe	HP/LP gas pipe	Liquid pipe
18HP	φ22.2×1.0[1/2H]	φ19.1×1.0[1/2H]	φ 9.5×0.8[O]
20~24HP	φ28.6×1.0[1/2H]		φ12.7×0.8[O]
26~32HP		φ22.2×1.0[1/2H]	

Pipe between the joint and the outdoor unit B (units : mm)

Outdoor unit total capacity type	Pipe size (O.D. × min. thickness [temper grade])		
	Suction gas pipe	HP/LP gas pipe	Liquid pipe
18~22・26HP	φ22.2×1.0[1/2H]	φ19.1×1.0[1/2H]	φ 9.5×0.8[O]
24・28HP	φ28.6×1.0[1/2H]		φ12.7×0.8[O]
30・32HP		φ22.2×1.0[1/2H]	

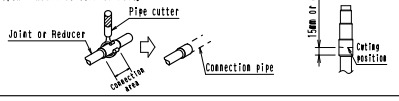
When reducer is used

- Suction gas-side reducer(3) may be used on the Suction gas-side joint see the figure at the right for details of connection.



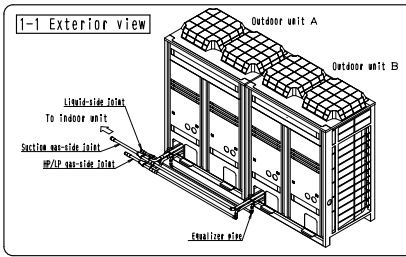
Cutting procedure

- Use pipe cutter for cutting.
- Cut a joint and reducer in order that their fit depths should be 15mm or more.



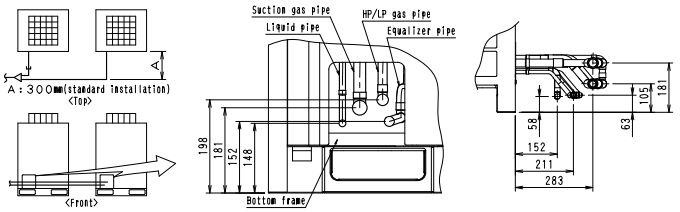
❶ Installation examples — Procedure for Front Connection

1-1 Exterior view



1-2 Finished dimensions

- For installations where the A dimensions exceed 300mm, extend the field supply interconnecting pipe between the joint and the outdoor unit.



❷ Connection of suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipe

2-1 Cutting the field supply Suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipe

- Cut the Suction gas pipe or HP/LP gas pipe(field supply) according to Table 1, 2.

Caution
- This table shows where A dimension is 300mm by 1-2 finished dimensions. If its installation exceeds 300mm, see Table 1 and 2 and adjust Suction gas pipe 1 and 2 and HP/LP gas pipe 1, 2, and 3.
- The L dimensions of the Suction gas pipe 1 and 2 in Table 1 and HP/LP gas pipe 1, 2, and 3 in Table 2 are applied to where B dimensions of elbows are shown as in Table 3 or Table 4. If B dimension is different from the dimensions in the table, see Table 1 and 2 and adjust them.

■ Table1

Model type	Suction gas pipe 1(field supply) L (mm)	Suction gas pipe 2(field supply) L (mm)
18HP	61	238
20・22HP	135	238
24HP	135	234
26HP	135	238
28~32HP	135	234

■ Table2

Model type	HP/LP gas pipe 1(field supply) L (mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 2(field supply) L (mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 3(field supply) L (mm)
18~24HP	50	245	59
26・28HP	80	245	59
30・32HP	80	239	47

■ Table3

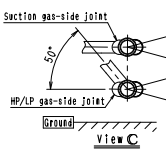
Model type	Elbow 1(field supply) B (mm)
18~22HP	23
24HP	29
26HP	23
28~32HP	29

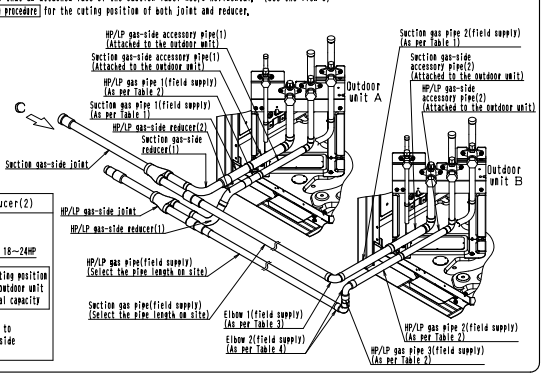
■ Table4

Model type	Elbow 2(field supply) B (mm)
18~28HP	17
30・32HP	23

2-2 Connection of pipes

- Connect the Suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipes as following the procedure on the below figure. (For connection of pipes, at first, connect Suction gas-side joint with Suction gas-side reducer (1) and HP/LP gas-side joint with HP/LP gas-side reducer (1) and (2).)
- See 1-2 finished dimensions for the location (height) of the joints.
- See the caution section in the Installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes.
- Install the joints so that an attached face of the caution label keeps horizontal. (See the view C)
- Refer of both Cutting procedure for the cuting position of both joint and reducer.





Suction gas-side reducer(1)	HP/LP gas-side reducer(2)
Connection to Suction gas pipe 1 (field supply)	Connection to HP/LP gas pipe 1(field supply)
18HP / 20~32HP → Cutting position by outdoor unit total capacity	No cutting for 18~24HP / 26~32HP → Cutting position by outdoor unit total capacity
Connection to Suction gas-side joint	Connection to HP/LP gas-side reducer(1)

1P206370B

❸ Connection of Liquid-side and equalizer pipe

3-1 Cutting the field supply Liquid-side and equalizer pipe

- Cut the equalizer pipe(field supply) according to Table 1.

Caution • This table shows the case when the A dimensions shown in 1-2 Finished dimensions is 300mm.
If the A dimensions exceed 300mm, see Table 1 and adjust the dimensions of the equalizer pipe 1 and 2.
• The L dimensions of the equalizer pipe 1 and 2 in Table 1 show those when the field supply elbows have B dimension in Table 2. If the B dimension is not same with Table 2, see Table 1, and adjust them accordingly.

3-2 Connection of pipes

- Connect the liquid-side and equalizer pipes as shown in the right figure.
(For connection of pipes, at first, connect Liquid-side joint with Liquid-side reducer (1).)
- See 1-2 Finished dimensions for the location (height) of the joint.
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes.
- Connect Liquid-side reducer (1) as at about 40° inclination and bend the field supplied liquid pipe up to the stop valve as following the procedure on right figure.
- Refer of both Cutting procedure for the cuting position of both joint and reducer.

Caution • If the liquid side reducer is connected horizontally without bending the liquid pipes, the insulation will not fit.

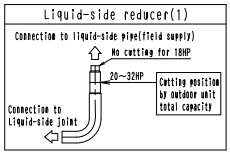
■ Table1

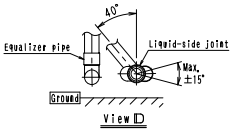
Equalizer pipe 1(field supply) L (mm)	Equalizer pipe 2(field supply) L (mm)
95	60

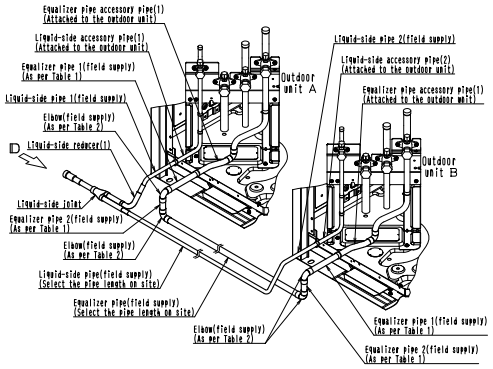
■ Table2

Elbow(field supply) B (mm)
17

Liquid-side reducer(1)





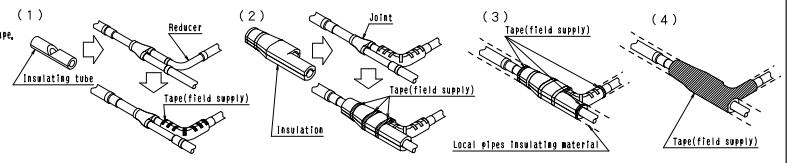


❹ The work after the kit is connected

Connection of piping between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit
Air tight test
} Follow the instructions in the installation manual included with the outdoor unit, when performing installation work.

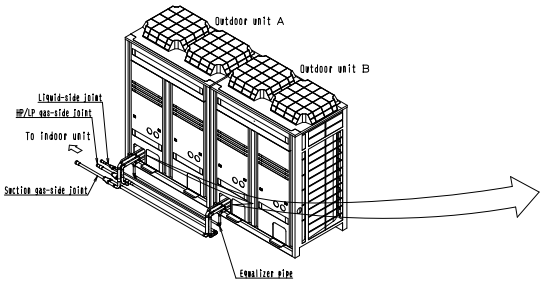
Insulation of joints

(1) Fit the insulating tube to the reducer and temporarily keep it in place with tape.
(2) Fit the insulation to the joint and temporarily keep it in place with tape without leaving a gap between the insulation mating faces. (See the figure at the right.)
(3) Seal the seam between the insulation and the field supply piping insulation with the field supply tape.
(4) Wrap the tape around the insulation attached to the joint without leaving a gap. (▨ section shown in the figure at the right.)



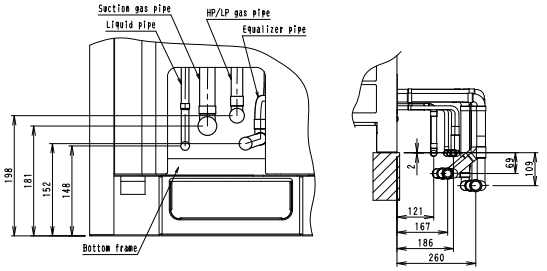
❶ Installation examples Procedure for Lower Front Connection

1-1 Exterior view



1-2 Finished dimensions

• A standard installation has the following dimensions.
• When the dimensions exceed the standard installation, extend the pipes between the outdoor unit and the joint(field supply).



❷ Connection of suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipe

2-1 Cutting the field supply Suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipe

- Cut the according to Table 1, 2.

Caution • The L dimensions of Suction gas pipe 1~4 in Table 1 and HP/LP gas pipe 1~5 in Table 2 show those when the field supply elbows have B dimension in Table 3 and Table 4. If the B dimension is not same with Table 3 and Table 4, see Table 1 and 2, and adjust them accordingly.

■ Table1

Model type	Suction gas pipe 1(field supply) L (mm)	Suction gas pipe 2(field supply) L (mm)	Suction gas pipe 3(field supply) L (mm)	Suction gas pipe 4(field supply) L (mm)
18HP	216	181	102	244
20・22HP	212	177	168	232
24HP		181		244
26HP		177		232
28~32HP				

■ Table2

Model type	HP/LP gas pipe 1(field supply) L (mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 2(field supply) L (mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 3(field supply) L (mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 4(field supply) L (mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 5(field supply) L (mm)
18~24HP	223	193	73	233	64
26・28HP	217		97		52
30・32HP		187		221	

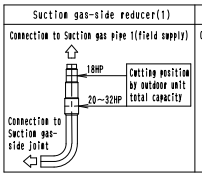
■ Table3

Model type	Elbow 1(field supply) B (mm)	Elbow 2(field supply) B (mm)
18HP	23	23
20・22HP	29	29
24HP		23
26HP		29
30~32HP		

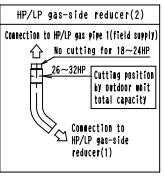
■ Table4

Model type	Elbow 3(field supply) B (mm)	Elbow 4(field supply) B (mm)
18~24HP	17	17
26・28HP	23	23
30・32HP		

Suction gas-side reducer(1)

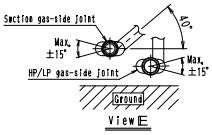


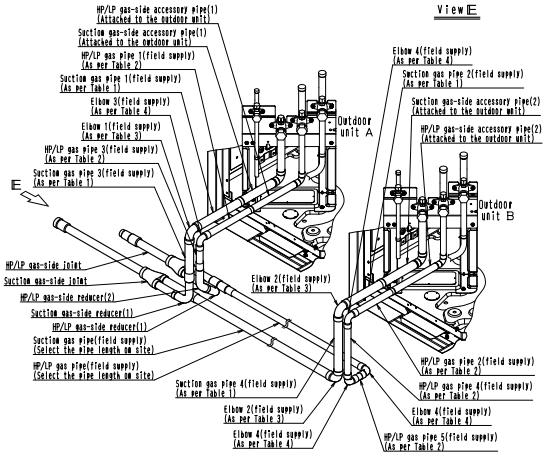
HP/LP gas-side reducer(2)



2-2 Connection of pipes

- Connect the suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipes as shown in the below figure. (When connecting the pipes, first connect Suction gas-side joint and Suction gas-side reducer(1), HP/LP gas-side joint and HP/LP gas-side reducer(1).)
- See 1-2 Finished dimensions for the location(height) of the joints.
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes.
- Install the joint so that an attached face of the caution label keeps horizontal(See the View E).
- Refer of both Cutting procedure for the cuting position of both joint and reducer.





continue to reverse side

1P206370B

❸ Connection of Liquid-side and equalizer pipe

3-1 Cutting the field supply Liquid-side and equalizer pipe

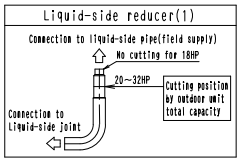
- Cut the equalizer pipe(field supply) according to Table 1.

Caution • This table shows the case when the A dimensions shown in 1-2 Finished dimensions is 300mm.
If the A dimensions exceed 300mm, see Table 1 and adjust the dimensions of Equalizer pipe 1 and 2.
• The L dimensions of Equalizer pipe 1 and 2 in Table 1 show those when the field supply elbows have B dimension in Table 2 shown in "procedure for front connection" and "connection of Liquid-side and equalizer pipe". If the B dimension is not same with Table, see Table 1 and 2, and adjust them accordingly.

3-2 Connection of pipes

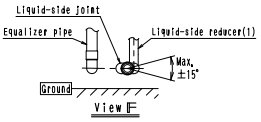
- Connect the liquid-side and equalizer pipe as shown in the right figure. (When connecting the pipes, first connect Liquid-side joint and Liquid side reducer(1).)
- See 1-2 Finished dimensions for the location(height) of the joint.
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes.
- Install the joint in such a way that the attached face of the caution label becomes horizontal(See the View F).
- Connect the liquid side reducer(1) tilting approx. 90° and bend the field supplied liquid pipe up to the stop valve as shown in the figure below. (See the view F)
- Refer of both Cutting procedure for the cuting position of both joint and reducer.

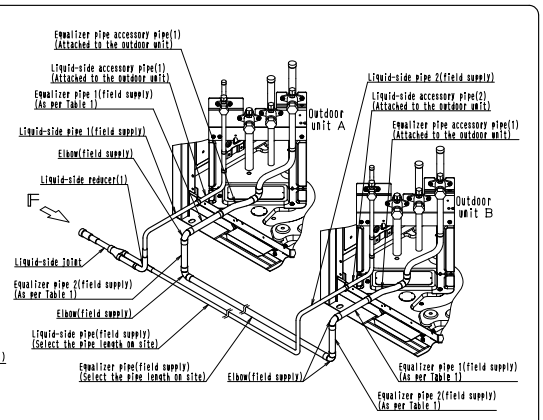
Caution • If the liquid side reducer is connected vertically without bending the liquid pipes, the insulation will not fit.



■ Table1

Equalizer pipe 1(field supply) L(mm)	Equalizer pipe 2(field supply) L(mm)
95	120





❹ The work after the kit is connected

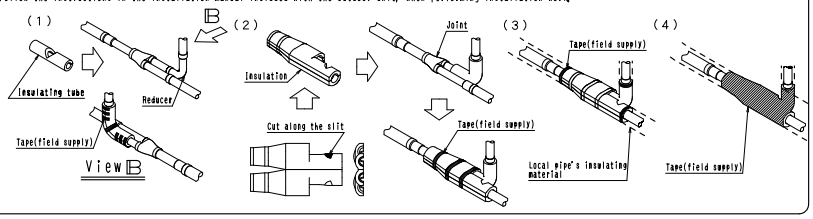
Connection of piping between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit

Follow the instructions in the installation manual included with the outdoor unit, when performing installation work.

Air tight test

Insulation of joints

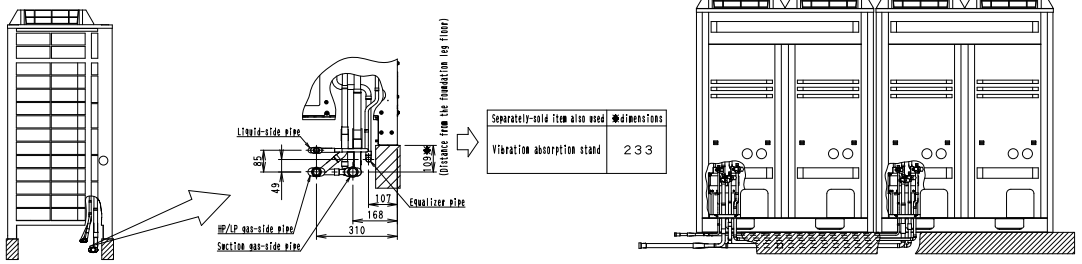
(1) Fit the insulating tube to the reducer and temporarily keep it in place with tape.
(2) Cut insulating tube along the slit. (See the figure at the right.)
Fit the insulation to the joint and temporarily keep it in place with tape without leaving a gap between the insulation mating faces.
(3) Seal the seam between the insulation and the field supply piping insulation with the field supply tape.
(4) Wrap the tape around the insulation attached to the joint without leaving a gap. (▨ section shown in the figure at the right.)



❶ Installation examples Procedure for Bottom Connection

⚠Caution This installation is only possible if there is enough space to perform brazing and racking underneath the outdoor unit. If a centralized vibration proof base are used, the dimensions marked with "✽" in the figure below will vary, so see the table below and determine the length of the field pipes.

1-1 Exterior view



Separately-sold item also used	✽dimensions
Vibration absorption stand	233

❷ Connection of suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipe

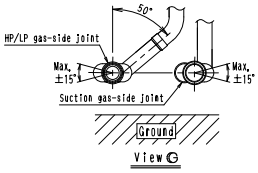
2-1 Cutting the field supply suction gas-side pipe and HP/LP gas-side pipe and the suction gas-side accessory pipe(2) attached to the outdoor unit

- Cut the pipes according to Table 1 or 2.

Caution • The "L" dimensions of Suction gas pipe 1 in Table 1 and the HP/LP gas pipe 1~3 in Table 2 are identical to the "B" dimensions in Table 3 and Table 4, those of "field supply elbows" shown in " Procedure for Front Connection" and "Connection of suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipe", which are equivalent to "straight size joint" with stopper.
If the "B" dimensions are not identical to table or "straight size joint" is without sttoper, adjust them as Table 1 and Table 2 show.

■ Table 1 (For Outdoor unit B Side)

Model type	Suction gas-side accessory pipe(2) (Attached to the outdoor unit) L(mm)	Suction gas pipe 1(field supply) L(mm)
18~22HP	0 (no cutting)	137
24HP	41	98
26HP	0 (no cutting)	137
28~32HP	41	98

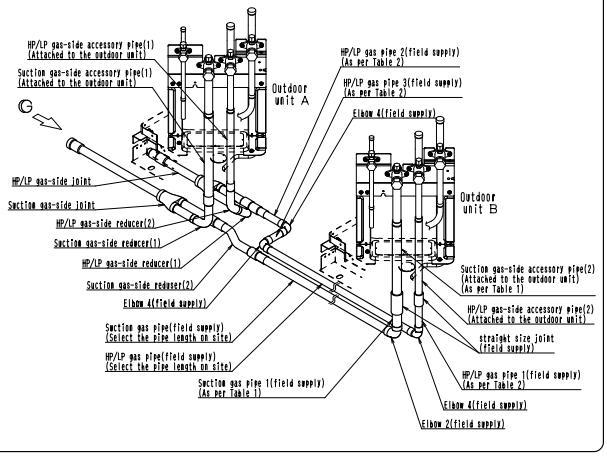


■ Table2

Model type	HP/LP gas pipe 1(field supply) L(mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 2(field supply) L(mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 3(field supply) L(mm)
18~28HP	155	86	94
30・32HP	119	110	82

2-2 Connection of pipes

- Remove the knockout plate on the bottom frame. (See the Installation manual attached to the outdoor unit)
- Connect the suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipe as shown in the figure below. (When connecting the pipes, first connect the suction gas-side joint and the suction gas-side reducer(1), the HP/LP gas-side joint and the HP/LP gas-side reducer (1))
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes.
- Install the joint so that an attached face of the caution label keeps horizontal. (See the view G)
- Connect HP/LP gas-side reducer(1) as at about. 50° inclination and connect HP/LP gas-side reducer(2). (See the view G)
- Refer of both Cutting procedure for the cuting position of both joint and reducer.



Suction gas-side reducer(1)	HP/LP gas-side reducer(2)	Suction gas-side reducer(2)
Connection to Suction gas pipe 1 (field supply) 18HP 20~32HP Cutting position by outdoor unit total capacity Connection to Suction gas-side joint	Connection to HP/LP gas pipe 1(field supply) No cutting for 18~24HP 26~32HP Cutting position by outdoor unit total capacity Connection to HP/LP gas-side reducer(1)	Connection to Suction gas pipe (field supply) 18~22・26HP 24・28~32HP Cutting position by outdoor unit total capacity Connection to Suction gas-side joint

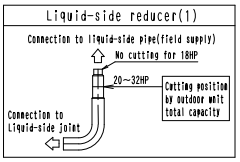
1P206371B

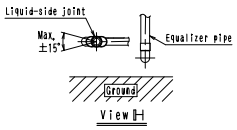
❸ Connection of Liquid-side and equalizer pipe

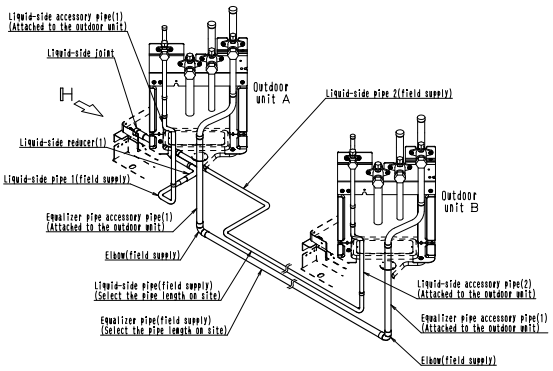
3-1 Connection of pipes

- Remove the knockout plate on the bottom frame. (See the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit)
- Connect the liquid and equalizer pipes as shown in the figure below. (When connecting the pipes, first connect Liquid-side joint and Liquid-side reducer (1))
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes.
- Install the joint so that an attached face of the caution label keeps horizontal. (See the view H)
- Bend the field supplied liquid pipe up to the stop valve as shown in the right figure. (See the view H)
- Refer of both Cutting procedure for the cuting position of both joint and reducer.

Caution • If the liquid side reducer is connected vertically without bending the liquid pipes, the insulation will not fit.







❹ The work after the kit is connected

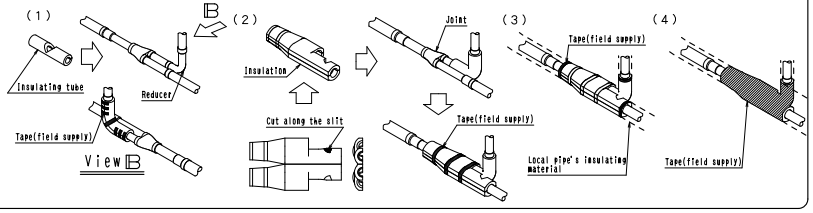
Connection of piping between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit

Follow the instructions in the installation manual included with the outdoor unit, when performing installation work.

Air tight test

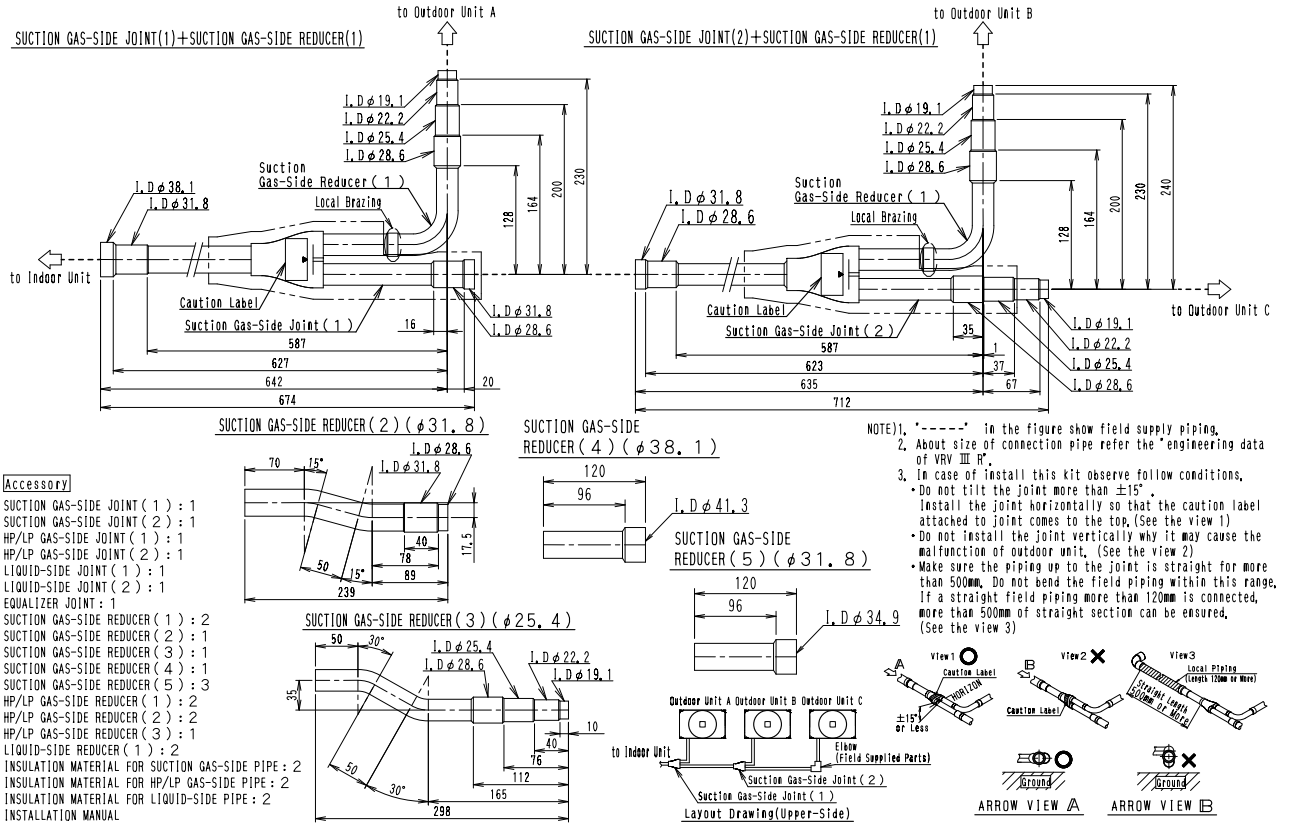
Insulation of joints

(1) Fit the insulating tube to the reducer and temporarily keep it in place with tape.
(2) Cut insulating tube along the slit. (See the figure at the right.)
Fit the insulation to the joint and temporarily keep it in place with tape without leaving a gap between the insulation mating faces.
(3) Seal the seam between the insulation and the field supply piping insulation with the field supply tape.
(4) Wrap the tape around the insulation attached to the joint without leaving a gap. (▨ section shown in the figure at the right.)

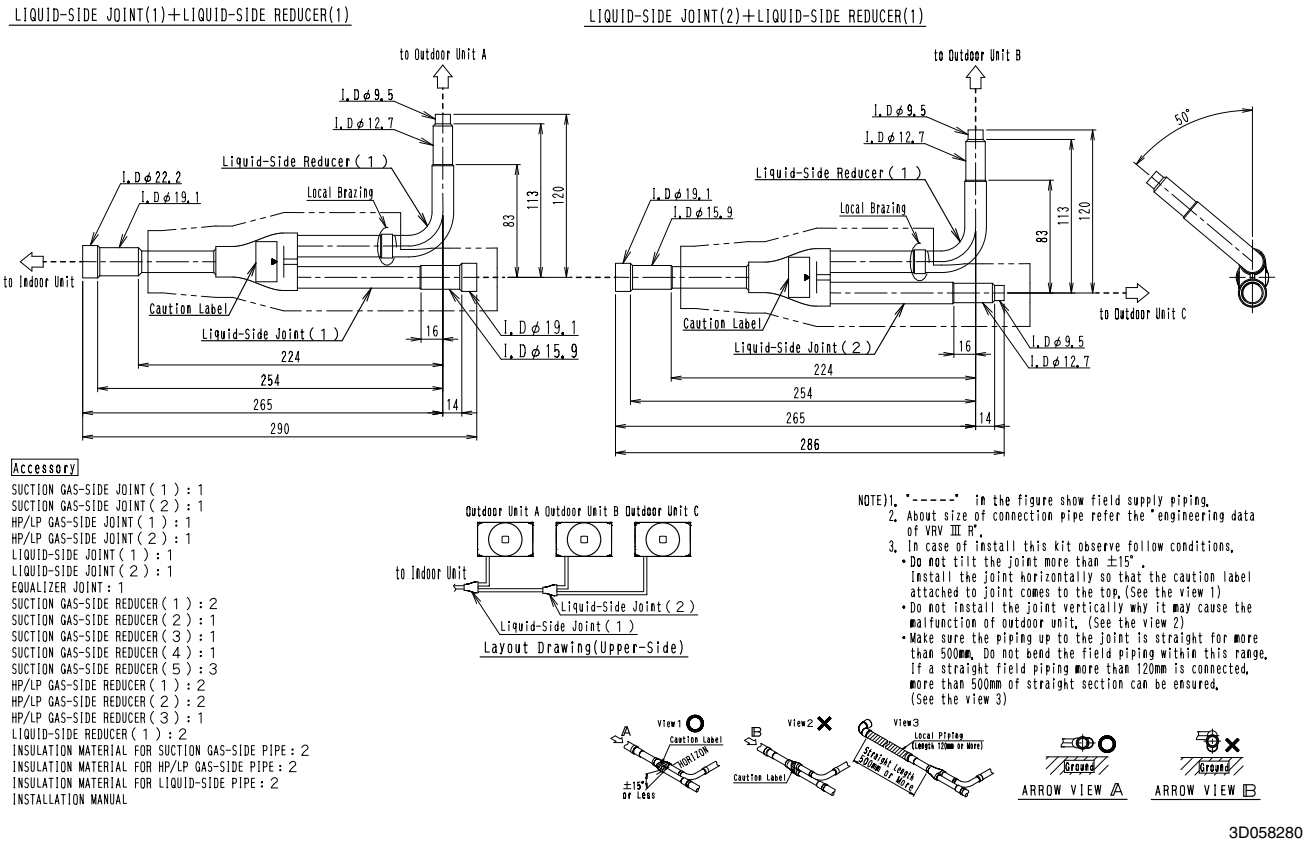


1P206371B

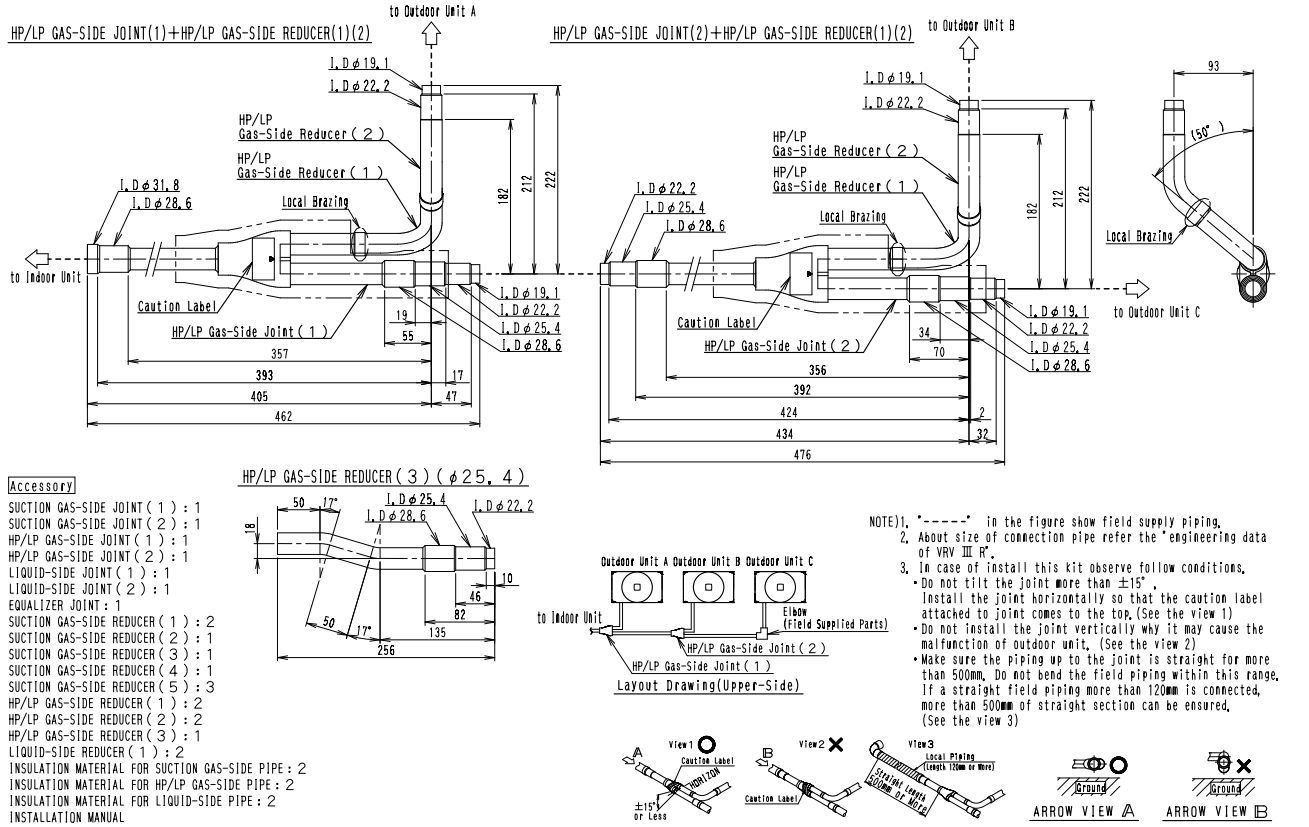
5.3.2 BHFP26P136



3D058279



3D058280



Accessory

SUCTION GAS-SIDE JOINT (1) : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE JOINT (2) : 1
HP/LP GAS-SIDE JOINT (1) : 1
HP/LP GAS-SIDE JOINT (2) : 1
LIQUID-SIDE JOINT (1) : 1
LIQUID-SIDE JOINT (2) : 1
EQUALIZER JOINT : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (1) : 2
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (2) : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (3) : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (4) : 1
SUCTION GAS-SIDE REDUCER (5) : 3
HP/LP GAS-SIDE REDUCER (1) : 2
HP/LP GAS-SIDE REDUCER (2) : 2
HP/LP GAS-SIDE REDUCER (3) : 1
LIQUID-SIDE REDUCER (1) : 2
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR SUCTION GAS-SIDE PIPE : 2
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR HP/LP GAS-SIDE PIPE : 2
INSULATION MATERIAL FOR LIQUID-SIDE PIPE : 2
INSTALLATION MANUAL

NOTE)1. "-----" in the figure show field supply piping.
2. About size of connection pipe refer the "engineering data of VRV Ⅲ R".
3. In case of install this kit observe follow conditions.
- Do not tilt the joint more than ±15°. Install the joint horizontally so that the caution label attached to joint comes to the top. (See the view 1)
- Do not install the joint vertically why it may cause the malfunction of outdoor unit. (See the view 2)
- Make sure the piping up to the joint is straight for more than 500mm. Do not bend the field piping within this range. If a straight field piping more than 120mm is connected, more than 500mm of straight section can be ensured. (See the view 3)

3D058281

Component parts

■This kit contains the follwing parts. **<Do not throw away any of the accessories until installation is complete.>**

Kit name	SHAPE			
	Suction gas-side joint	HP/LP gas-side joint	Liquid-side joint	Suction gas-side reducer
BHFP26P 136	(1) 1pc (2) 1pc	(1) 1pc (2) 1pc	(1) 1pc (2) 1pc	(1) 2pc (2) 1pc (3) 1pc (4) 1pc

Suction gas-side reducer	HP/LP gas-side reducer			Liquid-side reducer	Equalizer pipe joint	Insulating tube for suction gas pipe or HP/LP gas pipe	Insulating tube for liquid pipe
(5) 3pc	(1) 2pc	(2) 2pc	(3) 1pc	(1) 2pc	1pc	4pc	2pc

Caution
- Please be sure to read this manual before installation and follow the instruction carefully when performing installation work.
- See the outdoor unit's installation manual for outdoor unit installation.
- Installation of interconnecting piping between the outdoor and indoor units, REFNET joint or REFNET header will be needed separately.

Selection Procedure

Number of outdoor units connected	3 units
Outdoor unit Multi Connection Piping Kit	BHFP26P136

- 3 outdoor units can be connected.
- There are restrictions on the combination and the installation order of outdoor units, so please refer to "the EngIneering Data of VRV III-R" and "the Installation manual" (attached sheet of outdoor unit) for details.

Field supply parts

■The following parts are needed to connect this kit and are not included.

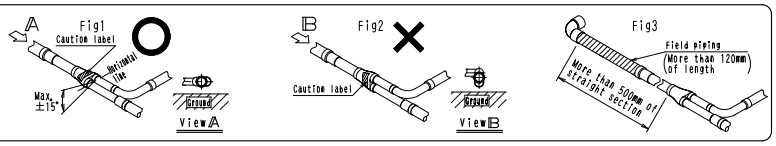
Field supply parts			
Name		Q'ty	Selection Procedure
Insulation for piping		1set	See the "Connecting pipe sizes and location of cutting the joint " for details on the necessary size.
Connection piping		1set	
Elbow	Suction gas-pipe	1pc	Prepare a gas pipe diameter for the upper outdoor unit as listed in "Connecting Pipe Sizes and location of cutting the joint."
	HP/LP gas-pipe	2pc	
	Equalizer pipe	5pc	
Tape		1set	For insulation materials

Caution
- Quantity and selection procedure of elbow only applies to a front connection.
- For a lower front connection, the quantity and selection procedure are different, so please refer to the instructions for a lower front connection.
- Straight size joints is needed only for a bottom connection. See the instructions for the bottom connection for details on quantity and specifications.

⚠To the pipeing installer When installing this kit, please apply the following restrictions.

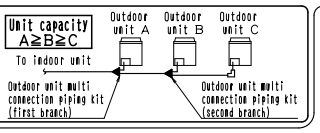
Restrictions on Installing Multi Connection Piping Kit

- Install the joint horizontally so that the caution label attached to joint comes to the top. Do not tilt the joint more than ±15° (See Fig. 1). In addition, do not install the joint vertically(See Fig. 2).
- Make sure the piping up to the joint is straight for more than 500mm. Do not bend the field piping within this range. If a straight field piping more than 120mm is connected, more than 500mm of straight section can be ensured(See Fig.3).
- Improper installation may lead to malfunction of the outdoor unit.



<Caution>

- When installing the multi system, connect the units as shown in the figure at the right order. If install the system with different order, the Outdoor unit multi connection piping kit may not suit and some pipe size reducer(field supply) may be required.
- If the total capacity of the connected indoor units exceeds the capacity of the outdoor unit, cooling and heating performance may drop when running the indoor units. See the capacity table in the EngIneering Data Book for details.



Pipe between the joint and the outdoor unit A (units : mm)

Outdoor unit total capacity type	Pipe size (O.D. x min. thickness [temper grade])		
	Suction gas pipe	HP/LP gas pipe	Liquid pipe
34~48HP	ø28.6X1.0[1/2H]	ø22.2X1.0[1/2H]	ø12.7X0.8[O]

Pipe between the joint 2 and the outdoor unit B (units : mm)

Outdoor unit total capacity type	Pipe size (O.D. x min. thickness [temper grade])		
	Suction gas pipe	HP/LP gas pipe	Liquid pipe
34HP	ø22.2X1.0[1/2H]	ø19.1X1.0[1/2H]	ø 9.5X0.8[O]
36~40HP	ø28.6X1.0[1/2H]		ø12.7X0.8[O]
42~48HP		ø22.2X1.0[1/2H]	

Pipe between the joint 2 and the outdoor unit C (units : mm)

Outdoor unit total capacity type	Pipe size (O.D. x min. thickness [temper grade])		
	Suction gas pipe	HP/LP gas pipe	Liquid pipe
34~38・42HP	ø22.2X1.0[1/2H]	ø19.1X1.0[1/2H]	ø 9.5X0.8[O]
40・44HP	ø28.6X1.0[1/2H]		ø12.7X0.8[O]
46・48HP		ø22.2X1.0[1/2H]	

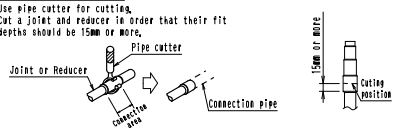
Connecting pipe sizes and location of cutting the joint

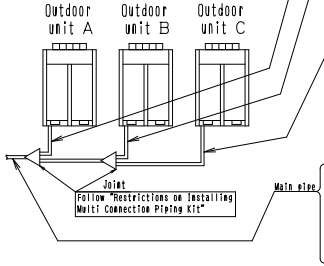
Select cutting point of a joint or a reducer which is suitable for the size of the interconnecting pipes determined according to the table below and cut it with a pipe cutter.

- If the pipe size of ø19.1 or larger is used, the O material may be insufficient to withstand the specified pressure. Therefore, make sure to use the 1/2H material with thickness of 1.0mm or more. When using the O material for the pipe size of ø19.1, a thickness of 1.2 or more is required. In this case, the connection must be brazed.

Cutting procedure

- Use pipe cutter for cutting.
- Cut a joint and reducer in order that their fit depths should be 15mm or more.



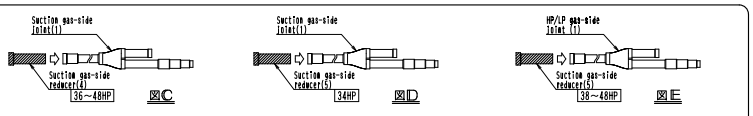


● Select the pipe size according to the total capacity of outdoor unit. (units : mm)

Outdoor unit total capacity type	Pipe size (O.D. x min. thickness [temper grade])		
	Suction gas pipe	HP/LP gas pipe	Liquid pipe
34HP	ø34.9X1.21[1/2H]	ø28.6X1.0[1/2H]	ø19.1X1.0[1/2H]
36HP	ø41.3X1.43[1/2H]		
38~48HP		ø34.9X1.21[1/2H]	

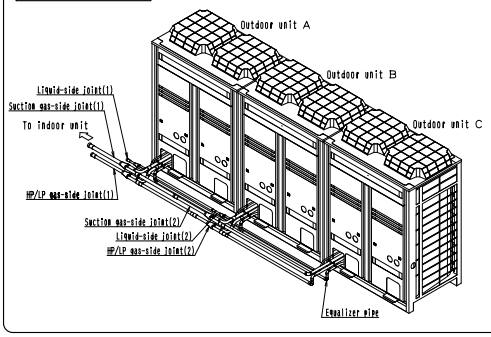
When reducer is used

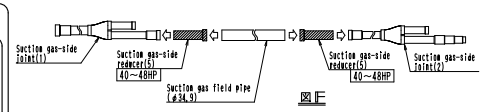
- Suction gas-side reducer(4) may be used during the construction on this installition see right figure C for the connection detail.
- Suction gas-side reducer(5) may be used during the construction on this installition see right figure D, E, or F for the connection detail.



❶ Installation examples Procedure for Front Connection

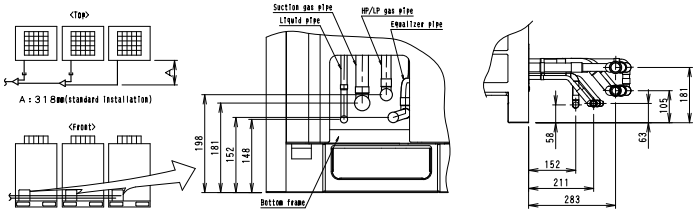
1-1 Exterior view





1-2 Finished dimensions

- For installations where the A dimensions exceed 318mm, extend the field supply interconnecting pipe between the joint and the outdoor unit.



1P206372B

❷ Connection of suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipe

2-1 Cutting the field supply Suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipe

- Cut the Suction gas pipe or HP/LP gas pipe(field supply) according to Table 1, 2.

Caution
- This table shows where A dimension is 318mm by 1-2 finished dimensions. If its installation exceeds 318mm, see table 1 and 2 and adjust Suction gas-side pipe 1, 2, 3 and HP/LP gas-side pipe 1, 2, 3, 4.
- The L dimensions of the suction gas-side pipe 1, 2, 3 in Table 1 and HP/LP gas-side pipe 1, 2, 3, 4 in Table 2 are applied to where B dimensions of elbows are shown as in Table 3 and 4. If B dimension is different from the dimensions in the table, see Table 1 and 2 and adjust them.

■ Table1

Model type	Suction gas pipe 1(field supply) L(mm)	Suction gas pipe 2(field supply) L(mm)	Suction gas pipe 3(field supply) L(mm)
34HP	135	79	256
36・38HP		153	252
40HP			256
42HP			252
44~48HP			256

■ Table3

Model type	Elbow 1(field supply) B(mm)
34~38HP	23
40HP	29
42HP	23
44~48HP	29

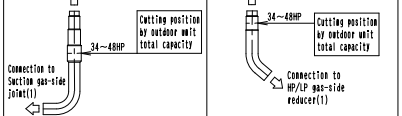
■ Table4

Model type	Elbow 2(field supply) B(mm)
34~44HP	17
46・48HP	23

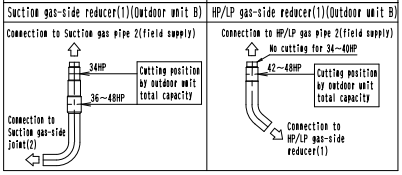
■ Table2

Model type	HP/LP gas pipe 1(field supply) L(mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 2(field supply) L(mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 3(field supply) L(mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 4(field supply) L(mm)
34~40HP	80	67	262	59
42・44HP	80	97	262	59
46・48HP	80	97	256	47

Suction gas-side reducer(1)(Outdoor unit A) / HP/LP gas-side reducer(1)(Outdoor unit A)

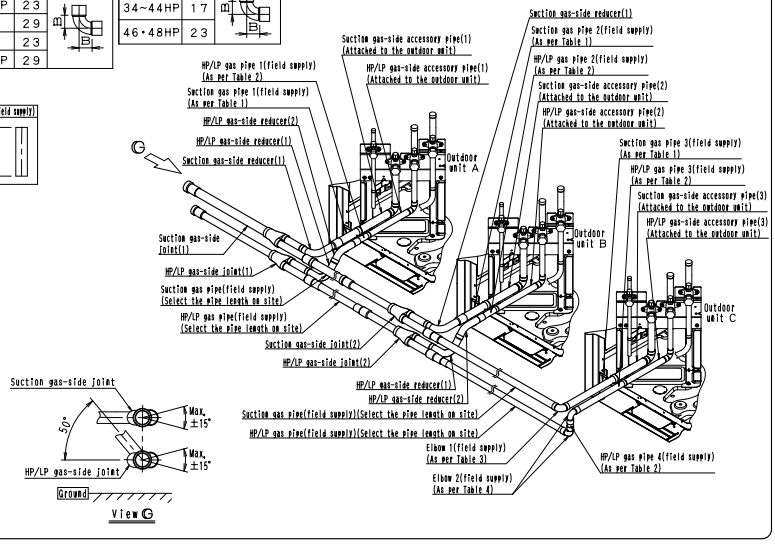


Suction gas-side reducer(1)(Outdoor unit B) / HP/LP gas-side reducer(1)(Outdoor unit B)



2-2 Connection of pipes

- Connect suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipes as following the procedure on the below figure. (For connection of pipes, at first, connect Suction gas-side joint with Suction gas-side reducer (1) and HP/LP gas-side joint with HP/LP gas-side reducers (1) and (2).)
- See 1-2 finished dimensions for the location (height) of the joints.
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes.
- Install the joints so that an attached face of the caution label keeps horizontally. (See the view G)
- Refer of both Cutting procedure for the cuting position of both joint and reducer.



❸ Connection of Liquid-side and equalizer pipe

3-1 Cutting the field supply Liquid-side and equalizer pipe

- Cut the equalizer pipe(field supply) according to Table 1.

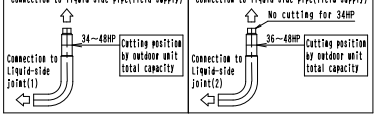
Caution
- This table shows the case when the A dimensions shown in 1-2 Finished dimensions is 318mm, If the A dimensions exceed 318mm, see Table 1 and adjust the dimensions of Equalizer pipe 1 and 2.
- The L dimensions of Equalizer pipe 1 and 2 in Table 1 show those when the field supply elbows have B dimension in Table 2. If the B dimension is not same with Table 2, see Table 1 and adjust them accordingly.

3-2 Connection of pipes

- Connect liquid-side and equalizer pipes as following the procedure on right figure. (For connection of pipes, at first, connect Liquid-side joint with Liquid-side reducer (1).)
- See 1-2 finished dimensions for the location (height) of the joints.
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes.
- Connect Liquid-side reducer (1) as at about 40° inclination and bend the field supplied liquid pipe up to the stop valve as following the procedure on right figure.
- If the liquid-side reducer is connected with liquid-side pipes not bent vertically, the insulation will not be fitted.
- Refer of both Cutting procedure for the cuting position of both joint and reducer.

Caution
- If the liquid side reducer is connected horizontally without bending the liquid pipes, the insulation will not fit.

Liquid-side reducer(1)(Outdoor unit A) / Liquid-side reducer(1)(Outdoor unit B)

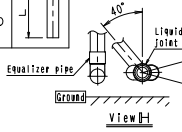


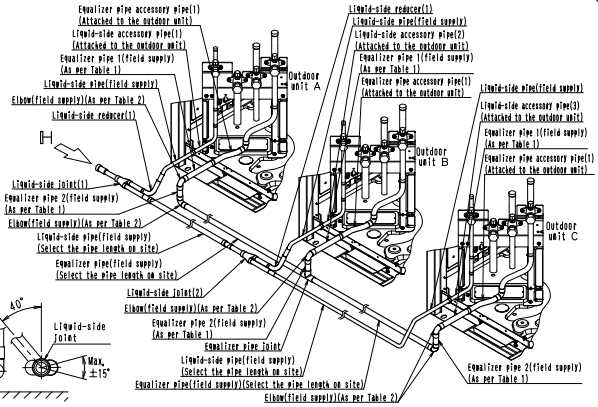
■ Table1

Equalizer pipe 1(field supply) L(mm)	Equalizer pipe 2(field supply) L(mm)
95	60

■ Table2

Elbow(field supply) B(mm)
17





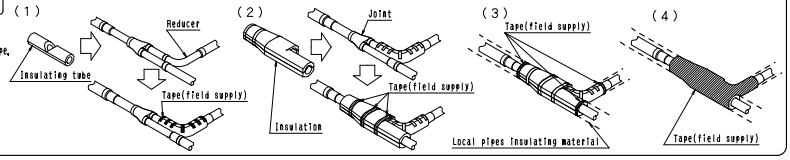
❹ The work after the kit is connected

Connection of piping between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit
Air tight test

Follow the instructions in the installation manual included with the outdoor unit, when performing installation work.

Insulation of joints

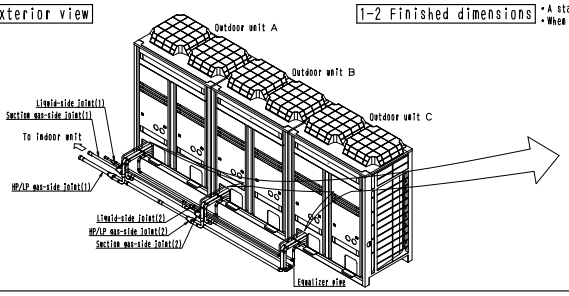
(1) Fit the insulating tube to the reducer and temporarily keep it in place with tape.
(2) Fit the insulation to the joint and temporarily keep it in place with tape without leaving a gap between the insulation mating faces. (See the figure at the right.)
(3) Seal the seam between the insulation and the field supply piping insulation with the field supply tape.
(4) Wrap the tape around the insulation attached to the joint without leaving a gap. (▨ section shown in the figure at the right.)



❶ Installation examples — Procedure for Lower Front Connection

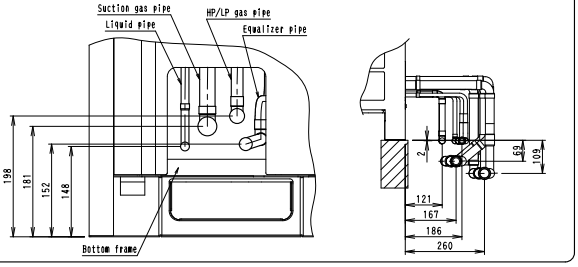
continue to reverse side

1-1 Exterior view



1-2 Finished dimensions

- A standard installation has the following dimensions.
- When the dimensions exceed the standard installation, extend the pipes between the outdoor unit and the joint(field supply).



1P206372B

❷ Connection of suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipe

2-1 Cutting the field supply Suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipe

- Cut the according to Table 1, 2.

Caution • The L dimensions of Suction gas pipe 1-6 in Table 1 and HP/LP gas pipe 1-7 in Table 2 are applied to where B dimensions of elbows are shown as in Table 3, 4. If B dimension is different from the dimensions in the table, see Table 1 and 2 and adjust them.

■ Table1

Model type	Suction gas pipe 1(field supply) L (mm)	Suction gas pipe 2(field supply) L (mm)	Suction gas pipe 3(field supply) L (mm)	Suction gas pipe 4(field supply) L (mm)	Suction gas pipe 5(field supply) L (mm)	Suction gas pipe 6(field supply) L (mm)
34HP	212	199	164	168	102	244
36・38HP						
40HP		195	160		168	232
42HP			164			244
44~48HP			160			232

■ Table2

Model type	HP/LP gas pipe 1(field supply) L (mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 2(field supply) L (mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 3(field supply) L (mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 4(field supply) L (mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 5(field supply) L (mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 6(field supply) L (mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 7(field supply) L (mm)
34~40HP	217	206	176	97	73	233	64
42・44HP	217	200	176	97	97	233	64
46・48HP	217	200	170	97	97	221	52

■ Table3

Model type	Elbow 1(field supply) B (mm)	Elbow 2(field supply) B (mm)	Elbow 3(field supply) B (mm)
34HP	29	23	23
36・38HP			29
40HP		29	23
42HP			29
44~48HP			

■ Table4

Model type	Elbow 4(field supply) B (mm)	Elbow 5(field supply) B (mm)	Elbow 6(field supply) B (mm)
34~40HP	23	17	17
42・44HP		23	23
46・48HP			

Suction gas-side reducer(1)(Outdoor unit A)

Connection to suction gas pipe 4(field supply)

Cutting position by outdoor unit total capacity

34~48HP

Connection to Suction gas-side joint(1)

HP/LP gas-side reducer(2)(Outdoor unit A)

Connection to HP/LP gas pipe 4(field supply)

34~48HP

Cutting position by outdoor unit total capacity

Connection to HP/LP gas-side reducer(1)

Suction gas-side reducer(1)(Outdoor unit B)

Connection to suction gas pipe 5(field supply)

34HP

36~48HP

Cutting position by outdoor unit total capacity

Connection to Suction gas-side joint(2)

HP/LP gas-side reducer(2)(Outdoor unit B)

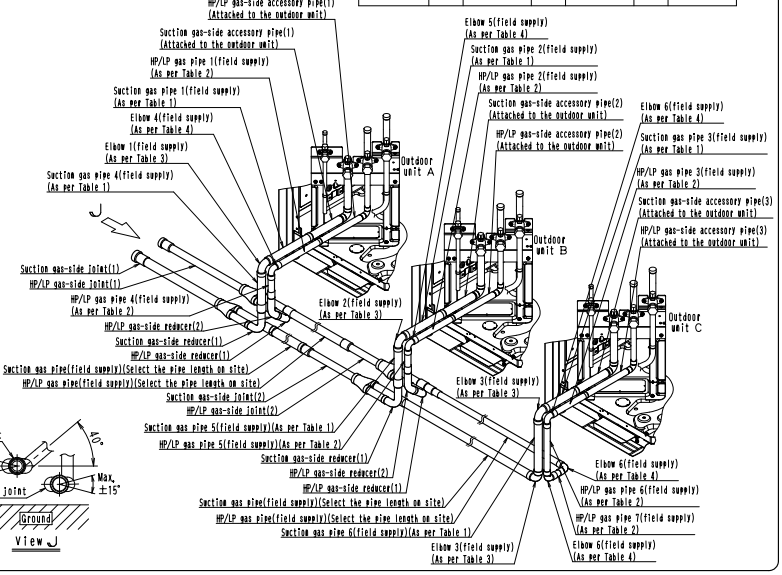
Connection to HP/LP gas pipe 5(field supply)

No cutting for 34~40HP

42~48HP

Cutting position by outdoor unit total capacity

Connection to HP/LP gas-side reducer(1)



2-2 Connection of pipes

- Connect suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipes as following the procedure on the right figure, (For connection of pipes, at first, connect Suction gas-side joint with Suction gas-side reducer (1) and HP/LP gas-side joint with HP/LP gas-side reducers (1) and (2).)
- See the caution section in the Installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes.
- Install the joints so that an attached face of the caution label keeps horizontally. (See the view J)
- Refer of both Cutting procedure for the cuting position of both joint and reducer.

❸ Connection of Liquid-side and equalizer pipe

3-1 Cutting the field supply Liquid-side and equalizer pipe

- Cut the equalizer pipe(field supply) according to Table 1.

Caution • This table shows where A dimension is 318mm by 1-2 finished dimensions. If its installation exceeds 318mm, see Table 1 and adjust Equalizer pipe 1 and 2.
• The L dimensions of Equalizer pipe 1 and 2 in Table 1 are applied to where elbows are the B dimension in Table 2 on "procedure for front connection" and " connection of Liquid-side and equalizer pipe." If B dimension is different from the dimensions in the table, see Table 1 and adjust them.

3-2 Connection of pipes

- Connect liquid-side and equalizer pipes as following the procedure on the right figure, (For the connection, at the first, connect Liquid-side joint with Liquid-side reducer (1).)
- See 1-2 finished dimensions for the location (height) of the joints.
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes.
- Install the joints so that an attached face of the caution label keeps horizontally. (See the view K)
- Connect Liquid-side reducer(1) as at about 90° inclination and bend the field supplied liquid pipe up to the stop valve as following the procedure on right figure. (See the view K)
- Refer of both Cutting procedure for the cuting position of both joint and reducer.

Caution • If the liquid side reducer is connected vertically without bending the liquid pipes, the insulation will not fit.

■ Table1

Equalizer pipe 1(field supply) L (mm)	Equalizer pipe 2(field supply) L (mm)
65	120

Liquid-side reducer(1)(Outdoor unit A)

Connection to liquid-side pipe (field supply)

34~48HP

Cutting position by outdoor unit total capacity

Connection to Liquid-side joint

Liquid-side reducer(1)(Outdoor unit B)

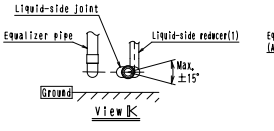
Connection to liquid-side pipe (field supply)

No cutting for 34HP

36~48HP

Cutting position by outdoor unit total capacity

Connection to Liquid-side joint



❹ The work after the kit is connected

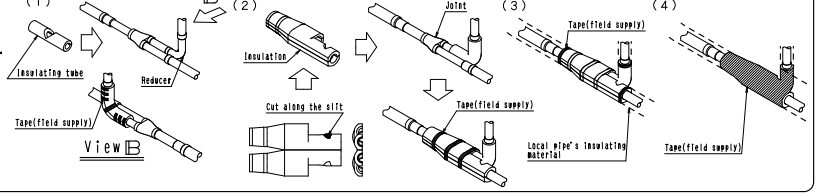
Connection of piping between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit

Air tight test

Insulation of joints

Follow the instructions in the installation manual included with the outdoor unit, when performing installation work.

(1) Fit the Insulating tube to the reducer and temporarily keep it in place with tape.
(2) Cut insulating tube along the slit. (See the figure at the right.)
Fit the Insulation to the joint and temporarily keep it in place with tape without leaving a gap between the insulation mating faces.
(3) Seal the seam between the insulation and the field supply piping insulation with the field supply tape.
(4) Wrap the tape around the insulation attached to the joint without leaving a gap. (▨ section shown in the figure at the right.)

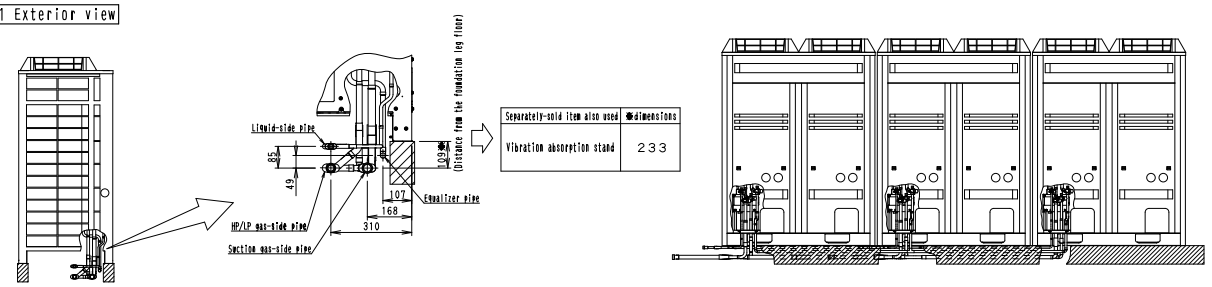


1P206373B

❶ Installation examples — Procedure for Bottom Connection

⚠Caution This installation is only possible if there is enough space to perform brazing and racking underneath the outdoor unit. If a centralized vibration proof base are used, the dimensions marked with "✽" in the figure below will vary, so see the table below and determine the length of the field pipes.

1-1 Exterior view



Separately-sold item also used	✽dimensions
Vibration absorption stand	233

❷ Connection of suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipe

2-1 Cutting the field supply suction gas-side pipe and HP/LP gas-side pipe and the suction gas-side accessory pipe(2) attached to the outdoor unit

- Cut the pipes according to Table 1 or 2.

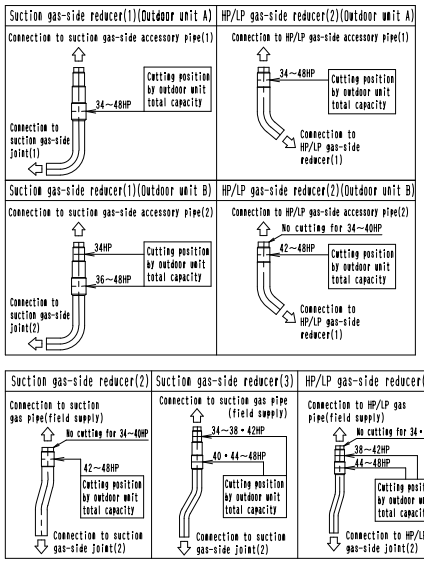
Caution
- The "L" dimensions of the suction gas pipe 1 in Table 1 and the HP/LP gas pipe 1~3 in Table 2 are identical to the "B" dimensions in Table 3 and Table 4 those of "field supply elbows" shown in the procedure of front connection, which are equivalent to "straight size joint" with stopper. If the "B" dimentions are not identical to Table 3 and Table 4 or "straight size joint" is without stopper, adjust them as Table 1 and 2 show.

■ Table 1 (For Outdoor unit C Side)

Model type	Suction gas-side accessory pipe(3) (Attached to the outdoor unit) L(mm)	Cutting position	Suction gas pipe 1(field supply) L(mm)
34~38HP	0 (no cutting)		137
40~46HP			102
48HP	41		98

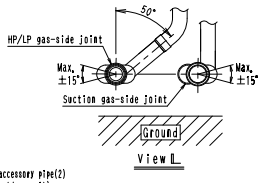
■ Table2

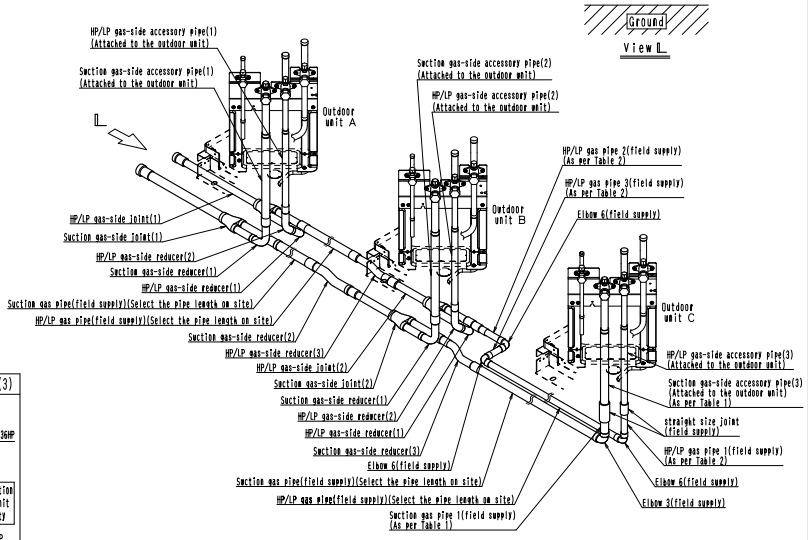
Model type	HP/LP gas pipe 1(field supply) L(mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 2(field supply) L(mm)	HP/LP gas pipe 3(field supply) L(mm)
34~44HP	155	86	94
46·48HP	119	110	82



2-2 Connection of pipes

- Remove the knockout plate on the bottom frame. (See the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit)
- Connect the suction gas-side and HP/LP gas-side pipes as shown in the figure below. (When connecting the pipes, first connect Suction gas-side joint and the suction gas-side reducer(1), the HP/LP gas-side joint and the HP/LP gas-side reducer (1)(2))
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes.
- Install the joint so that an attached face of the caution label keeps horizontal. (See the view L)
- Connect the HP/LP gas-side reducer(1) as at above, 50° inclination and connect HP/LP gas-side reducer(2)(See the view L)
- Refer of both Cutting procedure for the cuting position of both joint and reducer.



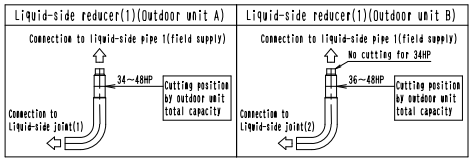


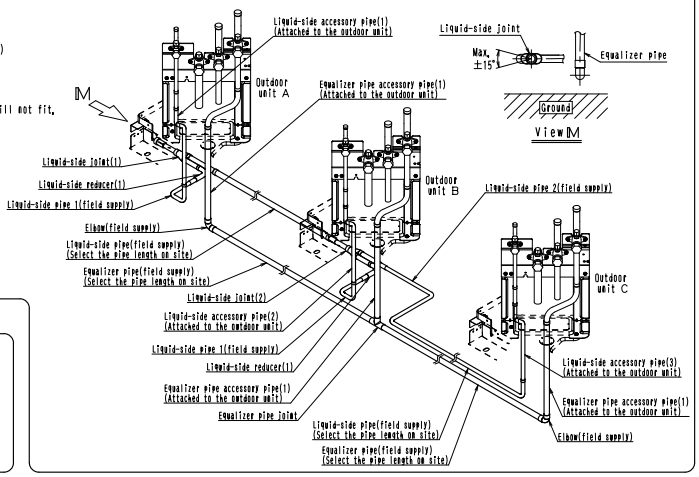
❸ Connection of Liquid-side and equalizer pipe

3-1 Connection of pipes

- Remove the knockout plate on the bottom frame. (See the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit)
- Connect the liquid side and equalizer pipe as shown in the figure right. (When connecting the pipes, first connect Liquid-side joint and Liquid-side reducer (1))
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit for brazing pipes.
- Install the joint in such a way that the attached face of the caution label becomes horizontal. (See the view M)
- Bend the field supplied liquid pipe up to the stop valve as shown in the right figure. (See the view M)
- Refer of both Cutting procedure for the cuting position of both joint and reducer.

Caution
- If the liquid side reducer is connected vertically without bending the liquid pipes, the insulation will not fit.





❹ The work after the kit is connected

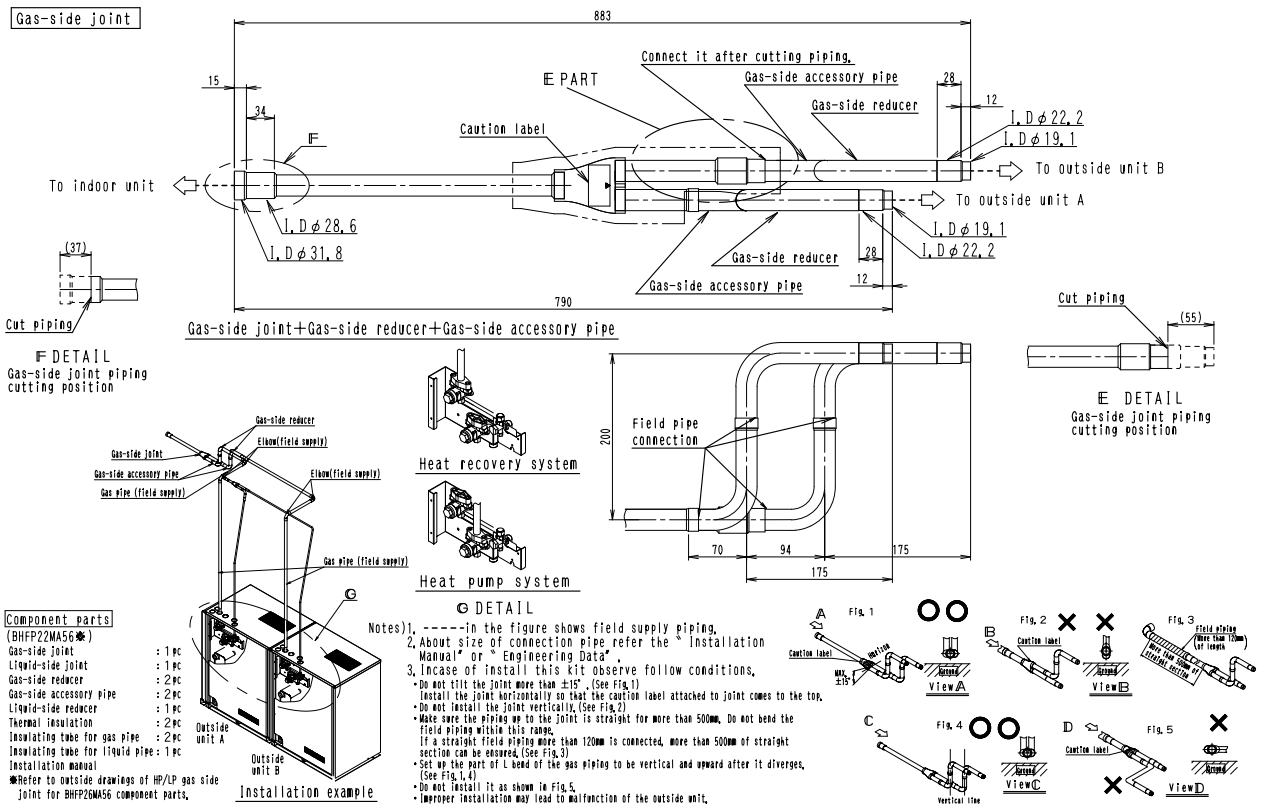
Connection of piping between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit
Air tight test
} Follow the instructions in the installation manual included with the outdoor unit, when performing installation work.

Insulation of joints
- See "The work after the kit is connected " for a Lower front connection."

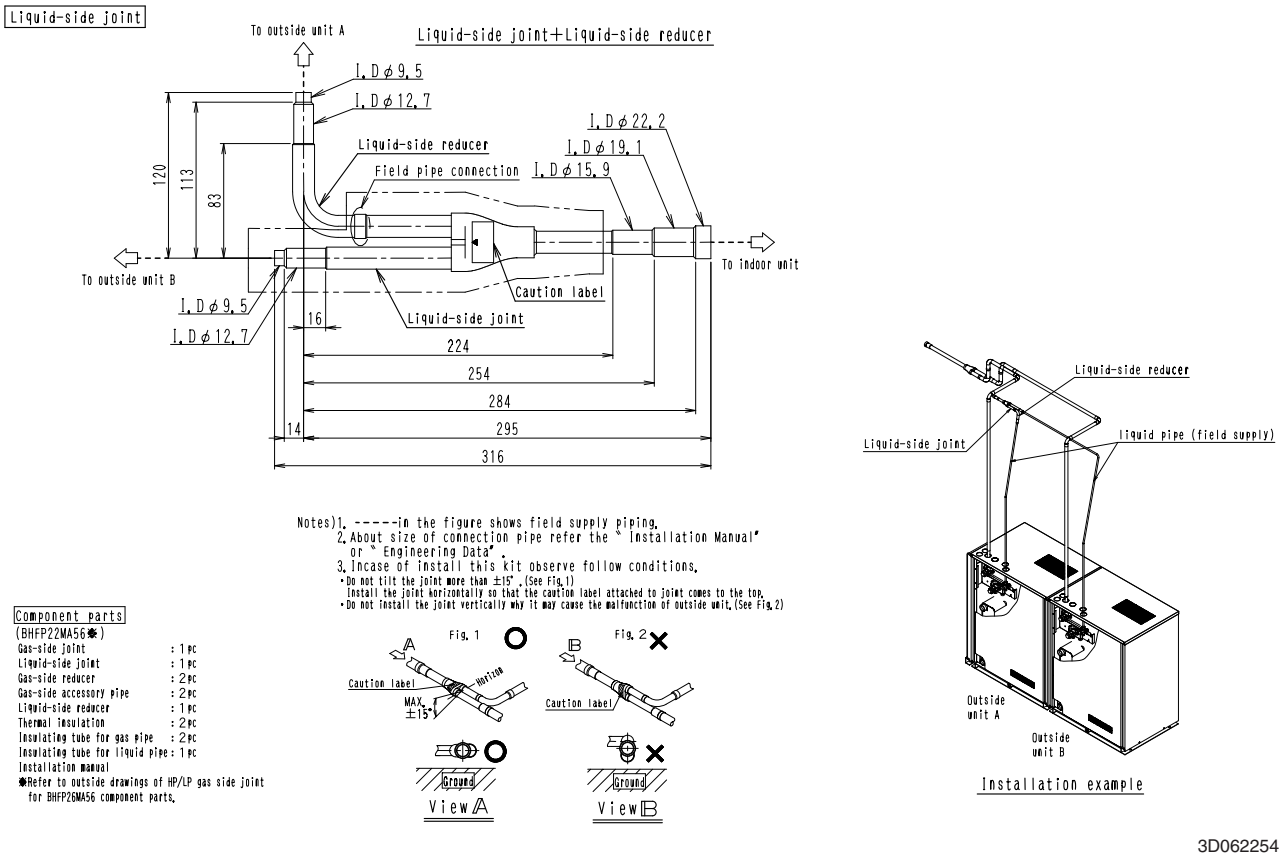
1P206373B

5.4 BHFP22MA56 / 84, BHFP26MA56 / 84

BHFP22MA56 / BHFP26MA56

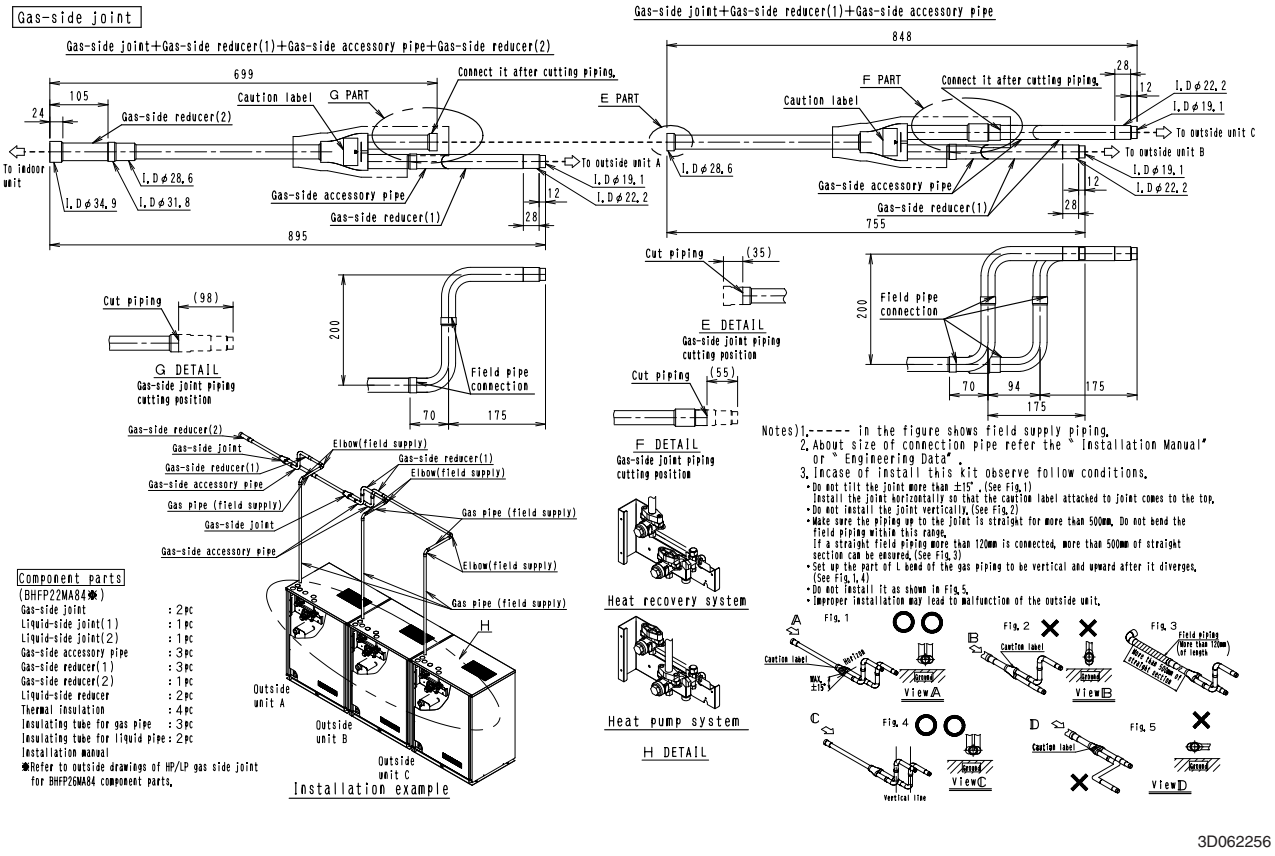


3D062255

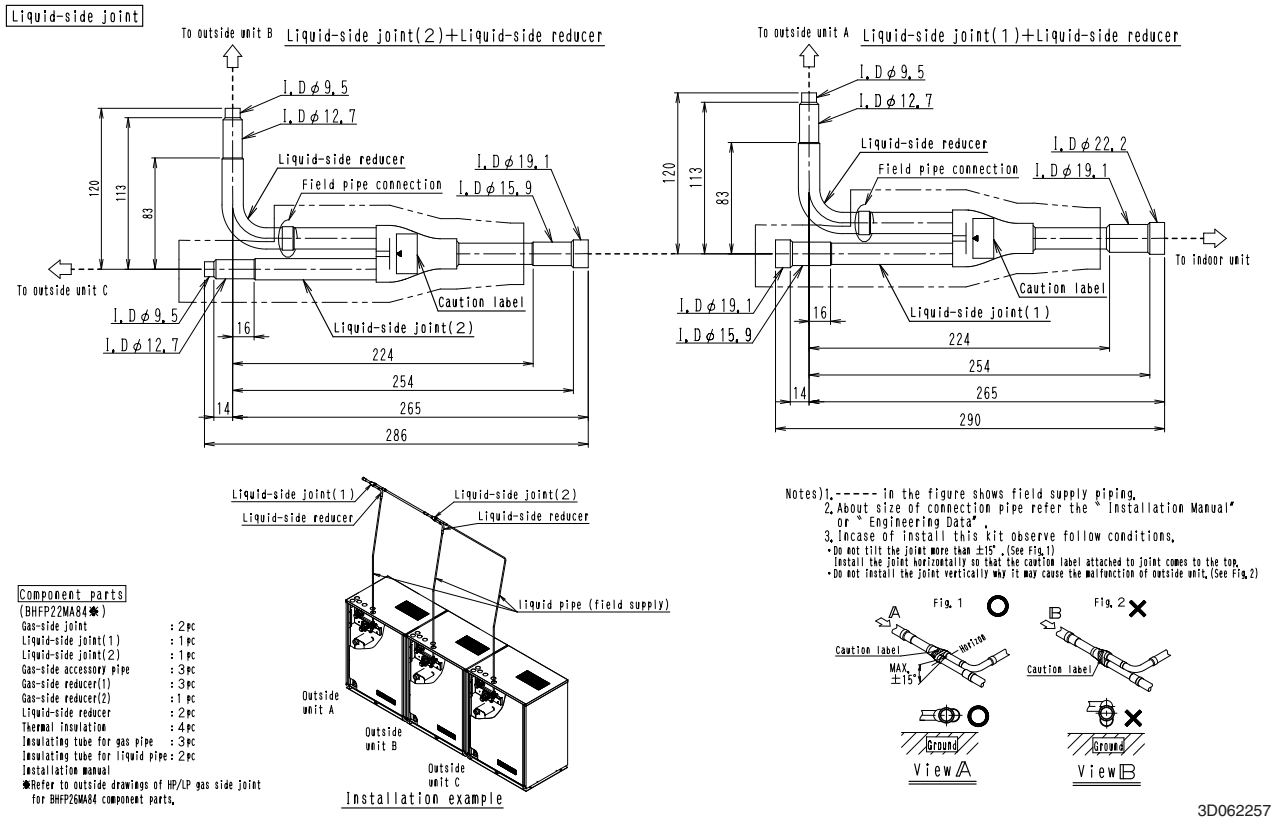


3D062254

BHFP22MA84 / BHFP26MA84

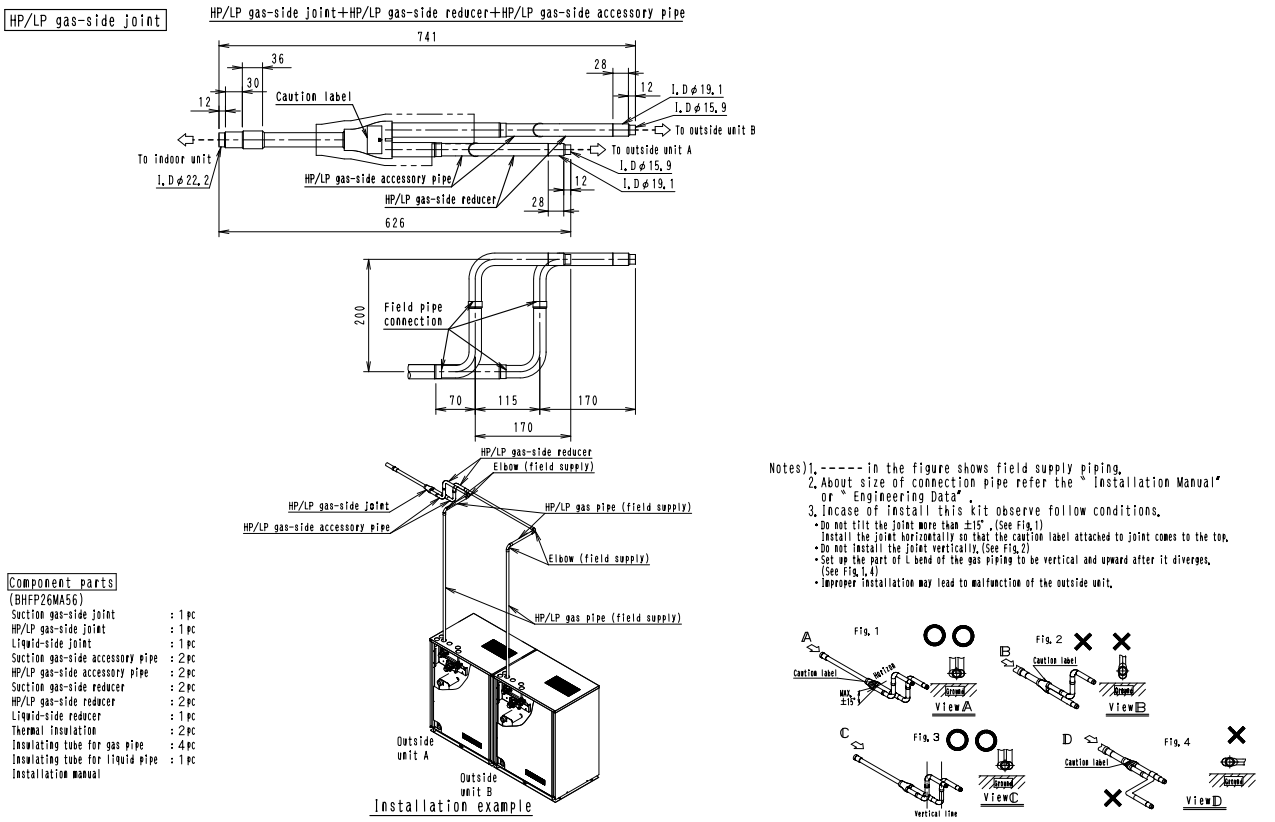


3D062256



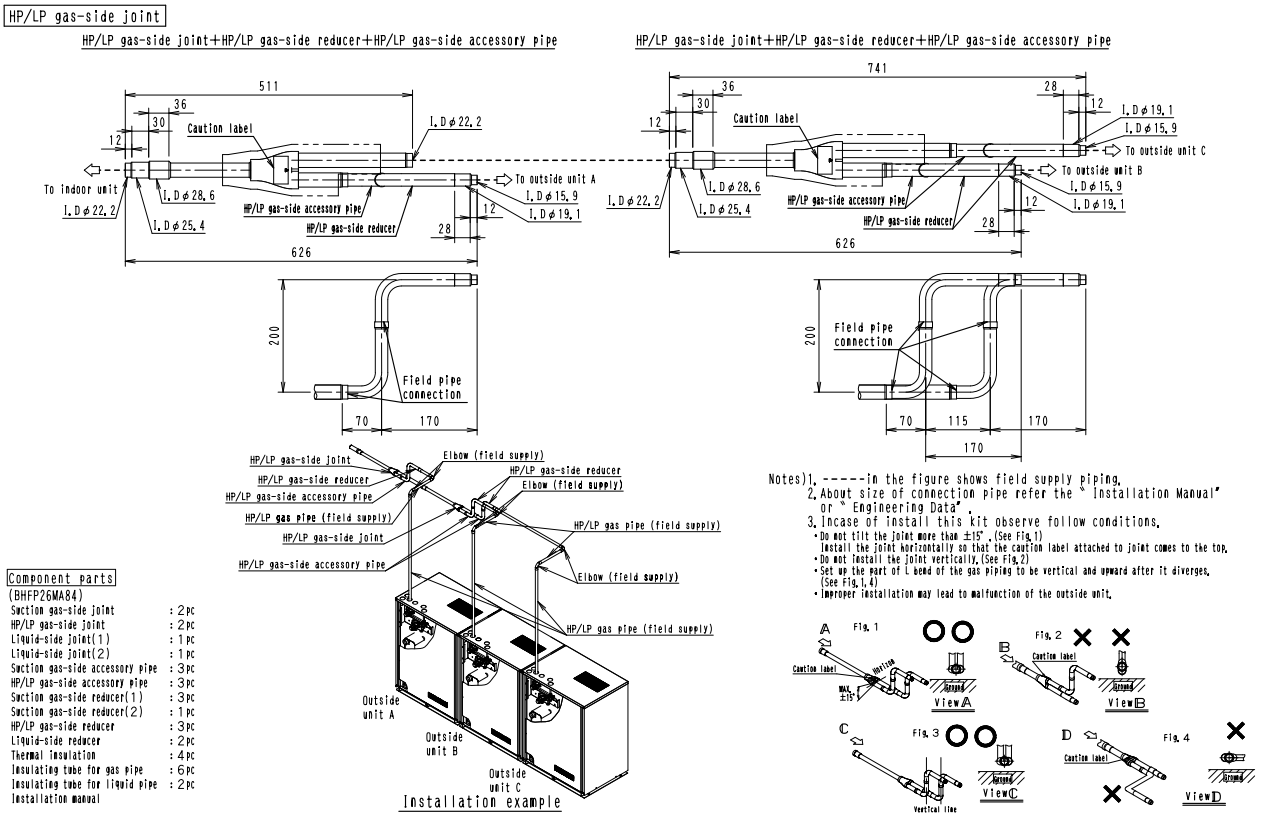
3D062257

BHFP26MA56



3D062252

BHFP26MA84



3D062253

BHFP22MA56 / BHFP22MA84

VRV-W Series Please be sure to read before installation and follow the instructions carefully when performing installation works.

1P236136-1

Outside unit Multi Connection Piping Kit Installation Manual

BHFP22MA56・84

Component parts

■This kit contains the follwing parts. 〈Do not throw away any of the accessories until installation is complete.〉

Kit name	SHAPE						
	Gas-side joint	Liquid-side joint	Gas-side reducer	Gas-side accessory pipe	Liquid-side reducer	Insulating tube for gas pipe	Insulating tube for liquid pipe
BHFP22P56	1pc	1pc	2pc	2pc	1pc	2pc	1pc
BHFP22P84	2pc	(1) 1pc (2) 1pc	(1) 3pc (2) 1pc	3pc	2pc	3pc	2pc

Notes
- Please be sure to read this manual before installation and follow the instructions carefully when performing installation works.
- See the attached installation manual for the installation of outside unit.
- For installation of interconnecting pipes between the outside and indoor units, REFNET joint or REFNET header will be needed.

(units : mm)

Temper grade	O Type				1/2H Type				
Copper tube O.D.	φ6.4	φ9.5	φ12.7	φ15.9	φ19.1	φ22.2	φ25.4	φ28.6	φ31.8	φ34.9
Copper tube t (Minimum requirement)	0.80	0.80	0.80	0.99	0.80	0.80	0.88	0.99	1.10	1.21

Selection Procedure

Number of outside units connected	2 units	3 units
Outside unit Multi Connection Piping Kit	BHFP22MA56	BHFP22MA84

- 2 or 3 outside units can be connected.
- There are restrictions on the combination of outside units, so please refer to the Engineering Data for details.

Field supply parts

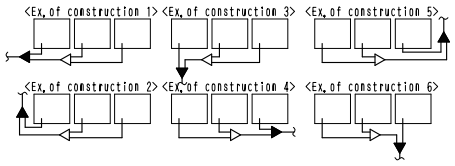
■The following parts are needed to connect this kit and are not included.

Field supply parts		
Name	Q'ty	Selection Procedure
Insulation for piping	1set	See the "Connecting Pipe Sizes and location of cutting the joint" for details on the necessary size.
Connection piping		
Elbow		Prepare a gas pipe diameter for the upper outside unit as listed in "Connecting Pipe Sizes and location of cutting the joint."
	4pc	BHFP22MA56
	6pc	BHFP22MA84
Tape	1set	For insulation materials

Notes
- Quantities and selection procedure of elbows are only applicable upper connections, (see the right page)
- The quantities and selection procedure shall be changed according to refrigerant piping.
- The min. thickness of the pipes in this manual shows the requirements of Japanese High Pressure Gas Control law, (As of Jan, 2003) And the temper grade (O, 1/2H) shows the material type of JIS H 3300. The thickness and material shall be selected in accordance with local code for the design pressure 4.0MPa(40bar).

Installation examples

- The figure at the right shows a typical connection. Make sure to follow the installation restrictions and carry out installation taking the field requirements into consideration.

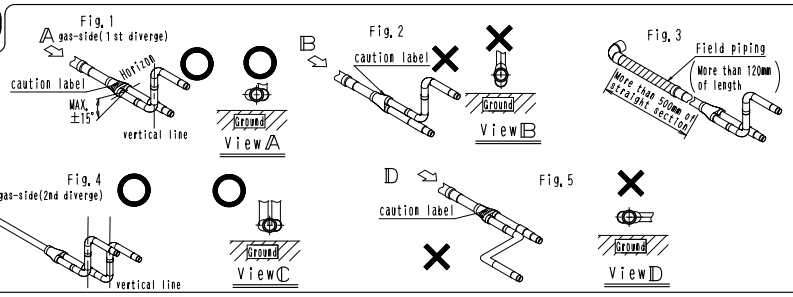


⚠To the piping installer

When installing this kit, please apply the following restrictions.

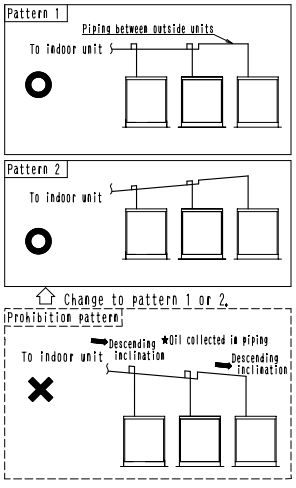
Restrictions on installing multi connection piping kit

- Do not tilt the joint more than ±15°. (See Fig. 1)
  Install the joint horizontally so that the caution label attached to joint comes to the top.
- Do not install the joint vertically. (See Fig. 2)
- Make sure the piping up to the joint is straight for more than 500mm. Do not bend the field piping within this range.
  If a straight field piping more than 120mm is connected, more than 500mm of straight section can be ensured. (See Fig. 3)
- Set up the part of L bend of the gas piping to be vertical and upward after it diverges. (See Fig. 1, 4)
- Do not install it as shown in Fig. 5.
- Improper installation may lead to malfunction of the outside unit.

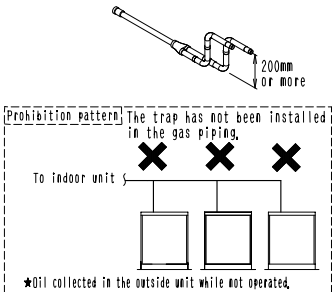


Restrictions on piping between outside units

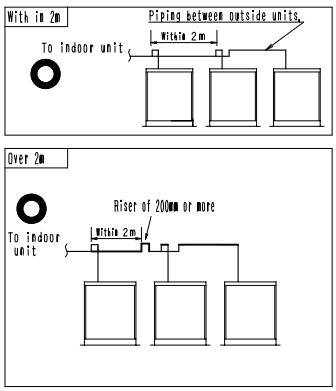
1. Piping between outside units be located either in level or up-graded in order to prevent oil from being collected in the pipe.



2. Make traps of 200mm or more after take-off of the gas pipe by using accessory pipe in this kit. Collected refrigerant may cause the outside unit breakdown.



3. If the distance between outside unit connection piping kits exceeds 2m, 200mm or more of a riser is required within 2m from the kit only on the gas side.



BHFP22MA56 Installation Instructions

⚠Caution There are some restrictions on the interconnecting pipes between the outside units. See the installation manual attached to the outside units and make sure to carry out proper piping. If the piping restrictions are not observed, it may result in breakdown of the unit.

Connecting pipe sizes and location of cutting the joint

Select either a joint or a reducer which is suitable for the size of the interconnecting pipes determined according to the table below and cut it with a pipe cutter.

Main pipe
- Select according to system capacity of the outside unit.

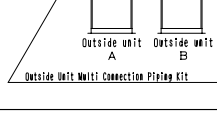
(units : mm)

System capacity of outside unit	Pipe size (outer diameter X Min thickness)	
	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
RWEYQ16 type	φ28.6X0.99	φ12.7X0.80
RWEYQ18, 20 type		φ15.9X0.99

Pipe between the kit and the outside unit
- Select according to capacity of each unit.

(units : mm)

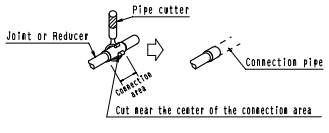
Capacity type of outside unit	Pipe size (outer diameter X Min thickness)	
	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
RWEYQ8 type	φ19.1X0.80	φ9.5X0.80
RWEYQ10 type	φ22.2X0.80	



Follow "Restrictions on Installing Multi Connection Piping Kit"

Cutting procedure

- Use pipe cutter for cutting.



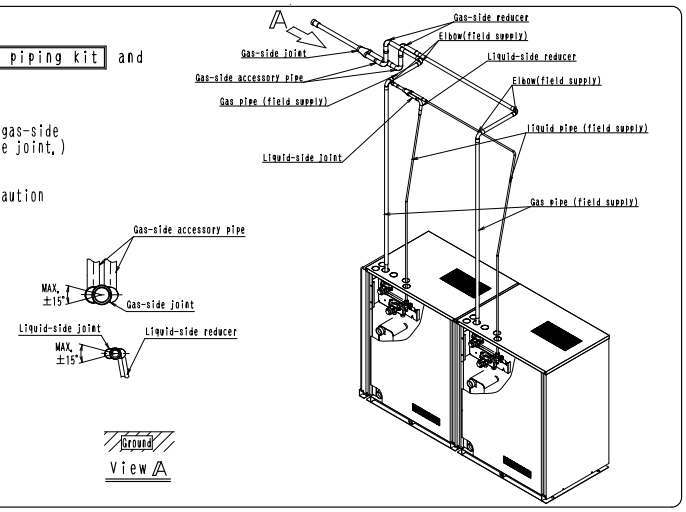
1P236136

❶ Installation examples — Procedure for upper connection

1 — 1 Connection of gas and liquid pipes

Plese be sure to read **Restrictions on installing multi connection piping kit** and **Restriction on piping between outside units.**

- Connect the gas and liquid pipes as shown on the right figure. (When connecting the pipes, first connect the gas-side accessory pipe and the gas-side reducer to the gas-side joint, and the liquid-side reducer to the liquid-side joint.)
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outside unit for brazing pipes.
- When mounting the joints, place them horizontal to the ground by facing the caution label (See View A).



❷ The work after the kit is connected

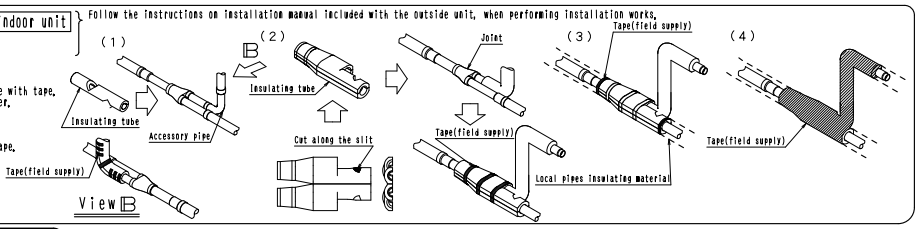
Connection of piping between the outside unit and the indoor unit

Air tight test

Insulation of joints

(1) Fit the insulation on the reducer and temporarily keep it in place with tape.
(2) • Cut-off the slit on insulation to match direction of the reducer.
• Fit the insulation on the joint and temporarily keep it in place with tape (field supply) without any gap between the insulation. (See the right figure)
(3) Seal between the insulation and the field supply pipes with the tape.
(4) Wrap the tape around the insulation attached to the joint without leaving any gap.
(▨ part on the right figure(4))

Follow the instructions on installation manual included with the outside unit, when performing installation works.



BHFP22MA84 Installation Instructions

⚠Caution There are some restrictions on the interconnecting pipes between the outside units. See the installation manual attached to the outside units and make sure to carry out proper piping. If the piping restrictions are not observed, it may result in breakdown of the unit.

Connecting pipe sizes and location of cutting the joint Select either a joint or a reducer which is suitable for the size of the interconnecting pipes determined according to the table below and cut it with a pipe cutter.

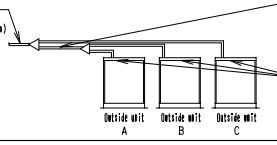
Main pipe
• Select according to system capacity of the outside unit.

System capacity of outside unit	Pipe size (outer diameter X Min thickness) (units : mm)	
	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
RWEYQ24 type	ø34.9×1.21	ø15.9×0.99
RWEYQ26-30 type		ø19.1×0.80

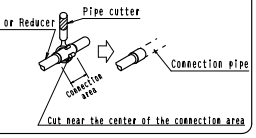
Pipe between the kits
• Select according to total capacity of the combination of units.

Total capacity of outside unit	Pipe size (outer diameter X Min thickness) (units : mm)	
	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
16HP 18, 20HP	ø28.6×0.99	ø12.7×0.80 ø15.9×0.99

Capacity type of outside unit	Pipe size (outer diameter X Min thickness) (units : mm)	
	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
RWEYQ8 type	ø19.1×0.80	ø9.5×0.80
RWEYQ10 type	ø22.2×0.80	



Cutting procedure
• Use pipe cutter for cutting.

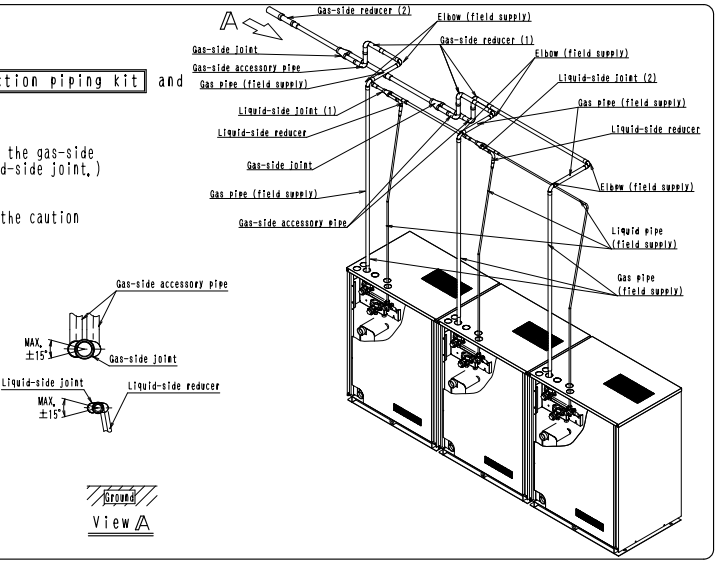


❶ Installation examples — Procedure for upper connection

1 — 1 Connection of gas and liquid pipes

Plese be sure to read **Restrictions on installing multi connection piping kit** and **Restriction on piping between outside units.**

- Connect the gas and liquid pipes as shown on the right figure. (When connecting the pipes, first connect the gas-side accessory pipe and the gas-side reducer to the gas-side joint, and the liquid-side reducer to the liquid-side joint.)
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outside unit for brazing pipes.
- When mounting the joints, place them horizontal to the ground by facing the caution label (See View A).



❷ The work after the kit is connected

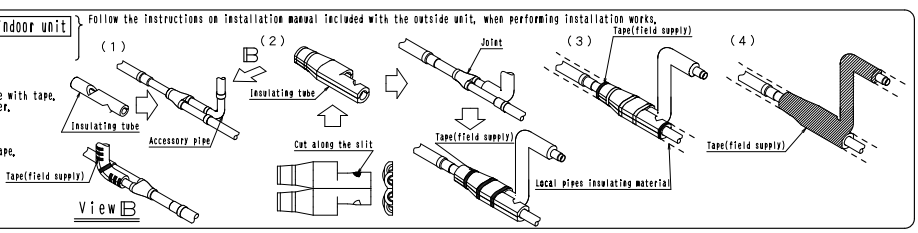
Connection of piping between the outside unit and the indoor unit

Air tight test

Insulation of joints

(1) Fit the insulation on the reducer and temporarily keep it in place with tape.
(2) • Cut-off the slit on insulation to match direction of the reducer.
• Fit the insulation on the joint and temporarily keep it in place with tape (field supply) without any gap between the insulation. (See the right figure)
(3) Seal between the insulation and the field supply pipes with the tape.
(4) Wrap the tape around the insulation attached to the joint without leaving any gap.
(▨ part on the right figure(4))

Follow the instructions on installation manual included with the outside unit, when performing installation works.



1P236136

BHFP26MA56 / BHFP26MA84

VRV-W Series

Please be sure to read before installation and follow the instructions carefully when performing installation works.

1P236135-1

Outside unit Multi Connection Piping Kit Installation Manual

BHFP26MA56・84

Component parts

■This kit contains the follwing parts.

<Before Installation>
- This kit is a common optional accessory for VRV-W Series in general. When connecting to VRV-WII Series (RWEYQ-W type), replace the (✱) marked word "HP/LP gas" with "Discharge gas".
- Do not throw away any of the accessories until installation is complete.

Kit name	SHAPE									
	Suction gas-side joint	HP/LP gas-side joint(✱)	Liquid-side joint	Suction gas-side reducer	Suction gas-side accessory pipe	HP/LP gas-side reducer(✱)	HP/LP gas-side accessory pipe(✱)	Liquid-side reducer	Insulating tube for gas pipe	Insulating tube for liquid pipe
BHFP26MA56	1pc	1pc	1pc	2pc	2pc	2pc	2pc	1pc	4pc	1pc
BHFP26MA84	2pc	2pc	(1) 1pc, (2) 1pc	(1) 3pc, (2) 1pc	3pc	3pc	3pc	2pc	6pc	2pc

Selection Procedure

Number of outside units connected	2 units	3 units
Outside unit Multi Connection Piping Kit	BHFP26MA56	BHFP26MA84

- 2 or 3 outside units can be connected.
- There are restrictions on the combination of outside units, so please refer to the Engineering Data for details.

(units : mm)

Temper grade	O Type					1/2H Type				
Copper tube O.D.	ø6.4	ø9.5	ø12.7	ø15.9	ø19.1	ø12.7	ø15.9	ø19.1	ø22.2	ø34.9
Copper tube t (Minimum requirement)	0.80	0.80	0.80	0.99	0.80	0.80	0.80	0.99	1.10	1.21

Field supply parts

■The following parts are needed to connect this kit and are not included.

Field supply parts		
Name	Q'ty	Selection Procedure
Insulation for piping	1set	See the "Connecting Pipe Sizes and location of cutting the joint" for details on the necessary size.
Connection piping		
Elbow		Prepare a gas pipe diameter for the upper outside unit as listed in "Connection Pipe Sizes and location of cutting the joint."
	4pc	BHFP26MA56
	6pc	BHFP26MA84
Tape	1set	For insulation materials

Notes
- Please be sure to read this manual before installation and follow the instructions carefully when performing installation works.
- See the attached Installation manual for the installation of outside unit.
- For installation of interconnecting pipes between the outside and indoor units, REFNET joint or REFNET header will be needed.

Notes
- Quantities and selection procedure of elbows are only applicable upper connections. (see the right page)
- The quantities and selection procedure shall be changed according to refrigerant piping.
- The m/m, thickness of the pipes in this manual shows the requirements of Japanese High Pressure Gas Control law. (As of Jan, 2003) And the temper grade (O, 1/2H) shows the material type of JIS H 3300. The thickness and material shall be selected in accordance with local code for the design pressure 4.0MPa(40bar).

Installation examples

- The figure at the right shows a typical connection. Make sure to follow the installation restrictions and carry out installation taking the field requirements into consideration.

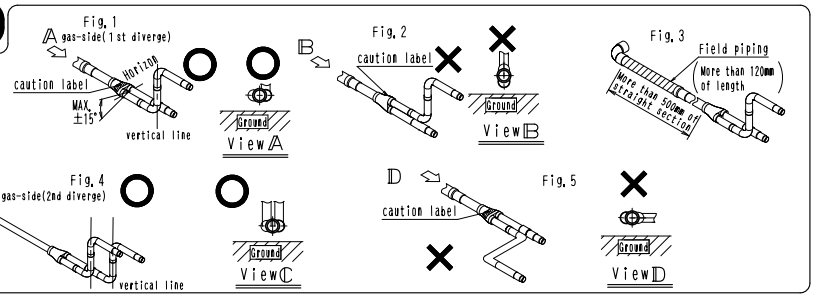
<Ex. of construction 1> <Ex. of construction 2> <Ex. of construction 3> <Ex. of construction 4> <Ex. of construction 5> <Ex. of construction 6>

⚠To the piping installer

When installing this kit, please apply the following restrictions.

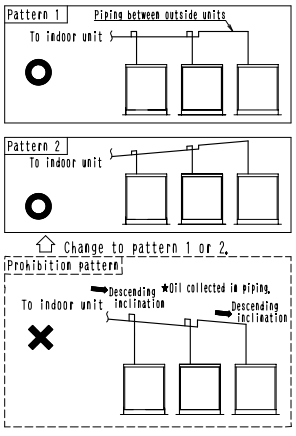
Restrictions on installing multi connection piping kit

- Do not tilt the joint more than ±15°. (See Fig.1) Install the joint horizontally so that the caution label attached to joint comes to the top.
- Do not install the joint vertically. (See Fig.2)
- Make sure the piping up to the joint is straight for more than 500mm. Do not bend the field piping within this range. If a straight field piping more than 120mm is connected, more than 500mm of straight section can be ensured. (See Fig.3)
- Set up the part of L bend of the gas piping to be vertical and upward after it diverges. (See Fig.1, 4)
- Do not install it as shown in Fig.5.
- Improper installation may lead to malfunction of the outside unit.

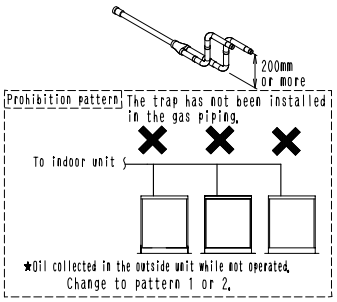


Restrictions on piping between outside units

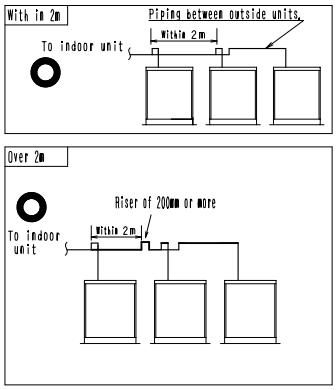
1. Piping between outside units be located either in level or up-graded in order to prevent oil from being collected in the pipe.



2. Make traps of 200mm or more after take-off of the gas pipe by using accessory pipe in this kit. Collected refrigerant may cause the outside unit breakdown.



3. If the distance between outside unit connection piping kits exceeds 2m, 200mm or more of a riser is required within 2m from the kit only on the gas side.



BHFP26MA56 Installation Instructions

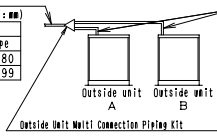
⚠Caution There are some restrictions on the interconnecting pipes between the outside units. See the installation manual attached to the outside units and make sure to carry out proper piping. If the piping restrictions are not observed, it may result in breakdown of the unit.

Connecting pipe sizes and location of cutting the joint

Select either a joint or a reducer which is suitable for the size of the interconnecting pipes determined according to the table below and cut it with a pipe cutter.

Main pipe
- Select according to system capacity of the outside unit. (units : mm)

System capacity of outside unit	Pipe size (outer diameter X Min thickness)		
	Suction gas pipe	HP/LP gas pipe(✱)	Liquid pipe
RWEYQ16 type	ø28.6X0.99	ø22.2X0.80	ø12.7X0.80
RWEYQ18,20 type			ø15.9X0.99



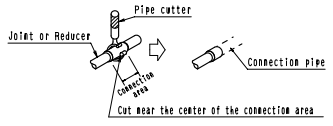
Pipe between the kit and the outside unit
- Select according to capacity of each unit. (units : mm)

Capacity type of outside unit	Pipe size (outer diameter X Min thickness)		
	Suction gas pipe	HP/LP gas pipe(✱)	Liquid pipe
RWEYQ8 type	ø19.1X0.80	ø15.9X0.99	ø9.5X0.80
RWEYQ10 type	ø22.2X0.80	ø19.1X0.80	

Follow "Restrictions on Installing Multi Connection Piping Kit"

Cutting procedure

- Use pipe cutter for cutting.



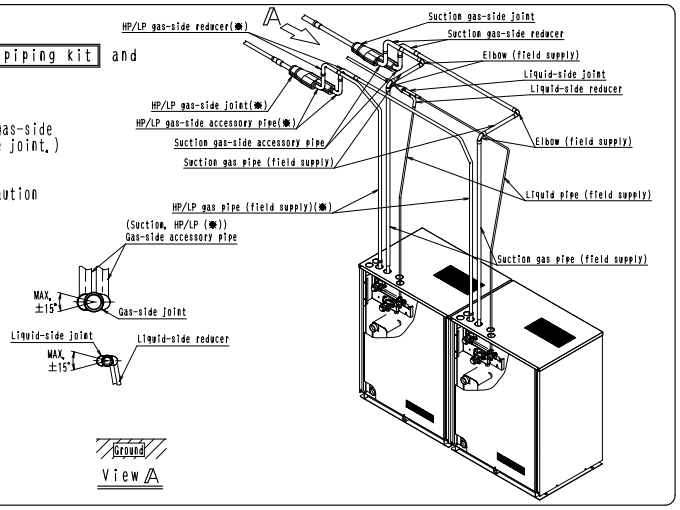
1P236135

❶ Installation examples Procedure for upper connection

1 — 1 Connection of gas and liquid pipes

Plese be sure to read Restrictions on installing multi connection piping kit and Restriction on piping between outside units.

- Connect the gas and liquid pipes as shown on the right figure. (When connecting the pipes, first connect the gas-side accessory pipe and the gas-side reducer to the gas-side joint, and the liquid-side reducer to the liquid-side joint.)
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outside unit for brazing pipes.
- When mounting the joints, place them horizontal to the ground by facing the caution label (See View A).



❷ The work after the kit is connected

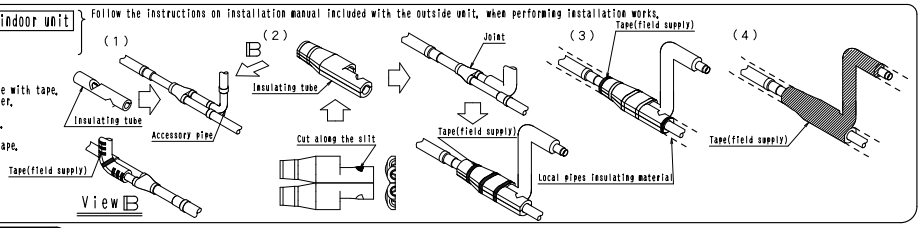
Connection of piping between the outside unit and the indoor unit

Follow the instructions on installation manual included with the outside unit, when performing installation works.

Air tight test

Insulation of joints

(1) Fit the insulation on the reducer and temporarily keep it in place with tape.
(2) • Cut off the slit on insulation to match direction of the reducer.
• Fit the insulation on the joint and temporarily keep it in place with tape (field supply) without any gap between the insulation. (See the right figure)
(3) Seal between the insulation and the field supply pipes with the tape.
(4) Wrap the tape around the insulation attached to the joint without leaving any gap.
(▨ part on the right figure(4))



BHFP26MA84 Installation Instructions

Caution There are some restrictions on the interconnecting pipes between the outside units. See the installation manual attached to the outside units and make sure to carry out proper piping. If the piping restrictions are not observed, it may result in breakdown of the unit.

Connecting pipe sizes and location of cutting the joint

Select either a joint or a reducer which is suitable for the size of the interconnecting pipes determined according to the table below and cut it with a pipe cutter.

Main pipe

• Select according to system capacity of the outside unit. (units : mm)

System capacity of outside unit	Pipe size (outer diameter X Min thickness)		
	Suction gas pipe	HP/LP gas pipe(✱)	Liquid pipe
RWEYQ24 type	⌀34.9X1.21	⌀28.6X0.99	⌀15.9X0.99
RWEYQ26-30 type			⌀19.1X0.80

Pipe between the kits

• Select according to total capacity of the combination of units. (units : mm)

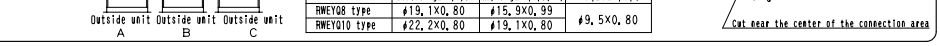
Total capacity of outside unit	Pipe size (outer diameter X Min thickness)		
	Suction gas pipe	HP/LP gas pipe(✱)	Liquid pipe
16HP	⌀28.6X0.99	⌀22.2X0.80	⌀12.7X0.80
18, 20HP			⌀15.9X0.99

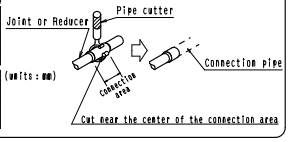
Capacity type of outside unit	Pipe size (outer diameter X Min thickness)		
	Suction gas pipe	HP/LP gas pipe(✱)	Liquid pipe
RWEYQ8 type	⌀19.1X0.80	⌀15.9X0.99	⌀9.5X0.80
RWEYQ10 type	⌀22.2X0.80	⌀19.1X0.80	

(units : mm)

Cutting procedure

• Use pipe cutter for cutting.



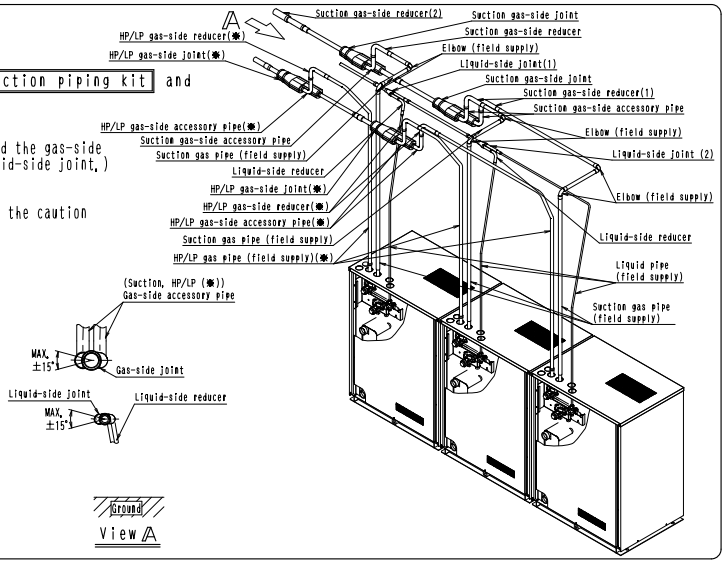


❶ Installation examples Procedure for upper connection

1 — 1 Connection of gas and liquid pipes

Plese be sure to read Restrictions on installing multi connection piping kit and Restriction on piping between outside units.

- Connect the gas and liquid pipes as shown on the right figure. (When connecting the pipes, first connect the gas-side accessory pipe and the gas-side reducer to the gas-side joint, and the liquid-side reducer to the liquid-side joint.)
- See the caution section in the installation manual attached to the outside unit for brazing pipes.
- When mounting the joints, place them horizontal to the ground by facing the caution label (See View A).



❷ The work after the kit is connected

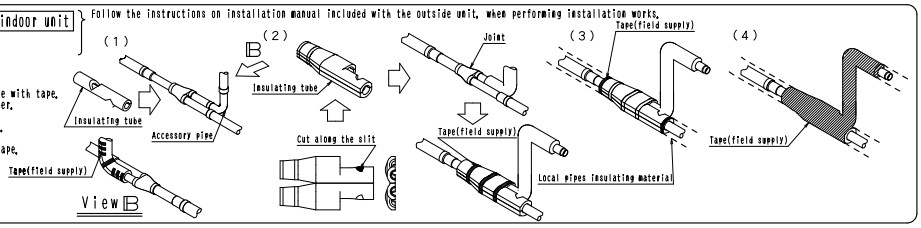
Connection of piping between the outside unit and the indoor unit

Follow the instructions on installation manual included with the outside unit, when performing installation works.

Air tight test

Insulation of joints

(1) Fit the insulation on the reducer and temporarily keep it in place with tape.
(2) • Cut off the slit on insulation to match direction of the reducer.
• Fit the insulation on the joint and temporarily keep it in place with tape (field supply) without any gap between the insulation. (See the right figure)
(3) Seal between the insulation and the field supply pipes with the tape.
(4) Wrap the tape around the insulation attached to the joint without leaving any gap.
(▨ part on the right figure(4))



1P236135

6. Pipe Size Reducer

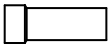
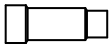
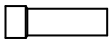
6.1 KHRP26M73TP·73HP

KHRP26M73TP



Installation

■ THIS KIT INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING PARTS.

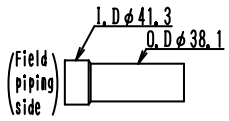
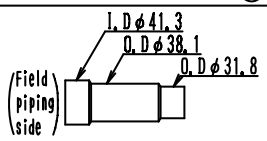
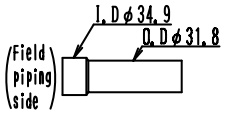
		PIPE SIZE REDUCER①	PIPE SIZE REDUCER②	PIPE SIZE REDUCER③
SHAPE				
QUANTITY	KHRP26M73TP	1 pc.	1 pc.	2 pc.
	KHRP26M73HP	1 pc.	——	1 pc.

■ THIS KIT IS THE REDUCER OF THE BRANCH PIPING KIT(REFNET JOINT・HEADER). CHECK THE PROPER MODEL OF THE BRANCH PIPING KIT.

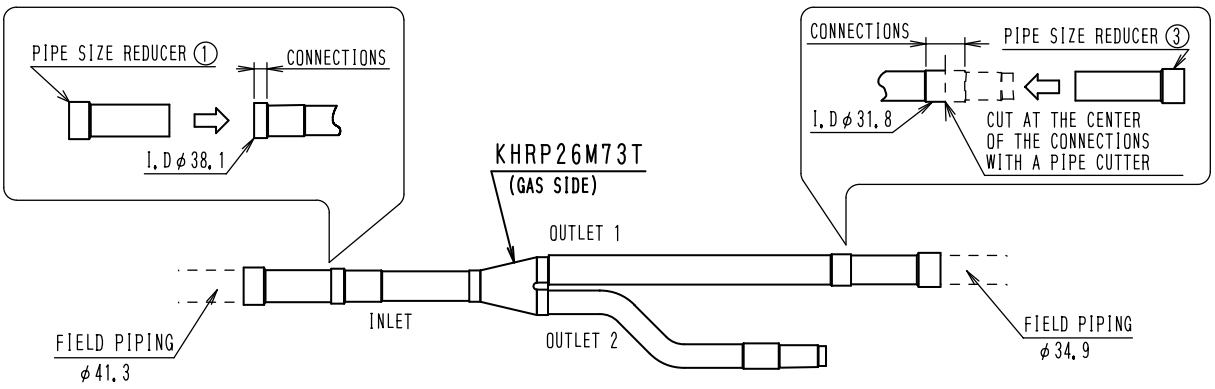
KIT NAME	BRANCH PIPING KIT
KHRP26M73TP	KHRP26M73T(GAS SIDE)
KHRP26M73HP	KHRP26M73H(GAS SIDE)・KHRP25M73H(SUCTION GAS SIDE)

INSTALLATION PROCEDURE REFER TO THE INSTALATION MANUAL OF THE BRANCH PIPING KIT.

■ JOINT SIZE ARE AS FOLLOWS.

PIPE SIZE REDUCER①	PIPE SIZE REDUCER②	PIPE SIZE REDUCER③
		

(1)Select the field piping size according to the installation manual of the outdoor unit.
(2)Connect the PIPE SIZE REDUCER suitable for the field piping size to the branch piping kit.
ex.)Connect the reducers to the branch piping kit, KHRP26M73T.
・For inlet piping size is φ41.3 and outlet 1 piping size is φ34.9.



C: 3P113129B

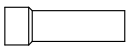
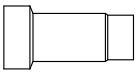
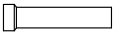
6.2 KHRJ26K40TP·40HP·75TP·76TP

KHRJ26K40TP



Installation

■ THIS KIT INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING PARTS.

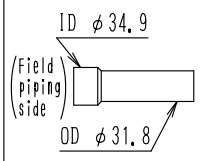
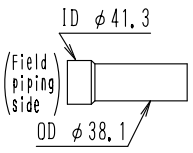
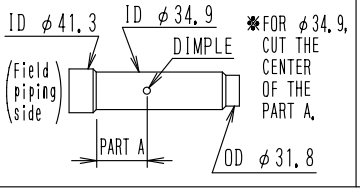
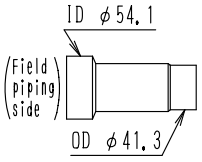
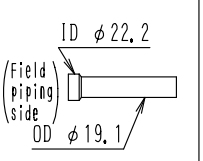
		PIPE SIZE REDUCER①	PIPE SIZE REDUCER②	PIPE SIZE REDUCER③	PIPE SIZE REDUCER④	PIPE SIZE REDUCER⑤
	SHAPE					
QUANTITY	KHRJ26K40TP	1pc.	———	1pc.	———	———
	KHRJ26K40HP	———	———	1pc.	———	———
	KHRJ26K75TP	1pc.	1pc.	1pc.	———	———
	KHRJ26K76TP	1pc.	2pc.	1pc.	2pc.	1pc.

■ THIS KIT IS THE REDUCER OF THE BRANCH PIPING KIT(REFNET JOINT・HEADER).
CHECK THE PROPER MODEL OF THE BRANCH PIPING KIT.

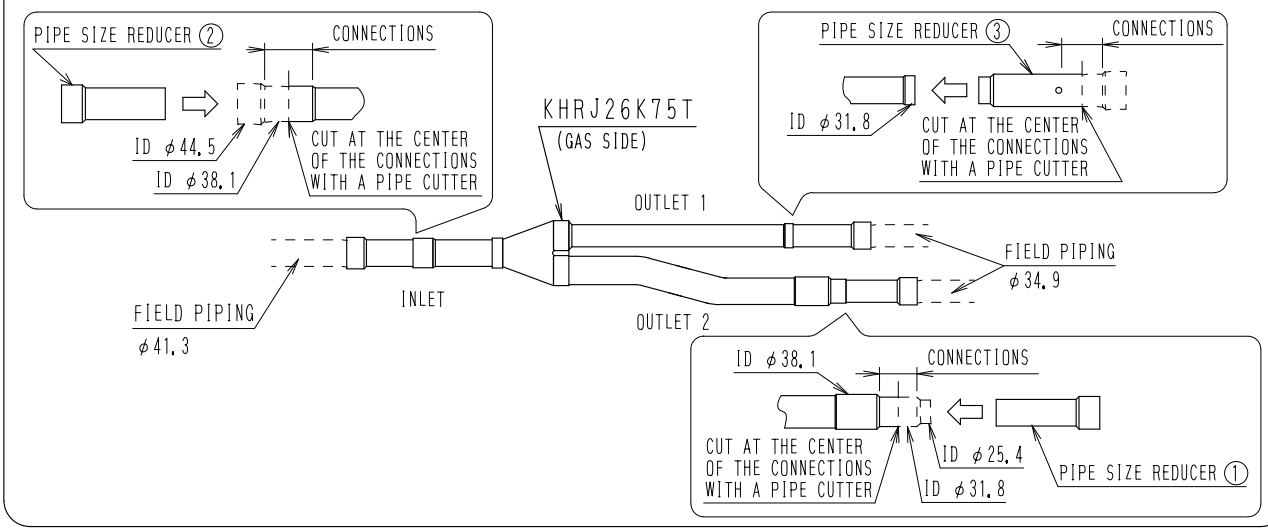
KIT NAME	BRANCH PIPING KIT
KHRJ26K40TP	KHRJ26K40T(GAS SIDE)・KHRJ25K40T(SUCTION GAS SIDE)
KHRJ26K40HP	KHRJ26K40H(GAS SIDE)・KHRJ25K40H(SUCTION GAS SIDE)
KHRJ26K75TP	KHRJ26K75T OUTDOOR UNIT:24～34HP(GAS SIDE)
KHRJ26K76TP	KHRJ26K75T OUTDOOR UNIT:Not less than 36HP (GAS SIDE・・PIPE SIZE REDUCER①×1, ②×2, ③×1, ④×2 / LIQUID SIDE・・PIPE SIZE REDUCER⑤×1)

INSTALLATION PROCEDURE — REFER TO THE INSTALATION MANUAL OF THE BRANCH PIPING KIT.

■ JOINT SIZE ARE AS FOLLOWS.

PIPE SIZE REDUCER①	PIPE SIZE REDUCER②	PIPE SIZE REDUCER③	PIPE SIZE REDUCER④	PIPE SIZE REDUCER⑤
				

(1)Select the field piping size according to the installation manual of the BRANCH PIPING KIT.
(2)Connect the PIPE SIZE REDUCER suitable for the field piping size to the branch piping kit.
ex.)Cnnect the reducers to the branch piping kit, KHRJ26K75T.
・For inlet piping size is φ41.3 and outlet 1・2 piiping size are φ34.9.



C: 3P234465

7. Central Drain Pan Kit

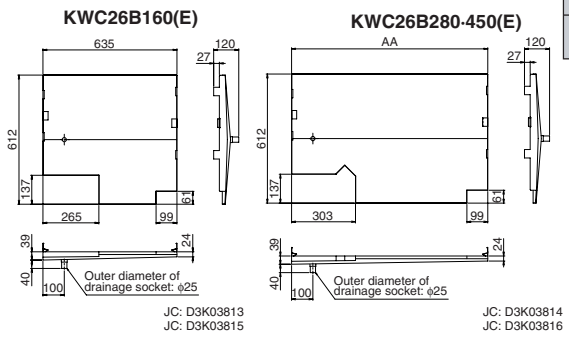
7.1 KWC26B160·280·450(E)

KWC26B160



Dimensions Unit:mm

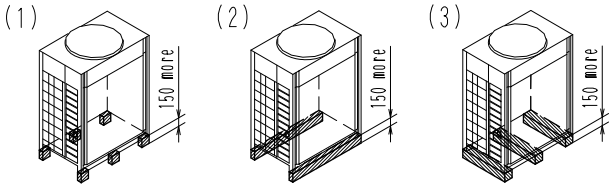
Model	AA
KWC26B280(E)	930
KWC26B450(E)	1240



Item	Model	KWC26B160(E)	KWC26B280(E)	KWC26B450(E)
Material		Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet for painting		
Casing colour	Without(E)	Ivory (5Y7.5/1)		
	With(E)	Light Camel (2.5Y6.5/1.5)		
Mass (Weight)	Kg	4.0	5.5	7.0

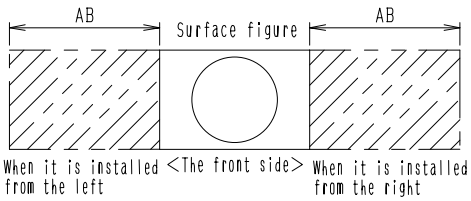
Installation

Attention when this kit is installed, please make the foundation into the independent or the beam foundation.



※ Confirm the Installation space.

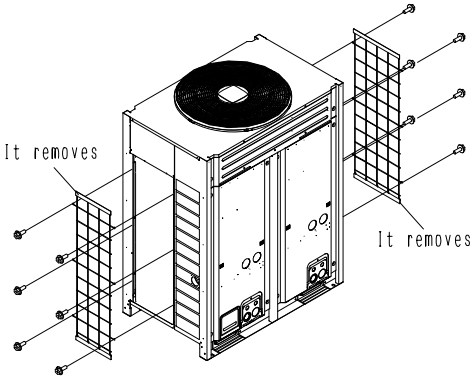
Installation space when this kit is installed the following installation space is necessary for left-right either of the body.



	AB
KWC26B160(E)	685
KWC26B280(E)	980
KWC26B450(E)	1290

Note
1. When lower piping constraction has already been carried out this kit can be attached onry from right side.
2. When the foundation is the beam foundation of the direction of order, this kit can be attected only from left side.

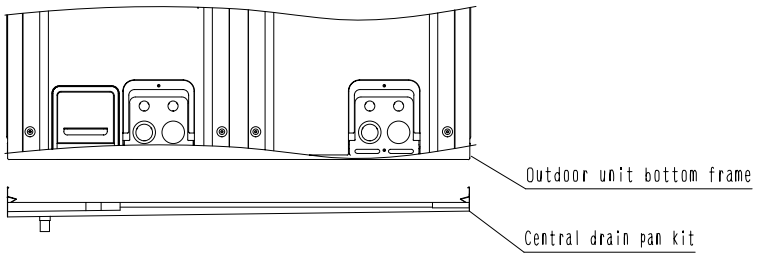
(1) Preparation for installation Remove a left-right protection net of the outdoor unit.



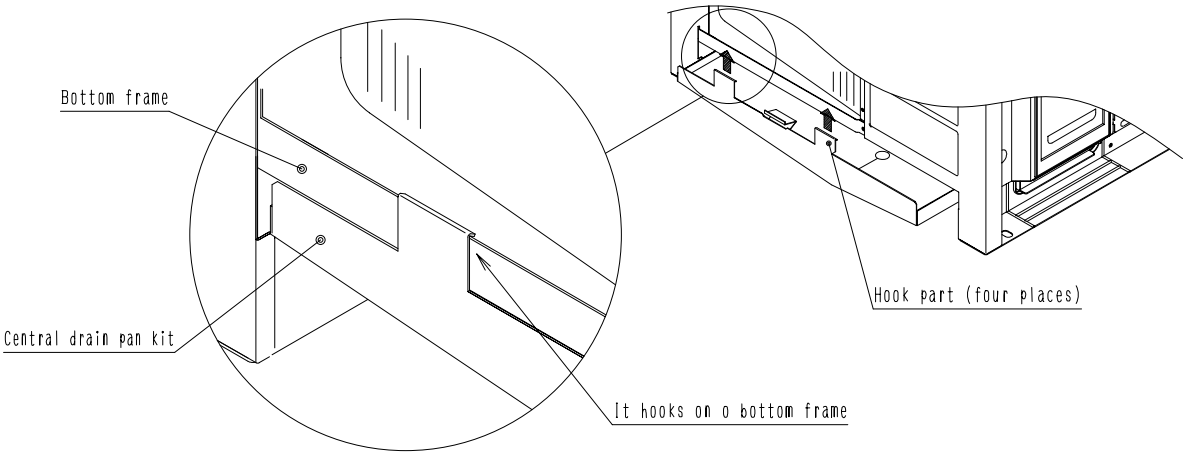
JC: 3K013853

(2) Installation point

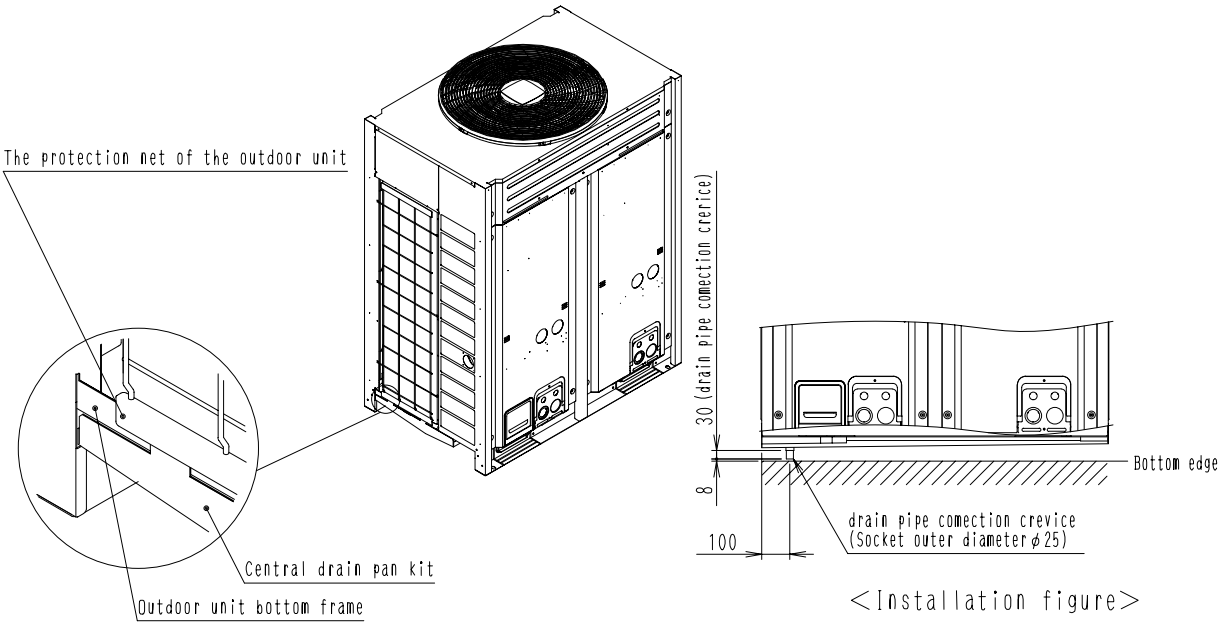
1. Please turn the A section of this kit to the front, and outdoor unit bottom frame arrange under an outdoor unit bottom frame.



2. Hook the hook part of this kit on an outdoor unit bottom frame.



3. Attach protective netting of an outdoor whit as before, It is the completion of work.

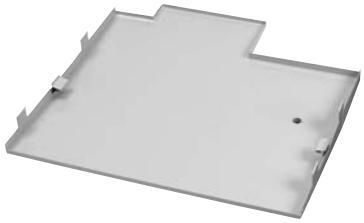


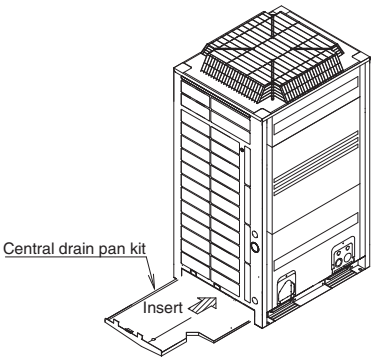
<Installation figure>

JC: 3K013853

7.2 KWC26C160, 280, 450(E) / KWC25C450

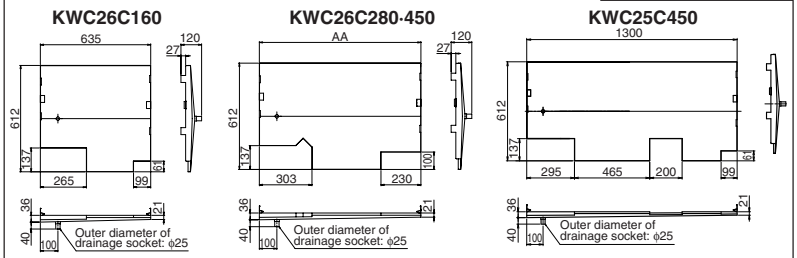
KWC26C160





Dimensions

Model	AA
KWC26C280	930
KWC26C450	1240



JC: D3K05258A
JC: D3K05260A

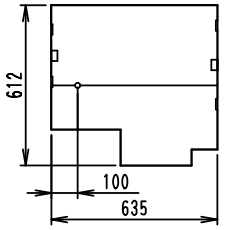
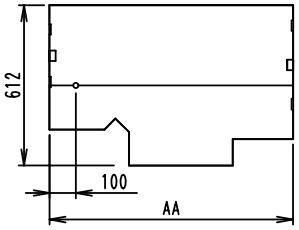
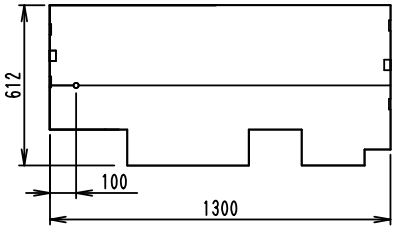
JC: D3K05259A
JC: D3K05261A

JC: D3K06009

Item	Model	KWC26C160	KWC26C280	KWC26C450	KWC25C450
Material		Hot-dip zinc-coated carbon steel sheet for painting			
Casing colour	Without(E)	Ivory (5Y7.5/1)			
	With(E)	Light Camel (2.5Y6.5/1.5)			–
Mass (Weight)	Kg	4.0	5.5	7.0	7.1

Installation

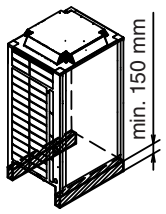
Components

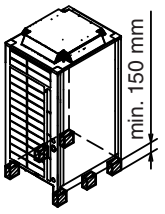
Name		① Collective Drainage Pan Kit		
Outline				
Qty	KWC26C160(E)	1	—	—
	KWC26C280(E)	—	1	—
	KWC26C450(E)	—	1	—
	KWC25C450(E)	—	—	1

	AA
KWC26C280(E)	930
KWC26C450(E)	1240

Note In order to install this kit, the outdoor unit needs to have the beam or independent base.

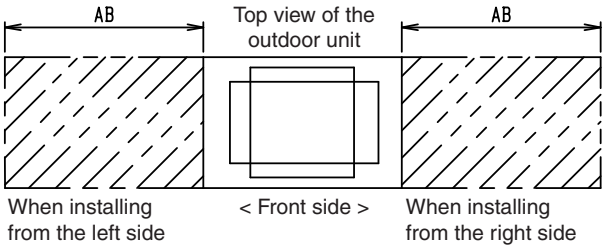
(1) Beam base (2) Independent base





* Check the Installation before installation.

Installation In order to install this kit, the outdoor unit needs to have a mounting space as shown in the figure below on either right or left side.



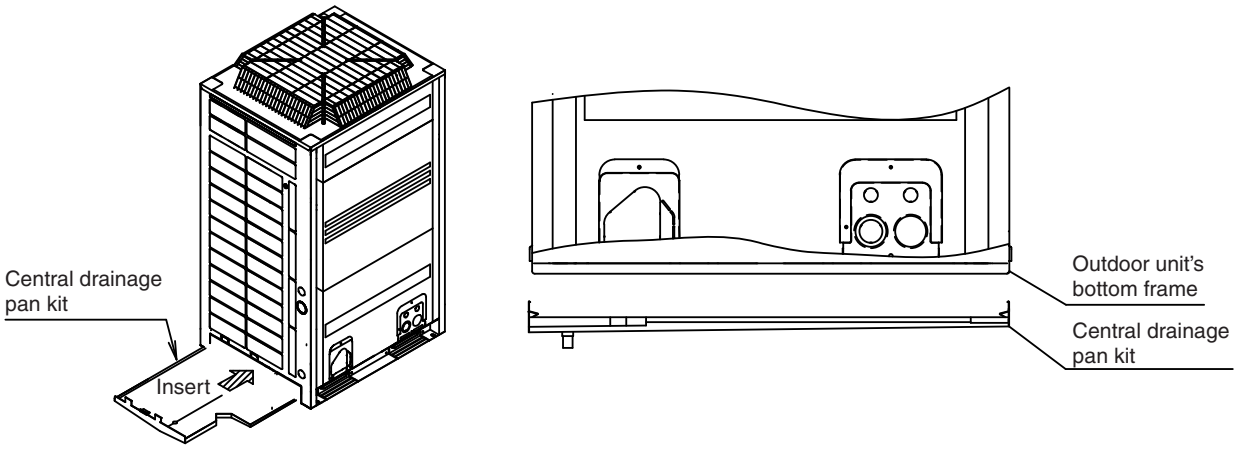
	AB
KWC26C160(E)	685
KWC26C280(E)	980
KWC26C450(E)	1290
KWC25C450(E)	1350

Notes:
1. This kit can be installed only from the right side when the under-floor piping has been provided already.
2. This kit can be installed only from the left side when the conduit has been provided already.

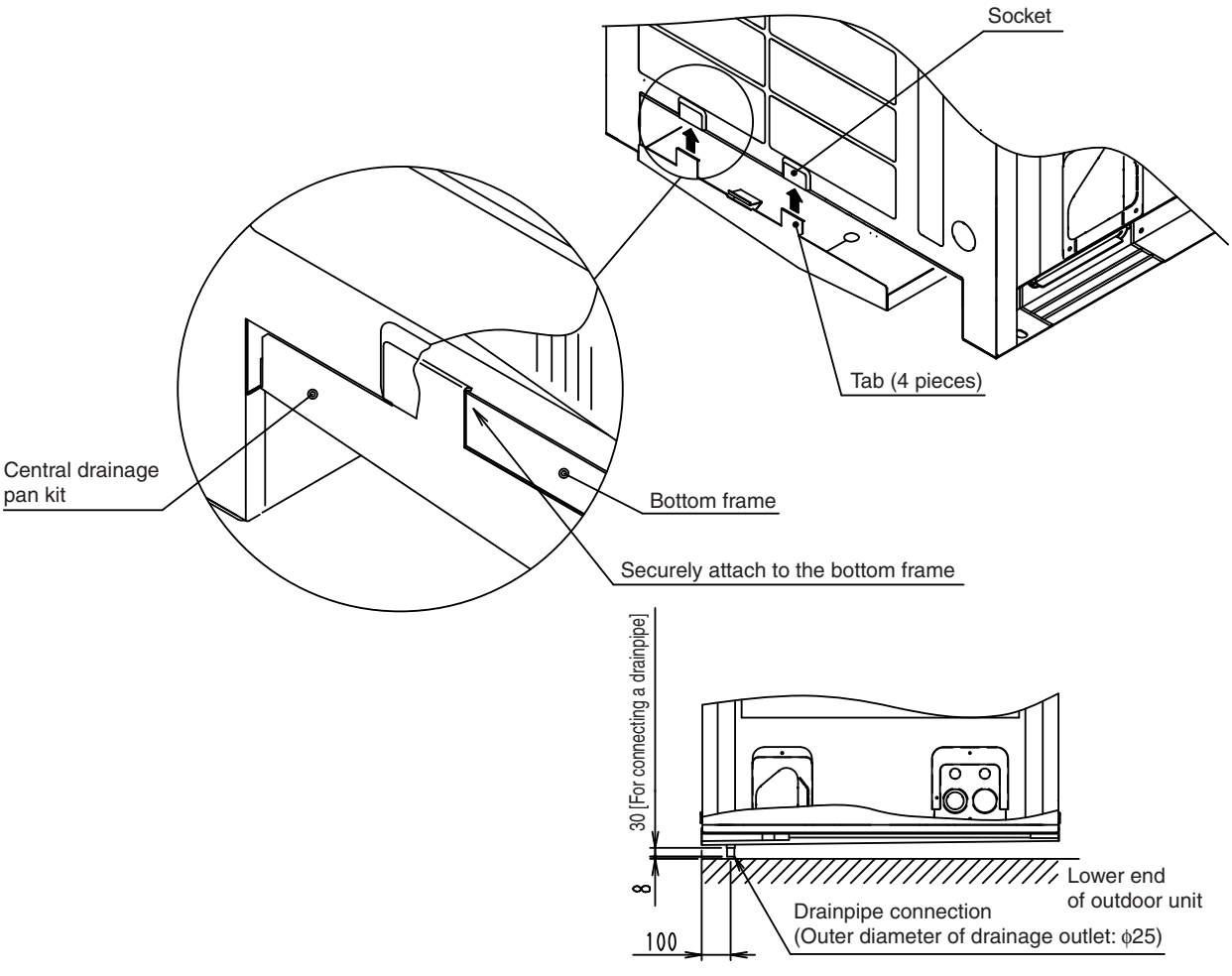
JC: 3K017824A

1 Mounting Procedures

1. Place the kit below the outdoor unit's bottom frame so that the cutout part of the kit is on the front side.



2. Apply the tabs of the kit to the sockets on the outdoor unit, and then push up the kit until the tabs are securely held by the bottom frame.



< View of Installed Kit >

JC: 3K017824A

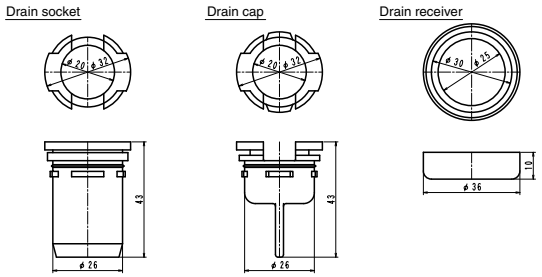
8. Central Drain Plug

8.1 KKPJ5F180

KKPJ5F180



Dimensions **Unit:mm**



J : D3K1342A

Item \ Model	KKPJ5F180
Connecting drain hose	ϕ25 (inside diameter)

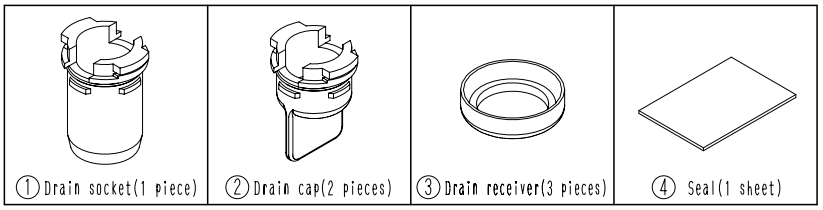
Installation

DAIKIN Air Conditioners 3P066795-1B

Central Drain Plug Installation Manual <KKPJ5F180>

■ Use this plug to connect a drain hose to dispose the drain from the outdoor unit.

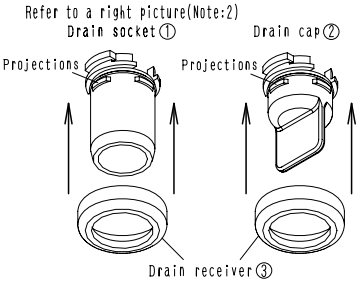
1 Before Installation Check that this Kit contains the following parts.



2 Installation Procedure

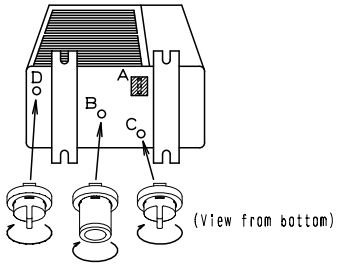
・Please refer to the installation manual of outdoor unit.

1. Insert drain receiver③ onto drain socket① and drain cap② beyond 4 projections around drain socket and drain cap.
   Refer to a right picture(Note:2)

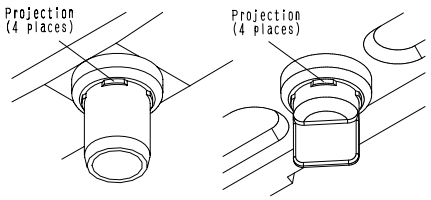


2. Insert drain socket and drain caps into their matching drain hole;Drain socket① into drain hole B and drain caps② into drain hole C and D. After insertion, turn them about 40° clockwise.

Note:1
Be sure not to insert them into wrong drain holse, or there causes water leakage.



Note:2
Please check whether drain receiver③is caught in four projections of drain socket①and drain cap②correctly. It will become the cause of the leak they are not attached correctly.



3. Connect vinyl hose on the market(intemal diameter of 25mm) to drain socket①.
   (If the house is too long and hangs down, fix it carefully to prevent the kinks.)
4. Affix seals④ to part A as shown on the above drawing.
   (It is unnecessary when it is the model which does not have opening in A.)
5. After join drainsocket①and draincap②, please check whether there is not any leak to A and the other parts by pouring water.

Note:3
1. If the drain holes of the outdoor unit are covered with the mounting bracket or the floor, raise the unit to provide the space of more than 100mm under the leg of the outdoor unit.
2. Do not use this option in the cold latitudes. At bottom frame, drained water is frozen up.

3P066795B

9. Wire Fixture for Preventing Overturning

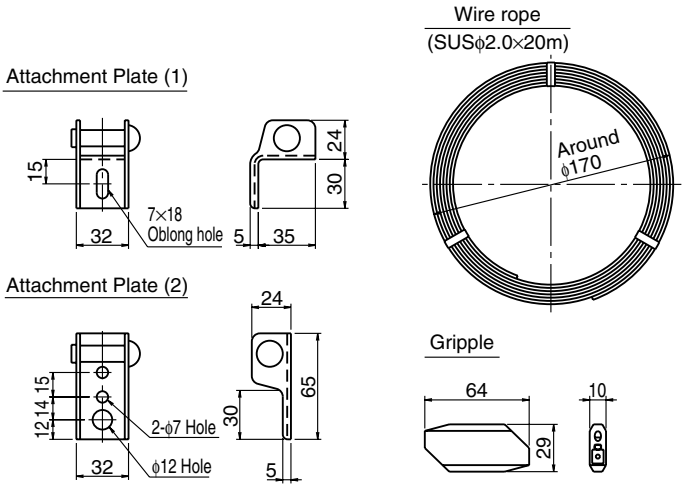
9.1 K-KYZP15C

K-KYZP15C



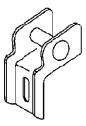
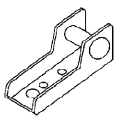
Item / Model		K-KYZP15C
Accessories		Adjuster pin: 1 piece Bolt, nut, plain washer: 1 set Installation manual.
Mass (Weight)	kg	1.0

Dimensions **Unit:mm**



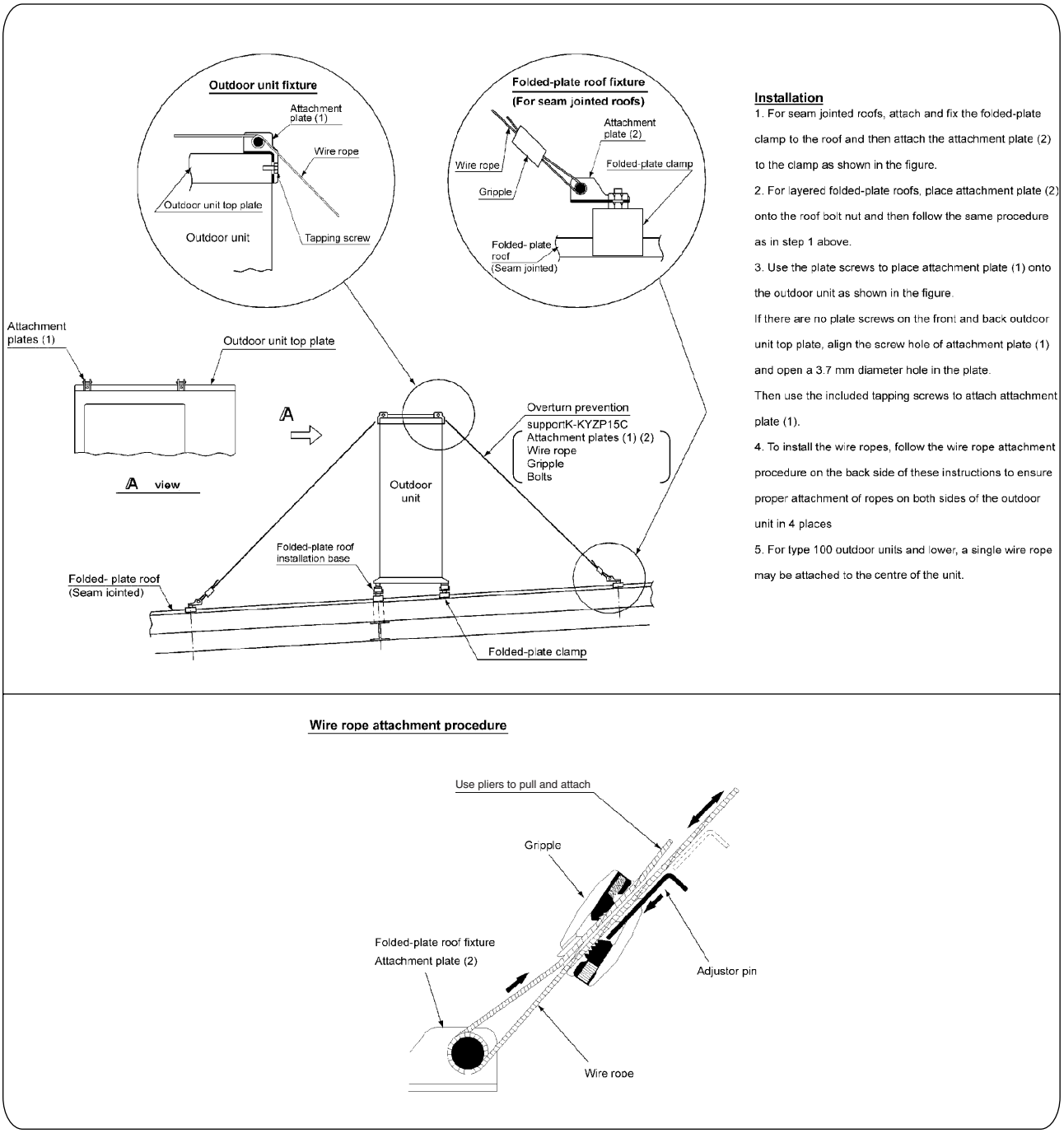
J : D3K2523

Parts

Part	Attachment plate (1)	Attachment plate (2)	Wire rope	Gripple	Adjustor pin	Hexagonal Bolt	Hexagonal Nut	Plain washer	Tapping screw
Shape						M10×25 	M8·10 W5/16·3/8 	for M8·10 	M5×12 
K-KYZP15C	4	4	1 roll	4	1	4	4 each	4 each	4

C : 3K07319A

Installation



Installation

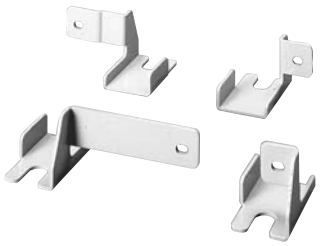
1. For seam jointed roofs, attach and fix the folded-plate clamp to the roof and then attach the attachment plate (2) to the clamp as shown in the figure.
2. For layered folded-plate roofs, place attachment plate (2) onto the roof bolt nut and then follow the same procedure as in step 1 above.
3. Use the plate screws to place attachment plate (1) onto the outdoor unit as shown in the figure.
   If there are no plate screws on the front and back outdoor unit top plate, align the screw hole of attachment plate (1) and open a 3.7 mm diameter hole in the plate.
   Then use the included tapping screws to attach attachment plate (1).
4. To install the wire ropes, follow the wire rope attachment procedure on the back side of these instructions to ensure proper attachment of ropes on both sides of the outdoor unit in 4 places
5. For type 100 outdoor units and lower, a single wire rope may be attached to the centre of the unit.

C : 3K07319A

10. Fixture for Preventing Overturning

10.1 KPT-60B160

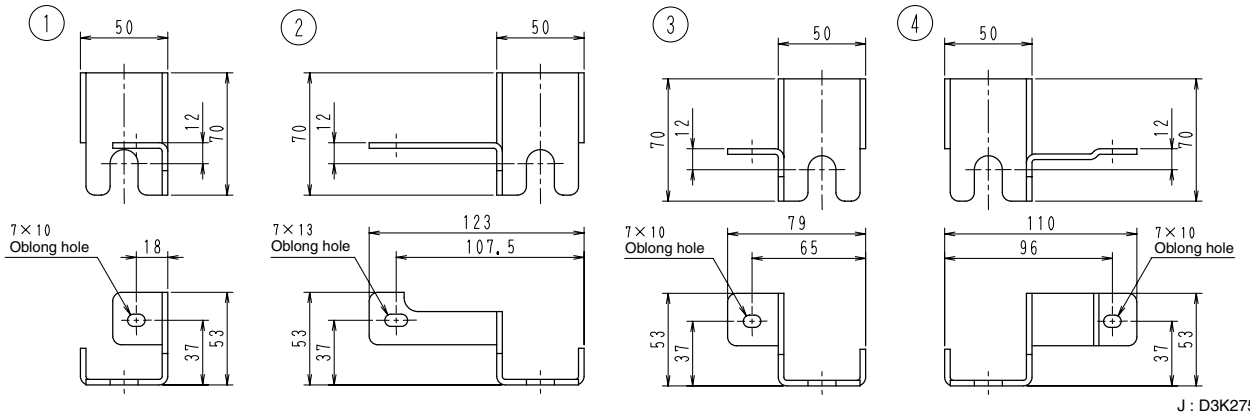
KPT-60B160



Item \ Model	KPT-60B160
Material	Steel plate (t 3.2)
Colour	Ivory white
Accessories	Screw : 4 Installation manual.

- Allows the outdoor unit to be secured to the foundation.
  →Prevents tipping of the outdoor unit due to strong gusts.
- Useful for locations where anti-tipping wires (Locally procured) cannot be installed.

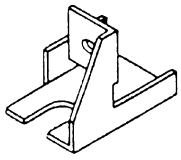
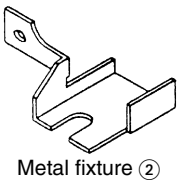
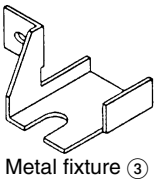
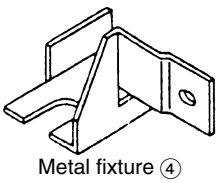
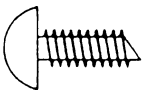
Dimensions **Unit:mm**



J : D3K2759A

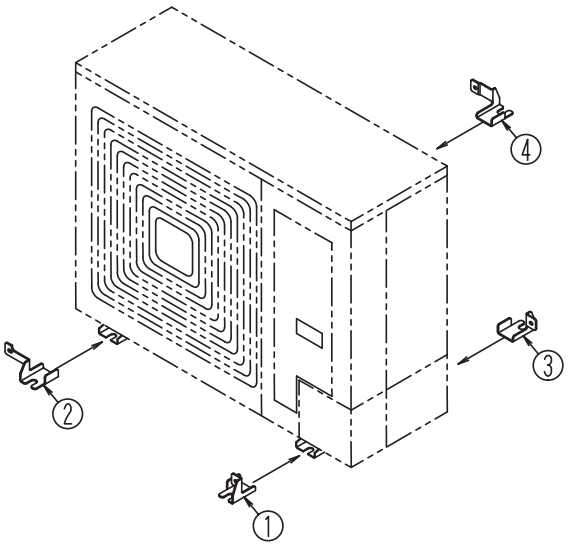
Installation

(1) Check that this kit contains the following parts.

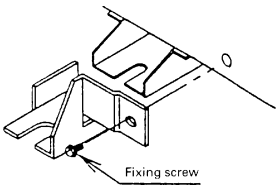
				
Metal fixture ①	Metal fixture ②	Metal fixture ③	Metal fixture ④	Screws (4 pieces)

(2) Installation Procedure

1. Install the metal fixtures ① ~ ④ to the base legs as shown below.



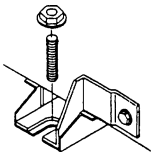
2. Remove the screw from the casing and fix the metal fixture to the casing.



Note:
When you install the metal fixtures ①, ③ and ④, fix the metal fixture through the casing by the screws M5×13 attached.

When you install the metal fixture ②, fix the metal fixture through the casing by the screw M5×13 attached. However, remove the screw on the casing, if the screw of the casing will contact with metal fixture.

3. Fix the metal fixtures firmly by the anchor bolts. (The anchor bolts, nuts and washers should be M12 type sold on the market.)

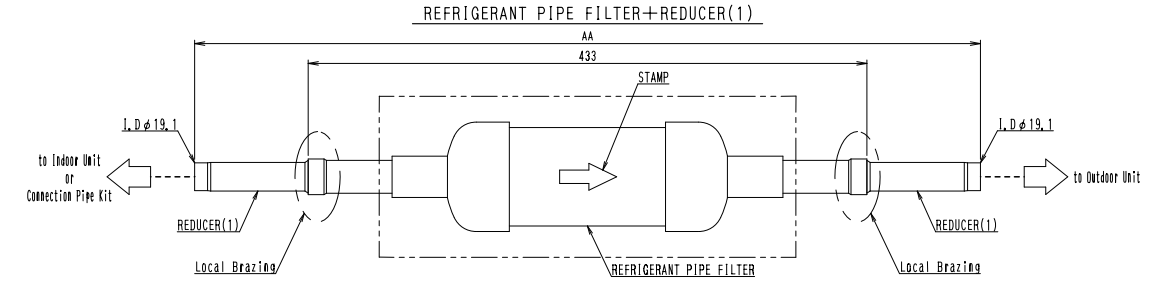


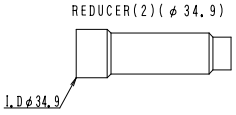
J : 3K07893

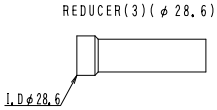
11. Refrigerant Pipe Filter Kit

11.1 BHF26A450F

Dimensions **Unit: mm**

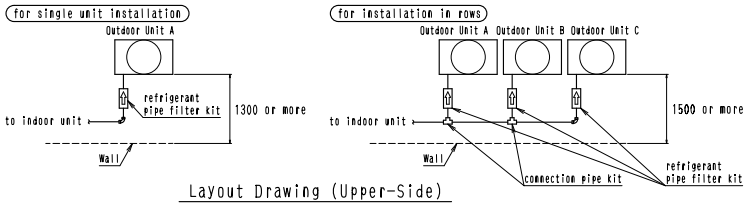


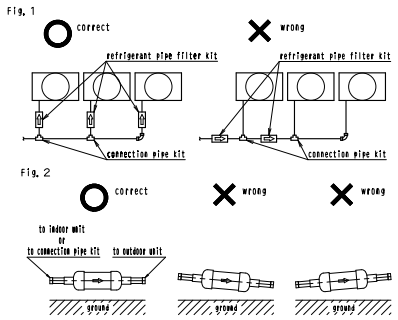




REDUCER	AA
(1)(ID φ 19.1)	609
(2)(ID φ 34.9)	649
(3)(ID φ 28.6)	609

NOTE)1. "------" in the figure show field supply piping.
2. About size of connection pipe refer the "engineering data.
3. In case of install this kit observe follow conditiones.
- For each outdoor unit, 1 set of this kit shall be installed respectively.
- This kit shall be installed on the gas side pipes in-between indoor and outdoor units. (It is not effective even if installs the liquid side pipes and oil pipes.) For outdoor unit multi-connecting systems, install in-between gas side joint of connecting pipe kit and outdoor unit. (Refer to Fig. 1) Improper installation may lead to malfunction of the outdoor unit.
- Direction of the arrow in this filter kit shall be from indoor unit → outdoor unit. Also filter must be installed in level. (Refer to Fig. 2)



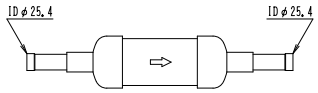
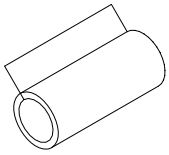
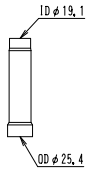
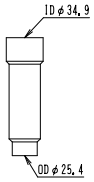
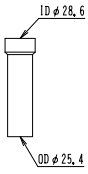


Accessory
REFRIGERANT PIPE FILTER : 1
REDUCER (1) : 1
REDUCER (2) : 1
REDUCER (3) : 1
INSULATION FOR REFRIGERANT PIPE FILTER : 1
INSTALLATION MANUAL

3D061740

Installation

Components ■This Kit contains the following parts. Confirm the following parts are included.
<Do not throw away any of the parts until installation is complete.>

Parts Names	refrigerant pipe filter	insulation for refrigerant pipe filter	reducer (1)	reducer (2)	reducer (3)
Parts					
Q'ty	1	1	2	2	2

Field supply parts ■The following parts are needed to connect this kit and are not included.

Parts Names	Q'ty	Selection Procedure
insulation for pipes	1 set	See Table 1, 2 of ❶ Connection of Refrigerant Pipe Filter Kit for the required sizes.
connection pipes		
elbows		
reducing socket (only for RX(Y)Q~type)	2 pcs.	
tapes	1 set	(for sealing insulation)

Restrictions On Installing Refrigerant Pipe Filter Kit

⚠To the piping installer When installing this kit, please apply the following restrictions.

- For each outdoor unit, 1 set of this kit shall be installed respectively.
- This kit shall be installed on the gas side pipes in-between indoor and outdoor units. (It is not effective even if installs the liquid side pipes and oil pipes.)
  For outdoor unit multi-connecting systems, install in-between gas side joint of connecting pipe kit and outdoor unit. (Refer to Fig. 1)
  Improper installation may lead to malfunction of the outdoor unit.
- Direction of the arrow in this filter kit shall be from indoor unit → outdoor unit.
  Also filter must be installed in level. (Refer to Fig. 2)

Caution
- For installation of outdoor units, please see the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.
  But sizes of the required space examples on the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit cannot be applied for installation of this kit.
  Tis kit should be installed to leave sufficient space at the front.
  Typical required space of Installation Examples show Installation Examples.
- For installation of the outdoor unit multi connection pipe kit, see the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit multi connection pipe kit.

Fig. 1

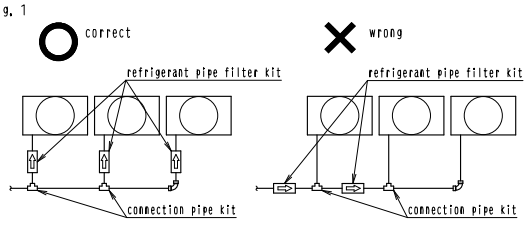
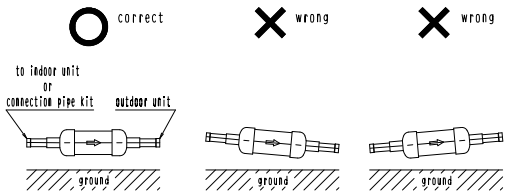
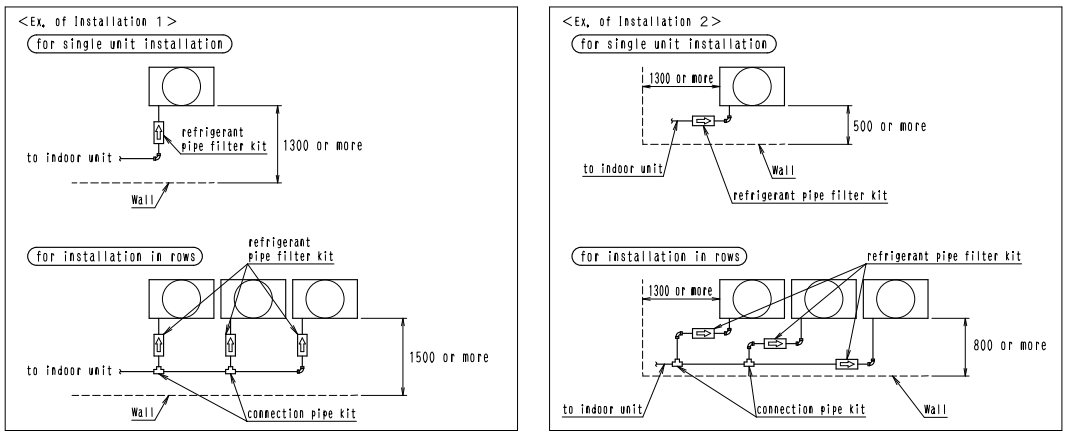


Fig. 2



Installation Examples
- The figure at the lower shows a typical front connection.
  Make sure to follow the installation restrication and carry out installation taking the field requirements into consideration.
- This manual explains the front connection <Ex. of construction 1>.



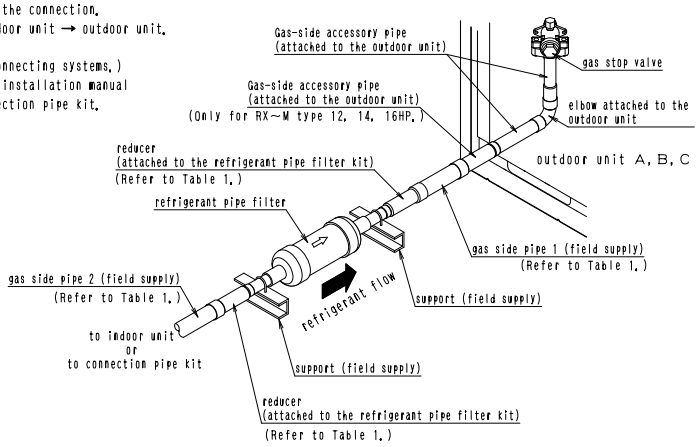
1P229846A

Installation Procedures of Refrigerant Pipe Filter Kit

❶ Connection of Refrigerant Pipe Filter Kit

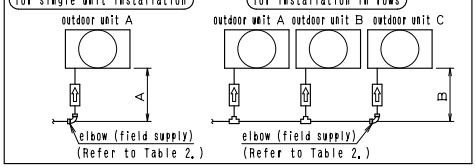
Connection method only for the gas side pipes is shown on this manual. For the other pipes connection method, please see the installation manual either attached to the outdoor unit or the outdoor unit multi connection pipe kit.

①Select pipe sizes of reducer and gas side pipes (field supply) from Table 1 according to outdoor unit capacity.
②Cut gas side pipes (field supply) in the length specified on Table 1.
③Connect pipes according to the figure shown on the right, then braze the connection.
Caution ●Direction of the arrow in this filter kit shall be from indoor unit → outdoor unit.
Also fix both edges of the filter with supports.
④Connect liquid side pipes and oil pipes (only for RX~M type multi-connecting systems.)
●For connection of liquid side pipes and oil pipes, please see the installation manual either attached to the outdoor unit or the outdoor unit multi connection pipe kit.



Finished Dimensions

- Dimension A & B are for standard installation.
- If changes of the sizes for standard installation required, make adjustments on the gas side pipes (field supply) according to Table 1.
- Sizes of gas side pipe 2 for outdoor unit C on Table 1 are the sizes when elbow (field supply) sizes are as Table 2. If the dimension C is different, make adjustments according to Table 1 & 2.



■Table 1

RX~M type

Outdoor Unit Capacity	sizes of gas side pipes (field supply)							reducers to be used	dimension A (finished dimension for single unit installation)	dimension B (finished dimension for installation in rows)
	outside dia.	outdoor unit A		outdoor unit B		outdoor unit C				
		gas side pipe 1	gas side pipe 2	gas side pipe 1	gas side pipe 2	gas side pipe 1	gas side pipe 2			
5HP	φ19.1	100mm	100mm	——	——	——	——	reducers(1)	858mm	——
8, 10HP	φ28.6	120mm	120mm	120mm	123mm	120mm	332mm	reducers(3)	895mm	1107mm
12, 14, 16HP	φ34.9	120mm	120mm	120mm	123mm	120mm	319mm	reducers(2)	1016mm	1215mm

RX(Y)Q~ type

Outdoor Unit Capacity	sizes of gas side pipes (field supply)							reducers to be used	dimension A (finished dimension for single unit installation)	dimension B (finished dimension for installation in rows)
	outside dia.	outdoor unit A		outdoor unit B		outdoor unit C				
		gas side pipe 1	gas side pipe 2	gas side pipe 1	gas side pipe 2	gas side pipe 1	gas side pipe 2			
8HP	φ19.1	100mm	100mm	100mm	118mm	100mm	331mm	reducers(1)	792mm	1022mm
10HP	φ22.2	100mm	100mm	100mm	118mm	100mm	331mm	reducers(3)+reducing socket (field supply) (refer to Fig.3)	814mm	1008mm
12~18HP	φ28.6	120mm	120mm	120mm	138mm	120mm	237mm	reducers(2)	888mm	1004mm

■Table 2

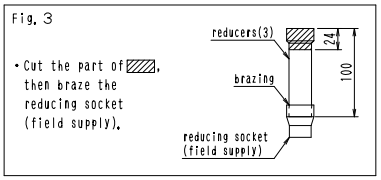
RX~M type

Outdoor Unit Capacity	elbow (field supply) C(mm)
5HP	17
8, 10HP	29
12, 14, 16HP	30

RX(Y)Q~ type

Outdoor Unit Capacity	elbow (field supply) C(mm)	reducing socket (field supply) AA(mm)	AB(mm)	AC(mm)
8HP	17			
10HP	23	25.4	22.2	33
12~18HP	30			

Fig. 3



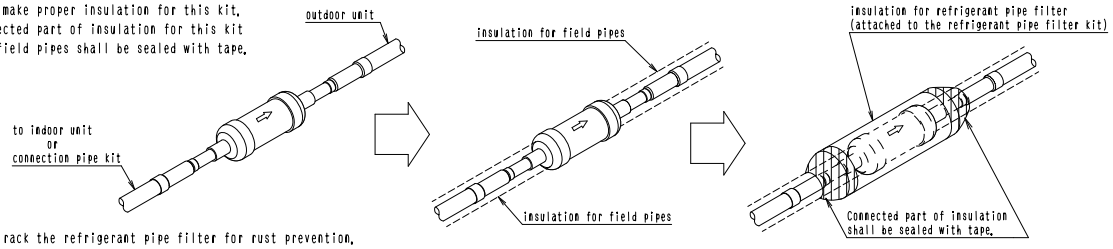
・Cut the part of ▨, then braze the reducing socket (field supply).

❷ Airtight Test and Vaccum drying

①Please proceed airtight test and vaccum drying.
●Directions for airtight test and vaccum drying on the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit must be followed.

❸ Pipe Insulation

①Please make proper insulation for this kit.
●Connected part of insulation for this kit and field pipes shall be sealed with tape.



②Please rack the refrigerant pipe filter for rust prevention.

❹ Additional Refrigerant Charge and Works After Completion of Installation

①Please proceed additional charge of the refrigerant.
●For the additional charge of the refrigerant, please see the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.
②Please make a confirmation upon completion of installation.
●All the check-points are described on the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

❺ Test Run

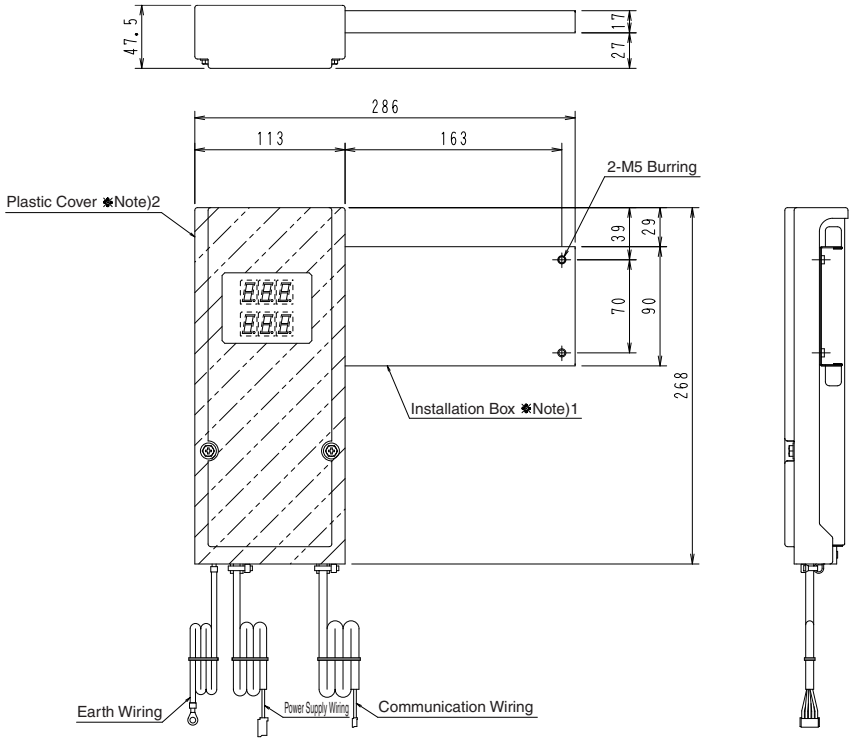
①Please proceed a test run.
●Method for the test run, see the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

1P229846A

12. Digital Pressure Gauge

12.1 BHGP26A1

Dimensions **Unit: mm**



	Model Name
Standard Type	BHGP26A1

Note) 1. Installation Box
[Materials] : SGCC-Z22 (Standard)
2. Plastic Cover
[Materials] : Methacrylate Resin
[Finish of Surface] : flat finish
3. Standard Accessory : Set of Fixing Screw
Clamp Material
Gauge Window Name Plate
Plastic bush
Fixing manual
4. This kit is assembled on site

C : 3D055954

Installation

DAIKIN Air conditioner **Sold separately** Be sure to read and follow all the instructions in the Installation Manual when installing the product. 2P190979-1

Installation Manual of Digital Pressure Gauge Kit BHGP26A1

Component Parts

■ This Kit contains the following parts.

Parts name	Digital Pressure Gauge Assembly	Resin bush	Clamps		M5×12 screws	M4×12 screws	Gauge window label
			Small	Large			
Parts							
Number	1	1	6	1	2	1	1

Tools required for installation

Phillips screwdriver	Nippers

Cautions

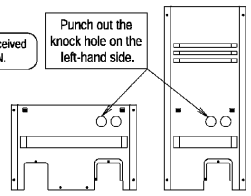
- The Kit includes accessories required for installation. Do not dispose of these accessories until the product is properly installed.
- Before performing installation work, check with a catalog or technical data sheet that the outdoor unit is compatible with the Kit.

Installation procedure

Work procedure

⚠ Warning **⚠ Electric Shock Cautions** Be sure to work with the outdoor unit turned power OFF. An electric shock may be received if your body comes in contact with electric parts with the outdoor unit turned power ON.

1. Turn the outdoor unit power OFF.
2. Remove the front panel. (If the model has two front panels (i.e., one each on the left-hand side and right-hand side), remove the panel on the right-hand side only.)
3. Remove the lid of the electrical box.
4. Refer to the (Installation drawing) and mount the Digital Pressure Gauge Assembly to the panel on the right-hand side. [Parts used: Digital Pressure Gauge Assembly: 1; M5×12 screw: 2]
5. Secure the ground wire to the electrical box with a screw. Refer to section B (detail view) in the (Wiring drawing) for the screwing position. [Parts used: M4×12 screw: 1]
6. Connect the power supply line and communications line of the Digital Pressure Gauge Assembly to the control PCB (A1P) in the electrical box.
   · Power supply line: Connector (white) • X77A
   · Communications line: Connector (blue) • X27A
   At that time, wire the communications line behind the Digital Pressure Gauge Assembly. (Refer to section A (detail view) in the (Wiring drawing).)
7. After connecting the power supply line, communications line, and ground wire, secure the wiring path according to the (Wiring drawing). [Parts used: Clamps: small 6, large 1]
8. Mount the lid of the electrical box.
9. Punch out the knock hole with a diameter of 70 mm on the front panel. (Refer to the mounting dimensions on the upper right-hand side.)
10. Attach the resin bush to the knock hole on the front panel. [Parts used: Resin bush: 1]
11. Mount the front panel.
12. Paste the gauge window label to the front panel. Refer to the (Label pasting drawing) for the pasting position. [Parts used: Gauge window label]



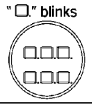
Knock hole on the front panel

Operation Check

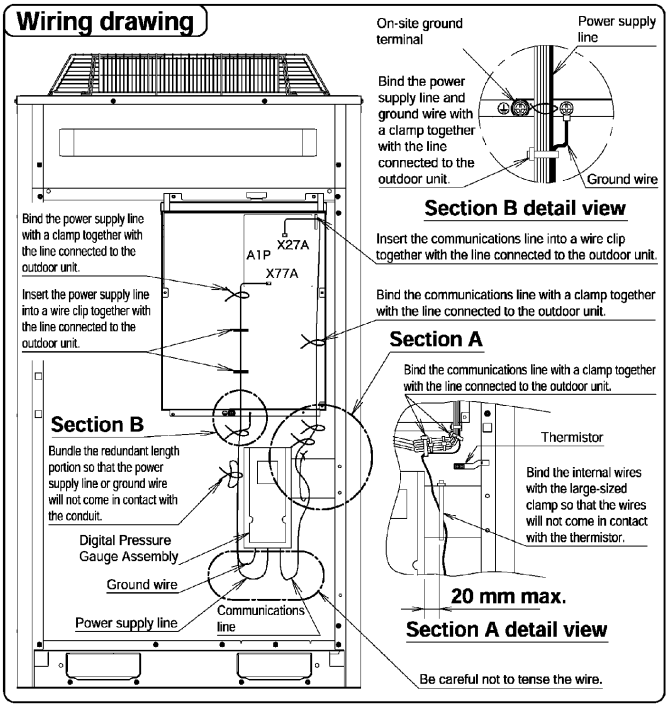
⚠ Warning **⚠ Electric Shock Cautions** Close the lid of the electrical box and front panel before turning the product power ON. An electric shock may be received if your body comes in contact with electric parts.

On completion of installation, turn the outdoor unit and indoor unit power ON and make sure that pressures are displayed normally. When figures appear in the discharge pressure display and suction pressure display, the product is working normally. Refer to [Troubleshooting] on the right-hand side and take necessary remedies if no figures are displayed. If the trouble does not fall under any of the items described, contact your Daikin representative.

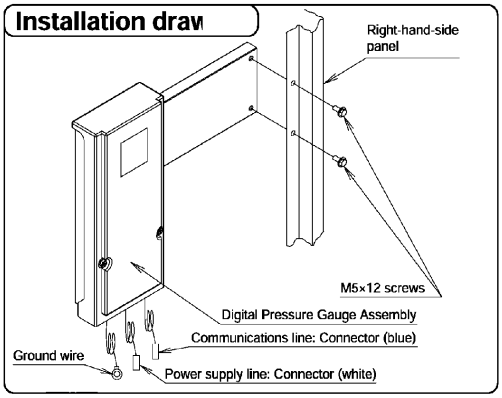
[Troubleshooting]

	Error display	Cause	Remedy
1	The LED indicator is not lit. 	Power supply is not provided to the outdoor unit.	Provide power supply to the outdoor unit.
		The connector of the power supply line is unplugged.	Insert the connector of the power supply line.
		The power supply line is disconnected or damaged.	Replace the power supply line.
2	All LEDs blink. 	The connector of the communications line is unplugged.	Plug in the connector of the communications line.
		The communications line is disconnected or damaged.	Replace the communications line.
		The outdoor unit is not compatible with the Kit.	Check with a catalog or technical data sheet if the outdoor unit is compatible with the Kit. If the outdoor unit is not compatible, this Kit cannot be used.
3	"□." blinks 	The outdoor unit has a defect.	Refer to the Service Guide and remedy the problem.
		There is a high-voltage line generating noise around the communications line.	Noise may be imposed on the communications line. Separate the high-voltage line.

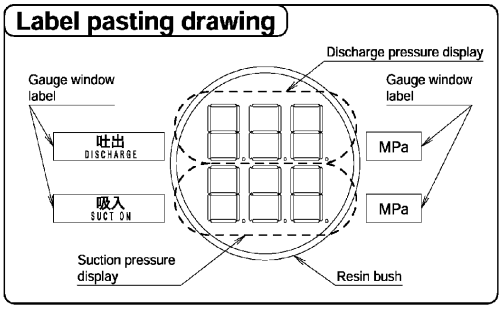
Wiring drawing



Installation drawing



Label pasting drawing

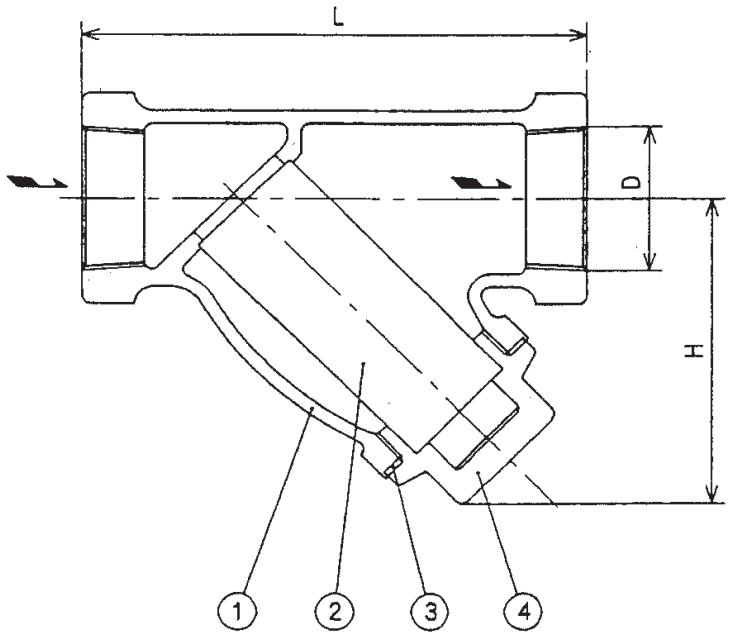


C : 2P190979

13. Strainer Kit

13.1 BWU26A15 / BWU26A20

1. Dimension



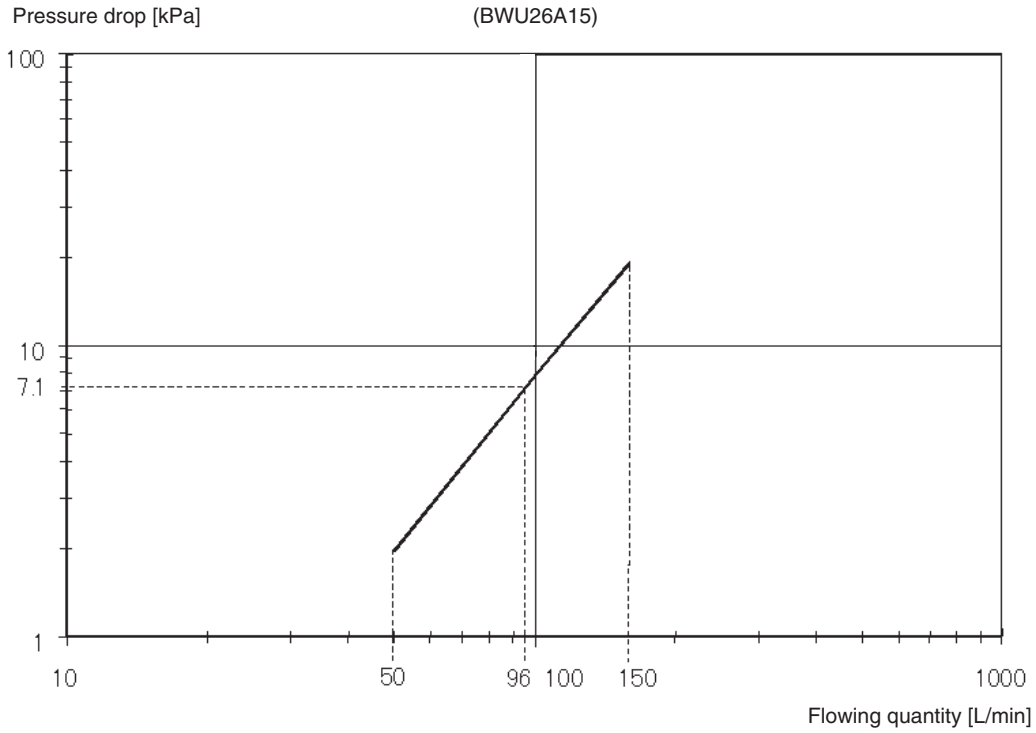
	Dimension					Material			
	Diameter	H	L	d2	H1	①	②	③	④
BWU26A15	1 1/4	82	135	RC1 1/4	130	CAC	SUS304	Non Asbestos Gasket	C3771BE
BWU26A20	1 1/4	90	135	RC1 1/4	130	FCD-S	SUS304	Non Asbestos Seet Gasket	C3771BE

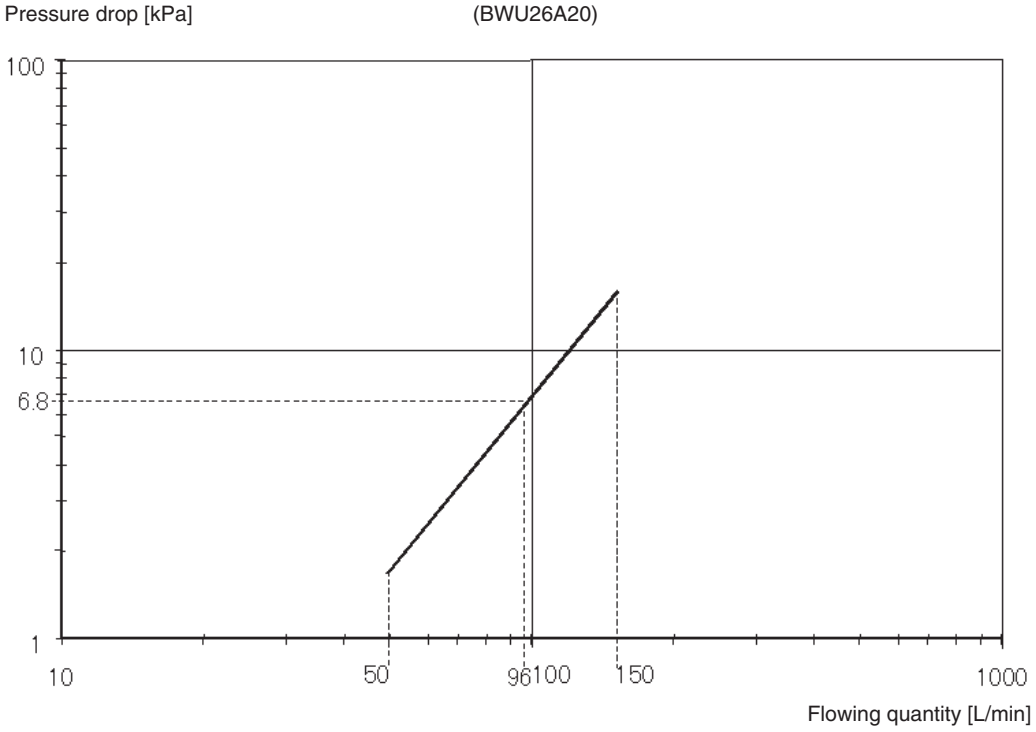
2. Specification

Use fluid : Pulse water of 100°C or less
Use temperature : 0°C~70°C
Design pressure : BWU26A15 (1.47 MPa), BWU26A20 (1.96MPa)
Mesh size : 50 mesh

3D049231

3. Flowing Quantity Characteristic





3D049231

Part 5
Index

Model name	Description	Page
B		
BHF22M135	Outdoor unit multi connection piping kit	664
BHF22M90	Outdoor unit multi connection piping kit	664
BHF26A450F	Refrigerant pipe filter kit	703
BHFP22MA56	Outdoor unit multi connection piping kit	685
BHFP22MA84	Outdoor unit multi connection piping kit	685
BHFP22P100	Outdoor unit multi connection piping kit	667
BHFP22P151	Outdoor unit multi connection piping kit	667
BHFP26MA56	Outdoor unit multi connection piping kit	685
BHFP26MA84	Outdoor unit multi connection piping kit	685
BHFP26P136	Outdoor unit multi connection piping kit	673
BHFP26P90	Outdoor unit multi connection piping kit	673
BHGP26A1	Digital pressure gauge	706
BRC1C62	Remote controller	191
BRC1D61	Remote controller	211
BRC1E61	Remote controller	196
BRC2C51	Simplified remote controller	218
BRC3A61	Remote controller for hotel use	222
BRC4C61	Remote controller	74
BRC4C62	Remote controller	74
BRC4C63	Remote controller	74
BRC4C64	Remote controller	74
BRC4C65	Remote controller	91
BRC4C66	Remote controller	91
BRC7C62	Remote controller	13
BRC7C67	Remote controller	13
BRC7CA528W	Remote controller	169
BRC7CA529W	Remote controller	169
BRC7E530W	Remote controller	146
BRC7E531W	Remote controller	146
BRC7E61W	Remote controller	32
BRC7E65	Remote controller	32
BRC7EA618	Remote controller	125
BRC7EA619	Remote controller	125
BRC7EA63W	Remote controller	111
BRC7EA66	Remote controller	111
BRC7F634F	Remote controller	51
BRC7F635F	Remote controller	51
BWU26A15	Strainer kit	708
BWU26A20	Strainer kit	708
BYBC125G-W1	Decoration panel	516
BYBC32G-W1	Decoration panel	516
BYBC50G-W1	Decoration panel	516
BYBC63G-W1	Decoration panel	516
BYBS125DJW1	Decoration panel	552
BYBS32DJW1	Decoration panel	552
BYBS45DJW1	Decoration panel	552
BYBS71DJW1	Decoration panel	552
BYCP125D-W1	Decoration panel	441
BYCP125K-W1	Decoration panel	436
BYFQ60B8W1	Decoration panel	504
BYK45FJW1	Decoration panel	524
BYK71FJW1	Decoration panel	524
D		
DAM101A51	Optional DIII ai unit	384
DAM411B51	Optional DIII board	399
DAM412B51	Optional Di board	402
DAM602B51	intelligent manager	377
DAM602B52	intelligent manager	377
DCS002C51	intelligent touch controller	374
DCS004A51	intelligent touch controller	375
DCS301BA61	Unified ON/OFF controller	328
DCS302A52	Unification adaptor for computerized control	429
DCS302CA61	Central remote controller	295
DCS303A51	Residential central remote controller	283
DCS601C51	intelligent touch controller	361
DEC101A51	Di unit	387
DEC102A51	Dio unit	390
DMS502B51	Interface for use in BACnet®	393
DMS504B51	Interface for use in LonWorks®	405
DPF201A51	Parallel interface	412
DPF201A52	Parallel interface	422
DPF201A53	Parallel interface	426
DST301BA61	Schedule timer	338
DTA102A52	Interface adaptor for SkyAir series	346
DTA103A51	Wiring adaptor for other air-conditioner	353
DTA104A53	External control adaptor for outdoor unit	271
DTA104A61	External control adaptor for outdoor unit	271
DTA104A62	External control adaptor for outdoor unit	271
DTA107A55	Central control adaptor kit	349
DTA109A51	DIII-NET expander adaptor	357
DTA114A61	Adaptor for multi tenant	279
K		
KAF252LA160	High-efficiency filter	575
KAF252LA56	High-efficiency filter	575
KAF252LA80	High-efficiency filter	575
KAF253LA160	High-efficiency filter	575
KAF253LA56	High-efficiency filter	575
KAF253LA80	High-efficiency filter	575
KAF371AA160	Long life filter	598
KAF371AA36	Long life filter	598
KAF371AA56	Long life filter	598
KAF371AA80	Long life filter	598
KAF372AA160	High efficiency filter	587
KAF372AA36	High efficiency filter	587
KAF372AA56	High efficiency filter	587
KAF372AA80	High efficiency filter	587
KAF373AA160	High efficiency filter	587
KAF373AA36	High efficiency filter	587
KAF373AA56	High efficiency filter	587
KAF373AA80	High efficiency filter	587
KAF375AA160	Long life filter chamber kit	600
KAF375AA36	Long life filter chamber kit	600
KAF375AA56	Long life filter chamber kit	600
KAF375AA80	Long life filter chamber kit	600
KAF495FA140	Replacement long life filter	634
KAF501DA112	Replacement long-life filter	611
KAF501DA56	Replacement long-life filter	611
KAF501DA80	Replacement long-life filter	611
KAF551CA160	Replacement long-life filter	489
KAF556DA160	High efficiency filter (including chamber)	478
KAF556DA80	High efficiency filter (including chamber)	478
KAF557DA160	High efficiency filter (including chamber)	478
KAF557DA80	High efficiency filter (including chamber)	478
KAF55DA160	Ultra long-life filter unit (including chamber)	493
KAF55KA160H	Replacement ultra long-life filter	497
KAFJ251K160	Replacement long-life filter	581
KAFJ251K36	Replacement long-life filter	581
KAFJ251K56	Replacement long-life filter	581
KAFJ251K80	Replacement long-life filter	581
KAFJ252L36	High-efficiency filter	575
KAFJ253L36	High-efficiency filter	575
KAFJ361K28	Long life replacement filter	630
KAFJ361K45	Long life replacement filter	630
KAFJ361K71	Long life replacement filter	630

Model name	Description	Page
KAFJ371L280	Long life replacement filter	599
KAFJ372L280	High-efficiency filter	588
KAFJ373L280	High-efficiency filter	588
KAFJ521F56	Replacement long-life filter	533
KAFJ521F80	Replacement long-life filter	533
KAFJ531G160	Long life replacement filter	523
KAFJ531G36	Long life replacement filter	523
KAFJ531G56	Long life replacement filter	523
KAFJ531G80	Long life replacement filter	523
KAFJ532G160	High-efficiency filter	519
KAFJ532G36	High-efficiency filter	519
KAFJ532G56	High-efficiency filter	519
KAFJ532G80	High-efficiency filter	519
KAFJ533G160	High-efficiency filter	519
KAFJ533G36	High-efficiency filter	519
KAFJ533G56	High-efficiency filter	519
KAFJ533G80	High-efficiency filter	519
KAFP371A160	Long life replacement filter	599
KAFP371A80	Long life replacement filter	599
KAFP372A160	High-efficiency filter	588
KAFP372A80	High-efficiency filter	588
KAFP373A160	High-efficiency filter	588
KAFP373A80	High-efficiency filter	588
KAFP551K160	Replacement long-life filter	488
KAFP552B160	Replacement high efficiency filter	481
KAFP552B80	Replacement high efficiency filter	481
KAFP553B160	Replacement high efficiency filter	481
KAFP553B80	Replacement high efficiency filter	481
KAFP556B160	High efficiency filter (including chamber)	475
KAFP556B80	High efficiency filter (including chamber)	475
KAFP557B160	High efficiency filter (including chamber)	475
KAFP557B80	High efficiency filter (including chamber)	475
KAFP55B160	Ultra long-life filter unit (including chamber)	490
KAFP55H160H	Replacement ultra long-life filter	496
KAFQ441BA60	Replacement long-life filter	515
KAJ25L36B	Filter chamber for rear suction	577
KAJ25L36D	Filter chamber for bottom suction	576
KAJ25LA160B	Filter chamber for rear suction	577
KAJ25LA160D	Filter chamber for bottom suction	576
KAJ25LA56B	Filter chamber for rear suction	577
KAJ25LA56D	Filter chamber for bottom suction	576
KAJ25LA80B	Filter chamber for rear suction	577
KAJ25LA80D	Filter chamber for bottom suction	576
KBBJ25K36	Screening door	583
KBBJ25KA160	Screening door	583
KBBJ25KA56	Screening door	583
KBBJ25KA80	Screening door	583
KDAJ25K140A	Air discharge adaptor	585
KDAJ25K36A	Air discharge adaptor	585
KDAJ25K56A	Air discharge adaptor	585
KDAJ25K80A	Air discharge adaptor	585
KDBH44BA60	Sealing material of air discharge outlet	507
KDBH49FA140	Sealing member of air discharge outlet	632
KDBH49FA80	Sealing member of air discharge outlet	632
KDBH55D160W	Sealing material of air discharge outlet	449
KDBH55K160F	Sealing member of air discharge outlet	445
KDBJ52F56W	Air discharge blind panel	534
KDBJ52F80W	Air discharge blind panel	534
KDBP55H160FA	Panel spacer	452
KDBP55H160WA	Panel spacer	452
KDBQ44BA60A	Panel spacer	510
KDBT49FA140	Decoration panel for air discharge	631
KDBT49FA80	Decoration panel for air discharge	631

Model name	Description	Page
KDD55DA160	Fresh air intake kit (chamber type)	460
KDD55DA160K	Fresh air intake kit (chamber type)	460
KDDF37AA160	High efficiency filter chamber	590
KDDF37AA36	High efficiency filter chamber	590
KDDF37AA56	High efficiency filter chamber	590
KDDF37AA80	High efficiency filter chamber	590
KDDF55DA160	High efficiency filter chamber	485
KDDFJ53G160	Filter chamber for bottom suction	522
KDDFJ53G36	Filter chamber for bottom suction	522
KDDFJ53G56	Filter chamber for bottom suction	522
KDDFJ53G80	Filter chamber for bottom suction	522
KDDFP37A160	Filter chamber	593
KDDFP37A80	Filter chamber	593
KDDFP55B160	High efficiency filter chamber	482
KDDJ55XA160	Fresh air intake kit (direct installation type)	467
KDDP55B160	Fresh air intake kit (chamber type)	455
KDDP55B160K	Fresh air intake kit (chamber type)	455
KDDP55X160	Fresh air intake kit (direct installation type)	464
KDDQ44XA60	Fresh air intake kit (direct installation type)	513
KDGF19A45	Decoration panel	551
KDGF19A71	Decoration panel	551
KDGJ49FA140	Vertical flap kit	635
KDGJ49FA80	Vertical flap kit	635
KDJ2507K160	Air suction flange	584
KDJ2507K36	Air suction flange	584
KDJ2507K56	Air suction flange	584
KDJ2507K80	Air suction flange	584
KDJ3705L280	Filter chamber	596
KDJP55B160	Branch duct chamber	498
KDJP55B80	Branch duct chamber	498
KDP55DA160	Branch duct chamber	501
KDP55DA80	Branch duct chamber	501
KDT25N32	Installation kit for high humidity	550
KDT25N50	Installation kit for high humidity	550
KDT25N63	Installation kit for high humidity	550
KDT-55DA160	Installation kit for high humidity	473
KDT-55DA80	Installation kit for high humidity	473
KDTP55K160	Installation kit for high humidity	471
KDTP55K80	Installation kit for high humidity	471
KDU-30L125VE	Drain pump kit	606
KDU30L250VE	Drain pump kit	603
KDU50B125VE	Drain pump kit	617
KDU50B50VE	Drain pump kit	617
KDU50B71VE	Drain pump kit	617
KDU50N125VE	Drain-up kit	612
KDU50N60VE	Drain-up kit	612
KEA25K100VE	Auxiliary electric heater	570
KEA25K125VE	Auxiliary electric heater	570
KEA25K32VE	Auxiliary electric heater	570
KEA25K50VE	Auxiliary electric heater	570
KEA25K63VE	Auxiliary electric heater	570
KEK26-1A	Noise filter (for electromagnetic interface use only)	335
KFDJ52FA56	Flexible duct with shutter	542
KFDJ52FA80	Flexible duct with shutter	542
KHFJ5F160	L-type piping kit (for upward direction)	619
KHFJ5F50	L-type piping kit (for upward direction)	619
KHFJ5F80	L-type piping kit (for upward direction)	619
KHFP49MA140	L connection piping kit	634
KHFP5MA160	L-type piping kit (for upward direction)	618
KHFP5MA63	L-type piping kit (for upward direction)	618
KHRJ26K11H	REFNET header	640
KHRJ26K11T	REFNET joint	650

Model name	Description	Page
KHRJ26K17H	REFNET header	640
KHRJ26K17T	REFNET joint	650
KHRJ26K18H	REFNET header	640
KHRJ26K18T	REFNET joint	650
KHRJ26K37H	REFNET header	640
KHRJ26K37T	REFNET joint	650
KHRJ26K40H	REFNET header	640
KHRJ26K40HP	Pipe size reducer	693
KHRJ26K40T	REFNET joint	650
KHRJ26K40TP	Pipe size reducer	693
KHRJ26K75T	REFNET joint	650
KHRJ26K75TP	Pipe size reducer	693
KHRJ26K76TP	Pipe size reducer	693
KHRP25A22T	REFNET joint	661
KHRP25A33T	REFNET joint	661
KHRP25A72T	REFNET joint	661
KHRP25A73T	REFNET joint	661
KHRP25M33H	REFNET header	647
KHRP25M72H	REFNET header	647
KHRP25M73H	REFNET header	647
KHRP26A22T	REFNET joint	658
KHRP26A33T	REFNET joint	658
KHRP26A72T	REFNET joint	658
KHRP26A73T	REFNET joint	658
KHRP26M22H	REFNET header	644
KHRP26M33H	REFNET header	644
KHRP26M72H	REFNET header	644
KHRP26M73H	REFNET header	644
KHRP26M73HP	Pipe size reducer	692
KHRP26M73TP	Pipe size reducer	692
K-HV7AW	Discharge grille	541
K-HV9AW	Discharge grille	541
KJB111A	Fixing box	639
KJB212AA	Electrical box with earth terminal	326
KJB311AA	Electrical box with earth terminal	326
KJB411AA	Electrical box with earth terminal	326
K-KDU572EVE	Drain pump kit	620
KKPJ5F180	Central drain plug	699
KKSJ55KA160	Chamber connection kit	470
K-KYZP15C	Wire fixture for preventing overturning	700
KNM25K125V1	Natural evaporating pan type humidifier	559
KNM25K32V1	Natural evaporating pan type humidifier	559
KNM25K50V1	Natural evaporating pan type humidifier	559
KNM25K63V1	Natural evaporating pan type humidifier	559
KPBJ52F56W	Panel spacer	528
KPBJ52F80W	Panel spacer	528
KPT-60B160	Fixture for preventing overturning	702
KRC19-26A	Cool / Heat selector	638
KRCS01-1B	Remote sensor (for indoor temperature)	248
KRCS01-4B	Remote sensor (for indoor temperature)	248
KRP1B100	Installation box for adaptor PCB	261
KRP1B56	Adaptor for wiring	229
KRP1B61	Adaptor for wiring	227
KRP1B96	Installation box for adaptor PCB	260
KRP1BA101	Installation box for adaptor PCB	254
KRP1BA54	Adaptor for wiring	229
KRP1BA57	Adaptor for wiring	229
KRP1BA59	Adaptor for wiring	229
KRP1BA97	Installation box for adaptor PCB	269
KRP1C63	Adaptor for wiring	231
KRP1C64	Adaptor for wiring	233
KRP1CA93	Installation box for adaptor PCB	267
KRP1DA98	Installation box for adaptor PCB	258

Model name	Description	Page
KRP1H98	Installation box for adaptor PCB	250
KRP2A53	Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices	235
KRP2A61	Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices	235
KRP2A62	Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices	235
KRP4A54	Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices	242
KRP4A91	Installation box for adaptor PCB	260
KRP4A92	DIII-NET expander adaptor	360
KRP4A96	Installation box for adaptor PCB	263
KRP4AA51	Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices	242
KRP4AA52	Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices	242
KRP4AA53	Wiring adaptor for electrical appendices	242
KRP4AA93	Installation box for adaptor PCB	265
KSA-25K36	Canvas duct (air suction canvas)	582
KSA-25KA160	Canvas duct (air suction canvas)	582
KSA-25KA56	Canvas duct (air suction canvas)	582
KSA-25KA80	Canvas duct (air suction canvas)	582
KTB25KA160W	Service access panel	556
KTB25KA56W	Service access panel	556
KTB25KA80W	Service access panel	556
KTBJ25K36W	Service access panel	556
KWC25C450	Central drain pan kit	696
KWC26B160	Central drain pan kit	694
KWC26B160E	Central drain pan kit	694
KWC26B280	Central drain pan kit	694
KWC26B280E	Central drain pan kit	694
KWC26B450	Central drain pan kit	694
KWC26B450E	Central drain pan kit	694
KWC26C160	Central drain pan kit	696
KWC26C160E	Central drain pan kit	696
KWC26C280	Central drain pan kit	696
KWC26C280E	Central drain pan kit	696
KWC26C450	Central drain pan kit	696
KWC26C450E	Central drain pan kit	696

Warning

- Daikin Industries, Ltd.'s products are manufactured for export to numerous countries throughout the world. Daikin Industries, Ltd. does not have control over which products are exported to and used in a particular country. Prior to purchase, please therefore confirm with your local authorised importer, distributor and/or retailer whether this product conforms to the applicable standards, and is suitable for use, in the region where the product will be used. This statement does not purport to exclude, restrict or modify the application of any local legislation.
- Ask a qualified installer or contractor to install this product. Do not try to install the product yourself. Improper installation can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electrical shock, fire or explosion.
- Use only those parts and accessories supplied or specified by Daikin. Ask a qualified installer or contractor to install those parts and accessories. Use of unauthorised parts and accessories or improper installation of parts and accessories can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electrical shock, fire or explosion.
- Read the User's Manual carefully before using this product. The User's Manual provides important safety instructions and warnings. Be sure to follow these instructions and warnings.

If you have any enquiries, please contact your local importer, distributor and/or retailer.

Cautions on product corrosion

1. Air conditioners should not be installed in areas where corrosive gases, such as acid gas or alkaline gas, are produced.
2. If the outdoor unit is to be installed close to the sea shore, direct exposure to the sea breeze should be avoided. If you need to install the outdoor unit close to the sea shore, contact your local distributor.

JMI-0107

Organization:
DAIKIN INDUSTRIES, LTD.
AIR CONDITIONING MANUFACTURING DIVISION

Scope of Registration:
THE DESIGN/DEVELOPMENT AND MANUFACTURE OF COMMERCIAL AIR CONDITIONING, HEATING, COOLING, REFRIGERATING EQUIPMENT, COMMERCIAL HEATING EQUIPMENT, RESIDENTIAL AIR CONDITIONING EQUIPMENT, HEAT RECLAIM VENTILATION, AIR CLEANING EQUIPMENT, MARINE TYPE CONTAINER REFRIGERATION UNITS, COMPRESSORS AND VALVES.

JQA-1452

Organization:
DAIKIN INDUSTRIES (THAILAND) LTD.

Scope of Registration:
THE DESIGN/DEVELOPMENT AND MANUFACTURE OF AIR CONDITIONERS AND THE COMPONENTS INCLUDING COMPRESSORS USED FOR THEM

EC99J2044

All of the Daikin Group's business facilities and subsidiaries in Japan are certified under the ISO 14001 international standard for environment management.

Dealer

DAIKIN INDUSTRIES, LTD.
Head Office:
Umeda Center Bldg., 2-4-12, Nakazaki-Nishi,
Kita-ku, Osaka, 530-8323 Japan

Tokyo Office:
JR Shinagawa East Bldg., 2-18-1, Konan,
Minato-ku, Tokyo, 108-0075 Japan

http://www.daikin.com/global_ac/

©All rights reserved

- Specifications, designs and other content appearing in this brochure are current as of Sep. 2010 but subject to change without notice.

OH10-01
Printed in Japan 09/2010 FS.K